

# Manual for FOMA® SH903iTV '07.2



- Easy Search/ Table of Contents/ Precautions
- Before Using the FOMA Terminal
- Phone/Videophone
- PushTalk
- Phonebook
- Sound/Screen/ Light Settings
- Security Settings
- Camera
- i-mode/i-motion/ i-Channel
- Mail
- i-appli
- Osaifu-Keitai/ ToruCa
- Watching TV
- Full Browser
- Displaying/Editing/ Managing Data
- Music Playback
- Other Useful Functions
- Network Services
- Data Communication
- Text Input
- Appendix/ Using with External Devices/ Troubleshooting
- Index/Quick Manual**

# DoCoMo W-CDMA System

Thank you for purchasing the FOMA SH903iTV.

Make sure to thoroughly read this manual and the manuals for accessories before and during use to ensure proper operation. If any of the contents in this manual are unclear, please contact number listed in “General Inquiries” on the back of this manual. The FOMA SH903iTV is designed to make your everyday life more convenient. Careful use will ensure a long service life.

## Using the FOMA Terminal

- Because it relies on radio signals, the FOMA terminal cannot be used in places with no signal (such as tunnels, underground, or in buildings), in places with a weak signal or outside the FOMA service area. There may be times when the terminal cannot be used in the upper floors of a building even with no obstructions in sight. There may also be times when the signal is strong and you are not moving but the call is interrupted.
- Make sure not to disturb others when using in public places, places with many people or quiet places.
- Because the FOMA terminal uses electrical signals, it is possible for a third party to listen in on a conversation. However, the W-CDMA system automatically applies privacy to every call, a third party that tries to listen in only hears static.
- The FOMA terminal converts conversations into a digital signal and sends it to the other party over the radio. If the signal cannot be reconverted properly by such as moving to an area with a weak signal, the voice may not be heard correctly.
- Keep a separate memo and note information stored in the FOMA terminal. DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss of content.
- The user hereby agrees that the user shall be solely responsible for the result of the use of SSL. Neither DoCoMo nor the certifier as listed herein makes any representation and warranty as for the security in the use of SSL. In the event that the user shall sustain damage or loss due to the use of SSL, neither DoCoMo nor the certifier shall be liable for any such damage or loss.  
Certifier: VeriSign Japan K.K., Cybertrust Japan, Inc., GeoTrust Japan, Inc., RSA Security Japan Ltd., Secom Trust Systems Co., Ltd.
- This FOMA terminal supports FOMA Plus-Area.
- The FOMA terminal can be used only via the FOMA network provided by DoCoMo.

## For First Time FOMA Users

If this is your first FOMA terminal, please read this manual in the order indicated below. This will give you an explanation of the preparation required to use the FOMA terminal and basic functions.

1. Attach the battery pack and charge (👉 P. 39, P. 40)
2. Turn the power on, make initial settings and check your phone number (👉 P. 43, P. 45, P. 46)
3. Check the roles of various parts of the FOMA terminal (👉 P. 24)
4. Check the meanings of icons that appear on the display (👉 P. 28)
5. Check the operation of the menu (👉 P. 32)
6. Check how to make/receive calls (👉 P. 47)

Download the latest version of this manual from the NTT DoCoMo web page.

- “User’s Manual (in PDF format)” Download

<http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english/support/manual/index.html>

The URL and contents of this manual are subject to change without prior notice.

# Using This Manual

This manual uses illustrations and icons to explain operations for proper phone use.

- Icons and screens that appear on the display have been set by default in accordance with the handset color (Kisekae Tool  P. 136).  
The explanations in this manual are based on the case when Kisekae Tool is set for the handset color "White".
- The screens and illustrations in this manual are shown as examples. The actual screens and illustrations may differ.

## Notation of Keys and Operation Procedure

- This manual refers to keys as simplified icons.

Actual key	Notation in this manual
Example) 	 ● Refer to "Component Names and Functions" on P. 24.

- The notation and meaning of operation procedure are shown below.

Notation	Meaning
Example)  (for 1+ seconds)	Press  for 1 second or more.

## Searching This Manual

Use this manual to find explanations of functions and services. There are several ways to find information in this manual.

### See the next page for more details.

Index

 P. 466

Use this when you know the function or service name, or to search for function names that appear on the FOMA SH903iTV display.

Easy search

 P. 4

Search for frequently used or convenient functions using easy-to-understand language.

Indexed pages

 Cover

Search this manual using the index on the cover and the sides of pages.

Table of contents

 P. 6

Search for functions by category.

Main functions

 P. 8

Search for new and convenient functions or characteristic functions of the FOMA SH903iTV.

Menu list

 P. 418

Menus that appear on the FOMA SH903iTV are listed.

Quick manual

 P. 476

The basic functions are explained briefly. Tear out the Quick manual to keep as a reference when away from home.

- Note that "FOMA SH903iTV" is referred to as the "FOMA terminal" in this manual.
- This manual describes functions using the microSD Memory Card. Please note that microSD Memory Cards are sold separately ( P. 318 for details).
- Reproduction of this manual in part or in whole is prohibited.
- The contents of this manual are subject to change without prior notice.

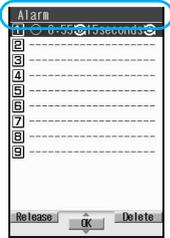
As an example, how to look up the Alarm function using the Index, Easy search and Indexed pages are explained below.

- Content differs from actual pages in this manual.

## Index

P. 466

Use this when you know the function or service name, or to search for function names that appear on the FOMA SH903iTV display.



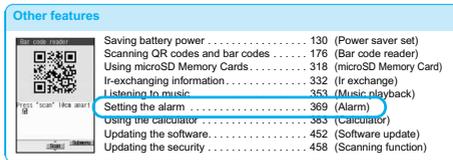
Delete	401	Battery pack	39
Reply message	401	Charging	40
After-sales service	450	Check battery level	43
Alarm	369	Times of use	40
Quick alarm	369	Bookmark	188
Reception reserve alarm	281	Attach to mail	189
Recording reserve alarm	281	Delete	190
Schedule alarm	373	Display	189
Snooze	370	Edit title	190
ToDo alarm settings	378	Bookmark folder	190
All lock	148	BookReader	346
Disable	149	Copy text	348
		Current location	348
		Delete	351

P. 369  
Page that explains "Alarm"

## Easy search

P. 4

Search for frequently used or convenient functions using easy-to-understand language.

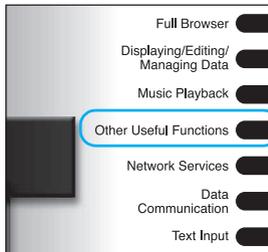


P. 369  
Page that explains "Alarm"

## Indexed pages

Cover

Search for functions going in the order of "cover" → "beginning of the chapter" → "description page". The beginning of each chapter shows a table of contents.



Other Useful Functions	
● Checking Settings	<Check Settings>364
● Multiaccess	<Multiaccess>364
● Using Multi Assistant (Multitask)	<Multi Assistant (Multitask)>364
● Retrieving the Recently Used Function or File	<Active Marker>365
● Turning Power On Automatically	<Auto Power ON>367
● Turning Power Off Automatically	<Auto Power OFF>368
● Sounding Alarm After Set Time Passes	<Timer>368
● Sounding Alarm at Set Time	<Alarm>369
● Managing Schedules	<Schedule>371
● Saving ToDo Lists	<ToDo List>377
● Accessing Functions Quickly	<Shortcut Menu>380

P. 369 Page that explains "Alarm"

This is the function name as it appears in the index.

**Alarm**

**Setting Alarm at Set Time**

Activate melody, Chaku-uta full® or movie/i-motion at the set time/day.  
 ● If Vibration mode (P. 121) is set, vibrator operates along with alarm.

**Setting Alarms**

● **Default setting** Alarm tone: 鳴笛音 1, Alarm volume: Volume 5, Snooze setting: OFF, Ring duration: 15 seconds

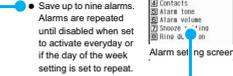
Basic setting methods for alarm time and day are described below.

- Set the operations when alarm is activated (P. 370). For the settings, change the alarm volume and tone, display a message and a phone number or perform other operations. Also, change stereo effects (P. 120) and an LED (P. 140).

Message	Show messages when alarm operates. Enter up to 60 single-byte (30 double-byte) characters.
Contacts	Show phone numbers when alarm operates. Make calls when alarm operates.
Alarm tone	Change alarm tone. Melody, Chaku-uta full® and movie/i-motion are available.
Alarm volume	Change the volume.
Snooze setting	Set the number of times to ring alarm and its interval.
Ring duration	Change the duration to ring alarm.

**1** In stand-by, press **9** **2** **8** **4** and enter registration number.

- Set the correct date and time in advance (P. 45).
- Save up to nine alarms. Alarms are repeated until disabled when set to activate everyday or if the day of the week setting is set to repeat.



**2** Press **1** [Enter Time], enter activation time (four digits) and press **0**.  
 ● Use 24-hour format.  
 ● Move cursor with **←**.

**3** Press **2** [Set repeat] and select a repeat method.

To sound once	<b>1</b> ● Setting is disabled after activation.
To sound on specified day	<b>2</b> <b>2</b> → select day <b>0</b> (repeatable) → <b>0</b> ● If a check is placed in <b>Exclude holidays</b> , alarm does not activate for set vacations or holidays. ● To disable, select day and press <b>0</b> . ● Press <b>1</b> [SetAll]/ <b>1</b> [ClrAll] to select or clear all.
To sound every day	<b>3</b>

**4** Press **5** [Complete].  
 ● Press **1** to end setting (**0** appears in stand-by display).

**Setting details**

**1** Appears when alarm is set

**2** Time

**3** Repeat frequency

Once only  
 Set day of week  
 Daily

**4** Duration of alarm

**5** Appears when snooze is set

**6** Unsaved

**Note**

- When multiple alarm functions are set to the same time, the alarms are prioritized in the following order.

Alarm function	Priority (high → low)
Recording → Reception → Alarm → Schedule/ToDo list	

- One-time alarm can also be easily set on the current day (the following day if set time has passed) (Quick alarm).

**Related Operations**

Set alarm from stand-by <Quick alarm>  
 In stand-by, enter time (ex. 2:05 PM: 1405) **0** **2**.

The setting details and the operation methods are described (Some functions are not executed according to the settings).

Search by chapter from the index.

Necessary information, precautions and other information for using functions are explained. Blue characters indicate they are included in Index. Search from the index is available.

Related operations are explained in a simplified style.

Default settings are shown. Default settings are also shown in "Menu List" (P. 418).

The names of displayed items and their explanations are shown.

The operation is detailed in steps.

Additional information, precautions and advice relating to operations are explained.

Screens demonstrating various steps are shown. Refer to the screens while using the FOMA terminal (Text which is input, numbers and settings are examples).

Content differs from actual pages in this manual.

**Note**

- Refer to "Menu List" on P. 418 for default settings.
- This manual refers to microSD Memory Card as "microSD Memory Card" or "microSD".
- This manual refers to "Osai-fu-Keitai compatible i-appli with IC card function" as "Osai-fu-Keitai compatible i-appli".

**Viewing the display**

- The explanations in this manual are based on default settings. The actual screens may differ depending on settings changed after purchase.
- When Flash movies and icons featuring animation effects are displayed, screens may differ from those described in this manual.

# Easy Search

Use this feature to find simple description for any function.

## Useful functions for making calls



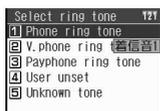
- Notifying caller ID . . . . . 46 (Notify caller ID)
- Putting a call on hold while talking . . . . . 51 (Hold active call)
- Switching to Videophone during voice call . . 52 (Switch between voice call and Videophone)
- Adjusting the volume of the other party's voice . . . 67 (Earpiece volume)

## When unable to take a call

- Placing a call on hold without answering the call . . . . . 67 (On hold)
- Indicating that it is necessary to refrain from talking on the mobile phone . . . . . 68 (Public mode (Drive mode))
- . . . . . 70 (Public mode (Power OFF))
- Recording phone messages . . . . . 71 (Record message (voice/Videophone calls))



## Changing melody and illumination



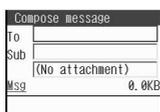
- Setting the ring tone for each caller . . . . . 100 (Select ring tone)
- Changing the ring tone . . . . . 116 (Select ring tone)
- Adjusting the ring tone volume . . . . . 118 (Phone ring volume)
- Muting the tone of keys pressed . . . . . 119 (Key/Standby i-motion)
- Notifying incoming calls with vibration . . . . . 121 (Vibrator)
- Setting Manner mode . . . . . 123 (Manner mode)
- Changing the light color and pattern for incoming calls . . . . . 138 (LED settings)

## Changing the display

- Meanings of display icons . . . . . 28 (View the display)
- Switching the menu display . . . . . 32 (Menu selections)
- Changing stand-by wallpaper . . . . . 125 (Stand-by display)
- Setting calendar in stand-by . . . . . 126 (Calendar display)
- Changing the font width . . . . . 141 (Font style)
- Keeping the display private . . . . . 142 (Private filter)
- Changing the font size . . . . . 184, 236, 293, 348, 409 (Font size)



## Using mail



- Sending Deco-mail . . . . . 216 (Deco-mail)
- Sending images . . . . . 220 (Attachments)
- Sorting and saving mail automatically . . . . . 236 (Sort rules)

## Using the camera

- Changing the image size. . . . . 171 (Select size)
- Saving to the microSD Memory Card . . . . . 175 (Switch phone⇔SD)
- Showing shot images . . . . . 296 (Image Viewer)



## Using the TV



- Watching TV . . . . . 275 (Activate One Seg)
- Changing settings for video,  
voice and sound . . . . . 278 (Set One Seg)
- Setting timer to start or  
record a TV program . . . . . 280 (Booking list)
- Recording a TV program . . . . . 284 (Record One Seg  
while watching)

## Securing the FOMA terminal

- Saving terminal data, such as phonebook  
from unexpected loss . . . . . 112, 114, 159 (Data Security Service)\*
- Keeping phonebook contents secret. . . . . 113 (Set secret)
- Locking the FOMA terminal remotely in  
case of loss . . . . . 149 (Omakase Lock)
- Rejecting calls without caller ID . . . . . 157 (Reject by reason of  
non-disclosure)
- Rejecting callers not saved  
in the phonebook. . . . . 159 (Reject unknown)



## Other features



- Saving battery power . . . . . 130 (Power saver set)
- Scanning QR codes and bar codes . . . . . 176 (Bar code reader)
- Using microSD Memory Cards. . . . . 318 (microSD Memory Card)
- Ir-exchanging information. . . . . 332 (Ir exchange)
- Listening to music. . . . . 353 (Music playback)
- Setting the alarm . . . . . 369 (Alarm)
- Using the calculator . . . . . 383 (Calculator)
- Updating the software. . . . . 452 (Software update)
- Updating the security . . . . . 458 (Scanning function)

\* This service is a paid service that requires subscription.

Frequently used functions are described in the Quick manual (P. 476).

# Table of Contents

Using This Manual .....	1
Easy Search.....	4
Main Functions of the FOMA SH903iTV.....	8
Maximizing Use of the FOMA SH903iTV.....	10
Safety Precautions (To Be Strictly Followed).....	12
Handling Precautions.....	18
Intellectual Property .....	20
Standard Parts Packaged with Unit and Main Optional Parts.....	22

## Before Using the FOMA Terminal..... 23

Component Names and Functions, View the Display, Menu Selections, Supportbook, FOMA Card, Insert and Remove the Battery Pack, Charge the Mobile Phone, Battery Level, Power ON/OFF, Select Language, Initial Settings, Date Settings, Notify Caller ID, Own Number

## Phone/Videophone..... 47

Use Videophone, Make Calls/Videophone Calls, Switch Between Voice Call and Videophone, Redial/Received Calls, Chaku-moji, Send Own No./No Caller ID, Pause Dial, WORLD CALL, International Dial Assist, International Prefix, Sub Address, Reconnect Control, Noise Reduction, Hands-free, Answer Calls/Videophone Calls, Switch Between Voice Call and Videophone to Receive Calls, Any Key Answer, Rotation-link Reply, Set When Folded, Earpiece Volume, On Hold, Set On Hold Tone, Set Hold Tone, Public Mode (Drive Mode/Power OFF), Missed Calls, Record Message (Voice/Videophone Calls), Quick Message, Play/Delete Recorded Messages or Voice Memos, Chara-den, Set the Image to Send to the Other Party, Hands-free V.phone, Videophone Set, Change Videophone Settings, Notify Switch Mode, Packet Transmission Arrival Action, Picture Memo

## PushTalk..... 83

PushTalk, Send PushTalk Transmissions, Add Member, Receive PushTalk Transmissions, Add to PushTalk Phonebook, Use PushTalk Phonebook to Send PushTalk Transmissions, Delete PushTalk Phonebook Entries, Set PushTalk

## Phonebook..... 95

Phonebooks Available on FOMA Terminal, Add to Phonebook, Add to FOMA Card Phonebook, Save to Phonebook from Redial and Received Calls, Group Settings, Search Phonebook, Edit Entries, Delete Entries, Data Security Service, Set Secret, 2-touch Dialing/2-touch Mail, Use Data Security Service

## Sound/Screen/Light Settings..... 115

Sound Settings, Select Volume, Sound Playback, Vibrator, Quality Alarm, Ring Time Setting, Ring Output, Manner Mode, Original Manner Mode, Main Display, Call/Receive Display, Send/Receive Display, Picture Call Set, Sub Display Setting, Power Saver Set, User Set, Personalize, Personalize Menu, Kisekai Tool, LED Settings, Missed Call Notice/New Unread Mail Notice, Vibrant Image Mode, Font Style, Private Filter

## Security Settings..... 143

FOMA Terminal Security Code, Change Security Code, UIM Settings, Disable PIN Lock, Lock Functions, All Lock, Omakase Lock, Self Mode, Function Lock, Keypad Dial Lock, Multi Easy Lock, Multi Lock Auto-set, Side Key Guard, Show Call/Received, Secret Mode, Accept Calls, Reject Calls, Reject by Reason of Non-disclosure, Set Mute Ring Time, Reject Unknown, Data Security Service, Other Security Settings

## Camera..... 161

Before Using the Camera, Shoot Still Picture, Shoot Movie, Change Settings for Shooting, Change Camera Settings, Send Message, Bar Code Reader, Character Reader (OCR)

## i-mode/i-motion/i-Channel..... 181

i-mode, View Sites, Site Layout and Operation, My Menu, Change i-mode Password, Internet Access, Bookmark, Screen Memo, Save Image, i-melody, Download PDF, Kisekai Tool, Download Dictionary, Download Chara-den, Download ToruCa, Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/Web To/Media To Function, Set i-mode, Message R/F, Receive Message R/F, Check New Messages, View Message R/F, Set SSL Certificates, i-motion, Download i-motion, Automatic Replay, i-motion Type, i-Channel, Show i-Channel, i-Channel Ticker, Reset i-Channel

<b>Mail</b> .....	<b>211</b>
FOMA Terminal Mail Functions, i-mode Mail, Mail Menu, Compose/Send i-mode Mail, Deco-mail, Send Using a Template, Attachments, Save i-mode Mail, Auto Receive, Receive Option, Check New Message, Reply to i-mode Mail, Forward i-mode Mail, Add to Phonebook, Acquire Attached Files for Manual Reception, View Attachment, View Image in Mail, Save Template, Inbox/Outbox/Unsent Messages, Received/Sent Messages History, Mail Setting, Compose/Send SMS, Receive SMS, SMS Settings, Save SMS to FOMA Card, Delete SMS, Scan Message	
<b>i-appli</b> .....	<b>245</b>
i-appli, i-appliDX, Download, Run i-appli, Auto Start, i-appli To Function, i-appli Stand-by, Manage i-appli, Used by i-appli, Use Various i-appli Functions	
<b>Osaifu-Keitai/ToruCa</b> .....	<b>261</b>
Osaifu-Keitai, iC Transfer Service, Start Osaifu-Keitai Compatible i-appli, ToruCa, Retrieve ToruCa, ToruCa Viewer, View ToruCa List/Details Screen, ToruCa Settings, IC Card Lock	
<b>Watching TV</b> .....	<b>271</b>
TV, Channel Setting, Activate One Seg, Program Guide, Booking List, Use Data Broadcasting, TVlink, Record One Seg While Watching, One Seg Settings	
<b>Full Browser</b> .....	<b>287</b>
View Web Pages Designed for PC, Set Full Browser	
<b>Displaying/Editing/Managing Data</b> .....	<b>295</b>
Image Viewer, Edit Image, i-motion Player, Edit Movie, Video Player, Chara-den Player, Melody Player, microSD Memory Card, Contents Transfer Compatible, Copy to microSD, Backup/Restore, View microSD Data, Copy to the Phone, Manage microSD Memory Card, Manage Data, Ir Exchange, Send and Receive Data Individually, Send and Receive All Data Items, Use Ir Exchange with i-appli Software, Infrared Remote Control, iC Transmission, Send and Receive Data Individually, Send and Receive All Data Items, Voice Recorder, PDF Viewer, Manage PDF Files, Document Viewer, Manage Documents, BookReader, Use the Information in e-Book and e-Dictionary, Character Reader, Manage e-Book and e-Dictionary, Print Setting (DPOF)	
<b>Music Playback</b> .....	<b>353</b>
Play Back Music, Music, Chaku-uta full® Download, Save Music Data to microSD Memory Card, Manage Playlist, SD-Audio, FM Transmitter Output “Chaku-uta full” is a registered trademark of the Sony Music Entertainment (Japan) Inc.	
<b>Other Useful Functions</b> .....	<b>363</b>
Check Settings, Multiaccess, Multi Assistant (Multitask), Active Marker, Auto Power ON, Auto Power OFF, Timer, Alarm, Schedule, ToDo List, Shortcut Menu, Owner Information, Voice Memo (During Call/Stand-by), Calculator, Talk Time/Cost, Text Memo, Earphone/Microphone with Switch, Set Auto Answer, Reset Settings, Delete User Data	
<b>Network Services</b> .....	<b>391</b>
Network Services from the FOMA Terminal, Voice Mail Service, Call Waiting, Call Forwarding Service, Nuisance Call Barring Service, Caller ID Request Service, Dual Network Service, English Guidance, Service Number, Arrival Call Action, Set Arrival Action, Remote Control, Multi Number, OFFICEED, Additional Services (USSD)	
<b>Data Communication</b> .....	<b>403</b>
Data Communication, Before Use, General Flow to Prepare for Data Communication, AT Commands, CD-ROM, DoCoMo Keitai Datalink	
<b>Text Input</b> .....	<b>407</b>
Text Input, 5-touch, Save Phrases, Copy Text, Kuten Code Input, Register Words (User Dictionary), Clear Memory Terms, Download Dictionary, Quick Dictionary/Next Word Guess, 2-touch	
<b>Appendix/Using with External Devices/Troubleshooting</b> .....	<b>417</b>
Menu List, Pre-installed Data, Dial Key Assignments (5-touch/2-touch), Symbols/Special Character List, Pictograph/Emoticon List, Phrase List, Use the Calculator, Multiaccess Combinations, Multi Assistant (Multitask) Combinations, Available Services, Options and Accessories, Use with External Devices, Troubleshooting, List of Error Messages, Warranty and After-sales Services, Software Update, Scanning Function, Main Specifications, Number of Saved/Registered/Protected Entries in the FOMA Terminal, Specific Absorption Rate (SAR), Japan Export Control Regulation/Export Administration Regulation	
<b>Index/Quick Manual</b> .....	<b>465</b>
Index, Quick Manual	

# Main Functions of the FOMA SH903iTV

FOMA is the name of DoCoMo's service based on W-CDMA, which is recognized as a global standard for third generation mobile communications system (IMT-2000).

## The World of i-mode

Use the i-mode terminal display to access i-mode, an online service used to access useful information from i-mode menu sites (programs) or i-mode supported sites, or easily send and receive e-mail.

**i-mode** (monthly fees apply)

i-mode is a paid service that requires subscription.  P. 182

**i-motion compatible**

Download and enjoy images and music from sites or the Internet. Set i-motion as Chaku-motion to use as ring tone or receive display.  P. 205

## i-mode Mail, Deco-mail Pictograph

Attach up to ten files (JPEG, ToruCa, etc.) in total of 2 MB to a message. Deco-mail/Deco-mail pictograph is available for i-mode mail. Create and send expressive mail by changing text color, character size and background color in message text.  P. 212

## Mega i-αpli, i-αpliDX

Download i-αpli from sites to play games and automatically update stock prices and weather information. Supporting large Mega i-αpli lets you enjoy high-definition 3D games and long RPGs. With i-αpliDX, use i-αpli in conjunction with phonebook or mail information in the i-mode terminal.  P. 246

## Chaku-uta full®

Download one song in whole from a site available for i-mode to play the song or set the song as a ring tone.  P. 116, P. 354, P. 356

## Security Settings

**Omakase Lock\***  P. 149

The FOMA terminal can be locked by request when it is lost. The lock can be disabled also by request. Refer to the back cover for details on inquiries.

\* Omakase Lock is a service to lock the handset by the request of the subscriber. Please note that the lock service can be applied by a request of the subscriber even if the subscriber is not a user of the FOMA terminal.

**Data Security Service**  P. 112, P. 114, P. 159

By using this service, phonebook, still pictures, messages in the phone can be saved in the Data Storage Center, and the lost data can be restored from the data saved on the network when the phone is lost. In addition, the data saved on Data Storage Center can be edited and managed using a PC. The edited data can be reflected to the phone.

Refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]" for precautions and details on the Data Security Service and the back cover of this manual for inquiries. This service is a paid service that requires subscription.

## Numerous Network Services

- Dual Network Service (monthly fees apply)  P. 397
- Voice Mail Service (monthly fees apply)  P. 392
- Call Waiting (monthly fees apply)  P. 394
- SMS (Short Message)  P. 240
- Call Forwarding Service  P. 395

## Approx. 2 Million Effective Pixel Camera and High-definition Display

### Approx. 2 million effective pixel CMOS camera

(Recorded pixels: approximately 1.9 million (main camera), approximately 0.1 million (sub camera))

Shoot and play back still pictures and movies using auto-focus with the built-in digital camera. Multishot and shooting with frames are also available. Use the CMOS camera (approximately 2 million effective pixels) or the CMOS sub camera (approximately 0.11 million effective pixels) to shoot images of yourself or to use Videophone.  P. 162

### Sub display

Receiving calls, PushTalk or mail can be checked and the clock, Chaku-moji and i-Channel ticker can be displayed when the FOMA terminal is closed. The information such as the titles and artist's names appears during music playback.  P. 129

### 3.0 inch WQVGA High-definition Large Display LCD

Watch One Seg on the 3.0 inch wide screen. The wide screen also lets you enjoy high quality view of shot still pictures and movies. The wide screen also let you enjoy lively i-appli games. The brightness sensor adjusts the brightness of the backlight according to the detected surrounding light. This is useful for power saving purposes.  P. 132

### Private filter

Change the contrast of the display to protect your important privacy.  P. 142

## A Wide Array of Functions

### microSD Memory Card compatible

Supporting a minimum-sized memory, microSD Memory Card. Exchange data between FOMA terminal handset and microSD Memory Card. Save movies directly to the microSD Memory Card to shoot and play long movie files. Record movies of a One Seg program and save the contents transfer compatible data. In addition, save music or images using a PC.  P. 318

### Active Marker

Easily access the function or file that was recently used. The current day's schedule and ToDo list details are also available.  P. 365

### One-touch Power saver mode

Switch the display settings to Power saver (Eco) with one-touch operation and conserve battery power.  P. 130

### Kisekae Tool

Personalize the menu icons and background images of Top menu, i-mode menu and mail menu, and also the stand-by display and ring tones with Kisekae Tool collectively.  P. 136

### Fix camera shake

Shoot movies with the camera while camera shake is automatically fixed.  P. 174

### FM transmitter

Play sound and music of One Seg, Video player, Music player or SD-Audio of the FOMA terminal with a receiver such as an FM radio or an in-vehicle FM tuner. To do this, transmit the sound and music from the FOMA terminal with FM radio waves and receive the radio waves with the receiver.  P. 361

## Wide Array of Lock Functions and Security Settings

There are various lock functions and security settings for the FOMA terminal.

- Lock functions  P. 148
- Secret mode  P. 154
- Multi easy lock  P. 152
- Multi lock auto-set  P. 153
- Show call/received  P. 153

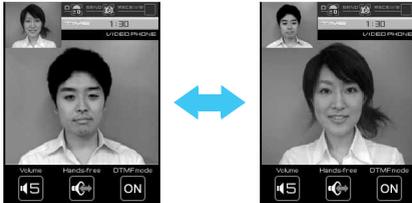
# Maximizing Use of the FOMA SH903iTV

The functions of the FOMA SH903iTV are described below.

## Videophone P. 48

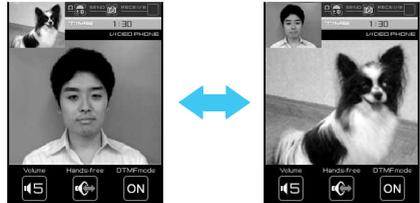
### Face-to-face communication using the sub camera

Have conversations while looking at each other's faces.



### Shoot live movies with the main camera

Use main camera and microphone to send image + voice of surroundings in real time.



## i-Channel P. 208

Periodically receive updated information without performing operations each time. Press the i-Channel supported key to view the channel list. More detailed information is available here.



i-Channel is only available in Japanese.

## PushTalk P. 84

Simply select the other party from the phonebook and press the PushTalk key to communicate with multiple people at once (up to five including yourself). PushTalk is useful when speaking to specific groups or conveying short information.

## Osaifu-Keitai/ToruCa P. 262

i-mode terminals supporting i-mode FeliCa is called an "Osaifu-Keitai". Simply hold the handset of Osaifu-Keitai up to the reader/writer (external device) at participating stores. Use electronic money to pay for shopping and use as an airline ticket or a service card with purchase points accumulated according to the purchased amount. The IC card in Osaifu-Keitai enables depositing electronic money, checking your balance or viewing usage history from sites, and other useful functions. Moreover, preinstalled i-appli for "DCMX", a DoCoMo's credit service, turns your mobile phone into a convenient tool in your daily life by using it as "Osaifu-Keitai". This terminal also supports iC transfer service that makes transferring data in the IC card easier when the FOMA terminal is changed into a new model.

## Music Playback

### Music player P. 354

Play back Chaku-uta full® downloaded from sites or Internet web pages using Music player. Also play back the data saved to the **Multimedia** folder of i-motion.

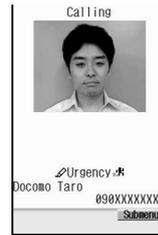


### SD-Audio P. 358

Use SD-Jukebox or PC to save songs from a CD to the microSD Memory Card and play on the FOMA terminal.

## Chaku-moji P. 56

Display a message on the receive display. Points and degree of urgency can be previously sent. Messages can be also checked on the received calls details screen.



## TV

### One Seg P. 275

Watch "One Seg", which is digital terrestrial broadcasting for mobile devices.



### Video P. 284, P. 296, P. 311

Record movies and a scene as a still picture for One Seg program being played. Watch the recorded movies and still pictures with the FOMA terminal.



### Multi Window P. 278

While watching One Seg on Multi Window in the Cycloid position, use another function.



### TV timer and Recording timer P. 280

Set timer for starting or recording TV programs.



## Safety Precautions (To Be Strictly Followed)

- Before use, read these “Safety Precautions” carefully and use your FOMA properly.  
Keep this manual in a safe place for future reference.
- These safety precautions contain information intended to prevent bodily injury to the user and to surrounding people, as well as damage to property, and must be observed at all times.

The following symbols indicate the different degrees of injury or damage that may occur if information provided is not observed and the FOMA terminal is used improperly.

 <b>Danger</b>	This symbol indicates that “death or serious bodily injury may directly and immediately result from improper use”.
 <b>Warning</b>	This symbol indicates that “death or serious bodily injury may result from improper use”.
 <b>Caution</b>	This symbol indicates that “bodily injury and/or property damage may result from improper use”.

The following symbols indicate specific directions.

 Don't	<b>Indicates a prohibited action.</b>
 No disassembly	Indicates not to disassemble the device.
 No wet hands	Indicates not to handle the device with wet hands.
 No liquids	Indicates not to use the device near water or get it wet.
 Instruction	<b>Indicates that instructions specified are compulsory (must be followed).</b>
 Unplug	Indicates that the power cord must be unplugged from the power outlet.

“Safety Precautions” is explained in the following six sections.

- Handling the FOMA Terminal, Battery Pack, Adapters (Chargers), and FOMA Card (General) . . . . . P. 12
- Handling the FOMA Terminal . . . . . P. 13
- Handling the Battery Pack. . . . . P. 15
- Handling the Adapters (Chargers) . . . P. 16
- Handling Mobile Phones near Electronic Medical Equipment . . . . . P. 17
- Handling the FOMA Card . . . . . P. 17

## Handling the FOMA Terminal, Battery Pack, Adapters (Chargers), and FOMA Card (General)

 <b>Danger</b>	
<b>Use only the battery packs and adapters (chargers) specified by the DoCoMo group companies for use with the FOMA terminal.</b>	
 Instruction	The use of devices other than those specified may cause the FOMA terminal, battery pack or other devices to leak, overheat, explode, catch fire or malfunction. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Battery pack SH11</li> <li>● Desktop holder SH13</li> <li>● FOMA AC Adapter 01</li> <li>● FOMA DC Adapter 01</li> <li>● FOMA Dry Battery Adapter 01</li> <li>● FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01</li> </ul> For information on other compatible products, contact a DoCoMo Shop or retailer.
<b>Do not get the FOMA terminal, battery pack, adapters (chargers) or FOMA card wet.</b>	
 No liquids	Contact with water, pet urine, and other liquids may cause overheating, electric shock, fire, malfunction or bodily injury. Be attentive to where and how you use the handset.
<b>Do not attempt to disassemble or modify. In addition, do not attempt to solder.</b>	
 No disassembly	May cause accidents such as fires, bodily injury, electric shock or malfunction. In addition, the battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.
<b>Do not use or leave the FOMA terminal, battery pack, adapters (chargers) or FOMA card in locations subject to high temperatures, such as near a fire or heater, in direct sunlight, or inside a car on a hot day.</b>	
 Don't	The FOMA may malfunction or become deformed. In addition, the battery pack may leak, overheat, explode, catch fire or suffer performance loss and a reduced service life. Part of the casing may also become hot and cause burns.

## Warning

**Make sure to turn off the mobile phone in locations such as gas stations where flammable gas is generated. In addition, do not recharge the battery. It may cause a gas explosion or fire.**



Instruction

To use Osaifu-Keitai in locations such as gas stations, make sure to turn off the power in advance (If the IC card lock is set, disable the lock before turning off the power).

**Do not throw or otherwise subject to strong force or impacts.**



Don't

The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire. Other equipment may also be damaged or catch fire.

**If you notice anything unusual, such as an unusual odor, overheating, discoloration or deformation during use, charging or storage, immediately follow the instructions below.**



Instruction

1. Unplug the power cord from the outlet or cigarette lighter socket.
2. Turn off the FOMA terminal.
3. Remove the battery pack from the FOMA terminal.

Continued use (charging) may cause overheating, explosion, or fire. In addition, the battery pack may leak.

**Do not allow conductive materials (such as metal objects and pencil lead) to come into contact with the charger terminal or external device terminal. In addition, do not insert such objects.**



Don't

The battery pack may short-circuit and cause a fire or malfunction.

**Do not place the FOMA terminal, battery pack, adapters (chargers), or FOMA card inside cooking appliances such as microwave ovens or pressure cookers.**



Don't

The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire, and the FOMA terminal and adapters (chargers) may overheat, emit smoke or catch fire. The internal circuitry may also be damaged.

## Caution

**Keep the FOMA out of the reach of young children.**



Instruction

A small child may swallow components or suffer other bodily injury.

**Do not store the FOMA in locations that are subject to dust, humidity or high temperatures.**



Don't

May cause a malfunction.

## Caution

**If being used by a child, have a guardian teach them the proper handling procedures. In addition, check that the child is using the FOMA as directed.**



Instruction

May result in bodily injury.

**Do not leave the FOMA on unstable surfaces, such as on a wobbling table or sloped surface.**



Don't

The FOMA may fall and cause injury or be damaged.

**The FOMA terminal, battery pack or adapters (chargers) may become warm when charging, when recording or playing movies, or when using Videophone, TV, i-mode or i-appli repeatedly or for long periods of time.**



Instruction

Exposure to high temperature areas for a prolonged period of time may cause skin irritations, or itchiness in some people.

Take special care when using the FOMA terminal for long periods while connected to the adapter (chargers).

## Handling the FOMA Terminal

### Warning

**Never use the FOMA while driving a motor vehicle.**



Don't

As of November 1, 2004, use of a mobile phone while driving is punishable by law. Even when using the In-car hands-free kit, stop your vehicle in a safe place before using. Activate Public mode or Voice Mail Service when driving.

**Turn off the FOMA in areas where the use of mobile phones is prohibited, such as in aircraft or hospitals.**



Instruction

The FOMA may interfere with the operation of sensitive devices and electronic medical equipment. In addition, make sure that the Auto power ON function is set to OFF before turning the FOMA OFF. Follow the instructions given by the respective medical facilities regarding the use of mobile phones on their premises. In addition, actions such as speaking on a mobile phone aboard aircraft are prohibited and may be punishable by law.

## Warning

**Turn the FOMA terminal off near high-precision electronic devices or devices that use weak electronic signals.**



Instruction

The FOMA may interfere with the operation of sensitive electronic equipment.

**Take particular care with the following devices:**

Hearing aids, implanted cardiac pacemakers, implanted cardioverter-defibrillators, or other electronic medical equipment. Fire alarms, automatic doors and other equipment controlled by electronic signals.

If you use an implanted cardiac pacemaker, implanted cardioverter-defibrillator or other medical equipment, contact the respective manufacturer or vendor to check whether the operation of the equipment is affected by signals.

**If you are using electronic medical equipment, do not put the FOMA in your breast pocket or in the inside pocket of your jacket.**



Don't

Using the FOMA terminal in close proximity to electronic medical equipment may cause the equipment to malfunction.

**Do not aim the Ir (Infrared) data port towards the eyes.**



Don't

May cause eye injury. In addition, do not aim or direct the Ir data port towards another Ir device as this may cause the device to malfunction.

**If you have a weak heart, take extra precautions when setting functions such as the Vibrator and Ring tone volume for incoming calls.**



Instruction

Various settings may have effects on your heart.

**If you hear thunder while using the FOMA terminal outdoors, put the antenna back into the FOMA terminal, immediately turn it off and move to a safe location.**



Instruction

There is a risk of being struck by lightning and suffering electric shock.

**Do not place the FOMA terminal on the dashboard or near the airbag where it could interfere with the airbag inflating.**



Don't

If the air bag inflates, the FOMA terminal may strike you or others around you, resulting in bodily injury or damage to the FOMA terminal or other property.

## Warning

**During a call in which Hands-free is set, keep the FOMA terminal away from the ears.**



Instruction

This may cause hearing loss.

## Caution

**Using the FOMA in an automobile may sometimes affect the electronic equipment in some vehicle models.**



Instruction

In such cases, stop using the FOMA, as this could impede safe driving.

**Never place a magnetic card near or in antenna, the FOMA terminal.**



Don't

The stored magnetic data in cash cards, credit cards, telephone cards and floppy disks, etc. may be erased.

**Do not swing the FOMA terminal by its antenna, strap, etc.**



Don't

The FOMA may strike you or others around you, resulting in bodily injury or damage to the FOMA or other property.

**Do not use the FOMA terminal in area with many people.**



Don't

The antenna may strike others, resulting in bodily injury.

**Do not use the FOMA terminal with the damaged antenna.**



Don't

Touching the antenna may cause burn or other injuries.

**Do not allow water or other liquids, metal, flammable material, or other foreign objects to enter the FOMA card port on the FOMA terminal.**



Don't

May cause a fire, electric shock or other malfunctions.

## ⚠ Caution

Use of the FOMA may cause skin irritations such as itchiness, rashes or eczema in some people. If this occurs, immediately stop using the FOMA and seek medical treatment.



Instruction

Part	Material	Surface treatment	
Multi-guide key	ABS	Chrome plating	
OK key			
Metal part of TV antenna	Brass		
Rear model name panel (Large)	Nickel		
Rear model name panel (Small)			
Model name panel at lower part of the main display	Stainless steel		Coating
Earphone/Microphone terminal			Tin plating
External connector terminal	Gold plating		
Charger terminal			
Inside microSD Memory Card slot	-		

**Do not close the FOMA terminal on your fingers or objects such as the strap.**



Instruction

May result in bodily injury or cause a malfunction.

**Watch TV in a well-lit place, keeping a certain distance from the screen.**



Instruction

Otherwise, eyesight may be decreased.

**Use the FeliCa reader/writer function only in Japan.**



Instruction

The FeliCa reader/writer function in the FOMA terminal conforms to the domestic radio wave standards and has obtained its approval. Using the function overseas may result in punishment.

**Use the FM transmitter only in Japan.**



Instruction

The FM transmitter in the FOMA terminal conforms to the domestic radio wave standards and has obtained its approval. Using the function overseas may result in punishment.

## Handling the Battery Pack

Check the type of battery using the information printed on the battery pack label.

Label	Battery type
Li-ion	Lithium-ion

## ⚠ Danger

**Do not throw the battery pack into a fire.**



Don't

The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.

**Do not touch terminals with metallic objects such as wires. In addition, do not carry or store the battery pack with metallic necklaces, etc.**



Don't

The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.

**If the battery fluid comes into contact with your eyes, do not rub your eyes but immediately rinse your eyes with clean water. Then seek prompt medical treatment.**



Instruction

Battery fluid is harmful to your eyes and may result in loss of eyesight.

**If you are having difficulty fitting the battery pack to the FOMA terminal, do not use excessive pressure to force the battery into place. Check that the battery pack is facing the correct direction before you attach it.**



Don't

The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.

**Do not puncture, hit with a hammer or step on the battery pack.**



Don't

The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.

## ⚠ Warning

**If the battery pack is not fully charged after the specified time has elapsed, stop charging.**



Instruction

The battery pack may leak, overheat, explode or catch fire.

**If battery fluid comes into contact with your skin or clothing, stop using the FOMA terminal immediately and rinse it off with clean water.**



Instruction

Battery fluid is harmful to your skin.

## Warning

If the battery pack leaks or emits an unusual odor, immediately stop use and move it away as far as possible from any flame or fire.



Instruction

The battery fluid is flammable and could ignite, causing a fire or explosion.

## Caution

Do not dispose of used battery packs in ordinary garbage.



Don't

May cause fires or damage to the environment. Place tape over the terminals to insulate unnecessary battery packs, and take them to a DoCoMo Shop, retailer or institution that handles used batteries in your area.

## Handling the Adapters (Chargers)

## Warning

Take care not to short-circuit the charging terminal when connected to a power outlet or cigarette lighter socket. Also, take care not to allow any part of your body (fingers, etc.) to come into contact with the charging terminal.



Don't

May result in a fire, electric shock, equipment malfunction or bodily injury.

Place the charger and desktop holder on stable surfaces when charging. In addition, do not cover or wrap the charger or desktop holder with clothing or bedding.



Don't

The FOMA terminal may detach, overheat, or cause a fire or malfunction.

Never use the AC adapter, desktop holder or the DC adapter in humid or steamy locations such as a bathroom.



Don't

May result in electric shock.

Do not handle the cord and plug of the adapters (chargers) with wet hands.



No wet hands

May result in electric shock.

## Warning

Do not touch the FOMA terminal or adapters (chargers) if you hear thunder.



Don't

There is a risk of being struck by lightning and suffering electric shock.

Do not use if the adapter's (charger's) cord or power cord is damaged.



Don't

May cause electric shock, overheating or fire.

If the fuse in the DC adapter blows, always replace it with a fuse of the specified type.



Instruction

Using the incorrect fuse may cause a fire or malfunction. Refer to the respective manuals for information on the correct fuse specifications.

Always use the specified power supply and voltage.



Instruction

Using the incorrect voltage may cause a fire or malfunction. When using overseas, use the overseas-compatible FOMA AC adapter 01.  
AC adapter: 100VAC  
Overseas-compatible FOMA AC adapter 01: 100 to 240VAC (Connect only with household AC outlet)  
DC adapter: 12/24VDC (for negative grounded vehicles only)

Wipe off any dust on the plug.



Instruction

May cause a fire.

Unplug the power cord from the outlet when not using for a long time.



Unplug

May cause an electric shock, equipment malfunction, or fire.

Should water or other liquids enter the adapters (chargers), remove the plug from the outlet or cigarette lighter socket immediately.



Unplug

May cause an electric shock, smoke emission or fire.

The DC adapter should only be used in negative grounded vehicles. Never use these adapters in positive grounded vehicles.



Don't

May cause a fire.

## Warning

When plugging the AC adapter into the power outlet, make sure that no metallic straps or other metallic objects are caught between the plug and the socket.



Instruction

May cause electric shock, short-circuiting or fire.

## Caution

Always pull the plug out of the power outlet or cigarette lighter socket before cleaning the adapters (chargers).



Unplug

May result in electric shock.

Do not place heavy objects on the power cords for the adapters (chargers).



Don't

May cause an electric shock or fire.

Always grasp the plug when unplugging the adapters (chargers) from the power outlet or cigarette lighter socket. Do not pull by the cord or power cord.



Instruction

Pulling on the cord may damage the cord and cause an electric shock or fire.

## Handling Mobile Phones near Electronic Medical Equipment

The safety precautions detailed here conform to the guidelines drawn up by the Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference Japan, regarding the protection of electronic medical equipment from signals emitted by mobile phones.

## Warning

If you have an implanted cardiac pacemaker or an implanted cardioverter-defibrillator, always carry or use your FOMA terminal at least 22 cm away from your implant.



Instruction

Electromagnetic signals may affect the operation of implanted cardiac pacemakers and implanted cardioverter-defibrillators.

## Warning

Observe the following in hospitals or other medical facilities.



Instruction

- Do not take your FOMA terminal into operating rooms, ICUs (Intensive Care Units) or CCUs (Coronary Care Units).
- Turn off your FOMA terminal inside hospital wards.
- Turn off your FOMA terminal even when you are in an area outside hospital wards, such as a hospital lobby, since electronic medical equipment may be in use nearby.
- Where a medical facility has specific instructions prohibiting the carrying and use of mobile phones, observe those instructions strictly.
- If Auto power ON function is set to ON, disable this function before turning off your mobile phone.

Turn off your FOMA terminal in crowded places such as rush-hour trains in case somebody nearby is using an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted cardioverter-defibrillator.



Instruction

Electromagnetic signals may affect the operation of implanted cardiac pacemakers and implanted cardioverter-defibrillators.

Patients receiving medical treatment away from a hospital or medical facility (e.g. home treatment) who are using electronic medical equipment other than implanted cardiac pacemakers or implanted cardioverter-defibrillators should consult the respective manufacturers for information regarding the effects of signals on the equipment.



Instruction

Electromagnetic signals may affect the operation of electronic medical equipment.

## Handling the FOMA Card

## Caution

Be careful when detaching the FOMA card (IC).



Instruction

May cause injuries to your hand or fingers.

## Handling Precautions

### General Notes

- Do not expose to water. FOMA terminal, battery pack, adapters (chargers) and FOMA Card are not waterproof. Do not use in humid or steamy areas such as bathrooms and avoid exposing to rain and other forms of moisture. If FOMA terminal is carried close to skin, perspiration may cause internal components to corrode and result in malfunction. Note that if problem is found to be due to moisture, handset and parts are not covered by warranty and in some cases may be irreparable. Even where repairs are possible, repair charges will be incurred since damage is not covered by warranty.

- Clean only with a soft and dry cloth (such as the type used for eyeglasses).

The surface of the handset's LCD has a special coating to improve the visibility of the color display. Forceful rubbing of LCD with a dry cloth may scratch LCD surface. Handle the handset carefully and clean using a soft and dry cloth (such as the type used for eyeglasses). Note also that LCD coating may peel off or stain if moisture or soiling is left on the surface for a long period.

Never use chemicals such as alcohol, thinners, benzene or detergents, as these agents may erase the printing on the handset or cause discoloration.

- Occasionally clean connection terminals with a dry cotton swab.

Unclean connection terminals may result in poor connections and loss of power. Additionally, keep terminal clean with a dry cloth or cotton swab to prevent charge performance loss.

- Do not place the handset near an air conditioning vent. Condensation formed due to rapid changes in temperature may cause internal corrosion and lead to malfunction.
- Do not leave handset in a location subject to excessive force.  
Carrying the handset in a tightly packed bag, or sitting on the handset in your pocket may result in damage to LCD or other internal components, which are not covered by warranty.
- Read the manuals supplied with the battery pack and adapters (chargers) carefully.

### Notes About FOMA Terminal

- Using the handset close to landline phones, TVs or radios may affect the operation of such equipment. Move as far away as possible from such items before use.
- Keep a separate memo and note information stored in the FOMA terminal. DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss of content.
- Do not put the handset in back pocket and then sit on it. Additionally, do not put handset where it may be subjected to excessive weight or pressure, such as the bottom of a briefcase. May cause malfunction.
- Do not close FOMA terminal on strap. May damage the handset and cause malfunction.
- Do not apply thick stickers to the surface of the main display or the surface with dial keys. May damage the handset and cause malfunction.
- Avoid using the handset in extremely high or low temperatures. Use the FOMA terminal within the range of a temperature between 5°C and 35°C and a humidity between 45% and 85%.
- FOMA terminal may become warm with continuous use or during charging. This is normal and not a malfunction.
- Do not leave the camera in direct sunlight. May cause discoloration or burn-in.
- A radio frequency-preventing sheet is attached on the back of the back cover. Do not peel off this sheet.

### Handling Battery Pack

- Battery pack is a consumable product. Though usage time varies with use, change battery if battery level is extremely low even after fully charged. Purchase a new battery pack for specified handset.
- Always charge the battery before the first use or after not using battery for a long time.
- The usage time for a battery depends on the usage and deterioration of battery pack.
- Charge battery in areas where ambient temperature is between 5°C and 35°C.
- Store in a cool, well ventilated location that is not exposed to direct sunlight. If the battery pack is not be used for a long time, empty the battery, remove it from the FOMA terminal, place in a plastic bag in which the battery pack is contained or other container and store.
- Depending on usage, the battery may swell as it approaches the end of its service life but this will not cause problems.

## Handling the Adapters (Chargers)

- Adapters (chargers) may become warm during charging. This is normal and not a malfunction.
- Charge battery in areas where ambient temperature is between 5°C and 35°C.
- Do not charge battery pack in the following locations:
  - Close to landline phones, TVs or radios, etc.
  - Areas with high humidity or dust, or in areas exposed to strong vibrations
- Do not use DC adapter to charge battery when the car engine is not running. May cause car battery to run down.
- When using a power outlet with a feature to prevent the plug from being removed accidentally, follow instructions in the outlet user's guide.
- Do not subject to strong force or impacts. Also, do not disfigure the charger terminals or the terminal guides. May cause a malfunction.

## Notes About FOMA Card

- Avoid using in extremely high or low temperatures.
- Always keep IC area clean.
- FOMA card may become warm during use. This is not a malfunction.
- Customer is responsible for malfunctions arising from inserting FOMA card into a different IC card reader/writer.
- To protect the environment, please take any unnecessary FOMA cards to your local DoCoMo Shop or retailer.
- Keep a separate memo and note information stored in the FOMA card. DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss of data.
- Clean only with a soft and dry cloth (such as the type used for eyeglasses).
- Do not damage, touch haphazardly or short-circuit the IC. May cause data loss or malfunction.
- Do not drop or otherwise subject the FOMA card to severe impact. May cause a malfunction.
- Never bend or place heavy objects on the FOMA card. May cause a malfunction.
- Do not apply unnecessary force when removing the FOMA card.
- Do not apply unnecessary force when inserting card into the FOMA terminal.

## Notes About Cameras

- If the FOMA terminal is used in a manner, which creates a serious public nuisance, the owner may be subject to punishment under legal and/or regulatory guidelines (such as nuisance prevention ordinance).



**Please respect the privacy of others when using a camera-enabled mobile phone to shoot and send images.**

## FeliCa Reader/Writer

- The FeliCa reader/writer function in the FOMA terminal uses weak electric waves in the handling of which does not require a license of radio station.
- The frequency in use is the 13.56 MHz band. When another reader/writer is being used nearby, keep enough distance from it. Make sure that there is no radio station using the same frequency band in the nearby area.

## FM Transmitter

- The FM transmitter function in the FOMA terminal uses weak electric waves in the handling which does not require a license of radio station.
- The frequency in use is the 77.4 to 85.0 MHz band. Select the frequency other than that of an FM broadcasting station of your area. Not doing so may affect surrounding FM radio users.

# Intellectual Property

## Copyrights and Rights of Portrait

- Data with third party copyrights such as text, images, music and software that is downloaded or acquired via Internet web pages, shot by the FOMA terminal, or acquired from TV or other video cannot be duplicated, altered or publicly transmitted without rightful party's consent. Only duplicating, quoting, etc. for personal use is permitted under copyright laws. Even if for personal use, filming and recording may be prohibited for demonstrations, performances and exhibitions. Also, shooting another's image or posting another's image on Internet web pages without their consent may constitute a violation of one's right to their image.

## Registered Trademarks and Trademarks

- "FOMA", "mova", "ToruCa", "PushTalk", "PushTalkPlus", "mopera", "mopera U", "FirstPass", "Chara-den", "Deco-mail", "Chaku-motion", "i-motion mail", "i-appli", "i-appliDX", "i-motion", "i-mode", "i-Channel", "iD", "DCMX", "Short Mail", "WORLD WING", "Public mode", "DoPa", "WORLD CALL", "Dual Network", "visualnet", "V-live", "Security Scan", "musea", "sigmarion", "My DoCoMo", "OFFICEED", "IMCS", the "i-mode" logo, the "FOMA" logo, the "i-appli" logo, the "DCMX" logo, the "iD" logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of NTT DoCoMo, Inc.
- Toll-free number service name and toll-free number logo are trademarks of NTT Communications Corporation.
- **symbian** This product includes software licensed from Symbian Software Ltd. Symbian, Symbian OS and other associated Symbian marks are all trademarks of Symbian Software Ltd. ©1998-2007 Symbian Software Ltd. All rights reserved.
- キャッチホン (Call Waiting) is a registered trademark of Nippon Telegraph and Telephone Corporation.
- F e l i C a , which uses non-contact IC card technology, was created by Sony Corporation.
- F e l i C a is a registered trademark of Sony Corporation.
-  is a registered trademark of FeliCa Networks, Inc.
- This product is equipped with NetFront Browser, NetFront Sync Client and NetFront Browser DTV Profile Wireless Edition by ACCESS CO., Ltd. for an internet browser or other application software.
- This product adopts Media: specifications of ACCESS CO., Ltd. for activating broadcasting contents.  
Copyright © 1996-2007 ACCESS CO., LTD.

- This product includes modules developed by the Independent JPEG Group.
- ACCESS, NetFront and Media: are trademarks or registered trademarks of ACCESS CO., Ltd. in Japan and other countries.

**ACCESS™ NetFront®**

- Microsoft, Windows and PowerPoint are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S.A. and other countries. (The official name for Windows is Microsoft® Windows® operating system.)
- Microsoft Excel and Microsoft Word are product names of Microsoft Corporation in the U.S.A.
- Java and all Java-based trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the U.S.A. and other countries.
- QuickTime is a registered trademark of Apple Computer, Inc. in the U.S.A. and other countries.
- QR Code is a registered trademark of DENSO WAVE INCORPORATED.
- The microSD logo is a trademark.



- Powered by JBlend™ Copyright 2002-2006 Aplix Corporation. All rights reserved. JBlend and JBlend related trademarks are trademarks or registered trademarks of Aplix Corporation in Japan and other countries.



- **picseL**  Document Viewer is powered by PicseL Technologies. PicseL, PicseL Powered, PicseL Viewer, PicseL Document Viewer and the PicseL cube logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of PicseL Technologies and/or its affiliates.

- This handset features LCFONT, developed by Sharp Corporation, to make the LCD easier to view and read. LCフオント/LCFONT and  are registered trademarks of Sharp Corporation.
- "AQUOSケータイ", "サイクロイド" and "Cycloid" are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sharp Corporation.
- McAfee and VirusScan are registered trademarks or trademarks of McAfee, Inc. and/or its affiliates in the U.S.A. and other countries. All other registered and unregistered trademarks herein are the sole property of their respective owners.

© 2006 Networks Associates Technology, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

- Gガイド, G-GUIDE, Gガイドモバイル, G-GUIDE MOBILE and the G-GUIDE related logos are registered trademarks of Gemstar-TV Guide International, Inc. and/or its affiliates in Japan. 
- Multitask is a registered trademark of NEC Corporation.
- IrSimple™, IrSS™ or IrSimpleShot™ are trademarks of Infrared Data Association®.
- All other company names and product names are trademarks or registered trademarks of the respective companies.

## Others

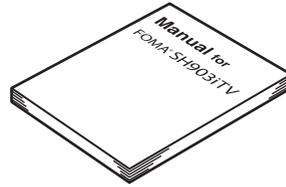
- Under the MPEG-4 Visual Patent Portfolio License, customers have licensed permission for the following use of this product to engage in non-profit personal use. Other uses are not permitted.
    - Encoding MPEG-4 standard video (henceforth referred to as MPEG-4 video).
    - Decoding an MPEG-4 video that a customer not engaged in personal commercial activities has encoded.
    - Decoding an MPEG-4 video obtained from a licensed provider.
- For details on other intended uses, contact MPEG LA, LLC.
- This product is licensed under the MPEG-4 Systems Patent Portfolio License for encoding in compliance with the MPEG-4 Systems Standard. An additional license and payment of royalties are necessary in the following cases.
    - Data stored or replicated in physical media which is paid for on a title by title basis.
    - Data which is paid for on a title by title basis and is transmitted to an end user for permanent storage and/or use.
- Such additional license may be obtained from MPEG LA, LLC. Contact MPEG LA, LLC for additional details.
- This product is licensed under the AVC patent portfolio license for the personal and noncommercial use of a consumer to
    - (i) encode video in compliance with the AVC standard (henceforth referred to as AVC video) and/or
    - (ii) decode AVC video that was encoded by a consumer engaged in a personal and noncommercial activity and/or was obtained from a video provider licensed to provide AVC video.No license is granted or shall be implied for any other use. Additional information may be obtained from MPEG LA, L.L.C.  
See [HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM](http://www.MPEGLA.COM)
- This product uses the Flash® Lite™ technology of Adobe Systems Incorporated. Flash Lite and Macromedia are trademarks or registered trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the U.S.A. and other countries.
- |           |           |           |
|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| 4,901,307 | 5,490,165 | 5,056,109 |
| 5,504,773 | 5,101,501 | 5,506,865 |
| 5,109,390 | 5,511,073 | 5,228,054 |
| 5,535,239 | 5,267,261 | 5,544,196 |
| 5,267,262 | 5,568,483 | 5,337,338 |
| 5,600,754 | 5,414,796 | 5,657,420 |
| 5,416,797 | 5,659,569 | 5,710,784 |
| 5,778,338 |           |           |
- Licensed by QUALCOMM Incorporated under one or more of the following United States Patents and/or their counterparts in other nations;
- This product uses Adobe® Reader® from Adobe Systems Inc.  
Copyright © 1984-2007 Adobe Systems Incorporated. All rights reserved.  
Adobe and Adobe Reader are trademarks or registered trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the U.S.A. and other countries.
- CP8 PATENT
  - Windows® 2000 Professional is an abbreviation of Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Professional operating system.
  - Windows® XP is an abbreviation of Microsoft® Windows® XP Professional operating system or Microsoft® Windows® XP Home Edition operating system.
  - This manual refers to Windows® 2000 Professional as Windows 2000.
  - This manual refers to Windows® XP Professional and Windows® XP Home Edition as Windows XP.

# Standard Parts Packaged with Unit and Main Optional Parts

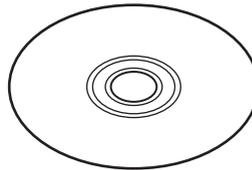
## Standard package



FOMA SH903iTV terminal  
(includes warranty and back cover SH14)

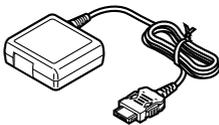


FOMA SH903iTV manual (this manual)  
Quick manual can be found on P. 476.

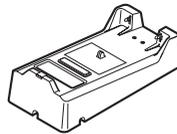


FOMA SH903iTV CD-ROM  
"Manual for Data Communication",  
"Kuten Code List"  
in the PDF format is contained.

## Main optional parts



FOMA AC Adapter 01  
(includes warranty and user's guide)



Desktop holder SH13  
(includes user's guide)



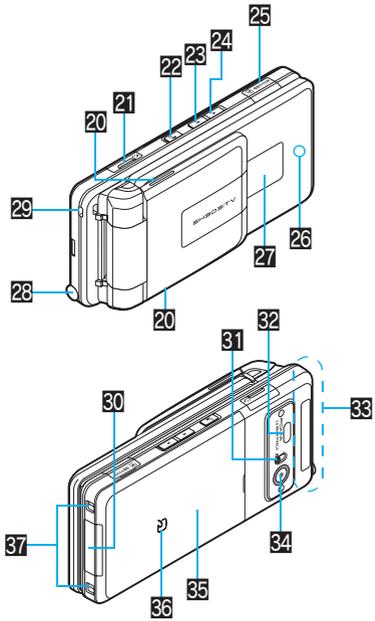
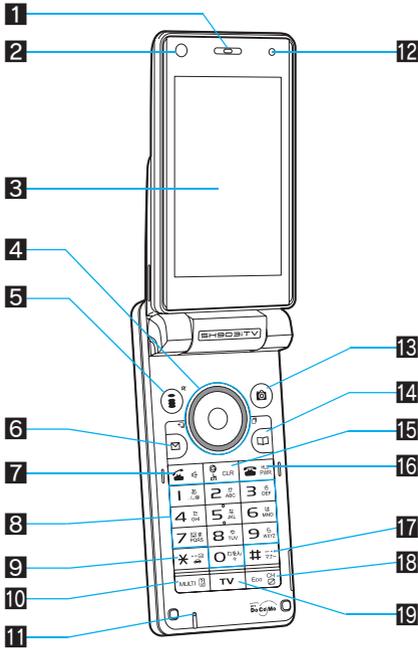
Battery pack SH11  
(includes user's guide)

- Refer to P. 437 for details on other optional parts.

# Before Using the FOMA Terminal

● Component Names and Functions .....	24
● Viewing the Display .....	28
● Menu Selections .....	32
● Displaying the Supportbook .....	<Supportbook>35
● Using a FOMA Card .....	<FOMA Card>36
● Inserting and Removing the Battery Pack .....	39
● Charging the Mobile Phone .....	40
● How to Check the Battery Level .....	<Battery Level>43
● Turning the Power On and Off .....	<Power ON/OFF>43
● Switching Display to English .....	<Select Language>44
● Making the Initial Settings .....	<Initial Settings>45
● Setting the Date and Time .....	<Date Settings>45
● Sending Your Own Phone Number to the Other Party .....	<Notify Caller ID>46
● Checking Your Phone Number .....	<Own Number>46

# Component Names and Functions



Key illustrations are examples and may look different from actual keys.

## The brightness sensor area

When Brightness of Power Saver (☞ P. 130, P. 132) is set to **Automatic**, the sensor detects the light of the surrounding area and automatically adjusts the display brightness and keypad backlight. Do not cover the sensor area (12) with a sticker. May interfere with the sensor.

### 1 Earpiece

- Emits the other party's voice.
- When in stand-by, listen to Record message/Voice memo using the earpiece.

### 2 Sub camera

Use to shoot own image (☞ P. 168) or to send video shot during a Videophone call (☞ P. 48) to the other party.

### 3 Main display (☞ P. 28)

### 4 Multi-guide key (four-way key ⤴ and OK key Ⓞ) (☞ P. 27)

- Press to display and select Top menu, Redial, Received calls, Shortcut menu, Active marker (☞ P. 365) as well as use these functions.
- In stand-by, press Ⓞ for 1+ seconds to set or cancel Multi easy lock (☞ P. 152). To disable, terminal security code is required.

- In stand-by, press Ⓞ for 1+ seconds to set or cancel IC card lock (☞ P. 270). To disable, terminal security code is required.

- In stand-by, press Ⓞ for 1+ seconds to adjust earpiece volume (☞ P. 119).

### 5 i-mode/Guidance key (☞) (☞)

- Press to make or receive a Videophone call (☞ P. 49, P. 63).
- Press to use i-mode (☞ P. 182).
- Press to execute the function displayed at the lower left of the display in guidance (☞ P. 27).
- In stand-by, press for 1+ seconds to display the i-αpli screen (☞ P. 248).

## 6 Mail/Guidance key

- Press to use mail functions ( P. 214).
- In stand-by, press for 1+ seconds to display a new mail message screen ( P. 214).
- Press to execute the function displayed at the lower left of the display in guidance ( P. 27).
- Press to switch between upper and lower case when entering text ( P. 411).
- Press for 1+ seconds in text input screen to display insert phrase screen ( P. 412).
- Press twice to check new messages ( P. 201, P. 225).

## 7 Start/Hands-free key

- Press to make or receive a voice call.
- Press for 1+ seconds during a voice call to turn Hands-free on and off ( P. 51).
- Press during a Videophone call to turn Hands-free on and off ( P. 80).
- Press during a PushTalk transmission to turn Hands-free on and off ( P. 86).

## 8 Dial/Text entry keys to ,

- Press to enter a phone number ( P. 49).
- Press to enter text ( P. 408).

## 9 \* /Line break/Public mode (Drive mode) key

- Press to enter an asterisk (\*), dakuten (´), handakuten (¨) or a line break ( P. 409).
- In stand-by, press for 1+ seconds to set or cancel Public mode (Drive mode) ( P. 68).

## 10 Multi/Supportbook key

- To activate Multi Assistant: Press while running an application to use the phonebook, mail or other useful functions ( P. 364).
- To view Supportbook: Press in stand-by to view Supportbook (preset) ( P. 35).
- To save a shortcut in the Shortcut menu: Press for 1+ seconds when  is on the screen to save a shortcut ( P. 380).

## 11 Microphone

Sends out your own voice.

## 12 Brightness sensor ( P. 130, P. 132)

The sensor detects the light of the surrounding area and automatically adjusts the display brightness and key backlight ON/OFF.

## 13 Camera/Guidance key

- Press to use Camera mode ( P. 166).
- Press to execute the function displayed at the lower right of the display in guidance ( P. 27).

- In stand-by, press for 1+ seconds to display Data box ( P. 296, P. 304, P. 311, P. 354).

## 14 Phonebook/Guidance key

- Press to use the phonebook ( P. 96).
- In stand-by, press for 1+ seconds to display the phonebook entry screen ( P. 98, P. 103).
- Press to execute the function displayed at the lower right of the display in guidance ( P. 27).
- Press to change the type of text to be entered ( P. 410).
- In text input screen, press for 1+ seconds to use Internet-related phrases ( P. 412).

## 15 i-Channel/Clear/i-appli stand-by key (CLR)

- Press to show the channel list ( P. 209).
- Use to delete phone numbers and text ( P. 410).
- Press to return to the previous menu or page.
- Press when i-appli stand-by is set and i-appli starts ( P. 257).

## 16 Power/End/On hold key

- Press for 2+ seconds to turn the power on or off ( P. 43).
- Press to end a call or i-mode, or to put calls on hold ( P. 67).
- Press to play or pause when animated GIF or Flash movie is set as the stand-by display. Press while setting i-motion to play or stop ( P. 126).

## 17 #/Manner mode/Camera mode key

- Press to enter a (#), prolonged sound (ー), touten (ゝ), kuten (ゝ), exclamation mark (!), question mark (?), or chuten (ゝ).
- In stand-by, press for 1+ seconds to set or disable Manner mode ( P. 123).
- Press to switch between the main camera and the sub camera while shooting images ( P. 168, P. 171).

## 18 Power saver (Eco)/Private filter/Channel key

- In stand-by, press to set to Power saver (Eco). When Power saver (Eco) is already set, the Power saver set screen appears ( P. 130).
- Press for 1+ seconds to enable or disable Private filter ( P. 142).
- Channels are switched in order while watching One Seg on Multi Window ( P. 276).

## 19 TV key

- Press to activate One Seg ( P. 275).
- In stand-by, press for 1+ seconds to display One Seg menu screen ( P. 274).
- When One Seg and another function are being used simultaneously with Multi Assistant, press to switch their displays ( P. 278).

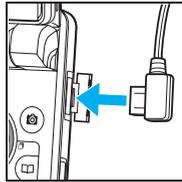
## 20 Speakers

- Emit ring tones and other sounds.
- Emit the other party's voice during hands-free voice/Videophone/PushTalk calls.

## 21 Earphone/Microphone terminal (P. 386)

Connect a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately).

When using an earphone plug adapter (sold separately), an earphone/microphone with switch can also be used.



## 22 PushTalk key (P)

- Press to use the PushTalk phonebook ( P. 89).
- Press to send PushTalk transmissions. Hold key to talk during PushTalk transmission ( P. 86).
- Press for 1+ seconds to enable/disable the side key operation ( P. 153).

## 23 Volume UP key

- Turn the earpiece volume up during PushTalk transmission with the FOMA terminal closed ( P. 67).
- Turn the volume up while watching One Seg ( P. 276).
- Press to show i-Channel ticker on the sub display with the FOMA terminal closed.
- Turn the volume up during music playback with the FOMA terminal closed. Press for 1+ seconds to play the previous song/to return to the beginning of song ( P. 355, P. 359).

## 24 Volume DOWN key

- Turn the earpiece volume down during PushTalk transmission with the FOMA terminal closed ( P. 67).
- Turn the volume down while watching One Seg ( P. 276).
- Turn the volume down during music playback with the FOMA terminal closed. Press for 1+ seconds to play the next song ( P. 355, P. 359).

## 25 microSD Memory Card slot (P. 318)

Insert a microSD Memory Card.

## 26 Called LED/Charging LED/Camera LED

- Flashes when there is an incoming call ( P. 138).
- Stays lit while charging ( P. 40).
- Lights when the camera is activated or during shooting ( P. 166, P. 167, P. 169).

## 27 Sub display

## 28 TV antenna

Receive One Seg and use the FM transmitter function.

## 29 Strap ring

Attach a commercially available strap with the FOMA terminal closed.

## 30 External connector terminal

Terminal for connecting external devices, such as an AC adapter, a DC adapter ( P. 41), or a FOMA USB cable (sold separately).

## 31 Closeup lever

Switches between the closeup mode and the normal mode.

## 32 Infrared port

Use for the Ir exchange and Ir remote control.

## 33 FOMA antenna

An antenna is built in.

## 34 Main camera

Use to shoot an image of your surroundings ( P. 162) or send a video of your surroundings shot during a Videophone call ( P. 48) to the other party.

## 35 Back cover (P. 39)

## 36 FeliCa mark (P. 263)

The IC card is included (The IC card cannot be removed).

Use Osaiifu-Keitai holding the FeliCa mark up to the reader/writer (external device).

## 37 Charger terminal

Terminal for recharging with the desktop holder.

## How to Open the FOMA Terminal

To use the FOMA terminal, open it (normal position) or use it in Cycloid position.

- When carrying, keeping the FOMA terminal closed as shown in the diagram for step 1 is recommended.

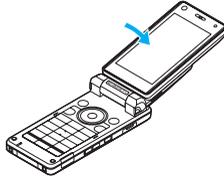
### Normal position

1



Open carefully with both hands.

2



Push the display back as far as it will go.

### Cycloid position

In screens such as stand-by, set to Cycloid position to automatically activate One Seg.

1



Open carefully with both hands.

2



Open the display until it stops.

3



Rotate the display 90° to the right.

4



#### Note

- When rotating the FOMA terminal display, do not rotate in the opposite direction or further than 90°.
- When talking in the Cycloid position, use a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately) or use **Hands-free**. When using the earpiece to talk, make sure to switch to the normal position.

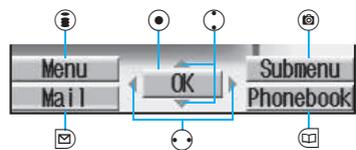
## How to Use the Multi-guide Key and Guidance Key

### Multi-guide key

Use the Multi-guide key (four-way key  and OK key ) to select and set menus that are shown. Move the cursor with  and set the selection using .

### Guidance keys

Use keys allotted to operate menu items of operation guidance that appear in the lower part of the display (Allotted functions differ depending on the situation).

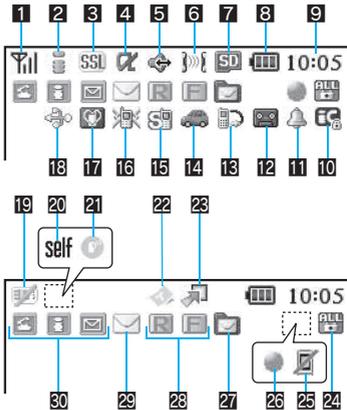


# Viewing the Display

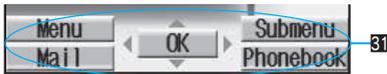
The display allows you to check the current status after the power is turned on or while setting up functions (The main display is described first and the sub display next).

The display lights for a set period of time when a key is pressed. The default setting is 10 seconds (☞ P. 130).

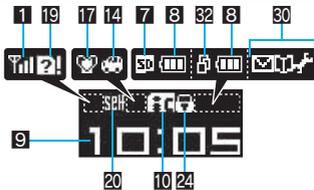
## Icons that appear in the upper part of the display



## Icons that appear in the lower part of the display



## Icons that appear in the sub display



### 1 Signal status

	Indication of the signal strength Strong ←→ Weak
--	---

- When (Out of service area) appears, the handset is outside the service area or in a place with no signal. Signal icon can be changed (☞ P. 133).

### 2 i-mode/Full Browser (☞ P. 182, P. 289)

	Indicates i-mode or Full Browser status
--	---

### 3 SSL (☞ P. 183)

	SSL compatible sites are viewed SSL compatible Internet web pages are viewed
--	---

- When appears while using Multi Assistant, function such as i-mode, Full Browser, i-appli or Software update is being used with Multi Assistant.

### 4 i-appli (☞ P. 248)

	i-appli is running i-appli stand-by is running
	i-appli stand-by is set*
	i-appliDX is being activated i-appliDX stand-by is being activated
	i-appliDX stand-by is set*

\* Indicates that an i-appli is set as the stand-by display, but cannot be used.

### 5 Hands-free (☞ P. 51, P. 79)

	Hands-free active call
	Connected to Hands-free compatible device

- When the Hands-free icon appears, the ToruCa icon does not appear even if there is unread ToruCa.

### 6 Ir exchange/External device

	Data is communicated with another device using the Ir exchange function (☞ P. 332) Data is sent using the Ir remote control (☞ P. 336)
	Connected to an external device and transmitting packets
	Connected to an external device and sending/receiving packet data
	Connected to an external device and transmitting 64K data

### 7 microSD Memory Card (☞ P. 318)

	microSD Memory Card is inserted
	Data on microSD Memory Card is being viewed

**8 Battery level/Charging** (📞 P. 43)

	Battery level
	Charging

- Signal icon can be changed (📞 P. 133).

**9 Clock display** (📞 P. 45)

Indicates the time that is set.

**10 IC card lock** (📞 P. 270)

	IC card is locked
--	-------------------

**11 Alarm (Alarm/Schedule/ToDo list/Reception/Recording)** (📞 P. 281, P. 369, P. 373, P. 378)

	Schedule alarm is set* ToDo alarm is set* Alarm is set Reception reserve alarm is set* Recording reserve alarm is set*
--	--

\* Appears only when an Alarm is set for that day.

**12 Record message** (📞 P. 71)

	Record message is set
--	-----------------------

- When there are messages, to appears, indicating the total number of both types of messages. When there are three Record messages (voice calls) and two Record messages (Videophone), appears.

**13 Earphone/microphone connection** (📞 P. 386)

	A flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately) is connected (when Auto answer for voice/Videophone calls is set) Auto answer for PushTalk is set
--	--

- Appears when Auto answer for PushTalk is set even if earphone/microphone with switch is not connected.

**14 Public mode (Drive mode)** (📞 P. 68)

	Public mode (Drive mode) is set
--	---------------------------------

**15 Silent** (📞 P. 118)

	The phone ring volume <i>Silent</i> is set
--	--

**16 Vibrator** (📞 P. 121)

	Vibration mode is set
--	-----------------------

**17 Manner mode** (📞 P. 123)

	Manner mode is set
--	--------------------

**18 USB mode** (📞 P. 326)

	FOMA USB cable (sold separately) is connected
--	---

**19 FOMA card error**

	Appears when FOMA card is malfunctioning or not inserted
	Appears when a card other than the FOMA card is inserted

**20 Self mode** (📞 P. 150)

	Self mode is set
--	------------------

- Appears when the handset cannot make/receive calls or PushTalk, send/receive i-mode mail or SMS, use i-mode functions or use Ir exchange.

**21 PushTalk** (📞 P. 85)

	During PushTalk transmission
--	------------------------------

**22 ToruCa** (📞 P. 266)

	Unread ToruCa
--	---------------

**23 Shortcut menu** (📞 P. 380)

	Appears when the function can be added to the Shortcut menu
--	---

**24 Restriction indicator** (📞 P. 148, P. 154)

	Secret mode
	Secret data is being edited
	Keypad dial lock
	All locked
	Function lock is set
	Keypad dial lock and Function lock are set
	Secret mode and Function lock or Keypad dial lock are set
	Key guard is set

**25 Private filter** (📞 P. 142)

	Private filter is set
--	-----------------------

**26 One Seg being recorded** (📞 P. 280, P. 284)

	One Seg is being recorded
--	---------------------------

- When the icon indicating that One Seg is being recorded appears, the Private filter icon does not appear even if it is set to *ON*.

**27 Storage status of i-mode center** (📞 P. 223)

	Mail being held at the center
	Mail being held at the center full

### 28 Message R/F icon (📧 P. 200)

	(green)		(green)	Indicates the reception status of the Message R/F
	(yellow)		(yellow)	
				Indicates the storage status of the Message R/F

- The status may not always be indicated even if messages are held at center.

### 29 i-mode mail/SMS received (📧 P. 223)

	(green)	Indicates the status of the i-mode mail/SMS reception
	(red)	
		Indicates the status of the memory to store received mail
	(red font)	
	(blue font)	

### 30 Multitask (📧 P. 364)

Indicates functions that are running.

- When two or more functions are running, icons also appear on the sub display.

	Four or more applications are running		Phonebook
	Videophone		Camera (still picture)
	Voice call		Camera (movie)
	PushTalk/ PushTalk phonebook		Camera (OCR)
	Modem transmission (appears during data transmission)		Bar code reader
		Voice recorder	
		Schedule	
		ToDo	
		Text memo	
	Calculator		BookReader
	Software update		ToruCa
	Receive Ir data		Alarm
	i-appli		Timer
	i-mode		microSD manager
	Full Browser		General settings
	i-Channel		Record message/Voice memo
	Mail/SMS/ Check new message		Show redial
	Mail/SMS being composed		

	One Seg		Document Viewer
	Message R/F		Received calls
	SD-Audio		Own number
	Data box		

### 31 Operation guidance

Indicates the functions that can be used with keys such as , , , , and .

### 32 In operating

When the FOMA terminal is closed with displays other than the stand-by display shown on the main display, may appear on the sub display. When the stand-by display is shown on the main display, the icon disappears.

	Other than the stand-by display are shown on the main display
--	---

### Other icons

Refer to respective pages for information on icons for the functions shown below.

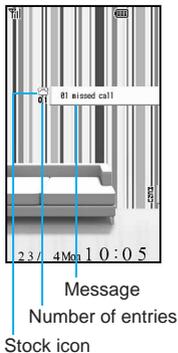
- Videophone (📧 P. 48)
- Redial/Received calls (📧 P. 53 to P. 55)
- Phonebook (📧 P. 97 to P. 99)
- Camera mode (📧 P. 164 to P. 166)
- Message R/F (📧 P. 200 to P. 202)
- Mail/SMS (📧 P. 229 to P. 231)
- Received/Sent message list/details screen (📧 P. 235)
- ToruCa (📧 P. 266)
- My picture of Data box (📧 P. 297 to P. 298)
- i-motion of Data box (📧 P. 307 to P. 308)
- Melody of Data box (📧 P. 317)
- One Seg (📧 P. 276)

### Note

- microSD Memory Card is referred to as **microSD** or **SD** on the FOMA terminal (📧 P. 318).
- Some of the screen shots in this manual have been modified or abbreviated.
- The display for the FOMA terminal is manufactured using high-precision technology, but it may occasionally contain dots that fail to light or that remain permanently lit. This is not a malfunction.
- The display time of the sub display follows the **Display light time**.

## Checking Notices with Stock Icon

Display messages such as **xx missed call(s)** or **xx mail message(s)** and stock icons when you miss a call or have a new mail. In stand-by, select stock icons to check notice details.



### Stock icon

Icon	Message	Details
	xx missed call(s)	Appears when an incoming call is missed. Received calls list appears ( P. 71).
	xx mail message(s)	Appears when a new i-mode mail or SMS is received. Inbox folder list appears ( P. 223).
	xx new ToruCa(s)	Appears when new ToruCa is received. ToruCa list appears ( P. 266).
	xx voice mail(s)	Appears when a new message is recorded at the Voice Mail Service center. The Voice Mail Service message confirmation screen appears ( P. 393).
	xx message(s) xx V.phone message(s)	Appears when there is a new Recorded message. Record message list appears and the message can be played ( P. 74).
	Top menu	Top menu appears ( P. 33).

## 1 When a stock icon appears in stand-by, press



- When Zoom menu is selected, the displayed stock icon messages are partly changed.
- Stock icons do not appear when playing i-motion set to stand-by or running i-appli in stand-by.

## 2 Select a stock icon with and press .

- Check notice details.
- After the details are checked, the stock icon and message disappear.

## Switching Between Displays

When Calendar is set, press in stand-by to switch between the stand-by and the calendar ( P. 126).



- When the calendar is set to **1 month (Large)**, icons appear to the right of dates with schedule entries.

# Menu Selections

## Functions are set or registered after a menu appears.

- Menus can be displayed using the following methods.
  - Retrieve a function by entering a function number (☎ P. 32).
  - Select a function starting from the Top menu (☎ P. 33).
  - Select a function from the Shortcut menu (☎ P. 380).
  - Select a frequently used function displayed in large font (Zoom menu) (☎ P. 34).
  - Select a function from the Submenu shown in guidance (☎ P. 35).
- **This manual explains how to select menus based on the entry of function numbers.**
- In the Top menu, the Shortcut menu, or the Zoom menu, press [MENU] to switch menus. To show the menu previously used, press [MENU] in stand-by.
- If [MENU] and any of [SMS], [MAIL], [CONTACT], [ADDRESS], or [PHONE] appear in stand-by, press [MENU], select [MENU] with [DOWN] and press [ENTER].
- To reselect a function, press [CLR] and the previous screen reappears.

## Retrieving a Function by Entering a Function Number

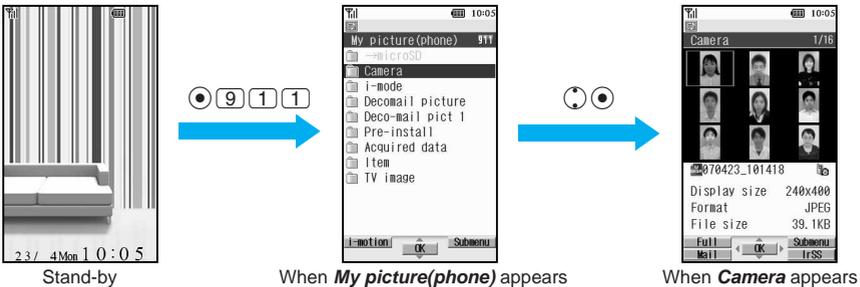
Functions can be retrieved quickly by entering a function number.

The first numbers in the function numbers are 1 through 8 for the setting menus, 91 for the Data box menu, 92 for the LifeKit and 93 for the Media tool menu.

- Functions cannot be retrieved by entering function numbers from the Shortcut menu or the Zoom menu.

In stand-by, press [MENU] and enter function numbers. Select a function using [DOWN] and press [ENTER].

**Example: When retrieving *My picture(phone)* using function number 911 to view the still pictures in *Camera***



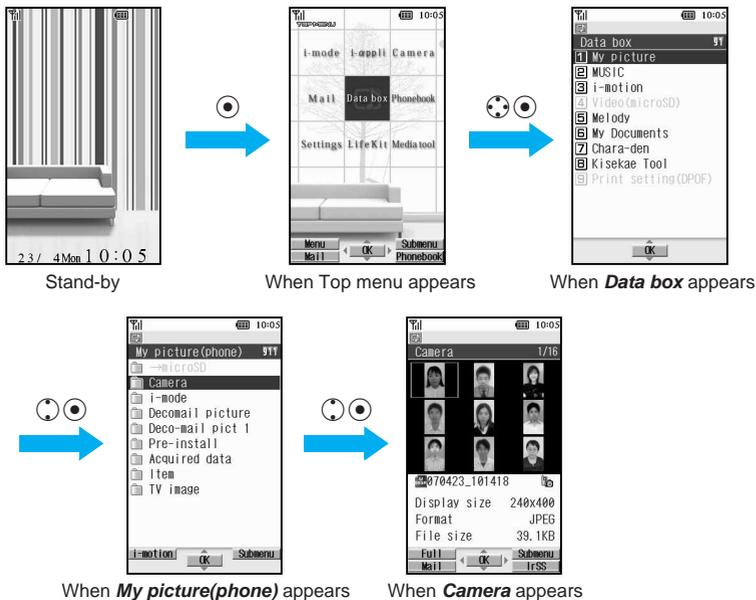
## Selecting Functions from the Top Menu

Use or set up functions from menu categorized under nine icons.

- Refer to P. 418 to P. 425 when selecting menu and retrieving functions.
- Icons can be changed (Icon image settings  P. 134).

In stand-by, press , select a menu or an icon using  and press . Select a function using  and press .

**Example: When retrieving *My picture(phone)* from the Top menu to view the still pictures in *Camera***



### Note

- Images on Top menu, i-mode menu or Mail menu screen can be changed ( P. 134, P. 136).

## Selecting a Function from the Zoom Menu <Zoom Menu>

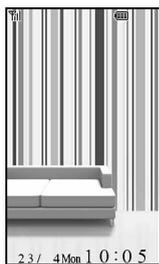
The Zoom menu displays frequently used functions enlarged. Use the Zoom menu to perform basic functions using an enlarged character display.

At the time of purchase, press **[Home]** in stand-by and press **[Menu]** twice to show the Zoom menu. Select a function using **[Left]** and press **[Enter]**.

Menu	Function	Screen	Page
Phone	View phonebook	Search phonebook	P. 107
	Redial	Display one item	P. 53
	Received calls	Display one item	P. 54
	Record message	Record/Play/Function lock selection screen	P. 74
	Add phonebook	Phonebook entry screen	P. 102
	Own phone No	Own number screen	P. 46
Mail	Compose msg	Compose message screen	P. 214
	Receive msg	Check new messages	P. 225
	All rcvd msg	Inbox	P. 229
	All sent msg	Outbox	to
	All unsent msg	Unsent messages	P. 231
i-mode	i Menu	iMenu	P. 182
	All bookmarks	Bookmark list	P. 189
	Screen memos	Screen memo list	P. 191
	Last URL	Last URL screen	P. 183
Camera func	Shoot picture	Still picture shooting screen	P. 167
	View picture	My picture (phone) folder list of Data box	P. 296
	Shoot movie	Movie shooting screen	P. 169
	View movie	i-motion (phone) folder list of Data box	P. 304
	Barcode reader	Bar code reader	P. 176

Menu	Function	Screen	Page
Settings	Ring tone	Ring volume/Ring tone/Mail ring volume/Mail ring tone selection screen	P. 116 P. 118
		Stand-by disp	Stand-by display setting screen
	Talk time/cost	Talk time/cost confirmation screen	P. 384
	Voice Mail	Voice Mail settings screen	P. 392
Useful func	VoiceRec	Voice recorder	P. 338
	Schedule	Calendar	P. 371
	Calculator	Calculator	P. 383
	BookReader	BookReader folder list	P. 346
	Alarm	Alarm setting screen	P. 369
	Text memo	Text memo list	P. 385

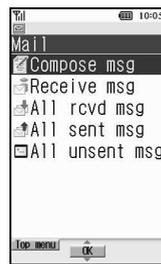
- When Zoom menu is selected, press **[Home]**, **[Menu]** and **[Left]** in stand-by to show i-mode menu, Mail menu and Search phonebook in Zoom menu.



Stand-by



Zoom menu



When **Mail** is selected

- When **Top menu** appears in the operation guidance, press **[Home]** to show Top menu.
- Press **[Support]** in Zoom menu to show Supportbook.

## Selecting Functions from the Submenu

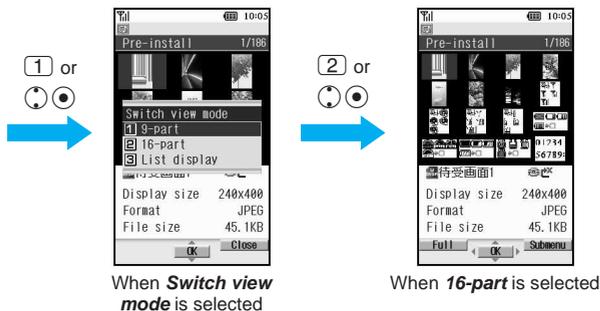
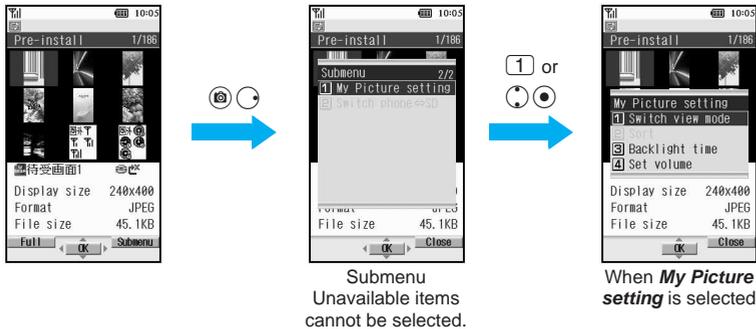
When **Submenu** appears in the operation guidance, press **Ⓜ** to show the functions (Submenu) that can be used in that screen.

Scroll through multiple pages in the Submenu with **⏪**.

**This manual explains how to select Submenus based on the entry of function numbers.**

However, some Submenus do not have function numbers. In such cases, select the function using **⏪** and press **Ⓜ**.

**Example: When switching the image list to 16-part**



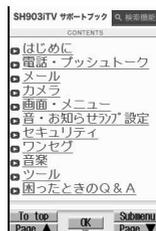
## Supportbook

### Displaying the Supportbook

Supportbook (preset) is a simple operation guide on the FOMA terminal that uses BookReader. Use this function when unsure of operations (📖 P. 346).

For example, when composing a message with Multi Assistant, press **[MULTI]** to use Supportbook (preset) (📖 P. 346).

- Useful tips and functions are explained to allow for rapid comprehension.
- Directly start functions that were looked up in Supportbook.

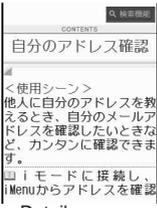


**Example: When checking own address**

**1** In stand-by, press **[MULTI]**, select **メール (Mail)** and press **Ⓜ**.

- Alternatively, press **Ⓜ** [Support] in the Zoom menu to show Supportbook.

## 2 Select 自分のアドレス確認 (Check your own address) and press



Details screen

- A description appears below the title.

### Related Operations

#### Start functions from Supportbook

In the Supportbook details screen, select the function to start Yes .

#### Note

- Functions cannot be started from Supportbook when functions other than Supportbook are used simultaneously.

### FOMA Card

## Using a FOMA Card

A FOMA card is an IC card that records personal information, such as phone numbers. A FOMA card can store phonebook data and SMS. By switching FOMA cards, multiple FOMA terminals can be used for different purposes as needed.

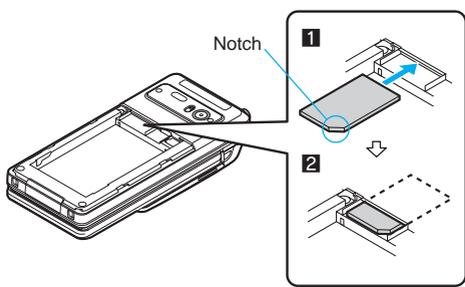
- If a FOMA card is not inserted, voice/Videophone calls, PushTalk transmission, i-mode, i-Channel, i-mode mail and SMS transmission, Message R/F reception and data transmission are not available on the FOMA terminal. In addition, One Seg cannot be watched.

### Inserting and Removing a FOMA Card

Refer to step 1 of "Turning the Power Off" on P. 44 to turn off the power, position the back facing upwards and remove the battery pack. Then insert or remove the FOMA card.

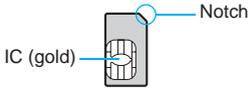
#### Inserting

Close and hold the FOMA terminal with your both hands when inserting the FOMA card.



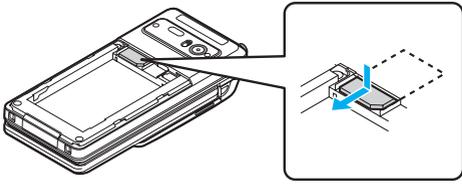
**1** Hold the FOMA card with the IC facing down and insert the FOMA card as shown on the left **(1)**.

- Push the FOMA card all the way in **(2)**.



## Removing

Close and hold the FOMA terminal with your both hands when removing the FOMA card.



### 1 Push the top of the FOMA card and pull it out straight as shown on the left.

- Do not allow the FOMA card to fall when removing it.

#### Note

- Inserting or removing the FOMA card forcibly may damage the card. Use caution.
- Refer to the FOMA card user's guide for more information on the FOMA card.
- If the FOMA card is inserted into another i-Channel supported terminal, **i-Channel tickers** do not appear. The i-Channel tickers are automatically shown when the latest information is received or the channel list is shown.
- Do not misplace the FOMA card once it is taken out.
- The FOMA terminal power may turn off if the IC area of the FOMA card is dirty.

## FOMA Card Security Codes

The FOMA card has a **PIN1 code** and a **PIN2 code**.

Both are set to **0000** by default but can be changed to a four- to eight-digit number by the user (☎ P. 147).

## FOMA Card Restriction Functions <FOMA Card Restriction Functions>

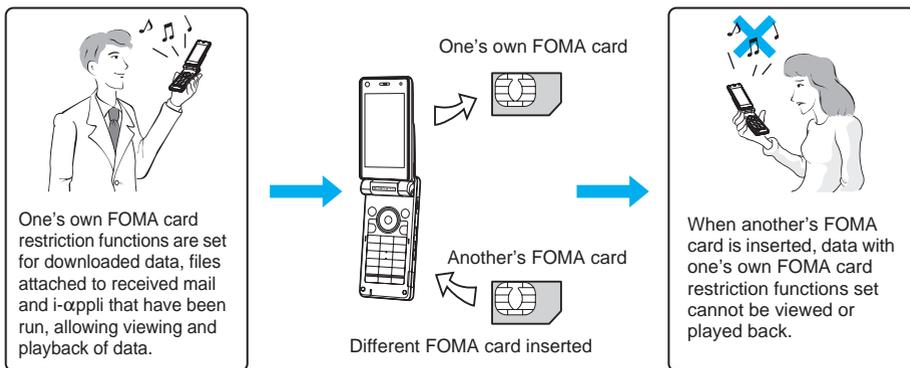
The FOMA card has built-in restriction functions as security functions for protecting personal data and files.

- When the FOMA card is inserted into the FOMA terminal and data or files are retrieved using any of the following methods or when an i-αpli is running, FOMA card restriction functions are automatically set in the retrieved data or files.
  - When a file such as an image, melody or PDF is downloaded from a site or Internet web page
  - When a site or Internet web page is saved as a screen memo
  - When i-mode mail with a file attached is received
  - When an i-αpli is running
- Data, files or software with FOMA card restriction functions run only when in use with the FOMA card inserted at time of acquisition. Display, play, attach to i-mode mail, run software, send data using Ir function or iC transmission function and copy to microSD Memory Card can be executed.
- The following indicates the data for which FOMA card restriction is set.

■ Image in Deco-mail	■ Image in Message R/F	■ Kisekae Tool
■ File attached to i-mode mail	■ Chara-den	■ i-αpli
■ Image or melody	■ Videophone picture memo	■ Download dictionary
■ File attached to Message R/F	■ Screen memo	■ i-motion
- The following indicates the settings saved in FOMA card.

■ Own number	■ PIN setting	■ SMS expiry
■ SMS center	■ Language	■ SSL certificates
- The above operations cannot be performed if the FOMA card inserted at time of data/file retrieval or i-αpli startup is replaced with a different FOMA card.

Explanation that follows refers to the FOMA card inserted at time of data/files retrieval as "one's own FOMA card" and other FOMA cards as "another's FOMA card".



## Note

- When one's own FOMA card is replaced with another's FOMA card, the data or files for which FOMA card restriction functions are set cannot be set as stand-by displays or ring tones.
- When a FOMA card is replaced with a different FOMA card, FOMA card restriction functions are activated and if data or file retrieved from a site is set as the stand-by display or ring tone, the setting is reset to the default. When one's own FOMA card is re-inserted, the setting returns.  
**Example: When setting *Melody A*, for which FOMA card restriction functions are set, as a ring tone**  
 When one's own FOMA card is taken out or is replaced with another's FOMA card, ring tone returns to default setting. When one's own FOMA card is put back, the ring tone returns to ***Melody A***.
- FOMA card restrictions functions cannot be set for data received using **lr exchange** or data transmission functions, and still pictures, Continuous mode images, or movies shot with the FOMA terminal.
- It is possible to move or delete data or files for which FOMA card restriction functions are set even when another's FOMA card is inserted.
- Running **i-appli** by selecting highlighted text in i-mode mail display screen cannot be performed or retrieved when FOMA card restriction functions are set.
- If the FOMA card is replaced with another's after **i-appli stand-by** is set, the set i-appli cannot be activated in stand-by, and the image set in **Main display** appears.

## Differences in FOMA Card Functions

Note the following differences between FOMA card (blue) and FOMA card (green/white) used on the FOMA terminal.

Function	FOMA card (blue)	FOMA card (green/white)	Page
Number of phone number digits available in the FOMA card phonebook	Up to 20 digits	Up to 26 digits	P. 103
Client certificate operations for FirstPass	Not available	Available	P. 203
Use of WORLD WING	Not available	Available	P. 38
Service number	Not available	Available	P. 399

## About WORLD WING

WORLD WING is a DoCoMo FOMA international roaming service that makes it possible to use the mobile phone number registered in Japan to make and receive calls while abroad by inserting the FOMA card (green/white) in a supported FOMA terminal or local mobile phone (W-CDMA or GSM format).

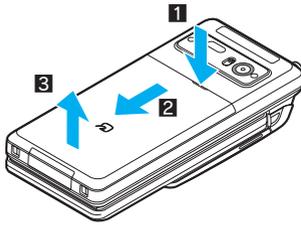
- If subscribed to the FOMA service after September 1, 2005, subscription for "WORLD WING" is not required. However, if subscription for "WORLD WING" is canceled at or after subscription for the FOMA service, subscription for "WORLD WING" is required again.
- If subscribed to the FOMA service before August 31, 2005 but not subscribed to "WORLD WING", subscription for "WORLD WING" is required.
- Some payment plans are not available.
- When the FOMA card (green/white) is lost or stolen overseas, promptly contact NTT DoCoMo and conduct a procedure for canceling the use of service. Refer to "General Inquiries" on the back of this manual for inquiries. Note that transmission/calling charges after the FOMA card is lost or stolen are incurred to the subscriber.

# Inserting and Removing the Battery Pack

Use the battery pack SH11 exclusive to the FOMA terminal.

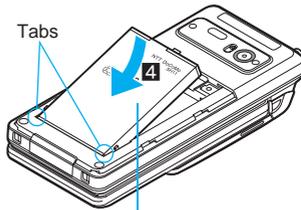
## Inserting the battery pack

Close and hold the FOMA terminal in your both hands before removing.



**1** Lightly press back cover in the direction of the arrow (1) and slide approximately two mm (2).

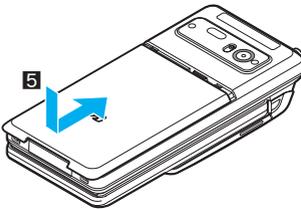
**2** Lift the back cover in the direction of the arrow (3) and remove it.



**3** Insert the battery pack (4).

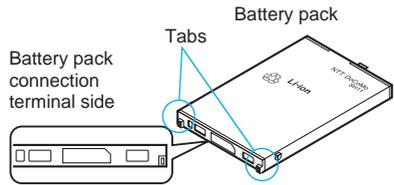
- The battery pack has tabs that make it easy to insert. Insert the battery pack with character side as the product name (SH11) facing up.

Character side as the product name, SH11 facing up



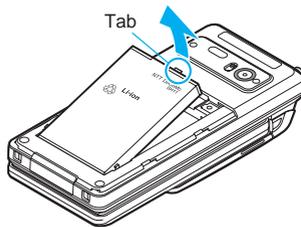
**4** Reattach the back cover (5).

- Position the handset and the back cover as shown in the illustration and then press the back cover and slide into place.



## Removing the battery pack

Turn the power off, close and hold the FOMA terminal in your both hands before removing.



**1** Follow steps 1 and 2 of “Inserting the battery pack” on P. 39 to remove the back cover.

**2** Remove the battery pack.

- The battery pack has a tab that makes it easy to remove. Press the tab with your fingers without placing too much force. Lift the battery pack to remove.

### Note

- Using unnecessary force when inserting or removing the battery pack may damage the battery pack and connection terminal (charger terminal) on the FOMA terminal.
- Refer to the battery pack SH11 user's guide for details.
- Firmly close the back cover. If not closed firmly, the back cover may come off and the battery pack may fall out due to vibration.
- If the battery pack connection terminal side or FOMA terminal battery pack (charger terminal) is dirty, the FOMA terminal power may turn off. Additionally, the battery may not be sufficiently recharged. Wipe off any dirt with a dry cloth or cotton swab.
- When using the battery pack for the first time or after replacing it, battery pack must be charged. Battery pack is not fully charged at the time of purchase.

# Charging the Mobile Phone

## Cautions When Charging

The battery pack is not fully charged at the time of purchase. Be sure to charge the battery using the exclusive AC or DC adapter (sold separately) before use.

### Estimated charge times and LED display

The following figures are estimated times for charging an empty battery pack with the FOMA terminal turned off.

Charger name	Charge time
FOMA AC Adapter 01	140 minutes
FOMA DC Adapter 01	140 minutes

- Charging LED illuminates in red when charging and turns off when charging is completed.
- Check that the battery pack has been properly inserted when charging LED flashes red. The LED also flashes red when the battery pack has reached the end of its service life.
- The battery pack can also be charged with the FOMA terminal turned on (The  on the display flashes during charging).  
When charging is complete, charging LED turns off and the  on the display changes to .
- When the battery becomes warm, charging may automatically stop even if the battery has not been fully charged. Charging resumes after the temperature lowers to an appropriate temperature. While charging is stopped, charging LED turns off (The  on the display flashes while stopped).

### Estimated times of use when fully charged

Criteria	Battery pack SH11
Continuous stand-by time	580 hours (at rest)/440 hours (when mobile)
Continuous talk (transmission) time	200 minutes (voice call)/130 minutes (Videophone call)
Time for watching One Seg	320 minutes

- Continuous talk time is estimated as the usage time at normal transmission signal strength, and continuous stand-by time is estimated as the usage time while moving with the FOMA terminal closed at normal signal strength. Talk and stand-by times may be reduced by about half depending on conditions including battery level status, stand-by display, Power saver mode, Missed call notice and New unread mail notice settings, temperature and other environmental conditions, and signal strength (no signal or weak signal). Using i-mode reduces talk (transmission) and stand-by times. When i-Channel is subscribed, information is automatically received and updated. Talk (transmission) time and stand-by time will be reduced. In addition, when shooting or editing an image, watching One Seg, composing i-mode mail, activating the downloaded i-appli or the i-appli stand-by, or using FM transmitter output, SD-Audio or Music player, the call (transmission)/stand-by duration will be shorter even if calls or i-mode transmission are not made. Some i-appli software may continue transmission even after downloading. To avoid this, set not to connect in advance.
- The actual usage time is a combination of stand-by time and talk time, and the longer the call duration, the shorter the stand-by time becomes.
- Time for watching One Seg depends on conditions including battery level status, functions used, temperature and other environmental conditions.

### Battery pack service life

- Battery pack is a consumable. Service time per charge is gradually reduced every time the battery is charged.
- When service time per charge is reduced to about half of the default time, this means that the battery pack is approaching the end of its service life. In such a case, it is recommended to replace the battery pack as soon as possible. Depending on usage, the battery pack may swell as it approaches the end of its service life but this will not cause problems.

The estimated service life of a battery pack is about one year. However, the service life of the battery pack may become shorter than estimated when the battery pack is charged and discharged repeatedly in a short cycle, charged in a location where the battery pack is subject to high temperatures or left charged for a long time.

- To protect the environment, return used batteries to NTT DoCoMo, any DoCoMo retailer, or a recycling agency.



### Cautions when charging

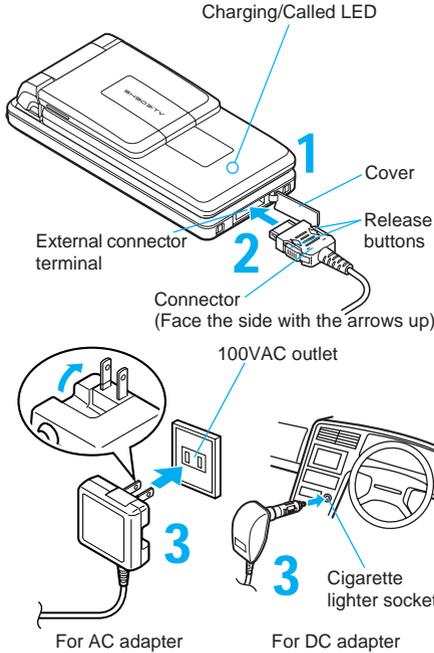
- Do not charge for long periods of time with the power left on. If the FOMA terminal is left on after charging is complete, the battery pack charge decreases.  
In such cases, the AC or DC adapter charges the battery again. However, depending on when the FOMA terminal is disconnected from the AC or DC adapter, the battery charge level may be low, the battery alert tone may sound, or the battery may only be usable for a short time.
- When the battery is empty and terminal is recharging, charging LED may not illuminate immediately.
- If the alert tone sounds and the power cannot be turned on, charge the battery for a while.
- If the battery empty alert is displayed and charging begins within 60 seconds of the alert tone, the status returns to normal.

- While charging, terminal may not be turned even when charging LED is illuminated in red. Charge longer and try turning power on again.
- Frequently recharging the battery when power is still remaining enough may shorten the life of the battery pack. It is recommended to use the battery to a certain level before recharging.
- The battery pack cannot be charged by itself.
- Avoid watching One Seg or using features such as i-appli for a long time while charging as this may lessen the battery's service life.

## Charging Using the AC Adapter/DC Adapter

[Read "FOMA AC adapter 01 (sold separately)/FOMA DC adapter 01 (sold separately) user's guide" carefully.]

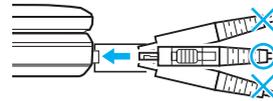
- Battery pack can be charged with FOMA terminal open and in Cycloid position.



**1** Open the external connector terminal cover.

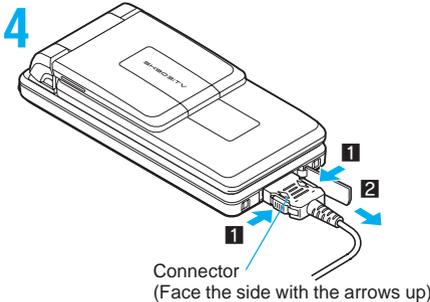
**2** Check the direction (see diagram) of the AC or DC adapter connector and insert horizontally into the external connector terminal.

- Check the direction of the connector, keep it parallel with the FOMA terminal and firmly push all the way in until it clicks.



**3** For an AC adapter, lift the plug and insert into a 100VAC outlet. For a DC adapter, plug into a car cigarette lighter socket.

- Charge start sound is heard and charging LED illuminates in red. When a call is received while charging, the call is notified with set called LED color.



**4** When Charge end sound is heard and charging LED turns off, charging is complete.

- When removing the connector, always hold the release buttons on both sides (1) and unplug it by pulling out horizontally (2). Pull by force may cause a malfunction. After removing the connector, close the external connector terminal cover.
- Pull the adapter out of the outlet or cigarette lighter socket if it will not be used for a long time.

### Note

- Check the direction and angle (see diagram) of connector, such as an AC adapter, and connect carefully without using unnecessary force. Do not forcibly insert or remove. May cause damage to the external connector terminal.
- Do not forcefully pull the rubber covers on the external connector terminal. May damage the cover.
- Do not place objects near the FOMA terminal when charging. The FOMA terminal may be damaged.

## Note

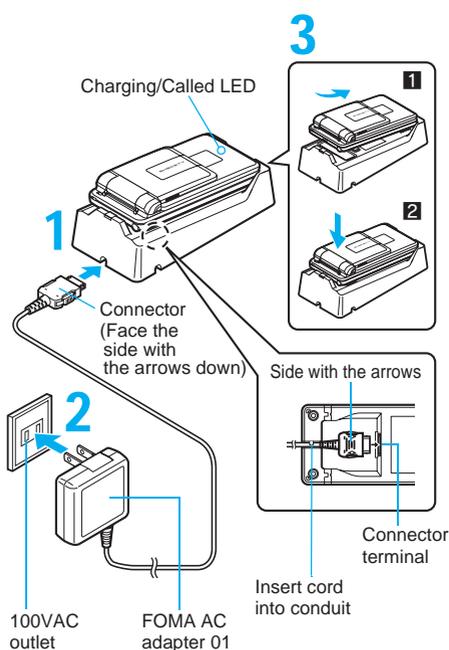
### When using a DC adapter

- Do not use with the car engine shut off. May drain the car battery.
- The DC adapter and in-car adapter should only be used in negative grounded vehicles (12 and 24VDC).
- The DC adapter power is interlocked with the car ignition switch, but the interlock may not work with some vehicles. Make sure that the power is turned off before leaving the car.
- Note that even if the FOMA terminal is turned on, turning off the ignition or pulling the DC adapter out of the cigarette lighter socket will turn the FOMA off. To make a call or stay in stand-by, first disconnect the connector from the FOMA terminal.
- The DC adapter fuse (2A) is a consumable. For replacement, purchase a new fuse at a local automobile supply shop.

## Charging Using the Desktop Holder

[Read “Desktop holder SH13 (sold separately) user’s guide” carefully.]

- Battery pack can be charged with FOMA terminal open and in Cycloid position.



**1** Face the side with the arrows of the AC adapter connector down and insert it into the connector terminal of the desktop holder.

- Keeping the connector parallel with the desktop holder, firmly push it all the way in until it clicks.
- The connection port for the desktop holder is on the back.

**2** Lift the AC adapter plug and insert into a 100VAC outlet.

**3** Place the FOMA terminal into the desktop holder.

- Place the FOMA terminal as shown in **1** on the left, and push in the direction of the arrow shown in **2** until it clicks.
- Charge start sound is heard and Charging LED illuminates in red. When a call is received while charging, the call is notified with set called LED color.

**4** When Charge end sound is heard and charging LED turns off, charging is complete.

- Hold the desktop holder and lift the FOMA terminal out.
- Pull the AC adapter out of the outlet when left unused for a long period of time.

## Note

- When **Charge start sound** is not heard (except when Charge start sound is set to **Silent**, Manner mode is set or when terminal is turned off) or when **charging LED** does not illuminate, check that the FOMA terminal is placed securely in the desktop holder.

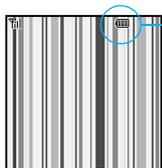
## Note

- When placing the FOMA terminal in the desktop holder, be careful that the strap is not caught in between the handset and the desktop holder.

## Battery Level

### How to Check the Battery Level

Check the approximate battery level in the display.



	Battery level is still sufficient.
	Battery level is low.
	Battery is almost empty. Charge the battery.
	Battery is empty (Power will turn off soon).
	Battery pack is being charged.

- When icons have been changed (☎ P. 133), the above icons may differ.

## Checking the Battery Level with Sound and Display

### 1 In stand-by, press .

- Graphic for battery level appears (A different sound is heard for each battery level).
- The battery level sound is heard at the volume set in Key/Standby i-motion (☎ P. 119).
- Wait approximately two seconds or press or and the previous menu reappears.

Graphic			
Sound	Three beeps	Two beeps	One beep
Status	Battery is sufficiently full.	Battery is running low.	Battery is almost empty. Charge the battery.

## If the Battery Runs Out

### **Battery empty. Unsaved data will be lost. Ending current operation**

appears if battery starts to run out (Press to clear the message).

After a while, an alert tone sounds. The screen on the right appears, handset operations are disabled and power turns off after approximately 60 seconds.



- During a voice/Videophone call, the alert tone sounds and **Battery empty. Unsaved data will be lost. Ending current operation** appears. The call is disconnected after approximately 20 seconds. At the same time, the screen above appears and after approximately 60 seconds, the power turns off.
- Alert tone does not sound when Manner mode is set (Alert tone sounds during a call).
- When is pressed during a call, the call is disconnected. Turn off the power and recharge the battery.

## Power ON/OFF

### Turning the Power On and Off

#### Turning the Power On

- Before turning the power on, check that the FOMA card is properly inserted (☎ P. 36).
- If the FOMA card is not inserted, **Insert UIM** and a FOMA card error appear (☎ P. 29).

# 1 Press (Power) for 2+ seconds.



- It may take some time for the wakeup screen to appear.
- The wakeup screen appears followed by the initial settings screen. Proceed to initial settings ( P. 45). If initial settings are not yet completed, the setting screen appears every time the power is turned on.
- If initial settings have been completed, the screen shown on the right appears when power is turned on. This screen is called the "stand-by display".
- When **Enter PIN1 code** appears, enter the PIN1 code ( P. 146).
- When  (Out of service area) appears, the handset is outside the service area or in a place with no signal. Move to a place where the icon disappears.



Stand-by display

## Note

- When a FOMA card is replaced with a new card, the **terminal security code** (four to eight digits) must be entered after turning on the terminal. If a correct terminal security code is entered, stand-by display appears. When a wrong terminal security code is entered five times, the power is turned off (However, turning on the power again is possible).

## Turning the Power Off

# 1 Press (Power) for 2+ seconds.

- It may take some time for the power to be turned off (The end screen appears on the display until the power is turned off).

## Note

- Before connecting to an external device, make sure that all transmissions are complete and then turn off the FOMA terminal.

## Select Language

# Switching Display to English

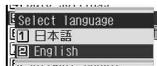
Default setting 日本語

Switch display language between Japanese and English for functions, messages, and menu items.

# 1 In stand-by, press and press [日本語]/ [English].



Japanese display



English display

## Note

- If a FOMA card is inserted, settings are saved to the card. Select language settings are saved to FOMA terminal handset and inserted FOMA card. When each setting varies, the setting in FOMA card is prioritized.

## Making the Initial Settings

The initial settings screen appears automatically when the power is turned on for the first time. Each setting item can also be set from Menu (When the initial settings are complete, the stand-by display appears).

- Date and time settings      ■ Change terminal security code      ■ Key/Standby i-motion
- PushTalk caller ID setting      ■ Software update
- When items that have not been set remain, the setting screen appears every time the power is turned on.

### 1 Set the date and time (☞ P. 45).

- In stand-by, press **☉** **8** to perform initial settings.
- Set date and time from 00:00 January 1, 2001 to 23:59 December 31, 2050.

### 2 Register a terminal security code (☞ P. 145).

- The default setting is 0000.

### 3 Set the Key/Standby i-motion (☞ P. 119).

To sound the Key/Standby i-motion	<b>1</b>
To make the Key/Standby i-motion silent	<b>2</b>

### 4 Set PushTalk caller ID (☞ P. 94).

- Select **Send ID** or **No ID** for PushTalk caller ID and press **☉**.

### 5 Set software update confirmation (☞ P. 453).

- Select **Yes** and press **☉**.
- Software update starts and checks to see if Software update is necessary.

#### Note

#### Canceling the initial settings

- Press **☒** while setting. **Date settings** are set even if canceled.

## Date Settings

### Setting the Date and Time

Default setting    Auto time set: **ON**

Set the date and time on the FOMA terminal. Set to automatically correct the date and time.

### 1 In stand-by, press **☉** **3** **4**.



- When Limit settings is set to **Enable**, terminal security code is required to set date and time.
- Times appear in 24-hour format.

### 2 Select **Auto time set**, press **☉** and select **ON** or **OFF**.

To automatically correct date and time	Select <b>ON</b> → <b>☉</b> → <b>☑</b>
To enter date and time	Select <b>OFF</b> → <b>☉</b> → <b>Date</b> → <b>☉</b> → enter date → <b>☉</b> → <b>Time</b> → <b>☉</b> → enter time → <b>☉</b> → <b>☑</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Use 24-hour format. When entering month, day and time, add <b>0</b> before numbers one through nine (example: 01, 02, 03, etc.).</li> <li>● Alternatively, select numbers with <b>☺</b>. If you make a mistake, move the cursor using <b>☺</b> and re-enter.</li> </ul>

## Note

- The date and time that are set are saved even if the battery pack is removed, but if the battery pack remains removed for approximately one week or more or the battery remains empty, the settings may be reset. When this happens, set again after charging the battery.
- If the date and time are not set correctly, dates are not correctly recorded for **Redial**, **Received calls**, **Record message (voice/Videophone calls)**, and camera image titles/shooting date. In addition, functions that use the clock, such as **Auto power ON/OFF**, **Alarm**, **Schedule**, **ToDo list**, **SSL** (authentication), **i-appli Auto start**, **starting i-appliDX**, **Reception** or **Recording** cannot be used properly.
- When setting reset notification for Limit settings and the date is set to the following month or later, **Reset time passed** appears in stand-by.

### When Auto time set is set to ON

- The FOMA automatically adjusts the time by connecting to the DoCoMo network's time information.
- When Auto time set is set to **ON**, the time is sometimes not adjusted for a while. To activate Auto time set, turn off FOMA terminal power and restart.
- Time is not adjusted depending on the signal status.
- Time may be off by a few seconds.

## Notify Caller ID

# Sending Your Own Phone Number to the Other Party

Default setting **Do not notify**

**Display your number (caller ID) on the other party's phone (display) when making a voice/Videophone call.**

- Handset number (caller ID) is important personal information. Be very careful about your caller ID setting.
- The Notify caller ID function is available only on compatible phone devices.

Set whether or not to send your caller ID using the methods below.

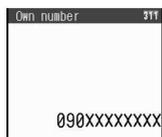
	Method	Notify caller ID	Do not notify caller ID
To set up in advance	In stand-by, press <b>⓪</b> <b>4</b> <b>5</b> <b>2</b> and enter the network security code ( <b>☎</b> P. 144)	Set to <b>Yes</b>	Set to <b>No</b>
To set up when making a call	Add <b>186</b> or <b>184</b> before a phone number	Add <b>186</b>	Add <b>184</b>
	Enter the phone number and select from the Submenu ( <b>☎</b> P. 57)	<b>⓪</b> <b>2</b> <b>1</b>	<b>⓪</b> <b>2</b> <b>2</b>

- Notify caller ID cannot be set while **☎** (Out of service area) appears on the screen.
- To check the Notify caller ID setting, press **⓪** **4** **5** **1** [Status request] in stand-by.
- Specifications made when making a call take priority over the Notify caller ID setting. If no specifications are made when a call is made, the Notify caller ID setting is followed.
- The method for making specifications when making a voice call is enabled for PushTalk. However, specifications are not made by adding **186** or **184**. Refer to P. 94 for details on setting Notify caller ID for PushTalk.

## Own Number

# Checking Your Phone Number

## 1 In stand-by, press **⓪** **0**.



Own number screen

- If during a voice call, press **⓪** **4**. If during a Videophone call, press **⓪** **8**.
- While Function lock is applied to phonebook, enter terminal security code and press **⓪**.
- Refer to P. 381 for details on confirming, saving or changing owner information.

# Phone/Videophone

## ■ Making Calls/Videophone Calls

- Using Videophone . . . . . 48
- Making Calls/Videophone Calls . . . . . 49
- Switching Between Voice Call and Videophone. . . . . 52
- Using Redial and Received Calls. . . . . <Redial/Received Calls>53
- Setting Chaku-moji. . . . . <Chaku-moji>56
- Setting Caller ID to Send/Not Send for a Single Call . . . . . <Send Own No./No Caller ID>57
- Sending Touch-tone Signals with Simple Operations . . . . . <Pause Dial>58
- Making International Calls . . . . . <WORLD CALL>59
- Setting International Call . . . . . <Int'l Dial Assist>60
- Setting a First Number to Phone Numbers . . . . . <Int'l Prefix>61
- Making Calls with Sub Address Set . . . . . <Sub Address>61
- Reconnecting Disconnected Calls Automatically . . . . . <Reconnect Control>62
- Reducing Noise Interference to Hear Calls Clearly . . . . . <Noise Reduction>62
- Using Handset in a Car . . . . . <Hands-free>62

## ■ Answering Calls/Videophone Calls

- Answering Calls/Videophone Calls . . . . . 63
- Switching Between Voice Call and Videophone to Receive Calls . . . . . 65
- Answering Calls by Pressing Any Key . . . . . <Any Key Answer>66
- Answering Calls by Rotating the Display . . . . . <Rotation-link Repl>66
- Closing the FOMA Terminal to End/Hold Calls . . . . . <Set When Folded>66
- Adjusting the Volume During a Call . . . . . <Earpiece Volume>67

## ■ When Calls/Videophone Calls Cannot Be Answered/Could Not Be Answered

- Placing Calls On Hold . . . . . <On Hold>67
- Setting On Hold Tone. . . . . <Set On Hold Tone>68
- Setting Hold Tone. . . . . <Set Hold Tone>68
- Using Public Mode (Drive Mode) . . . . . <Public Mode (Drive Mode)>68
- Using Public Mode (Power OFF) . . . . . <Public Mode (Power OFF)>70
- Checking Missed Calls. . . . . <Missed Calls>71
- Recording Messages When Calls Cannot Be Answered . . . . . <Record Message (Voice/Videophone Calls)>71
- Recording Messages When Incoming Calls Cannot Be Answered . . . . . <Quick Message>74
- Playing/Deleting Recorded Messages or Voice Memos . . . . . <Play/Delete Recorded Messages or Voice Memos>74
- Chara-den . . . . . 75
- Setting the Image to Send to the Other Party . . . . . 77
- Setting Hands-free Videophone . . . . . <Hands-free V.phone>79
- Setting the Image During Videophone Calls . . . . . <Videophone Set>80
- Changing Videophone Settings . . . . . 81
- Setting to Switch Between Voice Call and Videophone . . . . . <Notify Switch Mode>82
- Selecting Actions for Incoming Videophone Calls During i-mode . . . . . <Packet Trans Arr Act>82
- Saving Other Party's Image as a Still Picture. . . . . <Picture Memo>82

# Using Videophone

## Make calls while viewing each other's image.

- Videophone transmits at 64K (kbps) only.
- Chaku-moji can be sent or received with Videophone call (☎ P. 56).
- Send a Chara-den or still picture as substitute image to the other party instead of images shot with your camera and make or receive calls (☎ P. 75, P. 77).
- Digital transmission fees are incurred even when a Chara-den or still picture is sent/received as substitute image in place of a camera image of oneself.
- Make international Videophone calls using "WORLD CALL", DoCoMo's international telephone service (☎ P. 59).
- Videophone communication is available only between terminals compatible with DoCoMo Videophone.
- DoCoMo Videophones comply with 3G-324M<sup>\*1</sup>, as defined by the international 3GPP<sup>\*2</sup> standard. Connection is not available with Videophones using other standards.

<sup>\*1</sup> 3G-324M: International standard for Videophone systems for third-generation mobile Videophones.

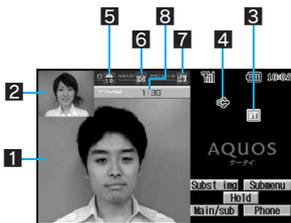
<sup>\*2</sup> 3GPP (3rd-Generation Partnership Project): A regional standardization organization to establish the common technical specifications for third-generation mobile telecommunication systems (IMT-2000).

## Viewing the Screen During Videophone Calls

### Normal position



### Cycloid position



- The screen shown is only example. Actual screen may differ.

- 1 Main screen: Other party's camera image (default)**
- 2 Subscreen: Your camera image (default)**
- 3 Appears during Videophone call**

	Videophone call in progress
--	-----------------------------

- 4 Hands-free icon**

	Hands-free in progress
	USB hands-free in progress

- 5 Brightness of camera image: Indicates the brightness of your camera image.**

Dark	← Normal →	Bright

- 6 Send image icon**

	Appears while sending camera image		Appears while pausing camera image
	Appears while sending still picture as substitute image		Appears while sending Chara-den in Full action mode
	Appears while sending an image from My picture of Data box		Appears while sending Chara-den in Part action mode

- 7 Receive image icon**

	Appears when shooting and saving images of the other party
--	--

- 8 Call duration: Displays up to 9 hours 59 minutes 59 seconds. If it exceeds 9:59:59, the counter restarts from 0:00.**

- 9 Earpiece volume icon**

	(Volume 1) to  (Volume 10)
--	----------------------------

- 10 Hands-free icon**

	Hands-free in progress
	USB hands-free in progress

- 11 DTMF mode icon**

	ON
	OFF

## Note

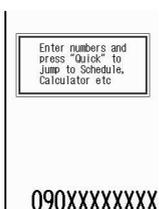
- The display brightness during a Videophone call follows the setting of User set in **Power saver set**. When Videophone in **Display light time** is set to **Same as normal**, the brightness is adjusted to the setting of **Brightness**. When **ON** is set, the brightness is adjusted to Brightness 2.

# Making Calls/Videophone Calls

## Check that there are sufficient battery and signal strength.

- When ☎ (Out of service area) appears, the handset is outside the service area or in a place with no signal. Move to a place where the icon disappears.
- Calls may be interrupted even when the signal is strong (📶 appears) and you are not moving.
- To talk while viewing each other's image during a Videophone call, use the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately) (📞 P. 386) or use Hands-free (📞 P. 79). The default setting is **ON** for Hands-free V.phone. Hands-free is available when the call starts.

## 1 In stand-by, dial the phone number starting with the area code.



- Always dial the area code, even when the number is in the same area.

Mobile phone	Enter other party's number (090-XXXX-XXXX, 080-XXXX-XXXX) (11 digits).
PHS	Enter other party's number (070-XXXX-XXXX) (11 digits).

- Enter up to 80 digits for phone number. When the number exceeds 13 digits, it appears on two lines. When the number exceeds 26 digits, the last 26 digits appear in two lines.
- When a mistake is made while dialing, press  $[CLR]$  to erase the last digit. Press  $[CLR]$  for 1+ seconds to delete all digits and stand-by reappears.
- Refer to P. 59 when making an international call.

## 2 Press $[Phone]$ [V.phone].

Outgoing calls of Videophone



When name and still picture are saved in the phonebook

- Unlike ordinary telephones, mobile phones send call tones in short beeps before the standard ring tone.
- Phone number and name appear if saved in phonebook. Image also appears if set in advance.
- When the other party is busy, there is a busy signal. Press  $[End]$  to disconnect and try again later.
- When a guidance message plays requesting the caller ID, the other party has set Caller ID Request to "Activate". Set the caller ID and make a call again (📞 P. 46, P. 57).

### Voice calls

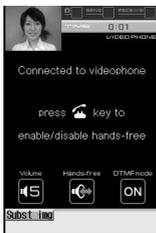
- **Calling** appears while calling.
- $[V]$  appears in the upper part of the display during a call.

### Videophone calls

- **Dialing videophone** appears while dialing.
- Refer to "Viewing the Screen During Videophone Calls" on P. 48 for view types during a Videophone call.

### 3 Talk when the other party answers the phone.

#### Videophone



- Press **[\*]4** during a voice call and **[\*]8** during a Videophone call to view your phone number.

#### Videophone calls

- The following operations are available during a Videophone call.

To send a substitute image during a Videophone call	<b>[*]8</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● The still picture or Chara-den set as substitute image appears (<b>[*]P. 77</b>).</li> </ul>
To send touch-tone signals <DTMF mode>	While sending camera image	Enter numbers to send
	While sending Chara-den	<b>[*]7</b> → <b>[*]1</b> → enter numbers to send

### 4 Press **[\*]8** to end the call.

#### Note

- During a call, approximate call duration appears on the screen. When the call duration exceeds 9:59:59, the display resets to 0:00.
- The FOMA terminal may become warm after continuous use. This is not a malfunction.

#### Voice calls

- Calls can be made even when steps 1 and 2 are reversed. If no operations are performed for five seconds after dialing, the call is made.
- When talking in the Cycloid position, use a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately) or use **Hands-free**. When using the earpiece to talk, make sure to switch to the normal position.
- **Switch to hands-free?** appears when the FOMA terminal is set to the Cycloid position during a call. Select **Yes** to switch to hands-free. Hands-free is not disabled even if returned to the normal position.

#### Videophone calls

- Videophone calls cannot be made to emergency numbers (110, 119, and 118) from the FOMA terminal.
- When the other party answers, **Connected to videophone press key to enable/disable hands-free** appears. Digital transmission fees are incurred from this point.
- Videophone call is not connected when placed to an unsupported handset. In addition, it is not connected to devices such as PHS phones for which 64K cannot be used due to network conditions. If **Redial voice call** is set to **ON**, the number is automatically redialed as a voice call. In such cases, voice call charges are incurred. Note that this operation may not work if a call is placed to an ISDN synchronous 64K, PIAFS access point or an ISDN Videophone that does not support the 3G-324M standard (**[\*]P. 48**) (as of January 2007), or if an invalid phone number is dialed by mistake. In addition, charges may be incurred.
- When sending own image from a location with little light, noise such as white lines increase. Also, direct sunlight or strong light from lamps may darken or distort images. Use Videophone under suitable lighting conditions.
- If **Call Waiting** is subscribed to, the number is recorded in Received calls and **xx missed call(s)** appears in stand-by when a voice/Videophone call is received during a Videophone call.
- During a Videophone call, i-mode mail and Message R/F are held at the i-mode center. After a Videophone call, i-mode mail or Message R/F held at the i-mode center can be retrieved by performing **Check new message**. However, SMS are received automatically even during Videophone calls.
- When the sending/receiving of audio or video fails, the Videophone call is not automatically restored. Make the Videophone call again.
- When a Videophone call is started, Redial voice call is not performed.
- Videophone calls are counted toward **V.phone talk time** (**[\*]P. 384**).
- Voice calls or i-mode operations cannot be performed during a Videophone call.
- When connected, the earphone/microphone is used for a call regardless of Hands-free V.phone.
- When your image taken with the camera is sent during a Videophone call in the Cycloid position, the displayed image is made larger than that in the normal position.

## Note

### When the Videophone call does not connect

- When the Videophone call does not connect, a message explaining the reason appears. The other party's actual conditions may vary depending upon the type of phone and network service subscriptions.

Message	Reason
Check number, then redial	A call is made to unused phone number.
Busy	The other party is engaged in a call.*
Your call is being forwarded	The other party's handset is set to forward Videophone calls.
Out of service area/power off	The other party is outside the service area, or their mobile phone is turned off.
Set Caller ID to ON	Connected without notifying caller ID (When calling V-live or visualnet).
Redial using voice call	The other party's handset is set to the Call Forwarding Service and the forwarding destination does not support Videophone.
Busy with packet transmission	The other party is performing a packet transmission.
Connection failed	Appears in cases other than those listed above.
Upper limit has been exceeded. Connection failed	Upper limit that has been set by payment plans with limit function (Type Limit or Family Wide Limit) has been exceeded.
Please make your call from the i-mode web page	A Videophone call is directly made to the V-live which should be accessed after connecting to i-mode. Access a site run by the contents provider and view it by making a Videophone call from the link.

\* The message may appear during a packet transmission depending on the other party's terminal.

## Related Operations

### Use hands-free <Hands-free>

During a voice call, press  for 1+ seconds.

During a Videophone call, press .

- To disable during a voice call: Press  for 1+ seconds.
- To disable during a Videophone call: Press .

### Place calls on hold <Hold active call>

1 During a call, press  1.

- Alternatively, press  for a Videophone call.

2 To resume voice call, press .

To resume Videophone call, press .

- For Videophone, press  to send a substitute image and answer the call.

### Select Multi Number and make a call <Sel Multi number>

1 In stand-by, enter a phone number  4.

2 Select Multi Number   [Phone]/ [V.phone].

## Note

### Using Hands-free

-  appears during hands-free operation.
- Speak from approximately 20 to 40 cm away from the mouthpiece. When the surroundings are noisy, sound may break up and the call may not be satisfactory.
- When using Hands-free outdoors or in a location where surroundings are noisy, use the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately).
- Cannot be operated when receiving a call and dialing a voice call.
- Increasing earpiece volume may make conversation difficult. In such cases, press  and lower the volume.
- Hands-free is disabled when a call ends.

### Hold

- The **hold tone** plays. Hold tone does not sound from the FOMA terminal when Manner mode is set.

## Related Operations

### Note

- The other party hears the hold tone, and the call is placed on hold. For Videophone calls, the image set in **Hold image** is sent to the other party. The image is sent to the other party with **Hold** superimposed.
- Calls stay on hold even when the FOMA terminal is closed. **Set when folded** does not apply.

### Selecting Multi Number

- Those subscribing to **Multi Number** can select a saved Multi Number and make a call.

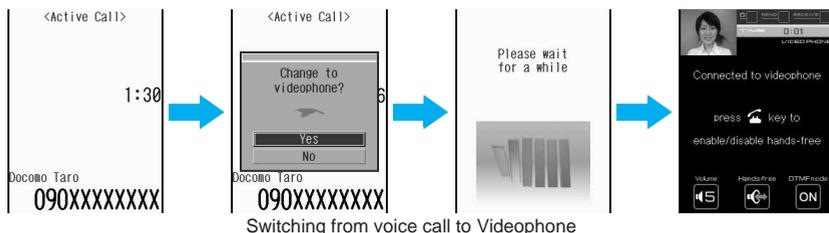
## Switching Between Voice Call and Videophone

### Switch between voice call and Videophone for placed calls.

- **V.phone** appears for voice calls and **Phone** appears for Videophone calls at the lower right of the display in guidance and call can be switched (Available with models that support switching between voice call and Videophone).
- Notify switch mode (☎ P. 82) must be set to "Activate" for the other party's FOMA terminal.
- Received calls cannot be switched. Have the other party switch.
- When switching, **Unable to switch** may appear and switching is disabled depending on the other party's FOMA terminal status (☎ P. 65).
- Calls cannot be switched while One Seg is being activated.

### 1 Press [V.phone] during a voice call, select Yes and press .

- Alternatively, press  [5] [Switch to v.phone] during a voice call.
- To switch from Videophone to voice call, press  [Phone] or  [6] [chg to voice call] during a call.
- Select **No** and the voice call screen reappears.
- Switching takes approximately five seconds. Switching may take more time depending on signal status. While switching, **Please wait for a while** appears and a guidance message is played.
- The call switches to Videophone and your image is sent to the other party. During a Videophone call, the call switches to voice call.



- Switch between voice call and Videophone is possible as many times as necessary during a call. When switched, call duration resets to 0 seconds.

### Note

- Calls may not be switched from voice call to Videophone nor from Videophone to voice call and may be disconnected depending on signal status.
- Switching is not included in the talk time and charges are not incurred.

### Switching from voice call to Videophone

- The other party's camera image does not appear if the other party selects to not show image.
- When performing packet transmissions, disconnect packet transmission before switching to Videophone.
- Hands-free V.phone is **ON** by default (☎ P. 79). If a call is switched to Videophone, Hands-free is activated regardless of call status.
- Hands-free is not available while **Please wait for a while** is shown.

## Note

- Calls received with **Call Waiting** cannot be switched from voice call to Videophone call.

### Switching from Videophone to voice call

- When switching to voice call from Hands-free Videophone call, Hands-free is disabled.

## Redial/Received Calls

# Using Redial and Received Calls

## Redialing Previously Called Numbers <Redial>

The FOMA terminal keeps a record of the 30 most recent phone numbers to which calls were made (including PushTalk).

- When 30 calls are exceeded, phone numbers are erased starting with the oldest.
- If the same number was called multiple times, only the most recent is recorded. However, each call is recorded if PushTalk transmission is sent to multiple parties or the call is made using the PushTalkPlus.

### 1 In stand-by, press (.

Redial	01/03
04/23 10:58	Docomo Taro
04/23 10:55	Keitai Hanako
04/23 10:39	09XXXXXXXX

Redial list

- Phone numbers and dates are listed starting with the most recent redial numbers.
- Name appears if saved in phonebook. If the same number is saved in the phonebook, the name with the smallest memory number appears.
- For PushTalk, the other party's name or the PushTalk group name appears.

### Types of calls

No icon	Voice call		PushTalk (When transmitted to one person)
	Videophone call		PushTalk (When transmitted to multiple people)
	International call		PushTalk (Using PushTalkPlus)
<b>M0 to M2</b>	Multi Number outgoing call (Only when Multi Number is set)		

To show the redial details screen	Select a phone number → 
To switch to the received calls list	

### 2 Select phone number and dial.

Voice call	
Videophone	 → 
PushTalk	 (  )

- Call is placed to the displayed phone number.
- When **184** or **186** is added to the phone number, the call is saved as a separate dial.

## Note

- If a call is switched between voice call and Videophone, the type of Redial is decided by the original call type.
- Refer to “Show Call/Received” on P. 153 for details on the Redial/Show received calls.
- Press  () or  to call all parties when using Redial for PushTalk transmission made to multiple people. Voice/Videophone calls cannot be made.
- When the redial display for Show call/received is set to **OFF**, the history is saved but Redial does not appear.
- Press  in the redial list screen to show the sent messages list ( P. 235).

## Note

### Redial Submenu

Items in the redial list screen	Items in the redial details screen	Explanation
① Add to phonebook	① Add to phonebook	Saves phone number in the phonebook.
② Delete	② Delete one	Deletes a saved Redial (☎ P. 54).
	③ Caller ID setting	Sends caller ID/Does not send caller ID when calling.
	④ Add prefix setting	Selects a prefix or makes an international call.
	⑤ Sel Multi number	Selects a phone number saved in Multi Number (☎ P. 400).
	⑥ V.phone image	Sets the image to send to the other party during a Videophone call.
	⑦ Chaku-moji	Composes a message, selects a message or displays Sent messages.
⑧ Compose message	⑧ Compose message	Composes a message. If the mail address is not saved in the phonebook, the outgoing number is entered for the address.
⌚ ① Create schedule	⌚ ① Create schedule	Saves phone number and redial date in the schedule.

## Related Operations

### Delete Redials/Received calls <Delete>

- In stand-by, press (Redial)/ (Received calls) ▶ select a phone number.
- Press [Delete one] ▶ Yes ▶ .

- To delete all Redials/Received calls: Press [Delete one] ▶ Yes ▶ .

### Note

- If all Redials are deleted, Chaku-moji Sent messages are also deleted.

## Making Calls from Received Calls

The FOMA terminal keeps a record (Received calls) of the 30 most recent phone numbers (including PushTalk) received.

- When 30 calls are exceeded, phone numbers are erased starting with the oldest.

### 1 In stand-by, press (Received calls).

Received calls 01/03	
04/23 11:19	
Keitai Hanako	
04/23 11:12	
090XXXXXXXX	
04/23 11:04	
Docomo Taro	

Received calls list

- Phone numbers and dates are listed starting with the most recent Received calls.
- Name appears if saved in phonebook. If the same number is saved in the phonebook, the name with the smallest memory number appears.

### Types of history

	Calls that were answered or put on hold
	Calls that left a recorded message
	Calls that were not answered or were forwarded to a forwarding number or Voice Mail Service center, calls that were rejected because of Reject calls (☎ P. 156), Accept calls (☎ P. 155), Reject unknown (☎ P. 159), Reject by reason of non-disclosure (☎ P. 157), Public mode (Drive mode) (☎ P. 68)

## Types of calls

No icon	Voice call		Chaku-moji
	Videophone call		PushTalk (When transmitted to one person)
	64K data communications		
	International call		PushTalk (When transmitted to multiple people)
<b>M0 to M2</b>	Multi Number received (Only when Multi Number is set)		

When <b>xx missed call(s)</b> appears in stand-by (Missed calls)	In stand-by, press  → select <b>xx missed call(s)</b> →
To display the received calls details screen	Select a phone number →
To switch to the redial list screen	

## 2 Select a phone number and dial.

Voice call	
Videophone	
PushTalk	

### Note

- Refer to P. 54 for details on deleting Received calls.
- Even if a call is switched between voice call and Videophone, the received call type depends on the way the call was answered.
- Calls cannot be made from Received calls while **Keypad dial lock** is set.
- Press or to call all parties when using Received calls for PushTalk transmission made to multiple people. Voice/Videophone calls cannot be made.
- When **Function lock** is applied to the phonebook, only the phone number appears. When Function lock is disabled, the name registered in the phonebook appears.
- When a call is received from a caller using Dial-in, a number different from the caller's Dial-in number may appear.
- When Show received calls of **Show call/received** is set to **OFF**, the call is recorded but Received calls does not appear.
- Press in the received calls list to show the received messages list ( P. 235).
- If a call is made from Received calls of Chaku-moji, the received Chaku-moji will not be sent.
- For a received call with Chaku-moji, the message contents are displayed on the received calls details screen.

### Received calls Submenu

- The following operations are available as in the Redial submenu. Refer to "Redial Submenu" on P. 54 for details.
  - Add to phonebook
  - Delete
  - Compose message
  - Create schedule
- When **Set mute ring tone** is set to **ON** and Missed call history is set to **OFF** and the following call not saved in phonebook is received, the number does not appear in Received calls.
  - The call is disconnected during mute seconds duration
  - The call is disconnected due to weak signal strength
 However, the following operation shows Received call.

Items from received calls list	Items from received calls details screen	Explanation
Display setting	Display setting	Performs Display all/Limit display and Ringing time*.

\* A ringing time of **0:00** appears when a call is rejected due to **Accept calls**, **Reject calls**, **Reject unknown**, **Reject by reason of non-disclosure** and **Public mode (Drive mode)** settings. Ring time does not appear for items with (calls that have been answered or disconnected while on hold). It does not appear if the Display settings is selected in the received calls list.

# Setting Chaku-moji

## What Is Chaku-moji?

Send a message (Chaku-moji) at the same time when making a voice call or Videophone call to display it on the other party's ringing phone and to previously tell the points.

Save the Chaku-moji message in advance. Set if Chaku-moji is displayed or not when it is received.

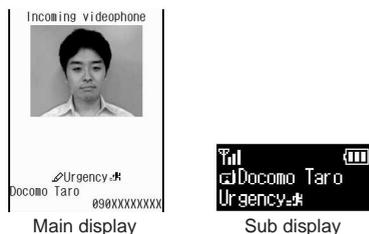
- Send up to 10 single/double-byte characters, pictographs or symbols.
- Charges are applied to the sender side. Not applied to the receiver side.
- Ahead of the Chaku-moji messages on the send and receive displays,  appears.
- Chaku-moji appears only while a call is received (calling). When the call is answered, Chaku-moji disappears.
- Compatible models: 902iS series, SH902iSL, N902iX HIGH-SPEED, N902iL, 903i series, 702iS series (excluding N702iS, M702iS, M702iG), 703i series, 601i series (excluding L601i), D800iDS

## Receive display when Chaku-moji is received

For voice call



For Videophone call



- The message contents of received Chaku-moji can also be checked in the received calls details screen ( P. 55).

## Editing and Setting Chaku-moji Message

### Saving the Chaku-moji message <Create message>

Save up to ten Chaku-moji messages.

**1** In stand-by, press  **5** **7** **1**.

**2** Select a number, press  [Edit], enter a message and press .

- To check a saved Chaku-moji message, select a number and press .

### Enabling/Disabling Chaku-moji display <Message display>

Default setting *With caller ID*

**1** In stand-by, press  **5** **7** **2** and select Chaku-moji display method.



To display all	<b>1</b>
To display ones only from callers saved in the phonebook	<b>2</b>
To display ones only from Notify caller ID callers	<b>3</b>
To not display	<b>4</b>

## Dialing with Chaku-moji Message <Chaku-moji>

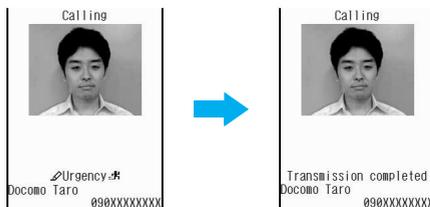
### 1 In stand-by, enter the other party's phone number and press 6 [Chaku-moji].

- Refer to P. 110 when calling with Chaku-moji from the phonebook.

### 2 Select a Chaku-moji message.

To create a new message	→ enter a Chaku-moji message →
To select from saved Chaku-moji messages	→ select a Chaku-moji message →
To select from Sent messages	→ select a Chaku-moji message → ● To delete one Sent messages entry, select a Chaku-moji message, press  , select <b>Yes</b> and press . To delete all Sent messages entries, press  , select <b>Yes</b> and press .

### 3 Press [Phone]/ [V.phone].



- If Chaku-moji reaches the recipient, **Transmission completed** appears and transmission charges are incurred.

#### Note

- The ten most recently sent messages are recorded as Sent messages.
- Even if a call is shorter than the set ringing time of the **Set mute ring time**, Chaku-moji is displayed and charges are applied.
- Depending on the signal strength, sending results may not be displayed even if the other party has received Chaku-moji. In this case, charges are applied.
- Chaku-moji cannot be sent to foreign countries.
- On **Redial voice call**, Chaku-moji used when Videophone was dialed will be automatically sent.
- Chaku-moji does not support PushTalk.
- When the call recipient is in the following setting, Chaku-moji does not appear and transmission charges are not incurred even if dialed with Chaku-moji.
  - When the recipient's terminal does not support Chaku-moji
  - When a call is received from numbers rejected by the message display settingsIn addition, when the call recipient is in the following setting or status, the send results do not appear on the sender side display (Chaku-moji is not recorded in Received calls on the receiver side).
  - When outside the service area or the power is turned off
  - When Public mode (Drive mode) is set
  - When the answering duration for Record message is set to 0 seconds

## Send Own No./No Caller ID

### Setting Caller ID to Send/Not Send for a Single Call

#### To not send caller ID

### 1 In stand-by, enter a phone number, press [No caller ID] and press [Phone] or [V.phone].

## To send caller ID

- 1 In stand-by, enter a phone number, press 2 1 [Send own no.] and press [Phone] or [V.phone].

### Note

- Alternatively, make calls by setting caller ID from Submenus in the **Phonebook**, **Redial** or **Received calls** details screen.
- When a phone number is entered after entering **186** and 2 2 [No caller ID] is pressed, caller ID is sent.
- If **186** is selected from Select prefix after entering a phone number, caller ID is sent.
- When a phone number is entered after entering **184** and 2 1 [Send own no.] is pressed, caller ID is not sent.
- If **184** is selected from Select prefix after entering a phone number, caller ID is not sent.
- When **184** or **186** is added to a phone number, the call is saved as a separate dial.

## Related Operations

### Add 186 (To notify caller ID)

In stand-by, press 1 8 6 ▶ enter phone number ▶ [Phone]/ [V.phone].

### Add 184 (To not notify caller ID)

In stand-by, press 1 8 4 ▶ enter phone number ▶ [Phone]/ [V.phone].

### Note

#### Sending caller ID for a single call

- This function is available regardless of the network service's caller ID setting.

## Pause Dial

# Sending Touch-tone Signals with Simple Operations

Use pagers and services such as ticket reservations and bank balance inquiries, with simple operations by saving the combinations of phone numbers and messages (numbers) in the phonebook.

## Saving Touch-tone Data to the Phonebook

- 1 Enter a phone number in phonebook ( step 3 on P. 98), press and enter the number to send.
  - Press to enter a pause *P*.
  - Enter the number and press to continue adding numbers.
- 2 Press and enter the other phonebook items.
  - Refer to "Basic Saving Operations" on P. 98 for details.

## Sending Messages Using Touch-tone Signals

- 1 Make a call from the phonebook with a touch-tone signal.
  - Refer to P. 107 to P. 110 for details.
  - When the call is connected, the numbers after *P* appear on the screen.

## 2 Press [PB send] at the appropriate time to send.

- The numbers after **P** are sent with touch-tone signals.
- When multiple numbers separated by **P** are saved, press  [PB send] for each number.
- Some equipment may not be able to receive signals properly.

## Sending Touch-tone Signals Using the Dial Keys During a Call

Send touch-tone signals one at a time during a call by pressing the dial keys.

## 1 Make a call and when the call is connected, press the corresponding numbers on the keypad.

- The number is sent as a touch-tone signal.
- Enter 80 digits or more when sending a message using touch-tone signals (Deletes entered digits from the beginning).

## WORLD CALL

### Making International Calls

#### “WORLD CALL” Is DoCoMo’s International Calling Service

WORLD CALL is an international calling service available from DoCoMo mobile phones. “WORLD CALL” is registered when FOMA services are registered (Registration for “WORLD CALL” is optional).

**[Calling Method] 009130 ➡ 010 ➡ Country code ➡ Area code (city code) ➡ Other party’s phone number ➡ **

- The calling method shown above can be saved on the FOMA terminal handset phonebook.
- For area codes (city codes) that begin with **0**, omit the **0** when dialing (However, include the **0** when calling Italy).
- Call to about 240 countries and regions worldwide.
- “WORLD CALL” charges are billed with the monthly mobile phone charges.
- Subscription and monthly usage fees are free.
- Check an estimate of the most recent call duration on the display ( P. 384).
- When using phonebook, Received calls or Redial, **009130010** is automatically added to make calls.
- Change in procedures for making international calls  
Because “MY LINE” service is not available for mobile communications, WORLD CALL also cannot be used with “MY LINE”. With the offering of the “MY LINE” service, the dialing procedures for international calls have changed. The former dialing procedure (procedure listed above without **010**) cannot be used.
- For further details on WORLD CALL, contact the number listed in “General Inquiries” on the back of this manual.
- To make an international call through a company other than DoCoMo, contact the representative companies directly for instructions.
- Some payment plans may not be available.

When calling Videophone compatible specific overseas 3G mobile phone customers, use “International Videophone” by making the call in Videophone mode after the dialing method above.

- Refer to the DoCoMo web page for information on available countries and providers.
- Depending on the other party’s international Videophone terminal, the image that appears on the FOMA terminal may be distorted, or connection may not be possible.

## Setting International Call

### Automatically Adding International Call Access Code <Int'l Prefix Conv>

Default setting **ON**

When making an international call, enter + before dialing the overseas number to automatically place the international call access code.

**1** In stand-by, press **⊙** **6** **9** **3** **1** and **1** [ON].

#### Using + to make an international call

- Press **0** for 1+ seconds to enter +.

**1** In stand-by, enter +, the country code, area code (city code), other party's phone number and press **☎**.

- The number with the international call access code, which is converted from +, appears.

**2** Select **Yes** and press **⊙**.

- The international call is made.

### Setting Numbers Other Than WORLD CALL <Int'l Prefix>

Default setting **WORLD CALL 009130-010**

Save up to ten international access call access codes used when international calls are made.

**1** In stand-by, press **⊙** **6** **9** **3** **2**, select ----- to save a new number and press **⊙**.

To change a saved number	Select a number → <b>⊙</b> → <b>1</b>
To delete a saved number	Select a number → <b>⊙</b> → <b>2</b> → <b>Yes</b> → <b>⊙</b>
To set Auto prefix	Select a number → <b>⊙</b> → <b>3</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● <b>☎</b> appears to the right of the name.</li> <li>● Perform the operations over to disable Auto prefix.</li> </ul>

**2** Enter a name and press **⊙**.

- Enter up to 14 single-byte (7 double-byte) characters.

**3** Enter a prefix and press **⊙**.

- Press **0** for 1+ seconds to enter +.
- Up to 16 digits can be entered.

#### Selecting an international access code <International Call>

Enter only the country code, area code (city code) and the phone number to make international calls.

**1** In stand-by, enter the country code, area code (city code), other party's phone number and press **Ⓜ** **3** **2** [International Call].

**2** Select an international call access code, press **⊙** and **☎**.

## Related Operations

### Make a call from phonebook

In the phonebook entry details screen, press **@ 4 2 2** ▶ select an international call access code ▶ **⊙** ▶ **☎**.

### Make a call from Received calls or Redial

In the Received calls or Redial details screen, press **@ 4 2** ▶ select an international call access code ▶ **⊙** ▶ **☎**.

## Int'l Prefix

# Setting a First Number to Phone Numbers

Default setting *009130-010*

Save up to five prefixes, including international call access codes, to place at the beginning of phone numbers. The numbers are also available when calls are made from phonebook, Received calls or Redial.

**1** In stand-by, press **⊙ 6 9 1**, select ----- to save a new number and press **⊙**.

To change a saved number	Select a number → <b>⊙</b> → <b>1</b>
To delete a saved number	Select a number → <b>⊙</b> → <b>2</b> → <b>Yes</b> → <b>⊙</b>

**2** Enter a prefix and press **⊙**.

- Press **0** for 1+ seconds to enter +.
- Up to 16 digits can be entered.

## Calling with Prefixes <Select Prefix>

**1** In stand-by, enter the other party's phone number and press **@ 3 1** [Select prefix].

**2** Select a prefix, press **⊙** and **☎**.

## Related Operations

### Make a call from phonebook

In the phonebook entry details screen, press **@ 4 2 1** ▶ select prefix ▶ **⊙** ▶ **☎**.

### Make a call from Received calls or Redial

In the Received calls or Redial details screen, press **@ 4 1** ▶ select prefix ▶ **⊙** ▶ **☎**.

## Sub Address

# Making Calls with Sub Address Set

Default setting *ON*

Using sub address allows calls to be made to specific terminals when calling an ISDN terminal.

- A sub address is a number assigned to a terminal when there are multiple ISDN terminals for a single ISDN line. It is used in selecting contents for V-live.

**1** In stand-by, press **⓪** **6** **9** **2** and **1** [ON].

### Making calls with sub address set

- Ask the other party for their phone number and sub address.

**1** In stand-by, enter phone number, press **ⓧ**, enter sub address and press **☎**.

#### Note

- If **ⓧ** is entered at the beginning of a phone number or after **184**, **186** or a prefix, the numbers after **ⓧ** are recognized as the phone number.

## Reconnect Control

### Reconnecting Disconnected Calls Automatically

Default setting **Alarm on(high)**

- Reconnect control is also available for PushTalk transmissions.

**1** In stand-by, press **⓪** **6** **1** **2** and select an alarm tone.

To set alarm to high	<b>1</b>
To set alarm to low	<b>2</b>
To set alarm to off	<b>3</b>

#### Note

- The amount of time that can elapse to reconnect varies depending on signal strength. The estimated time is approximately ten seconds.
- The other party hears no sound until the call is reconnected (up to ten seconds). Charges are incurred for this duration.

## Noise Reduction

### Reducing Noise Interference to Hear Calls Clearly

Default setting **ON**

- It is recommended that this function be kept set to **ON**.

**1** In stand-by, press **⓪** **6** **1** **1** and **1** [ON].

#### Note

- Noise reduction processes sound to make conversations clearer. Sound quality may vary depending on surrounding noise and tone of the voice.

## Hands-free

### Using Handset in a Car

Use the In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01 (sold separately) to connect hands-free devices such as car navigation to the FOMA terminal, and make/receive voice calls from the device. Refer to the user's guide of each product for more details. Use a FOMA In-Car Hands-Free Cable 01 (sold separately) for the In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01 (sold separately).

## Note

- Functions such as display settings, ring tones and **Public mode (Drive mode)** call functions follow the FOMA terminal settings for incoming calls.
- If a hands-free device has sound enabled, the device plays a ring tone even when the FOMA terminal is set to Manner mode or **Silent**.
- When a Videophone call is made or received using a hands-free compatible device, a substitute image is sent to the other party.
- When FOMA terminal sound is enabled, **Set when folded** is followed if the handset is closed during a call. If device sound is enabled, the call continues when the FOMA terminal is closed regardless of Set when folded.
- **Record message** settings are followed even when the handset is connected to the device.
- Some handset functions may not be available depending on device characteristics and specifications.

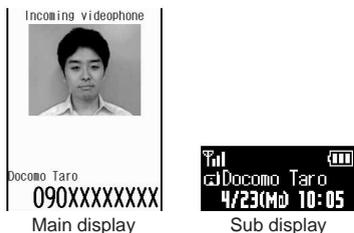
## Answering Calls/Videophone Calls

When receiving a call, verify it using ring tone, called LED, vibrator, etc.

- When receiving a Videophone call, use the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately) (☎ P. 386) or use Hands-free (☎ P. 79) to talk while viewing each other's image. The default setting is **ON** for Hands-free V.phone. So when the call starts, Hands-free is available.

### 1 When a call is received, the ring tone sounds and the called LED flashes.

Incoming Videophone screen



When the name and still picture in the phonebook

- When caller ID is sent, the phone number appears. If the other party's name and phone number are saved in the phonebook, they appear on the screen.
- When Picture call (still picture or movie/i-motion) is saved in the phonebook (☎ P. 100), the name, phone number and image appear on the screen (The image for Phone ring tone is prioritized when i-motion is set as Phone ring tone). They do not appear if the caller does not send caller ID.

#### Voice calls

- **Calling** appears while receiving a call.

#### Videophone calls

- **Incoming videophone** appears while receiving a call.

Chaku-moji Videophone screen



When Chaku-moji is received

- When Chaku-moji is received, the message appears (☎ P. 56).
- When the caller does not send caller ID, a non-disclosure reason message appears. **User unset, Payphone** or **Not support** (☎ P. 158)

## 2 Press .

- Refer to the following for key operations while receiving a call.

	When FOMA terminal is open	When FOMA terminal is closed
On hold (  P. 67)		-
Quick silent (  P. 124)		
Quick message (  P. 74)	 (for 1+ seconds)	-
Manner mode (  P. 123)	 (for 1+ seconds)	 (for 1+ seconds)
Record message/Forward calls/ Auto forward/Call Rejection*		-
Answer with substitute image (for only Videophone calls)		-

\* Videophone calls can be rejected by pressing  [Call Rejection] while One Seg is activated.

- For Videophone calls, all key operations except those listed above are not available even when Any key answer is set to **ON**.

### Voice calls

- Calls can also be received with Any key answer ( P. 66).

### Videophone calls

- Calls can be answered with your image. The other party's image appears in the main screen and your image taken with the camera appears in the subscreen. When images are not received from the other party, a black screen appears.

## 3 Press to end the call.

### Note

- Calls to the FOMA terminal cannot be made from phones with no direct outside line, such as an internal building phone.
- **Set mute ring time** can be set to delay ring tone sounding until set number of seconds pass when a call is received from an unregistered number or a number without caller ID. **Reject unknown** can be set to prevent callers not registered in Phonebook from being connected.
- Save a specified phonebook in a list and set Reject/Accept calls.
- Use Notification of **Voice Mail Service** to receive notification of missed calls when the handset is turned off or outside the service area. An SMS is received after returning to the service area or when power is turned on. If a call is received from a person saved in the phonebook, the person's name appears in the message.
- When a call is received while in **Public mode (Drive mode)**, the ring tone does not sound, and the called LED does not flash. The call is saved in **Received calls**.

### Voice calls

- When talking in the Cycloid position, use a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately) or use **Hands-free**. When using the earpiece to talk, make sure to switch to the normal position.
- **Switch to hands-free?** appears when the FOMA terminal is set to the Cycloid position during a call. Select **Yes** to switch to hands-free. Hands-free is not disabled even if returned to the normal position.

### Videophone calls

- The type of substitute image to be sent can be set in **Substitute image**.
- If a Videophone call is received from the Videophone compatible model when **Voice Mail Service** is set to "Activate", the call is connected to Voice Mail Service and message recording is activated after the set ringing time passes. Answering during the set ringing time connects call without connecting to Voice Mail Service.
- Even when **Call Forwarding Service** is set to "Activate" on the receiver side, the Videophone call is not forwarded if the set forwarding destination is not set to a device that supports Videophone and conforms to the 3G-324M standard ( P. 48). Check forwarding destination before setting.

### When a call is received during editing

- If a call is received while editing phonebook, i-mode mail, SMS or a Chaku-moji message, editing is temporarily suspended. When this happens, edited data is automatically saved. When the conversation is finished, the screen before the call was received reappears and editing can be resumed. However, characters that are in the process of being converted and not confirmed may not be saved.

## Note

### When a call is received from a saved Multi Number

- A Multi Number name appears to the right of **Calling/Incoming v.phone** when a call is received.

### When using the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately)

- When a Videophone call is received while the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch is connected, pressing the switch for 2+ seconds will answer the call with your image when the FOMA terminal is open, and with the set substitute image when the FOMA terminal is closed. Switch between substitute image and camera image during a call (☎ P. 77).
- When **Set auto answer** is set to **ON** and the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch is connected, after the specified ring time, the substitute image is automatically sent. Switch between substitute image and camera image during a call (☎ P. 77).

## When the handset beeps during a voice call indicating an incoming call

When any of services such as Voice Mail, Call forwarding or Call Waiting is subscribed to and Set arrival act is set to "Activate" while Arrival call act is set to **Answer**, the following operations can be performed when the handset beeps during a call.

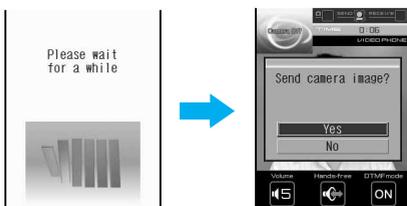
Call Forwarding Service	Press <b>☎</b> <b>2</b> [Forward calls] to forward the call to the set forward number (☎ P. 395).
Voice Mail Service	Press <b>☎</b> <b>3</b> [Auto forward] to forward the call to the Voice Mail Service center (☎ P. 392).
Call Waiting	Put the current call on hold and answer the incoming call (☎ P. 394).

## Switching Between Voice Call and Videophone to Receive Calls

### The caller (other party) selects to switch between voice call and Videophone.

- The call recipient cannot switch (Available with models that support switching between voice call and Videophone).
- Notify switch mode (☎ P. 82) must be set to "Activate" for the recipient's FOMA terminal.

## 1 The caller switches between Videophone and voice call during a call.



Switching from voice call to Videophone

- Switching takes approximately five seconds. Switching may take more time depending on signal status. While the call being switched, **Please wait for a while** appears and a guidance message is played.

### Switching from voice call to Videophone

- When the caller switches to Videophone call, a message is played and the screen on the left appears before switching. Proceed to step 2.

### Switching from Videophone to voice call

- When the caller switches to voice call during Videophone call, a message is played before switching. Start conversation in voice call.

## 2 Select Yes and press **☎**.

### Switching from voice call to Videophone

- Your image is sent to the other party.
- Select **No** to not send own image. **Camera Off** appears on the other party's screen.

## Note

- This setting is not available when another screen is displayed from the Multi Assistant, when the FOMA terminal is closed, while a call is on hold or during a packet transmission. Also, the setting may not be available when a function is performed from Submenu.

# Answering Calls by Pressing Any Key

Default setting **ON**

Set Any key answer so that calls can be answered with the keys other than the ones normally used.

	Normal	Any key answer
Voice call		[1] to [9], [0], [X], [M], [R], [E], [D], [M], [C], [CLR], [MULT], [ECO]*, [TV]*
Videophone	,	-
PushTalk	,  (P)	[1] to [9], [0], [X], [M], [R], [E], [D], [M], [C], [CLR], [MULT], [ECO]*, [TV]*

\* Calls cannot be answered with [ECO] or [TV] when One Seg is activated.

- Refer to P. 51, P. 67 for details on being resumed/started while on hold.

**1** In stand-by, press [6] [3] [1] and [1] [ON].

## Rotation-link Repl

# Answering Calls by Rotating the Display

Default setting **ON**

When a voice/Videophone call or PushTalk is received in the Cycloid position, return to the normal position to answer the call.

- When a Videophone call is received, calls can be answered with your image.

**1** In stand-by, press [6] [3] [3] and [1] [ON].

## Set When Folded

# Closing the FOMA Terminal to End/Hold Calls

Default setting Phone/Videophone: **Finish call**, PushTalk: **Speaker phone**

**1** In stand-by, press [6] [7] and select a close operation.

Phone/Videophone	[1] [1]	To set to Hold sound (with hold tone)
	[1] [2]	To set to Finish Call
	[1] [3]	To set to Silent (without hold tone)
PushTalk	[2] [1]	To set to Finish transmission
	[2] [2]	To play the other party's voice through the speakers

### Note

- When set to **Hold sound, hold tone** plays. Hold tone can be changed ( P. 68). For Videophone calls, the image set in **Hold image** is sent to the other party.
- When set to **Silent**, hold tone does not sound. For Videophone calls, if the **Substitute image** is a still picture, the still picture is sent to the other party. **Chara-den** is sent to the other party if set.
- When set to **Hold sound** or **Silent**, open the FOMA terminal to resume the call.
- If a device such as a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately) is connected, the call can continue while the handset is closed, regardless of **Hold sound**, **Silent** or **Finish call** settings.

For Videophone calls, the set substitute image is sent to the other party. Open the FOMA terminal to send camera image to the other party ( P. 78).

## Note

- For voice/Videophone calls, if the earphone/microphone is disconnected while the FOMA terminal is closed, the call will become mute when **Silent** or **Finish call** is set, or the call is put on hold when **Hold sound** is set. The call resumes when the earphone/microphone is reconnected or the handset is opened. For **PushTalk**, if the earphone/microphone is disconnected while the FOMA terminal is closed, the call can be continued through the speaker whether set to **Finish call** or set to **Speaker phone**.
- For PushTalk, when **Speaker phone** is set, open the FOMA terminal to retrieve the transmission status of **Hands-free PT**.

## Earpiece Volume

# Adjusting the Volume During a Call

Default setting **Volume 5**

### Select from ten earpiece volume levels during a call.

- If earpiece volume is raised for a call, noise may occur depending on the surroundings. Use at an appropriate volume.
- The volume remains at an adjusted level even when the handset is turned off or the battery pack is removed.

## 1 During a call, press or .



Earpiece volume screen

- Refer to P. 119 for details on adjusting the earpiece volume when in stand-by.
- Alternatively, press   during a Videophone call.

## 2 Press (louder) or (softer) to adjust.

- After adjusting the volume, press  or , or wait approximately two seconds and the previous screen reappears.

## Note

- Press  (louder) or  (softer) to adjust the volume when the FOMA terminal is closed during a transmission.

## On Hold

# Placing Calls On Hold

### Place voice/Videophone calls on hold which cannot be answered immediately.

- The other party is charged for the call while on hold.

## 1 While a ring tone is sounding, press .

- When a voice call is received, the other party hears the hold tone ( P. 68), and the call is placed on hold.
- When a Videophone call is received, the other party hears the hold tone ( P. 68), and the On hold image set by your FOMA terminal is sent to the other party with **On hold** superimposed.
- To disconnect a call while on hold, press  (The call is saved in Received calls).
- When the other party disconnects the call while on hold, the call is saved in Received calls.
- If subscribed to Call Forwarding Service or Voice Mail Service, a received call is forwarded to the set destination or connected to the Voice Mail Service center ( P. 65).

## 2 Press when ready to answer.

- For Videophone, press  to send a substitute image and answer the call.

# Setting On Hold Tone

Default setting *On hold tone 1*

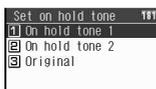
## Set the on hold guidance that the other party hears.

- Select *On hold tone 1* (Japanese), *On hold tone 2* (English) or recorded voice memo.

On hold tone 1 ... たいだいま電話に出ることができません。そのままお待ちになるか、しばらくたってからおかけ直してください。

On hold tone 2 ... I can't take your call now. Please hold the line for a moment or call me back later, thank you.

## 1 In stand-by, press **⓪** **1** **8** **1** and select a hold tone.



To set the guidance language	①: Japanese/②: English
To set after recording voice memo	③ ① → record → ② [Play] → select memo → ⓪ ● Press ⓪ to abort recording.
To set recorded Stand-by voice memo	③ ② → select memo → ⓪
To apply Function lock to voice memo	③ ③ → enter terminal security code → ⓪ → ① ● To disable Function lock: Press ②.

- To play back, select *On hold tone 1* or *On hold tone 2* and press ⓪. Press ⓪ again to stop playback and the previous screen reappears.

## Set Hold Tone

# Setting Hold Tone

Default setting *Hold melody 1*

## Set the hold tone that the other party hears.

- The hold tone plays at the same volume as the earpiece volume.

## 1 In stand-by, press **⓪** **1** **8** **2** and select a hold tone.



To set Hold melody	① [Hold melody 1]/② [Hold melody 2]
To set after recording voice memo	③ ① → record → ② [Play] → select memo → ⓪ ● Press ⓪ to abort recording.
To set recorded Stand-by voice memo	③ ② → select memo → ⓪
To apply Function lock to voice memo	③ ③ → enter terminal security code → ⓪ → ① ● To disable Function lock: Press ②.

- To play back, select *Hold melody 1* or *Hold melody 2* and press ⓪. Press ⓪ again to stop playback and the previous screen reappears.

## Public Mode (Drive Mode)

# Using Public Mode (Drive Mode)

**Public mode is an automatic answering service used to ensure manner in public places. When a voice call is received, the caller hears a message indicating you are driving or otherwise unable to speak (on the train, bus, in a movie theater, etc.) and the call is disconnected.**

- Activating/Deactivating Public mode is only available in stand-by (Available even when 圏外 (Out of service area) is showing on the screen).
- Calls can be made normally in Public mode.
- This function is not available during data transmissions.
- A message requesting caller ID is played when *User unset* calls are received while Caller ID Request is set to "Activate" (The Public mode message is not played).

## 1 In stand-by, press **ⓧ** for 1+ seconds.

- Public mode is set and 車 appears.
- A message stating the owner of the phone is driving or is in a place that does not allow mobile phone use is played to the other party.
- If Manner mode is also set, Public mode setting is prioritized.

## Disabling Public Mode (Drive Mode)

### 1 In stand-by, press for 1+ seconds.

- Public mode is disabled and  disappears.

### When Public mode (Drive mode) is set

A ring tone does not sound when a voice/Videophone or PushTalk call is received. **xx missed call(s)** appears and the call is saved in Received calls ( P. 53).

- When a voice call is received, the caller hears a message indicating that you are driving or otherwise unable to speak and the call is disconnected. When a Videophone call is received, Public mode video guidance is played to the other party and the call is disconnected. If the handset is turned off or in a place with no signal, the guidance for outside service area plays.
- The FOMA terminal will not vibrate when i-mode mail, SMS or Message R/F is received even if Vibration mode is set. Although a ring tone does not sound, the message is received automatically, and received mail icon appears.
- When data transmission is received, vibrator, ring tone and called LED do not activate.
- An incoming PushTalk is automatically disconnected and **Connection failed** appears on the caller's display. Driving mode status can be notified to all connecting members if 3+ people have participated.

### When a call is received while Public mode (Drive mode) and various services are set

Service	When a voice call is received	When a Videophone call is received
Voice Mail Service (  P. 392)	A ring tone does not sound, a message indicating that you are driving or otherwise unable to speak plays, and the caller is connected to the Voice Mail Service center. The call is saved in Received calls.*1	Public mode video guidance is not played to the other party and is connected to the Voice Mail Service center.
Call Forwarding Service (  P. 395)	The call is not connected, a message indicating that you are driving or otherwise unable to speak plays, and the call is forwarded to the set destination. The call is saved in Received calls.*2	The call is not connected and forwarded immediately. However, if the forwarding number is not a 3G-324M (  P. 48) compliant Videophone, the call is disconnected. The call is saved in Received calls.
Call Waiting (  P. 394)	A ring tone does not sound and the caller hears a message indicating that you are driving or otherwise unable to speak and the call is disconnected. The call is saved in Received calls.	A ring tone does not sound. The Public mode video guidance is played to the other party and the call is disconnected. The call is saved in Received calls.
Nuisance Call Barring Service (when a call is received from a barred number) (  P. 396)	The call is not connected, call rejection message is played to the other party and the call ends. The call is not saved in Received calls.	The Call Rejection video guidance is played to the other party and the call is disconnected. The call is not saved in Received calls.
Caller ID Request Service (  P. 397)	When the caller ID is not sent	The call is not connected, caller ID request message plays and the call ends. The call is not saved in Received calls.
	When the caller ID is sent	A ring tone does not sound and the caller hears a message indicating that you are driving or otherwise unable to speak and the call is disconnected. The call is saved in Received calls.
		The Caller ID request video guidance is played to the other party and the call is disconnected. The call is not saved in Received calls.
		The Public mode video guidance is played to the other party and the call is disconnected. The call is saved in Received calls.

\*1 The message is not heard when Voice Mail Service ring time is set to **0 seconds** and the call is immediately connected to the center. The call is not saved in Received calls.

\*2 The message is not heard when Call Forwarding Service ring time is set to **0 seconds** and the call is immediately connected to the destination. The call is not saved in Received calls.

#### Note

- Even if the alarm time arrives in Public mode, the alarm does not sound. Called LED, vibrator and sub display are not activated.

## Using Public Mode (Power OFF)

Public mode (power OFF) is an automatic answering service used to ensure manner in public places. Set Public mode (power OFF) to play a message for the caller indicating that the power is off and you are unable to speak (in a hospital, airplane, train near the priority seats), and the call ends.

### 1 In stand-by, press 2 5 2 5 1 .

- Public mode (power OFF) is set (Nothing changes in stand-by).
- When a call is received while Public mode (power OFF) is set, a message indicating that the owner of the phone is currently in a place that does not allow mobile phone use is played.

### Disabling Public mode (power OFF)

### 1 In stand-by, press 2 5 2 5 0 .

- Public mode (power OFF) is disabled.

### Checking Public mode (power OFF) setting

### 1 In stand-by, press 2 5 2 5 9 .

- Check the current setting.

### When Public mode (power OFF) is set

Public mode (power OFF) remains set until disabled. Setting is not canceled when the power is turned ON. The Public mode (power OFF) message is played when the handset is outside the service area or in a place with no signal. When a call is received, a message indicating that the owner of the phone is in a place that does not allow mobile phone use is played and the call is disconnected. An incoming PushTalk is automatically disconnected and **Connection failed** appears on the caller's display. Members are notified that the owner of the phone is not a participant in the call when 3+ people have participated.

### When a call is received while Public mode (power OFF) and various services are set

Service	When a voice call is received	When a Videophone call is received
Voice Mail Service (  P. 392)	A message stating the owner of the phone is in a location in which the handset must be turned off is played and the call is automatically connected to the Voice Mail Service center.*1	The Public mode video guidance is not played to the other party and is connected to the Voice Mail Service center.
Call Forwarding Service (  P. 395)	A message stating that the owner of the phone is in a location in which the handset must be turned off is played and the call is forwarded to the set destination. The Public mode (power OFF) guidance setting follows Call Forwarding Service guidance settings (  P. 395).*2	The call is immediately forwarded without playing the Public mode (power OFF) video guidance. If the destination does not support Videophone calls, the call is disconnected without forwarding.
Nuisance Call Barring Service (when a call is received from a barred number) (  P. 396)	The Call Rejection guidance is played to the other party and the call is disconnected.	The Call Rejection video guidance is played to the other party and the call is disconnected.
Caller ID Request Service (  P. 397)	When the caller ID is not sent	The Caller ID request message is played and the call is disconnected.
	When the caller ID is sent	The Public mode (power OFF) message is played and the call is disconnected.
		The Caller ID request video guidance is played and the call is disconnected.
		The Public mode (power OFF) video guidance is played and the call is disconnected.

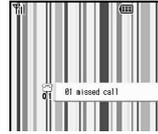
- \*1 The message is not heard when Voice Mail Service ring time is set to **0 seconds** and the call is immediately connected to the center. The call is not saved in Received calls.
- \*2 The message is not heard when Call Forwarding Service ring time is set to **0 seconds** and the call is immediately connected to the destination. The call is not saved in Received calls.

## Missed Calls

### Checking Missed Calls

If an incoming call is not answered, **xx missed call(s)** and the number of missed calls appear in stand-by (Missed Calls).

- When missed calls are checked or **CLR** is pressed for 1+ seconds, **xx missed call(s)** disappears.
- Missed calls are also indicated by LED (☎ P. 140).



Main display



Sub display

#### 1 When **xx missed call(s)** appears in stand-by, press **END**.

- Alternatively, press **END** (**\*CALL**) to check Received calls (☎ P. 54).

#### 2 Select **☎ xx missed call(s)** and press **END**.

- **☎** appears next to missed calls.



#### 3 Select a phone number and press **END**.

- Missed call details appear.
- Use the same operations as Received calls to make calls and check other entries in Received calls.

## Record Message (Voice/Videophone Calls)

### Recording Messages When Calls Cannot Be Answered

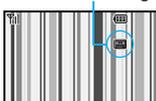
Set **Record message** to record messages when a call cannot be answered. When a voice call is received, a voice message is played and the caller's message is recorded. When a Videophone call is received, a reply image is sent and the caller's message and image are recorded.

- Record message is not available when the FOMA terminal is turned off or outside the service area. This function is convenient when used in conjunction with Network Voice Mail Service.
- Record up to three Record messages for voice calls (about 15 seconds each). Voice memos recorded during a voice call or in stand-by are also included in these three Record messages for voice calls.
- Record up to two Record messages for Videophone calls (about 15 seconds each).
- The number of recorded messages appearing in stand-by is the total number of Record messages for voice/Videophone calls.
- Record message cannot be set or disabled in Manner mode.

## Setting Record Message (Voice/Videophone Calls)

#### 1 In stand-by, press **END** **6** **5** **1** and **1** **[ON]**.

Record message



- Record message is set. Press **END** to return to stand-by and **☎** appears.
- When a message is recorded, an icon appears to show the number of messages. Example: **☎** (for one message), **☎** (for two messages), etc.
- When there are three Record messages (voice calls) and two Record messages (Videophone), **☎** appears and Record message does not respond when a voice/Videophone call is received. Delete unnecessary messages to reactivate Record message.

## Note

- For **Voice Mail Service**, record up to 20 messages of up to three minutes each. When Voice Mail Service is set, messages are saved at the Voice Mail Service center even if there are three Record messages (voice calls) and two Record messages (Videophone).
- Refer to P. 74 for details on playing and deleting Record messages.
- When Record message is set by Record message settings or Manner mode settings, Record message will automatically answer.
- The reply image for Record messages for Videophone can be set in **Videophone reply image**.

## Disabling Record message

### 1 In stand-by, press **6** **5** **1** and **2** [OFF].

- Record message is disabled. Press **☎** to return to stand-by and **☎** disappears.

## When Record Message (Voice/Videophone Calls) Is Set

### 1 When a call is received, Record message is activated after set answering duration (☞ P. 73).

Voice call reply message



Main display



Sub display

Videophone reply message



Main display



Sub display

- When a voice call is received, the caller hears a voice guidance.
- When a Videophone call is received, after **Preparing message. Please wait** appears, the reply image for Record message (Videophone) appears. When a Videophone call is received, the caller hears a reply message and sees a reply image.
- Press **☎** to answer a call while playing a reply message, recording sounds or movies. Press **☎** to answer a Videophone call with a substitute image sent.

### 2 Record the caller's message.

Voice call record message

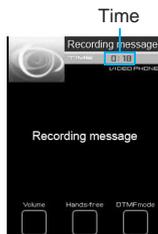


Main display



Sub display

Videophone record message



Main display



Sub display

- The indicator and time are an estimate.
- After the message is recorded, the previous screen reappears.
- While a message is recorded (voice call), the caller's voice can be heard through the earpiece (When Manner mode is set, caller's voice cannot be heard through the earpiece). The caller hears a beep when recording starts.
- While a message is recorded (Videophone), the other party's image does not appear on the screen but is recorded.
- Record message (voice call) may not be saved if three seconds or less.
- When a call is answered while a message is being recorded, the voice or Videophone message is recorded until the call is received.

## Note

- Saved contents may be lost due to malfunctions, repairs or other handling of the FOMA terminal. DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss of content. It is recommended that a memo be kept of contents for Record message (voice/Videophone calls).
- Recording may be cut off depending on signal strength.
- During Record messages (Videophone), the reply image set on your FOMA terminal is sent to the other party with **Record message** superimposed.
- During recording, calls from a third party cannot be answered. The third party hears a busy signal.
- Messages that indicate outside the service area, changed phone number, Voice mail starting, etc. cannot be recorded.
- Record message is not available when **Public mode (Drive mode)** is set.

## Related Operations

### Set the message response time <Answering duration>

In stand-by, press **⓪** **6** **5** **2** ▶ enter answering duration (three digits: 000 to 120 seconds) ▶ **⓪**.

- To set response time for Record message immediately started: Enter **000 seconds**.

### Set reply messages <Reply message>

**1** In stand-by, press **⓪** **6** **5** **3**.

**2** Select the type of messages ▶ **⓪**.

- To record original message: Press **3** **1** ▶ record ▶ **2** ▶ select memo ▶ **⓪**.
- To set original message: Press **3** **2** ▶ select memo ▶ **⓪**.
- To play/stop message: Press **⓪**.

### Set the reply image for Videophone record message <V.phone reply image>

In stand-by, press **⓪** **6** **5** **4** ▶ select folder ▶ **⓪** ▶ select still picture ▶ **⓪**.

- To check the still picture: Select still picture ▶ **⓪**.

## Note

### Answering duration

- Answering duration applies to Record messages for both voice calls and Videophone calls.
- The default setting is **13 seconds**.
- Cannot be set to the same time as Auto answer.
- When Record message is set simultaneously with **Voice Mail Service** or **Call Forwarding Service**, the priority will depend on the set ringing time.  
To prioritize Record message, set answering duration shorter than for Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding Service.

### Reply message

- The default setting is **Reply message 1** for Reply message.
- **Reply message 1** and **Reply msg 2(Eng)** are preset.  
Reply message 1 . . . . . ただいま電話に出ることができません。ピーツという発信音のあとに、お名前とご用件をお話してください。
- Reply message 2 (Eng) . . . . I can't take your call now. Please leave your message, thank you.
- Returns to default setting when original reply message is deleted (P. 75).
- Press **⓪** to abort recording.

### Videophone reply image

- Use JPEG or GIF images saved in My picture of **Data box** that are set to **QCIF: 176×144 (W×H)**.  
Animated GIFs are not available.
- Still pictures that are restricted for output from the FOMA terminal are not available.
- The default setting is テレビ電話代替.

# Recording Messages When Incoming Calls Cannot Be Answered

Record a message for an incoming voice/Videophone call when Record message is not set.

## 1 During an incoming call, press [7] for 1+ seconds.

- Alternatively, press [1] [Record message] during an incoming voice call. Recording starts after a voice guidance is played.
- During an incoming Videophone call, press [2] [Record message] as an alternative. After **Preparing message. Please wait** appears, the reply image for Record message (Videophone) appears and recording starts.
- Refer to P. 71 for details on Record messages.

## Play/Delete Recorded Messages or Voice Memos

# Playing/Deleting Recorded Messages or Voice Memos

Play or delete recorded messages and voice memos (during call and in stand-by).

## Playing Recorded Messages or Voice Memos

The Playback volume follows the Earpiece volume (P. 67) settings.

- Refer to P. 382 for details on recording voice memos.

## 1 In stand-by, press [9] [2] [8] [5] and press [2] [Play].



Memo list

- Alternatively, press [7] for 1+ seconds in stand-by, and press [2].

### When xx message(s) xx V.phone message(s) appears

- In stand-by, press [2], select [Memo], press [2] and press [2].
- [Memo] appears next to memos that have not been played.

### Types of message/memo

	Voice memo during call
	Record message
	Voice memo in stand-by

### Phone type

No icon	Voice call
	Videophone call

## 2 Select memo and press [2] [Play].

Indicator



Record message for voice calls

- The indicator is an estimate.
- Name and number do not appear for User unset calls and voice memos in stand-by.
- Press [2] to stop playback. Memo list appears, press [2] again to play from the beginning during playback. Select a memo and press [2] to play other memos during playback.
- Playback of recorded messages and voice memos automatically stops when a call is received.
- Playback of recorded messages and voice memos automatically stops when alarm sounds at set alarm time.
- When Show received calls is set to **OFF**, the memo list does not appear and recorded messages and voice memos cannot be played or deleted.

## Deleting Recorded Messages or Voice Memos

1 In memo list (☞ P. 74), select a memo and deletion method.

To delete one	☎ 1 → Yes → ⏪
To delete all	☎ 2 → Yes → ⏪

### Related Operations

Lock Recorded message and Voice memo <Function lock>

In stand-by, press ⏪ 9 2 8 5 ▶ 3 ▶ enter terminal security code ▶ ⏪ 1.

## Chara-den

- Refer to P. 313 for details on Chara-den.

## Sending Chara-den as Substitute Image <Change Send Img>

Default setting *Dimo*

During a Videophone call, send a character to the other party in place of a camera image.

1 During a Videophone call, press ☎ 3 3 [Chara-den], select a folder, press ⏪, select a Chara-den and press ⏪ [OK].

- If Chara-den is already set as substitute image (☞ P. 78), press ☎ [Subst img] during a Videophone call to send the image. When a Videophone call is received, press ☎ [Subst img] to answer the call with Chara-den.

### Note

- When DTMF mode is set to **ON**, the Chara-den key operations become unavailable because of the **touch-tone signals** sent with the dial keys.
- To switch to テレビ電話代替, delete *Dimo* and perform **Reset settings**.

## Preset Chara-den

The following Chara-den are preset.

### Dimo

Dimo is capable of showing emotions such as happiness and anger, and can perform various body actions.



### Full-action mode action list

Number (key operation)	Action	Number (key operation)	Action
1	笑う (Laugh)	6	NG
2	泣く (Cry)	7	サメ (Shark look)
3	怒る (Angry)	8	博士風メガネ (Doctor-look glasses)
4	こんにちは (Hello)	9	ガーン (Oh my God)
5	OK		

- Press 0 to abort action.
- Dimo does not support Part-action mode.

## ■ キャラ (女性) Woman

This character is a Japanese businesswoman. She can perform a variety of actions such as expressing happiness and distress, waving her hands and tilting her head.



### Full-action mode action list

Number (key operation)	Action
①	喜ぶ (Happy)
②	怒る (Angry)
③	哀しむ (Sad)
④	投げキッス (Blow a kiss)
⑤	驚く (Surprised)
⑥	ゴメン (Apology)
⑦	恥ずかしー (Embarrassed)
⑧	ずっこけ (Whoa ho ho!)
⑨	バーン! (Bang!)

- Press ⑩ to abort action.

### Part-action mode action list

Number (key operation)	Action
①①	(右腕) 手を振る (ループ) (Wave right hand (loop))
①②	(左腕) 手を振る (ループ) (Wave left hand (loop))
①③	(顔) うなづく (Nod head)
①④	(右腕) おいでおいで (ループ) (Beckon with right hand (loop))
①⑤	(左腕) おいでおいで (ループ) (Beckon with left hand (loop))
①⑥	(顔) 左右ブルブル (Shake head sideways)
①⑦	(顔) 右に傾ける (Tilt head to the right)
①⑧	(顔) 左に傾ける (Tilt head to the left)

## ■ キャラ (男性) Man

This character is a Japanese businessman. He can perform a variety of actions such as nodding his head, laughing and raising his hands.



### Full-action mode action list

Number (key operation)	Action
①	うなづく (Nod head)
②	笑う (Laugh)
③	怒る (Angry)
④	驚く (Surprised)
⑤	悩む (Worried)
⑥	携帯電話 (Mobile phone)
⑦	決めポーズ (Last posing)

- Press ⑩ to abort action.

### Part-action mode action list

Number (key operation)	Action
①①	右手を上げる (Raise right hand)
④④	右手を下げる (Put right hand down)
③③	左手を上げる (Raise left hand)
⑥⑥	左手を下げる (Put left hand down)
⑧⑧	通常ズーム (Normal zoom in)
⑨⑨	ズームアップ (Zoom in)

## Switching Chara-den During a Videophone Call <Change Chara-den>

Switch to send a different Chara-den during a Videophone call.

- 1 While sending Chara-den as a substitute image, press **Ⓜ** **⓪** **②** **①** [Change Chara-den], select a folder, press **⓪**, select Chara-den and press **Ⓜ** [OK].

## Switching Between Full-action and Part-action <Change Action>

Switch between full-action and part-action while displaying Chara-den.

- 1 While sending Chara-den as a substitute image, press **⓪** for 1+ seconds or **Ⓜ** **⓪** **②** **②** [Change action].

- Modes are switched between full-action and part-action.

## Making Chara-den Perform Actions

Make Chara-den perform actions.

- Alternatively, enter the action number by pressing [1] to [9] to have the character perform an action.
- For preset Chara-den actions, refer to P. 75.
- In Full-action mode, express emotions such as 笑う (laughing) and 怒る (angry).
- Change to Part-action mode to move body parts, jump and dance.
- Perform different actions together in Part-action mode.
- Some Chara-den move the mouths, synchronizing with sound from a microphone.
- For others, actions may not be available.
- Depending on the Chara-den, some actions are performed automatically.

### 1 While sending Chara-den as a substitute image, press [Action], press [0] for 1+ seconds or press [0] [2] [3] [Action list].



To perform action	Select an action → [0] ● To end action: Press [0].
To display details	[0]

## Setting the Image to Send to the Other Party

### Changing Image to Send During Call <Change Send Img>

Change the image to send during a Videophone call.

- Use JPEG or GIF images saved in My picture of Data box that are set to **QCIF: 176×144** (W×H). Animated GIFs are not available.
- Still pictures that are restricted for output from the FOMA terminal are not available. Images shot with the FOMA terminal are available regardless of File restriction (Images shot with Picture memo are not available).
- Still pictures saved onto a microSD Memory Card are not available directly. Copy to the **Acquired data** folder in My picture of the FOMA terminal handset.

### 1 During a Videophone call, press [0] [3] [Change send img] and select image to send.



©Disney

- Press [0] [Subst img] during a Videophone call to send the substitute image set by Substitute image. Press [0] [My side] to return to the self-portrait.

My side	[1]
Substitute image	[2] → select folder → [0] → select still picture → [0]
Chara-den	[3] → select folder → [0] → select Chara-den → [0]

- This setting is disabled when a Videophone call ends.

## Related Operations

### Zoom in and zoom out <Zoom in/Zoom out>

- 1 During a Videophone call, press [0] or [0].
- 2 Press [0] (zoom in) or [0] (zoom out).
  - Press [0] for the maximum zoom and [0] for the minimum zoom.

## Related Operations

### Switch between main camera and sub camera <Main/sub camera>

During a Videophone call, press or .

- To switch to the sub camera: Press or again.

### Send a still picture from Data box <File playback>

During a Videophone call, press select folder select still picture .

- To send own camera image: Press or .

### Adjust brightness <Brightness>

During a Videophone call, press for 1+ seconds (brighter) or for 1+ seconds (darker).

#### Note

#### Zoom in/Zoom out

- Set up to 20 zoom levels for the main camera and two zoom levels for the sub camera.
- Zoom is not available while substitute images are being sent.
- Zoom is not available for the other party's image.
- When the cameras are switched or a Videophone call ends, zoom is disabled.

#### Main/Sub camera

- Returns to the sub camera after a Videophone call ends.
- If the battery level is or less or if the camera area gets hotter, **Unable to use the main camera at the moment** appears and the main camera becomes unavailable. The main camera in use switches to the substitute image. The sub camera cannot be switched to the main camera.
- When DTMF mode is set to **OFF**, press to switch the cameras.

#### Brightness

- , , , , or appears in the upper part of the display.
- Brightness is reset after a Videophone call ends.
- Brightness cannot be adjusted while a substitute image is being sent.

## Changing Image When Making a Call <V.phone Image>

### 1 Enter a phone number, press [V.phone image] and select an image to send.

- To call from the redial details/received calls/phonebook entry details screen, press .
- The setting is only enabled for one time.

My side	
Chara-den	→ select folder →  → select Chara-den → ● To check Chara-den, select Chara-den and press . Press  and the previous screen reappears.

## Setting a Substitute Image <Substitute Image>

Default setting **Dimo**

Set a still picture or Chara-den ( P. 313) as the substitute image during a Videophone call.

- Use JPEG or GIF images saved in My picture of Data box that are set to **QCIF: 176x144 (WxH)**. Animated GIFs are not available.
- Still pictures that are restricted for output from the FOMA terminal are not available.

### 1 In stand-by, press and select a substitute image.

Substitute image	→ select folder →  → select still picture →
Chara-den	→ select folder →  → select Chara-den →

- To check image, select an image and press . Press and the previous screen reappears.

## Note

- Press **Ⓢ** during a Videophone call to send the set substitute image.
- While sending a still picture as substitute image, the still picture is sent to the other party with **Camera Off** superimposed. If **Chara-den** is set, **Camera Off** does not appear.
- Substitute images are sent in the following order.

	Priority (high → low)
Image	Set substitute image in the phonebook → Set substitute image in the Videophone setting

## Related Operations

### Change On hold and Hold images <On hold image/Hold image>

- 1 In stand-by, press **Ⓢ** **6** **4** **2**.
- 2 For Hold image settings, press **2**.
  - To set On hold substitute image: Press **3**.
- 3 Select folder ▶ **Ⓢ** ▶ select image ▶ **Ⓢ**.

## Note

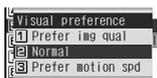
- The default setting is テレビ電話代替 for both.

## Setting Outgoing Image Quality <Visual Preference>

Default setting **Normal**

Set the quality of the image sent during a Videophone call.

### 1 In stand-by, press **Ⓢ** **6** **4** **5** and select an image quality.



- To set during a Videophone call, press **Ⓢ** **5** **3**.

Prefer img qual	<b>1</b>	To place emphasis on shape and color
Normal	<b>2</b>	To create a balance of clarity and movement
Prefer motion spd	<b>3</b>	To place emphasis on movement

## Note

- The image quality setting during a Videophone call is only temporary. When a Videophone call is ended, the image quality returns to the quality set in stand-by with **Ⓢ** **6** **4** **5** [Visual preference].
- Image quality settings for the sender and receiver during a Videophone call differ.

## Hands-free V.phone

### Setting Hands-free Videophone

Default setting **ON**

Set whether to automatically switch to Hands-free for Videophone calls. When Hands-free is set, hear the other party's voice through the speaker and talk while viewing their image.

- Please use in a place where it will not disturb others.
- Speak from approximately 20 to 40 cm away from the mouthpiece. When the surroundings are noisy, sound may break up and the call may not be satisfactory.

### 1 In stand-by, press **Ⓢ** **6** **4** **7** and **1** [ON].

## To Turn Hands-free On and Off During a Call

### 1 During a Videophone call, press .

- Press  to turn the Hands-free on and off.
-  appears during the Hands-free operation.

#### Note

- When using Hands-free outdoors or in a location where surroundings are noisy, use the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately).
- If sound breaks up during a Hands-free call, lower [Earpiece volume](#).

## Videophone Set

### Setting the Image During Videophone Calls

Change the image displayed during Videophone calls.

- Set the following items.

Item	Setting details	Default setting	Page
Brightness	Adjusts the brightness of camera image in five levels.	±0	P. 78
Display setting	Changes both party's display method.	Show me small	P. 80
Subscreen disp	Sets the location of the subscreen.	Upper left	P. 80
Lighting	Sets the light duration for the display for a Videophone call.	Always ON	P. 81
Self-portrait	Sets self-portrait to Reverse off, Reverse on, or Pause.	Reverse on	P. 81

#### Setting the Videophone Display <Display setting>

- Videophone display settings remain even after a Videophone call ends.
- Select from the following four settings.



Show me small



Other



Show me big



Me

### 1 During a Videophone call, press 5 1 [Display setting].

- Alternatively, press  6 4 3 in stand-by.

### 2 Select a display method and press .

#### Setting the Videophone Subscreen <Subscreen disp>

- If the subscreen is set to **Lower right**, the call duration, brightness and sent/received image icons appear on the lower left.
- The subscreen position setting remains even after a Videophone call ends.
- Select from the following two settings.



Upper left



Lower right

# 1 During a Videophone call, press **Ⓜ** **5** **2** [Subscreen disp].

- Alternatively, press **Ⓜ** **6** **4** **4** in stand-by.

# 2 Select a display location and press **Ⓜ**.

## Related Operations

### Set light <Lighting>

#### 1 During a Videophone call, press **Ⓜ** **5** **4**.

- In stand-by: Press **Ⓜ** **2** **7** **4** **1** **3**.

#### 2 Press **2**.

- For Same as normal: Press **1**.

### Send own image as still picture <Pause>

#### During a Videophone call, press **Ⓜ** **3** **5** **1**.

- To undo: Press **Ⓜ** or **CLR**.

### Set own image as normal image <Reverse on/off>

#### During a Videophone call, press **Ⓜ** **3** **5** **2**.

### Note

#### Lighting

- If **Same as normal** is set, the duration is what was set by normal of **Display light time**.
- Note that increasing light duration shortens the continuous stand-by time.
- The setting for Lighting remains even after a Videophone call ends.

#### Self-portrait (Pause, Reverse on/off)

- The image appears in normal orientation to the other party regardless of settings.
- Paused camera image can also be sent.
- **Reverse on** reverses image orientation as if viewing in a mirror. **Reverse off** returns image to normal.
- While substitute image is being sent, Self-portrait is not available.
- While paused, your image is sent to the other party with **Stopped** superimposed.
- Self-portrait is reset after a Videophone call ends.
- The image cannot be switched between the normal image and the mirrored image during a Videophone call in the Cycloid position.
- When the screen is rotated while paused, the FOMA terminal restarts operation.

## Changing Videophone Settings

### Redialing as Voice Call Automatically <Redial Voice Call>

Default setting **OFF**

When a Videophone call is not connected, the call is automatically switched to the voice call and made again.

# 1 In stand-by, press **Ⓜ** **6** **4** **1** and **1** [ON].

- If Videophone communication is started, Redial voice call is not performed.

### Note

- If a call is redialed as a voice call, voice call charges are incurred.

## Note

- Note that Redial voice call may not work if a call is placed to an ISDN synchronous 64K, PIAFS access point or an ISDN Videophone that does not support the 3G-324M standard (ITU-T P. 48) (as of January 2007), or if an invalid phone number is dialed by mistake. In addition, charges may be incurred.

## Notify Switch Mode

# Setting to Switch Between Voice Call and Videophone

Default setting Indication ON

This setting lets the other party know whether the FOMA terminal can be switched between voice call and Videophone.

- When Notify switch mode is set to "Deactivate", the other party cannot switch the call.
- Notify switch mode cannot be changed during voice calls, Videophone calls or outside the service area.

1 In stand-by, press and select the notify setting.

To activate	→ Yes →
To deactivate	→ Yes →
To check settings	

## Packet Trans Arr Act

# Selecting Actions for Incoming Videophone Calls During i-mode

Default setting V-phone priority

Set actions for Videophone calls received during packet transmission.

- Videophone calls, during PushTalk transmission, Software update, Pattern definitions update or data transmission using packet transmission, are rejected.

1 In stand-by, press and select an arrival action.

V-phone priority		Answers incoming Videophone calls.
Packet priority		Rejects incoming Videophone calls.
Voice mail		Automatically connects to Voice Mail Service.
Call forwarding		Automatically connects to Call Forwarding Service.

- V-phone priority** setting does not automatically end packet transmission unless the Videophone is answered (The packet transmission is disconnected when the call is answered).
- To set to **Voice mail** or **Call forwarding**, registration for the respective service is required.

## Picture Memo

# Saving Other Party's Image as a Still Picture

During a Videophone call, take a still picture of the other party.

- When Display Setting is set to **Me**, Picture memo cannot be selected.
- The shot size applicable to still picture is **QCIF: 176x144** (WxH).

1 During a Videophone call, press [Picture memo] and press .

- While still pictures are being shot, your image is sent to the other party with **Recording** superimposed.
- Shutter does not sound.
- The still picture is recorded and **Saving** appears.
- The picture is saved to the **Camera** folder in My picture of Data box.
- The picture cannot be output from the FOMA terminal.

# PushTalk

● PushTalk .....	84
● Sending PushTalk Transmissions .....	86
● Adding a Member During PushTalk Transmission .....	<Add Member>87
● Receiving PushTalk Transmissions .....	88
● Adding to PushTalk Phonebook .....	<Add to PushTalk Phonebook>89
● Using PushTalk Phonebook to Send PushTalk Transmissions .....	91
● Deleting PushTalk Phonebook Entries .....	92
● Setting PushTalk Send/Receive Options .....	<Set PushTalk>93

# PushTalk

Press the PushTalk key, recall PushTalk phonebook entries, select the other party and press the PushTalk key again to easily communicate with multiple people at once (up to five including yourself). Transmission fees are incurred each time the key is pressed (transmission is sent).

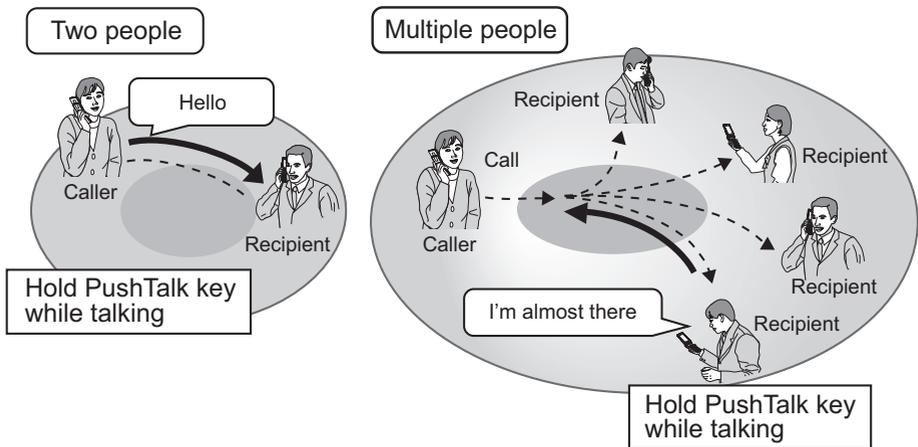
Voice can only be transmitted while the key is pressed. Other members can only listen while someone is speaking. Information about the members, such as who is currently speaking, is indicated on the screen.

PushTalk is useful when speaking to specific groups or conveying short information at the same time.

- Compatible models: 902i series, 902iS series, SO902iWP+, SH902iSL, N902iX HIGH-SPEED, N902iL, 903i series, 702i series (excluding SH702iD, N702iD, F702iD, D702i, SA702i, SO702i), 702iS series (excluding N702iS, D702iF, M702iS, M702iG), 703i series (excluding N703iD, F703i, D703i, P703iμ, N703iμ)

With the following models\*, members can join or re-join the conversation during transmission.

\* 903i series, 703i series (excluding N703iD, F703i, D703i, P703iμ, N703iμ)

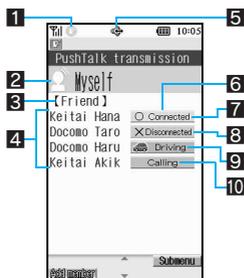


## PushTalkPlus

Use PushTalkPlus to access a phonebook saved on the network and to communicate with up to 20 people (including yourself) at once. In addition, enjoy other useful functions such as checking the status of other members with more convenient use than PushTalk. Subscription is required to use PushTalkPlus.

- Refer to the PushTalkPlus guide provided at the time of subscription for details of the service.

## PushTalk transmission screen layout



### 1 PushTalk icon



### 2 Speaker's name: Name of the person who is currently speaking (Phone number when not saved in phonebook)

Myself: When you are the speaker (has the right to speak)

No display: Nobody is speaking

?: When the speaker is not identified

Name appears if saved in the FOMA terminal handset phonebook. Image also appears if phonebook Picture call is set. If the call is transmitted from PushTalkPlus, the name saved in the network phonebook appears, and the image does not appear even if Picture call is set.

### 3 Group name: Group name saved in the PushTalk phonebook or the network phonebook appears.

### 4 Members: Name appears if saved in the FOMA terminal handset phonebook. If the call is transmitted from PushTalkPlus, the name saved in the network phonebook appears. Phone number appears for unregistered participants.

### 5 Hands-free icon



### 6 Status of members: Transmission status of each member is shown. When a status changes while connected, a tone indicating that the user is connected or disconnected (leaving PushTalk) sounds and the status shown changes.

- Scroll bar appears when all members cannot be shown on the screen at once. Scroll with  to view members.

### 7 Connected: Participating in PushTalk.

### 8 Disconnected\*: No reply, the other party has ended PushTalk, the other party is out of the service area or the other party has power turned off.

### 9 Driving\* : The other party has Public mode (Drive mode) set.

### 10 Calling\* : Ringing the other party.

\* Appears only when PushTalk transmission is in progress with three or more participants.

# Sending PushTalk Transmissions

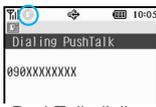
Use packet transmissions and press the PushTalk button to communicate easily. Have conversation one on one or with multiple people.

- Only one person can speak at once. Press  (P) to get the right to speak.
- Voice can only be transmitted when granted the right to speak. When granted the right to speak, other people's voices are inaudible.
- PushTalk charges are incurred for the caller while  (P) is pressed and right to speak is being granted.
- Save PushTalk phonebook entries to easily communicate with those members.

## 1 In stand-by, dial the phone number.

- Alternatively, use one of the following methods.
  - From the PushTalk phonebook ( P. 91)
  - From the FOMA terminal handset phonebook ( P. 107)
  - From Redial ( P. 53)
  - From Received calls ( P. 54)
  - Using Phone To function ( P. 195)

## 2 Press (P).



PushTalk dialing screen

-  flashes at the upper left of the display while dialing.
- When the other party replies, a tone indicating that the user is connected sounds,  lights and the PushTalk transmission screen appears.
- To switch to hands-free on and off, press  or . Switching is not available while  (P) is pressed.

## 3 Press (P) when speaker's name is blank. When *Myself* appears, speak while pressing (P).

- A right-obtained tone sounds when the right to speak is granted and *Myself* is shown for the speaker's name.
- An error tone sounds if  (P) is pressed while another person is speaking.
- Release  (P) when finished speaking. A right-released tone sounds.
- Adjust the volume during PushTalk transmission ( P. 67).

## 4 Press to end the transmissions.

- The number of times the right to speak was granted is shown and the stand-by display reappears.

### Note

- When talking in the Cycloid position, use a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately) or use [Hands-free](#). When using the earpiece to talk, make sure to switch to the normal position.
- When the caller disconnects the transmission, all participants are disconnected.
- PushTalk calls cannot be made to emergency numbers (110, 119, and 118).
- There is a time limit when speaking. If the right to speak keeps obtained for a set time, a tone indicating that the speaking time is over sounds and the right to speak is terminated.
- PushTalk is not available during voice calls, Videophone calls and data transmission.
- i-mode transmission is disconnected if PushTalk transmission is sent during i-mode.
- When [Set PushTalk arrival action](#) is set to **Answer**, press  to end PushTalk transmission and answer voice calls received during PushTalk transmission.
- When a voice call is received while a hands-free call is in progress, hands-free is disabled if the voice call is answered.
- i-mode is not available during PushTalk transmission.
- PushTalk is automatically disconnected when no one speaks for a set amount of time.
- When the PushTalk sender has set PushTalk [caller ID setting](#) to **Send ID**, phone numbers for the caller and all members are notified. If set to **No ID**, **No ID** appears for speaker and members' fields on the handsets of all the members who received the transmission. The phone number is important personal information. Be careful when sending caller ID.
- Approximate number of times the right to speak was obtained appears when PushTalk transmission is ended. 999 is the maximum value that appears. When exceeded, \*\*\* appears.

## Related Operations

### Send PushTalk transmissions from Received calls/Redial

In stand-by, press ▶ select Received calls ▶ (P).

In stand-by, press ▶ select Redial ▶ (P).

### Return to a PushTalk conversation with multiple members after disconnecting

When a PushTalk call for multiple members is answered and PushTalk is disconnected, or when a PushTalk call cannot be answered, the transmissions can only be rejoined by calling the member from the Received calls if the PushTalk transmissions are still in progress.

- If the PushTalk transmission has been ended, a new transmission is sent from you.

In stand-by, press ▶ select Received calls ▶ (P).

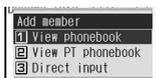
## Add Member

# Adding a Member During PushTalk Transmission

When a PushTalk sender is Myself, add a member during PushTalk transmission.

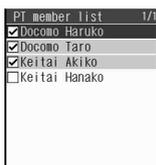
- When calling from PushTalkPlus, a member cannot be added.
- Even if a member is added during transmission, it is not recorded in Redial. It is not recorded in Received calls on the other party's terminal that has been already in transmission.

## 1 Press [Add member] during PushTalk transmission.



- Alternatively, press [Add member] during PushTalk transmission to add a member.

## 2 Select an adding method and send the transmission.



When a member is selected from PushTalk phonebook

To select a member from FOMA terminal handset phonebook	→ select a name →  [Dial]
To select a member from PushTalk phonebook	→ select a name and  (repeatable) →  [Dial]
To enter directly	→ enter phone number →  [Dial]

- Add up to five members including self as many times as necessary.
- The number of members that can be added at once is up to five followed by the next conditions.
  - When a member is selected from the PushTalk phonebook: Three
  - When a member is selected from the FOMA terminal handset phonebook or directly enter a number: One

## Note

- When the other party on the PushTalk transmission uses a model which does not support the Add member function, the other party's terminal may operate as follows:
  - When a member is added, the added member does not appear and a tone indicating that the member is connected does not sound.
  - When an added member speaks, ? appears for the speaker field.
  - When an added member leaves PushTalk, a tone indicating that the member is disconnected does not sound.
- When a PushTalk sender has set PushTalk **caller ID setting** to **Send ID**, the sender and all members' phone numbers are sent to all the members including the added members. If set to **No ID**, **No ID** appears for speaker and members' fields on the handsets of all the members including the added members. However, when the other party on the PushTalk transmission uses a model which does not support the Add member function, the added members do not appear on the other party's screen regardless of the caller ID setting.
- When **Function lock** is applied to the phonebook, a member to add cannot be selected from the FOMA terminal handset phonebook or PushTalk phonebook. Adding a member by direct input is not available while **Keypad dial lock** is set.

# Receiving PushTalk Transmissions

## 1 When PushTalk is received, ring tone sounds and called LED flashes.

## 2 Press () or .

- A PushTalk call can also be received with Any key answer ( P. 66).
- If a PushTalk call is received in the Cycloid position, return to the normal position to answer the call ( P. 66).
- A call is answered with hands-free if the FOMA terminal is closed. The operation follows Hands-free PT if the FOMA terminal is opened ( P. 94).
-  at the upper left of the display lights and the PushTalk transmission screen appears.
- Transmission procedures are the same as for "Sending PushTalk Transmissions" on P. 86.
- Adjust the volume during PushTalk transmission ( P. 67).
- Refer to the following for key operations while receiving a call.

	When FOMA terminal is open	When FOMA terminal is closed
Disconnected		
Quick silent (  P. 124)		
Manner mode (  P. 123)	 (for 1+ seconds)	 (for 1+ seconds)

## 3 Press to end the transmissions.

### Note

- When talking in the Cycloid position, use a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately) or use **Hands-free**. When using the earpiece to talk, make sure to switch to the normal position.
- When **Set auto answer** is set to **ON**, received PushTalk calls are automatically answered with hands-free. However, calls are not answered automatically even if Set auto answer is set to **ON** while in **Manner mode**.
- PushTalk cannot be placed on hold.
- To accept or reject calls from specified callers, set **Accept calls**, **Reject calls** and **Reject unknown**. The settings are common with voice/Videophone call. However, they are not applied to transmissions from the PushTalkPlus.
- PushTalk calls received during a voice call, Videophone call or data transmission are not connected. During a voice call, the call is recorded in Received calls and **xx missed call(s)** appears in stand-by. During a Videophone call or data communication, the call is not recorded.
- When a Videophone call, 64K data communication or different PushTalk call is received during PushTalk transmission, the call is recorded in Received calls and the PushTalk transmission is continued. When **Set PushTalk arrival action** is set to **Answer**, press  to end PushTalk transmission and answer voice calls received during PushTalk transmission. If Set PushTalk arrival action is set to other than **Answer**, the call is recorded in Received calls and the PushTalk transmission is continued.
- When **i-mode arrival action** is set to **PushTalk preferred**, i-mode transmission is disconnected and PushTalk is connected if PushTalk is received during i-mode. When set to **i-mode preferred**, PushTalk is not connected nor recorded in Received calls. The default setting is **PushTalk preferred**.
- When a PushTalk call is received while **Public mode (Drive mode)** is set and the handset is turned on, the call is not connected but is recorded in Received calls and **xx missed call(s)** appears in stand-by. **Driving** appears for the status on the other member's transmission screen. The message does not appear if the other party is one person.

# Adding to PushTalk Phonebook

Entries saved to the PushTalk phonebook are also saved to the FOMA terminal handset phonebook.

Save entry to the FOMA terminal handset phonebook and save the name, reading and one phone number to the PushTalk phonebook. Save entries already saved in the FOMA terminal phonebook to the PushTalk phonebook. Up to 750 entries can be saved in the PushTalk phonebook (👉 P. 96).

## Entry items

Icon	Item	Details
	Name	Enter name. Enter up to 32 single-byte (16 double-byte) characters.
R	Reading	Reading is entered automatically. Can be edited. Enter up to 32 single-byte characters.
	PushTalk group	Save the entry to a PushTalk group. Groups 1 to 9 are available. Group names can be changed.
	PushTalk phone number	Save phone number for PushTalk.

## 1 In stand-by, press (P) and press [1] [New] in the PushTalk member list screen (👉 P. 89).

- When the PushTalk group list screen appears, press [Member].

## 2 Select a saving method and save phonebook entry.

To select from phonebook	<p> [1] → select name → </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When multiple phone numbers are saved, select a phone number to use for PushTalk and press .</li> </ul>
To enter directly	<p> [2] → enter name →  → enter phone number →  → select phone number type icon →  →  → </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• FOMA terminal handset phonebook name entry screen appears.</li> <li>• Refer to P. 96 "Adding to FOMA Terminal Handset Phonebook" for details on saving methods.</li> <li>• When multiple phone numbers are saved, select a phone number to use for PushTalk after saving to the FOMA terminal handset phonebook and press .</li> </ul>

## PushTalk phonebook

Select a group from the PushTalk group list screen or select members from the PushTalk member list screens to send a transmission to the members saved in the PushTalk phonebook. Press [Member]/ [Group] to switch between the PushTalk group list screen and the PushTalk member list screen.



## Registering to PushTalk Group <Group>

Set groups in the PushTalk phonebook to easily call all members of a PushTalk group.

- Save up to 19 members per group. Up to four people can be called simultaneously.
- Set up to nine groups. Edit default group names (グループ1 to グループ9).

## ■ Creating a new PushTalk group <New group>

To create a new group, delete an already registered group from グループ 1 to グループ 9 in advance (☞ P. 93).

**1** In the PushTalk member list screen (☞ P. 89), press **☎** **5** **1** **1** [**New group**].

- In the PushTalk group list screen, press **☎** **1** **1**.

**2** Enter PushTalk group name and press **⊙**.

- Enter up to 20 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters for a PushTalk group name.

### Related Operations

#### Edit PushTalk group name <Edit group name>

- 1** In PushTalk member list screen, press **☎** **5** **2** ▶ **select group** ▶ **⊙**.
  - In the PushTalk group list screen: Select group ▶ **☎** **1** **2**.
- 2** Edit group name ▶ **⊙**.

## ■ Registering to PushTalk group <Add PushTalk group>

Save PushTalk phonebook entries that are already saved as PushTalk members.

**1** In the PushTalk member list screen (☞ P. 89), select name and press **⊙** [**Select**].

- When nothing is checked, only the entry at the position of the cursor is selected.

**2** Press **☎** **4** [**Add PushTalk group**].

**3** Select PushTalk group, press **⊙**, select location to save to and press **⊙**.

- If the selected location already has a member saved, the member is overwritten. The same phone number cannot be saved more than once to the same group.
- Selecting a save location is not necessary if multiple members are selected in step 1.

### Related Operations

#### Register to PushTalk group from PushTalk group list <Add PushTalk group>

- 1** In the PushTalk group list screen, select group ▶ **☎** or **☎** **1** **3**.
  - In the group member screen: Press **☎** or **☎** **2** **3**.
- 2** Select member and press **⊙** (repeatable) ▶ **⊙**.

## ■ Editing PushTalk phonebook entries <Edit data>

Change phone numbers and groups of saved PushTalk phonebook entries.

- 1 In the PushTalk member list screen (☎ P. 89), select name and press  [2] [Edit data].
- 2 Select item, press  and edit.
  - Other phone numbers saved to the FOMA terminal handset phonebook entry are available.
  - To change groups, select the group to change, press , check the save list and press .
- 3 Press  [Complete], select Yes and press .

## Using PushTalk Phonebook to Send PushTalk Transmissions

Call from the PushTalk phonebook. Save members in the PushTalk phonebook in advance.

### ■ Sending from PushTalk groups

- Transmit to up to four people at once.

#### 1 In stand-by, press (P) and select the other party.

- If a PushTalk member list screen appears, press  [Group].

To select group (to send PushTalk transmissions to all members of the group)	
To select multiple members from a group	Select group with  →  → select name  [Select] (repeatable) ( <input type="checkbox"/> → <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> ) <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● When nothing is checked, only the party at the position of the cursor is selected.</li></ul>

#### 2 Press (P).

- Transmission procedures are the same as "Sending PushTalk Transmissions" on P. 86.
- When transmission is sent with five or more members saved in a group, **Exceeds max number of simultaneous calls** appears. Select up to four members and send transmission.

### ■ Selecting the other party and sending a transmission

Select the other party from the PushTalk member list screen and send a transmission.

#### 1 In stand-by, press (P).

- If the PushTalk group selection screen appears, press  [Member].

#### 2 Select name and press .

- Alternatively, enter reading to search. The cursor moves to the closest entry after each character is entered.

#### 3 Press (P).

## Related Operations

### Receive transmissions automatically <Set auto answer>

In the PushTalk member list screen, press **Ⓜ** **6** **1** **▶** **1**.

### Set the ring duration <Ring time setting>

**1** In the PushTalk member list screen, press **Ⓜ** **6** **3**.

**2** Enter duration of ring tone (two digits: 01 to 60 seconds) **▶** **Ⓞ**.

### Set the operation when the phone is folded during PushTalk transmission

#### <Set when folded>

In the PushTalk member list screen, press **Ⓜ** **6** **4**.

- To end transmission: Press **1**.
- To play the other party's voice through the speakers: Press **2**.

#### Note

##### Set auto answer

- The default setting is **OFF**.
- When a call is received with Auto answer, the call is automatically switched to hands-free. Auto answer is not available while in Manner mode.
- The Set auto answer in the PushTalk phonebook is linked with the PushTalk in **Set auto answer**. Setting one of them to **ON** switches the other to **ON**.

##### Ring time setting

- The default setting is **30 seconds**.
- When calls are not answered within the set duration in a transmission with multiple people, **Disconnected** appears on the other members' transmission screens.
- Ring time setting cannot be selected when Set auto answer is set to **ON**.

##### Set when folded

- The default setting is **Speaker phone**.
- Select to end the transmission or activate speakers when the FOMA terminal is closed.
- The Set when folded in the PushTalk phonebook is linked with the PushTalk in the **Set when folded**. Changing one of them changes the other.

##### Network connection

- A **PushTalkPlus** subscription is required to use the network connection.

## Deleting PushTalk Phonebook Entries

### 1 In the PushTalk member list screen (P. 89), select a member and press **Ⓜ** **3** [Delete].

- When the PushTalk group list screen appears, press **Ⓜ** [Member].
- Member selection is not necessary for Delete all in group and Delete all.

### 2 Select deletion method.

To delete one phonebook entry	<b>1</b>
To delete entries collectively	<b>2</b> → select member <b>Ⓞ</b> (repeatable) → <b>Ⓜ</b> ● Press <b>Ⓜ</b> [SelAll]/ <b>Ⓜ</b> [ClrAll] to select or clear all.
To delete all entries in a group created in the FOMA terminal handset phonebook	<b>3</b> → select group → <b>Ⓞ</b> → enter terminal security code → <b>Ⓞ</b>
To delete all PushTalk phonebook entries	<b>4</b> → enter terminal security code → <b>Ⓞ</b>

### 3 Select a deletion method for the FOMA terminal handset phonebook, select Yes and press .

To only delete from PushTalk phonebook	
To also delete from the FOMA terminal handset phonebook	 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Entries are deleted from FOMA terminal handset phonebook and PushTalk phonebook.</li> </ul>

### Deleting PushTalk Groups <Delete>

#### 1 In the PushTalk group list screen ( P. 89), select group and press [Delete].

- When the PushTalk member list screen appears, press  [Group].

#### 2 Select a deletion method, select Yes and press .

To delete one group	
To delete all groups	

### Deleting Members from PushTalk Groups <Delete from Group>

#### 1 In the PushTalk group list screen ( P. 89), select group and press .

- When the PushTalk member list screen appears, press  [Group].

#### 2 Select member, press [Delete from group] and select a deletion method.

To delete one member	 → Yes → 
To delete members collectively	 → select member  (repeatable) →  → Yes →  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press  [SelAll]/ [ClrAll] to select or clear all.</li> </ul>
To delete all members in group	 → Yes → 

### Set PushTalk

## Setting PushTalk Send/Receive Options

Set the following items.

Item	Setting details	Page
Caller ID setting	Set to send own and group member's phone numbers when sending PushTalk transmission.	P. 94
Ring time setting	Set the duration to sound the PushTalk ring tone.	P. 122
Set auto answer	Set to automatically answer PushTalk transmissions.	P. 388
Set PT arrival act	Set actions for voice calls received during PushTalk transmissions.	P. 94
i-mode arrival act	Set to receive/reject PushTalk transmissions received during i-mode transmissions.	P. 199
Hands-free PT	Set whether to automatically switch to Hands-free when PushTalk transmissions start.	P. 94
Set when folded	Set <b>Finish call</b> or <b>Speaker phone</b> (other party's voice is heard through the speakers) to engage when the FOMA terminal is closed during a transmission.	P. 66
Set mute ring time	Set the number of seconds to delay the start of ring tone for calls from unknown callers and calls with no ID. This setting applies to both voice/Videophone calls.	P. 158

Item	Setting details	Page
Reconnect	Set to automatically reconnect when a transmission is disconnected due to signal conditions. This setting is applied to both voice/Videophone calls.	P. 62

## Sending Own and Member's Phone Number <Caller ID Setting>

Default setting **No ID**

### 1 In stand-by, press **☉ 6 6 1** and **1** [Send ID].

- Alternatively, press **@ 6 5** to select from the PushTalk member list screen.

#### Note

- Regardless of the Notify caller ID setting, when the PushTalk sender has set PushTalk caller ID setting to **Send ID**, the sender and all members' phone numbers are sent to all the members including the added members. If set to **No ID**, **No ID** appears for speaker and members fields on the handsets of all the members including the added members.  
However, when the other party on the PushTalk transmission uses a model which does not support the Add member function, the added members do not appear on the other party's screen regardless of the caller ID setting.
- When multiple caller ID settings are set/operated simultaneously at the time of PushTalk transmission, caller ID is prioritized in the following order.

	Priority (high → low)
Caller ID Setting	Caller ID is set when calling → PushTalk caller ID setting is set

## Selecting Actions for Incoming Calls During a Transmission

<Set PT Arrival Act>

Default setting **Answer**

Set actions for voice calls received during PushTalk transmissions.

### 1 In stand-by, press **☉ 6 6 2** and select an arrival action.

- Alternatively, press **@ 6 2** to select from the PushTalk member list screen.

Voice Mail	1	Automatically connect to Voice Mail Service.
Call Forwarding	2	Automatically connect to Call Forwarding Service.
Call Rejection	3	Reject calls.
Answer	4	Select to continue PushTalk transmission or end and answer the incoming voice call.

- To set to **Voice Mail** or **Call Forwarding**, subscription to the respective service is required. If **Voice Mail** or **Call Forwarding** is set without subscription, a voice call is set to **Answer**.

## Setting PushTalk Hands-free Operation <Hands-free PT>

Default setting **ON**

Set whether to automatically switch to Hands-free when PushTalk transmissions start.

- The setting is switched to hands-free regardless of Hands-free PT if the FOMA terminal is closed.

### 1 In stand-by, press **☉ 6 6 3** and press **1** [ON].

- Alternatively, press **@ 6 6** to select from the PushTalk member list screen.
- To disable: Press **2** [OFF].

#### Note

- The setting cannot be switched to hands-free while in **Manner mode** even if Hands-free PT is set to **ON**.

# Phonebook

- Phonebooks Available on FOMA Terminal ..... 96
- Adding to FOMA Terminal Handset Phonebook ..... <Add to Phonebook>96
- Saving to FOMA Card Phonebook ..... <Add to FOMA Card Phonebook>103
- Saving to Phonebook from Redial and Received Calls ..... 104
- Setting Groups ..... <Group Settings>105
- Making Calls from Phonebook ..... <Search Phonebook>107
- Editing Phonebook Entries ..... <Edit Entries>111
- Deleting Phonebook Entries ..... <Delete Entries>112
- Saving (Restoring/Updating) Phonebook to Data Storage Center  
..... <Data Sec. Service>112
- Hiding Private Numbers ..... <Set Secret>113
- Calling and Sending Mail with a Few Key Strokes ..... <2-touch Dialing/2-touch Mail>113
- Using Data Security Service ..... 114

# Phonebooks Available on FOMA Terminal

Use FOMA terminal handset phonebook and FOMA card phonebook. Save items such as names, phone numbers and mail addresses for FOMA terminal handset and FOMA card phonebooks.

The FOMA terminal also features a phonebook exclusively for PushTalk.

## FOMA Terminal Handset Phonebook, FOMA Card Phonebook and PushTalk Phonebook

- Entries saved in FOMA card phonebook are available even if your FOMA card is inserted into other FOMA terminals. To use phonebook on other FOMA terminals, save numbers in FOMA card phonebook.

	FOMA terminal handset phonebook	FOMA card phonebook	PushTalk phonebook
Number of entries	750	DoCoMo FOMA card: 50	750
Number of characters for name	Up to 32 single-byte (16 double-byte) characters	Single-byte alphanumerics: up to 21 characters Double-byte, mixed single-byte/double-byte or single-byte katakana: up to ten characters	Up to 32 single-byte (16 double-byte) characters
Reading	Up to 32 single-byte characters	Single-byte alphanumerics: up to 25 characters Double-byte, mixed single-byte/double-byte: up to 12 characters	Up to 32 single-byte characters
Group settings	20 groups	11 groups	Nine groups (PushTalk group  P. 90)
Icon	Phone number: seven types Mail address: four types	-	-
Memory numbers	000 to 749	-	-
Phone number	Three per entry (Up to 2,250 phone numbers can be saved in the phonebook)	One per entry	One per entry
Mail address	Three per entry (Up to 2,250 mail addresses can be saved in the phonebook)	One per entry	-

- : Not available

- In addition to the above items, save one entry per item for the following data in the FOMA terminal handset phonebook.

- |                  |                      |                          |
|------------------|----------------------|--------------------------|
| ■ Postal code    | ■ Select ring tone   | ■ Mail/Message LED color |
| ■ Postal address | ■ Mail ring tone     | ■ Mail LED pattern       |
| ■ Birthday       | ■ Called LED color   | ■ Image (Picture call)   |
| ■ Memo           | ■ Called LED pattern | ■ Substitute image       |

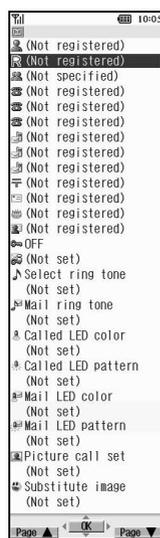
## Add to Phonebook

### Adding to FOMA Terminal Handset Phonebook

Register frequently used phone numbers, names and mail addresses to easily access when calling, or sending i-mode mail or SMS.

- Add still pictures, movies/i-motion, etc. shot with camera to phonebook entries. When a call is received from someone with an image in their phonebook entry, their name, phone number and image appear.
- Save to PushTalk phonebook when saving to the FOMA terminal handset phonebook.

## Entry items



FOMA terminal handset phonebook entry screen

Icon	Item	Details	Page
	Name	Enter name.	P. 98
	Reading	Reading is entered automatically. Can be edited.	P. 98
	Group	Entries can be sorted in groups.	P. 99
	Phone number	Save up to three numbers. Select from one of seven icons for each phone number.	P. 98
	Mail address	Save up to three addresses. Select from one of four icons for each address.	P. 98
	Postal code	Enter postal code.	P. 100
	Postal address	Enter postal address.	P. 100
	Birthday	Enter a birthday.	P. 100
	Memo	Save memos.	P. 100
	Secret	Keep privacy by hiding phonebook entries. Set to keep phonebook entries private.	P. 100
	Secret code	Enter secret code specified by the other party. Use when sending mail.	P. 100
	Select ring tone	Differentiate callers using specific ring tones or Chaku-motion.	P. 100
	Mail ring tone	Differentiate incoming mail using specific mail ring tones or Chaku-motion.	P. 100
	Called LED color	Differentiate incoming calls using specific LED colors.	P. 100
	Called LED pattern	Set called LED flashing pattern.	P. 100
	Mail LED color	Differentiate incoming mail using specific mail LED colors.	P. 100
	Mail LED pattern	Set Mail LED flashing pattern.	P. 100
	Picture call set	Differentiate incoming/outgoing calls using images. Specific image appears in phonebook list. One still picture or movie/i-motion shot with the camera can be saved.	P. 100
	Substitute image	Set still picture or Chara-den for when sending a substitute image during a Videophone call.	P. 101

### Note

- When upgrading the handset at a DoCoMo Shop or retailer, data saved in the FOMA terminal may not be copied depending on specifications of the new model.

**Note information saved in phonebook separately or transfer/store them on a PC using microSD Memory Cards (📄 P. 318) or DoCoMo keitai datalink (📄 P. 406). Data Security Service (📄 P. 112, P. 114, P. 159) (requires a separate subscription) allows you to store the phonebook entries of the FOMA terminal handset to the Data Storage Center.**

- Saved content may be lost due to malfunctions, repairs or other handling of the FOMA terminal. DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss of content.

## Basic Saving Operations

Save name, phone number and mail address.

### 1 In stand-by, press 2 and press 1 [Phone].

- If during a voice call, press 3 1.

### 2 Enter name and press .



FOMA terminal  
handset phonebook  
entry screen

- Enter up to 32 single-byte (16 double-byte) characters for name. Enter up to 32 single-byte characters for reading.
- Reading is automatically entered in R. Changes made to entered name are not reflected automatically.
- Reading is not automatically entered if symbols and pictographs are entered for name or when using 1-touch conversion.
- When reading is incorrect, select R, press and correct reading.

### 3 Select , press , enter phone number and press .



- Always dial the area code, even when the number is in the same area for landline phone numbers.
- Enter up to 26 digits for phone number.
- Phone number may include \* or # but call may not connect.
- i-mode mail and SMS are not sent properly when a number saved to the phonebook with 186 added is selected as the recipient.
- Press 0 for 1+ seconds and enter + and a phone number to save the phone number for an international call.
- Press to enter a pause P.
- Press CLR and the last digit or character at the cursor is deleted.
- Press CLR for 1+ seconds with the cursor at the end to delete the entire number. When the cursor is at another location, numbers after the cursor are deleted.

### 4 Select phone number type icon.



	Landline phone	1		Office phone	5
	Mobile phone	2		Home fax	6
	Videophone	3		Office fax	7
	Home phone	4			

- Repeat steps 3 and 4 to save multiple phone numbers.

### 5 Select , press , enter mail address and press .



- Enter up to 50 single-byte alphabet, numbers or symbols (not all symbols are available).
- Pictographs are not available.

To enter @ and period (.)	1 (multiple times)
To enter an Internet-related phrase	(for 1+ seconds) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Enter part of mail address easily ( P. 412).</li> <li>● Alternatively, press  (for 1+ seconds) and 5 [Internet].</li> </ul>

## 6 Select mail address type icon.

 Mobile phone mail address	<input type="text" value="1"/>	 Office mail address	<input type="text" value="3"/>
 Home mail address	<input type="text" value="2"/>	 Mail address	<input type="text" value="4"/>

- Repeat steps 5 and 6 to save multiple mail addresses.

## 7 Press [Complete] and enter memory number (three digits: 000 to 749).

- Enter name when **Complete** does not appear in guidance.
- Press  without entering memory number to save to the lowest available memory number between **010** and **749**. The lowest available number between **000** and **009** is used if the above is not available.
- Use 2-touch dialing to call people saved in memory numbers **000** to **099** ( P. 113).
- After entering memory number, **Store in PushTalk phonebook?** appears.

## 8 Select whether to save to PushTalk phonebook.

To save	Select <b>Yes</b> →  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● When two or more phone numbers are saved, select a phone number to use for PushTalk and press .</li> </ul>
To not save	Select <b>No</b> → 

### Note

- When **Set secret** is set to **ON**, phonebook entries cannot be overwritten. Set **Secret mode** to **ON**.
- To save a phone number or mail address when 750 entries are already saved on the FOMA terminal handset, select a memory number to overwrite an already existing phonebook entry (Entries in the FOMA card phonebook are not overwritten).
- Refer to “Checking Available Memory” on P. 332 to check the numbers of the registered entries and the remaining entries in the phonebook.
- Refer to P. 103 for details on copying to FOMA card.
- Refer to P. 322 for details on copying to microSD Memory Card.
- Refer to P. 332 for details on Ir exchange.
- Refer to P. 337 for details on iC transmission.

### Alternative methods to specifying memory number

- Enter digit in hundreds column and press .
  - Entry is saved to the lowest available memory number (**100** to **199** if  is entered).
- Enter hundreds and tens column and press .
  - Entry is saved to the lowest available memory number (**120** to **129** if   is entered).

### When i-mode mail, SMS or Message R/F is received during editing

- When **Receive display** is set to **Operation first**, receive results do not appear. Continue editing.

### Symbols and pictographs

- Enter symbols and pictographs for **Name**, **Memo** and **Postal address** in FOMA terminal handset phonebook. Symbols and pictographs may not appear properly when sent by Ir exchange to PCs and mobile phones not supporting i-mode.

## Related Operations

### Set groups <Select group>

In the phonebook entry screen, select    select group .

## Related Operations

### Save postal code

In the phonebook entry screen, select  ►  ► enter postal code ► .

### Save postal address

In the phonebook entry screen, select  ►  ► enter postal address ► .

- Enter up to 100 single-byte (50 double-byte) characters.

### Save birthday

In the phonebook entry screen, select  ►  ► enter birthday ► .

- Enter a birthday between January 1, 1900 and December 31, 2099.

### Save memo

In the phonebook entry screen, select  ►  ► enter memo ► .

- Enter up to 200 single-byte (100 double-byte) characters.

### Save entries as secret data <Set secret>

In the phonebook entry screen, select  ►  ► .

### Set Secret code for mail address <Secret code>

1 In the phonebook entry screen, select  ►  ► enter terminal security code ► .

2 Press  [Set].

- To confirm set Secret code: Press .
- To disable Secret code: Press .

3 Select i-mode mail address ►  ► enter secret code (four-digit) ► Yes ► .

### Set ring tone and Chaku-motion <Select ring tone/Mail ring tone>

1 In the phonebook entry screen, select  **Select ring tone** ► .

- To set mail ring tone: Select  **Mail ring tone** ► .

2 Press  [Normal ring tone].

- To set Chaku-uta full®: Press .
- To set Chaku-motion: Press .
- To disable: Press .

3 Refer to step 2 on P. 116 and select ring tone.

### Set called LED color <Called LED color/Mail LED color>

1 In the phonebook entry screen, select  **Called LED color** ► .

- To set Mail LED color: Select  **Mail LED color** ► .

2 Select called LED color ► .

- To disable: Press .

### Set called LED pattern <Called LED pattern/Mail LED pattern>

1 In the phonebook entry screen, select  **Called LED pattern** ► .

- To set Mail LED pattern: Select  **Mail LED pattern** ► .

2 Select called LED pattern ► .

- To disable: Press .

### Set image <Picture call set>

1 In the phonebook entry screen, select  **Picture call set** ► .

2 Press  [My picture].

- To set movie/i-motion: Press .
- To shoot still pictures with camera: Press  ► shoot.
- To shoot movies with camera: Press  ► shoot.
- To disable image: Press .

3 Select folder ►  ► select image ► .

## Related Operations

### Set Substitute image <Substitute Image>

- 1 In the phonebook entry screen, select  **Substitute image** .
- 2 Press  [**Chara-den**].
  - To set still picture: Press .
  - To disable Substitute image: Press .
- 3 Select folder   select **Chara-den** .
  - To check Chara-den: Select Chara-den   (press  to return).

### Note

#### Secret code

- Refer to P. 113 for details on Set secret.
- Only when mail address is **phone number@docomo.ne.jp**, Secret code is available. Refer to P. 213 for details on Secret code.
- Secret code cannot be set as **0000**.
- Set Secret code for one mail address from Mail address1 to 3 per each phonebook entry.
- Even if Secret code is set for mail address, Secret code does not appear in the recipient field of compose message screen ( P. 214).
- For details on setting Secret code, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".
- Mail may not be sent if **phone number + Secret code@docomo.ne.jp** is saved in phonebook. Change entry to **phone number@docomo.ne.jp** before saving Secret code.

#### Select ring tone and Mail ring tone

- Select ring tone from Melody or Music of **Data box** and Chaku-motion from i-motion.
- Movies/i-motion that are image only, have tickers added or have playback restrictions cannot be set as Chaku-motion.
- Movies/i-motion with images and voice set for Chaku-motion are automatically set as Picture call.
- Movies/i-motion with the Ring tone setting to **unavailable** or Chaku-uta full<sup>®</sup> with the Full song ring tone and Point ring tone settings to **unavailable** are not available ( P. 330).
- Movies/i-motion copied from microSD Memory Card to FOMA terminal handset cannot be set as Chaku-motion. Record movies on the FOMA terminal handset to use for Chaku-motion.
- Anonymous calls are notified with User unset ring tone set in **Select ring tone**. When Select ring tone is not set, regular ring tone sounds.
- Calls and mail received while **Function lock** is applied to phonebook are notified with regular ring tone.
- Calls and mail from parties set as Secret are notified with regular ring tone. To use Select ring tone/Mail ring tone settings, set **Secret mode** to **ON**.
- Save entire mail address to use Mail ring tone. If mail address is **phone number@docomo.ne.jp**, set only phone number.
- When a movie/i-motion with image and voice is set as Mail ring tone, only the voice may be played except when in stand-by.
- Refer to P. 117 for details on setting the ring tone priority when multiple ring tones are set.

#### Called LED and Mail/Message LED

- Anonymous calls are notified with regular called LED.
- Calls and mail from parties set as Secret are notified with regular LED. To use called LED and mail/message LED settings, set Secret mode to **ON**.
- Calls and mail received while phonebook **Function lock** is set are notified with regular LED.
- Save entire mail address to use mail/message LED. If mail address is **phone number@docomo.ne.jp**, set only phone number.
- Refer to P. 138 for details on setting called LED priority when multiple called LED are set.

## Related Operations

### Note

#### Picture call

- Image set in **Call/Receive display** appears during outgoing calls when i-motion is set for Picture call.
- i-motion that are voice only (melodies with no video), movies/i-motion with tickers added, and movies/i-motion with playback restrictions cannot be set for Picture call.
- Depending on data size, still picture set to Picture call may take more time to display.
- When movies/i-motion are set to Picture call, the first frame is displayed if the images are displayed in the phonebook list.
- Even if a call is received from a caller with Picture call set, the set image appears when the call is received via **Call Waiting**.
- Movies/i-motion that are copied from microSD Memory Card to the FOMA terminal handset or transferred from PC or another FOMA terminal using **Ir exchange**, **iC transmission** or **DoCoMo keitai datalink** are not available (Including movies/i-motion once copied or transferred from the FOMA terminal handset to microSD Memory Card and then copied or transferred to the FOMA terminal handset again). Record movies on the FOMA terminal handset to use for Picture call.
- To delete image set for Picture call from **Data box**, select **Delete one**. Select **Yes** in the confirmation screen to delete.
- Press **Ⓜ** **③** **②** [Phonebook] in preview screen to set shot still picture for Picture call. When the save destination, however, is set to microSD Memory Card, press **Ⓜ** [Save To] to change the save destination to the FOMA terminal handset, and then press **Ⓜ** **③** **②** [Phonebook] to set to Picture call.
- When movies/i-motion with images and voice are set as Select ring tone, setting a still picture as Picture call disables Select ring tone setting. When movies/i-motion with images and voice are set as Picture call, Select ring tone is also set the same.
- Refer to P. 129 for details on setting the Picture call priority when multiple Picture calls are set.

## ■ Registering from Zoom menu

Add entries to the FOMA terminal handset phonebook from Zoom menu.

- Add the following items.
  - Name
  - Reading
  - One phone number
  - One mail address
- View registered entries by selecting **View phonebook** in Zoom menu or edit all phonebook items from the Submenu (Ⓜ P. 111).

### 1 In stand-by, press **Ⓜ**, select **Phone** and press **Ⓜ**.

- Press **Ⓜ** [Menu] to switch from Top menu or Shortcut menu.

### 2 Select **Add phonebook** and press **Ⓜ**.

### 3 Enter name, press **Ⓜ**, check the reading and press **Ⓜ**.

- Reading is entered automatically. Edit reading if incorrect.

### 4 Enter phone number and press **Ⓜ**.

### 5 Select **☐**, press **Ⓜ**, enter mail address and press **Ⓜ**.

### 6 Press **Ⓜ** [Complete].

- The entry is saved to the lowest available memory number between **010** and **749**. The lowest available number between **000** and **009** is used if the above is not available.
- **☎** for phone number type icon and **☐** for mail address type icon are automatically set.

# Saving to FOMA Card Phonebook

Save entries to FOMA card phonebook. Entry items differ slightly from FOMA terminal handset phonebook.

- Save up to 50 entries to the FOMA card phonebook.

## Entry items

Icon	Item	Details
	Name	Enter name.
	Reading	Reading is entered automatically. Can be edited.
	Group	Entries can be sorted in groups. 11 groups are available. Group names can be changed.
	Phone number	Save one phone number per entry.
	Mail address	Save one mail address per entry.

## Basic Saving Operations

**1** In stand-by, press   **2** and press **2** [UIM].

**2** Enter name and press .



- Refer to step 2 on P. 98 for details on entering name. Enter up to 21 single-byte characters or up to 10 characters for only double-byte characters, single-byte and double-byte mixed characters or only single-byte katakana. When 10 characters are already entered only in single alphanumeric characters and single/double-byte katakana are entered, the entered characters after single/double-byte katakana are not saved. In addition, when more than 10 characters with single and double-byte-characters mixed are input, the 11th character and after are not saved.
- For reading, enter up to 12 characters for only double-byte katakana or 25 characters for only single-byte alphanumerics. Enter up to 12 characters if single-byte/double-byte characters are mixed. When 12 single-byte characters are already entered and double-byte katakana are entered, the entered characters after double-byte katakana are not saved.

**3** Select , press , select group and press .

**4** Select , press , enter phone number and press .

- Enter up to 26 digits for FOMA card (green/white) and 20 digits for FOMA card (blue).
- Refer to step 3 on P. 98 for details on entering telephone numbers.

**5** Select , press , enter mail address and press .

- Refer to step 5 on P. 98 for details on entering mail address.

**6** Press  [Complete].

## Copying Phonebook Entries Between FOMA Terminal Handset and FOMA Card

Copy phonebook entries from FOMA terminal handset to FOMA Card or from FOMA Card to FOMA terminal handset.

# 1 In stand-by, press , select a name in the FOMA terminal handset phonebook and press [Copy to UIM].

- To copy the FOMA Card phonebook to the FOMA terminal handset phonebook, select a name in the FOMA Card phonebook and press    [Copy to the phone].

## 2 Select copy method.

To copy one	 → Yes → 
To copy selected	 → select name  (repeatable) →  → Yes →  ● Press  [SelAll]/  [ClrAll] to select or clear all.
To check contents before copying	Select name in step 1, press  →    → Yes → 

### Note

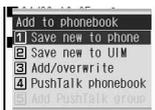
- This function is not available if FOMA card is not inserted.
- Set **Secret mode** to **ON** to copy phonebook entries saved with **Set secret ON**.
- Entry items are saved as follows when copied to FOMA card.
  - Portions of name exceeding 21 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters are discarded.
  - Reading is saved as double-byte katakana. Portions exceeding 12 characters are discarded. Reading for entries copied from FOMA card to FOMA terminal handset is saved as single-byte katakana.
  - When a name is entered in alphanumeric, reading is saved as single-byte. Portions exceeding 25 characters are discarded.
  - Entries are allocated accordingly if same group name exists in FOMA terminal handset and FOMA card phonebooks. If same group name does not exist, entry is allocated to **(Not specified)**. Single- and double-byte characters are differentiated.
- Entry items are saved as follows when copied to FOMA terminal handset.
  - Reading is saved as single-byte characters.
  - Phone number and mail address from FOMA card are saved as first phone number and mail address in FOMA terminal handset.
  - Entries are allocated accordingly if same group name exists in FOMA terminal handset and FOMA card phonebooks. If same group name does not exist, entry is allocated to **(Not specified)**. Single- and double-byte characters are differentiated.
  - Open memory numbers are allocated from **010** to **749**, then **000** to **009**.
- Not all characters are compatible between FOMA terminal handset and FOMA card. Unsupported characters are converted to spaces.
- Source data is not deleted.
- Latin and Greek characters and some symbols not included in the standard single-byte alphanumerics/symbols set, and double-byte characters not included in kuten code list appear as spaces when FOMA card data saved in other FOMA terminals are copied to your FOMA terminal.

## Saving to Phonebook from Redial and Received Calls

Save phonebook entries from functions such as Redial, Received calls, Bar code reader, Character reader and mail.

### Example: When saving from Received calls

# 1 In stand-by, press (), select phone number and press [Add to phonebook].



## 2 Select save method.

To add to FOMA terminal handset phonebook	①	To add to PushTalk phonebook	④
To save to FOMA card phonebook	②	To add to PushTalk group	⑤
To add/overwrite	③		

- Selected phone number is entered in phonebook entry screen. Continue phonebook saving operations (P. 98, P. 103).
- Add PushTalk group** is only available for PushTalk call/received history. History entries of PushTalk transmission made to multiple people are subject to the setting. Also available when phone numbers of the other party are saved in the PushTalk phonebook.

## Group Settings

### Setting Groups

Set groups in phonebook to set group names, ring tones, Called LED and image shown when calls are received from a member of a group.

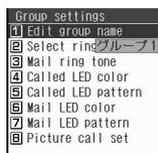
- Only group name editing is available for FOMA card phonebook.

### Changing Group Name <Edit Group Name>

**Default setting** FOMA terminal handset phonebook: **(Not specified)**, グループ 1 (Group 1) to グループ 1 9 (Group 19)  
FOMA card phonebook: **(Not specified)**, グループ 1 (Group 1) to グループ 1 0 (Group 10)

- ① **(Not specified)** cannot be renamed.

## 1 In stand-by, press and select a group.



Group settings screen

In phonebook list	Ⓜ (8) → select group → ●
In group list	Select group → Ⓜ (3)

- When groups are selected, the FOMA terminal handset phonebook (19 groups) comes first, followed by the FOMA card phonebook (10 groups).

## 2 Press ① [Edit group name], enter/edit group name and press ●.

- Group name character limits are as follows.
  - FOMA terminal handset phonebook: Up to 20 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters
  - FOMA card phonebook: Up to 21 characters when entering only single-byte alphanumeric characters  
Up to 10 characters when entering only double-byte characters, mixed single-byte/double-byte characters, or only single-byte katakana
- To restore default group name, press CLR for 1+ seconds and press ●.

## 3 Press [Complete].

### Related Operations

#### Set ring tone and Chaku-motion for group <Select ring tone/Mail ring tone>

- In the group settings screen, press ②.
  - To set mail ring tone for group: In the group settings screen, press ③.
- Press ① [Normal ring tone].
  - To set Chaku-uta full<sup>®</sup>: Press ②.
  - To set Chaku-motion: Press ③.
  - To disable: Press ④.
- Select a ring tone referring to step 2 on P. 116.

## Related Operations

### Set called LED color for group <Called LED color/Mail LED color>

- 1 In the group settings screen, press **[4]**.
  - To set Mail LED color: Press **[6]** in the group settings screen.
- 2 Select called LED color ▶ **[●]**.
  - To disable: Press **[1]**.

### Set called LED pattern for group <Called LED pattern/Mail LED pattern>

- 1 In the group settings screen, press **[5]**.
  - To set Mail LED pattern: Press **[7]** in the group settings screen.
- 2 Select called LED pattern ▶ **[●]**.
  - To disable: Press **[1]**.

### Set image for group <Picture call set>

- 1 In the group settings screen, press **[8]**.
- 2 Press **[1]** [My picture].
  - To set movie/i-motion: Press **[2]**.
  - To shoot still pictures with camera: Press **[3]** ▶ shoot.
  - To shoot movies with camera: Press **[4]** ▶ shoot.
  - To disable image: Press **[5]**.
- 3 Select folder ▶ **[●]** ▶ select image ▶ **[●]**.

#### Note

##### Select ring tone/Mail ring tone

- Movies/i-motion that are image only, have tickers added or have playback restrictions cannot be set as Chaku-motion.
- Movies/i-motion with the Ring tone setting to **unavailable** or Chaku-uta full® with the Full song ring tone and Point ring tone settings to **unavailable** are not available (☎ P. 330).
- Movies/i-motion copied from microSD Memory Card to FOMA terminal handset cannot be set as Chaku-motion. Record movies on the FOMA terminal handset to use for Chaku-motion.
- Anonymous calls are notified with regular ring tone.
- Calls and mail from members in groups saved with **Set secret** ON are notified with regular ring tone. To use group ring tone and group mail ring tone settings, set **Secret mode** to **ON**.
- Save entire mail address to use group mail ring tone. If mail address is **phone number@docomo.ne.jp**, set only phone number.
- If movie/i-motion with image and voice is set as Chaku-motion, the same movie/i-motion is automatically set for group Picture call settings.
- Refer to P. 117 for details on setting the ring tone priority when multiple ring tones are set.

##### Called LED and Mail/Message LED

- Anonymous calls are notified with regular called LED.
- Calls and mail from members in groups saved with **Set secret** ON are notified with regular LED. To use group called LED and group mail/message LED settings, set **Secret mode** to **ON**.
- Save entire mail address to use group mail/message LED. If mail address is **phone number@docomo.ne.jp**, set only phone number.
- Refer to P. 138 for details on setting called LED priority when multiple called LED are set.

##### Picture call

- When group Picture call is set, **[●]** appears on group selection screen.
- Even if a call is received from a caller with Picture call set, the set image appears when the call is received via **Call Waiting**.
- i-motion that are voice only (melodies with no video), movies/i-motion with tickers added, and movies/i-motion with playback restrictions cannot be set for Picture call.
- Movies/i-motion copied from microSD Memory Card to FOMA terminal handset cannot be set for Picture call. Record movies on the FOMA terminal handset to use for Picture call.
- Anonymous calls are notified with regular incoming screen.
- Calls from members in groups saved with **Set secret** ON are notified by regular incoming screen. To use group Picture call settings, set **Secret mode** to **ON**.
- Refer to P. 129 for details on setting the Picture call priority when multiple Picture calls are set.

# Making Calls from Phonebook

Retrieve phone numbers from phonebook to make calls and send mail.

## Selecting Phonebook Search Method <Search By>

Search phonebook by reading, group, or memory number.

- Memory numbers do not exist on FOMA card phonebook. Searching by memory number is not available.
- In stand-by, press **[☐]** to show by the last method used.

### 1 In stand-by, press **[☐]** and **[Ⓜ]** **[1]** [Search by] to select search method.

Reading?	<b>[1]</b>	FOMA terminal handset and FOMA card phonebooks are sorted by reading.
Group?	<b>[2]</b>	FOMA terminal handset entries appear first.
Memory no.?	<b>[3]</b>	Only FOMA terminal handset entries appear.

- Phonebook appears sorted by selected search method.

## Related Operations

### Open phonebook during voice call

During a voice call, press **[MULTI]** ▶ **[☐]** (Phonebook) ▶ **[Ⓜ]**.

### View microSD Memory Card phonebook <View microSD data>

In stand-by, press **[☐]** ▶ **[Ⓜ]** ▶ **[4]**.

- To search by group: In stand-by, press **[☐]** ▶ select group ▶ **[Ⓜ]** ▶ **[Ⓜ]** ▶ **[4]**.

### Copy microSD Memory Card phonebook contents to owner information

<Copy to Owner Info>

In stand-by, press **[☐]** ▶ **[Ⓜ]** ▶ **[4]** ▶ select name ▶ **[Ⓜ]** ▶ **[3]** ▶ **[4]** ▶ enter terminal security code ▶ **[Ⓜ]** ▶ **[Yes]** ▶ **[Ⓜ]**.

### Send Phonebook attach to i-mode mail <Attach to mail>

In stand-by, press **[☐]** ▶ select name ▶ **[Ⓜ]** ▶ **[1]** ▶ compose and send i-mode mail.

### Apply Function lock to phonebook <Function lock>

1 In stand-by, press **[☐]** ▶ **[Ⓜ]** ▶ **[6]**.

- To search by group: In stand-by, press **[☐]** ▶ select group ▶ **[Ⓜ]** ▶ **[Ⓜ]** ▶ **[6]**.

2 Enter terminal security code ▶ **[Ⓜ]** ▶ **[1]**.

## Note

### View microSD Memory Card phonebook

- Search method for microSD Memory Card phonebook cannot be selected.

### Copy to owner information

- When multiple phone numbers are saved in microSD Memory Card phonebook, first phone number is not copied to owner information.
- When Image transfer is set to **Yes**, an image in microSD Memory Card phonebook is set to Own image.

### File attachment

- FOMA card phonebook or microSD Memory Card phonebook cannot be attached.
- Refer to P. 214 for details on composing/sending i-mode mail.

## Searching by Name <Reading?>

### 1 In stand-by, press .



Phonebook list  
(Other column)

- If search by reading phonebook list does not appear, press   .
- Appears in following order for reading search.  
Katakana (phonetic order → dakuten/handakuten) → alphabet → numbers → spaces\* → symbols → no reading  
\* Appears after numbers and before symbols if space is at beginning.

### 2 Select name.

To show previous/next column in phonetic order	
To select one	
To scroll by page	Down:  [Page ]/Up:  [Page ]
To enter reading (Quick search)	Closest entry appears after each character is entered.

### 3 Press .



Phonebook entry  
details screen

- Select icon with  and press  to perform the following.

	Place call to saved phone number.*
	Compose message screen addressed to saved mail address appears.*
	View saved postal address.
	View saved memo.
	Play set ring tone or Chaku-motion.
	Called LED flashes in the set color and pattern.
	Set still picture or movie/i-motion appears.
	Play set still picture or Chara-den.

- \* The icon appears for each of the saved phone numbers and mail addresses.  
Select the icon of a phone number or a mail address to be used.

### 4 Make a call.

Voice calls	 or 
Videophone	
PushTalk	 (P) or 

- Call is placed to phone number displayed.

## Searching by Memory Number <Memory No.??>

- Use 2-touch dialing to call people saved in memory numbers **000** to **099** ( P. 113).

### 1 In stand-by, press .



FOMA terminal  
handset phonebook list  
(Memory numbers  
010 to 019)

- If search by memory number phonebook list does not appear, press   .

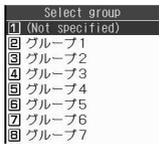
## 2 Select memory number.

To show previous/next group of ten entries	↶ ● The previous/next ten entries appear.
To select one	↷
To enter memory number (Quick search)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● After each digit is entered, corresponding entries appear. For example, when <b>085</b> is entered, the following appear. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Enter <b>0</b> for first digit: entry numbers <b>000</b> to <b>009</b> appear.</li> <li>■ Enter <b>8</b> for second digit: entry numbers <b>080</b> to <b>089</b> appear.</li> <li>■ Enter <b>5</b> for third digit: entry number <b>085</b> is selected.</li> </ul> </li> <li>● If entered memory number is not saved in phonebook, entry for next largest memory number appears. However, if larger memory number does not exist, then smallest memory number closest to <b>000</b> appears.</li> </ul>

- Refer to step 3 and onward of "Searching by Name" on P. 108 for further operations.

## Searching by Group <Group?>

### 1 In stand-by, press .



Group selection screen

- If group selection screen does not appear, press  **1** **2**.

### 2 Select a group and press .



Phonebook list  
(グループ1)

- Entries appear in order of reading (katakana (phonetic order → dakuten/handakuten) → alphabet → numbers → spaces → symbols → no reading).
- Phonebook entries with no group settings are grouped in (**Not specified**).

### 3 Select name.

To show previous/next group	↶
To select one	↷ (in the current group)
To enter reading (Quick search)	Closest entry appears after each character is entered.

- Refer to step 3 and onward of "Searching by Name" on P. 108 for further operations.

## Related Operations

### Select calling method and make call

#### 1 In stand-by, press ▶ select name ▶ .

- To search by group: In stand-by, press  ▶ select group ▶  ▶ select name ▶ .

#### 2 Press to make Videophone call.

- To make voice call: Press  or .
- To send PushTalk transmission: Press  (**P**) or .
- To make international call: Press  **4** **2** **2** ▶ select an international call access code ▶  ▶  or .
- To add prefix: Press  **4** **2** **1** ▶ select prefix ▶  ▶  or .
- To call without sending ID: Press  **4** **1** **2** ▶  or .
- To call sending ID: Press  **4** **1** **1** ▶  or .
- To select Multi Number: Press  **5** ▶ select Multi Number ▶  ▶  or .

## Related Operations

### Specify image and make Videophone call <V.phone image>

- 1 In stand-by, press ▶ select name ▶ .
  - To search by group: In stand-by, press ▶ select group ▶ ▶ select name ▶ .
- 2 Press ▶ select folder ▶ ▶ select Chara-den ▶ .
  - To send own camera image: Press ▶ .

### Call with Chaku-moji message <Chaku-moji>

- 1 In stand-by, press ▶ select name ▶ ▶ .
  - To search by group: In stand-by, press ▶ select group ▶ ▶ select name ▶ ▶ .
- 2 Press [Create message] ▶ enter a Chaku-moji message ▶ .
  - To select a saved Chaku-moji message: Press ▶ select a Chaku-moji message ▶ .
  - To select from Sent messages history: Press ▶ select a Chaku-moji message ▶ .
- 3 Press or to make a voice call.
  - To make a Videophone call: Press .

#### Note

#### Videophone image setting

- Still pictures cannot be set.
- Videophone image setting is reset after Videophone ends.

Refer to P. 56 for details on Chaku-moji.

## Changing Phonebook List Appearance <Switch View Mode>

Show images set in Picture call for entries in phonebook list.

- Not available when showing microSD Memory Card data.

### 1 In stand-by, press and [Switch view mode].



To search by group	→ select group →  →
To switch phonebook entry details screen	→ select name →  →

#### Note

- When still pictures are shown in the phonebook list, the first phone number and mail address appear and a call can be made to the phone number. However, the mail address cannot be selected. Select other phone numbers and mail addresses from phonebook entry details screen.
- Image set for group **Picture call** is shown for all members of group. Individually set images are prioritized.

## Restricting Image Transfer <Image Transfer>

Default setting **Yes** (transfer)

Set to not transfer images set as Picture call when phonebook entries are copied to a microSD Memory Card or sent via Ir or iC transmission.

**microSD Memory Cards are sold separately. Purchase microSD Memory Cards at home electronics shops (☎ P. 318).**

- When Image transfer is set to **Yes**, copying phonebook entries to a microSD Memory Card and sending via Ir or iC transmission may take more time.
- Even if Image transfer is set to **Yes**, images from the following sources are not transferred.
  - Preinstalled images
  - Images of i-mode source with file restrictions
  - Images of Videophones

# 1 In stand-by, press and [Image transfer].

- When searching groups, select a group, press and press .

# 2 Press [No].

- To transfer image, press [Yes], select **Yes** and press .

## Edit Entries

# Editing Phonebook Entries

### Edit items saved in phonebook entries.

- Editing is not available when All lock or Keypad dial lock is set.
- Editing is not available for phonebook entries set to accept/reject calls.

# 1 In stand-by, press , select name and press [Edit].

- When editing from phonebook entry details screen, press .
- Refer to P. 97 and P. 103 for items which can be edited.

# 2 Select item and press to edit.

- Editing procedures are the same as when saving.
- Even if a name is edited, the reading does not automatically change.
- When multiple phone numbers are saved, (**Not registered**) appears if the first phone number saved is deleted. However, other phone numbers remain unchanged.

# 3 Press [Complete] and save.

FOMA terminal handset phonebook	To overwrite	→ <b>Yes</b> →
	To save to a different memory number	Enter memory number ● Press  (for 1+ seconds), delete memory number and press  to save to an available memory number ( P. 99).
FOMA card phonebook		Select <b>Yes</b> →

- When editing and overwriting a phonebook entry that has a phone number also saved in a PushTalk phonebook, a message stating PushTalk phonebook entry will also be changed appears. Select **Yes** and press to overwrite.

## Related Operations

### Copy saved details <Copy item>

In stand-by, press ▶ select name ▶ ▶ select item ▶ .

### Add to PushTalk Phonebook <Add to PushTalk PB>

In stand-by, press ▶ select name ▶ .

- To save from phonebook entry details screen: Press .

### Note

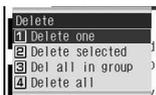
#### Copying saved details

- The following items can be copied: FOMA terminal handset phonebook **names**, **phone numbers one through three**, **mail addresses one through three**, **Memo**, **postal addresses**, and FOMA card phonebook **names**, **phone numbers**, and **mail addresses**.
- Refer to "Pasting Text" on P. 414 for details on pasting text copied from the phonebook.

## Deleting Phonebook Entries

- When a phonebook entry is deleted from the FOMA terminal handset phonebook, the entry is also deleted from PushTalk phonebook.

**1** In stand-by, press , select name and press [4] [Delete].



**2** Select deletion method.

To delete one	① → Yes → ●
To delete collectively	② → select name ● (repeatable) → ● → Yes → ● ● Press  [SelAll]/ [ClrAll] to select or clear all.
To delete all in a group	③ → select group → ● → enter terminal security code → ● → Yes → ●
To delete all in FOMA terminal handset phonebook	④ ① → enter terminal security code → ● → Yes → ●
To delete all in FOMA card phonebook	④ ② → enter terminal security code → ● → Yes → ●

- When a phone number is saved in PushTalk phonebook, select **Yes** in the PushTalk phonebook delete confirmation screen, press ● to delete both PushTalk and FOMA terminal handset phonebook entries.

### Related Operations

Delete from phonebook entry details screen <Delete one>

In the phonebook entry details screen, press [2] ▶ Yes ▶ ●.

### Data Sec. Service

## Saving (Restoring/Updating) Phonebook to Data Storage Center

- FOMA card phonebook or phonebook in a microSD Memory Card cannot be saved.

**1** In stand-by, press , and in phonebook list ( P. 108), press ● [5] [Connect to Center].

**2** Select **Yes**, press ●, enter terminal security code and press ●.

- When saving is completed, complete notification screen appears and stand-by reappears.

## Hiding Private Numbers

Secret phonebook entries are hidden and access is restricted unless Secret mode is set to **ON**.

- Set secret is not available for FOMA card phonebook entries.

### Setting Entries as Secret Data <Set Secret>

**1** In the phonebook entry screen (☎ P. 97), select , press  and press  [ON].

**2** Press  [Complete] to save.

To save a new entry (☎ P. 98)	Enter memory number
To overwrite	 → Yes → 

- When **Store in PushTalk phonebook?** appears, select **Yes** and press  to store.

#### Note

- Set **Secret mode** to **ON** to use **2-touch dialing** for secret phonebook entries saved in memory numbers **000** to **099**.
- Mail addresses saved in secret phonebook entries are also restricted unless Secret mode is set to **ON**.

#### Opening secret data

- Set Secret mode to **ON** and perform the same steps as when viewing normal entries (☎ flashes when secret data is selected in phonebook list).
- Same operations as normal phonebook are available.

#### Redial, Received calls, Sent messages, Received/Sent messages history and Schedule

- Phone number and mail address set as Secret appear instead of name. Set Secret mode to **ON** to show name.
- Calls and mail from parties set as Secret are notified with regular ring tone and called LED. To activate ring tone and called LED set in the phonebook, set Secret mode to **ON**.

### 2-touch Dialing/2-touch Mail

## Calling and Sending Mail with a Few Key Strokes

Easily call or send i-mode mail to parties saved in memory numbers **000** to **099** in FOMA terminal handset phonebook.

- First phone number/mail address is called/addressed when multiple are saved.
- 2-touch dialing and 2-touch mail are not available while Function lock is applied to phonebook (☎ P. 151).

**1** In stand-by, enter last or last two digits.



- Memory number 000 to 009: Press  to .
- Memory number 010 to 099: Press   to  .

**2** Select the function.

To make a voice call	
To make a Videophone call	
To compose a message	

- Call is placed to the entry saved or the compose message screen appears.
- Refer to steps 2 to 4 on P. 214 for details on composing and sending mail.

# Using Data Security Service

## Saving FOMA Terminal Handset Phonebook to Data Storage Center

### <Connect to Center>

Save the FOMA terminal handset phonebook to the Data Storage Center.

- Update the contents when the phonebook has already been saved.
- Owner Information can also be saved to the Data Storage Center.
- This service is a paid service that requires subscription (i-mode subscription is also required).

### 1 In stand-by, press **⓪** **9** **2** **8** **7** **1**.



### 2 Select **Yes**, press **⓪**, enter terminal security code and press **⓪**.

- When saving is completed, complete notification screen appears and stand-by reappears.

#### Note

- Refer to “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode]” for details on the use of the Data Security Service.

#### Available image files used for Picture call to be stored to the Data Storage Center

- File type must be GIF or JPEG.
- File size must be 300 KB or less for each (Files larger than 300 KB cannot be saved to the Data Storage Center).
- Non-redistributable files cannot be saved to the Data Storage Center.

## Viewing Phonebook Update History <Display History>

Check up to 30 transmission history entries of saving/updating the phonebook, mail and still pictures, starting with the newest.

When the transmission history exceeded 30 entries, entries are deleted starting with the oldest.

### 1 In stand-by, press **⓪** **9** **2** **8** **7** **2**, select history and press **⓪**.

## Setting Whether to Send Phonebook Images <Send Phonebook Img>

Default setting **OFF**

Set whether to send images set as Picture call when phonebook entries are saved to the Data Storage Center.

- When Send phonebook image is set to **ON**, it may take some time for sending.

### 1 In stand-by, press **⓪** **9** **2** **8** **7** **3** and select **ON** or **OFF**.

To send images	<b>1</b> → <b>Yes</b> → <b>⓪</b>
To not send images	<b>2</b>

# Sound/Screen/ Light Settings

## ■ Sound Settings

- Changing Mobile Phone Sounds . . . . . <Sound Settings>116
- Changing Mobile Phone Sound Volume . . . . . <Select Volume>118
- Setting 3D Sound . . . . . <Sound Playback>120
- Vibrating for Calls and Alarms . . . . . <Vibrator>121
- Sounding Alarm When the Signal Is Weak . . . . . <Quality Alarm>122
- Setting Mail/PushTalk Ring Tone Duration . . . . . <Ring Time Setting>122
- Sounding Ring Tone in Earphone Only . . . . . <Ring Output>122
- Silencing Handset . . . . . <Manner Mode>123
- Changing Manner Mode . . . . . <Original Manner Mode>124

## ■ Screen/Light Settings

- Changing Stand-by Display Settings of Main Display . . . . . <Main Display>125
- Changing Call/Receive Image . . . . . <Call/Receive Display>127
- Changing Image for Sending/Receiving Messages . . . . . <Send/Receive Display>128
- Setting Whether to Show Phonebook Image for Incoming Calls . . . . . <Picture Call Set>129
- Setting Sub Display . . . . . <Sub Display Setting>129
- Saving Battery Power . . . . . <Power Saver Set>130
- Setting Original Power Saver Mode . . . . . <User Set>130
- Arranging the Display . . . . . <Personalize>132
- Changing Top Menu Design . . . . . <Personalize Menu>134
- Using Kisekae Tool . . . . . <Kisekae Tool>136
- Setting the Illumination . . . . . <LED Settings>138
- Notifying a Call or Mail Received with LED . . . . . <Missed Call Notice/New Unrd Mail Noti>140
- Changing Image Quality . . . . . <Vibrant Image Mode>141
- Changing Font Width . . . . . <Font Style>141
- Preventing Others from Seeing the Display . . . . . <Private Filter>142

# Changing Mobile Phone Sounds

Change ring tones used when voice/Videophone calls, PushTalk transmissions, i-mode mail, SMS and Message R/F are received and set stereo effects (☞ P. 120). In addition, change Timer sound.

- If a melody with LED actions is set as the ring tone, link the melody and LED flash actions (Melody ON).
- For ring tones, set melodies, movies/i-motion, Chaku-uta full<sup>®</sup> downloaded using i-mode and movies shot with FOMA terminal as well as preset melodies.
- Set a movie/i-motion for a ring tone to play an image or voice for an incoming call (Chaku-motion).

## Changing Ring Tone and Chaku-motion <Select Ring Tone>

### Default setting

Phone ring tone: 着信音 1,  
V.phone ring tone, Payphone ring tone, User unset, Unknown tone: **Phone ring tone**,  
Mail ring tone: 着信音 2, Message R/F, SMS ring tone: **Mail ring tone**, PushTalk tone: 着信音 1

## 1 In stand-by, press and select an item.



When changing Videophone ring tone

Phone ring tone		User unset	
V.phone ring tone		Unknown tone	
Payphone ring tone			

## 2 Select ring tone.

To set melodies	 → select folder →  → select ring tone →  ● To check ring tone, select a ring tone and press  . Press  and the previous screen reappears.	
To set i-motion	 → select folder →  → select Chaku-motion →  ● To check movie/i-motion, select a movie/i-motion and press  . Press  and the previous screen reappears. ● Movies/i-motion that are image only or have tickers added are not available. ● i-motion copied from microSD Memory Card to FOMA terminal handset are not available. Record movies on the FOMA terminal handset to use for Chaku-motion. i-motion in the <b>Movable contents</b> folder in microSD Memory Card can directly set as a ring tone. The set movie/i-motion is transferred to the <b>i-mode</b> folder in Data box on the FOMA terminal handset. ● Refer to P. 206 for details on ring tone and receive display combinations.	
To set Chaku-uta full <sup>®</sup>	To set a full song	 → select folder →  → select Chaku-uta full <sup>®</sup> →  →  [Full song ring tone] ● To check Chaku-uta full <sup>®</sup> , select Chaku-uta full <sup>®</sup> and press  . Press  to return to the previous screen. ● When Chaku-uta full <sup>®</sup> saved in the <b>Movable contents</b> folder in the microSD Memory Card is selected, the confirmation screen for transferring to the FOMA terminal handset appears. Select <b>Yes</b> and press  to save Chaku-uta full <sup>®</sup> in the <b>i-mode</b> folder in Music of Data box and set it as the ring tone.
	To set part of song	 → select folder →  → select Chaku-uta full <sup>®</sup> →  →  [Point ring tone] → select range →  → <b>Yes</b> →  ● The selectable range is pre-determined for each Chaku-uta full <sup>®</sup> . ● To check the selected range, select the range and press  . Press  and the previous screen appears. ● For Point ring tone, the selected range is saved in the <b>i-mode</b> folder in i-motion of Data box as i-motion and set as the ring tone.
To set the same ring tone as Phone ring tone	 ● Make Videophone ring tone, Payphone ring tone, User unset and Unknown tone the same as Phone ring tone.	

### Note

- If the ring tone is changed, receive display may also change (☞ P. 206).

## Note

- Ring tones are prioritized as follows when multiple ring tones are set.

	Priority (high → low)
Ring tone	Multi Number ring tone → phonebook ring tone → group ring tone → regular ring tone
Mail ring tone	Phonebook mail ring tone → group mail ring tone → regular mail ring tone

- **V.phone ring tone** is prioritized over **User unset** for Videophone calls with no caller ID.
- When movie/i-motion with voice only (i-motion with no video) is set as Chaku-motion, the Receive display is prioritized as follows: phonebook Picture call settings → group Picture call settings → Call/Receive display settings.
- When a call is received during data transmission, the tone saved as Phone ring tone sounds. Receive display is the same as the display set in Phone ring tone. The movie/i-motion screen is used if a movie/i-motion is set.
- i-motion and **Chaku-uta full**<sup>®</sup> with playback restrictions are not available.
- i-motion with **Ring tone** set to **unavailable** or Chaku-uta full<sup>®</sup> with Full song ring tone and Point ring tone set to **unavailable** are not available (P. 330).

## Related Operations

### Change i-mode mail, SMS, Message R/F and PushTalk ring tone

<Select Mail tone/PushTalk tone>

#### 1 In stand-by, press **1** **2** **2** **1** [Mail ring tone].

- For Message R: In stand-by, press **1** **2** **2** **2**.
- For Message F: In stand-by, press **1** **2** **2** **3**.
- For SMS: In stand-by, press **1** **2** **2** **4**.
- For PushTalk: In stand-by, press **1** **2** **3**.

#### 2 Press **1** [Melody].

- To set movie/i-motion: Press **2**.
- To set Chaku-uta full<sup>®</sup>: Press **3**.
- To conform SMS and Message R/F ring tone to Mail ring tone: Press **4**.

#### 3 Refer to step 2 on P. 116 and select ring tone.

## Note

### PushTalk tone

- Movie/i-motion with voice only (i-motion with no video) is available for PushTalk tone.

## Preset ring tones

Song title	Artist	3D data	Song title	Artist	3D data
着信音 1	-	-	Beat On Motion	-	Yes
着信音 2	-	-	My Journey	-	Yes
水槽	-	Yes	Ride on	-	Yes
バー	-	Yes	Skyscraper	-	Yes
マウス&キーボード	-	Yes	モンスターハンター B (目覚め)	CAPCOM	-
海辺の街	-	-	ラヴァーズコンツェルト	J.S.BACH	Yes
Sunset	-	-	Siesta	-	Yes
モンスターハンター A (上手に焼きました~!)	CAPCOM	-	G線上のアリア	J.S.BACH	Yes
Smily Tap	-	Yes	サイレント	-	-
Classy Room	-	Yes	TI (標準音)	-	-
Groove	-	Yes	TI (時間です)	-	-
夏	VIVALDI ANTONIO LUCIO	Yes	TI (It's time)	-	-

## Note

- Numbers in phonebook can be set to play selected ring tone. In addition, mail addresses in phonebook can be set to play selected mail ring tone.
- For calls without caller ID, the User unset ring tone sounds.
- Refer to "Melody types and their icons" on P. 317 for details on the icons for each melody.

**Forward and store saved i-melody data to a PC using microSD Memory Card (P. 318).**

**Melodies with file restrictions cannot be transferred.**

- Saved content may be lost due to malfunctions, repairs or other handling of the FOMA terminal. DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss of content.

## Changing Timer Sound <Timer Sound>

Default setting Timer sound: T1 (標準音), Ring duration: 15 seconds

- Timer sound can select from melodies in Data box.

### 1 In stand-by, press 1 2 4 2 and select tone.

To set Default tone	1 ● To check Default tone, press . To stop, press .
To set a melody	2 → select folder →  → select melody → ● To check melody, select a melody and press . To stop, press .
To not set	3

### 2 Enter time to sound timer (00 to 99 seconds) and press .

## Note

- Movies/i-motion are not available for Timer sound.
- Refer to P. 175 for details on for Shutter sound settings.
- Default tone or melodies checked while setting are played in the volume set by Setting sound volume. When the volume is set to **Silent**, they are played at **Volume 1**. Press during playback to adjust the volume for melodies.

## Select Volume

## Changing Mobile Phone Sound Volume

Change ring tone volume used when voice/Videophone calls, PushTalk transmissions, i-mode mail, SMS and Message R/F are received. In addition, change the volume of sounds used when keys are pressed or when Stand-by i-motion is played back, Timer sound and Charge start/end sounds.

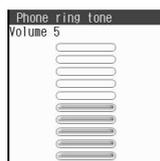
- Volume remains at adjusted level even when handset is turned off or battery pack is removed.
- The ring volume for a call received during data transmission is the volume set for Phone ring tone.

## Adjusting Ring Tone Volume <Phone Ring Volume>

Default setting Volume 5

- Select between **Volume 1** to **Volume 10**, **Silent** (not sound) and **Step** (gradually get louder).

### 1 In stand-by, press 1 1 1 and select an item.



Phone ring tone	1	User unset	4
V.phone ring tone	2	Unknown tone	5
Payphone ring tone	3		

## 2 Press (louder) or (softer) to adjust and press .

- To set to **Step**, press when volume is set to **Volume 10**. When **Step** is set, the ring tone sounds starting from **Volume 2** to **Volume 10**. The volume increases by two volume levels every three seconds. After the ring tone sounds in **Step**, it sounds at **Volume 10**. Chaku-motion is also played back in Step when set.
- To set to **Silent**, press when volume is set to **Volume 1**. When Phone ring tone is set to **Silent**, appears in stand-by.

### Related Operations

#### Adjust i-mode mail, SMS, Message R/F, PushTalk ring volume <Mail ring vol/PushTalk tone vol>

##### 1 In stand-by, press [Mail ring tone].

- For Message R: In stand-by, press .
- For Message F: In stand-by, press .
- For SMS: In stand-by, press .
- For PushTalk: In stand-by, press .

##### 2 Press (louder) or (softer) .

## Adjusting Earpiece Volume <Earpiece Volume>

Default setting **Volume 5**

Select from ten earpiece volume levels.

### 1 In stand-by, press or for 1+ seconds.

- If a calendar is shown, press to disable the calendar before continuing with operations.

### 2 Press (louder) or (softer) to adjust.

- After adjusting the volume, press or , or wait approximately two seconds and the stand-by display reappears.

## Adjusting Sound Volume When Pressing Keys or Playing Standby i-motion <Key/Standby i-motion>

Default setting **Volume 5**

Adjust the volume of the sounds emitted when keys are pressed (Keypad sound) and the i-motion set as stand-by is played (Standby i-motion sound). Also, adjust the volume for Charge start/end sound and Timer sound.

- Select between **Volume 1** to **Volume 10** and **Silent** (not sound).
- The battery level sound ( P. 43) is heard at the volume set in Key/Standby i-motion. When set to **Silent**, the battery level sound is not heard.
- Keypad sound is disabled for the character operation during Chara-den call or while Chara-den is played.
- Sounds are disabled in Manner mode.

### 1 In stand-by, press .

### 2 Press (louder) or (softer) to adjust and press .

- To set to **Silent**, press when volume is set to **Volume 1**.

## Related Operations

### Adjust Charge start and Charge end sound volume

<Charge start sound/Charge end sound>

- 1 In stand-by, press **⓪** **①** **①** **④** **②** [**Charge start sound**].
  - To adjust Charge end sound volume: In stand-by, press **⓪** **①** **①** **④** **③**.
- 2 Press **⓪** (**louder**) or **⓪** (**softer**) **▶** **⓪**.

Adjust Timer sound volume <Timer sound>

- 1 In stand-by, press **⓪** **①** **①** **④** **④**.
- 2 Press **⓪** (**louder**) or **⓪** (**softer**) **▶** **⓪**.

## Sound Playback

### Setting 3D Sound

Set stereo effects and the preferred playback sound when playing melodies.

#### Setting 3D Sound/Surround <Stereo Effects>

Default setting **Stereo/3D sound**

Following settings are available for the set ring tones.

Stereo/3D sound	Play realistic 3D sound from stereo speakers. Ring tones without 3D data are played in stereo sound.
Surround*1	3D data are ignored and ring tones are played in surround sound. Ring tones without 3D data are also played in surround sound.
OFF	Ring tones are played in monaural*2 regardless of ring tone types.

\*1 Playback format that offers rich, vibrant sound.

\*2 Playback format that does not feature rich sound.

● Rich and vibrant sound is not available when set to **OFF**.

● Surround effects are disabled when i-motion is set.

#### 3D sound

The 3D sound function uses stereo speakers (or stereo earphone set) to create a spacious ambient sound that moves through the air. Enjoy 3D sound compatible i-αpli games and ring tones with lively 3D sound.

- For the most powerful 3D sound to be enjoyed, hold the FOMA terminal about 40 cm off, facing the front.
- Note that 3D sound becomes less powerful when heard off the front, or too close or too far even when the front is faced.
- 3D effect may vary depending on the person. Set Stereo effects to **OFF** if uncomfortable.



**1** In stand-by, press **⓪** **①** **⑨** **①** and select Stereo effects.

Stereo effects
<b>①</b> Stereo/3D sound
② Surround
③ OFF

To set stereo/3D sound	<b>①</b>
To set surround	<b>②</b>
To not set stereo effects	<b>③</b>

## Setting Preferred Playback Sound <Pref Playback Sound>

Default setting *Music player pref*

When SD-Audio and i-appli are used simultaneously with Multi Assistant (Multitask), preferred playback sound can be set.

### 1 In stand-by, press 1 9 2 and select an item.

To prioritize music player	1
To prioritize i-appli	2

## Vibrator

### Vibrating for Calls and Alarms

Default setting *Vibration mode, Mail vibration, IC card vibrator: OFF*

#### Set Vibrator to notify incoming calls/PushTalk/mail and alarms with a combination of vibration and melody. Vibrate when using the IC card.

- The vibrator pattern for alarms is the same as the pattern set for Vibration mode.
- Vibration mode and volume settings are not linked. Set the volume to **Silent** to silence ring tones and alarm tones. Set volume separately while Vibrator is set (P. 118, P. 370).
- Use vibration patterns set to melodies (Melody ON).

### 1 In stand-by, press 1 3 and select an item.

Vibration for incoming calls/PushTalk	1
Mail vibration	2
Vibrator when using IC card	3

### 2 Select vibration pattern.

OFF	1	Vibrator does not activate.
Pattern 1	2	Vibrates for approximately 0.8 seconds → stops for approximately 0.8 seconds and repeats.
Pattern 2	3	Vibrates for approximately 0.3 seconds → stops for approximately 0.3 seconds → vibrates for approximately 0.3 seconds → stops for approximately 1 second and repeats.
Pattern 3	4	Continuous vibration
Melody ON	5	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● Vibrator and melody activate (Melody ON) for melodies created with vibration settings added.</li><li>● Melodies that do not have vibration settings vibrate in <b>Pattern 1</b>.</li></ul>

- Vibrator is set. When the vibration mode for incoming calls/PushTalk is set, appears in stand-by.
- Select Pattern 1 to 3 with to sample the vibration pattern.
- **Melody ON** is not available for vibrator when using IC card.

#### Note

- Note that if Vibrator is set and FOMA terminal is left on a table, it may fall when a call is received.
- Vibrator settings are not reflected in Flash movies.
- Even if Melody ON is set, vibration is not in conjunction with the main melody.

## Sounding Alarm When the Signal Is Weak

Default setting Alarm on(high)

The alarm sounds if the call is about to disconnect such as when the signal is weak.

- Quality alarm is available only for voice calls.

### 1 In stand-by, press 6 1 3 and select an alarm tone.

To set alarm to high	<input type="text" value="1"/>
To set alarm to low	<input type="text" value="2"/>
To set Alarm to off	<input type="text" value="3"/>

#### Note

- There may be times when the signal is strong (✓ appears) and you are not moving but the Quality alarm sounds.
- The call may be disconnected without the alarm sounding if the signal suddenly becomes weak.

## Ring Time Setting

### Setting Mail/PushTalk Ring Tone Duration

Default setting Mail ring time set: **ON** and **3 seconds**, PushTalk ring time set: **30 seconds**

- Mail ring tone does not sound if mail is received while a call is in progress, i-appli is running, the camera is being activated or pattern definitions are being updated.

### 1 In stand-by, press 1 6 and select an item.



Mail ring duration	<input type="text" value="1"/> → <input type="text" value="1"/> [ON]
PushTalk ring duration	<input type="text" value="2"/>

- Ring tones do not sound when set to **OFF**. PushTalk ring tone cannot be set to **OFF**.

### 2 Enter duration and press .

- Enter 01 to 30 seconds for Mail ring tone and 01 to 60 seconds for PushTalk tone.

#### Note

- PushTalk ring duration cannot be selected when [Set auto answer](#) is set to **ON** for PushTalk.

## Ring Output

### Sounding Ring Tone in Earphone Only

Default setting Earp.+speaker

Set ring tone to sound from earphone instead of the FOMA terminal speakers when the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately) is connected.

- If no flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch is connected, the ring tone will sound from the speakers even when set to **Earphone only**.

### 1 In stand-by, press 1 5 and select a ring tone output device.

Earphone only	<input type="text" value="1"/>
Earphone and speaker	<input type="text" value="2"/>

## Note

- The phone ring volume in the earphone/microphone is set using **Phone ring volume**. When the volume is set to **Silent**, no ring tone sounds from the earphone.
- Do not wind the earphone/microphone cord around FOMA terminal. Internal antenna may not work properly.
- Fully insert the earphone/microphone plug. Interrupted sound, static or loud noise may result when only partially inserted.
- The following are not malfunctions.
  - Interrupted sound or static when the earphone/microphone is only partially inserted during a call.
  - A popping sound upon turning power on.

## Manner Mode

# Silencing Handset

Default setting **OFF**

Use Manner mode to avoid disturbing others when in public. A single key operation silences the FOMA terminal.

- Settings vary for each mode as indicated below.

Function	Normal	Silent	Original*1
Record message, Vibrator	ON	OFF	ON
Ring tone, Mail ring tone	Silent	Silent	Silent
Alarm tone, Key/Standby i-motion sound, Low battery alarm	OFF	OFF	OFF
Mic sensitivity up*2	ON	ON	ON

\*1 Original manner mode settings can be changed (P. 124).

\*2 When Mic sensitivity up is set to **ON**, the microphone becomes more sensitive allowing for conversations at lower volumes. Microphone sensitivity does not change during a Hands-free call.

- Camera shutter sound and movie record start/end sound are not silenced.

## Setting Manner Mode

### 1 Press **[Manner Mode]** for 1+ seconds when in stand-by.



- To set Manner mode while receiving a call, press **[Manner Mode]** for 1+ seconds. The Manner mode selected previously is set (When the FOMA terminal is closed, press **[Manner Mode]** for 1+ seconds while receiving a call). The default setting is **Normal**.
- If Normal manner mode or Silent manner mode is set during an incoming call, the ring tone is silenced. For Original manner mode, set volume is applied. This setting remains set until disabled. Caller's message is recorded if incoming call is not answered. Record message is not set if three Record messages (voice calls)/Voice memos or two Record messages (Videophone) are already recorded. Press **[Answer]** to answer the call.
- To select Manner mode type, press **[Manner Mode]** and press **[1]** [ON] in stand-by. When settings are performed while Manner mode is set, the set Manner mode is changed. When settings are performed while Manner mode is disabled, Manner mode is set.

## 2 Select Manner mode type and press .



- **Normal Set**, **Silent Set**, or **Original Set** appears and Manner mode is set ( appears).
- The Manner mode selected previously is set if no operations are performed for approximately two seconds after step 1.

### When in stand-by or while receiving, with Manner mode set (Normal)

- Key/Standby i-motion sound, warning sounds, melody playback (a confirmation screen appears), i-αpli melodies/sound effects, charge start sound, charge end sound, battery level sound, hold tone during calls, bar code recognition tone and Limit settings alarm, etc. are silenced.
- Ring tones, alarm tones, timer sounds, etc. are changed to vibrations.
- Record message is automatically set. Record message cannot be set or disabled ( P. 71) using menu operations.

## Disabling Manner Mode

### 1 Press for 1+ seconds when in stand-by or while receiving.

-  disappear and Manner mode is disabled.

### Related Operations

#### Disable Manner mode automatically at a specified time <Auto disable>

In stand-by, enter disabling time (four digits: 24-hour format) ▶  (for 1+ seconds) or .

#### Silence ring tone when Manner mode is not set <Quick silent>

Press  while receiving.

- When FOMA terminal is closed: Press  while receiving.

#### Note

##### Automatically disabling Manner mode

- Disabling time is within 24 hours of the time of setting. When a screen other than stand-by is shown at the disabling time, or when turned off, Manner mode is disabled when the stand-by display reappears.

##### Quick silent

- Quick silent silences the current incoming call.

## Original Manner Mode

### Changing Manner Mode

**Default setting** Record message: **ON**, Ring tone: **Silent**, Mail ring tone: **Silent**, Alarm tone: **OFF**, Vibrator: **ON**, Key/Standby i-motion: **OFF**, Mic sensitivity up: **ON**, Low battery alarm: **OFF**

Change the settings of the various functions that are activated when Original manner mode is set.

### 1 In stand-by, press and [ON].

### 2 Press [Original].

### 3 Select function and setting, and select **1** [ON] or **2** [OFF].

Record message	<b>1</b>	Alarm tone	<b>4</b>	Mic sensitivity up	<b>7</b>
Ring tone*	<b>2</b>	Vibrator	<b>5</b>	Low battery alarm	<b>8</b>
Mail ring tone*	<b>3</b>	Key/Standby i-motion	<b>6</b>		

\* For the volume setting, press (louder) or (softer) to adjust and press .

- Press when changing the settings is finished. The stand-by display reappears and Original manner mode is set.

#### Note

- **Record message** is activated if set to **ON** even if set to **OFF** in Original manner mode.
- An alert tone sounds when battery level becomes low if Low battery alarm is set to **ON**.
- Change Original manner mode settings even while Manner mode is set.
- If a connected external device is set to sound, it will sound even if Manner mode is set.

## Main Display

### Changing Stand-by Display Settings of Main Display

#### Displaying an Image <Stand-by Display>

Default setting 待受画面 1

Set images saved in Data box, including preset still pictures, shot still pictures and movies, downloaded still pictures and Flash movies, i-motion, images received via i-mode mail, etc., as stand-by.

- Stand-by display images are preset in the FOMA terminal ( P. 425).
- Use Data box images such as JPEG/GIF images, animated GIFs, Flash movies in My picture and movies/i-motion in i-motion folder. Even if Flash movies with audio are used, they are played without sound.
- Voice only movies/i-motion (melodies with no video), and movies/i-motion with playback restrictions are not available. ASF files are also not available.

### 1 In stand-by, press **2** **1** **1** and select image.

To set an image	<p><b>1</b> → select folder →  → select image →  → <b>Yes</b> → </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● To check image, select an image and press . Press  and the previous screen reappears.</li> <li>● Select <b>Yes</b> and press  in the above operation to show a setting confirmation screen. Select Display size for JPEG image from <b>Actual size</b>, <b>Zoom/Reduce (all)</b> and <b>Zoom/Reduce (wide)</b>. Select Display size for GIF image or animated GIF from <b>Actual size</b> and <b>Zoom/Reduce (all)</b>. <b>Actual size</b> is not available for still pictures larger than <b>Stand-by: 240x400</b>. Display size cannot be selected for Flash movies.</li> </ul>
To set a movie/i-motion	<p><b>2</b> → select folder →  → select movie/i-motion →  → <b>Yes</b> → </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● To check movie/i-motion, select a movie/i-motion and press . Press  and the previous screen reappears.</li> <li>● Press  [Pause] during playback to pause. Press  to continue playback.</li> <li>● Movies/i-motion of <b>sQCIF: 128x96</b>, <b>QCIF: 176x144</b>, <b>hQVGA: 240x176</b> and <b>QVGA: 320x240</b> can be set. For <b>sQCIF: 128x96</b> and <b>QCIF: 176x144</b> (WxH) movies/i-motion, select <b>Actual size</b> or <b>Zoom</b>.</li> <li>● Movie/i-motion volume follows Key/Standby i-motion volume settings (Movie/i-motion plays back one time). In stand-by, press  (for 1+ seconds) during i-motion playback to switch audio on or off.</li> </ul>
To set an i-appli	<p><b>3</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Refer to P. 257 for details on setting i-appli.</li> </ul>

## Note

- Images and movies/i-motion saved on microSD Memory Card cannot be directly set as stand-by. Copy/transfer to FOMA terminal handset before setting. Movies/i-motion saved in the **Movable contents** folder on microSD Memory Card can be directly set.
- If a Flash movie, animated GIF or movie/i-motion is set as stand-by, they are activated as shown below.

Flash movie or animated GIF	Played back from the first frame. A frame of the stopped movie/animation appears as the stand-by display when playback finishes. Press  during playback to pause. Press  again to resume playback.
Movie/i-motion	Played back from the first frame. The first frame appears as the stand-by display when playback finishes. Press  during playback to return to the first frame and stop. Press  again to resume playback.

- When the image set as stand-by is deleted, the default image reappears.
- Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To, and Web To functions are not available from i-motion stand-by.
- The set animated GIF or Flash movie may appear differently (such as frame dropping) from when on a site or Internet web page.
- When the display is turned off, press any key to turn on it (A function assigned to the key is not executed). Afterward, the normal key operation is enabled.

## Displaying the Calendar <Calendar Display>

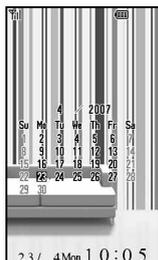
Default setting **OFF**

Display calendar for the current month, two months (the current month and the following month) or four months (starting with the current month) on top of stand-by image. Set vacation days and holidays (P. 375) are shown in red. Days with schedules set are underlined. When the calendar is set to **1 month (Large)**, icons appear to the right of the dates with schedule entries.

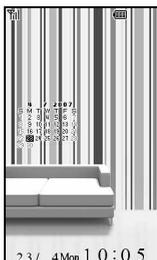
- Japanese national holidays as stipulated in the revised National Holiday Law and Welfare Law for the Elderly (Law No. 43, 2005) are set by default (as of January 2007). Dates for Spring Equinox Day and Autumnal Equinox Day may differ because they are released on February 1 of the previous year.
- If animated GIF, Flash movie or i-motion is set as stand-by, playback stops when switching to Calendar.
- Calendar appears in Japanese when Select language is set to 日本語.

### 1 In stand-by, press and select display method.

1 month (Large)	
1 month	 →  [Upper left],  [Upper right],  [Lower left] or  [Lower right]
2 months	 →  [Up] or  [Down]
4 months	
OFF	



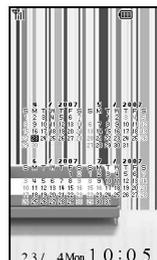
1 month (Large)



1 month (upper left)



2 months (down)



4 months

- Press , and the previous and following months appear. When the calendar is set to **4 months**, the previous and following two months appear.
- Press  to switch between the stand-by and the calendar when Calendar is set in the stand-by display.
- When Calendar is set and i-Channel ticker is set to **ON**, press  in stand-by to switch between Calendar display and i-Channel ticker.

## Displaying the Clock <Clock Display>

**Default setting** Clock display: **ON(Large)**, Set clock style: 待受時計 1, Set display position: **Down**

Show date and time on top of stand-by image.

- When Clock display is set to **ON(Large)** or **OFF**, clock does not appear in the upper right of the stand-by display (Time appears on other screens). Set Clock display to **ON(Small)** to show the clock in the upper right of the stand-by display.
- When selecting from My picture, GIF images that are 160 (W) × 160 (H) pixels are available (Flash movies, animated GIFs and JPEG images are not available).
- Date and time appear in Japanese when Select language is set to 日本語. However, some images may not appear properly when language is switched between Japanese and English.
- If in the Cycloid position, the clock is displayed in **ON(Small)** even when set to **ON(Large)**.

**1** In stand-by, press    .

**2** Select **Clock display**, press  and select the type of clock.

To show clock (Large)	
To show clock (Small)	 → proceed to step 5 ● The clock image displayed at the top of the screens other than the stand-by display can be changed (🔍 "Changing the Design of Icons" on P. 133).
To not show	 → proceed to step 5

**3** Select **Set clock style**, press , select folder, press , select image and press  [OK].

- Sample of the clock appears on the display.

**4** Select **Set disp position**, press  and select the display position.

Up	
Down	

**5** Press  [Complete].

## Call/Receive Display

### Changing Call/Receive Image

**Default setting** Outgoing calls: 電話発信 1, Incoming voice calls, Videophone, Payphone, User unset, Not support: 電話着信 1

**Change the image that appears when making or receiving a call.**

- Use JPEG/GIF images, animated GIFs and Flash movies in My picture of Data box. Also set i-motion as receive display (excluding voice only i-motion (melodies with no video)).
- Movie/i-motion with image size of **sQCIF: 128×96**, **QCIF: 176×144**, **hQVGA: 240×176** and **QVGA: 320×240** are available.
- Images with the width or height larger than 240 (W) × 144 (H) pixels are reduced.

## 1 In stand-by, press , select item and press [Select].

Outgoing calls		Payphone	
Incoming voice calls		User unset	
Incoming video phone		Not support	

- When an item is selected, a preview of the set image appears. However, preview does not appear when a movie/i-motion is set.

## 2 Select folder, press , select image and press [OK].

- To set the Receive display, select [My picture] or [i-motion] before selecting a folder.
- To check image, select an image and press . Press and the previous screen reappears. For pre-installed animated GIFs, press to play. Playback automatically stops after approximately 15 to 30 seconds.
- For movies/i-motion, press [Pause] to pause playback. Press to continue playback. Press and the previous screen reappears.
- Refer to P. 205 for details on setting i-motion as the receive display.

### Note

- If the receive display is changed, ring tone may also change (参照 P. 206).
- If original image set as Call/Receive display is deleted, the default setting image reappears.
- Images that cannot be set for the Call/Receive display do not appear.
- **Incoming video phone** is prioritized over **User unset** for Videophone calls with no caller ID.
- Images in microSD Memory Card cannot be set as a call/receive display. Copy/transfer them to the FOMA terminal handset before setting. Movies/i-motion copied from microSD Memory Card to the FOMA terminal handset cannot be set as a receive display. To use shot movies, save them on the FOMA terminal handset. Movies/i-motion in the **Movable contents** folder in microSD Memory Card can directly be set.
- **Picture call set** may be prioritized over the receive display setting if set to **ON**.

## Send/Receive Display

# Changing Image for Sending/Receiving Messages

**Default setting** Send display: メール送信 1, Receive display: メール受信 1, Mail received screen: メール受信結果 1

Change the images that appear when sending or receiving mail or when mail reception is completed.

- Use JPEG/GIF images, animated GIFs and Flash movies in My picture of Data box. i-motion can also be used for Mail received screen (excluding voice only i-motion (melodies with no video)).

## 1 In stand-by, press , select item and press [Select].

To set Send display	
To set Receive display	
To set Mail received screen	

- When an item is selected, a preview of the set image appears. However, preview does not appear when a movie/i-motion is set.

## 2 Select folder, press , select image and press [OK].

- To set the Mail received screen, select [My picture] or [i-motion] before selecting a folder.
- To check image, select an image and press . Press and the previous screen reappears. For pre-installed animated GIFs, press to play. Playback automatically stops after approximately 15 to 30 seconds.
- For movies/i-motion, press [Pause] to pause playback. Press to resume playback. To return to the previous screen, press .

## Note

- If Mail received screen is changed, mail ring tone may also be changed.
- If an image set for Send/Receive display or Mail received screen is deleted, the default setting image reappears.
- Images that cannot be set for the Send/Receive display or Mail received screen do not appear.
- Images on microSD Memory Card cannot be set for the Send/Receive display and Mail received screen. Copy/transfer to FOMA terminal handset before setting. Movies/i-motion copied from microSD Memory Card to the FOMA terminal handset cannot be set for Mail received screen. To use shot movies, save them on the FOMA terminal handset. Movies/i-motion saved in the **Movable contents** folder on microSD Memory Card can be directly set.
- For the SMS and Message R/F receive complete screen, the default メール受信結果1 cannot be changed from.

## Picture Call Set

# Setting Whether to Show Phonebook Image for Incoming Calls

Default setting **ON**

Set to show picture call image when a call is received from a phone number with **Picture call set** (☎ P. 100, P. 106).

- When caller ID is not sent or if picture call images/movies are not set in phonebook, images are not displayed even if Picture call is set to **ON** (☎ P. 102).

**1** In stand-by, press **⊙** **2** **4** **1** **1** and **1** **[ON]**.

## Note

- Images are prioritized in the following order.

	Priority (high → low)
Image	Phonebook Picture call → group Picture call → Call/Receive display ● If i-motion is set, the set i-motion may be prioritized.

## Sub Display Setting

# Setting Sub Display

## Displaying Caller's Name for Incoming Calls <Caller ID Display>

Default setting **ON**

Display caller's phone number and name on the sub display.

- Caller's name is not displayed while phonebook PIM is locked. However, when PushTalkPlus is received with caller ID, the name saved in the network phonebook appears.

**1** In stand-by, press **⊙** **2** **2** **1** and **1** **[ON]**.

## Changing Clock Design of Sub Display <Clock Display>

Default setting *Stand-by clock(L)*

1 In stand-by, press **2** **2** **2** and select the type of clock.

Stand-by clock(L)	<b>1</b>
Stand-by clock(S)	<b>2</b>

### Power Saver Set

## Saving Battery Power

Default setting *Normal(auto bright)*

Adjust settings such as the screen display time and conserve battery power.

Settings for items such as display time vary for each mode as shown below (Durations are approximations).

	Normal (auto bright)	Normal (fixed bright)	Power saver (Eco)	User set*1
Display light time	10 seconds	10 seconds	5 seconds	10 seconds
Screen display time	1 minute	1 minute	30 seconds	1 minute
Brightness*2	Automatic	6	1	Automatic
Keypad light setting	Light	Light	OFF	Light

\*1 Change User set settings (P. 130).

\*2 When set to **Automatic**, the brightness sensor (P. 25) automatically adjusts the brightness of the display and the keypad backlight according to the surrounding light. Adjusting may take some time when a bright or dark room is entered immediately after the phone is opened. Do not apply stickers to the brightness sensor. Doing so may interfere with the sensor.

1 In stand-by, press **2** **7** and select Power saver type.

Normal (auto bright)	<b>1</b>	Power saver (Eco)	<b>3</b>
Normal (fixed bright)	<b>2</b>	User set	<b>4</b>

## Setting Power Saver (Eco) by One-touch Operation

1 In stand-by, press , select **Yes** and press .

- Power saver (Eco) is set. When Power saver (Eco) is already set, the Power saver set screen appears.

### Note

- To disable, press again to show the Power saver set screen and select the Power saver type other than **Power saver(Eco)**.

### User Set

## Setting Original Power Saver Mode

Adjust Display light time, Screen display time, Brightness and Keypad light settings for **User set** of Power saver settings.

## Setting Display and Key Lights <Display Light Time>

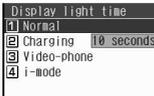
Default setting Normal: **10 seconds**, Charging and i-mode: **Same as normal**, Video-phone: **ON**

Set the light duration for display and key backlight for the following situations. Light dims when set time passes.

- When **Power saver set** is set to **Normal(auto bright)**, **Normal(fixed bright)** or **Power saver(Eco)**, Display light time, Screen display time, Brightness and Keypad light setting in User set is disabled.

Normal	Set the length of time the display lights from 1 to 99 seconds for when handset is turned on, keys are pressed, handset is opened/closed or a call is received.
Charging	Set to <b>Same as normal</b> or <b>As scrn dsp time</b> for when handset is connected to AC or DC adapter (sold separately).
Video-phone	Set to <b>Same as normal</b> or <b>ON</b> for when Videophone is in use.
i-mode	Set to <b>Same as normal</b> or <b>As scrn dsp time</b> for when i-mode is in use.

## 1 In stand-by, press **⓪** **2** **7** **4** **1** and select item.



Normal	<b>1</b>	Video-phone	<b>3</b>
Charging	<b>2</b>	i-mode	<b>4</b>

## 2 Enter from 01 to 99 seconds and press **⓪**.

- For charging and i-mode, select **1** [Same as normal] or **2** [As scrn dsp time]. For Videophone, select **1** [Same as normal] or **2** [ON].

### Note

- Light duration (seconds) can only be set for **Normal**.
- Increasing light duration shortens continuous stand-by time.
- When the same time is set for Normal Display light time and Screen display time, Screen display time is prioritized.
- The display brightness during a Videophone call follows the setting of User set in Power saver set. When Videophone in Display light time is set to **Same as normal**, the brightness is adjusted to the setting of Brightness. When **ON** is set, the brightness is adjusted to Brightness 2.
- **Backlight time** in **Image Viewer** and **i-motion player** apply to the light duration at Flash movie or movie playback.
- When Flash movies or animated GIFs are set as stand-by and Power saver mode is exited to return to stand-by, the movie or animation resumes playback from the beginning.
- If Backlight time for Image Viewer, i-motion player and **Chara-den player** are set to **As light setting, Normal** in Display light time is applied.
- Light is always lit for **Slideshow**, **Shoot still picture**, **Character reader** and **Bar code reader** regardless of the display light time settings.
- Light duration is prioritized as follows when multiple are set. If Display light time is set to **ON** for Videophone and Videophone is used while charging, Display light time is set to **ON** regardless of the setting for Charging.

	Priority (high → low)
Light duration	Charging → Videophone/i-mode → Normal

## Lighting the Keypad <Keypad Light Setting>

Default setting **Light**

Set to turn on/off the backlight for keypad.

- The duration when set to **Light** follows the Display light time setting.
- Note that continuous stand-by time decreases when set to light.

## 1 In stand-by, press **⓪** **2** **7** **4** **4** and **1** [Light].

## Setting Image Display Time <Screen Display Time>

Default setting 1 minute

Turn off the display when FOMA terminal is not in use for a set period of time to conserve battery power.

### 1 In stand-by, press **⊙** **2** **7** **4** **2** and select time before activating Power saver mode.

30 seconds	<b>1</b>	3 minutes	<b>4</b>	15 minutes	<b>7</b>
1 minute	<b>2</b>	5 minutes	<b>5</b>	20 minutes	<b>8</b>
2 minutes	<b>3</b>	10 minutes	<b>6</b>		

#### Note

- In Power saver mode, the display will turn on when any key is pressed.
- During a voice call, the display backlight turns off according to **Display light time** (Normal) regardless of the set time in the screen display time setting.
- During i-Channel ticker playback, Power saver mode is activated according to the screen display time setting. However, when the screen display time is set to 30 seconds, Power saver mode is not activated for 60 seconds from the start of i-Channel ticker playback.
- Power saver mode is not activated even when the Screen display time passes in the following cases.
  - Videophone calls are in progress
  - PushTalk transmission is in progress
  - Video is being played
  - Mail transmission is in progress
  - Camera is being activated
  - i-mode transmission is in progress
  - Slideshow is being played
  - Data is being transferred with an external device
  - i-motion is being played
  - One Seg is being recorded
  - One Seg is being watchedHowever, Power saver mode is activated according to the screen display time setting during Stand-by i-motion playback.

## Adjusting Display Brightness <Brightness>

Default setting **Automatic**

Adjust the display brightness. Set Brightness to **Automatic** to automatically adjust the display brightness according to the surrounding light. In addition, Keypad light is automatically switched between **Light OFF** when Keypad light setting is set to **Light**.

- Note that increasing brightness shortens continuous stand-by time.

### 1 In stand-by, press **⊙** **2** **7** **4** **3** and select brightness.



When brightness is manually adjusted

To adjust brightness automatically	<b>1</b>
To adjust brightness manually	<b>2</b> → <b>☺</b> (brighter) or <b>☹</b> (darker) → <b>⊙</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● Select from 16 display brightness levels. The screen appears at the set brightness as adjustments are made.</li></ul>

## Personalize

### Arranging the Display

## Changing Submenu Design <Submenu Image>

Default setting Upper image: ヌニユー枠1(上) Lower image: ヌニユー枠1(下)

Change menu background pattern (image around edge of display).

- Available images are saved in the **Pre-install** folder.

### 1 In stand-by, press **⊙** **2** **4** **3** and **⊙** [Select].

- Press **⊙** to switch between the image set screens of upper and lower frames.

## 2 Press , select image and press [OK].

- To check image, select an image and press . Press  and the previous screen reappears.
- When the upper frame image is set, the lower frame image set screen appears. To set an image, press  [Select] and repeat step 2.

## Setting the Animation for the Notice Window <Animate Notices>

Default setting お知らせアニメ 1

Set images for windows with confirmation/error messages.

- Use JPEG/GIF images or animated GIFs with a size of 212 (W) × 42 (H) pixel. Flash movies are not available.

## 1 In stand-by, press 2 4 4 and [Select].

## 2 Select folder, press , select image and press [OK].

- To check image, select an image and press . Press  and the previous screen reappears.

## Changing the Design of Icons <Signal/Batt/S Clock>

Default setting Signal icon: 電波マーク 1, Battery icon: 電池残量 1, Small clock: 時計表示 1

Change Signal, Battery level and Clock icons that appear on the screen.

### Default marks



- When selecting from My picture, GIF images that are 48 (W) × 60 (H) pixel for Signal icon, 72 (W) × 40 (H) for Battery icon and 49 (W) × 40 (H) for Clock are available (Flash movies, animated GIFs and JPEG images are not available).

## 1 In stand-by, press 2 4 5 and select mark type.

Signal icon	1
Battery icon	2
Clock icon	3

## 2 Press [Select], select folder, press , select image and press [OK].

- To check image, select an image and press . Press  and the previous screen reappears.

## Changing the Color Scheme <Theme Color>

Default setting ModernWhite

## 1 In stand-by, press 2 4 6 and select Theme color.

ModernWhite	1	StreetBrown	3	PrismRed	5	HoneyYellow	7
MidnightBlack	2	SilverLine	4	Intelligence	6	CassisPink	8

- When a Theme color is selected and  is pressed, the color scheme appears on the screen.

## 2 Select Yes and press .

### Personalize Menu

## Changing Top Menu Design

Change icons and their order, background image and whether to show icon names in the Top menu.

- Individual icon settings (settings of Icon image, Moving icon and Displaying icon name), Action focus and Set background may not be available depending on the set Top menu.

### Personalizing and Saving Top Menu

Save up to two image sets among the images shown for Top menu with Icon image or background settings.

1 In Top menu, press    [Customizable], select Yes and press .

2 Set Icon images ( P. 134 ) or background ( P. 135 ) and press   [Personalize menu].

3 Select save destination, press  [Save all], select Yes and press .

- Save to *User set 1* or *User set 2*.
- To set a saved user set in the Top menu, select the user set, press , select **Yes** and press .
- To delete a saved user set, select the user set, press , select **Yes** and press .

#### Note

- The preset Top menu for personalization cannot be deleted.
- When power is turned off or setting is otherwise interrupted, changes are set up until the interruption. In such cases, perform settings again.

### Setting Top Menu Icons <Icon Image>

- Use 76 (W) × 76 (H) pixel JPEG images, GIF images or animated GIFs. Downloaded images can also be used.
- Set two images per icon, for selected and unselected status.
- Up to three scenes are used for animated GIFs. Image for selected status is not available.
- If an image in My picture of Data box is set as a menu icon, even if deleted, the image is retained until the menu icon setting is changed.

1 In step 2 of “Personalizing and Saving Top Menu” on P. 134, select an icon and press     [Icon image].

2 Select folder, press , select image for unselected status and press  [OK].

- Images that cannot be set for menu icons do not appear.
- When animated GIF is selected, Top menu reappears.
- To check image, select an image and press . Press  and the previous screen reappears.

3 Select image for selected status.

To set a different image for selected status	Select <b>Yes</b> →  → select folder →  → select image → 
To set the same image for unselected status	Select <b>No</b> → 

## Related Operations

### Move Top menu icons <Move icon>

In Top menu, select an icon ▶ (1) (4) (2) ▶ select location to move to ▶ .

### Show icon names <Display icon name>

In Top menu, press (1) (4) (3) ▶ (1).

#### Note

##### Display icon name

- The default setting is **OFF**.
- For preset icons, since the icon name is included in the image, characters appear doubled when Display icon name is set to **ON**.

## Setting Action Focus for Top Menu Icons <Action Focus>

Default setting **OFF**

- When set, Action focus only applies to icons selected in Top menu.
- Action focus is applied to last image for animated GIFs.

**1** In step 2 of “Personalizing and Saving Top Menu” on P. 134, press (1) (5) [Action Focus] and select Action focus type.

Globe	(1)	Circular frames appear and rotate at varying speeds.
Target	(2)	Large square becomes smaller.
Mist	(3)	Fog-like veil light covers icons.
Stardust	(4)	Light sparkles.
Windmill	(5)	Three lines appear and rotate under the icon.
Ripple	(6)	Rings move outward.
OFF	(7)	Nothing is set.

## Setting Top Menu Background <Set Background>

Default setting **メニュー背景**

- Use JPEG and GIF images (Flash movies and animated GIFs are not available).  
Downloaded images can also be used.
- If a still picture in My picture of Data box is set as background image, even if deleted, the image remains as background image until changed.

**1** In step 2 of “Personalizing and Saving Top Menu” on P. 134, press (1) (6) [Set background].

**2** Select folder, press , select still picture and press [OK].

- Still pictures that cannot be set as background images do not appear.
- To check still picture, select a still picture and press . Press and the previous screen reappears.

## Resetting Top Menu to Default Status <Reset Menu>

Reset Top menu Icon image settings, Icon location, Display icon name, Action Focus and background settings to the default status.

- For Top menu, i-mode menu and mail menu changed by Kisekae Tool, the settings follow **White** (for the handset color White) of Kisekae Tool in the Pre-installed folder regardless of the handset color.

**1** In Top menu, press   [Reset menu], enter terminal security code, press , select Yes and press .

## Viewing the Key List <Key List>

Refer to the Key list and look up Top menu icons and key operations from stand-by.

**1** In Top menu, press   [Key list] and select the operation to check.

Icon operation methods	
Key operations from stand-by	

- Key list for the selected operation appears.

## Kisekae Tool

### Using Kisekae Tool

Use the Kisekae Tool downloaded from i-mode sites for the terminal and change the ring tone, stand-by, menu icon, etc. collectively.

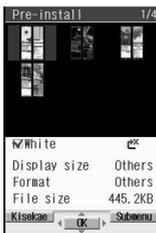
- Refer to "Downloading Kisekae Tool" on P. 194 for details on downloading the Kisekae Tool.
- The following items can be set.

Screen	Stand-by, Outgoing calls, Incoming calls, Incoming video phone, Send/Receive, Mail received, Signal icon, Battery icon, Animated notice, Top menu image, i-mode menu image, Mail menu image
Ring tone	Phone ring tone, Videophone ring tone, Mail ring tone, Message R/F ring tone, PushTalk tone

- Items that can be set depend on the set Kisekae Tool.
- Kisekae Tool in the Pre-install folder can be used only for screens. It cannot be used to change ring tone.

**1** In stand-by, press    .

**2** Select folder and press .



When the Pre-install folder is selected

### 3 Select Kisekae Tool and press



Data screen in Kisekae Tool

- To check data, select the data and press . However, Top menu, i-mode menu and Mail menu cannot be checked in the Cycloid position. Return to the normal position to check them.

### 4 Press [Kisekae], select Yes and press .

#### Note

- Checking Kisekae Tool saved in the **Movable contents** folder on microSD Memory Card is possible. However, they cannot be directly set. Transfer them to the FOMA terminal handset before setting.
- Top menu, i-mode and mail menus are displayed by a list if in the Cycloid position and Kisekae Tool is not set.

#### Related Operations

##### Set data check volume <Set volume>

- 1 In data list in Kisekae Tool, press .
- 2 Press (louder) or (softer) .

##### Set display size when setting i-motion as stand-by display <Stand-by i-motion>

- 1 In data list in Kisekae Tool, press .
- 2 For Normal size, press .
- For Large size: Press .

#### Resetting Kisekae Tool Settings

### 1 In stand-by, press for 1+ seconds.



### 2 Select item to reset.

To reset display/sound	→ enter terminal security code →  →  [Agree]
To reset the menu screen	→ enter terminal security code →  →  [Agree]

## Setting the Illumination

Set flashed LED color and flashing pattern in a call, when receiving a call, etc.

### LED color type

Select from Rainbow, Aurora, Sun set, Leaf, Aqua, Sunshine, Plasma and Sky.

### LED patterns

The following table shows the combinations of LED flashing pattern and set items.

LED pattern	Called LED, Mail/Message LED	Mail send/receive LED	In-call LED	Alarm/Timer LED	Open-close/Rotation LED
Classic					
Breath					
Deep breath					
Light breath					
Notice					
Excite					
Morse code					
Melody ON		x	x		x

- IC card LED flashes in **Breath**. The LED pattern cannot be changed.

## Setting the Called LED Color <Called LED Color>

**Default setting** Voice call: **Aqua**, Videophone: **Aqua**, PushTalk: **Sun set**, Mail/Message LED: **Leaf**

Set the LED color for incoming voice/Videophone calls, PushTalk and mail.

### 1 In stand-by, press and select item.

To set voice called LED color	  
To set Videophone called LED color	  
To set PushTalk LED color	  
To set mail LED color	  

### 2 Select called LED color.

- Each time a color is selected, the LED color changes.

#### Note

- When a call is received during data transmission, LED color is the set color for the voice called LED.
- Called LED is prioritized as follows when multiple are set.

	Priority (high → low)
Called LED	Phonebook called LED → group called LED → regular called LED
Mail LED	Phonebook mail LED → group mail LED → regular mail LED

## Setting the Called LED Pattern <LED Pattern Settings>

**Default setting** Voice call: *Excite*, Videophone call: *Notice*, PushTalk: *Morse code*, Mail/Message LED: *Breath*

Set called LED flashing pattern. If a melody with LED actions is set as the ring tone, link the melody and LED actions (Melody ON).

### 1 In stand-by, press **ⓘ** **2** **5** and select item.

To set voice called LED pattern	<b>1</b> <b>1</b> <b>2</b>
To set Videophone called LED pattern	<b>1</b> <b>2</b> <b>2</b>
To set PushTalk LED pattern	<b>1</b> <b>3</b> <b>2</b>
To set mail LED pattern	<b>2</b> <b>1</b> <b>2</b>

### 2 Select called LED pattern.

- Each time a pattern is selected, the LED flashing pattern changes.

## Using the LED During Sending/Receiving Mail <Mail Send/Rcv LED>

**Default setting** LED color settings: *Sky*, LED pattern settings: *Breath*

### 1 In stand-by, press **ⓘ** **2** **5** **2** **2** and **1** [ON].

### 2 Press **1** [LED color settings] and select LED color.

- Each time a color is selected, called LED color changes.

### 3 Press **2** [LED pattern settings] and select LED pattern.

- Each time a pattern is selected, called LED flashing pattern changes.

## Using the LED During a Call <In-call LED>

**Default setting** *OFF*

Flash the LED during a voice/Videophone call or while the right to speak is granted during PushTalk transmission.

### 1 In stand-by, press **ⓘ** **2** **5** **3** and **1** [ON].

### 2 Press **1** [LED color settings] and select LED color.

- Each time a color is selected, the LED color changes.

### 3 Press **2** [LED pattern settings] and select LED pattern.

- Each time a pattern is selected, the LED flashing pattern changes.

## Using the LED When Alarm Operates <Alarm/Timer LED>

**Default setting** LED color settings: *Aurora*, LED pattern settings: *Morse code*

Flash the LED while an alarm, which is set with Timer, Alarm, Schedule, ToDo list, Reception or Recording is activated.

**1** In stand-by, press **⊙** **2** **5** **4** and **1** [ON].

**2** Press **1** [LED color settings] and select LED color.

- Each time a color is selected, the LED color changes.

**3** Press **2** [LED pattern settings] and select LED pattern.

- Each time a pattern is selected, the LED flashing pattern changes.

## Using the LED When Using IC Card <IC Card LED>

**Default setting** ON

- The LED flashes in *Plasma* with the pattern of *Breath*. The LED color and LED pattern cannot be changed.

**1** In stand-by, press **⊙** **2** **5** **5** and **1** [ON].

## Using the LED When the FOMA terminal Is Opened and Closed or the Display Is Rotated <Open-clos/RotatLED>

**Default setting** LED color settings: *Aqua*, LED pattern settings: *Notice*

**1** In stand-by, press **⊙** **2** **5** **6** and **1** [ON].

**2** Press **1** [LED color settings] and select LED color.

- Each time a color is selected, the LED color changes.

**3** Press **2** [LED pattern settings] and select LED pattern.

- Each time a pattern is selected, the LED flashing pattern changes.

## Missed Call Notice/New Unrd Mail Noti

### Notifying a Call or Mail Received with LED

**Default setting** ON

Set the LED to flash for missed calls and new mail.

- The LED flashes in *Aqua* for missed calls and in *Leaf* for new mail at approximately eight second intervals. The LED color cannot be changed.

**1** In stand-by, press **⊙** **2** **5** and select item.

Missed call notice	<b>1</b> <b>4</b>
New unread mail notice	<b>2</b> <b>1</b> <b>3</b>

## 2 Press **[1]** [ON].

### Note

- The Missed call notice LED flashes for both missed calls and new mail when **Missed call notice** and **New unrd mail noti** are both set.

## Vibrant Image Mode

### Changing Image Quality

Default setting **Dynamic**

Set the display to clear and vibrant image quality.

## 1 In stand-by, press **[2]** **[6]** and select image quality.

Normal	<b>[1]</b>	Standard image quality
Dynamic	<b>[2]</b>	Image quality with increased colorfulness and emphasized edges
Vivid	<b>[3]</b>	Image quality with increased colorfulness
Sharpness	<b>[4]</b>	Image quality with emphasized edges

## 2 Check image quality and press **[2]**.

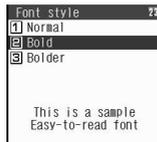
## Font Style

### Changing Font Width

Default setting **Bolder**

Change the font width for the display.

## 1 In stand-by, press **[2]** **[3]** and select font width.



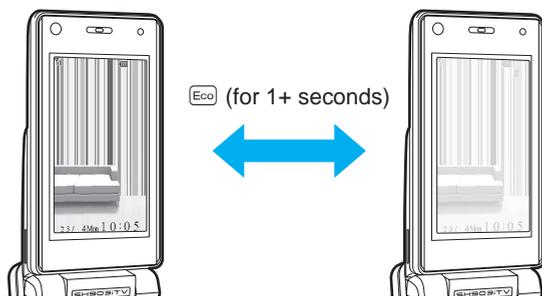
Normal	<b>[1]</b>
Bold	<b>[2]</b>
Bolder	<b>[3]</b>

- Press **[2]** to change sample font width.

### Note

- When the font width is changed, that for the operation guidance is also changed. Note that the font width when **Bolder** is selected is the same as that when **Bold** is selected.

## Preventing Others from Seeing the Display



- Changing the contrast of the display to prevent others from seeing the screen.

### 1 In stand-by or during operations, press **Eco** for 1+ seconds.

- Private filter is set and appears in stand-by.
- To disable, press **Eco** for 1+ seconds again.

#### Note

- Private filter cannot be switched during **All lock**, **Omakase Lock**, battery level warning or Delete user data.
- Private filter is canceled when the FOMA terminal is closed or turned off. However, when Manner mode is set with Linked manner mode **ON**, Private filter remains enabled even if the FOMA terminal is closed or turned off.
- Private filter is canceled while the display is off due to the **Screen display time**.

## Setting Private Filter in Conjunction with Manner Mode

<Linked Manner>

Default setting **OFF**

Set so that Private filter is automatically set when Manner mode is set.

### 1 In stand-by, press **2 8 1** and **1 [ON]**.

- Set/Disable Private filter even while in Manner mode.

## Changing Private Filter Density <Filter Density>

Default setting **Normal**

### 1 In stand-by, press **2 8 2** and select a Private filter density.

Dark	<b>1</b>
Normal	<b>2</b>
Light	<b>3</b>

- Private filter is more effective to prevent others from seeing the display in the order of **Dark**, **Normal**, **Light**.

# Security Settings

## ■ Security Codes

- FOMA Terminal Security Code ..... 144
- Changing Terminal Security Code ..... <Change Security Code>145
- Setting PIN Code ..... <UIM Settings>146
- Disabling PIN Lock ..... 147

## ■ Restricting Phone Operations and Functions

- Lock Functions ..... 148
- Preventing Use by Others ..... <All Lock>148
- Using Omakase Lock ..... <Omakase Lock>149
- Disabling Online Activity ..... <Self Mode>150
- Hiding Phonebook and Schedule Entries ..... <Function Lock>151
- Prohibiting Keypad Dialing ..... <Keypad Dial Lock>152
- Setting Keypad Dial Lock, Function Lock and IC Card Lock by One-touch Operation  
..... <Multi Easy Lock>152
- Setting Multi Easy Lock Automatically ..... <Multi Lock Auto-set>153
- Preventing Side Key Errors ..... <Side Key Guard>153

## ■ Restricting Mail and Calls

- Setting Redial and Received Calls ..... <Show Call/Received>153
- Viewing Information Set as Secret ..... <Secret Mode>154
- Receiving Calls from Only Specified Phone Numbers ..... <Accept Calls>155
- Rejecting Calls from Specified Phone Numbers ..... <Reject Calls>156
- Rejecting Calls with No Caller ID ..... <Reject by Reason of Non-disclosure>157
- Silencing Ring Tone for Callers Not in Phonebook ..... <Set Mute Ring Time>158
- Rejecting Callers Not in Phonebook ..... <Reject Unknown>159

## ■ Using Data Security Service

- Using Data Security Service ..... <Data Sec. Service>159

## ■ Other Security Settings

- Other Security Settings ..... 160

# FOMA Terminal Security Code

For convenient use of FOMA terminal functions, some functions require security codes. In addition to the terminal security code used for various handset operations, use security codes such as the network security code and i-mode password when using network services. Use security codes with various functions to fully utilize the FOMA terminal.

- Entered terminal security codes (security code for each function), i-mode passwords, and PIN1/PIN2 codes are masked with ✖.

## Precautions for Various Security Codes

- Do not use easily estimated numbers for security codes to be set such as "birthday", "part of a telephone number", "address or room number", "1111", "1234". Keep a separate memo of security codes.
- Keep security codes private. If the security codes are found and improperly used by others, DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss of the users.
- DoCoMo does not ask the users their security codes.
- In the case of forgotten security codes, the FOMA terminal owner will be asked to bring an identification (a driver's license, etc.), a FOMA terminal and a FOMA card to a DoCoMo Shop.
- For further details, contact the number listed in "General Inquiries" on the back of this manual.

## Terminal Security Code (For Various Functions)

Terminal security code is set to **0000** by default but can be changed by the user (☎ P. 145).

If the terminal security code entry screen appears, enter the terminal security code (four to eight digits) and press Ⓞ.

- If terminal security code is incorrectly entered, **Security code is wrong** appears and the screen before entering a terminal security code reappears. Check correct terminal security code and try again.

## Network Security Code

Network security code is a four-digit code used for various registration procedures at ドコモ e サイト (DoCoMo e-site) or used for accessing network services. The code is set at the time of subscription and afterwards can be changed by the user.

For those with **DoCoMo ID/password** of the general support site **My DoCoMo** designed for PC, the registration procedure for a new network security code is available from PC.

From i-mode terminals, the security code can be changed by the user, accessing "各種手続き" in ドコモ e サイト (DoCoMo e-site).

Refer to the back cover for details on **My DoCoMo** and ドコモ e サイト (DoCoMo e-site).

## i-mode Password

A four-digit "i-mode password" is required to register/delete sites in マイメニュー (My menu), or subscribe/cancel message services and charged i-mode services (Additionally, information providers may set their own passwords).

- i-mode password is set to **0000** by default but can be changed by the user.
- From i-mode terminals, the password can be changed by accessing **iMenu** → **English iMenu** → **Options** → **Change i-mode Password**.

## PIN1 Code/PIN2 Code

Set two security codes, PIN1 code and PIN2 code, on the FOMA card. These security codes are set to **0000** by default but can be changed by the user (☎ P. 147).

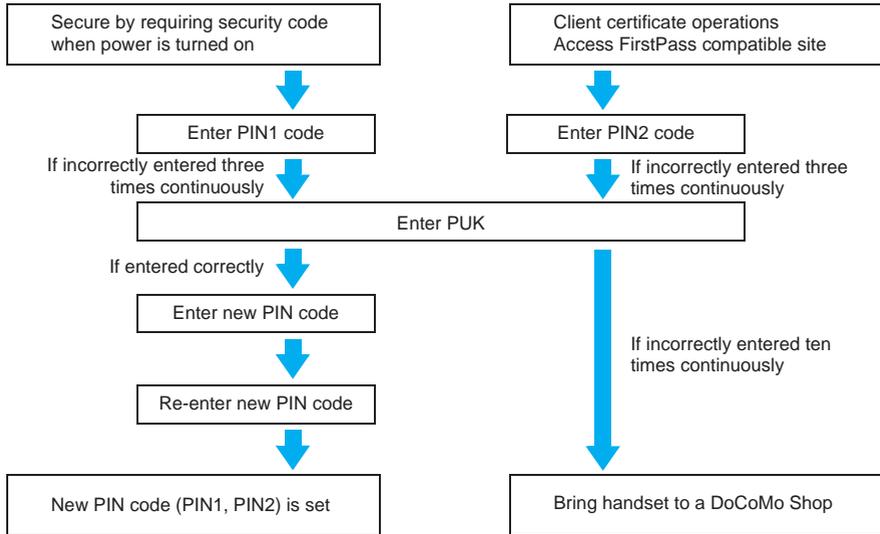
PIN1 code is a four- to eight-digit security code that is entered when the FOMA terminal is turned on or when a FOMA card is inserted to prevent unauthorized use by a third party. Enter PIN1 code to enable making/receiving calls and operating the handset. PIN2 code is four- to eight-digit security code that is entered when performing operations such as applying for or using Client certificates, or resetting total cost.

- Use the previously set PIN1 and PIN2 codes when inserting an old FOMA card into a newly purchased FOMA terminal.

## PUK

PUK is an eight-digit number used to disable PIN1/PIN2 code lock. Enter PUK to disable the lock. PUK cannot be changed by the user. Note PIN1/PIN2 codes and PUK.

- PIN1/PIN2 codes are automatically locked if incorrectly entered three times continuously.
- If PUK is incorrectly entered a total of ten times continuously, FOMA card is completely locked.



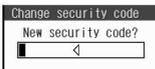
## Change Security Code

### Changing Terminal Security Code

Default setting 0000

Change the terminal security code (four to eight digits).

- 1 In stand-by, press  $\odot$   $\boxed{7}$   $\boxed{7}$ , enter current terminal security code and press  $\odot$ .



- 2 Enter new terminal security code, press  $\odot$ , enter new terminal security code again and press  $\odot$ .

## Setting PIN Code

Default setting PIN1 code: 0000, PIN2 code: 0000

Change the PIN1 and PIN2 codes on FOMA card. PIN1 and PIN2 codes are saved to the FOMA card.

- PIN1 code is a four- to eight-digit security code that prevents unauthorized use of the FOMA card. PIN2 code is a four- to eight-digit security code used for authentication when connecting to sites, Internet and online services. Enter when performing Client certificate operations (issuance of Client certificate to use FirstPass) or accessing FirstPass compatible sites (☎ P. 203).
- Enter the four- to eight-digit number for PIN1/PIN2 code (☎ P. 144).

### Note

- PIN1 code/PIN2 code is locked if incorrectly entered three times in PIN1 code/PIN2 code entry screen. Disable PIN lock. When disabling PIN lock, new PIN1 code/PIN2 code must be entered (☎ P. 147).
- If three consecutive PIN2 code entry errors are made and the FOMA terminal is locked, the handset continues to receive a signal and can make/receive calls and send/receive mail. However, if three consecutive PIN1 code entry errors are made and the FOMA terminal is locked, functions that require a signal are disabled.

## Setting Handset to Require PIN Code Entry When Power Is Turned On <PIN1 Code Input Set>

Default setting **OFF**

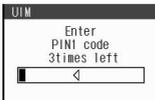
Set to require PIN1 code entry when turning on the FOMA terminal to prevent unauthorized use.

**1** In stand-by, press **☉** **7** **2**, enter terminal security code and press **☉**.



FOMA card settings screen

**2** Press **1** [PIN1 code input set] and select **ON** or **OFF**.



To set	<b>1</b> → enter PIN1 code → <b>☉</b>
To disable	<b>2</b> → enter PIN1 code → <b>☉</b>

- PIN1 code can be entered up to three times. PIN1 code entry screen shows how many times you can enter PIN1 code.

### Entering PIN1 code when power is turned on

Set PIN1 code input set to **ON** and PIN1 code entry screen appears when the power is turned on.

- Enter PIN1 code to operate FOMA terminal. Prevents unauthorized use of the handset.

**1** Press **☎** (**Power**) for **2+ seconds** to turn on handset, enter PIN1 code and press **☉**.

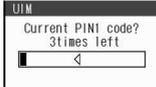
- PIN1 code can be entered up to three times. PIN1 code entry screen shows how many times you can enter PIN1 code.
- Enter correct PIN1 code to show the stand-by display.

## Changing PIN1/PIN2 Code <Change PIN1 Code/PIN2 Code>

**1** In stand-by, press **⊙** **7** **2**, enter terminal security code and press **⊙**.

- When PIN1 code input set is set to **OFF**, PIN1 code cannot be changed.

**2** Select PIN1 or PIN2 code, enter current PIN code and press **⊙**.



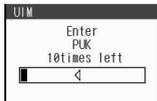
PIN1 code	<b>2</b>
PIN2 code	<b>3</b>

- PIN code can be entered up to three times. PIN code entry screen shows how many times you can enter PIN code.
- If PIN1/PIN2 code is entered incorrectly, **PIN1/PIN2 code not recognized** appears after step 3 and the screen of step 2 reappears.

**3** Enter new PIN code, press **⊙**, enter new PIN code again and press **⊙**.

## Disabling PIN Lock

### Screen when PIN1/PIN2 is locked



- PUK can be entered up to ten times. PIN lock disabling screen shows how many times you can enter PUK.
- Enter the four- to eight-digit number for PIN1/PIN2 code (☞ P. 144).

## Disabling PIN1 Lock

- Use the same steps to disable PIN2 code lock.

**1** In the PUK entry screen with PIN lock set, enter PUK (eight digits) and press **⊙**.

**2** Enter new PIN1 code, press **⊙**, enter new PIN1 code again and press **⊙**.

- **Changed** appears.

# Lock Functions

Restrict phonebook operations such as retrieving, saving and deleting, and calling with the dial keys.

- Terminal security code is required to set/disable lock.
- The following items can be set.

Lock function	Operation/Restrictions	Page
All lock	Prevents unauthorized use of the FOMA terminal for all operations other than power ON/OFF and answering voice/Videophone calls.	P. 148
Omakase Lock	The access to all the data in the FOMA terminal is remotely locked.	P. 149
Self mode*	Voice/Videophone calls, making/receiving PushTalk transmission, sending/receiving i-mode mail and SMS, receiving Message R/F and i-mode functions are not available.	P. 150
Function lock	Display, edit and operation for Multimedia, Mail, Phonebook (including PushTalk phonebook), Schedule, etc. are not available, preventing access and rewriting of personal information. Each function can be set individually.	P. 151
Keypad dial lock	Dialing and phonebook editing are not available. Use phonebook or Redial to call.	P. 152
Multi easy lock	Keypad dial lock, Function lock and IC card lock can be set by one-touch key operation.	P. 152
Multi lock auto-set	Keypad dial lock, Function lock and IC card lock can be automatically set when the display turns off.	P. 153
IC card lock	Prevents use of IC card functions.	P. 270
Side key guard*	Locks side keys and prevents errors.	P. 153

\* Terminal security code is not required.

## All Lock

### Preventing Use by Others

Default setting *Disabled*

Prevent all operations other than power ON/OFF and answering voice/Videophone calls.

## Enabling All Lock

1 In stand-by, press , enter terminal security code and press .



Lock settings screen

2 Press [All lock], select Yes and press .



- All lock is set and **All lock** appears in the stand-by display ( appears).

## Disabling All Lock

### 1 During All lock, enter terminal security code in stand-by and press .

- **All lock** and  disappear and All lock is disabled.

#### Note

- During All lock, 待受画面 1 appears. In such cases, the calendar display is set to **OFF**. When All lock is disabled, the previous screen reappears.
- Even if All lock is enabled, FeliCa IC card functions are not locked.
- When a missed call is received when All lock is enabled, the call is not indicated on the screen. When All lock is disabled, **xx missed call(s)** appears.
- During All lock, making and answering voice/Videophone calls are not available. However, calls to emergency numbers (110, 119 and 118) can still be made. To make a call, enter phone number in the terminal security code entry screen and press . Phone number is masked with asterisks.
- During All lock, **alarms** do not sound at set time.
- **i-mode mail, SMS and Message R/F** are automatically received but do not appear during All lock. Once All lock is disabled, i-mode mail, SMS and Message R/F icons appear.
- Failure to disable All lock five times consecutively will turn the FOMA terminal off. Turn the handset on again and enter correct terminal security code.

## Omakase Lock

### Using Omakase Lock

Default setting **Disabled**

#### Omakase Lock

Omakase Lock is a service to lock the FOMA terminal remotely, for example, in case of loss, by your request. Contact DoCoMo or access My DoCoMo website to use the service. This function will protect the user's privacy and Osaifu-Keitai.

The lock is disabled by a call or others from the user.

#### Enable/Disable Omakase Lock

 0120-524-360 Office hours: 24hours

Omakase Lock can also be enabled/disabled from the My DoCoMo website using PCs.

For details on the use of Omakase Lock, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Procedures and After-Sales Service]" or contact the number listed in "General Inquiries" on the back of this manual.

#### When Omakase Lock is set



- おまかせロック中です appears, and Omakase Lock is set.
- Omakase Lock is a service to lock the FOMA terminal with the registered FOMA card inserted.
- While Omakase Lock is enabled, all key operations and functions (including IC card Functions) are disabled, except receiving a voice/Videophone call and turning the power ON/OFF.
- When a voice/Videophone call is received while Omakase Lock is enabled, the caller's name or image is not displayed even if they are saved in the phonebook. Only their phone number is displayed.
- While Omakase Lock is enabled, received mail is held at mail center.
- Turning the power ON/OFF does not affect Omakase Lock (the lock is not released by turning the power OFF).
- FOMA card and microSD Memory Card are not locked.

## Note

- When Omakase Lock is activated while other functions are being activated, the functions being activated are ended and locked.
- Omakase Lock is prioritized over any other lock functions.
- When the handset is outside the service area, in **Self mode** or turned off, the handset cannot be locked.
- If Omakase Lock is enabled with **Public mode (Drive mode)** set, a Public mode (Drive mode) message is played and the call is disconnected.
- When the subscriber of **Dual Network Service** is using the mova service, the handset cannot be locked.
- Omakase Lock is a service to lock the handset by the request of the subscriber of the FOMA card inserted to the FOMA terminal. Even if the subscriber is not a user of the FOMA terminal, the lock service is applied by a request of the subscriber.
- The lock can be disabled only when the same FOMA card is inserted as when the lock was enabled. If the lock cannot be disabled, please contact the number listed in "General Inquiries" on the back of this manual.

## Self Mode

### Disabling Online Activity

Default setting **OFF**

Disable all functions that require a signal such as voice/Videophone calls, making/receiving PushTalk transmission, sending/receiving i-mode mail and SMS, receiving Message R/F, and i-mode.

- Message indicating handset is turned off or in a place with no signal is played to calls received while in Self mode. DoCoMo Voice Mail Service (☎ P. 392) and Call Forwarding Service (☎ P. 395) are available.
- Emergency numbers (110, 119 and 118) can be dialed while in Self mode. However, Self mode is disabled after the call.
- Ir exchange and Ir remote control operations are not available.

#### 1 In stand-by, press and select **ON** or **OFF**.

To set	 → <b>Yes</b> → 
To disable	 → <b>Yes</b> → 

- When Self mode is set,  disappears and  appears in the upper part of the display.

## Note

- Self mode is not available when in i-mode stand-by ( flashes).

### While in Self mode

- View **i-mode mail**, **SMS** and **Message R/F** sent and received before setting Self mode, create or edit and save messages. Sending is not available.
- Received i-mode mail and Message R/F are held at i-mode center and SMS are held at SMS center. To receive, disable Self mode and perform **Check new message** or **SMS check**.

# Hiding Phonebook and Schedule Entries

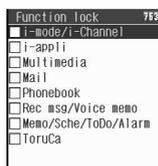
Default setting **OFF**

Restrict access to mail and phonebook by function to prevent access to personal information or unauthorized editing.

- Following items can be locked separately.  
i-mode/i-Channel, i-appli, Multimedia, Mail, Phonebook, Record message/Voice memo, Memo/Schedule/ToDo/Alarm, ToruCa
- Locking multimedia will also lock camera functions, One Seg functions, SD-Audio functions, Voice recorder functions, BookReader functions (only when a microSD Memory Card is inserted), Document Viewer functions and PDF Viewer functions.

**1** In stand-by, press **⊙** **[7]** **[6]**, enter terminal security code and press **⊙**.

**2** Press **[3]** **[Function lock]**, select item to lock or disable, press **⊙** and **Ⓜ** **[Complete]**.



- appears for locked items and  appears for disabled items.
- Press **⊙** to switch between lock and disable.
- When Function lock is set, **ℒ** appears in the upper part of the display.
- Press **Ⓜ** **[SelAll]** to lock all items. If all check boxes contain a check, press **Ⓜ** **[ClrAll]** to disable all items.
- Checks appear in check boxes even if Function lock is set from each function menu (except Multimedia and Alarm).

## Note

- Locked items cannot be received by **Ir exchange** while Function lock is set.
- Phonebook Function lock is not available when **Reject unknown** is set.
- When Function lock is applied to the phonebook, names and images do not appear even if a call is received from a person saved in the phonebook.
- The following functions are disabled when Function lock is applied to phonebook.
  - 2-touch dialing, 2-touch mail, making calls using earphone
  - Select ring tone, Mail ring tone
  - Called LED, Mail LED
  - Entering i-mode mail and SMS recipient using phonebook\*
  - Settings other than **OFF** in Accept calls and Reject calls
  - Alarm, Schedule, and ToDo list contact settings using phonebook\*
  - Displaying schedule by contact\*
  - Reject unknown
  - Adding a new member from the phonebook (including PushTalk phonebook) during PushTalk transmission
- \* When terminal security code is entered, Function lock is temporarily unset.
- **Alarm**, **Schedule alarm**, **ToDo alarm**, **Reception reserve alarm** and **Recording reserve alarm** are not activated at set time while Function lock is applied to Memo, Schedule, ToDo and Alarm.
- When sending a **substitute image** such as Chara-den during a Videophone call, the set image is sent even while Function lock is applied to multimedia.
- Terminal security code entry screen appears when a function under Function lock is attempted. Enter correct terminal security code to temporarily disable Function lock. Function is locked when operations are finished. PIM data (Phonebook, Text memo, Schedule, ToDo list, **Bookmark** and Mail) on the microSD Memory Card can be accessed with **View microSD data** for each function. PIM is an abbreviation for Personal Information Manager.
- If Function lock is applied to multimedia, the phonebook ring tone and Mail ring tone do not sound, and the ring tone set in the ring tone setting sounds instead. Image set for **Picture call** does not appear. Enter terminal security code to activate the camera. The default image is shown for alarm, Schedule alarm and ToDo alarm, and 着信音1 sounds.

## Prohibiting Keypad Dialing

Default setting **OFF**

Prevent calling from functions other than phonebook (excluding microSD Memory Card phonebook) and Redial (only phone numbers saved in the phonebook).

- Emergency numbers (110, 119, and 118) can be dialed even when Keypad dial lock is set.

**1** In stand-by, press **7** **6**, enter terminal security code and press .

**2** Press **2** [Keypad dial lock] and select **ON** or **OFF**.

To set	<b>1</b>
To disable	<b>2</b>

- appears in the upper part of the display when Keypad dial lock is set.

### Note

- The following functions are also disabled when Keypad dial lock is set.
  - Sending SMS or i-mode mail through direct address input (address input from the phonebook is possible)
  - Saving/Editing/Deleting phonebook entries
  - Calling from alarms (available if saved in the phonebook)
  - Sending/Receiving phonebook data through Ir exchange
  - Prefix settings
  - Int'l prefix
  - Phone To (AV Phone To) function
  - Mail To function
  - Transferring/Copying phonebook data between FOMA terminal handset and FOMA card
  - Calls from Bar code reader and Character reader
  - Transferring/Copying phonebook data between FOMA terminal handset and microSD Memory Card
  - PushTalk transmission not from the phonebook (including PushTalk phonebook and network phonebook) and Redial (only phone numbers saved in the phonebook)

## Multi Easy Lock

### Setting Keypad Dial Lock, Function Lock and IC Card Lock by One-touch Operation

Three locks, Keypad dial lock, Function lock and IC card lock can be set at once.

- Refer to Keypad dial lock ( P. 152), Function lock ( P. 151) or IC card lock ( P. 270) for details of each lock function.

**1** In stand-by, press for 1+ seconds, select **Yes** and press .

- Keypad dial lock, Function lock and IC card lock are set, and and appear.

### Note

- When **Reject unknown** is set, phonebook **Function lock** is not set even if Multi easy lock is set.

## Disabling Multi Easy Lock

**1** In stand-by, press for 1+ seconds, enter terminal security code and press .

### Note

- Alternatively, select each lock function in lock settings screen ( P. 148) to disable individually.

## Setting Multi Easy Lock Automatically

Default setting **OFF**

Three locks, Keypad dial lock, Function lock and IC card lock, can be automatically set when Power saver mode is activated in stand-by or when the FOMA terminal is closed.

- 1 In stand-by, press **☉** **[7]** **[6]**, enter terminal security code and press **☉**.
- 2 Press **[5]** [**Multi lock auto-set**], select **ON** or **OFF** and press **☉**.
- 3 Press **☉**.

### Note

- Automatically Multi lock auto-set can also be disabled by the same operation as “Disabling Multi Easy Lock” on P. 152.
- Disabling Multi easy lock does not set Multi lock auto-set to **OFF**. If the FOMA terminal is closed or Power save mode is activated, Multi easy lock is set again.

## Side Key Guard

### Preventing Side Key Errors

Lock side keys when the FOMA terminal is closed to prevent errors.

- During PushTalk transmission, Side key guard may not be set.

- 1 Press **[P]** (**P**) for 1+ seconds.
  - When Side key guard is set, **[P]** appears.
  - Side key guard is disabled when power is turned off.
  - An incoming PushTalk can also be answered with **[P]** (**P**).

### Note

- To disable, perform the operation over.
- Manner mode or **Quick silent** is available while receiving a call even when Side key guard is set.

## Show Call/Received

### Setting Redial and Received Calls

Default setting **ON**

Set to not display Received calls and Redial.

- Received calls and Redial are recorded even when Show call/received is set to **OFF**. When set to **ON**, histories recorded while setting was **OFF** can be viewed.

- 1 In stand-by, press **☉** **[7]** **[4]**, enter terminal security code and press **☉**.

## 2 Select **ON** or **OFF**.

To show Received calls	[1][1]	To show Redial	[2][1]
To not show Received calls	[1][2]	To not show Redial	[2][2]

### Note

- **Record message** is not played if Show received calls is set to **OFF**.
- When Redial display is set to **OFF**, Chaku-moji Sent messages history (P. 57) cannot be viewed.

## Setting Mail History Display <Show Sent/Received>

Default setting **ON**

Set Received and Sent messages history (P. 235) to not appear.

- Received and Sent messages histories are recorded even if Show sent/received is set to **OFF**. When set to **ON**, history recorded while setting was **OFF** can be viewed.

## 1 In stand-by, press **[7][5]**, enter terminal security code and press **[\*]**.

## 2 Select **ON** or **OFF**.

To show Sent messages	[1][1]	To show Received messages	[2][1]
To not show Sent messages	[1][2]	To not show Received messages	[2][2]

## Secret Mode

### Viewing Information Set as Secret

Default setting **OFF**

When **Secret mode** is set, normal and **Secret phonebook**, **Schedule** and **ToDo list** data are shown.

- Only normal data is shown when Secret mode is disabled.
- Set to automatically disable Secret mode if Power saver mode activates when in stand-by or FOMA terminal is closed when in stand-by.
- Secret mode is disabled when power is turned off.
- For details on entering secret data, refer to P. 113 for phonebook, P. 374 for Schedule and P. 378 for ToDo list.

## 1 In stand-by, press **[7][1]**, enter terminal security code and press **[\*]**.

## 2 Select **ON** or **OFF**.

To set	To not automatically disable	[1][1]
	To automatically disable	[1][2] → [0]
To disable		[2]

- When Secret mode is set, **[0]** appears in the upper part of the display.

# Receiving Calls from Only Specified Phone Numbers

Only accept calls from specified callers. Calls from all other numbers (including those without caller ID) are not connected.

To set Accept calls, save numbers from the phonebook to a list and set all numbers at once afterwards. Numbers can be added and the list can be edited later.

- Even if the caller is on the Accept calls list, the call is not connected if caller ID is not sent. It is recommended to set Caller ID Request Service (☎ P. 397).
- Phone numbers set for Reject calls, Reject unknown, Reject user unset, Reject payphone and Reject unsupported ID cannot be set for Accept calls.
- Callers not on the Accept calls list hear a busy signal. **xx missed call(s)** appears and the caller's name or phone number is recorded in Received calls.
- While Function lock is applied to phonebook, Accept calls is disabled and all calls are connected.
- SMS and i-mode mail are received normally.
- FOMA card phonebook numbers cannot be set. Only numbers in the FOMA terminal handset phonebook are available.
- Accept calls operate as it is set also when PushTalk is received. However, when PushTalkPlus is used, receiving PushTalk from a network phonebook does not follow the Accept calls setting.

## Saving Phone Numbers to Accept

Save up to 20 phone numbers.

### 1 In stand-by, press **⓪** **7** **3**, enter terminal security code, press **⓪** and press **1** [Accept calls].

- When **Disable reject calls** appears, phone number is set to be rejected. Disable and try again (☎ P. 157).
- When **Disable reject calls** appears, phone number is set to be rejected due to Reject unknown, Reject user unset, Reject payphone or Reject unsupported ID settings. Disable and try again.

### 2 Press **3** [Save list].

- If another person is already saved, name appears.

### 3 Select list number, press **⓪**, select name and press **⓪**.

Accept calls	1/8
1) Docomo Iaro	
2) _____	
3) _____	
4) _____	
5) _____	
6) _____	
7) _____	
8) _____	
9) _____	

Save list

- Phone number and name in phonebook are saved in the Accept calls list.
- Repeat step 3 to save other phone numbers.
- Next, set Accept calls to accept calls from callers specified in the phonebook (☎ P. 156).
- When the other party has two or more phone numbers, saving is required for each number.

#### Note

- If entry saved in Accept calls is edited/deleted in phonebook, the saved list content is also edited/deleted. If Accept calls is activated, entries cannot be edited/deleted (except for Delete all in group/Delete all).

## Related Operations

### Register from phonebook <Accept calls>

In stand-by, press **☐** ▶ select name ▶ **⓪** **3** **3** **1** ▶ enter terminal security code ▶ **⓪** ▶ select list number ▶ **⓪**.

### Delete phone number in list <Delete>

In save list, select name ▶ **⓪** ▶ **2** ▶ Yes ▶ **⓪**.

- If all phone numbers saved in the list are deleted after Accept calls is set, the setting is disabled.

## Related Operations

Change phone number in list <Change>

In save list, select name ▶ ● ▶ [1] ▶ select name ▶ ●.

## Accepting Calls from Specified Numbers

Default setting **OFF**

**1** In stand-by, press ● [7] [3], enter terminal security code and press ●.

**2** Press [1] [Accept calls] and press [1] [ON].

- If phone number is not saved in the list, the save list appears. Accept calls is set when saving to list is finished.
- To disable, press [2] [OFF].

## Reject Calls

### Rejecting Calls from Specified Phone Numbers

Reject voice/Videophone calls from specified callers. All other numbers (including those without caller ID) are connected.

To set Reject calls, save numbers from the phonebook to a list and set numbers altogether afterwards. Numbers can be added and the list can be edited later.

- Even if Reject calls is set, if the other party does not send caller ID, the call is connected. It is recommended to also set Caller ID Request Service (☎ P. 397) or Reject by reason of non-disclosure.
- Reject calls cannot be set for a number set to Accept calls.
- Rejected callers hear a busy signal. **xx missed call(s)** appears and the caller's name is recorded in Received calls.
- While Function lock is applied to phonebook, Reject calls is disabled and all calls are connected.
- SMS and i-mode mail are received normally.
- FOMA card phonebook numbers cannot be set. Only numbers in the FOMA terminal handset phonebook are available.
- Reject calls operate as it is set also when PushTalk is received. However, when PushTalkPlus is used, receiving PushTalk from a network phonebook does not follow the Reject calls setting.

## Saving Phone Numbers to Reject

Save up to 20 phone numbers.

- Refer to P. 157 for details on Reject by reason of non-disclosure.

**1** In stand-by, press ● [7] [3], enter terminal security code, press ● and press [2] [Reject calls].

- When **Disable accept calls** appears, the phone number is set to be accepted. Disable and try again (☎ P. 156).

**2** Press [3] [Save list].

- If another person is already saved, name appears.

### 3 Select list number, press $\odot$ , select name and press $\odot$ .



Save list

- Phone number and name in phonebook are saved in the Reject calls list.
- Repeat step 3 to save other phone numbers.
- Next, set Reject calls to reject calls from callers specified in the phonebook (☞ P. 157).
- When the other party has two or more phone numbers, saving is required for each number.

#### Note

- If entry saved in Reject calls is edited/deleted in phonebook, the saved list content is also edited/deleted. However, if Reject calls is activated, entries cannot be edited/deleted (except for Delete all in group/Delete all).

#### Related Operations

##### Register from phonebook <Reject calls>

In stand-by, press  $\square$  ▶ select name ▶  $\text{M}$  3 3 2 ▶ enter terminal security code ▶  $\odot$  ▶ select list number ▶  $\odot$ .

##### Delete phone number in list <Delete>

In save list, select name ▶  $\odot$  ▶ 2 ▶ Yes ▶  $\odot$ .

- If all phone numbers saved in the list are deleted after Reject calls is set, the setting is disabled.

##### Change phone number in list <Change>

In save list, select name ▶  $\odot$  ▶ 1 ▶ select name ▶  $\odot$ .

## Rejecting Calls from Specified Numbers

Default setting OFF

1 In stand-by, press  $\odot$  7 3, enter terminal security code and press  $\odot$ .

2 Press 2 [Reject calls] and press 1 [ON].

- If phone number is not saved in the list, the save list appears. Reject calls is set when saving to list is finished.
- To disable, press 2 [OFF].

#### Reject by Reason of Non-disclosure

### Rejecting Calls with No Caller ID

Default setting Accept all

When caller ID is not sent, the reason of non-disclosure appears. Set handset to reject calls depending on reason.

- Calls received from a caller who is set to be rejected due to a non-disclosure reason will not be connected. Calls of other non-disclosure reasons will be connected. Rejected callers hear a busy signal. **xx missed call(s)** appears and the reason of non-disclosure is recorded in Received calls.
- It is recommended to also set Caller ID Request Service (☞ P. 397).
- Reject by reason of non-disclosure cannot be set for numbers set to Accept calls.
- SMS and i-mode mail are received normally. PushTalk follows the setting of this function.
- Also when Reject unknown is set to reject, Reject by reason of non-disclosure is prioritized for calls without caller ID.
- Reject by reason of non-disclosure is prioritized when set with Public mode (Drive mode).

## Reasons

User unset	When the caller purposely withholds caller ID
Payphone	When the call is received from a payphone
Not support	When the caller cannot send caller ID, such as when the call is received from overseas or ordinary (landline) telephones via various transfer services (However, caller ID may still appear depending on the company)

**1** In stand-by, press **⊙** **7** **3**, enter terminal security code and press **⊙**.

**2** Select reason and select **Accept** or **Declined**.

Reject user unset	<b>4</b> → <b>1</b> [Accept] or <b>2</b> [Declined]
Reject payphone	<b>5</b> → <b>1</b> [Accept] or <b>2</b> [Declined]
Reject not support	<b>6</b> → <b>1</b> [Accept] or <b>2</b> [Declined]

## Set Mute Ring Time

### Silencing Ring Tone for Callers Not in Phonebook

Default setting **OFF**

Set ring tone to sound after a set number of seconds when the caller is not registered in the phonebook (including those without caller ID).

- Reject unknown cannot be set simultaneously with Set mute ring time.
- This is one way to avoid nuisance calls.
- When setting mute ring time, set to record calls disconnected during mute ring time duration in Received calls.

**1** In stand-by, press **⊙** **1** **7** and **1** [ON].



- To disable, press **2** [OFF].

**2** Enter duration (two digits: 01 to 99 seconds), press **⊙** and set Missed call history.

To save in Received calls	<b>1</b>
To not save in Received calls	<b>2</b>

- In Received calls, press **⊙** **2** **1** (**⊙** **2** **1** if there is no Received call to be shown) to show all calls. Repeat the same operation to return to the previous screen.

### Note

- Set mute ring time shorter than ring duration for **Record message** or **Voice Mail Service** to prioritize set mute ring time.
- Set mute ring time activates for calls from callers in phonebook while **Function lock** is applied to phonebook.
- **Public mode (Drive mode)** is prioritized when set with Set mute ring time.
- When Set mute ring time and **Manner mode** are both activated and the set time passes, operation follows Manner mode settings.
- Set mute ring time operates as it is set also when PushTalk is received. However, when **PushTalkPlus** is used, receiving PushTalk from a network phonebook does not follow Set mute ring time.

# Rejecting Callers Not in Phonebook

Default setting **Accept**

## Set handset to reject calls from callers not in the phonebook.

- Caller hears a busy signal. **xx missed call(s)** appears and the call is recorded in Received calls.
- This setting is available only when the caller ID is notified. It is recommended to also set Caller ID Request Service (☎ P. 397).
- Reject unknown is prioritized when set with Public mode (Drive mode).
- Also when Reject unknown is set to Reject, Reject by reason of non-disclosure is prioritized for calls without caller ID.
- SMS, i-mode mail and PushTalkPlus are received normally. However, PushTalk follows the setting of this function.
- Reject unknown cannot be set simultaneously with Set mute ring time. Disable Ring start time and try again (☎ P. 158).

**1** In stand-by, press **⊙** **7** **3**, enter terminal security code and press **⊙**.

**2** Press **3** [Reject unknown] and select **Accept** or **Declined**.

To accept	<b>1</b>
To reject	<b>2</b>

## Data Sec. Service

# Using Data Security Service

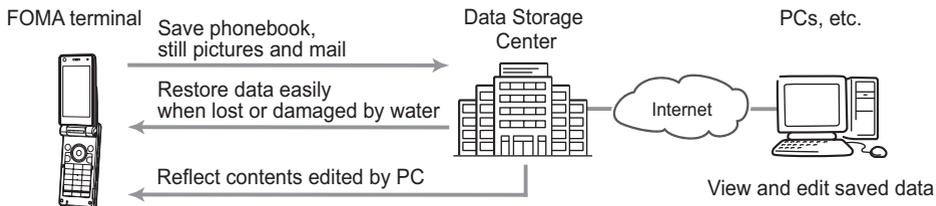
Phonebook, messages and still pictures saved on the FOMA terminal can be saved to the Data Storage Center.

## Data Security Service

The Data Security Service is a service to store your FOMA terminal data such as phonebook, still pictures or mail (hereafter called "saved data") at the DoCoMo data storage center.

In the event of data loss due to loss of the FOMA terminal itself or data corruption caused by the terminal being damaged by the water, the data saved at the Center, such as phonebook, can be restored to a new FOMA terminal using i-mode. Moreover, the saved data at the Center can be easily edited on My DoCoMo web page using a PC and the edited data can be saved to the FOMA terminal.

Refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]" for details on the use of the Data Security Service.



The Data Security Service is a paid service that requires subscription (i-mode subscription is also required).

- FOMA card phonebook data cannot be saved.
- Accessing to the Data Storage Center is not available from outside the service area.
- Refer to P. 112, P. 114 for details on Save Phonebook, refer to P. 231 for details on Save Mail and P. 304 for details on Save Still Picture.
- When Data Security Service is not subscribed, a screen indicating so appears.

## Note

- The phonebook is not automatically updated when other functions are activated.
- Saving is ended and message will appear if the FOMA terminal memory is full and failed to save all phonebook data to the FOMA terminal from the service center.

# Other Security Settings

Use the following settings and functions to secure your FOMA terminal.

Intent	Function/Service name	Ref.
To select necessary mail from massive amount of received mail.	Receive option	P. 224
To change/check mail address.	Change/check Mail Address	Refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]".
To receive/reject only mail from specified domains.	Spam Mail Prevention (Reject/Receive Mail Settings)	
To receive/reject mail from i-mode.		
To receive/reject only mail from specified addresses.		
To reject all SMS.	Spam Mail Prevention (SMS Rejection Settings)	
To use i-mode to save/check safety information during disasters.	i-mode Disaster Message Board Service	
To reject the 200th mail or later from i-mode compatible mobile phones that send more than 200 i-mode mail per day.	Reject Mass i-mode Mail Senders	
To reject unsolicited ad mail.	Reject Unsolicited Ad Mail	
To set mail size restrictions for incoming mail.	Limit Mail Size	
To check mail settings.	Confirm Settings	
To suspend mail functions.	Suspend Mail	
To disable use of FeliCa IC card functions.	IC card lock	P. 270
To save specific phone numbers to reject.	Nuisance Call Barring Service (DoCoMo network service)	P. 396
To reject callers with no ID.	Caller ID Request Service	P. 397
To check to see if software update for FOMA terminal is necessary. To download and update if necessary.	Software update	P. 452
To determine if problems may arise when importing data and programs from external devices to the FOMA terminal.	Scanning function	P. 458
To check if received SMS is unsolicited SMS including URL.		
To use Client certificate to connect to SSL-enabled sites (Only for FirstPass sites).	FirstPass (DoCoMo electronic authentication service)	P. 203

# Camera

- Before Using the Camera ..... 162
- Shooting Still Pictures ..... <Shoot Still Picture>167
- Shooting Movies..... <Shoot Movie>169
- Changing Settings for Shooting ..... 169
- Changing Camera Settings ..... 175
- Sending Still Pictures or Movies After Shooting..... <Send Message>176
- Using Bar Code Reader ..... <Bar Code Reader>176
- Reading Text ..... <Character Reader (OCR)>178

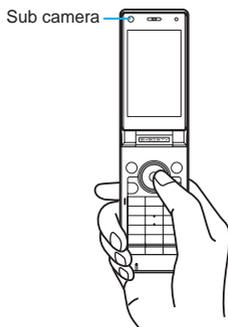
## Before Using the Camera

### Camera Operations

The FOMA terminal has two cameras, a main camera (external) and a sub camera (internal). Use these cameras to shoot still pictures and movies. When making a Videophone call, use the sub camera to send images of yourself to the other party, and switch to the main camera to send images of other people and the landscape. **microSD Memory Cards are sold separately. Purchase microSD Memory Cards at home electronics shops (☞ P. 318).**

- The color and brightness of the subject in images shot with the cameras may differ from the actual color and brightness.
- Use the main camera to shoot pictures of people and the landscape, and use the sub camera to shoot pictures of yourself.

### Normal position



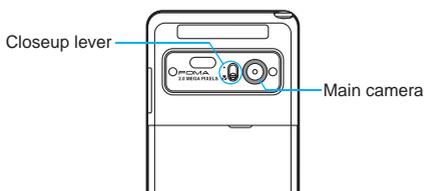
### Cycloid position



### Wide Array of Shooting Methods

- Set image quality (☞ P. 171) and size (☞ P. 171) depending on intended use
- Assorted continuous modes (☞ P. 168)
- Shoot with frames (☞ P. 173) or with coloring or touch changed (☞ P. 173)
- Attach shot images to i-mode mail and send (☞ P. 176)
- Shoot with auto timer (☞ P. 172)

## Using the Cameras



- Fingerprints or oil on the lens may cause the image to be out of focus. In addition, images may blur and rays of light may appear in images when shot near a strong light source. Wipe the lens with a soft cloth before shooting images.
- Images may appear dark and distorted when shot with insufficient battery power even while the handset is charging. Do not shoot images while the handset is charging.
- Do not apply force to the lens when closing the FOMA terminal as this may damage the lens. May cause a malfunction.
- Although the cameras are made with high-precision technology, constantly bright or dark pixels or lines may be visible. Further, white lines and other noise may appear in images especially when shooting images in dimly lit surroundings.
- The quality of images may deteriorate when shot or saved after the FOMA terminal has been left in a warm location for a long time.
- If the camera lens is exposed to direct sunlight for a long time, the internal color filter may discolor, creating a discoloration of shot images.
- Images shot of the sun, a light or other strong light source may appear dark and distorted.
- Direct images shot of the sun may damage the performance of the CMOS.
- To give priority to the image quality when shooting an image, select **SUPER FINE**. The data size will be larger, but the image quality will be better. At these image size settings, fewer images can be saved, more time is required to send these images by i-mode mail. Select the image quality according to the application (☞ P. 171).
- The FOMA terminal may become warm after shooting still pictures continuously or shooting long movies. This is not a malfunction.
- If the camera portion becomes hot while using the main camera, **Camera function is not available now** appears and the camera turns off.
- If a call is received or the alarm sounds when viewing the still picture preview screen or movie shooting screen, the camera function is canceled and the voice/ Videophone call or alarm screen appears. After that screen ends, the camera screen reappears and the previous still picture or movie data can be saved.
- Keypad sound is silenced when still picture mode or movie mode is active.
- Set the Closeup lever to  for shooting close objects (approximately 10 cm). Sharp pictures can be shot even at close range.

## Important notes for shooting images

- The color and brightness of the subject in images shot with the cameras may differ from the actual color and brightness.
- Make sure that your fingers, hair and handset strap do not obscure the camera lens when shooting images.
- Because battery power depletes more quickly when shooting images, it is recommended to press  to end Camera mode after shooting images.
- Images are blurred when FOMA terminal moves while shooting images. Hold firmly to prevent blurring. Use the Fix camera shake function to prevent camera shake when shooting movies.
- Because a larger image size requires more data, movement in the image on the FOMA terminal display may appear slow.
- Indoor fluorescent lighting may create flickering or streaky shading on the screen. This flickering or shading may be reduced by changing the lighting conditions, brightness or adjusting the camera brightness.

## Copyrights and rights of portrait

- Images and audio recorded with the FOMA terminal are for personal use and may not be used without the consent of the rightful person in accordance with copyright laws. Please note that the use of the likeness or name of other individuals without their consent, defacement or a similar act may infringe on an individual's rights of portrait. Please be aware of copyrights and rights of portrait when making public images and audio recorded with the handset on the Internet or similar media. The recording of images or audio may be restricted at concerts, performances and exhibits even when recorded for personal use.
- Do not use this handset to send copyrighted images for uses other than those permitted under copyright laws.



**Please respect the privacy of others when using a camera-enabled mobile phone to shoot and send images.**

## Image Size

The following are the image sizes of still pictures and movies that can be shot (saved) with FOMA SH903iTV.

- All sizes in this manual are width x height.

Size	Still picture	Movie	Explanation
sQCIF: 128x96			Smaller than QCIF and ideal for attaching to mail.
QCIF: 176x144			This is the size of the Videophone main screen. This size is useful for shooting a still picture to use as a substitute image. The default setting for the sub camera still picture shooting size is set to <b>QCIF: 176x144</b> .
QVGA: 240x320		-	Ideal for sending to i-mode terminal.
Stand-by: 240x400	*	-	This is the size of the display on FOMA SH903iTV. This size is useful for shooting a still picture to set as the stand-by display. The default setting for the main camera still picture shooting size is set to <b>Stand-by: 240x400</b> in the normal position.
QVGA: 320x240		-	Ideal for playing on a PC. The default setting for the movie shooting size is set to <b>QVGA: 320x240</b> .
Wide S: 400x240	*	-	This is the size that can be shot in the Cycloid position. The default setting for the still picture shooting size is set to <b>Wide S: 400x240</b> in the Cycloid position.
CIF: 352x288		-	Ideal for viewing on a PC.
VGA: 480x640	*	-	Ideal for viewing on a PC.
VGA: 640x480		*	This is the maximum movie size that can be shot with FOMA SH903iTV. Ideal for playing on a PC.
Wide L: 1200x720	*	-	This is the size that can be shot in the Cycloid position. Ideal for viewing on a PC.
1.2M: 1280x960	*	-	Ideal for viewing on a PC.
UXGA: 1600x1200	*	-	This is the maximum still picture size that can be shot with FOMA SH903iTV. Ideal for viewing on a PC.

\* Not available when shooting with the sub camera.

- **Wide S: 400x240** and **Wide L: 1200x720** are set only when in the Cycloid position. In addition, other shooting sizes are not available in the Cycloid position.

## Note

### Titles

- The titles of shot (saved) still pictures/movies are labeled automatically according to the date and time the still pictures/movies were shot.  
Example: April 23, 2007 at 1:05:07 PM → **070423\_130507**.
- Still pictures that were continuously shot are labeled in series (**\_01\_**, **\_02\_**, etc.) at the end of the title. When saved in **Data box**, titles in the image list screen that exceed 14 single-byte characters have "... " after the 12th character and numbers at the end are not shown. Select **File property** to check the file name (☞ P. 330).
- Refer to P. 328 for details on how to edit the titles of still pictures/movies.

## Approximate Number of Recordable Images

- This lists the approximate number of images that can be shot with the same image size and quality and saved in FOMA terminal handset. The number of still pictures that can be shot are fewer when other images, i-αppli software or other types of files are saved in FOMA terminal handset. Also, the number may be fewer depending on the shooting conditions and the subject.

### Still picture mode

- This lists the approximate number of images that can be shot with the same image size and quality and saved in FOMA terminal handset according to the image quality. Refer to P. 463 for the approximate number of images that can be saved to a 64 MB microSD Memory Card according to the image quality.

	ECONOMY	NORMAL	SUPER FINE
sQCIF: 128x96	1,000 shots	1,000 shots	1,000 shots
QCIF: 176x144	1,000 shots	1,000 shots	1,000 shots
QVGA: 240x320	1,000 shots	1,000 shots	430 shots
Stand-by: 240x400	1,000 shots	1,000 shots	430 shots
Wide S: 400x240	1,000 shots	1,000 shots	430 shots
CIF: 352x288	1,000 shots	1,000 shots	430 shots
VGA: 480x640	1,000 shots	670 shots	430 shots
Wide L: 1200x720	490 shots	300 shots	190 shots
1.2M: 1280x960	430 shots	220 shots	130 shots
UXGA: 1600x1200	220 shots	130 shots	80 shots

## Movie mode

- The recording times below are estimates per recording when saving to FOMA terminal handset. The recordable movie length and number of recordable movies are less when other images, i-αppli software or other types of files are saved in FOMA terminal handset. Also, the recordable movie length may be shorter depending on the shooting conditions and the subject.  
The following are the approximate movie lengths that can be recorded to FOMA terminal handset according to the image quality (for movies with images and voice). Refer to P. 463 for the approximate number of images that can be recorded to a 64 MB microSD Memory Card according to the image quality.

		ECONOMY	NORMAL	FINE	SUPER FINE
sQCIF: 128x96	For mail (short)	155 seconds	105 seconds	52 seconds	-
	For mail (long)	638 seconds	434 seconds	215 seconds	-
QCIF: 176x144	For mail (short)	134 seconds	78 seconds	28 seconds	19 seconds
	For mail (long)	552 seconds	323 seconds	117 seconds	79 seconds
QVGA: 320x240	For mail (short)	-	-	-	10 seconds
	For mail (long)	-	-	-	41 seconds
VGA: 640x480	For mail (short)	-	-	-	-
	For mail (long)	-	-	-	16 seconds

File size limit (☞ P. 172) for movie files cannot be set to **Unrestricted** when saved to the FOMA terminal handset.

## Note

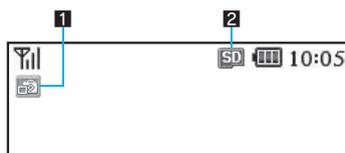
- Refer to P. 171 for details on the method of setting the image size of still pictures and movies.

## Shooting Screen Layout

The following indicators appear on the display in Camera mode.

- When switched to Full-screen mode (☞ P. 175), icons do not appear.

### Icons that appear in the upper part of the display (all modes)



### 1 Mode indicator (☞ P. 170)

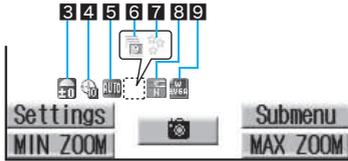
	Still picture mode
	Movie mode
	Character reader mode
	Bar code reader mode

## 2 microSD Memory Card indicator

	(gray) Save to FOMA terminal handset
	(pink) Save to microSD Memory Card

## Icons that appear in the lower part of the display

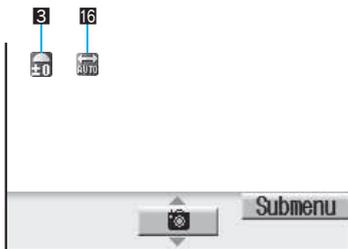
### Still picture mode



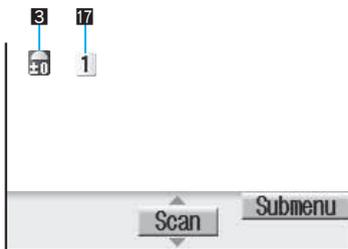
### Movie mode



### Character reader mode



### Bar code reader mode



## 3 Image brightness indicator (👉 P. 170)

Dark	← Normal →	Bright

## 4 Auto timer indicator (👉 P. 172)

	2 seconds
	5 seconds
	10 seconds

## 5 Still picture shoot by scene indicator (👉 P. 174)

	Auto		Exercise
--	------	--	----------

	Night scene		Character
--	-------------	--	-----------

## 6 Continuous mode indicator (👉 P. 168)

	Fast, Standard, Manual (for 25 pictures)
	Fast, Standard, Manual (for 9 pictures)
	Standard, Manual (for 6 pictures)
	Shared Multishot (2 to 25 pictures)

## 7 Still picture effect indicator (👉 P. 173)

	Black & white		Ripple
	Sepia		Kaleidoscope (L)
	Sparkling		Kaleidoscope (S)
	Colored pencil		Fish-eye
	Faded edges		

## 8 Image quality (👉 P. 171)

	ECONOMY		SUPER FINE
	NORMAL		FINE (Movie mode only)

## 9 Still picture size indicator (👉 P. 171)

### Normal position

	sQCIF: 128x96		CIF: 352x288
	QCIF: 176x144		VGA: 480x640
	QVGA: 240x320		1.2M: 1280x960
	Stand-by: 240x400		UXGA: 1600x1200

### Cycloid position

	Wide S: 400x240
	Wide L: 1200x720

## 10 Movie fix camera shake indicator (👉 P. 174)

	Fix camera shake <b>ON</b>
--	----------------------------

## 11 Movie shoot by scene indicator (👉 P. 174)

	Auto		Landscape (soft)
	People		Landscape (sharp)

## 12 Movie effect indicator (👉 P. 173)

	Black & white		Ripple
	Sepia		Kaleidoscope (L)
	Sparkling		Kaleidoscope (S)
	Colored pencil		Fish-eye
	Spectrum		

## 13 Movie size indicator (👉 P. 171)

	sQCIF: 128x96		QVGA: 320x240
	QCIF: 176x144		VGA: 640x480

#### 14 Movie file size limit indicator (P. 172)

	For mail (short) (500 KB)
	For mail (long) (2 MB)

#### 15 Switch image/voice indicator (P. 173)

	Image only
	Voice only
	Image + voice

#### 16 Inverse mode indicators (P. 179)

	Automatic
	Normal
	Reverse text

#### 17 QR code link number indicator (P. 177)

	Indicates the number of linked split data being read
--	--

### In the Cycloid position

- Shooting methods are the same as those in the normal position.
- Shooting with the sub camera is not available. When the sub camera is set in the normal position, set to the Cycloid position to switch to the main camera. Return to the normal position to switch to the shooting size before the Cycloid position is set.

#### Still picture mode

Set to the Cycloid position to switch to the shooting size for this position and shoot the still pictures in the horizontal screen. Return to the normal position to switch to the shooting size before the Cycloid position is set.

- The shot size that can be shot in the Cycloid position is **Wide S: 400x240** and **Wide L: 1200x720**. The default setting is **Wide S: 400x240**.
- When returned to the normal position, the shooting size and the image quality are also returned to those set before the Cycloid position is set.



#### Movie mode

Set the FOMA terminal to the Cycloid position to shoot movies in the horizontal screen. However, the shooting size cannot be switched.

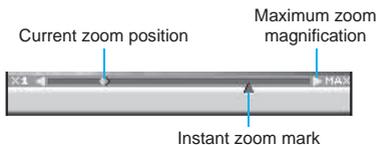


Remaining time  
Status display

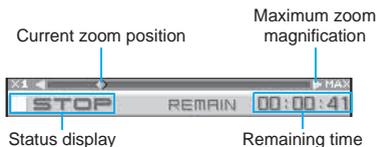
### Using zoom (still picture/movie mode)

In Still picture mode, press to show the screen below and enable zooming. The screen is already shown in Movie mode (P. 170).

#### Still picture mode



#### Movie mode



### Using shooting settings

In the shooting screen, press [Settings]. The screen below appears. Change settings while checking current settings (P. 174).



### Activating/Deactivating the Camera

#### 1 In stand-by, press .

- Camera LED illuminates in green and the still picture shooting screen appears. The image from the camera is shown on the display.
- Press or to end.

### Activating movie mode

#### 1 In the still picture shooting screen, press [Movie].

- Camera LED illuminates in green and the movie shooting screen appears. The image from the camera is shown on the display.
- Press or to end.

## Using different camera modes

1 In Top menu, select **Camera**, press

●, select camera mode and press ●.



Shoot still picture



Shoot movie



Character reader



Bar code reader

- Switch shooting modes after activating camera: P. 170

### Note

When a call is received while a still picture is being saved, a movie is being shot or the movie shooting confirmation menu screen is displayed:

- The incoming call screen appears and the call can be answered.
  - Shot still pictures are retained.
  - The movie shooting confirmation menu screen appears after the call. Press [1] [Save] to save the movie and return to the movie shooting screen. Press [4] [Cancel] to delete the movie and return to the movie shooting screen.

### Auto end

- While a still picture is shot, if no operations are performed for approximately two minutes with the viewfinder display shown, Camera mode automatically ends and the stand-by display reappears. Camera mode does not end if there are unsaved still pictures, or a Submenu or Shooting settings screen is shown.
- While a movie is shot, if no operations are performed for approximately two minutes in the movie shooting screen, Camera mode automatically ends and the stand-by display reappears.

## Shortcut key

Frequently used operations are allocated to the keys below for convenient use.

- Switch Camera mode to shoot still pictures/movies or read with Character reader and Bar code reader.

Key	Still picture mode	Movie mode	Character reader mode	Bar code reader mode
⏪	Zoom in	-	-	-
⏩	Zoom out	-	-	-
⏪⏪	Instant zoom in	-	-	-
⏩⏩	Instant zoom out	-	-	-
☀	Brightness			
☽	Brightness			
⌘	Main/sub camera	-	-	-
ⓧ	Switch phone↔SD	-	-	-
1	Switch camera-mode			
2	Data box	Select subject	Saved data	
3	Auto timer	Inverse mode	-	
4	Select size	-	-	
5	Image quality	-	-	
6	Shoot by scene	-	-	
7	Full-screen mode	Fix camera shake	-	-
0	Key list	-	-	-

### Key list

When shooting, refer to the Key list and check operation methods.

1 In the still picture shooting screen (P. 167) or movie shooting screen (P. 167), press ●, select **Key list** and press ●.

## Shoot Still Picture

### Shooting Still Pictures

Shoot still pictures with the FOMA terminal.

- Shot still pictures are saved to **Camera** folder in My picture of Data box or the microSD Memory Card (P. 175, P. 318). Saving still pictures may take time.
- When a still picture is shot, the shutter sounds and Camera LED flashes once in blue. After that, a still picture appears on the preview screen.
- The shutter sound is also audible during Manner mode, Public mode (Drive mode) and when the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately) is connected.
- The shutter sound volume cannot be changed.
- If available space on the FOMA terminal handset is insufficient, delete unnecessary files and increase memory space to save (P. 332).
- If available space on the microSD Memory Card is insufficient, the **Camera** folder in My picture of Data box in the FOMA terminal handset automatically becomes the save destination even when the microSD Memory Card is set as the save destination.

1 Activate the camera (P. 166).

- Use the zoom or show the menu (P. 169).

2 Press [F2].

3 Save.

To save		
When shot with the sub camera	To save Images as it appears on the display (correct left-right orientation)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Still pictures appear on the display inverted (left-right orientation backwards) but are saved as a normal image (correct left-right orientation).</li> </ul>
	To confirm normal image before saving	[4] →
	To save an inverted image (left-right orientation backwards)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>It is not possible to save inverted images when shooting still pictures with a frame ( P. 173).</li> </ul>
To change the save destination	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Switch the save destination between FOMA terminal handset and microSD Memory Card.</li> </ul>	
To delete shot still picture and shoot again		
To send with i-mode mail ( P. 176)		
To edit and use a shot still picture	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>It is possible to use a shot still picture in Edit image, Facial treatment, Set screen or switch to Full-screen mode. Edit image:  P. 300 to P. 304 Facial treatment:  P. 304 Set screen:  P. 299 Switching to Full-screen mode:  P. 175</li> </ul>	

## Shooting a still picture of yourself

Use the sub camera to take a picture of yourself.

1 In the still picture shooting screen ( P. 167), press [F2].

- Alternatively, press [6] [1] and switch to sub camera.

2 Face the camera towards yourself and press [F2].

3 Press [Save].

- Refer to step 3 of "Shooting Still Pictures" on P. 168 for details on saving.

### Note

- When the FOMA terminal is closed while showing the viewfinder display, Camera mode ends.

## Continuous Shooting

### <Continuous Mode>

Shoot multiple still pictures continuously. Image sizes available for Continuous mode are as follows.

	Standard Continuous Mode	Fast Continuous Mode	Manual Continuous Mode	Combination with Shoot with frame
sQCIF: 128x96				
QCIF: 176x144				
QVGA: 240x320				
Stand-by: 240x400				
Wide S: 400x240		x		*
CIF: 352x288		x		*
VGA: 480x640		x		x

\* Fast continuous mode is not available.

- Wide L: 1200x720, 1.2M: 1280x960 and UXGA: 1600x1200 are not available for continuous shooting.

### Fast, Standard and Manual

In Fast continuous mode, automatically shoot still pictures at approximately 0.1 second intervals and at approximately 0.2 second intervals in Standard continuous mode. In Manual continuous mode, shoot multiple still pictures with shutter operations.

- The maximum number of still pictures that can be shot depends on the size.

sQCIF: 128x96	QCIF: 176x144	QVGA: 240x320	Stand-by: 240x400	Wide S: 400x240	CIF: 352x288	VGA: 480x640
25 shots	25 shots	9 shots	9 shots	9 shots	9 shots	6 shots

### Continuous shooting

- Depending on the image size, Continuous mode or Fast may not be available or number of shots in Continuous mode may be reduced.

1 In the still picture shooting screen ( P. 167), press [4] [3] [Continuous mode] and select the type of Continuous mode.

OFF (Cancel Continuous mode)	[1]
Fast	[2]
Standard	[3]
Manual	[4]

2 Press [F2].

- The first still picture is shot and the following still pictures are shot automatically. At the last shooting, the Camera LED flashes once in blue.
- In the manual shooting mode, press [F2] until the maximum number of shots for Continuous mode.

- When continuous shooting is complete, the shot image list appears.
- Press **Ⓜ** to cancel shooting. Shot images appear. Press **Ⓜ** **1** [Save all] or **Ⓜ** **3** [Save one] to save all or just one image.

## 3 Save.

To save all shot still pictures	<b>Ⓜ</b> <b>1</b>
To delete all shot still pictures	<b>Ⓜ</b> <b>2</b>
To select and save one still picture shot with continuous mode	Select still picture → <b>Ⓜ</b> <b>3</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Repeat the operations to save additional still pictures.</li> <li>● To check still pictures before saving, select still picture, press <b>Ⓜ</b> and <b>Ⓜ</b>.</li> </ul>
To delete selected still picture from list	Select still picture → <b>Ⓜ</b> <b>4</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● To check still pictures before deleting, select still picture, press <b>Ⓜ</b> and <b>Ⓜ</b>.</li> </ul>
To send with i-mode mail ( <b>Ⓜ</b> P. 176)	Select still picture → <b>Ⓜ</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● To check still pictures before sending, select still picture, press <b>Ⓜ</b> and <b>Ⓜ</b>.</li> </ul>

- When Auto save mode (**Ⓜ** P. 176) is set to **ON**, still pictures are saved together automatically.
- After saving or deleting still pictures shot in Continuous mode, the still picture shooting screen reappears.

### Note

- Changing the image size, setting **Effect shot** or switching to the sub camera cancels Continuous mode.
- When Continuous mode is enabled, Effect shot is canceled.

### Notes about Continuous mode

- In automatic Continuous mode, **Ⓜ** cannot be used to operate the **zoom** and **Ⓜ** cannot be used to adjust the brightness.
- If an incoming call is received or the alarm activates while shooting in Continuous mode, the still pictures being shot are retained and Continuous mode is canceled.
- Closing the FOMA terminal or pressing **Ⓜ** while shooting in Continuous mode causes shooting to be interrupted and camera-mode to be ended. Switching to Cycloid position causes shooting to be interrupted and the screen appears to the still picture shooting screen.

## Shoot Movie

### Shooting Movies

#### Shoot (Record) movies with the FOMA terminal.

- Shot movies are saved to **Camera** folder in i-motion of Data box or the microSD Memory Card (**Ⓜ** P. 318).
- Shoot when battery level is sufficient. Check battery level before starting.
- Movies (Mobile MP4) shot with the FOMA terminal can be sent with mail (**Ⓜ** P. 176).
- To use shot movies for Chaku-motion (**Ⓜ** P. 116), save them on the FOMA terminal handset.
- Shooting starts after movie record start sound (However, recording may not begin immediately).

- The Camera LED illuminates in blue while shooting movies.
- The movie record start and end sound is also audible during Manner mode, Public mode (Drive mode) and when the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately) is connected.
- The shooting start and end sound volume cannot be changed.
- Shooting stops automatically when the remaining time indicator reads **00:00:00** (movie file size reaches limit during shooting or microSD Memory Card has no available space). However, shot movies can be saved/played/canceled/attached to mail.

## 1 Activate movie mode (**Ⓜ** P. 166).

- To switch between the main camera and the sub camera, press **Ⓜ** **5** **1** or **Ⓜ**.

## 2 Press **Ⓜ** [Rec].

## 3 To stop recording, press **Ⓜ** [Stop].

## 4 Save.

To save	<b>1</b>
To send with i-motion mail ( <b>Ⓜ</b> P. 176)	<b>2</b>
To play shot movies	<b>3</b>
To cancel shot movies	<b>4</b> → <b>Yes</b> → <b>Ⓜ</b>

- If available space on the FOMA terminal handset is insufficient, delete unnecessary files and increase memory space to save (**Ⓜ** P. 332).

### Note

- Recording time indicator is an approximation. Shooting may automatically stop before the indicator reads **00:00:00** depending on the subject.
- When the FOMA terminal is closed or change the position while shooting a movie, shooting automatically ends and the movie shooting confirmation menu screen appears. If shooting time is less than one second, shooting ends and Camera mode ends. However, if the FOMA terminal is closed when **Switch image/voice** is set to **Voice only**, recording is continued, and **Voice recording** appears on the sub display.
- Make sure not to press keys while shooting a movie as keypad sounds may be recorded.

## Changing Settings for Shooting

### Switching to Closeup

Switch to Closeup when shooting close objects (approximately 10 cm) or when using Character reader (**Ⓜ** P. 178) and Bar code reader (**Ⓜ** P. 176).

# 1 Set the Closeup lever to .

- When shooting in normal mode, set the Closeup lever to the original position.



## Changing Cameras <Switch Camera-mode>

Switch among Still picture, Movie, Character reader and Bar code reader modes.

- If **Battery empty. Unsaved data will be lost. Ending current operation** appears and Camera mode is activated immediately after charging is started, **Battery low** appears and Camera mode does not activate.

# 1 In the shooting screen, press [1] [Switch camera-mode] and select a Camera mode.

Still picture mode	
Movie mode	
Character reader mode	
Bar code reader mode	

## Adjusting Brightness <Brightness>

Default setting **Brightness 0**

Select from five brightness levels.

# 1 In the still picture shooting screen ( P. 167) or movie shooting screen ( P. 167), press (brighter) or (darker) to adjust brightness.

- Also, adjust brightness levels for Bar code reader ( P. 176) and Character reader ( P. 178) with .
- Verify with icon on the display ( P. 165).
- After ending Camera mode, the setting returns to  (Default).
- Use the same method to adjust the sub camera.

## Using Digital Zoom <Zoom In and Out>

# 1 In the still picture shooting screen ( P. 167), press or to zoom in or out.

- The Zoom bar appears.
- The Zoom bar already appears in the movie shooting screen ( P. 167).

To zoom in (make the subject bigger)		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Keep key pressed to gradually zoom in.</li> </ul>
To zoom out (make the subject smaller)		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Keep key pressed to gradually zoom out.</li> </ul>
To zoom in instantly		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Goes to the instant zoom mark position. For still pictures, press  or  for double magnification (excluding when Effect shot is set). Image will be rougher.</li> </ul>

To return to actual size	
--------------------------	---

- Area affected by zoom depends on the image size.

Camera mode	Image size		Zoom step (maximum magnification)	
	Main camera	Sub camera	Main camera	Sub camera
Still picture	sQCIF: 128x96		24 steps (approx. 19x)	3 steps (approx. 4x)
	QCIF: 176x144		21 steps (approx. 14x)	
	QVGA: 240x320		18 steps (approx. 10x)	-
	Stand-by: 240x400	-	16 steps (approx. 8.1x)	-
	Wide S: 400x240	-	6 steps (approx. 3.0x)	-
	CIF: 352x288		14 steps (approx. 6.9x)	-
	VGA: 480x640	-	11 steps (approx. 5.1x)	-
	Wide L: 1200x720	-	- (Actual size)	-
	1.2M: 1280x960	-	4 steps (approx. 2.5x)	-
	UXGA: 1600x1200	-	- (Actual size)	-
Movie	sQCIF: 128x96		23 steps (approx. 9x)*	2 steps (approx. 2x)
	QCIF: 176x144		20 steps (approx. 6.9x)*	
	QVGA: 320x240		14 steps (approx. 3.8x)*	-
	VGA: 640x480	-	8 steps (approx. 1.9x)*	-

\* When Fix camera shake is set to **OFF**

- Image size returns to actual size when shooting size is changed, Main/sub camera settings are changed, Fix camera shake settings are changed, Effect shot settings are changed, image/voice is switched or Camera mode is ended.

## Note

### Notes about shooting

- Make sure camera does not shake. Image is more prone to shaking when image size is large or image quality is high. Moving the FOMA terminal while shooting images may cause images to become blurred. Shoot images while holding the handset as still as possible. Use the Fix camera shake function to prevent camera shake when shooting movies (P. 174).

## Switching Between Main Camera and Sub Camera <Main/Sub Camera>

- When Voice recorder is activated or Switch image/voice is set to **Voice only**, switching from main camera to sub camera is not available.
- When in the Cycloid position, switching from the main camera to the sub camera is not available.

## 1 In the still picture shooting screen (P. 167), press [Main/sub camera].

- In the movie shooting screen (P. 167), press [5] [1].
- Alternatively, press [Switch] to switch.

## Note

- After switching from the main camera to the sub camera, it may take time for the brightness and tone to appear correctly.

### Main camera

- It is useful for shooting other people and landscape as a still picture or a movie. Also, use for **Character reader** (OCR) or for **Bar code reader**. Images appear on the display as normal (correct left-right orientation). Image is shot as it appears.

### Sub camera

- It is useful for shooting your own image as a still picture or a movie. Images appear reversed on the display (left-right orientation backwards). Image is shot as if reflected in a mirror.

## Setting Image Size <Select Size>

### Default setting

Still picture:  
Main camera (Normal position) **std-by: 240x400**  
Main camera (Cycloid position) **Wide S: 400x240**  
Sub camera **QCIF: 176x144**  
Movie:  
Main camera **QVGA: 320x240**  
Sub camera **QVGA: 320x240**

Set still picture and movie image size.

- Set main camera and sub camera separately. In addition, set the normal position and the Cycloid position separately.
- When shooting still pictures, Shoot with frame, Effect shot and Continuous mode are canceled if image size is changed.
- Refer to P. 163 for details on each size.

## 1 In the still picture shooting screen (P. 167), press [Select size] and select size.

- In the movie shooting screen (P. 167), press [4].

Size	Shoot still picture		Shoot movie
	Normal position	Cycloid position	
sQCIF: 128x96	[1]	-	[1]
QCIF: 176x144	[2]	-	[2]
QVGA: 240x320	[3]	-	-
Stand-by: 240x400	[4]*	-	-
QVGA: 320x240	-	-	[3]
Wide S: 400x240	-	[5]*	-
CIF: 352x288	[6]	-	-
VGA: 480x640	[7]*	-	-
VGA: 640x480	-	-	[4]*
Wide L: 1200x720	-	[8]*	-
1.2M: 1280x960	[1]*	-	-
UXGA: 1600x1200	[2]*	-	-

\* Settings are not available for the sub camera.

- Icon that indicates size appears (P. 165).

## Note

- When sending images by i-mode mail, transmission charge depends on image size and **image quality**.
- Image size cannot be selected when **Voice recorder** is activated or if **Switch image/voice** is set to **Voice only**.
- When image size is set to **QVGA: 320x240** or **VGA: 640x480** while shooting movies, image quality is set to **SUPER FINE**.

## Setting Image Quality <Image Quality>

### Default setting

Still picture: **NORMAL**  
Movie: **SUPER FINE**

Set still picture and movie image quality.

Image quality increases from **ECONOMY** → **NORMAL** → **FINE**, and so on. As quality increases, the number of images to save and amount of recordable time decrease.

- Set main camera and sub camera separately. In addition, set the normal position and the Cycloid position separately.

- Refer to P. 164 and P. 463 for details on the approximate number of images which can be shot and the recording length.

## 1 In the still picture shooting screen (P. 167), press [4] [1] [Image quality] and select image quality.

- In the movie shooting screen (P. 167), press [3] [1].

	Shoot still picture	Shoot movie*
ECONOMY		
NORMAL		
FINE	-	
SUPER FINE		

\* **SUPER FINE** cannot be set for **sQCIF: 128x96**. Only **SUPER FINE** can be set for **QVGA: 320x240** and **VGA: 640x480**.

- Icon that indicates image quality appears (P. 165).

### Note

- To give priority to the image quality when shooting an image, select **FINE** or **SUPER FINE**.
- Image quality cannot be selected when **Voice recorder** is activated or if **Switch image/voice** is set to **Voice only**.
- For Movie mode, image quality cannot be selected when **Effect shot** is set.

## Setting File Size Limit <File Size Limit>

Default setting **For mail (long)**

Set File size limit before shooting movies.

- When sending with i-motion mail, select **For mail (short)** or **For mail (long)**. Record based on allowable size of mail attachment. Select **For mail (short)** to limit the file size to up to 500 KB. Select **For mail (long)** to limit the file size to up to 2 MB.

## 1 In the movie shooting screen (P. 167), press [3] [3] [File size limit] and select the file size.

To set restriction to 500 KB*1	
To set restriction to 2 MB	
To set no restriction*2	

\*1 When image size is **VGA: 640x480**, this option cannot be selected.

\*2 If save destination is set to FOMA terminal handset, this option cannot be selected.

### Note

- When save destination is set to **microSD Memory Card** and File size limit is set to **Unrestricted**, the maximum recording time is approximately one hour (excluding when Switch image/voice is set to **Voice only**). When mail is sent right after shooting, the first approximately 2 MB or less are cut and sent.
- When save destination is changed to the FOMA terminal handset, file size is set to **For mail (long)**. When save destination is changed to microSD Memory Card, file size is set to **Unrestricted**.
- Depending on the subject motion, a file size limit is not reached.

## Shooting Images with Auto Timer

<Auto Timer>

Default setting **OFF**

Shoot images with the Auto timer. Use Auto timer to shoot pictures which include yourself.

## 1 In the still picture shooting screen (P. 167), press [4] [7] [Auto timer] and set Auto timer.

- In the movie shooting screen (P. 167), press [3] [7].

To disable	
To set to two seconds	
To set to five seconds	
To set to ten seconds	

- , or appears on the display.

## 2 Press .

- Timer sound is audible and Auto timer activates. After the set time (approximately two seconds, five seconds or ten seconds) elapses, picture is automatically shot after the shoot start sound (, or and Camera LED flash in white).
- Press to end shooting. Auto timer stays set.
- Auto timer is not deactivated after shooting.

### Note

#### Notes about Auto timer

- Press to shoot image immediately.
- When a call is received or alarm activates, shooting is canceled.
- When Auto timer is active in Still picture mode, cannot be used to operate the **zoom** and cannot be used to adjust the brightness.
- Auto timer is canceled when camera is switched between main camera and sub camera.
- If the FOMA terminal is opened and closed or is pressed, shooting is interrupted and Camera mode is ended.

## Setting Image and Voice Shooting

<Switch Img/Voice>

Default setting **Image + voice**

When shooting a movie, select **Image + voice**, **Image only** or **Voice only**.

- In the movie shooting screen (☞ P. 167), press **Ⓜ** **③** **④** [**Switch img/voice**] and select the image/voice combination.

To record image + voice	①
To record image only	②
To record voice only	③

## Shooting Still Pictures with a Frame

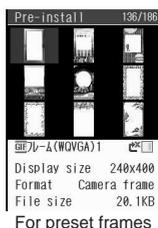
<Shoot with Frame>

Default setting **OFF**

Set and shoot still pictures with frames.

- Frames are preset in the FOMA terminal (☞ P. 426).
- A frame is added to each still picture in Continuous mode (☞ P. 168).
- When image size is **Wide L: 1200x720, 1.2M: 1280x960** or **UXGA: 1600x1200** or when Continuous mode is set in **VGA: 480x640**, shooting still pictures with a frame is not available.
- Use frames downloaded from sites and Internet web pages to shoot with frames.
- Changing the image size cancels Shoot with frame.

- In the still picture shooting screen (☞ P. 167), press **Ⓜ** **④** **⑥** [**Shoot with frame**] and select a frame.



To use frames	① → select folder → ② → select frame → ③ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To preview, select a frame and press ④. Press <b>CLR</b> and the previous screen reappears.</li> </ul>
To cancel frames	②

- Combined image with frame and subject appears on the screen.

- Press **Ⓜ** **⑤** [**Ⓜ**].

## Adding Various Effects <Effect Shot>

Default setting **OFF**

Set effects for still pictures and movies to change the color tone and touch.

- Changing the image size or switching to Continuous mode cancels Effect shot.
- When image size for still pictures is **VGA: 480x640, Wide L: 1200x720, 1.2M: 1280x960** or **UXGA: 1600x1200** or when image size for movies is **VGA: 640x480**, Effect shot is not available.
- Effect shot is not available when using the sub camera.

- In the still picture shooting screen (☞ P. 167), press **Ⓜ** **④** **⑤** [**Effect shot**] and select the type of effect.

- In the movie shooting screen (☞ P. 167), press **Ⓜ** **③** **⑤**.
- Press **⏪** to show the previous and next screens.

### Effect type

OFF	①	To remove effects.
Black & white	②	Image contrast is expressed in monotone.
Sepia	③	Image contrast is expressed in sepia color.
Sparkling	④	Bright areas light up.
Colored pencil	⑤	A colored line is drawn.
Faded edges*1	⑥	Image edges have a soft, blurred effect.
Spectrum*2	⑥	Spectrum of motions.
Ripple	⑦	Adds ripple effect.
Kaleidoscope (L)	⑧	Adds a kaleidoscope effect with a large pattern.
Kaleidoscope (S)	⓪①	Adds a kaleidoscope effect with a small pattern.
Fish-eye	⓪②	Image is expressed as seen through a fish-eye lens.

\*1 Available only for still pictures.

\*2 Available only for movies.

- Press **⓪**.

### Note

- When shooting movies, **Image quality** cannot be changed. Image quality is automatically set to **SUPER FINE** for **QVGA: 320x240** or **QCIF: 176x144** and **FINE** for **sQCIF: 128x96**.
- If Effect shot is set when movies are shot, **Fix camera shake** is automatically set to **OFF**. Afterward, when Effect shot is canceled, the Fix camera shake setting before Effect shot is retrieved.

## Shooting While Fixing Camera Shake

<Fix Camera Shake>

Default setting **ON**

Fix camera shake while shooting movies.

- When image size is **VGA: 640x480**, Fix camera shake is not available.
- Fix camera shake is not available when shooting with sub camera or Effect shot.
- Fix camera shake effects depend on the subject and the shooting conditions.

### 1 In the movie shooting screen

(☞ P. 167), press **Ⓜ** **5** **2** [**Fix camera shake**] and press **1** [**ON**].

## Shooting Environment/Subject-specific Images <Shoot by Scene>

Default setting **Auto**

Set camera to shoot with natural colors and focus based on surroundings and subject.

- Shoot by scene is not available when using the sub camera.

### 1 In the still picture shooting screen (☞ P. 167), press **Ⓜ** **4** **4** [**Shoot by scene**] and select a scene.

- In the movie shooting screen (☞ P. 167), press **Ⓜ** **3** **6**.

#### Still picture scenes

Auto	<b>1</b>	Ideal setting for normal shooting.
Night scene	<b>2</b>	Ideal setting for shooting images at night or in dimly lit surroundings.
Exercise	<b>3</b>	Ideal setting for shooting moving subjects, such as in outdoor sports.
Character	<b>4</b>	Ideal setting for shooting subjects with contrast differences (e.g. black and white).

#### Movie scenes

Auto	<b>1</b>	Ideal setting for normal shooting.
People	<b>2</b>	Ideal setting for shooting people.
Landscape (soft)	<b>3</b>	Ideal setting for shooting soft images of nature and the city.
Landscape (sharp)	<b>4</b>	Ideal setting for shooting sharp images of nature and the city.

- Icon that indicates scene appears (☞ P. 165).

#### Note

- After ending Camera mode, setting returns to **Auto**.

## Setting Backlight Illumination Time

<Display Light Time>

Default setting **As light setting**

Set time for backlight illumination when shooting movies.

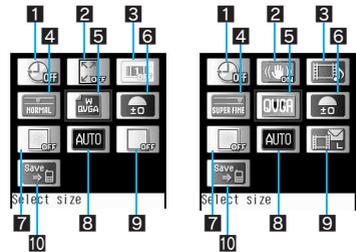
### 1 In the movie shooting screen (☞ P. 167), press **Ⓜ** **5** **3** [**Display light time**] and select the display light time.

As light setting	<b>1</b>	● Backlight illuminates based on Display light time (☞ P. 130).
Always ON	<b>2</b>	● Backlight is constantly lit (Backlight lit duration is same as Display light time for all screens other than viewfinder).

## Changing Settings for Shooting Collectively <Shooting Settings>

Show settings for functions frequently used when shooting and change them collectively.

### 1 In the still picture shooting screen (☞ P. 167) or movie shooting screen (☞ P. 167), press **Ⓜ** [**Settings**].



For still pictures

For movies

- To change settings, select item with **⏪** and press **Ⓞ** [Change].

Shooting still pictures	Shooting movies
<b>1</b> Auto timer	<b>1</b> Auto timer
<b>2</b> Full-screen mode	<b>2</b> Fix camera shake
<b>3</b> Continuous mode	<b>3</b> Switch img/voice
<b>4</b> Image quality	<b>4</b> Image quality
<b>5</b> Select size	<b>5</b> Select size
<b>6</b> Brightness	<b>6</b> Brightness
<b>7</b> Effect shot	<b>7</b> Effect shot
<b>8</b> Shoot by scene	<b>8</b> Shoot by scene
<b>9</b> Shoot with frame	<b>9</b> File size limit
<b>10</b> Switch phone SD	<b>10</b> Switch phone SD

## Changing Camera Settings

### Changing Camera Shutter Sound

<Shutter Sound>

Default setting *Default tone*

Select from four shutter sounds.

- Camera shutter sound volume cannot be changed. The shutter sound is also audible during Manner mode, Public mode (Drive mode) and when the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately) is connected.

#### 1 In stand-by, press [1] [2] [4] [1] and select a Shutter sound.

Default tone	[1]	Ding dong	[3]
Digital camera	[2]	Twinkle	[4]

- To check shutter sound, select a shutter sound and press [Play]. Press [Stop] to stop playback.

### Showing Images in Full-screen

<Full-screen Mode>

All icons can be deleted to view the still picture at full screen in Camera mode.

- Full-screen mode is not available when shooting size is set to **sQCIF: 128x96**, **QCIF: 176x144** or **CIF: 352x288**.
- Full-screen mode deactivates when Camera mode ends.

#### 1 In the still picture shooting screen ( P. 167), press [3] [Full-screen mode].

- Repeat operation to deactivate Full-screen mode.

## Saving to microSD Memory Card

<Switch Phone↔SD>

Default setting *FOMA terminal handset*

Save images to microSD Memory Card.

**microSD Memory Cards are sold separately.**

**Purchase microSD Memory Cards at home electronics shops ( P. 318).**

#### 1 In the still picture shooting screen ( P. 167), press [7] [Switch phone↔SD].

- In the movie shooting screen ( P. 167), press [6].
- Save destination is changed and still picture shooting screen reappears.
- Alternatively, press [Save To] after shooting still picture to switch.
- microSD Memory Card icon color changes depending on settings.

	Save destination is FOMA terminal handset
	Save destination is microSD Memory Card

- Length of movies that can be saved depends on the size of the microSD Memory Card. Maximum length is approximately one hour for movies with video.

#### Note

- In Still picture mode, images are saved to FOMA terminal handset even when save destination is set to the **microSD Memory Card** if there is no available space. In Movie mode, when shooting is started with the save destination set to the microSD Memory Card and there is no available space, Camera mode ends and the stand-by display reappears.
- Refer to P. 323 for details on checking still pictures saved on microSD Memory Card.
- When the save destination folder exceeds 400 still pictures, a still picture is saved in a new folder that is automatically created.
- When save destination is the microSD Memory Card, shot images are saved in **CameraFolder xxx** ("xxx" is the largest number when multiple folders exist).
- When saving to microSD Memory Card, images are saved in DCF1.0 (ExifVer.2.2, JPEG) format.
- DCF (Design rule for Camera File system) is a standard created mainly by JEITA (Japan Electronics and Information Technology Industries Association) for images from digital cameras and other devices to be shared with related devices. However, DCF standard may not be compatible with all devices.
- Exif is a file format established by JEITA (Japan Electronics and Information Technology Industries Association) for adding supplementary information to the still picture.

## Setting Auto Save Mode <Auto Save Mode>

Default setting **OFF**

Set to save shot still picture automatically.

- If Auto save mode is set to **ON**, image editing, Set screen and other operations are not available immediately after shooting.
- Shot still pictures are automatically saved on the microSD Memory Card or in the FOMA terminal handset.
- Change the save destination before shooting to save to microSD Memory Cards (☞ P. 175).

**1** In the still picture shooting screen (☞ P. 167), press **[M]** **[6]** **[2]** [Auto save mode] and **[1]** [ON].

## Preventing Still Picture/Movie Shooting Settings from Returning to Default Settings <Save Camera Set>

Default setting **ON**

Save camera settings to retain various settings after Camera mode ends and use those same settings later.

- The following items are retained.

Still picture	Select size, Image quality, Switch phone↔SD, Auto save mode
Movie	Select size, Image quality, File size limit, Display light time, Switch phone↔SD, Fix camera shake

- For still pictures, **Select size** and **Image quality** are retained for both the main camera and sub camera and for both the normal position and the Cycloid position.

**1** In the still picture shooting screen (☞ P. 167), press **[M]** **[6]** **[3]** [Save camera set].

- In the movie shooting screen (☞ P. 167), press **[M]** **[5]** **[4]**.

**2** Press **[1]** [ON].

## Send Message

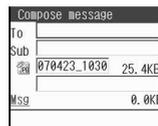
### Sending Still Pictures or Movies After Shooting

After shooting still picture or movie, send images as i-mode mail attachments from the preview screen.

- Movies are sent as i-motion mail.
- When save destination is set to microSD Memory Card, shot images are saved to the microSD Memory Card and the compose message screen appears.

**1** In the still picture preview screen (☞ P. 168), press **[M]** [Mail].

- When shooting movies, press **[2]** [Compose message] in the screen after shooting is completed.
- When a shot movie exceeds 2 MB, a confirmation screen asking whether to cut the file for attaching to mail appears. Select **Yes** and press **[Y]** to cut and attach the first 2 MB or less.



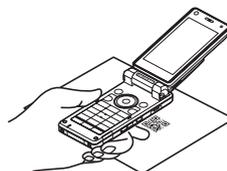
For still pictures

**2** Compose and send i-mode mail.

- Refer to steps 2 to 4 on P. 214 for details.

## Bar Code Reader

### Using Bar Code Reader



Use camera to scan bar codes (JAN/QR codes) for Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To, Web To, register bookmark, add to phonebook, display text and i-appli To. Copy and paste text, play and save melodies and view and save images or ToruCa.

- Scan results cannot be saved on microSD Memory Cards.
- Camera cannot scan bar codes/two-dimensional codes other than JAN codes and QR codes.
- Scan split QR codes.

### Using Text from Bar Codes (JAN/QR Codes)

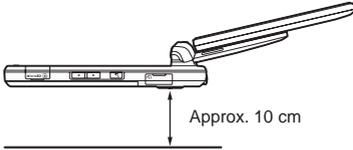
Use scanned text from bar codes (JAN/QR codes) for functions such as connecting to i-mode, composing i-mode mail, making voice/video phone calls, making PushTalk calls and running i-appli.

- Switch to Closeup before shooting (☞ P. 169). Focal distance is approximately 10 cm.

- When viewing sites, use Bar code reader to enter JAN/QR code information into text boxes (☞ P. 185).
- Some bar codes cannot be scanned depending on types or sizes.
- Bar codes may not be scanned due to scratches, dirt, damage, poor print quality, lighting conditions or QR code version.

## 1 In stand-by, press 9 2 1.

- Alternatively, press 1 4 in the still picture shooting screen (☞ P. 167).



- Position the camera approximately 10 cm from the bar code (JAN/QR code). Keep aligned and do not move the FOMA terminal or code while scanning.
- By switching the closeup lever position, bar code may come into focus.

## 2 Display bar code (JAN/QR code) to be read in the center of the screen.

- FOMA terminal automatically distinguishes between JAN code and QR code.
- Glossy paper may be difficult to read. Adjust angle so light does not reflect directly into camera.
- Press 2 to view saved data.



## 3 Press [Scan].

- Bar code reader starts scanning code (JAN/QR code). When scanning is complete, an end tone is heard and scan results appear.
- If one minute passes after scanning starts and nothing is scanned, **Could not read** appears and the screen of step 2 reappears.
- To cancel scanning, press [Break] or . Scanning is interrupted and the screen of step 2 reappears.

## 4 Select scanned text and press .

- Scanned characters and numbers are selectable if underlined.
- Based on the type of scanned text, confirmation screens for i-mode connection (for URLs), compose message (for mail addresses) or phone (Videophone) confirmation screen (for phone numbers) appears.

- Applicable screens appear for scanned data. Add to phonebook screen for phonebook data, compose message screen for mail data, register bookmark screen for bookmark data, and run i-appli screen for i-appli data.
- If scanned characters and numbers are not underlined, display does not change even if is pressed.

To copy all scanned text	
To copy a part of scanned text	3 → select origin →  [Start] → select last →
To save scanned data	4 → select save destination → ● Save up to five entries.

### Note

- Alternatively, press 6 3 [Bar code reader] in the URL entry screen or text entry screen for a site (☞ steps 1 to 3 on P. 182) to activate Bar code reader.
- While phonebook **Function lock** is set, enter **terminal security code** to unlock temporarily and save scanned text to phonebook. Function lock is enabled again after saving.
- When **Manner mode** or **Public mode (Drive mode)** is set, scan complete tone does not sound.

### JAN code

- JAN code is a type of bar code using vertical bars of varying width to express numbers.
- The code on the right is read as **4942857119022**.



### QR code

- QR code is a type of two-dimensional code expressing data vertically and horizontally. Data includes character strings (alphanumeric characters, kanji, kana, pictographs), images and melodies.
- The code on the right is read as 株式会社NTTドコモ.



### Split data

- QR code may be split into a multiple set of codes (maximum 16) which can be compiled into one set of data. If split data is scanned, the screen on the right appears after step 3. The parentheses show remaining codes/total codes.



Select **Yes** to proceed to the next QR code scanning screen. When the next QR code appears in the center of the screen, scanning starts automatically. Repeat until all split data is scanned. Scan results appear.

## Scanning and Using Images/ Melodies/ToruCa from QR Codes

### 1 Read QR code (☞ steps 1 to 3 on P. 177).

- In scan results screen, **Image** appears when scanned data is an image, **Melody** appears when scanned data is a melody, and **ToruCa** appears when scanned data is a ToruCa.

### 2 Press **⊙** and show/play.

To show image	<p>1</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Some file formats cannot be viewed.</li> </ul>
To play back melodies	<p>1</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Some file formats cannot be played.</li> <li>To stop playback, press <b>⊙</b> or <b>⏏</b>.</li> </ul>
To show ToruCa	<p>1</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When multiple ToruCa are included, only the first one is acquired.</li> </ul>
To save image, melody or ToruCa	<p>2</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Image is saved to <b>Acquired data</b> folder in My picture of Data box.</li> <li>Melodies are saved in <b>Acquired data</b> folder in Melody of Data box.</li> <li>ToruCa is saved in <b>ToruCa</b> of <b>LifeKit</b> menu.</li> </ul>
To not save image, melody or ToruCa	<p>3</p>

## Adding Scanned Text to Phonebook or Bookmarks

- Add scanned mail addresses, phone numbers and URL numbers to phonebook or bookmarks.

### 1 In scan results screen after scanning bar code (☞ steps 1 to 3 on P. 177), press **⊙**.

### 2 Use scanned results.

To add to Phonebook	To save new to FOMA terminal handset phonebook	<p>1 1 → Yes → ⊙</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Scanned text is entered in appropriate areas. Continue phonebook saving operations (☞ P. 98).</li> <li>Phone numbers set as Videophone numbers in advance are saved as Videophone numbers.</li> </ul>
	To save new to FOMA card phonebook	<p>1 2 → Yes → ⊙</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Scanned text is entered in appropriate areas. Continue phonebook saving operations (☞ P. 103).</li> </ul>

To add to Phonebook	To add/overwrite phonebook	<p>1 3 → Yes → ⊙ → select name → ⊙</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Scanned text is overwritten in appropriate areas. Continue phonebook saving operations (☞ P. 98). However, scanned URL is overwritten in the memo item (☞ P. 97).</li> </ul>
To add bookmark (URL only) (☞ P. 188)		<p>2 → Yes → ⊙ → select folder → ⊙ → OK → ⊙</p>

## Using saved data

### 1 Press **⊙** 2 [Saved data] in the scanning screen (☞ step 2 on P. 177), select data and press **⊙**.

- Proceed to steps 1 and 2 of "Adding Scanned Text to Phonebook or Bookmarks" on P. 178.
- Saved data cannot be saved again.

## Character Reader (OCR) Reading Text

Shoot printed data such as URLs, mail addresses, phone numbers and English words, and convert into text to be used by FOMA terminal.

Use read text to connect to sites or Internet web pages, or send i-mode mail. Use read text to make voice/Videophone calls and PushTalk calls or search for words in a dictionary. Can also be saved in phonebook entries and bookmarks.

- Text which can be read is shown below. Such as URLs, mail addresses, phone numbers, English words, etc. are automatically distinguished based on the text. Double-byte characters such as kanji and hiragana cannot be read.

URL	Single-byte alphabet, single-byte numbers, single-byte symbols [ . - _ : / ]
Mail address	Single-byte alphabet, single-byte numbers, single-byte symbols [ . @ - _ : ]
Phone number	Single-byte numbers, single-byte symbols [- + P # *]
English word	Single-byte alphabet, single-byte numbers, single-byte symbols [- / ? ! @ + * ' ( ) . &]

- Text may not be read correctly due to scratches, dirt, damage, poor print quality, lighting conditions or text size.

## Using Scanned Text

Data type (URL, mail address, phone number, English word) is automatically distinguished. Use functions such as reading text, connecting to i-mode, composing i-mode mail, making voice/Videophone calls, making PushTalk calls, searching in dictionaries, adding to phonebook and saving bookmarks.

- Switch to Closeup before shooting (☞ P. 169).

### 1 In stand-by, press **[9] [2] [8] [6]**.

- Alternatively, press **[1] [3]** in the still picture shooting screen (☞ P. 167).

### 2 Display text to be scanned in the center of the screen.

- Glossy paper may be difficult to read. Adjust angle so light does not reflect directly into camera.
- Adjust image so that it appears in the center of the frame . Text near the sides of the frame may be difficult to scan.
- For optimal scan, point the camera straight while maintaining a distance of approximately 10 cm. Keep both the text and FOMA terminal level without moving them. Viewed text may become small and hard to read. Adjust distance so the bar on the bottom of the screen turns a deep blue.
- Scan up to approximately 60 characters at one time.

To select data type for scanning	<b>[2]</b> → select category → <b>[6]</b> ● When Character reader is activated, <b>Auto</b> is set.
To scan inverted text (white text on black background)	<b>[3]</b> → select type of inverse mode → <b>[6]</b> ● When Character reader is activated, <b>Automatic</b> is set. When text is difficult to scan, set to <b>Normal</b> or <b>Reverse text</b> .

### 3 Press **[F]**.

- Press **[F]** to specify the line to scan (Text is scanned one line at a time).

### 4 Press **[Scan]**.

- When scanning is complete, candidates screen appears with read text.

To edit scan results	Select text to be edited with <b>[F]</b> → select candidate with <b>[F]</b> ● Letter by letter correction candidates appear on the bottom of the screen. When there are no correction candidates, enter text using dial keys. ● Press <b>[CLR]</b> to delete letters one at a time.
To delete text on screen and scan again	<b>[F]</b> → <b>Yes</b> → <b>[6]</b>

### 5 Press **[6]**.

To delete text on screen and scan again	<b>[F]</b> → <b>Yes</b> → <b>[6]</b>
To scan additional text	<b>[1]</b> ● The character reader screen appears. ● Connect to previously read data to make complete text. Use for text split into multiple lines such as long URLs or mail addresses. Scan up to 256 characters.
To add text	<b>[2]</b> ● The character reader screen appears. ● Scan text in up to three sessions and link scanned text into one group. Perform functions such as scanning items for phonebook entries and adding scanned data to phonebook.
To edit scanned text	<b>[6]</b>
To copy all scanned text	<b>[7]</b> ● Paste in other screens.
To delete scanned text	<b>[8]</b> → <b>Yes</b> → <b>[6]</b>
To change the data type of scanned text	<b>[F]</b> ● When the scanned data is phone number, the data type cannot be changed.

### 6 Press **[6]**, select **Yes** and press **[6]**.

- Based on the type of scanned data, confirmation screens for i-mode connection (for URL), compose message (for mail address), phone (Videophone) confirmation screen (for phone number) and search in dictionary (for English word) appear.

## Note

- While phonebook **Function lock** is set, enter **terminal security code** to unlock temporarily and save phone number, URL, mail address or English word to phonebook. Function lock is set again after saving.
- When scanned data is a phone number, parentheses (()) become a hyphen (-). Hyphen (-) is erased when adding to phonebook or making a call.
- When read data is URL, **http://** is added to read results even if it is missing.

## Adding Scanned Text to Phonebook or Bookmarks

Based on the type of data, read data is added as phonebook entry items or saved as bookmarks.

- Scanned data is added to various following items by data type.

URL*1	URL	Mail address	Mail
Phone number	Tel	English word*2	Word

\*1 URLs are saved in the memo item.

\*2 English words are saved in the name/reading item.

- Only URLs are saved as bookmarks.

### 1 In the screen after scanning text (step 5 on P. 179), press .

### 2 Use scanned results.

To add to Phonebook	To save new to FOMA terminal handset phonebook	  → <b>Yes</b> →  • Scanned text is entered in appropriate areas in the phonebook entry screen. Continue phonebook saving operations (  P. 98).
	To save new to FOMA card phonebook	  → <b>Yes</b> →  • Scanned text is entered in appropriate areas in the phonebook entry screen. Continue phonebook saving operations (  P. 103).
	To add/overwrite phonebook	  → <b>Yes</b> →  → select name →  • Scanned text is saved in appropriate areas. Continue phonebook saving operations (  P. 98). However, scanned URL is overwritten in the memo item (  P. 97).
To add URL to bookmarks (  P. 188)		 → <b>Yes</b> →  → select folder →  → <b>OK</b> → 

## Searching for Scanned Text in Dictionary

Search for scanned text in the dictionary.

- Insert microSD Memory Card containing an e-dictionary in advance.

### 1 In the screen after scanning text ( step 5 on P. 179), press [Search dictionary], select **Yes** and press .

### 2 Select folder, press , select dictionary and press .

- Refer to step 2 and onward on P. 349 for details on search methods for dictionary.
- After searching, press  or press  multiple times to return to the screen after scanning text.

# i-mode/i-motion/ i-Channel

## ■ i-mode

- What Is i-mode? . . . . . <i-mode>182

## ■ Viewing Sites

- Viewing Sites . . . . . <View Sites>182
- Site Layout and Operation . . . . . 184
- Registering to マイメニュー (My Menu) . . . . . <マイメニュー (My Menu)>186
- Changing the i-mode Password . . . . . <Change i-mode Password>187
- Viewing Internet Web Pages . . . . . <Internet Access>187
- Saving Sites and Web Pages as Bookmarks . . . . . <Bookmark>188
- Saving Site Contents . . . . . <Screen Memo>190

## ■ Downloading Data from Sites

- Downloading Images from Sites and Messages . . . . . <Save Image>192
- Downloading i-melody from Sites . . . . . <i-melody>193
- Downloading PDF Files from Sites . . . . . <Download PDF>193
- Downloading Kisekai Tool . . . . . <Kisekai Tool>194
- Downloading Dictionaries from Sites . . . . . <Download Dictionary>194
- Downloading Chara-den from Sites . . . . . <Download Chara-den>195
- Downloading ToruCa from Sites . . . . . <Download ToruCa>195

## ■ Useful i-mode Functions

- Using Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/Web To/Media To . . . . . <Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/Web To/Media To Function>195

## ■ Setting i-mode

- Setting i-mode . . . . . 197

## ■ Using the Message Service

- Message R/F . . . . . <Message R/F>200
- Receiving Message R/F . . . . . <Receive Message R/F>200
- Checking for New Message R/F . . . . . <Check New Messages>201
- Viewing Messages R/F in Message Box . . . . . <View Message R/F>201

## ■ Using Certificates

- Setting SSL Certificates . . . . . 203

## ■ i-motion

- i-motion . . . . . <i-motion>205
- Downloading i-motion from Sites . . . . . <Download i-motion>206
- Setting Whether to Automatically Replay i-motion . . . . . <Automatic Replay>207
- Setting i-motion Type to Download . . . . . <i-motion Type>208

## ■ i-Channel

- i-Channel . . . . . <i-Channel>208
- Showing i-Channel . . . . . 209
- Setting i-Channel . . . . . <i-Channel Ticker>210
- Resetting i-Channel Settings . . . . . <Reset i-Channel>210

Screenshots are examples and may differ from actual screens.

## What Is i-mode?

i-mode is an online service that connects i-mode compatible FOMA terminals (i-mode terminals) to sites (programs) and the Internet, and enables i-mode mail exchange.

- i-mode is a paid service that requires subscription. For inquiries about subscription, refer to the back cover of this manual.
- Refer to the latest "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]" for details on i-mode service contents.

### Using i-mode

- Sites (programs) and Internet web pages are generally protected by copyright law. Using downloaded text, images or other data from sites (programs) and web pages for non-personal use without the author's permission such as changing, selling or redistributing is prohibited.
- Saved contents (mail, messages, Screen memo, i-appli, i-motion) and registered data such as bookmarks in the i-mode terminal may be lost due to malfunctions, repairs or handling of the i-mode terminal. It is recommended that important data be backed up. DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss of content.
- Some models may not allow data such as downloaded images/movies/melodies, files sent/received by mail (images/movies/melodies, etc.), Screen memos or Message R/F to be viewed/played if a different FOMA card is inserted or the handset is turned on without a FOMA card.
- If files with access restrictions by a FOMA card are set as the stand-by display or ring tone, etc. and a different FOMA card is inserted or the handset is turned on without a FOMA card, settings are reset to default.

### View Sites

## Viewing Sites

Use the various services provided by IPs (Information Providers).

Use the FOMA terminal for functions such as ticket reservations or bank balance inquiries.

Available services vary depending on sites.

Separate subscription may be required.

- 1 In stand-by, press .

## 2 Press [iMenu].

- To cancel, press  while [Cancel] while connecting ( flashes).



### Icons that appear during i-mode

	i-mode is in standby (flashes)
	i-mode is in use (flashes)
	SSL page is being viewed
	Loading images Set image display is set to <b>OFF</b>
	An error occurs while loading an image The image format is unsupported
	The image cannot be loaded because the URL is not correct
	Downloading i-appli

## 3 Select item and press .

- Repeat this operation to view site.

To scroll up/down	Down:  Up: 
To scroll one screen at a time	Down:  [Page ] Up:  [Page ]

## 4 To end, press , select **Yes** and press .

### Note

- When accessing a site is attempted in the Cycloid position, **Rotate the display, and use** appears. Return to the normal position to access the site.
- If characters do not appear properly, convert the character code ( P. 188).
- Some downloaded images may exceed the number of colors the FOMA terminal can show on the display.
- Press  [i-mode M] while showing a site. i-mode end confirmation screen appears. Select **Yes** to go to i-mode menu.
- When **Accept calls, Reject calls, Reject by reason of non-disclosure** or **Reject unknown** is set, ring tone does not sound for callers without permission even during i-mode or i-mode stand-by. The caller's number and the name saved in phonebook are saved in Received calls. The caller hears a busy signal.

## Related Operations

### Replay Flash movies or animated GIFs <Retry>

While viewing a site, press **[F5]** **[7]** **[4]**.

### Apply Function lock to i-mode <Function lock>

In stand-by, press **[F5]** **[7]** **[6]** ▶ enter terminal security code ▶ **[0]** ▶ **[1]**.

## Sending terminal ID and UIM ID

While viewing sites or Internet web pages, some sites or Internet web pages may ask for terminal ID. When **Phone/Terminal and UIM ID will be sent** appears, select **Yes** and press **[0]** to send. To not send, select **No** and press **[2]**. To not send and return to the previous screen, press **[ESC]** or select **Return** and press **[0]**.

### Note

- The notification confirmation screen always appears before sending terminal ID and UIM ID. Terminal ID and UIM ID are not sent automatically.
- Terminal ID and UIM ID are used by the IP (Information Provider) to identify the handset and offer customized information to each customer, and also determine what contents offered by the IP are available for each handset.
- Terminal ID and UIM ID are sent to the IP (Information Provider) using the Internet so a third party may obtain it. However, customer's phone number, postal address, age and sex are not sent to the IP with this operation.

## Viewing images

View images on sites/Internet web pages, image mail and Message R/F.

- The FOMA terminal is compatible with images in GIF/JPEG format and Flash movies (Some images may not appear even in these formats).
- **[F5]** appears while receiving an image and the image is shown when receiving is complete.
- Set image display (**[ESC]** P. 199) to show or not show images. If set to **OFF**, **[F5]** appears in the place of images.



### Note

- Saved Flash movies may play differently from when on a site or Internet web page.
- When viewing Internet web pages, also view GIF/JPEG images and Flash movies. i-mode mail with URL for GIF/JPEG images or Flash movies do not appear as image mail. Select URL and use **Web To function** to view the GIF/JPEG images or Flash movies.

### Note

- When no image is received, **[F5]** appears. Reload to try to receive image again.
- When images are received that are not GIF/JPEG format or Flash movies, **[F5]** appears in place of the image.

## Viewing SSL Pages

View SSL-enabled sites or Internet web pages that start with **https://** (SSL page).

The screen on the right appears when trying to view an SSL page.

Press **[F5]** [Cancel] to not connect.

One of the certificates below is used to view SSL pages (**[ESC]** P. 203).

- CA certificate
  - Client certificate
  - DoCoMo certificate
- When viewing an SSL page, **[SSL]** appears.

A message prompting to end the SSL connection appears when moving from an SSL page to a normal page.



### Note

- If **This certificate has expired. Connect?** or other messages appears, the web page certificate is invalid, has expired or uses a different certificate from the FOMA terminal's certificate. When such messages appear, the page is not secure to send credit card numbers, postal addresses or other personal information. To continue viewing the page, select **Yes**. To not view the page, select **No**.

## Related Operations

### View a site's server certificate <View certificate>

While viewing a site, press **[F5]** **[7]** **[2]**.

## Connecting to the Last Viewed Page <Last URL>

When i-mode is disconnected, the last viewed page is recorded as Last URL. Use Last URL to quickly connect to the last viewed page.

### 1 In stand-by, press **[F5]** **[6]** **[1]**.

- The last viewed URL appears.



- Pages may not be displayed if URL exceeds 2,000 single-byte characters. Additionally, some pages, such as completed melody download screens, may not be saved as Last URL.

## 2 Press [Go].

### Related Operations

#### Delete Last URL <Delete>

In the screen in step 1 of “Connecting to the Last Viewed Page”, press 1 ▶ Yes ▶ .

#### Save Last URL as a bookmark <Add bookmark>

In the screen in step 1 of “Connecting to the Last Viewed Page”, press 2 ▶ select folder ▶ OK ▶ .

#### Copy Last URL <Copy>

In the screen in step 1 of “Connecting to the Last Viewed Page”, press 3.

### Note (Related operations)

#### Saving as a bookmark

- Refer to P. 188 for details on saving bookmarks.

#### Copying

- Up to 2,000 single-byte characters can be copied.

### Changing Font Size <Font Size>

Default setting **Normal**

Set font size of sites, Internet web pages and screen memos.

- Some sites may not appear correctly when **Font size** is changed.

## 1 In stand-by, press 7 3 2 and select font size.

Large font	
Normal	
Small font	

### Setting Playback Volume for Melody <Sound Fx Setting>

Default setting **Volume 5**

Set playback volume for melodies from sites, Internet web pages and screen memos.

## 1 In stand-by, press 7 3 7.

- While viewing sites or Internet web pages, press 7 5 to adjust volume.

## 2 Press (louder) or (softer) to adjust and press .

## Site Layout and Operation

When viewing sites or Internet web pages, use links to view other screens from the current screen and reload data. Perform operations such as verifying URLs and registering phone numbers.

### Viewing Flash Movies <View Flash Movies>

View Flash movies using the FOMA terminal. Flash technology combines pictures and sound into animation. Sites that use Flash movies are more expressive. Save in My picture of Data box and set as stand-by ( P. 125, P. 299).

## 1 View site ( steps 1 to 3 on P. 182), Internet web page ( steps 1 and 2 on P. 187) or saved screen memo ( steps 1 and 2 on P. 191) with a Flash movie.

- Flash movie plays automatically.

When a link is set in a Flash movie	Press , , ,  to ,  or  to select link set in Flash movie. ● Operate the page even if  does not appear.
To set Flash movie sound effect volume ( P. 197)	When viewing Flash movie, press  → <b>Display/set</b> →  → <b>Sound fx setting</b> →  →  (louder) or  (softer) → .
To play a Flash movie again	When viewing Flash movie, press  → <b>Display/set</b> →  → <b>Retry</b> → .

### Note

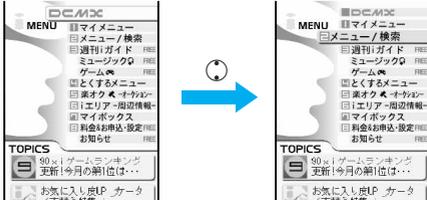
- When **Set image display** is set to **OFF**, Flash movies cannot be viewed.
- Playback is not available for melodies from Flash movies set as stand-by or incoming/outgoing call screen.
- Depending on the Flash movie, even when saved as a Screen memo, the Flash movie may play differently from when on a site.
- If a Flash movie has an error during playback, it cannot be saved.
- Some Flash movies may cause the handset to vibrate during playback. Even if the vibrator is set to **OFF**, handset vibrates.
- Some Flash movies may play differently from when viewed at usual sites.
- Refer to steps 1 to 3 on P. 192 for details on saving Flash movies.

## Selecting Links and Items

When viewing sites or Internet web pages, view other screens from the current screen. This is called a "link". Links usually appear blue. A selected link is highlighted.

- Some links may be images. When selected, the image is outlined.

## Selecting a link and moving to a new screen



- Press  $\odot$  to highlight the next link and  $\ominus$  to highlight the previous link.

## Moving to a new screen by using dial keys

In front of links,  $\blacksquare$ ,  $\boxplus$ ,  $\boxminus$ , etc. may appear. Move by pressing the corresponding dial key ( $\text{\textcircled{1}}$  to  $\text{\textcircled{9}}$ ,  $\text{\textcircled{0}}$ ,  $\text{\textcircled{*}}$  or  $\text{\textcircled{\#}}$ ).



Some sites and Internet web pages may not be viewed.

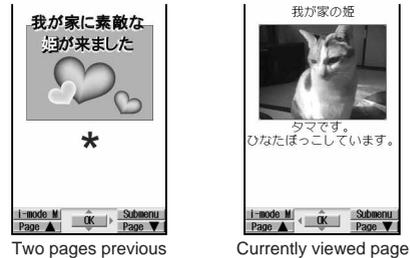
## Selecting items and entering text in sites/Internet web pages

Use the following method to select items and enter text.

Name	Display example	Details
Radio button	<input type="radio"/> : Unselected <input checked="" type="radio"/> : Selected	Used to select items. Select only one entry.
Check box	<input type="checkbox"/> : Unselected <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> : Selected	Used to select items. Select one entry or multiple entries.
Pull-down menu	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">東京 足立区 北 区</div>	Used to select items. Select pull-down menu to see a list of possible choices.
Text box	ID <input type="text"/> パスワード <input type="text"/>	Used to enter text. In text input screen, select "Bar code reader" from the Submenu and enter information into text box using JAN/QR codes. Melodies and images are not available and are displayed as text. Characters that cannot be entered in the text box do not appear.

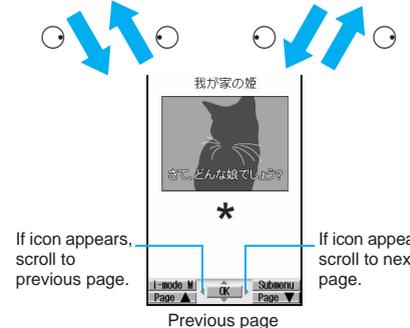
## Moving to Previous/Next Page (Cache, History)

The FOMA terminal stores sites and Internet web pages and how they have been viewed. This memory is called the "cache". Press  $\text{\textcircled{\leftarrow}}$  to show up to ten pages stored in a cache without transmission.



Two pages previous

Currently viewed page

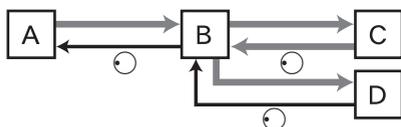


If icon appears, scroll to previous page.

If icon appears, scroll to next page.

- Press  $\odot$  for the previous page and  $\odot$  for the next page.
  - Previously entered characters and settings are not restored for pages saved in the cache.
  - When pressing  $\odot$  to scroll through pages, if the page is no longer in the cache, the cache size is exceeded or the page is set (created) to always download up-to-date information, the handset reloads the page from the site.
  - When switching to a screen saved in the cache, it may take time to view the page.
  - Display actions may differ when Flash movies are shown.
  - The history and cache are reset when i-mode ends.
  - Press  $\odot$  repeatedly to scroll through previous pages.
- When using  $\odot$  to scroll through previous pages (**C** to **B**) and another page (**D**) is viewed, pressing  $\odot$  twice at **D** will not return to **C**. Page will scroll from **B** to **A**.

<When scrolling **A** → **B** → **C** → **B** → **D**>



— ... Order when viewing pages  
 — ... Order when viewing previous pages

## Reloading Information <Reload>

Reload information from a site or Internet web page when information was not received properly (when  $\text{[RELOAD]}$  appears).

- Perform this operation after information has finished loading.
- Some sites and Internet web page information may not be downloaded properly even after reloading.
- Screen memos cannot be reloaded.

## 1 While viewing sites (steps 1 to 3 on P. 182) or Internet web pages (steps 1 and 2 on P. 187), press $\text{[URL]}$ .

- Reloading starts.
- To cancel, press  $\text{[Cancel]}$  while reloading ( $\text{[RELOAD]}$  flashes).

## Viewing the URL <URL>

Verify the URL of the current site or Internet web page.

A URL is an address written in formats like **http://www.xxx.jp**. Up to 2,048 single-byte characters (including **http://**) can be shown in the display.

- URLs cannot be edited.

## 1 While viewing sites (steps 1 to 3 on P. 182) or Internet web pages (steps 1 and 2 on P. 187), press $\text{[URL]}$ .

- To view URL of screen memos (P. 190), press  $\text{[4]}$  in the screen memo list.
- To view URL of bookmarks (P. 188), press  $\text{[3]}$  in the bookmark list.

To copy URLs	$\text{[4]}$
To scroll up/down	Down: $\odot$ Up: $\odot$

## Saving Phone Numbers and Mail Addresses in the Phonebook

### <Add to Phonebook>

Add highlighted phone numbers and mail addresses from sites or Internet web pages to phonebook.

- Highlighted phone numbers and mail addresses on a screen memo can also be saved (P. 191).
- Some highlighted phone numbers and mail addresses cannot be saved.

## 1 While viewing sites (steps 1 to 3 on P. 182) or Internet web pages (steps 1 and 2 on P. 187), select phone number or mail address, press $\text{[3] [4]}$ [Add to phonebook] and select a saving method.

To save new to FOMA terminal handset phonebook	$\text{[1]}$
To save new to FOMA card phonebook	$\text{[2]}$
To add/overwrite phonebook	$\text{[3]}$

- Selected phone number or mail address is entered in phonebook entry screen. Continue phonebook saving operations (P. 98, P. 103).

## マイメニュー (My Menu)

### Registering to マイメニュー (My Menu)

Register frequently visited sites from iMenu to マイメニュー (My menu) for convenient access.

- Register up to 45 sites. Some sites cannot be registered.
- Internet web pages cannot be registered. Use bookmarks for easy access (P. 188).

## Registering to マイメニュー (My Menu)

### 1 View site to register (steps 1 to 3 on P. 182), select マイメニュー (My menu) registration menu (example: $\text{[1]}$ マイメニュー登録 (My menu registration)) and press $\text{[OK]}$ .

2 Select **i モードパスワード入力 (Input password) field**, press **Ⓞ**, enter i-mode password and press **Ⓞ**.

3 Select **決定 (OK)** and press **Ⓞ**.

#### Note

- Page set-up may differ depending on the site.
- Upon subscribing to a paid site, the site is automatically registered to **マイメニュー (My menu)**.
- Refer to the latest "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]" for details.

## Viewing Sites Registered in マイメニュー (My Menu)

1 In stand-by, press **Ⓞ** **1**, select **マイメニュー (My menu)** and press **Ⓞ**.

2 Select site and press **Ⓞ**.

#### Note

- For **Dual Network Service**, **マイメニュー (My menu)** that was registered on a mova terminal may not be available on a FOMA terminal, and **マイメニュー (My menu)** that was registered on a FOMA terminal may not be available on a mova terminal.

## Change i-mode Password

### Changing the i-mode Password

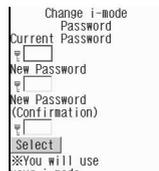
Default setting 0000

Four-digit i-mode password (P. 144) is required for **マイメニュー (My menu) registration/deletion, Message R/F and i-mode paid site subscription/cancellation and mail settings.**

- i-mode password can be changed after subscribing to i-mode. Keep i-mode password private.
- In the case of a forgotten password, bring identification (a driver's license, etc.) to a DoCoMo Shop. Password is reset to 0000.

1 In stand-by, press **Ⓞ** **1**, select **English iMenu**, press **Ⓞ**, select **Options** and press **Ⓞ**.

2 Select **Change i-mode Password** and press **Ⓞ**.



3 Select **Current Password** input field, press **Ⓞ**, enter current i-mode password and press **Ⓞ**.

4 Select **New Password** input field, press **Ⓞ**, enter new i-mode password and press **Ⓞ**.

5 Select **New Password (Confirmation)** input field, press **Ⓞ**, re-enter new i-mode password and press **Ⓞ**.

6 Select **Select** and press **Ⓞ**.

## Internet Access

### Viewing Internet Web Pages

Enter Internet web page address (URL: addresses that start with **http://**, etc.) to connect.

- Internet web pages that are not i-mode compatible or have excess data may not appear properly.

1 In stand-by, press **Ⓞ** **6** **3**.

- The URL entry screen appears (**http://** is already entered).
- If a URL has been entered previously, that URL appears.
- Alternatively, press **Ⓞ** **5** **2** while viewing sites.

2 Enter URL and press **Ⓞ**.

- Enter up to 512 single-byte characters (including **http://**).
- Steps when viewing are the same as for sites.
- Press **Ⓞ** [Cancel] while connecting (↵ flashes) to cancel.

To scan URL with Bar code reader (☞ P. 176)	In the URL entry screen, press <b>Ⓜ</b> <b>6</b> <b>3</b>
When the URL is incorrect	In the URL entry screen, press <b>CLR</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The character the cursor is on or the last character is erased.</li> <li>• Press <b>CLR</b> for 1+ seconds when the cursor is on the first character or after the last character to erase all the characters.</li> </ul>

**3** Press **☞**, select **Yes** and press **Ⓞ** to end connection.

#### Note

- Press **CLR** twice without entering characters and the i-mode menu reappears.
- If the received data exceeds the maximum size for a page, **Size of this page is not supported** appears, data transmission stops and only received data appears.

## Related Operations

View with full browser <Switch to Full Browser>  
While viewing a site, press **Ⓜ** **8** ▶ **Yes** ▶ **Ⓞ**.

## Viewing Internet Web Pages with Correct Characters <Character Code>

If the characters on an Internet web page do not appear properly, convert them to proper characters and view again.

**1** While viewing sites (☞ steps 1 to 3 on P. 182) or Internet web pages (☞ steps 1 and 2 on P. 187), press **Ⓜ** **7** **3** [**Character code**].

- Internet web page with correct characters appears.
- If characters do not appear properly, repeat the above step.

#### Note

- Converting character code when properly shown may render site unreadable.
- Some pages may not appear properly even after converting character code.
- After converting character code four times, the site or web page is shown with original code.
- After reloading or scrolling to the next/previous page, the site or web page is shown with original code.

## Viewing Pages from URL History

### <URL History>

The FOMA terminal records up to nine Internet web pages accessed from **Go to location** of i-mode menu.

Use the history to reconnect to those web pages.

- 1** In stand-by, press **Ⓜ** **6** **2**.
  - Alternatively, press **Ⓜ** **5** **1** while viewing sites.
- 2** Select URL and press **Ⓞ**.

#### Note

- When nine pages are exceeded, the oldest page in history is overwritten.

## Related Operations

Delete URL history <Delete one>

- 1** In URL history list in step 1 of “Viewing Pages from URL History”, press **Ⓜ** **1**.
  - To delete all: Press **Ⓜ** **2** ▶ enter terminal security code ▶ **Ⓞ**.
- 2** Select **Yes** ▶ **Ⓞ**.

Show URLs in URL history <URL>

- In URL history list in step 1 of “Viewing Pages from URL History”, press **Ⓜ** **3**.
- To copy URL: Press **Ⓜ**.

## Bookmark

### Saving Sites and Web Pages as Bookmarks

Save frequently visited sites and Internet web pages as bookmarks for convenient access.

- Add folders and sort bookmarks into types and manage them (☞ P. 190).
- Sites or Internet web pages with images or melodies may not appear correctly when accessed from a bookmark.

## Saving Bookmarks

Save up to 100 bookmarks in total.

- Each bookmarked URL can have up to 256 single-byte characters. URLs which exceed 256 characters cannot be saved.

# 1 While viewing sites (☞ steps 1 to 3 on P. 182) or Internet web pages (☞ steps 1 and 2 on P. 187), press Ⓜ [2] [1] [Add bookmark].

- Up to 24 single-byte (12 double-byte) characters from beginning of the title or URL are saved. If the title exceeds 24 single-byte (12 double-byte) characters, the extra characters are deleted. If there is no title, the first 24 characters from the URL are saved.

When 100 bookmarks are already saved	<b>Bookmark data is full. Overwrite bookmarks?</b> appears → Yes → Ⓜ → select folder → Ⓜ → select bookmark to overwrite → Ⓜ
When the same URL is already saved	<b>The same URL is saved. Overwrite?</b> appears → Yes → Ⓜ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select <b>No</b> and the site or Internet web page reappears.</li> </ul>
When the URL is too long	<b>URL is too long to register</b> appears and bookmark is not saved.

# 2 Select a folder and press Ⓜ to save.

To save	Select <b>OK</b> → Ⓜ
To change the title and save	Select <b>Edit title</b> → Ⓜ → edit title → Ⓜ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Enter up to 24 single-byte (12 double-byte) characters.</li> </ul>
To change folder and save	Select <b>Change folder</b> → Ⓜ → select folder → Ⓜ → <b>OK</b> → Ⓜ

## Note

- In sites or Internet web pages, even if a selection is made in a radio button, check box, pull-down menu or text is entered in text boxes, the selected or entered contents are not saved in bookmarks.
- Some bookmarks may not be saved depending on the site or Internet web page.
- Refer to P. 322 for details on copying to microSD Memory Cards.
- Refer to P. 332 for details on Ir exchange.
- Refer to P. 337 for details on IC transmission.

**Note information saved in bookmarks separately or transfer/store them on a PC using microSD Memory Cards (☞ P. 318) or DoCoMo keitai datalink (☞ P. 406).**

- Saved content may be lost due to malfunctions, repairs or other handling of the FOMA terminal. DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss of content.

## Viewing Sites and Internet Web Pages from Bookmarks

# 1 In stand-by, press Ⓜ [3].

- Alternatively, press Ⓜ [2] [2] while viewing sites.



Bookmark folder list

To view all saved bookmarks	Ⓜ [3] [All bookmarks]
To view bookmarks on microSD Memory Cards	Ⓜ [6] [View microSD data] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To view bookmarks on FOMA terminal handset again, press Ⓜ twice.</li> </ul>

# 2 Select folder, press Ⓜ, select bookmark and press Ⓜ.

- To check URL of bookmark, select bookmark and press Ⓜ [3]. To copy URL of bookmark, press Ⓜ [Copy] while checking URL.
- To disconnect, press Ⓜ [Cancel] while connected (⚡ flashes).

## Note

- Bookmarks are listed in the order of use.
- Full Browser bookmarks do not appear on Bookmark list of i-mode in the FOMA terminal handset. i-mode and Full Browser bookmarks are shown together in the bookmark list of microSD Memory Cards. 📧 appears for i-mode bookmarks and 📧 appears for Full Browser bookmarks.
- Paste the copied URL into text areas such as mail or text memo.

## Attaching Bookmark to i-mode Mail

<Attach to Mail>

# 1 In bookmark folder list (☞ P. 189), select folder and press Ⓜ.

# 2 Select bookmark and press Ⓜ [5] [Attach to mail].

# 3 Compose and send i-mode mail.

- Refer to step 2 to 4 on P. 214 for details.

## Note

- If the other party's terminal does not support attachment, attached files are deleted.

## Managing Folders

Manage bookmarks in up to 20 folders (including **Bookmark** folder).

Edit folder names or delete folders (The preset **Bookmark** folder cannot be edited or deleted).

### Creating folders <New folder>

1 In bookmark folder list (☞ P. 189), press **Ⓜ** **1** **1** [New folder].

2 Enter folder name and press **Ⓞ**.  
 ● Press **Ⓞ** for 1+ seconds to delete **New folder** name.

### Editing folder names <Edit folder name>

1 In bookmark folder list (☞ P. 189), select folder and press **Ⓜ** **1** **2** [Edit folder name].

2 Edit folder name and press **Ⓞ**.  
 ● Enter up to 18 single-byte (9 double-byte) characters.  
 ● Press **Ⓞ** for 1+ seconds to delete folder name.

### Deleting folders <Delete>

1 In bookmark folder list (☞ P. 189), select folder and press **Ⓜ** **2** [Delete].

2 Select deletion method.

To delete one folder	<b>1</b> → enter terminal security code → <b>Ⓞ</b> → <b>Yes</b> → <b>Ⓞ</b>
To delete folders collectively	<b>2</b> → enter terminal security code → <b>Ⓞ</b> → select folder <b>Ⓞ</b> (repeatable) → <b>Ⓜ</b> → <b>Yes</b> → <b>Ⓞ</b> ● Press <b>Ⓜ</b> [SelAll]/ <b>Ⓜ</b> [ClrAll] to select or clear all.
To delete all bookmarks inside and outside folders (keep folders)	<b>3</b> → enter terminal security code → <b>Ⓞ</b> → <b>Yes</b> → <b>Ⓞ</b>

## Managing Bookmarks

### Changing bookmark titles <Edit title>

1 In bookmark folder list (☞ P. 189), select folder and press **Ⓞ**.

2 Select bookmark and press **Ⓜ** **1** [Edit title].

3 Edit title and press **Ⓞ**.

- Enter up to 24 single-byte (12 double-byte) characters.
- Press **Ⓞ** for 1+ seconds to erase current title.

### Moving bookmark to another folder <Move>

1 In bookmark folder list (☞ P. 189), select folder and press **Ⓞ**.

2 Select bookmark and press **Ⓜ** **4** [Move].

3 Select a transfer method.

To move one bookmark	<b>1</b> → select folder → <b>Ⓞ</b>
To move all bookmarks in the folder	<b>2</b> → select folder → <b>Ⓞ</b>
To move bookmarks collectively	<b>3</b> → select bookmark <b>Ⓞ</b> (repeatable) → <b>Ⓜ</b> → select folder → <b>Ⓞ</b> ● Press <b>Ⓜ</b> [SelAll]/ <b>Ⓜ</b> [ClrAll] to select or clear all.

### Deleting bookmarks <Delete>

1 In bookmark folder list (☞ P. 189), select folder and press **Ⓞ**.

2 Select bookmark and press **Ⓜ** **2** [Delete].

3 Select deletion method.

To delete one bookmark	<b>1</b> → <b>Yes</b> → <b>Ⓞ</b>
To delete all bookmarks in the folder	<b>2</b> → enter terminal security code → <b>Ⓞ</b> → <b>Yes</b> → <b>Ⓞ</b>
To delete bookmarks collectively	<b>3</b> → select bookmark <b>Ⓞ</b> (repeatable) → <b>Ⓜ</b> → <b>Yes</b> → <b>Ⓞ</b> ● Press <b>Ⓜ</b> [SelAll]/ <b>Ⓜ</b> [ClrAll] to select or clear all.

## Screen Memo

### Saving Site Contents

Use screen memo to save screens from sites and Internet web pages.

- Save screen memo images in My picture of Data box and set as stand-by (☞ P. 125).
- Save up to 400 screen memos. Amount varies depending on size of the data. When screen memo data is large, fewer can be saved.
- Protect up to the maximum amount of data that can be saved. Protected screen memos are not deleted even when Delete all is performed.

## Saving Screen Memos

**1** While viewing sites (☞ steps 1 to 3 on P. 182) or Internet web pages (☞ steps 1 and 2 on P. 187), press **[Add screen memo]**.

- Up to 24 single-byte (12 double-byte) characters of the title is saved. When title is not entered, **No title** appears.

**2** Save.

To save	Select <b>OK</b> → <b>[OK]</b>
To change the title and save	Select <b>Edit title</b> → <b>[Edit]</b> → edit title → <b>[OK]</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Enter up to 24 single-byte (12 double-byte) characters.</li> </ul>

### Note

- In sites or Internet web pages, even if a selection is made in a radio button, check box, pull-down menu or text is entered in text boxes, the selected or entered contents are not saved in the screen memo.
- When a screen memo is saved, if the maximum saved entries (400 entries) are reached or the available memory space is smaller than the maximum space for one entry (100 KB), a message appears notifying that the screen memo overwrites the other.

## Viewing Screen Memos

**1** In stand-by, press **[Screen memo]**.



Screen memo list

### Meaning of screen memo icons

	(screen memo)	Standard screen memo.
	(screen memo)	Protected screen memo.
	(screen memo)	FOMA card restriction (☞ P. 37) is set.

**2** Select screen memo and press **[OK]**.

To scroll up/down	Down: <b>[Down]</b> Up: <b>[Up]</b>
To scroll one screen at a time	Down: <b>[Page Down]</b> Up: <b>[Page Up]</b>
To view other screen memos	Next: <b>[Next]</b> Previous: <b>[Previous]</b>
To view screen memo list again	<b>[List]</b>

### Note

- Screen memo is data from the time of saving. Screen memo may differ from the latest site or Internet web page data.

## Related Operations

### Check screen memo URLs <URL>

In screen memo display screen, press

**[Screen memo]** **[1]**.

- From screen memo list: Select screen memo **[1]**.
- To copy URLs: Press **[Copy]**.

### Check screen memo details <File property>

In screen memo display screen, press

**[Screen memo]** **[2]**.

- From screen memo list: Select screen memo **[1]**.
- To end viewing: Press **[OK]** or **[CLR]**.

### Save screen memo image in My picture of Data box <Save image>

In screen memo display screen, press

**[Screen memo]** **[4]** **[1]**.

- To save background image: Press **[Screen memo]** **[4]** **[2]**.

### Create i-mode mail with screen memo URL <Compose message>

In screen memo display screen, press

**[Screen memo]** **[5]** **[1]**.

### Create i-mode mail with image from screen memo <New mail w/image>

In screen memo display screen, press **[Screen memo]** **[5]** **[2]**

▶ **[1]** [Insert URL] or **[2]** [Attach image].

### Add phone numbers and mail addresses from screen memo to phonebook <Add to phonebook>

In screen memo display screen, press

**[Screen memo]** **[4]** **[3]**.

### Adjust Flash movie sound effect volume in screen memo <Sound fx setting>

In screen memo display screen, press **[Screen memo]** **[6]** **[6]**

▶ **[Loud]** (louder) or **[Soft]** (softer) ▶ **[OK]**.

### Replay Flash movies in screen memo <Retry>

In screen memo display screen, press

**[Screen memo]** **[5]**.

### Note (Related operations)

Refer to P. 192 for details on saving image.

#### Composing new mail with image

- Files with restrictions for mail attachment and output from the FOMA terminal are not sent.
- Refer to P. 196 for details on compose new mail with image.

Refer to “Saving Phone Numbers and Mail Addresses in the Phonebook” on P. 186 for details on Adding to the phonebook.

## Managing Screen Memos

Protect or delete screen memos and edit titles.

### Changing screen memo titles <Edit title>

#### 1 In screen memo list (☞ P. 191), select screen memo and press [2] [Edit title].

- In the screen memo display screen, press [2].

#### 2 Edit title and press .

- Enter up to 24 single-byte (12 double-byte) characters.
- Press for 1+ seconds to erase current title.

### Protecting screen memos <Protect set>

- appears for protected screen memos.

#### 1 In screen memo list (☞ P. 191), select screen memo and press [3] [Protect set].

- In the screen memo display screen, press [3].

#### 2 Select ON or OFF.

To protect	[1]
To disable	[2]

### Deleting screen memos <Delete>

#### 1 In screen memo list (☞ P. 191), select screen memo and press [1] [Delete].

- In the screen memo display screen, press [1].

#### 2 Select deletion method.

To delete one screen memo	[1] → Yes →
To delete all screen memos*	[2] → enter terminal security code →  → Yes →
To delete screen memos collectively	[3] → select screen memo  (repeatable) →  → Yes → <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● Press  [SelAll]/ [ClrAll] to select or clear all.</li></ul>

\* Protected entries are not deleted.

## Save Image

### Downloading Images from Sites and Messages

Save images, Flash movies, frames and stamps downloaded from sites, Internet web pages, and Message R/F. Set saved images as stand-by and for other functions (☞ P. 125). Also, download Deco-mail templates to use when composing messages.

- Save the retrieved image in the *i-mode*, *Item* or *Decomail picture* folder or in a created folder in My picture of Data box. Available folder differs depending on the type and size of the image. Deco-mail templates are saved in *Template* of the Mail menu ( P. 219).
- JPEG/GIF images and animated GIFs that are 20x20 pixels without file restrictions are saved as Deco-mail pictographs in the *Deco-mail pict 1* folder.
- Save up to 1,000 images on FOMA terminal handset. Saved amount may vary depending on available memory.
- Save up to 100 KB of GIF images, JPEG images and SWF images (Flash).
- Still pictures that are restricted for output to non-FOMA terminal devices can directly be saved to a microSD Memory Card (Contents transfer compatible).

### Example: When saving from sites and Internet web pages

#### 1 While viewing sites (☞ steps 1 to 3 on P. 182) or Internet web pages (☞ steps 1 and 2 on P. 187), press [3] [2] [Save image].

#### 2 Select image, press , select folder and press .

- *Set to display screen? (Current display settings will be cleared)* appears. Select *No* and press to save the image and end the procedure.

#### 3 Select Yes, press , select screen to set and press .

- Available settings depend on the file format. Unavailable settings cannot be selected.
- The right screen appears when setting the image as the stand-by display. Select *Yes* and press .



### Note

- Saved Flash movies may play differently from when on a site or Internet web page.
- Depending on the size, some downloaded pictures may not fully appear when set as stand-by, etc.

## Related Operations

### Download Deco-mail templates and compose Deco-mail

- 1 While viewing sites or Internet web pages, select Deco-mail template .
- 2 Press [2] [Save].
  - To preview: Press [1].
  - To not save: Press [4].
- 3 Press [3] [Compose message] ▶ compose message.

## Related Operations

Save background images from sites or screen memos <Save background image>

- 1 While viewing sites or Internet web pages, press **Ⓜ** **③** **③**.
  - For Screen memos: In the screen memo display screen, press **Ⓜ** **④** **②**.
- 2 Select folder **▶** **○**.

### Note (Related operations)

#### Deco-mail template

- If templates are not saved, Compose message cannot be selected.
- Templates cannot be saved if memory space is insufficient. Delete unnecessary templates and increase available memory space to save (Ⓜ P. 220).

## i-melody

### Downloading i-melody from Sites

Save melodies downloaded from sites and Internet web pages. Save up to 500 i-melodies (Capacity varies depending on size of melody).

Set the saved melody as the ring tone or attach to i-mode mail.

- Save up to 100 KB of SMF files and MFi files.
- Melodies that are restricted for output to non-FOMA terminal devices can directly be saved to a microSD Memory Card (Contents transfer compatible).

- 1 While viewing sites (Ⓜ steps 1 to 3 on P. 182) or Internet web pages (Ⓜ steps 1 and 2 on P. 187), select melody and press **○**.

## 2 Save.

To play back melodies	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● To stop playback, press <b>○</b> or <b>⏏</b>.</li> <li>● Melody is played at the same volume as phone ring tone (Ⓜ P. 118). When phone ring tone is set to <b>Silent</b> or <b>Step</b>, melody is played at <b>Volume 1</b>.</li> </ul> </li> </ol>
To save melodies	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2 → <b>phone/microSD</b> → <b>○</b></li> </ol>
To not save	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3</li> </ol>
When 500 melody files are already saved	Select melody icon for melody to overwrite → <b>○</b> → <b>Yes</b> → <b>○</b>

## Note

Transfer and store saved i-melody data on a PC using microSD Memory Card (Ⓜ P. 318).

- Saved content may be lost due to malfunctions, repairs or other handling of the FOMA terminal. DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss of content (Melodies with restrictions for i-mode mail attachment or output from the FOMA terminal are not sent).

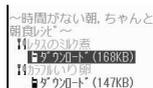
## Download PDF

### Downloading PDF Files from Sites

View and save PDF files downloaded from sites and Internet web pages.

- Download is available up to 2 MB of PDF files. Files larger than 2 MB cannot be downloaded. Also, some downloaded PDF files may not be displayed.
- When downloading PDF files that are larger than 500 KB, a confirmation screen asking **Content length exceeds 500KB. Download?** appears.
- Save up to 50 PDF files on the FOMA terminal handset (The number of files that can be saved varies depending on the size of PDF files).
- PDF files with unknown file size cannot be downloaded.
- PDF files cannot be downloaded while One Seg is running. However, if One Seg is activated while downloading a PDF file, the download of the PDF file can be resumed after switching to the screen of the PDF file.
- Downloaded PDF files are saved to the **PRIVATE\DOCOMO\DOCUMENT\UDxxx** folder when saved to microSD Memory Card (Ⓜ P. 320). "xxx" in the folder name is a three-digit single-byte number between 001 and 999.

- 1 While viewing sites (Ⓜ steps 1 to 3 on P. 182) or Internet web pages (Ⓜ steps 1 and 2 on P. 187), select a PDF file and press **○**.



Split download PDF files	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● When the first page is downloaded, PDF Viewer is activated and the PDF file appears. Download continues for remaining pages.</li> <li>● Use links to move to other pages. When <b>Continue downloading following pages?</b> appears, select <b>Yes</b> and press <b>○</b>.</li> </ul>
PDF files that must be saved first	<b>Download and save?</b> → <b>Yes</b> → <b>○</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Download the entire PDF file to view.</li> <li>● Proceed to step 3.</li> </ul>

- Refer to P. 339 for details on the icons shown in the PDF files.

- If download fails, download the PDF file again to view. Some files may not be displayed even when downloaded again.
- PDF files downloaded by an individual page cannot be saved to microSD Memory Card.

## 2 Press [2] [Save] when download is completed.

## 3 Save.

To save to FOMA terminal handset	Select folder →
To save to microSD Memory Card	Select → <b>microSD</b> → select folder → <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Insert microSD Memory Card in advance.</li> <li>● PDF files with file restriction cannot be saved to microSD Memory Card.</li> </ul>

- When saving is completed, the PDF file appears.
- When password is set, enter password and press to view the PDF file.
- If available space on the FOMA terminal handset is insufficient, delete unnecessary files and increase memory space to save.

### Note

- When the number of bookmarks or marks exceeds ten, **10 bookmarks exceeded. Delete?** or **10 marks exceeded. Delete?** appears. After deleting bookmarks or marks, PDF files are saved or closed.

## Kisekai Tool

### Downloading Kisekai Tool

Save Kisekai Tool downloaded from sites and Internet web pages.

- Save up to 50 Kisekai Tool on the FOMA terminal handset.
- Downloaded Kisekai Tool is saved to *i-mode* folder in Kisekai Tool of Data box or **Movable contents** folder in microSD Memory Card.

## 1 While viewing sites ( steps 1 to 3 on P. 182) or Internet web pages ( steps 1 and 2 on P. 187), select a Kisekai Tool and press .

## 2 Save.

To check Kisekai Tool	①
To save Kisekai Tool	② → <b>phone/microSD</b> →
To not save	③

- If save destination is FOMA terminal handset, a confirmation screen asking whether to use Kisekai Tool appears when saving is completed. Select **Yes** and press to apply Kisekai package to the phone.

## Download Dictionary

### Downloading Dictionaries from Sites

Download dictionaries from sites or Internet web pages to register in the FOMA terminal.

- Save up to ten Download dictionary files (Up to five can be used).
- Save Downloaded dictionaries of up to 6 KB.
- Download dictionaries from the **SH-MODE** site in iMenu.  
**iMenu** → メニュー / 検索 (Menu/Search) → ケータイ電話メーカー (Mobile phone manufacturer) → **SH-MODE**  
SH-MODE is only available in Japanese.



QR code to connect to SH-MODE

## 1 While viewing sites ( steps 1 to 3 on P. 182) or Internet web pages ( steps 1 and 2 on P. 187), select Download dictionary and press .



## 2 Save.

To display Download dictionary	①
To save Download dictionary	② → select slot → <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● When slot selected is already in use, a confirmation message to overwrite slot appears. Select <b>Yes</b> and press .</li> </ul>
To not save Download dictionary	③



## 3 Set dictionary.

To use Download dictionary	Select <b>Yes</b> →
To not use Download dictionary	Select <b>No</b> →

- When five dictionaries are already in use, the confirmation screen does not appear. Clear dictionary currently in use and try again. Refer to steps 1 and 2 of "Setting/Clearing a Dictionary" on P. 415 for details.

## Download Chara-den

### Downloading Chara-den from Sites

Download and save Chara-den from sites or Internet web pages.

- Download Chara-den up to 100 KB.
- Save up to 50 Chara-den files (The amount depends on available memory).
- Files are saved to the **i-mode** folder in Chara-den of Data box.
- Default Chara-den can be downloaded from the **SH-MODE** site in iMenu.  
**iMenu** → メニュー / 検索 (Menu/Search) → ケータイ電話メーカー (Mobile phone manufacturer) → **SH-MODE**  
 SH-MODE is only available in Japanese.



QR code to connect to SH-MODE

**1** While viewing sites (☞ steps 1 to 3 on P. 182) or Internet web pages (☞ steps 1 and 2 on P. 187), select Chara-den and press **⊙**.

**2** Save.

To display data	① ● Chara-den player appears.
To save data	②
To not save data	③

## Download ToruCa

### Downloading ToruCa from Sites

**1** While viewing sites (☞ steps 1 to 3 on P. 182) or Internet web pages (☞ steps 1 and 2 on P. 187), select ToruCa and press **⊙**.

- Download ToruCa up to 1 KB and ToruCa (details) up to 100 KB.

**2** Save.

To save ToruCa	Select <b>Yes</b> → <b>⊙</b>
To not save ToruCa	Select <b>No</b> → <b>⊙</b>
To display preview screen	Select <b>Preview</b> → <b>⊙</b>

## Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/Web To/Media To Function

### Using Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/Web To/Media To

Use highlighted data (phone numbers, mail addresses, URLs, etc.) in sites, Internet web pages, Message R/F, mail or ToruCa and conveniently make a voice/Videophone call, send mail, or access an Internet web page. In addition, start One Seg and set timer for starting or recording the One Seg program.

- Phone To (AV Phone To)/Mail To/Web To/Media To may not be used with decorated mail received from a PC.

### Using Phone To (AV Phone To)

Make voice/Videophone calls and send PushTalk transmissions to phone numbers in sites, Internet web pages, Message R/F, mail or ToruCa.

- Not available for some sites and Internet web pages.
- Calls cannot be made using Phone To (AV Phone To) while Keypad dial lock is set.

**1** While viewing sites (☞ steps 1 to 3 on P. 182), Internet web pages (☞ steps 1 and 2 on P. 187), Message R/F (☞ P. 201), mail (☞ P. 228) or ToruCa (☞ P. 265), select a phone number, press **⊙**, select **Yes** and press **⊙**.

**2** Make a call.

Voice call	or <b>⊙</b>
Videophone	<b>⊙</b>
PushTalk	or <b>(P)</b>

- When phone number is saved in the phonebook, the name and phone number appear.

#### Note

- Some sites and Internet web pages show highlighted text linked to the phone number in place of a phone number.

## Note

- When a number string fulfilling the following conditions appears in a mail message, the string is recognized as a phone number and Phone To (AV Phone To) is available.
    - 10 to 26 digit numbers (including 0 or +) that start with 0 or +
    - 5 to 26 digit numbers (including # or ✕) that start with # or ✕
    - 3 to 26 digit numbers that start with tel: or TEL:
    - 3 to 26 digit numbers that start with tel-av: or TEL-AV: (Videophone)
- Even if the above numbers contain a hyphen (-) or parenthesis (( )), string is recognized as a phone number (If these symbols repeat continuously, number string before the repeating symbols are recognized as a phone number).

## Using Mail To

Send i-mode mail to mail addresses in sites, Internet web pages, Message R/F, mail or ToruCa.

- Not available for some sites and Internet web pages.
- Some sites and Internet web pages show highlighted text linked to the mail address in place of a mail address.
- Mail To may not be available if two or more mail addresses appear together.
- Up to 50 single-byte character mail addresses are valid. Portions of addresses exceeding 50 characters are deleted after the fiftieth character.
- i-mode mail cannot be sent using Mail To while Keypad dial lock is set.

### 1 Select mail address while viewing sites (☞ steps 1 to 3 on P. 182) or Internet web pages (☞ steps 1 and 2 on P. 187), Message R/F (☞ P. 201), mail (☞ P. 228) or ToruCa (☞ P. 265) and press Ⓞ.

- Compose message screen appears. The selected mail address is entered.
- Subject and message may be entered if mail address is from a site or Internet web page.

### 2 Compose and send i-mode mail.

- Refer to steps 2 to 4 on P. 214 for details.

## Creating Image Mail

Create i-mode mail with URLs of images or image attachments in sites and Internet web pages.

- Send GIF or JPEG images. Flash movies cannot be sent.
- Files with restrictions for mail attachment and output from the FOMA terminal are not sent.

### 1 While viewing sites (☞ steps 1 to 3 on P. 182) or Internet web pages (☞ steps 1 and 2 on P. 187), press Ⓞ [4] [2] [New mail w/image].

### 2 Select image, press Ⓞ and select a mail creation method.



To create i-mode mail with URL	[1]
To create i-mode mail with image attachment	[2] → Ⓞ

### 3 Compose and send i-mode mail.

- Refer to steps 2 to 4 on P. 214 for details.

## Using i-appli To

Start i-appli from URLs in sites, Internet web pages, mail or screen memos.

- Start i-appli when i-appli To settings are set to Yes.
- i-appli does not start with URLs which exceed 512 single-byte characters.

### 1 While viewing sites (☞ steps 1 to 3 on P. 182), Internet web pages (☞ steps 1 and 2 on P. 187), mail (☞ P. 228) or screen memo (☞ P. 191), select i-appli address (URL), press Ⓞ, select Yes and press Ⓞ.

- i-appli starts.

## Using Web To

Connect with i-mode and view Internet web pages from URLs in sites, Internet web pages, Message R/F, mail or ToruCa. For i-mode mail, connecting with Full Browser is available.

- Not available for some sites and Internet web pages.
- Save still picture when still picture URL is included in mail message.
- Download i-motion when i-motion URL is included in mail message.
- Internet web pages with URLs which exceed 2,048 single-byte characters cannot be viewed.
- Some sites and Internet web pages show the highlighted web page name in place of a URL.
- In the Cycloid position, Web To function is not available.

# 1 While viewing sites (👉 steps 1 to 3 on P. 182), Internet web pages (👉 steps 1 and 2 on P. 187), Message R/F (👉 P. 201), mail (👉 P. 228) or ToruCa (👉 P. 265), select address (URL) and press .

- Subsequent steps are the same as for i-mode Internet access (👉 P. 187).
- When selecting from ToruCa, perform the operation above, select **Yes** and press .

## Using Web To while viewing i-mode mail

When URL is selected from mail message, select whether to use i-mode or Full Browser.

# 1 Select address (URL) in i-mode mail message, press and select connection method.

To connect using i-mode	
To connect using Full Browser	

## Related Operations

### Save a still picture from URL in mail message

<Save image>

Select URL ▶ ▶ ▶ ▶ ▶ ▶ ▶ select folder ▶ .

### Note (Related operations)

- The still picture is saved in the **i-mode** or **Decomail picture** folder or a created folder in My picture of Data box.

## Using Media To

Start One Seg from the link of program information in sites, Internet web pages, Message R/F or mail, or set timer for starting or recording a program.

# 1 While viewing sites (👉 steps 1 to 3 on P. 182), Internet web pages (👉 steps 1 and 2 on P. 187), Message R/F (👉 P. 201) or mail (👉 P. 228), select the link of program information and press .

- One Seg is activated and the timer setting screen appears for starting or recording a One Seg program.
- For setting timer for starting or recording a One Seg program, some setting items are already entered by program information.
- When Channel setting (👉 P. 274) is not made, Channel setting is activated if One Seg is activated from Media To. When One Seg is activated while the channel list is set, the channel set to the smallest number on the set channel list is selected.

- Refer to P. 275 for details on watching One Seg and P. 280 for setting timer for starting or recording a One Seg program.
- Media To may not be available even if the link of program information is highlighted.

## Using Location Information of Sites, ToruCa or Message R/F

Use location information in sites, Internet web pages, Message R/F, mail or ToruCa to check the location on a map, use i- $\alpha$ pli for location information or attach to mail to send.

### Example: For sites

# 1 While viewing a site (👉 steps 1 to 3 on P. 182), select location information and press .

# 2 Select a usage.

To use i- $\alpha$ pli for location information	Select <b>Run i-<math>\alpha</math>pli</b> →  → select i- $\alpha$ pli →
To display a map based on location information	Select <b>Read a map</b> →
To paste Location URL to i-mode mail	Select <b>Paste to mail</b> →  → compose/send i-mode mail (👉 P. 214)
To check location information	Select <b>Run i-<math>\alpha</math>pli/Read a map/Paste to mail</b> →  → <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Press  and the previous screen reappears.</li> </ul>

## Setting i-mode

Set various functions relating to i-mode access.

## Adjusting Flash Movie Sound Effects Volume <Sound Fx Setting>

Default setting **Volume 5**

Adjust volume of Flash movie sound effects.

- Sound effects are not active in Manner mode.
- Some Flash movies do not have sound effects.

# 1 While viewing sites (👉 steps 1 to 3 on P. 182) or Internet web pages (👉 steps 1 and 2 on P. 187), press [Sound fx setting].

- Alternatively, press in stand-by.

# 2 Press (louder) or (softer) to adjust and press .

- To silence sound effects, select **Silent** and press .

## Setting Connection Timeout

<Connection Timeout>

Default setting 60 seconds

When sites or Internet web pages are congested, set the duration for the terminal to automatically stop attempting to send/receive data. Select among **60 seconds**, **90 seconds** and **Unlimited**.

### 1 In stand-by, press **[F7][F1][F1]** and select connection timeout period.

60 seconds	<b>[1]</b>
90 seconds	<b>[2]</b>
Unlimited	<b>[3]</b>

- Disconnection time with i-mode center is not set (Disconnection may occur due to signal status).

#### Note

- When connection times out, **Time out** appears and the previous screen reappears.

## Changing Hosts from i-mode (ISP Connection Transmission)

<i-mode Host Selection>

Settings do not need to be changed to use i-mode.

### ISP connection transmission

When changing FOMA terminal host, connect to various providers (ISP). Subscription to Packet Transmission Service is required to use ISP connection transmission. Packet transmission charges apply for ISP connection transmission.

Subscription is not required for i-mode subscribers.

- Pake-Houdai does not apply to packet transmissions incurred for hosts other than DoCoMo.

### Provider agreements

- Subscription to another provider is required for ISP connection transmission. Contact providers for details regarding service contents (site/Internet access, mail, etc.) and subscription procedures.
- Some services may require a separate fee.
- Phone number and location information may be sent to the provider depending on the site.
- Save up to ten hosts in the FOMA terminal handset (excluding **i-mode (UIM)**).
- i-mode is not available when using hosts other than **i-mode (UIM)**.

## Saving hosts

Save up to ten hosts (excluding **i-mode (UIM)**).

### 1 In stand-by, press **[F7][F1][F2]**.

### 2 Select the number to register to, press **[0]** and **[2]** [Edit].

### 3 Enter terminal security code and press **[0]**.

### 4 Enter host name and press **[0]**.

- **Host** appears when saving a new host (The host number selected in step 2 appears for the).
- Press **[CLR]** for 1+ seconds to erase host name.
- Enter up to 16 single-byte (8 double-byte) characters.

### 5 Enter host number and press **[0]**.

- Enter up to 99 single-byte alphanumeric characters and symbols.

### 6 Enter host address and press **[0]**.

- Enter up to 30 single-byte alphanumeric characters and symbols.

### 7 Enter host address for i-Channel and press **[0]**.

- Enter up to 30 single-byte alphanumeric characters and symbols.

## Changing hosts

Save hosts in advance in order to access.

### 1 In stand-by, press **[F7][F1][F2]**.

### 2 Select the host number, press **[0]** and **[1]** [Set].

- When **i-mode (UIM)** is selected and **[0]** is pressed, **i-mode (UIM) selected** appears and the host is changed.

#### Note

- Settings do not need to be changed to use i-mode.
- Default connection information cannot be changed.

## Related Operations

Reset saved contents <Reset>

In the screen in step 1 of "Changing hosts", select host number **[0]** **[3]** enter terminal security code **[0]**.

#### Note (Related operations)

- When hosts are reset, host is set to **i-mode (UIM)**.

## Setting to Use Terminal Data During Flash Playback <Use Phone Info>

Default setting **Yes**

- In stand-by, press **[M] [7] [3] [6]** and **[1]** **[Yes]**.

## Not Viewing Images <Set Image Display>

Default setting **ON** (display)

Set handset to not show images from screen memo or images from sites or Internet web pages.

- In stand-by, press **[M] [7] [3] [1]** and **[2]** **[OFF]**.

- Alternatively, press **[M] [7] [6]** while a site is shown.

### Note

- When set to **OFF**,  appears in the place of images. Image is not saved even when  is registered in the screen memo ( P. 190).
- When set to **OFF**, Flash movies are not shown.
- Even when set to **OFF**, images in i-mode mail and Message R/F are shown.

## Setting to Receive/Reject PushTalk Transmissions During i-mode Transmissions <i-mode Arrival Act>

Default setting **PushTalk preferred**

- In stand-by, press **[M] [7] [4]** and set priority.

To prioritize PushTalk	<b>[1]</b>
To prioritize i-mode	<b>[2]</b>

## Resetting i-mode Settings

<Reset i-mode>

Reset i-mode settings to default settings. Default settings are as follows.

Setting item		Default setting	
Shared	Connection timeout	60 seconds	
	Host selection	i-mode (UIM)	
Internet	Set image display	ON	
	Font size	Normal	
	Certificates	Valid: Root certificates 1 and 2, Client certificate and CA certificates	
	i-motion setting	Automatic replay	Yes
		i-motion type	Standard type
	Secure setting	DoCoMo CA Host	DoCoMo
	Use phone info		Yes
	Sound fx setting		Volume 5
i-mode arrival act		PushTalk preferred	

- i-Channel settings are also reset ( P. 210).

- In stand-by, press **[M] [7] [5]**, enter terminal security code and press **[\*]**.

- Select **Yes** and press **[\*]**.

## Message R/F

### Message R/F

Subscribe to sites which provide Message Service to automatically receive information (messages). Message Service uses Message R (Request) and Message F (Free).

- Refer to "Receiving Message R/F" on P. 200 for details on receiving Message R/F.
- Message R/F is held at i-mode center while the handset is outside the service area, in Self mode or turned off.
- Enter the four-digit number for i-mode password (☎ P. 144).

#### Message R (Request)

Service to automatically receive message from a site which provides Message Service.

#### Message F (Free)

Message is received with no packet charge.

### Setting Message F (Free)

Select **iMenu** → 料金 & お申込・設定 (Charges & Subscription, Settings) → オプション設定 (Options) → メッセージF設定 (Message F) → 受信する (Receive), enter i-mode password and press **決定** (OK).

### Receive Message R/F

#### Receiving Message R/F

Message R/F is automatically received from the i-mode center when the FOMA terminal is in the service area.

- Save up to 50 messages each in the FOMA terminal (Capacity varies depending on size of message).
- Message R/F is held at i-mode center when one of the following occurs.
 

■ Handset is turned off	■ During Ir exchange
■ While in Self mode	■ While connected to FirstPass center
■ Outside the service area	■ When there is no available space due to protected or unread Message R/F
■ Using Videophone	■ During iC transmission
■ PushTalk in progress	
■ While Omakase Lock is set	

#### Note

- When FOMA terminal received Message R/F is full, check the unread message (☎ P. 201), disable Message R/F protection (☎ P. 203), and delete the unnecessary Message R/F (☎ P. 203). To check messages held at i-mode center, perform Check new message (☎ P. 201).
- If memory is full, oldest read unprotected Message R/F is overwritten automatically. Protect Message R/F to prevent overwriting (☎ P. 203).

#### Note

- Message ring tone does not sound if a message is received while a call is in progress, i-appli is running, the camera is being activated, pattern definitions are being updated or One Seg is played or recorded in full-screen with the normal position or the Cycloid position.

#### Meaning of icons

Icon	Meaning
(green)	Unread Message R/F.
(yellow)	FOMA terminal received Message R/F is full.
	Message R/F is held at center.
	Center is full.
	Unread Message R/F and Message R/F are held at center.
	Unread Message R/F. Center is full.
	FOMA terminal received Message R/F is full. Message R/F is held at center.
	FOMA terminal received Message R/F is full. Center is full.

(green) (green) (yellow) : Request  
 (green) (yellow) : Free

- or may not appear even when Message R/F is held at the i-mode center.
- Message R/F at i-mode center may be overwritten when , or appears.

### Opening New Message R/F

When Message R/F is received, the newest one appears automatically.

Message does not appear when Auto message display is set to **No auto display**.

- Set types of messages for Auto message display or priority of received messages.

#### 1 Message R/F is automatically received.

- (green) flashes when receiving Message R, and (green) flashes when receiving Message F.
- After reception, receive results appear and message ring tone sounds ( (green)/ (green) appears).

To check Message R/F contents immediately	In receive complete screen, select <b>MessageR</b> or <b>MessageF</b> →  → select Message R or Message F →
To stop ring tone	or ● Ring tone stops and receive complete screen disappears. Press  to keep screen but stop ring tone.

## 2 Message R/F appears for approximately 15 seconds and the stand-by display reappears (when set to automatically display).

- To continue viewing the message, press and scroll while viewing Message R/F.

### Automatically Displaying Message R/F <Auto Message Display>

Default setting *Msg R preferred*

Set priority and message types.

## 1 In stand-by, press and select display method.

To prioritize Msg R		When unread Message R and Message F are received simultaneously, Message R appears.
To prioritize Msg F		When unread Message R and Message F are received simultaneously, Message F appears.
MessagesR only		Only unread Message R appears.
MessagesF only		Only unread Message F appears.
No auto display		No messages appear automatically.

### Note

- When Auto display is set, newest unread message appears for approximately 15 seconds in the following situation.
  - Returning to stand-by from receive complete screen
- Message does not automatically appear regardless of Auto message display settings in the following situations.
  - While All lock is set
  - While Omakase Lock is set
  - While Mail Function lock is set

## Check New Messages

### Checking for New Message R/F

Received Message R/F are held at the i-mode center while the handset is outside the service area, in Self mode or turned off ( P. 200). Check and retrieve mail from the i-mode center.

- Set types for Check new message (i-mode mail, Message R/F) ( P. 238).
- When Receive option setting is set to **ON**, i-mode mail and Message R/F are received.
- All types are enabled as default setting.
- Refer to P. 242 for details on checking for SMS.

## 1 In stand-by, press or

.

- Alternatively, check by pressing twice in stand-by.
- Check new message ( P. 238) is performed in accordance with settings from **i-mode mail** → **MessageR** → **MessageF** (Icons (, ) (green), and (green)) appear for each type checked).
- To abort receiving mail, press while receiving.
- Aborted Message R/F are held at i-mode center (, appears).
- Message R/F may be received depending on timing.

## 2 Message R/F ring tone sounds when new messages are received.

- **0** appears when no Message R/F are held at center.
- When i-mode mail and Message R/F are received simultaneously, ring tone set for the last mail or Message R/F received sounds.
- To stop, press . Other keys also stop ring tone ( P. 224).

## 3 In the receive complete screen, select **MessageR** or **MessageF** and press .

- To not view immediately, perform no operations in the receive complete screen for approximately 30 seconds, and the stand-by display reappears.
- Message R/F does not automatically appear when received by checking new messages.

## 4 Select Message R/F to view and press .

### View Message R/F

### Viewing Messages R/F in Message Box

## 1 In stand-by, press and select Message R/F.

To view Message R	→ select Message R →
To view Message F	→ select Message F →

## Messages List/Details Screen Layout

### Messages list layout



#### 1 Unread/Read/Protected message icon

	Unread Message R/F
	Read Message R/F
	Read Message R/F (protected)

#### 2 Message R/F list screen page number/total

#### 3 Melody/Image/ToruCa

	Melody is attached.
	GIF image is attached.
	JPEG image is attached.
	ToruCa is attached.
	Multiple files are attached.

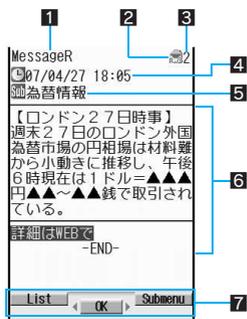
#### 4 Subject

Message R/F subject appears.

#### 5 Received date and time

Time for current day and date for other days.

### Message details screen layout



#### 1 Message type

#### 2 Protected icon

Appears when protected.

	Message R (protected)
	Message F (protected)

#### 3 Message number

#### 4 Received date and time

#### 5 Subject

#### 6 Message

-END- appears at the end of the message.

#### 7 Screen operation

To scroll up/down	Down:  Up:
To scroll one screen at a time	Down:  Up:
To view other messages	Next:  Previous:

- When a melody is attached, and file name for melody appear above message.
- Melody plays automatically if Melody Auto replay is set to **Auto replay**.
- When an image is attached, image, attachment type icon and file name appear above message.

## Related Operations

Add phone numbers and mail addresses from Message R/F to phonebook <Add to phonebook> In the message details screen, press (5).

### Note (Related operations)

- Refer to "Saving Phone Numbers and Mail Addresses in the Phonebook" on P. 186 for subsequent steps.

## Checking/Saving Attachments

<View Attachment>

Check or save images and melodies attached to Message R/F. Attached files are saved in a selected save destination in each category.

1 In messages list ( P. 202), select Message R/F, press and (2) [View attachment].

2 Select attachment to check.

To check	
To save	image  → Yes →  → select folder →
	Melody  → Yes →  → phone/microSD →
	ToruCa  → Yes →  → phone/microSD →

## Checking/Saving Inserted Images

<View Image in Mail>

View or save GIF, JPEG and background images inserted in Message R/F message. Inserted files are saved in a selected save destination in each category.

1 In messages list ( P. 202), select Message R/F, press and (3) [View image in mail].

## 2 Select image to check.

To check	⊙
To save	Ⓜ → Yes → ⊙ → select folder → ⊙

### Note

- For attached images, check and save with [View attachment](#).

## Managing Message R/F

Protect and delete Message R/F to prevent overwriting.

### Protecting Message R/F <Protect>

Message R/F can be protected, or protection can be canceled. Protected messages cannot be overwritten.

- When there is no available memory, same types of read messages are deleted starting with the oldest.
- Protect up to 25 of each type of message (The number of protected messages depends on size).
- Unread Message R/F cannot be protected.

## 1 In messages list (☞ P. 202) or message details screen (☞ P. 202), select Message R/F and press Ⓜ [Protect].

## 2 Select ON or OFF.

To protect	①
To disable	②

### Deleting Message R/F <Delete>

## 1 In messages list (☞ P. 202), select Message R/F and press Ⓜ [Delete].

- Press Ⓜ [4], select Yes and press ⊙ to delete from message details screen.

## 2 Select deletion method.

To delete one	① → Yes → ⊙
To delete multiple ones collectively	② → select Message R/F ⊙ (repeatable) → Ⓜ → Yes → ⊙ ● Press Ⓜ [SelAll]/Ⓜ [ClrAll] to select or clear all.
To delete all	③ → enter terminal security code → ⊙ → Yes → ⊙ ● Unread or protected Message R/F is not deleted.

## Setting SSL Certificates

### Enabling/Disabling CA Certificates

<Certificates>

Default setting *All enabled*

The following certificates are required to view SSL pages.

- CA certificate .....Certificate issued by a certification company that is registered in the FOMA terminal by default.
- DoCoMo certificate ..... Certificate registered in FOMA card (green/white) required to connect to FirstPass center or FirstPass compatible sites.
- Client certificate .....Certificate downloaded from FirstPass center by selecting the FirstPass center menu in the FOMA terminal (☞ P. 204). The certificate is registered in FOMA card (green/white).

Detailed information of each certificate can be viewed. Disable CA certificate that develops security problems.

- SSL pages using a disabled CA certificate cannot be viewed.

## 1 In stand-by, press Ⓜ [7] [3] [3], select a certificate and press Ⓜ [Enable/Disable].

- appears for enabled certificates.  appears for disabled ones.
- Enabled/Disabled switch.
- To show certificate details, select a certificate and press ⊙ [Show].

### Setting FirstPass <Cert Operation>

Client certificates are required to access FirstPass compatible sites and Internet web pages. Client certificate is a proof of FOMA contract. Request and download from FirstPass center. Register Client certificates in FOMA card (green/white) to access certificate compatible sites and Internet web pages.

- FOMA card (blue) is not available.
- The SSL client authentication from i-mode browser is not available with FOMA Data Plan (Available with ISP connection transmission regardless of payment plan).
- Set the correct date and time to access FirstPass center (☞ P. 45).
- Some screens and operations for FirstPass center may change.

### Note

#### Using FirstPass

- FirstPass is DoCoMo's electronic authentication service. Certificates are exchanged between sites and FOMA terminal. Certificates are then validated for client authentication.

## Note

- After reading and agreeing with “FirstPass ご利用規則” (Usage Rules), request Client certificate.
- PIN2 code is required to use Client certificate (☞ P. 146).  
After entering PIN2 code, all actions are presumed to be performed by the user. Keep FOMA card and PIN2 code private.
- If FOMA card is lost or stolen, contact “General Inquiries” on the back of this manual and cancel Client certificate.
- DoCoMo shall not be liable for sites or information provided by FirstPass compatible sites. All problems must be resolved between user and site.
- Neither DoCoMo nor certification company guarantee security when using FirstPass or SSL. Use at own discretion.
- Packet transmission charges incurred from accessing a FirstPass compatible site with i-mode are included with Pake-Houdai.

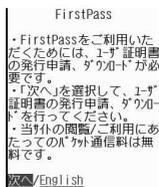
### Client authentication

- Server and client authentication allow for safer data transfer. Certificates are exchanged between sites and FOMA terminal. Certificates are then authenticated. Client authentication allows for safer data transmission.

## ■ Accessing FirstPass center

Perform Client certificate operations from FirstPass center. Some screens and operations for FirstPass center may change.

### 1 In stand-by, press **7 3 5 1**.



### 2 Select **English** and press **0**.



## Note

- Read **The usage regulation (Japanese only)** in the screen of step 2 carefully before using FirstPass.
- Packet charges are not incurred when connecting to FirstPass center.

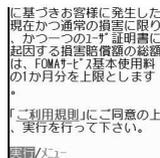
## Note

- The following functions are not available when accessing FirstPass center.
  - Sending/Receiving i-mode mail (SMS can be received/replied)
  - Check new message (Check new SMS)
  - Receiving Message R/F
  - Downloading i-motion
  - Web To
  - PushTalk

## ■ Applying for Client certificate and downloading

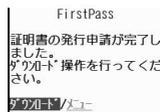
Apply for Client certificate before downloading.

### 1 Access FirstPass center (☞ “Accessing FirstPass center” on P. 204), select **Request your certificate** and press **0**.



### 2 Select **Continue** and press **0**.

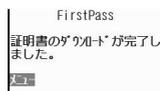
### 3 Enter PIN2 code and press **0**.



### 4 Select **Download** and press **0**.

### 5 Select **Continue** and press **0**.

- To end, press **0**, select **Yes** and press **0**.



## Note

- Always apply for Client certificate when renewing or attempting to get new certificate. Certificate cannot be downloaded without application.

## ■ Accessing sites with Client certificate

Access FirstPass compatible sites and Internet web pages using Client certificate.

- Refer to P. 219 for details on viewing Client certificates.

# 1 Access site (☞ steps 1 to 3 on P. 182) or Internet web page (☞ steps 1 and 2 on P. 187) and view FirstPass compatible site.

- To view server certificate while viewing site, press **Ⓜ** **(7)** **(2)**.

# 2 Select Yes, press **Ⓞ**, enter PIN2 code and press **Ⓞ**.

## Note

- When access to a FirstPass compatible site or Internet web page is attempted without Client certificate, **You have no certificate. Connect?** appears. Select **No** to end SSL transmission. Try again after downloading certificate from FirstPass center.
- When Client certificate expires, **Your certificate has expired. Connect?** appears. Select **No** and the previous screen reappears. Try again after renewing certificate from FirstPass center.

## Canceling Client certificates

Invalidate downloaded Client certificates.

# 1 Access FirstPass center (☞ “Accessing FirstPass center” on P. 204), select **Other settings**, press **Ⓞ**, select **Revoke your certificate** and press **Ⓞ**.

# 2 Select Yes, press **Ⓞ**, enter PIN2 code and press **Ⓞ**.

# 3 Select **Continue**, press **Ⓞ**, select **Continue** and press **Ⓞ**.

# 4 Select **Continue** and press **Ⓞ**.

- **The certificate revocation is completed.** appears.
- To end, press **Ⓜ**, select **Yes** and press **Ⓞ**.

## Note

- FirstPass compatible sites cannot be viewed after cancellation.
- To reactivate a Client certificate, apply and download again.

## Changing Certificate Issuer

<DoCoMo CA Host>

Default setting **DoCoMo**

Set host when downloading Client certificate.

Setting does not normally need to be changed.

# 1 In stand-by, press **Ⓜ** **(7)** **(3)** **(5)** **(2)**.



# 2 Press **(2)** [**Host**].

- To set DoCoMo as host: Press **(1)**.

# 3 Press **(2)** [**Edit**], enter terminal security code and press **Ⓞ**.

- To reset, press **(3)**, enter terminal security code and press **Ⓞ**. Default settings are restored.

# 4 Enter host information and press **Ⓞ**.

- Enter up to 99 single-byte alphanumeric characters and symbols.

# 5 Enter host address and press **Ⓞ**.

- Enter up to 100 single-byte alphanumeric characters and symbols.

## i-motion

### i-motion

i-motion refers to image, voice and music data. Download i-motion to FOMA terminal from i-motion sites and Internet web pages. Play downloaded i-motion immediately, or save them to FOMA terminal. Search for i-motion sites in メニュー / 検索 (Menu/Search) of iMenu.

- i-motion types include Standard type and Streaming type.
  - Standard type (up to 500 KB)  
These can be saved to FOMA terminal. There are two types.
    - Those played after downloading
    - Those played while downloadingSome Standard type i-motion cannot be saved.
  - Streaming type (up to 2 MB)  
Streaming refers to simultaneous playback while downloading data. When playback is complete, the played data is discarded, and cannot be played again or saved to the FOMA terminal. Even if Automatic replay (☞ P. 207) is set to **No**, Streaming type i-motion are automatically played.
- The type of i-motion downloaded differs depending on site or Internet web page.
- Save up to 100 i-motion (Capacity varies depending on size of i-motion).
- i-motion downloaded from sites, which has restrictions for outputting from the FOMA terminal, can be moved to a microSD Memory Card. However, some i-motions cannot be moved depending on the download source site.

## Ring tone and Receive display combinations

When i-motion is set as the ring tone and Receive display, the combinations and actions are as follows.

- Voice only i-motion (melodies with no video) are not available for Receive display.
- i-motion without voice are not available for ring tone.

Type of ring tone	Type of Receive display	Type of ring tone and Receive display when received
Melody	JPEG image, GIF image, i-motion without voice, Flash movie	Ring tone: Melody Receive display: Set Receive display*
i-motion with image and voice	i-motion with image and voice	Ring tone: i-motion with image and voice Receive display: i-motion with image and voice
Voice only i-motion (melodies with no video)	JPEG image, GIF image	Ring tone: Voice only i-motion (melodies with no video) Receive display: Set Receive display
No ring tone	JPEG image, GIF image, i-motion without voice, Flash movie	Ring tone: Silent Receive display: Set Receive display*

\* Flash movie sound effects do not play.

### Note

- If i-motion with image and voice is set as the ring tone, the i-motion is automatically set as the Receive display. If a voice only i-motion (melodies with no video) is set, the Receive display is not changed and the set image appears.
- If i-motion with image and voice is set as the Receive display, the i-motion is automatically set as the ring tone. If an image only i-motion is set, the ring tone sounds in the following priority.
- Priority for ring tone is phonebook ring tone → group ring tone → regular ring tone.
- The priority for Receive display is phonebook Picture call → group Picture call → Call/Receive display. If none are set, the default image appears.
- When **Videophone ring tone**, **Payphone ring tone**, User unset, Unknown tone are set to **Phone ring tone**, the actions are as follows.
  - Receive display returns to the default setting if a melody or a voice only i-motion (melodies with no video) is set for ring tone.
  - Ring tone is set to 着信音1 if JPEG image, GIF image, animated GIF, Flash movie or an image only i-motion is set for Receive display.
  - Receive display follows Incoming voice calls screen.
- Some i-motion are not available.

## Download i-motion

### Downloading i-motion from Sites

#### Playing i-motion Downloaded from Sites

Play back i-motion downloaded from sites and Internet web pages.

- i-motion cannot be downloaded while One Seg is running.

#### 1 While viewing sites (☞ steps 1 to 3 on P. 182) or Internet web pages (☞ steps 1 and 2 on P. 187), select i-motion and press Ⓞ.

Streaming type		Select <b>Yes</b> → Ⓞ
Standard type	Automatic replay [Yes]	● i-motion is played back while downloading. After i-motion download is complete, playback begins.
	Automatic replay [No]	Screens such as the play/save selection screen appear. Press <b>1</b> to play, <b>2</b> to save, and <b>3</b> to show properties. ● When i-motion is not saved and <b>4</b> [Back] is pressed, <b>Save this i-motion?</b> appears. Select <b>Yes</b> and press Ⓞ to save.

- To cancel download, press **CLR** or Ⓞ while downloading.
- To stop playback, press **END**.
- To pause, press Ⓞ [Pause] during playback.

### Note

- Some i-motion cannot be played while downloading.
- While set to **Standard type**, if Streaming type i-motion download is attempted, **Invalid content. Change i-motion type for replay. Change setting?** appears. Select **Yes** to change i-motion type and enable download.
- For i-motion that plays during download, when unable to play due to weak signal, play after downloading is completed.
- Weak signals may stop playback or distort the image during i-motion download.
- Date and time information on FOMA terminal may be reset after the battery pack has been removed for a long time. In such cases, playback for i-motion with an expiration date or replay period is not available.
- Some i-motion may not play properly after being downloaded.
- i-motion can be set as Chaku-motion (☞ P. 116) or as the stand-by display (☞ P. 125). Some i-motion are not available.

## i-motion with a replay period

When playback is attempted for downloaded i-motion with a replay period, the screen on the right appears.

- The i-motion cannot be played before and after the replay period.
- When download is attempted for i-motion with an expired replay period, **Unable to obtain data due to replay restriction data error** appears.



## i-motion with an expiration date

When playback is attempted for downloaded i-motion with an expiration date, the screen on the right appears.

- When download is attempted for i-motion after the expiration date, **Unable to obtain data due to replay restriction data error** appears.



## i-motion with a set number of replays

When playback is attempted for downloaded i-motion with a specified number of replays, the screen on the right appears.

- When download is attempted for i-motion with a replay number of 0, **This data cannot be saved. Download?** appears. To download, select **Yes** and press **⏏**.



## Saving i-motion

Downloaded i-motion can be saved.

- i-motion is saved to the **i-mode** folder in i-motion of Data box. i-motion which can be saved in the microSD Memory Card, can be saved in the **i-motion** folder included in the **Movable contents** folder (Contents transfer compatible).
- i-motion saved can be played using i-motion player.
- Some downloaded i-motion cannot be saved to the FOMA terminal.

**1** While downloaded i-motion is played back or stopped (paused), press **Ⓜ** **1** [**Save**].

**2** Select **phone** or **microSD** and press **⏏**.

## When a Ticker Contains a Link

When a link is present in the ticker during i-motion playback, Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To or Web To may be available. Provided phone numbers and mail addresses can be saved to Phonebook.

**1** After playing a downloaded i-motion, the dial screen (for Phone To (AV Phone To)), compose message screen (for Mail To), or site access screen (for Web To) appears.

**2** Select operation and press **⏏**.

- Refer to P. 195 to P. 197 for subsequent steps.
- Press **CLR** and the previous screen reappears.

## Viewing i-motion File Properties

View file properties for i-motion.

**1** While downloaded i-motion is played back or stopped (paused), press **Ⓜ** **3** [**File property**].

- When playing from i-motion of Data box, press **Ⓜ** **4**.
- For Streaming type i-motion, press **Ⓜ** **2** while downloaded or paused.
- Press **⏏** or **CLR** to end viewing.

## Automatic Replay

### Setting Whether to Automatically Replay i-motion

Default setting **Yes**

Set whether to automatically replay i-motion when downloading.

**1** In stand-by, press **Ⓜ** **7** **3** **4** **1** and **1** [**Yes**].

#### Note

- Streaming type i-motion are always automatically replayed, regardless of Automatic replay settings.
- Some i-motion are not automatically replayed, even when Automatic replay is set to **Yes**.
- When Automatic replay is set to **No**, selection screens for operations such as playback and saving appear after download.

## i-motion Type

### Setting i-motion Type to Download

Default setting **Standard type**

Set whether to download only Standard type i-motion or to download both Standard type and Streaming type i-motion.

- In stand-by, press **CH** (7) (3) (4) (2) and select i-motion type.

To download Standard type only	(1)
To download Streaming type and Standard type	(2)

#### Note

- To download Streaming type i-motion, set i-motion type to **Standard/Streaming**.
- While set to **Standard type**, if Streaming type i-motion download is attempted, **Invalid content. Change i-motion type for replay. Change setting?** appears. Select **Yes** to change i-motion type and enable download.

## i-Channel

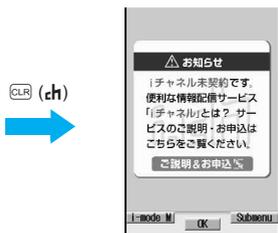
### i-Channel

i-Channel is a service provided by DoCoMo or IP (Information Provider) that sends news, weather and other information graphically to i-Channel supported terminals.

Receive such information periodically and show the latest information in stand-by using a ticker or press the i-Channel supported key to show a list of channels (To show a list of channels: **CH** P. 209). Select a channel from the list to retrieve detailed information.

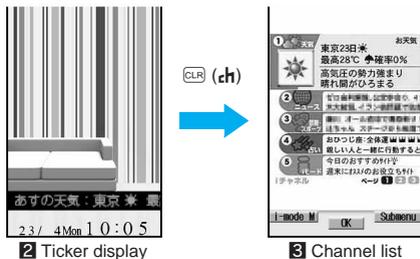
- Refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]" for precautions and details on using i-Channel. i-Channel is only available in Japanese.

#### Before subscription



1 Before subscription

## After subscription



2 Ticker display

3 Channel list

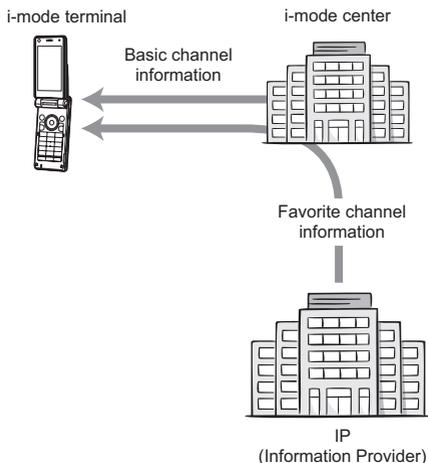


4 Detailed information screen

- Screen when not subscribed to i-Channel.
- After subscription, a ticker automatically appears in stand-by when information is received or channel list is opened.
- Press **ch** to show the channel list. View information shown in the ticker for each channel in a list.
- Select a channel to view detailed information. The screens shown are only examples. Actual screens may differ.

i-Channel has a “ベーシックチャンネル (Basic channel)” and “おこのみチャンネル (Favorite channel)”. “Basic channel” is a pre-registered channel provided by DoCoMo and is available immediately. Packet transmission charges for automatically updating information provided by “Basic channel” are included in the i-Channel usage fee. “Favorite channel” is a channel provided by non-DoCoMo IP (Information Providers) and can be customized. Packet transmission charges for automatically updating information provided by “Favorite channel” are not included in the i-Channel usage fee. Both of the “Basic channel” and “Favorite channel” are available for the stand-by ticker.

- Information fees are required for some “Favorite channel”.
- Subscription is required for some IPs (Information Providers) when using “Favorite channel”.
- In addition to the i-Channel service charge, packet transmission charges are incurred for “Basic channel” and “Favorite channel” when viewing detailed information from the channel list.



i-Channel is a paid service that requires subscription. i-mode subscription is also required.

- Refer to P. 209 for operation procedures.

### Trial service

"Basic channel" is available for a trial period to i-mode subscribers who use i-Channel supported handsets and have never subscribed to i-Channel for the line of the i-Channel supported handset. During the trial period, the service usage charge is free. However, packet transmission charges for detailed information viewed from the channel list are charged to the subscriber.

- Refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]" for precautions and details on the trial service.

Generally, the trial service begins after inserting the FOMA card and beginning use of the i-Channel supported handset. If the service does not begin automatically after some time, press the i-Channel supported key.

The trial service is available once per subscribed line.

The trial service ends automatically. Refer to the "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]" for procedures on ending the trial service early.

## Showing i-Channel

Subscribe to i-Channel, receive i-Channel information and automatically show them in the stand-by ticker. Connect to the site from the channel list to retrieve detailed information.

### 1 In stand-by, press (ch).

- The channel list appears.
- When i-αppli is set as stand-by, press (ch) for 1+ seconds.
- Alternatively, press in stand-by to show the channel list.
- When i-Channel information is received for the first time, pressing does not stop receiving until all information is received.

### 2 Select a channel and press .

#### Note

#### Receiving the latest information

- Information may not be received when the handset is turned off or signal is weak, such as when outside the service area. Ticker appears in stand-by if information is received when the channel list is shown.
- Ring tone/Vibrator do not activate even when information is received. However, while receiving data, mail send/received LED flashes.
- Depending on settings, information may be received when the channel list is shown.
- Channel list is not available during **All lock**. Terminal security code is required while **Function lock** is applied to i-mode/i-Channel.

#### Changing the i-Channel host

- Set i-Channel host in i-mode **host selection**. Setting does not normally need to be changed.
- i-Channel ticker does not appear when i-Channel host is changed. However, when the channel list is viewed, the latest information is received and i-Channel ticker appears.
- Information may not be automatically updated when the host is changed. View the channel list to receive the latest information.

#### Using in the Cycloid position

- When showing the channel list is attempted in the Cycloid position, **Rotate the display, and use** appears. Return to the normal position to show the channel list.

## Related Operations

Adjust sound effects volume <Sound fx setting>  
In the channel list, press (louder)  
or (softer) .

## Related Operations

### Note (Related operations)

- The i-Channel volume setting is common with the Sound fx setting for i-mode.

## i-Channel Ticker

### Setting i-Channel

#### Showing on the main display

**Default setting** **ON**, Ticker font size: **Large(default)**, Ticker color: **Pattern1** (Font color: green, Background color: black), Ticker speed: **Normal**

Set whether to show i-Channel ticker on the main display.

**1** In stand-by, press **[M] [8] [2] [1]** and **[1] [ON]**.

- To not show, press **[2]** [OFF].

**2** Select **Ticker font size**, press **[●]** and select the font size.

Small	<b>[1]</b>
Medium	<b>[2]</b>
Large (default)	<b>[3]</b>

- Sample of the ticker appears at the lower part of the display.

**3** Select **Ticker color**, press **[●]**, select a ticker color and press **[●]**.

- Select from **Pattern1** to **Pattern9**.

**4** Select **Ticker speed**, press **[●]** and select the speed.

Slow	<b>[1]</b>
Normal	<b>[2]</b>
Fast	<b>[3]</b>

**5** Press **[M]** [Complete].

#### Showing on the sub display

**Default setting** **OFF**

Set whether to show i-Channel ticker in the sub display.

- When the i-Channel ticker setting is set to **ON**, press **[A]** with the FOMA terminal closed to show i-Channel ticker with automatically scrolling from the beginning.

**1** In stand-by, press **[M] [8] [2] [2]** and **[1] [ON]**.

- To not show, press **[2]** [OFF].

## Note

- When i-Channel ticker is set to **OFF**, i-Channel ticker does not appear.
- Set ticker ON/OFF and the speed of main display in i-Channel ticker.
- When i-Channel or i-mode subscription is canceled, i-Channel ticker does not appear.
- If i-mode service subscription is canceled before canceling i-Channel service subscription, i-Channel ticker remains **ON**.
- i-Channel ticker is not available if i-Channel or i-mode is not subscribed.
- i-Channel ticker is not available while **All lock** or **Public mode (Drive mode)** is set or **Function lock** is applied to i-mode/i-Channel.
- When **Calendar display** and i-Channel ticker of main display are both set, press **[M]** in stand-by to switch between Calendar display and i-Channel ticker.

## Reset i-Channel

### Resetting i-Channel Settings

**1** In Stand-by press **[M] [8] [3]**, enter terminal security code and press **[●]**.

**2** Select **Yes** and press **[●]**.

# Mail

- FOMA Terminal Mail Functions ..... 212
- i-mode Mail. .... <i-mode Mail>212
- Displaying Mail Menu ..... <Mail Menu>214
- **Creating i-mode Mail/Deco-mail**
- Composing and Sending i-mode Mail .....<Compose/Send i-mode Mail>214
- Creating and Sending Deco-mail .....<Deco-mail>216
- Sending Using a Template..... 219
- Attaching a File.....<Attachments>220
- Saving i-mode Mail and Sending Later ..... <Save i-mode Mail>222
- **Receiving and Using i-mode Mail**
- Receiving i-mode Mail ..... <Auto Receive>222
- Selecting and Receiving i-mode Mail ..... <Receive Option>224
- Checking for i-mode Mail ..... <Check New Message>225
- Replying to i-mode Mail ..... <Reply to i-mode Mail>225
- Forwarding to Another Address ..... <Forward i-mode Mail>226
- Saving Mail Addresses and Phone Numbers to Phonebook ..... 226
- Acquiring Attached Files for Manual Reception ..... 227
- Checking/Saving/Deleting Attached File ..... <View Attachment>227
- Viewing and Saving Deco-mail Images .....<View Image in Mail>228
- Saving Deco-mail as Templates.....<Save Template>228
- **Using the Mailbox**
- Displaying Messages in Inbox and Outbox ..... <Inbox/Outbox/Unsent Messages>228
- **Mail History**
- Using Mail History ..... <Received/Sent Messages History>235
- **Mail Settings**
- Setting FOMA Terminal Mail Functions ..... <Mail Setting>236
- **Using SMS (Short Messages)**
- Composing and Sending SMS (Short Messages) ..... <Compose/Send SMS>240
- Receiving SMS (Short Messages) ..... <Receive SMS>241
- SMS (Short Messages) Settings ..... <SMS Settings>243
- Saving SMS (Short Messages) to FOMA Card ..... 243
- Deleting SMS (Short Messages) ..... <Delete SMS>244
- Avoiding Unsolicited SMS (Short Messages)..... <Scan Message>244

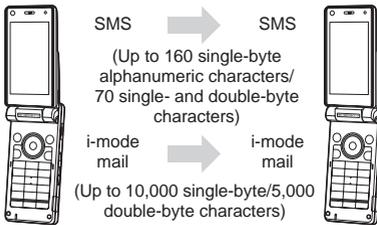
## FOMA Terminal Mail Functions

- The FOMA terminal can send and receive i-mode mail and SMS (Short messages). An i-mode subscription is required to use i-mode mail. Refer to P. 214 and P. 222 for details on sending/receiving i-mode mail.
- SMS messaging (text messaging) between FOMA terminals is available without i-mode subscription. Refer to P. 240 and P. 241 for details on sending/receiving SMS.

### Sending/Receiving Mail

The following are the three possible combinations for sending/receiving mail.

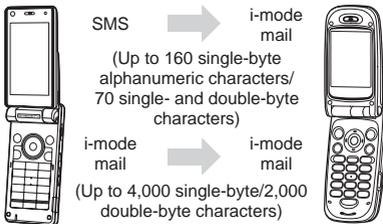
- FOMA terminal → FOMA terminal



FOMA terminal

FOMA terminal

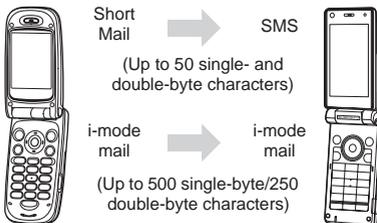
- FOMA terminal → mova service i-mode terminal  
SMS sent by a FOMA terminal is received by a mova service i-mode terminal as i-mode mail. SMS cannot be sent to a mova terminal when Report request (☎ P. 243) is set to **Request**.



FOMA terminal

mova service  
i-mode terminal

- mova service i-mode terminal → FOMA terminal  
Short Mail\* sent by a mova service i-mode terminal is received by a FOMA terminal as SMS.



mova service  
i-mode terminal

FOMA terminal

\* Short Mail is a text messaging service for DoCoMo mobile phones subscribing the mova service.

### Note

Note information in i-mode mail and SMS separately or transfer/store them on a PC using microSD Memory Cards (☎ P. 318) or DoCoMo keitai datalink (☎ P. 406).

### i-mode Mail

#### i-mode Mail

Subscribe to i-mode service to exchange mail with other i-mode terminals (including mova) and e-mail with PCs via the Internet.

Attach up to ten files (JPEG, ToruCa, PDF, etc.) in total of 2 MB to a message. Deco-mail is available for i-mode mail. Create and send expressive mail by adding text color, changing character size and background color, or inserting Deco-mail pictographs, which are preinstalled, in message text. The mail address upon subscription is as follows.

#### New i-mode subscription

The portion before @ is a random alphanumeric combination. Confirm after subscribing to i-mode.

Example: abc1234-789xyz@docomo.ne.jp

<Checking Mail Address>

iMenu ➤ English iMenu ➤ Options ➤ Mail Settings  
➤ Confirm Mail Address

- Only the portion before @ is necessary to exchange mail between i-mode terminals (including mova).
- Include **@docomo.ne.jp** for e-mail from PCs and other devices.
- Sending mail ☎ P. 214
- Receiving mail ☎ P. 222
- Refer to the latest "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]" for details on i-mode service contents.

### Receive option

Check subject and choose to receive or delete mail held at the i-mode center before receiving.

☎ P. 224

### Mail Settings

Perform the following to set.

<Setting details>

iMenu ➤ English iMenu ➤ Options ➤ Mail Settings  
➤ Various settings

- Refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]" for details.

## ■ Changing the mail address [Mail Address (Change Mail Address)]

Customize mail address by changing the portion before @, such as **docomo.** \_ab1234yz@**docomo.ne.jp**.

## ■ Checking mail address [Mail Address (Confirm Mail Address)]

Check the current mail address being used.

## ■ Registering a secret code [Mail Address (Other Settings)] ➔ Register a Secret Code]

Add a four-digit Secret code in addition to mail address when using phone number as address. Avoid unwanted mail by rejecting those sent without Secret code.

## ■ Resetting mail address [Mail Address (Other Settings)] ➔ Reset Mail Address]

Mail address can be reset to  
**phone number@docomo.ne.jp**.

## ■ Spam mail prevention

Restrict incoming mail by using one of the following Receive/Reject mail settings.

### Reject/Receive Mail Settings [Receiving Mail (Spam Mail Prevention)] ➔ Reject/Receive Mail Settings]

- Receive mail from selected companies (DoCoMo, au, SoftBank, Tu-Ka, and WILLCOM).
- Also, receive mail from other selected domains or addresses. Moreover, reject mail that is sent from the internet that poses as mobile phone/PHS domains.

### SMS Rejection Settings [Receiving Mail (Spam Mail Prevention)] ➔ SMS Rejection Settings]

- Restrict incoming SMS, choose from one of the following four: Set to Reject All SMS, Reject Anonymous SMS, Reject International SMS, or Reject Anonymous and International SMS. Also, the current settings can be checked.

### Reject Mass i-mode Mail Senders [Receiving Mail (Other Settings)] ➔ Reject Mass i-mode Mail Senders]

- To reject the 200th mail or later from i-mode terminal (including mova) that send more than 200 i-mode mail per day.

The default setting is **Reject**. Settings do not have to be changed to reject mail from mass senders.

### Reject 未承諾広告 (Unsolicited Ad) Mail [Receiving Mail (Other Settings)] ➔ Reject Unsolicited Ad Mail]

- Reject mail with “未承諾広告 (unsolicited ad)” at beginning of subject that is sent for advertisement purposes without the consent of the receiving party. The default setting is **Reject**. Settings do not have to be changed to reject unsolicited ad mail (Sender is required by law to add “未承諾広告 (unsolicited ad)” (six double-byte characters) at beginning of subject).

## ■ Limiting mail size [Receiving Mail (Limit Mail Size)]

Limit i-mode mail by size set in advance.

## ■ Checking mail settings [Receiving Mail (Confirm Settings)]

Check current mail receive/reject settings.

## ■ Suspending mail functions [Suspend Mail]

Suspend mail functions at the i-mode center when not in use.

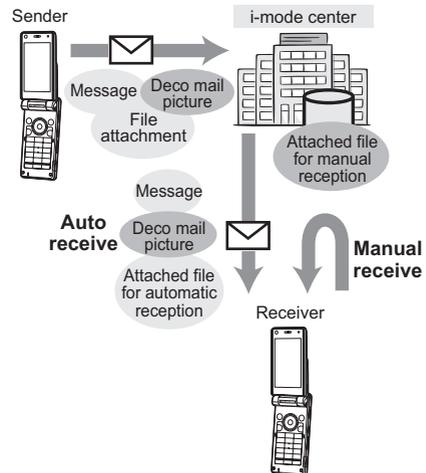
## When Mail Cannot Be Received

Mail received at i-mode center is immediately sent to i-mode terminal. However, mail is held at the i-mode center while the handset is turned off or outside the service area. Mail held at the i-mode center is re-sent up to three times. Use Receive option setting to select and receive i-mode mail at i-mode center.

## Other Features

### ■ File transmission

Any file formats are available for attaching to i-mode mail (2 MB compatible). Attach up to ten files to mail. Total size of the attached files is 2 MB. Any files that are attached to i-mode mail (2 MB compatible) can be received. Files are received automatically up to 100 KB (attached files for automatic reception). After 100 KB, select files to receive (attached files for manual reception). Attached files up to 100 KB, or of any size, can also be received by selection if Receive attached file is set at the terminal. When i-mode mail is received with other models, file reception follows the supported size and formats within the mail receiving capacity of the terminal.



## Deco-mail

Create original i-mode mail by changing character size and background color or paste images in message text. Send and receive fun, decorated mail. Also, create and send expressive mail by inserting Deco-mail pictographs, which are preinstalled, in message text (Some decorations added using PCs are not supported on i-mode terminals and may not appear correctly). When Deco-mail is sent to terminals unsupported or terminals supported but only up to 10,000 bytes, mail with a URL will be received. In this case, the recipient can view the Deco-mail by clicking on the URL.

- To edit P. 216
- To send P. 216
- Compatible models: Available for Deco-mail supported handsets. Refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]" for details.

## Mail Menu

### Displaying Mail Menu

Compose and view received and sent i-mode mail from Mail menu.

- In stand-by, press .



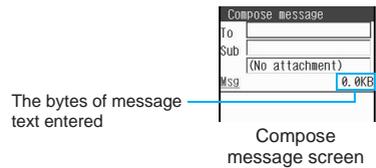
Menu	Function	Page
Inbox	View, reply to, and forward received mail.	P. 222 P. 228
Outbox	View and resend sent mail.	P. 222 P. 228
Unsent messages	Edit or send unsent mail.	P. 222 P. 228
Compose message	Compose and send or save mail.	P. 214
Compose SMS	Compose and send or save SMS.	P. 240 P. 241
Check	Check i-mode center for new mail and Message R/F. Or, check SMS center for stored SMS.	P. 225 P. 242
Template	Edit and view Deco-mail templates.	P. 219
Receive option	Select mail to receive from i-mode center.	P. 224
Mail setting	Perform various i-mode mail and SMS related settings.	P. 236

## Compose/Send i-mode Mail

### Composing and Sending i-mode Mail

- Avoid entering pictographs and single-byte katakana in subject and message when sending to mobile phones not supporting i-mode. Characters may not appear properly on receiving end.
- When i-mode mail including pictographs is sent to a mobile phone of other mobile phone companies (au/SoftBank/Tu-Ka), pictographs are automatically converted and similar ones appear on the receiver side. May not appear correctly depending on the receiver's mobile phone model and function. When the receiver's mobile phone does not support sent pictographs, they are converted to characters or "=".
- Mail can be sent using **To**, **Cc**, and **Bcc**. The **To** field must be filled in.
- Change the size of the font in Font size ( P. 236).

- In stand-by, press .



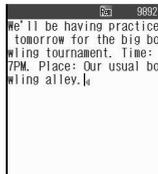
- Select **To**, press and select input method.

To select from phonebook	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>→ select recipient →  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● To select another address, select recipient, press , select mail address and press .</li> <li>● If a mail address icon (, ) does not appear, a mail address is not saved. With FOMA card phonebook,  will be displayed even if the mail address is not registered.</li> </ul> </li> </ol>
To input directly	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>→ enter address →  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Enter up to 50 single-byte alphabet, numbers and some symbols.</li> <li>● <b>@docomo.ne.jp</b> is not necessary when sending to i-mode terminals.</li> <li>● Symbols ( P. 412) and Internet-related phrases ( P. 412) are available.</li> </ul> </li> </ol>
To select from Sent messages history	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>→ select recipient →  →  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Select when there are i-mode mail sent messages.</li> </ul> </li> </ol>
To select from Received messages history	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>→ select recipient →  →  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Select when there are i-mode mail received messages.</li> </ul> </li> </ol>
To select from mail members	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>→ select mail member →  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Save mail members in advance ( P. 238).</li> </ul> </li> </ol>

To send to multiple ones (P. 216)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Broadcast field is added when an address is entered in <b>To</b>.</li> <li>● Select Broadcast field → ● → select sending type → ● → select input method → ●.</li> <li>● All mail members are always set to <b>To</b>.</li> <li>● Add up to four addresses.</li> </ul>
To change address	<p>Select address → ● → select input method → ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● When <b>Search phonebook</b>, <b>Sent messages</b>, or <b>Rcvd messages</b> is selected, <b>Overwrite address?</b> appears. Select <b>Yes</b> and press ● to select mail address.</li> <li>● When <b>Mail members</b> is selected, <b>Overwrite all address?</b> appears. Select <b>Yes</b> and press ● to select mail members.</li> <li>● When <b>Direct input</b> is selected, the address entry screen appears.</li> </ul>
To delete address	Select address → ● [5] [Delete address] → <b>Yes</b> → ●

### 3 Select *Sub* or *Msg*, press ●, enter text and press ●.

- In mail message entry screen, confirm a character in character entry area in middle of display, press ● and move to location to insert.
- Size becomes 10,000 single-byte (5,000 double-byte) characters or more and remaining bytes become negative under the conditions below. Edit to 10,000 bytes or less (remaining bytes is 0 or more).
  - When pasted characters and mail message total size is 10,001 bytes or more
  - When i-mode mail is decorated after entering message
- Line breaks (↵) are counted as one double-byte character. Single- and double-byte spaces (blanks) are counted as single- and double-byte characters, respectively (Line breaks (↵) are not available for Subject).
- Press ● in pictograph mode (P. 412) to switch from Pictograph 1 → Pictograph 2 → PictographD (Deco-mail pict) → Pictograph 1... Switch to PictographD (Deco-mail pict) to enter Deco-mail pictographs. The total number of Deco-mail pictographs and inserted images that can be entered is up to 20. Note that their total size cannot exceed 90 KB. Enter Deco-mail pictographs to create Deco-mail.



Message entry screen

- Press ↵ at end of sentence in message entry screen to enter line break (↵). Press CLR to delete ↵. Press CLR without entering message and the compose message screen reappears.

To use phrases	In message entry screen, press ● (7) → select type of phrase → ● → select phrase → ● → ● ● Refer to P. 433 for details on phrases.
To add signature	In compose message screen, press ● (8) or press ● (2) in message entry screen ● Save signature in advance (P. 237). ● Signature is automatically added when Auto signature is set to <b>ON</b> . ● Signature is included in message size. If message and signature exceed the size limit, remaining bytes are shown as negative. Edit so the number becomes 0 or greater.
To compose Deco-mail (P. 216)	In message entry screen, press ● (1) [Decorate mail]

### 4 Press ● [Send].

- When sending is complete, **Transmission completed** appears and the Mail menu reappears.
- While sending, press ● [Cancel] to cancel. Alternatively, press ● or CLR to cancel. However, i-mode mail may be sent depending on timing. Canceled i-mode mail is saved as unsent mail.



#### Note

- When **To** or **Broadcast** field is already entered, selecting an address from **mail member** overwrites the entered address.
- When setting mail members as recipients, the first address is entered in the first **To**. Subsequent addresses are entered in subsequent **To** fields (Can be changed to **Cc** or **Bcc**).
- When an address entered in the first **To** is deleted, the address entered in the second **To** is moved to the first **To**.
- Depending on the signal status, messages may not be sent. i-mode mail that could not be sent is saved as unsent mail.
- Depending on signal status, **Transmission failed** may appear even if message is sent.
- Text for recipient may not appear correctly depending on signal status.

## Note

- Save up to 500 sent mail and SMS combined. When new i-mode mail is sent when 500 sent mail are saved, sent mail is automatically overwritten starting from the oldest unprotected sent mail (Confirmation message does not appear). Protect important i-mode mail. Please be careful especially when the size of attachment to be sent is large, e.g. 2 MB, since the number of sent messages to be deleted become large.
- When **Show sent/received** is set to **OFF** (☞ P. 154), **Sent messages** and **Rcvd messages** are not available for address entry.
- While **Function lock** is applied to mail, enter **terminal security code** to compose and send i-mode mail.

### When called during editing

- Previous screen reappears after disconnecting and editing can be resumed.

### When other party has set Secret code

- Enter other party's **Secret code** (four digits) before @. This is unnecessary if Secret code is entered in phonebook entry (☞ P. 100).
- If address is **phone number** or **phone number@docomo.ne.jp**, phonebook is automatically checked for Secret code. If saved, Secret code is added and sent (☞ P. 100).
- i-mode mail may not be able to be sent or replied to if mail address is saved as **phone number+Secret code@docomo.ne.jp** in phonebook. Change entry to **phone number@docomo.ne.jp** before saving Secret code.
- Error messages such as for unknown recipients are sometimes not received when sent to a non-DoCoMo mail address.

## Broadcast

Send same i-mode mail to multiple addresses simultaneously from FOMA terminal. Send to up to five people at once.

- Select sending type (To/Cc/Bcc) in Broadcast entry field.
  - **To** : Receiver's address. Addresses entered in **To** appear on the other recipient's screen.
  - **Cc** : Used to send carbon copy to a third party.
  - **Bcc** : Used to send blind carbon copy to a third party. Unlike **Cc**, addresses are invisible to other recipients.
- Save up to five people in mail members to easily select multiple addresses (☞ P. 238).
- All addresses except set as **Bcc** are shown to other recipients. Addresses may not appear on some models.
- Sent mail is saved as one mail. All successful recipients are shown in sent message screen.
- If mail is not sent to all recipients, one copy is saved in Sent messages and another in Unsent messages. Unsuccessful recipients are shown in Unsent messages.
- When multiple identical addresses are set as address or broadcast, duplicate addresses are deleted.

## Changing sending type

Change sending type for address and broadcast.

- 1 When composing i-mode mail (☞ steps 1 to 3 on P. 214), select address entry field other than the first entry, press **6** [Sending type] and select sending type.

To	①
Cc	②
Bcc	③

## Deco-mail

### Creating and Sending Deco-mail

Change color and font size of message text, insert image or change background color when creating i-mode mail.

- Create Deco-mail message text up to 10,000 bytes. Up to 20 Deco-mail pictographs and images can be inserted. Note that their total size cannot exceed 90 KB excluding the message text size.

### Decorations and effects

- Message text cannot be decorated when the remaining byte is 0 or a negative number.
- Decorated mail sent from PCs may not appear properly.



Message entry screen



Preview screen

## Palette

- In message entry screen, press (1) [Decorate mail] to show palette. Select decoration type with and press , or press and select decoration from the Submenu ( P. 218).



Submenu number	Decoration
1	<b>Font color</b> <p><b>Description:</b> Add color to characters. Pictographs are also shown in selected color. To return pictograph to default color, select <b>Default</b>.</p> <p><b>Post-insertion adjustments:</b> Select color → .</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When selecting <b>Other colors</b>, select color and press .</li> </ul>
2	<b>Font size</b> <p><b>Description:</b> Change font size to <b>Large</b>, <b>Standard</b> or <b>Small</b>.</p> <p><b>Post-insertion adjustments:</b> 1 (Large)/2 (Standard)/3 (Small)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The size of Deco-mail pictographs cannot be changed.</li> </ul>
3	<b>Insert image</b> <p><b>Description:</b> Insert image in message. Animated images such as animated GIFs stop after a set length of time. Word alignment is reflected in image location. Image location and word alignment can be changed. Images cannot be inserted when editing decorations.</p> <p><b>Post-insertion adjustments:</b> At location to insert, press  → select folder →  → select image → .</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Deco-mail pictographs can be selected and inserted.</li> </ul>
4	<b>Blink</b> <p><b>Description:</b> Set text to blink. Blinking automatically stops after a set length of time.</p> <p><b>Post-insertion adjustments:</b> 1 (Select)/2 (Reset)</p>
5	<b>Ticker</b> <p><b>Description:</b> Stream text (Show ticker). Text stops streaming after a set length of time.</p> <p><b>Post-insertion adjustments:</b> 1 (Select)/2 (Reset)</p>
6	<b>Swing</b> <p><b>Description:</b> Wobble (swing) text sideways. Text stops moving after a set length of time.</p> <p><b>Post-insertion adjustments:</b> 1 (Select)/2 (Reset)</p>
7	<b>Word alignment</b> <p><b>Description:</b> Change alignment of text to left, center or right.</p> <p><b>Post-insertion adjustments:</b> 1 (Left)/2 (Center)/3 (Right)</p>

Submenu number	Decoration
8	<b>Insert line</b> <p><b>Description:</b> Add line (horizontal rule) in message text. One line's worth is inserted. Font color is reflected in inserted line. Line color (font color) can be changed. Line cannot be inserted when editing decorations.</p> <p><b>Post-insertion adjustments:</b> At the location to insert, press .</p>
1	<b>Background color</b> <p><b>Description:</b> Change message text background color. Background color cannot be changed when editing decorations.</p> <p><b>Post-insertion adjustments:</b> Select background color → .</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When selecting <b>Other colors</b>, select color and press .</li> </ul>
2	<b>Edit decoration</b> <p><b>Description:</b> Specify range and add decorations.</p> <p><b>Post-insertion adjustments:</b> At start point, press  → at end point, press  → set decoration.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Insert image</b>, <b>Insert line</b> and <b>Background color</b> are not available.</li> </ul>
3	<b>Undo</b> <p><b>Description:</b> Undo the last operation.</p>
4	<b>Reset decoration</b> <p><b>Description:</b> Enter undecorated characters. All the decorations that have been already inserted are not canceled.</p>
5	<b>Reset all</b> <p><b>Description:</b> Cancel all decorations. Images that have been inserted are deleted and mail returns to text mail.</p>

Key operation	Decoration	Description
	Input	Press to enter text.
	Cursor/Sel deco	Switch between cursor movement in message text and cursor movement in palette selection.
	Range	Press to select the range to decorate.
(for 1+ seconds)	Preview	Press to preview decoration.

## Note

- If Deco-mail of 10,000 bytes or larger is sent to a supported terminal other than the following series\* or if Deco-mail of any size is sent to an unsupported terminal (mova or FOMA models prior to the 900i series), a URL is sent in the message text. The recipient must select the URL to view Deco-mail on the Internet. However, some unsupported terminals receive mail only with message text and without a URL to view Deco-mail when Deco-mail of 10,000 bytes or larger is received. Compatible models: Available for Deco-mail supported handsets. Refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]" for details.
- \* 903i series, 703i series (excluding P703ip)

## Note

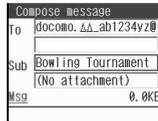
### Inserting images

- Images (Decomail pictures) are preset in the FOMA terminal (P. 427).
- If the same image is continuously inserted, 20 or more can be inserted. However, images are not deemed identical in the following cases.
  - When an image is inserted/pasted after a message with the image is saved
  - When an image included in a signature is inserted into a message with the image
- When a message is composed while another application has already been activated (e.g. during voice call), previewing a selected icon may not be available. Only image selection by pressing **OK** is available.
- To display the inserted image information, move the cursor right ahead of the image and select **File property** from the Submenu.

## Inserting message text while decorating

Enter text with decorations after specifying decoration method. Or, decorate already entered text with specified decoration method.

### 1 In mail compose message screen, enter recipient and subject (steps 1 to 3 on P. 214).



### 2 Select **Msg** and press **OK**.

- To specify the decoration method and enter text with decorations, proceed to step 3. To enter text and decorate afterwards, enter message text.

### 3 Press **OK** [Decorate mail], select palette with **OK** and press **OK** to select decoration.

- Press **OK** [Cursor] to move cursor in message text when palette is displayed. Press **OK** [Sel deco] again to return to palette selection.
- When Palette is set to **OFF**, press **OK** [Decorate mail], select decoration type from the Submenu, press **OK** and specify decoration.



To specify blink	Select <b>Blink</b> → <b>OK</b> → <b>OK</b> → enter text
To specify ticker	Select <b>Ticker</b> → <b>OK</b> → <b>OK</b> → enter text
To specify swing	Select <b>Swing</b> → <b>OK</b> → <b>OK</b> → enter text

To display preview screen	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Press <b>OK</b> and the previous screen reappears.</li> </ul>
---------------------------	--

### 4 When finished specifying decorations, enter message text.

- The bytes of message text entered appear.
- When decorating entered text, refer to "Setting range and decorating" on P. 219.
- When Palette is set to **OFF**, press **OK** [Input] when finished specifying decorations and enter message text.
- Decorations are reflected when message text is entered.
- Even after deleting text with decorations, decoration data may remain and cause available character number to decrease. Delete decorations before deleting text. When **CLR** is pressed for 1+ seconds to delete text, the text and the decoration data are deleted together.
- To undo to one step before editing message text, press **OK** [1]. Decorations cannot be undone if decoration area is specified after multiple decorations are specified in continuation.



### 5 Press **OK** [Preview].

- Alternatively, press **OK** for 1+ seconds to display a preview screen.
- Press **OK**, close the preview screen and repeat steps 3 and 4 for multiple decorations.



### 6 Press **OK** [Agree].

- Press **OK** [Decorate mail] **OK** [5] to delete all decorations. When Palette is set to **OFF**, press **OK** [1] **OK** [5]. Inserted images are also deleted.

### 7 Press **OK** and **OK** [Send].

## Note

- Decorations and inserted images are quoted when replying with quote or forwarding Deco-mail.
- Decorated mail sent from devices other than Deco-mail supported FOMA terminals may not appear correctly.
- When decoration is determined, status icon changes to **MSG**.
- Even if mail with Deco-mail URL is forwarded from a model that does not support Deco-mail, the Deco-mail message cannot be viewed.

## Related Operations

Hide palette <Palette>

- 1 After step 2 of "Inserting message text while decorating" on P. 218, press **[M]** **[4]**.
- 2 Press **[2]**.
  - To show palette: Press **[1]**.

### Setting range and decorating

- 1 In the palette screen (☞ P. 218), press **[Range]**.
  - Alternatively, press **[M]** **[2]** in the palette screen.
- 2 Move the cursor to location to start decorating and press **[○]**.
  - To select all text, press **[○]**.
  - To cancel selection, press **[M]**.
- 3 Move the cursor to location to end decorating and press **[○]**.
- 4 Select palette with **[↻]**, press **[○]** and specify decoration.
  - Specified range is decorated.
  - To undo to one step before editing message text, press **[M]** **[3]** [Undo].
  - **Insert image**, **Insert line**, **Background color**, **Edit decoration** and **Reset decoration** are not available.
  - Repeat step 4 to add decorations to the same range.
- 5 After specifying, press **[M]** [Input].
  - Refer to steps 5 to 7 on P. 218 for subsequent steps.

#### Note

- When Palette is set to **OFF**, select a decoration type from submenu, press **[○]**, specify a decoration, and then select the range.
- If area is specified after multiple decorations are continuously specified, Undo is not available.

## Sending Using a Template

Use a template to create Deco-mail. Templates are Deco-mail models with set layout and decorations. Use templates to easily create and send Deco-mail.

In addition, save created Deco-mail as a template and download templates from sites (☞ P. 192).

- Save up to 10 to 100 templates.
- 27 templates are preset.

## Using a Template to Create Deco-mail

<Template>

- 1 In stand-by, press **[M]** **[7]**.
  - Template list appears.
- 2 Select template, press **[○]** [Agree] and press **[M]** [Mail].
  - Template is reflected in message entry screen.
  - Editing is the same as for normal Deco-mail. Refer to P. 216 for details.



### Opening template while composing mail

- 1 In the message entry screen (☞ step 3 on P. 215), press **[M]** **[2]** [Open template].
  - To open template in the compose message screen, press **[M]** **[3]**.
  - When decorated or normal texts are already entered in the compose message screen, **Your changes will be lost. Open template?** appears. Select **Yes** and press **[○]** to view a template list.
- 2 Select template, press **[○]** [Agree] and press **[M]** [OK].
  - When a message contains texts before selecting template (no decoration), **Copy and paste text?** appears. Select **Yes** and press **[○]** to reflect template to the message entry screen and then press **[○]** at a paste location to attach the message text.
  - When decorated or normal texts are already entered in the compose message screen, the message texts before template is selected are deleted and the template is reflected to the message entry screen.

#### Note

- A template that exceeds 10,000 bytes for the body text or one with inserted images exceeding 90 KB cannot be opened.

## Saving Mail as a Template

<Save Template>

**1** When Deco-mail is completed (☞ steps 1 to 6 on P. 218), press **Ⓜ** and press **Ⓞ** **4** [Save template] in the compose message screen.

**2** Select Yes and press **Ⓞ**.

- Mail is saved in **Template** of the Mail menu.
- For Deco-mail created by opening a template, select **Save new** or **Overwrite** and press **Ⓞ**.

### Note

- The file names of saved templates are labeled automatically according to the date and time the templates were saved.  
Example: April 23, 2007 at 1:05:07 PM → **070423\_130507**
- Attachments are not saved with Deco-mail.
- Templates cannot be saved if memory space is not available. Delete unnecessary templates and increase available memory space to save (☞ P. 220).

## Editing Templates <Edit>

**1** In stand-by, press **Ⓜ** **7**, select template and press **Ⓜ** **1** [Edit].

**2** Edit Deco-mail (☞ steps 3 to 6 on P. 218), press **Ⓞ**, select **Save new** or **Overwrite** and press **Ⓞ**.

## Related Operations

### Edit template titles <Edit title>

- 1** In stand-by, press **Ⓜ** **7** ▶ select a template ▶ **Ⓜ** **2**.
- 2** Edit title ▶ **Ⓞ**.

### Delete templates <Delete>

- 1** In stand-by, press **Ⓜ** **7** ▶ select a template ▶ **Ⓜ** **3**.
- 2** Press **1** [Delete one].
  - To delete templates collectively: Press **2** ▶ select template **Ⓞ** (repeatable) ▶ **Ⓜ**.
  - To delete all templates: Press **3** ▶ enter terminal security code ▶ **Ⓞ**.
- 3** Select Yes ▶ **Ⓞ**.

### View detailed information <File property>

- In stand-by, press **Ⓜ** **7** ▶ select a template ▶ **Ⓜ** **4**.
- To end view: Press **Ⓞ** or **CLR**.

## Related Operations

### Note (Related operations)

#### Delete Template

- For deleting selected folders, press **Ⓜ** [SelAll]/**Ⓜ** [ClrAll] to select or clear all.

#### Template file properties

- Title name, file name, file format and **file restrictions** appear.

## Attachments

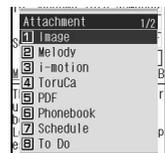
### Attaching a File

Send i-mode mail attached still pictures, movie/i-motion, etc.

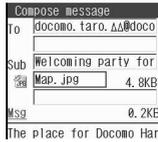
#### Supported attachments

- Attach the following data.
  - Still picture/image (JPEG image, GIF image, animated GIF)
  - Melody (SMF, MFi)
  - Movie/i-motion (MP4)
  - ToruCa (ToruCa, ToruCa (details))
  - PDF data
  - Phonebook (vCard)
  - Schedule (vCalendar)
  - ToDo (vCalendar)
  - Bookmark (vBookmark)
  - Document file (BMP, PNG, Word, Excel, PowerPoint, Text)
  - Other files
- Attach up to ten files in total size of up to 2 MB.
- GIF images cannot be received by a mova service i-mode terminal.
- Melodies in SMF format cannot be received by a mova service i-mode terminal.
- ToruCa exceeding 1 KB and ToruCa (details) exceeding 100 KB cannot be attached to mail.
- PDF files being downloaded or PDF files of individual pages partially downloaded cannot be attached.
- Transmission time may be longer depending on the attached file size.

**1** Compose i-mode mail (☞ steps 1 to 3 on P. 214), select the attachment entry field with **⏪** and press **Ⓞ**.



## 2 Select file to attach.



To attach still picture/image	<p>① → select folder → ○ → select image → Ⓜ</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To check image, select an image and press ○.</li> </ul>
To attach a melody	<p>② → select folder → ○ → select melody → Ⓜ</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To play melody, select a melody and press ○. Press Ⓜ to stop playback (Melodies which exceed 100 KB cannot be played back).</li> </ul>
To attach movie/i-motion	<p>③ → select folder → ○ → select movie/i-motion → Ⓜ</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To play movie/i-motion, select a movie/i-motion and press ○. Press Ⓜ to stop playback.</li> </ul>
To attach ToruCa	<p>④ → select folder → ○ → select ToruCa → Ⓜ</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To check ToruCa, select ToruCa and press ○.</li> </ul>
To attach PDF data	<p>⑤ → select folder → ○ → select PDF data → Ⓜ</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To check PDF data, select PDF data and press ○.</li> </ul>
To attach Phonebook	<p>⑥ → ① [phone]/② [microSD] → select a name → ○</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To check Phonebook, select a name and press Ⓜ.</li> <li>If <b>microSD</b> is selected, checking Phonebook is not available.</li> </ul>
To attach Schedule	<p>⑦ → ① [phone] → select date → Ⓜ → select schedule → ○</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To check Schedule, select Schedule and press Ⓜ.</li> <li>To select from microSD Memory Card, press ② [microSD], select Schedule and press ○. Checking Schedule is not available.</li> </ul>
To attach ToDo	<p>⑧ → ① [phone]/② [microSD] → select ToDo → ○</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To check ToDo, select ToDo and press Ⓜ.</li> <li>If <b>microSD</b> is selected, checking ToDo is not available.</li> </ul>
To attach Bookmark	<p>Ⓜ① → ① [i-mode]/② [Full Browser] → select folder → ○ → select bookmark → ○</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To select from microSD Memory Card, press ③ [microSD], select Bookmark and press ○.</li> </ul>
To attach Document file	<p>Ⓜ② → select file → Ⓜ</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To check file, select file and press ○.</li> </ul>
To attach other file in microSD Memory Card	<p>Ⓜ③ → select file → ○</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Checking file is not available.</li> </ul>

To attach shot still pictures	<p>Ⓜ④ → ○ [Ⓜ] → ○</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Shot still pictures are saved in the <b>Camera</b> folder.</li> <li>Shooting size is automatically set to <b>stand-by: 240x400</b>.</li> </ul>
To attach shot movies	<p>Ⓜ⑤ → ○ [Rec] → ○ → ①</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Shot movies are saved in the <b>Camera</b> folder.</li> <li>Select <b>For mail (short)</b> to send movie/i-motion exceeding 500 KB to a terminal other than the following series*. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>* 903i series, 703i series (excluding P703ij)</li> </ul> </li> <li>Shooting size is automatically set to <b>QCIF: 176x144</b>.</li> </ul>

- Compose message screen reappears. File name and size appear in the attachment field.
- To delete the attached file, select the file in the attachment field and press Ⓜ⑦ or Ⓜ⑦.
- To check an attached file, select the file in the attachment field and press Ⓜ⑥ or Ⓜ⑥.

## 3 Press Ⓜ [Send].

### Note

- Flash movies, frames, stamps and preset melodies cannot be attached.
- Melody may not be played properly if other party is using a model released prior to FOMA SH900i.
- Sent attached files may not be received by the models released prior to FOMA SH903i depending on the file type and size.
- Files with restrictions for i-mode mail attachment and output from the FOMA terminal are not sent.
- Images shot with FOMA terminal that have **file restrictions** are sent but cannot be forwarded by the other party.
- When files cannot be correctly received or viewed on receiving side terminals, the quality of movies may deteriorate or movies may be converted to continuous still pictures. To send movies to the models not supporting i-mode mail (2 MB compatible), the movies shot with File size limit: For mail (short), image size: QCIF and image quality: FINE or greater are recommended.
- Files which the other party's terminal does not support are deleted.

### Attaching shot still pictures

- If **Auto save mode** is set to **ON**, preview screen after shooting does not appear.
- Shot still pictures cannot be attached if the maximum number of files is already attached or if 2 MB of files are already attached (Attachment field does not appear).

### Pasted data

- Pasted melody (MF) is not quoted when replying or forwarding.

### ToruCa

- Depending on the size, some ToruCa cannot be attached to a message to send.

## Save i-mode Mail

### Saving i-mode Mail and Sending Later

Save i-mode mail being composed to FOMA terminal and continue composing at a later time. Edit saved i-mode mail and send.

#### Saving i-mode Mail

- 1 Press (2) [Save] while composing i-mode mail (refer steps 1 to 3 on P. 214).

- i-mode mail being composed is saved as an unsent message.



#### Note

- If is pressed while composing mail with address, subject, or message entered or file attached, end confirmation screen appears. Select **Yes** to cancel composing mail. Canceled mail is not saved.

#### Editing and Sending Sent/Saved i-mode Mail

#### Editing/Resending sent i-mode mail

- 1 In stand-by, press (2).



- 2 Select folder, press , select i-mode mail and press .

- Press to show previous or next mail.
- Press and sent messages list reappears. Alternatively, select mail and press in mail list. Press to resend.
- To check an attached file, select the file name and press .
- When a melody is attached, the melody is automatically played. Melody stops when another screen is opened. Melody is not automatically played if Melody Auto replay (refer P. 239) is set to **Auto replay off**.
- When an image is attached, image, attachment type icon and file name appear below message text (refer P. 230).

- 3 Edit/Resend mail.

To edit	or  (1) → edit mail → <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● Edit using same steps as when composing new message. Refer to steps 2 and 3 on P. 214.</li></ul>
To resend	(2)

#### Editing/Sending saved i-mode mail

- 1 In stand-by, press (3).
- 2 Select folder, press , select i-mode mail and press .
- 3 Select item, press , edit and press [Send].

- Edit using same steps as when composing new message. Refer to steps 2 and 3 on P. 214.
- To send unsent messages, select each one individually.
- Sent i-mode mail is saved in **Outbox**. Mail is sorted into various folders according to Sort rules (refer P. 237).

#### Auto Receive

### Receiving i-mode Mail

Set Receive option setting (refer P. 238) to **OFF** to automatically receive i-mode mail.

- Save 4 to 1,000 received i-mode mail and SMS (Capacity varies depending on size of received mail).
- If memory is full, oldest read unprotected mail is overwritten. Protect important i-mode mail (Overwrite confirmation message does not appear). Please be careful especially when the size of attachment to be received is large, e.g. 2 MB, since the number of received messages to be deleted become large.
- i-mode mail is held at the i-mode center under the following circumstances.
  - Handset is turned off
  - While in Self mode
  - Outside the service area
  - Using Videophone
  - During Ir exchange
  - During iC transmission
  - Receive option setting is set to **ON**
  - Memory is full due to a large number of protected or unread mail
  - Connected to FirstPass center
  - PushTalk transmission
  - While Omakase Lock is set

#### Note

- Up to 100 KB for each i-mode mail (including attached files) can be automatically received. Attached files exceeding 100 KB can be manually retrieved from the i-mode center (refer P. 227).
- Mail ring tone does not sound if mail is received while a call is in progress, i-appli is running, the camera is being activated, pattern definitions are being updated or One Seg is being played or recorded in full-screen with the normal position or the Cycloid position.
- If **Mail ticker** is set to **Sender+title** or **Only notice**, Mail ticker appears when mail is received while watching One Seg (refer P. 279).
- Copy mail from FOMA terminal handset to microSD Memory Card or from microSD Memory Card to FOMA terminal handset.

## Note

- Number of characters shown on screen differs depending on font size setting.

### Meaning of icons

Icon	Meaning
 (green)	Unread i-mode mail (☞ P. 223).
	Unread i-mode mail and SMS (☞ P. 223, P. 241).
	FOMA terminal received i-mode mail and SMS are full. View unread messages (☞ P. 223, P. 242), disable protection (☞ P. 234) or delete unnecessary mail (☞ P. 234).
 (red)	FOMA terminal received i-mode mail and SMS, SMS in FOMA card are full. View unread messages (☞ P. 223, P. 242), disable protection (☞ P. 234) or delete unnecessary mail (☞ P. 234).
 (red font)	Unread SMS (☞ P. 241).
 (blue font)	SMS in FOMA card is full. Delete unnecessary mail (☞ P. 234).
 (blue)	Mail is being held at center (When Receive option setting is set to <b>OFF</b> ). Perform Check new message (☞ P. 225) to receive i-mode mail.
	Center is full. Perform Check new message (☞ P. 225).
	Function lock is set. Terminal security code must be entered to check i-mode mail while Function lock is applied to mail (☞ P. 144).

-  (blue) may not appear even when mail is held at the i-mode center.
-  (blue) and  do not appear when Receive option setting is set to **ON**.

## Opening New i-mode Mail

### 1 i-mode mail is automatically received (✉ flashes).

- To cancel receiving mail, press  while receiving.
- i-mode mail canceled while being received is held at i-mode center ( (blue) appears).
- i-mode mail is still received depending on timing.



Receive display

### 2 After reception, receive results appear and mail ring tone sounds (✉ appears).



Main display  
Receive complete screen



Sub display  
Receive complete screen

- When the FOMA terminal is closed, the total number of i-mode mail and SMS appears after **Receive complete** appears on the sub display.
- Received mail is saved in **Inbox**. i-mode mail is sorted into various folders according to Sort rules (☞ P. 237).
- When multiple i-mode mail and Message R/F are received simultaneously, the ring tone of the lastly received i-mode mail or the one set for the Message R/F rings.

### 3 In the receive complete screen, select **Mail** and press .

- Folders containing unread mail are pink.
- SMS are also saved in Inbox.
- If no operations are performed in receive complete screen for approximately 30 seconds, the screen before reception automatically reappears. **xx mail message(s)** appears when the stand-by display reappears.



### 4 Select folder, press , select i-mode mail and press .

- Refer to P. 230 for details on viewing received mail.
- Refer to P. 227 for details on viewing attachment file.

## Note

- Melody plays if **Melody Auto replay** is set to **Auto replay**. Move to another screen to stop. Melodies which exceed 100 KB cannot be played back.
- When an image is attached, image, attachment type icon and file name appear below message.
- Melody and i-appli To are both disabled if both are attached.

## Note

- Set i-mode mail size (message text + file attachment or pasted data) restrictions for incoming mail (From the i-mode menu, select **iMenu** → **English iMenu** → **Options** → **Mail Settings** → **Limit Mail Size**). When the set number of characters (amount of data) is exceeded, file attachments are received as **attached files for manual reception**. Pasted data is deleted at the i-mode center and cannot be received again.
- For **Deco-mail** with pasted images, the pasted images are displayed even if **Receive attached file** is set to not receive image.
- Check if i-mode mail received from FOMA terminal and PCs were received as To, Cc or Bcc (参考 P. 230).
- The characters that do not appear correctly are replaced with spaces, etc.

### Stopping ring tone

- Press the following.
  - ..... Ring tone stops and Inbox list appears.
  - or ..... Ring tone stops and stand-by or screen before reception reappears.
  - ..... Ring tone stops and receive complete screen remains.

### Receiving when not in stand-by

- When Receive display is set to **Notice first, mail ring tone** sounds and and receive complete screen appear.

## Receive Option

### Selecting and Receiving i-mode Mail

After checking the subject of the i-mode mail stored at the i-mode center, select mail to receive or delete mail stored at the i-mode center before receiving. Set **Rcv option setting** to **ON** in advance to make Receive option available (参考 P. 238). When set to **ON**, i-mode mail cannot be automatically received.

### When i-mode Mail Is Received

When Receive option setting is set to **ON** and mail is received at the i-mode center, the screen on the right appears in stand-by (Receive option notice).

Press , or to clear display. To select and receive i-mode mail, clear display first.

- When a call is received while the screen on the upper right is shown, the screen reappears after the call even if or is pressed.
- When the screen on the upper right appears, the mail ring tone and vibrator do not activate.



## Selectively Receiving i-mode Mail

### <Receive Option>

### 1 In stand-by, press [8].

- Connects to i-mode center and held i-mode mail appears.
- When Receive option setting is set to **OFF**, **Make sure "receive option" in "mail setting" is set to ON** appears. Press and receive option setting screen appears. Press [ON], select **Yes**, press and perform step 1.



### 2 Select **Receive**, **Delete** or **Hold** for each i-mode mail and press .

- Press to check sections not shown.
- When a file is attached, the following icons appear to the right of attached file size.



### Meaning of icons

	Image file attached.
	Melody file attached.
	i-motion attached.
	ToruCa attached.
	Other file attached.

- To delete all mail held at i-mode center, select **削除** at the bottom of receive option screen and press . Select **決定** in the confirmation screen and press to delete all mail at i-mode center.

### 3 Select **受信/削除**, press , select **決定** and press .

- To re-select mail to receive/delete, select **再選択** and press .

### 4 Open received i-mode mail (参考 steps 3 and 4 on P. 223).

## Related Operations

### Selectively receive mail from i-mode

#### <Receive option>

In stand-by, press [1] [iMenu] ▶ メニュー / 検索 (Menu/Search) ▶ ▶ メール選択受信 (Receive Option) ▶ .

## Check New Message

### Checking for i-mode Mail

Received i-mode mail is held at the i-mode center while the handset is outside the service area, in Self mode, or turned off (☞ P. 222).

Check and retrieve mail from i-mode center.

- Up to 1,000 messages in total of approximately 10 MB can be held at the i-mode center.
- Set types for Check new message (i-mode mail, Message R/F) (☞ P. 238).
- All types are enabled as default setting (☞ P. 238).
- All i-mode mail is retrieved when Check new message is performed even if Receive option setting is set to **ON**.
- After checking new messages, even if checked again while  is flashing, messages are not checked. **0** appears for all types of mail.
- Refer to P. 242 for details on checking for SMS.
- When multiple i-mode mail and Message R/F are received, ring tone set for the last i-mode mail or Message R/F received sounds.

## 1 In stand-by, press 6 1 or

 4.

- Alternatively, perform Check new message by pressing  twice in stand-by.
- Check new message (☞ P. 238) is performed according to settings in order from **i-mode mail** → **MessageR** → **MessageF** (Icons   (green),  (green)) appear for each type checked).
- To cancel receiving mail, press  while receiving.
- i-mode mail canceled while being received is held at the i-mode center ( (blue) appears).
- i-mode mail may still be received depending on timing.

## 2 Results appear, and i-mode mail ring tone sounds when i-mode mail is received.

- **0** appears when no i-mode mail is held at center.

## 3 Open received i-mode mail (☞ steps 3 and 4 on P. 223).

### Note

- Depending on signal strength, an error message may appear and check may not occur or connection may be interrupted.

## Reply to i-mode Mail

### Replying to i-mode Mail

Reply to i-mode mail with message quoted or unquoted.

- Not available when Unsent messages memory is full.
- Refer to P. 242 for details on replying to SMS.

## 1 Open i-mode mail (☞ steps 1 to 4 on P. 223), press 1 [Reply/Forward] and select reply method.

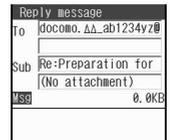
To reply	 1 <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● <b>Re:</b> is entered at the beginning of received mail Subject.</li></ul>
To quote message and reply	 3 <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● <b>&gt;</b> is inserted at the beginning of message and received mail content is quoted.</li><li>● For Deco-mail, decorations and inserted images are quoted.</li></ul>

- To reply to mail, press  in messages list, or press  in message screen.

- When selected i-mode mail cannot be replied to, **Wrong reply dest** appears.

- If selected i-mode mail exceeds 10,000 bytes when replying with **>**,  appears. Edit to 10,000 bytes or less.

- When i-mode mail with Broadcast is selected, reply destination screen appears. Press  [Reply to sender] or  [Reply to all].



## 2 Compose and send i-mode mail.

- Edit subject and message text. Refer to steps 2 and 3 on P. 214 for details.

### Note

- Press  while composing i-mode mail and end confirmation screen appears. Select **Yes** to cancel composing message. Canceled mail is not saved.
- If  is pressed in unedited reply screen, end confirmation screen does not appear.
- Replies cannot be sent to sender with mail address exceeding 50 characters. When mail cannot be replied to,  appears in received message screen.
- Adding **Secret code** to mail is necessary for recipients with Secret code registered (☞ P. 216).
- If i-appli To is pasted in message, i-appli To is not quoted even with Reply with quote. In addition, i-appli To data cannot be sent with **DoCoMo keitai datalink** or **Ir exchange**.

## Replying Quickly <Quick Reply>

Send replies quickly from received message screen.

- Register message as Quick reply mail (P. 239) in advance. Save up to ten messages.

**1** Open i-mode mail (steps 1 to 4 on P. 223) and press [1] [2] [Quick reply].

**2** Select message text and press [0].

- To check message text, select message and press [Agree].
- Check address, subject and message.

**3** Press [Send].

## Forward i-mode Mail

### Forwarding to Another Address

- Not available when sent mail memory is full.

**1** Open i-mode mail (steps 1 to 4 on P. 223) and press [1] [4] [Forward].

- **Fw:** is entered at the beginning of received mail Subject.
- For Deco-mail, decorations and inserted images are forwarded.

**2** Compose and send i-mode mail.

- Edit subject and message text. Refer to steps 2 and 3 on P. 214 for details.

#### Note

- Press [OK] while composing i-mode mail and end confirmation screen appears. Select **Yes** to cancel composing message. Canceled mail is not saved.
- If [OK] is pressed in unedited forwarding screen, end confirmation screen does not appear.

#### When a file is attached to forwarded i-mode mail

- Attachment files must be totally retrieved before forwarded. **Attached files for manual reception** that are not acquired yet cannot be forwarded.
- If i-mode mail with melody attached is forwarded to a model released prior to FOMA SH900i, melody may not be played properly.
- i-αppli To, i-mode mail attachments and files with restrictions for output from the FOMA terminal are deleted.

## Saving Mail Addresses and Phone Numbers to Phonebook

Save the received mail's sender and address, or mail address and phone number in message text to the phonebook.

- For SMS, the sender's/recipient's phone number is saved in the phone number field of phonebook.
- Saving in the phonebook cannot be performed in the following cases.
  - Sender's mail address that exceeds 50 single-byte characters
  - While Keypad dial lock is set
  - When there are 750 entries in FOMA terminal handset phonebook or 50 entries in FOMA card phonebook already saved

## Saving Sender's/Recipient's Mail Address to Phonebook <Register Address>

**1** In received message screen (P. 230), press [7] [1] [Register address] and select a saving method.

- For sent mail, press [8] [1] in sent message screen.

To save new to FOMA terminal handset phonebook	[1]
To save new to FOMA card phonebook	[2]
To add/overwrite phonebook	[3] → select name → [0]

- Sender or mail address is entered in phonebook entry screen. Continue phonebook saving operations (P. 98, P. 103).

#### Note

- While **Function lock** is applied to phonebook, enter **terminal security code** to save to phonebook.
- If there are multiple addresses, address selection screen appears after step 1. Select address and press [0].

## Saving Phone Numbers and Mail Addresses from Message Text to Phonebook <Add to Phonebook>

**1** In received message screen (P. 230), select phone number or mail address, press [7] [2] [Add to phonebook] and select a saving method.

- For sent mail, press [8] [2] in sent message screen.

To save new to FOMA terminal handset phonebook	①
To save new to FOMA card phonebook	②
To add/overwrite phonebook	③ → select name → ●

- Selected phone number or mail address is entered in phonebook entry screen. Continue phonebook saving operations (☞ P. 98, P. 103).

## Acquiring Attached Files for Manual Reception

- If Mail box memory is full, unprotected received mail is deleted in accordance with size of attached files.

### 1 Open received mail with attached files for manual reception (☞ steps 1 to 4 on P. 223), select a file name and press ●.

- The file is retrieved and saved to the Mail box.
- When there are attached files for manual reception that has not been acquired, an expiration date is displayed at the bottom of message screen. When all files are acquired, the expiration date disappears.

Inbox	To	7
07/04/23 16:11	Keitai Hanako	
restaurant		
How about this shop?		
-END-		
Docomo.jpg		
5.8KB		
保存期限:2007/05/03		

## View Attachment

### Checking/Saving/Deleting Attached File

#### Check, save and delete attached files.

- Attached files are saved in a selected save destination in each category.
- If an attached file is not recognizable by the FOMA terminal (i.e. other files), the file is saved in the **OTHER** folder of microSD Memory Card.

### 1 Open received mail with attachments (☞ steps 1 to 4 on P. 223).

### 2 Select file with ● and view.

To view	●
	● Attachment is shown or played.

To save	Files in Data box	④① (⑤①) for sent message) → Yes → ● → select folder → ●
	Phonebook	④① (⑤①) for sent message) → Yes → ● ● Saved to microSD Memory Card. ● To save after viewing Phonebook: Press ● → ● [Save] → Save to handset/Save to microSD → ●.
	Schedule/ToDo/Bookmark	④① (⑤①) for sent message) → Yes → ● ● Saved to microSD Memory Card. ● To save after viewing attachment: Press ● → ● [Save] → Save to handset/Save to microSD → ●.
	ToruCa	④① (⑤①) for sent message) → Yes → ● → phone/microSD → ● ● To save after viewing ToruCa: Press ● → ● [Save] (for ToruCa)/ ● [Save] (for ToruCa (details)) → Yes → ● → phone/microSD → ●.
	Document file	④① (⑤①) for sent message) → Yes → ● ● Saved to microSD Memory Card.
	Other files	④① (⑤①) for sent message) → Yes → ● ● Saved to microSD Memory Card.
To delete		④② (⑤②) for sent message) → Yes → ●

- If a single attached file contains multiple phonebooks, schedules, ToDo lists or bookmarks, or if an attached file is not recognizable by the FOMA terminal (i.e. other files), the attached file cannot be viewed or saved to the FOMA terminal handset. Instead, save the attached file to microSD Memory Card.

#### Note

- Some images attached to i-mode mail may not appear correctly. Images with width and height exceeding 2,048 pixels or total image area exceeding 2,048 (W) × 2,048 (H) can be received but may not be displayed. Refer to "Displaying Saved Images" on P. 296 for details on images.
- Unprotected mail may be deleted if received mail has attached files larger than the available memory space.
- Compliant software is necessary for i-motion playback on PC or other devices (☞ P. 438 "About Movie Player Software"). Refer to DoCoMo web page for details.
- Melodies which exceed 100 KB cannot be played back.
- When files that are not recognizable by the terminal are saved to microSD Memory Card, the file name become one of **OTHER001** to **OTHER999**.

## View Image in Mail

### Viewing and Saving Deco-mail Images

- Deco-mail pictographs can also be viewed and saved.
- Images can be saved in the **i-mode** folder or the **Deco-mail picture** folder in My picture of Data box. Deco-mail pictographs are saved in the **Deco-mail pict 1** folder in My picture of Data box.

#### 1 Open received mail with image inserted (1-4 steps 1 to 4 on P. 223) and press **[F6]** **[View image in mail]**.

- For sent mail, press **[F6]**.



#### 2 Select image with **[F5]** and view.

To view	<b>[F5]</b>
To save	<b>[F5]</b> → <b>Yes</b> → <b>[F5]</b> → select folder → <b>[F5]</b> ● For Deco-mail pictograph: Press <b>[F5]</b> → <b>Yes</b> → <b>[F5]</b> .

#### Note

- For attached images, view and save with **File attachment**.

## Save Template

### Saving Deco-mail as Templates

- Templates cannot be saved if memory space is not available. Delete unnecessary templates and increase available memory space to save (1-4 P. 220).
- Templates are saved in **Template** in Mail menu.

#### 1 Open received Deco-mail (1-4 steps 1 to 4 on P. 223), press **[F7]** **[F3]** **[Save template]**, select **Yes** and press **[F5]**.

- For sent mail, press **[F8]** **[F3]**.

#### Note

- Saved template files are named automatically according to the saved date and time.  
Example: April 23, 2007 at 1:05:07 PM → **070423\_130507**
- Attachments in received Deco-mail are not saved.
- When an inserted image has **file restrictions**, the image is deleted.

## Inbox/Outbox/Unsent Messages

### Displaying Messages in Inbox and Outbox

#### View received/sent/unsent i-mode mail and SMS.

- Both i-mode mail and SMS are saved in Inbox/Outbox.

- For received, sent and unsent messages, up to the following total numbers of i-mode mail and SMS entries can be saved (Capacity varies depending on the size of messages).

Received mail	Up to 1,000
Sent mail	Up to 500
Unsent mail	Up to 500

- Manage received/sent/unsent i-mode mail and SMS in folders. Folders can be created on the FOMA terminal handset.
- The FOMA terminal handset and FOMA card each have **Outbox** and **Inbox** folders. Sent mail in **Outbox** of both FOMA terminal handset and FOMA card are shown together in **Outbox** folder. The same applies for **Inbox** folder.
- Calls can be placed when mail address and phone number of sender is saved in phonebook in advance.

#### Example: Received mail

#### 1 In stand-by, press **[F5]** **[F1]**.

- Folders containing unread i-mode mail or SMS are pink.
- For sent mail, press **[F5]** **[F2]** in stand-by.
- For unsent mail, press **[F5]** **[F3]** in stand-by.
- To list all the received/sent/unsent messages, press **[F5]** **[Show all]** in the Inbox/Outbox/Unsent messages list.

#### 2 Select folder, press **[F5]**, select i-mode mail or SMS and press **[F5]**.

- To view mail in mail-type i-appli folder, select folder, press **[F5]**, select **View i-mode mail**, press **[F5]**, select i-mode mail and press **[F5]**.



Message screen

To end viewing	<b>[F5]</b>
To view other messages	<b>[CLR]</b> → select mail from messages list
To copy address, subject or message text of received/sent mail being viewed	<b>[F6]</b> <b>[F2]</b> ( <b>[F7]</b> <b>[F2]</b> for sent message) → select item → <b>[F5]</b>
To display in full-screen	<b>[F4]</b> ( <b>[F3]</b> <b>[F5]</b> for sent message) or <b>[F5]</b> (for 1+ seconds) ● To return: Press a key other than <b>[F5]</b> , <b>[MAY]</b> , <b>[F6]</b> , <b>[F7]</b> , <b>[F8]</b> , <b>[TV]</b> and <b>[Eco]</b> .

## Note

### Message screen operations

Scroll down	⏴
Scroll up	⏵
Scroll down one screen	⏴⏴
Scroll up one screen	⏵⏵
Show next mail	⏴
Show previous mail	⏵

## Related Operations

### Make calls from message screen <Phone>

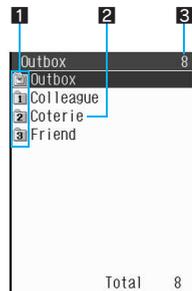
- In the received message screen, press **Ⓜ** (8).
  - In the sent message screen: Press **Ⓜ** (8) **Ⓜ** (1).
- Select **Yes** **Ⓜ**.
- Press **Ⓜ** to make a voice call.
  - To make a Videophone call: Press **Ⓜ**.
  - To call PushTalk: Press **Ⓜ**.

## Message Box List Layout

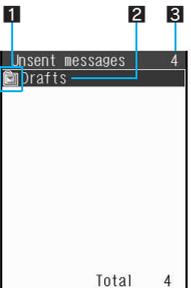
### Inbox list



### Outbox list



### Unsent messages list



### 1 Folder icons

In the Inbox list, folder icons appear pink when an unread message is saved.

	Created folder <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>For folders <b>Ⓜ</b> to <b>Ⓜ</b>, press <b>Ⓜ</b> to <b>Ⓜ</b> to open corresponding messages list.</li> </ul>
	Mail-type i-appli folder

### 2 Folder name

Folder names appear.

### 3 Total i-mode mail and SMS

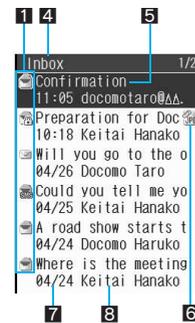
Number of all mail messages appears at the upper right of the display. Number of mail messages in a selected folder appears at the lower right of the display. Number of unread mail messages also appears at the lower left on the Inbox screen.

## Note

- When deleting a mail-type i-appli, select whether to simultaneously delete the automatically created mail folder. If the mail folder contains a protected message, folder cannot be deleted.
- Refer to P. 243 for details on copying to FOMA card.
- Refer to P. 322 for details on copying to microSD Memory Card.
- Send and receive i-mode mail and SMS data saved on the FOMA terminal handset using **lr exchange** or **ic transmission**.

## Messages List/View Layout

### Received messages list



### Sent messages list



### Unsent messages list



### 1 Received message type

In **Inbox** folder, i-mode mail and SMS in **Inbox** on the FOMA terminal handset and on FOMA card are shown together.

	Unread i-mode mail		Unread i-mode mail (protected)
	Read i-mode mail		Read i-mode mail (protected)

	Unread SMS		Unread SMS (protected)
	Read SMS		Read SMS (protected)
	Mail-type i-αppli unread i-mode mail		Mail-type i-αppli unread i-mode mail (protected)
	Mail-type i-αppli read i-mode mail		Mail-type i-αppli read i-mode mail (protected)
	Replied to i-mode mail		Replied to i-mode mail (protected)
	Forwarded i-mode mail		Forwarded i-mode mail (protected)
	Unread SMS on FOMA card		Read SMS on FOMA card

## 2 Sent message type

In **Outbox** folder, i-mode mail and SMS in **Outbox** on the FOMA terminal handset and on FOMA card are shown together.

	Sent i-mode mail		Sent i-mode mail (protected)
	Sent SMS		Sent SMS (protected)
	i-mode mail sent with mail-type i-αppli		i-mode mail sent with mail-type i-αppli (protected)
	Sent SMS on FOMA card		

## 3 Unsent message type

Unsent message types appear.

	Unsent i-mode mail		Unsent i-mode mail (protected)
	Unsent SMS		Unsent SMS (protected)

## 4 Folder name

Folder names appear.

## 5 Subject

Messages with no subject appear as **Untitled**. Shows up to the first 20 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters.

## 6 Attached data

Attached file types appear.

	GIF image		vCalendar that has not been acquired
	JPEG image		Bookmark
	Melody		Word file
	i-αppli To information		Excel file
	Movie/i-motion		PowerPoint file
	ToruCa, ToruCa (details)		Text file
	PDF data		BMP file
	Phonebook		PNG file

	Schedule		Data unable to view
	ToDo		Multiple files attached

## 7 Received date and time (received message)\* / Sent date and time (sent message) / Saved date and time (unsent message)

Time for current day and date for other days.

\* The default setting lists messages in the order received at i-mode center, starting with the newest. The display method can be changed (☞ P. 233).

## 8 Address (recipient)

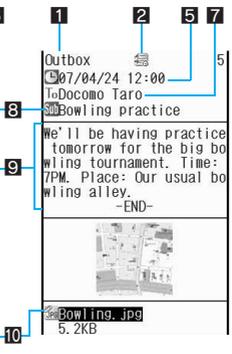
Depending on the other party, received SMS are displayed as follows.

- When the other party sends caller ID and is saved in phonebook ..... Name saved in phonebook
- When the other party sends caller ID and is not saved in phonebook... **090** (or **080**, etc.) **xxxxxxx**
- When the other party does not send caller ID ..... **User unset**
- When the other party calls from a payphone ..... **Payphone**

## Received messages view



## Sent messages view



## 1 Folder name

Number of displayed characters varies according to the font size settings.

Large font : 11 single-byte (5 double-byte) characters

Standard : 14 single-byte (7 double-byte) characters

Small font : 18 single-byte (9 double-byte) characters

## 2 Protected icon

Appears when protected.

## 3 Receiving type

Shows receiving type (To/Cc/Bcc).

## 4 Received date

Shows date and time received at i-mode center or SMS center.

## 5 Sent date and time

Shows date and time send mail.

## 6 Sender

Sender appears.

Sending type (To/Cc) is shown when Broadcast is set.

	Shown when address set in To cannot be replied to (when address exceeds 50 characters, etc.)
	Shown when address set in Cc cannot be replied to (when address exceeds 50 characters, etc.)

## 7 Address (recipient)

Mail address (recipient) and sending type (To/Cc/Bcc) appear.

## 8 Subject

Mail subject appears.

## 9 Message

- **END** - appears at the end of the message. When receiving limit is exceeded, "/" or "//" appears and the exceeding portion is automatically deleted.

## 10 Attachment type icon/file name

Attached file types appear.

	GIF image		Data unable to view
	JPEG image		Attached files for manual reception that has not been acquired
	Melody		
	Movie/i-motion		
	ToruCa, ToruCa (details)		
	PDF data		Attached files for manual reception that is being acquired
	Phonebook		
	Schedule		
	ToDo		Attached files for manual reception that cannot be acquired
	Bookmark		
	Word file		
	Excel file		
	PowerPoint file		Invalid data pasted/deleted attachment
	Text file		
	BMP file		File with FOMA card restrictions applied
	PNG file		

Refer to "Message screen operations" on P. 229 for details on screen operations.

- If the destination or sender address is saved in Phonebook, their name appears in the destination or sender field. If it is not saved, the phone number or address appears. However, the name does not appear while Function lock is applied to phonebook or when phonebook is set as Secret (P. 113). To show names of secret phonebook entries, set Secret mode (P. 154) to **ON**.

- When an image is attached to received messages or sent messages, the image appears.

## Saving Messages to Data Storage Center <Store at Center>

- Save i-mode mail and SMS saved on FOMA terminal.
- Mail that exceeds 10,000 bytes for the body text and mail with the inserted image exceeding 90 KB cannot be saved/updated.
- Select and save up to ten mails.
- This service is a paid service that requires subscription.
- Refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]" for details on the restoration of saved mails.

### 1 In received messages/sent messages/unsent messages list (P. 229), select mail and press [Store at Center].

- In the received messages screen, press  . In the sent message screen, press  , select **Yes**, press , enter terminal security code and press .

### 2 Save messages.

To save one	 → <b>Yes</b> →  → enter terminal security code → 
To save multiple messages	 → select mail  (repeatable) →  → <b>Yes</b> →  → enter terminal security code →  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When the number of messages in the folder is ten or less, press  [SelAll]/ [ClrAll] to select or clear all.</li> </ul>

#### Note

- Attached file cannot be saved.
- SMS delivery reports cannot be saved.
- Check the phonebook transmission history for transmissions of saving to the Data Storage Center (P. 114).

## Managing Folders

Delete, sort and separate received/sent/unsent i-mode mail and SMS into folders.

- Up to 20 folders (not including **Inbox**, **Outbox**, **Drafts** and mail-type i-appli folder) can be created, renamed and deleted (However, **Inbox**, **Outbox**, **Drafts** and mail-type i-appli cannot be renamed or deleted).

### Creating folders <New folder>

#### 1 In Inbox/Outbox/Unsent messages list (P. 229), press [New folder].

## 2 Enter folder name and press

- To delete **New folder** name, press for 1+ seconds.

### Note

- Folders cannot be created on FOMA card.
- Enter up to 18 single-byte (9 double-byte) characters for folder name.

## Editing folder names <Edit folder name>

### 1 In Inbox/Outbox/Unsent messages list ( P. 229), select folder and press [Edit folder name].

## 2 Edit folder name and press .

- To delete a folder name, press for 1+ seconds.

### Note

- Inbox**, **Outbox**, **Drafts** and mail-type i-appli folder names cannot be edited.

## Moving folder order upward

<Move folder up>

### 1 In Inbox/Outbox/Unsent messages list ( P. 229), select folder and press [Move folder up].

### Note

- Inbox**, **Outbox**, **Drafts** and mail-type i-appli folders cannot be moved.

## Setting Folder security <Folder security>

### 1 In Inbox/Outbox/Unsent messages list ( P. 229), select folder and press [Folder security].

## 2 Enter terminal security code and press .

## 3 Select ON or OFF.

To set	
To disable	

### Note

- When Folder security is set to **ON**, folder icon changes to . **Terminal security code** is required to view message list.
- When Folder security is set, the terminal security code will be asked after pressing [Show all] in the Inbox/Outbox/Unsent messages list.

## Deleting folder

Deletion method	Explanation	Screen
Delete one folder	Deletes folders individually.	Inbox/ Outbox/ Unsent messages list
Delete selected folders	Deletes folders collectively.	
Delete all read (received messages)	Deletes all unprotected read i-mode mail/SMS from all folders including <b>Inbox</b> .	Inbox list
Delete all unread (received messages)	Deletes all unprotected unread i-mode mail/SMS from all folders including <b>Inbox</b> .	
Delete all (keep folder)	Deletes all unprotected i-mode mail/SMS. Folders are not deleted.	Inbox/ Outbox/ Unsent messages list
Delete all (delete folder)	Deletes all folders and all unprotected i-mode mail/SMS.	

## Delete created folders <Delete>

### 1 In Inbox/Outbox/Unsent messages list, select folder .

### 2 Press [Delete one folder].

- To select and delete folder: Press select folder (repeatable) .

### 3 Enter terminal security code Yes .

## Delete all messages <Delete all>

### 1 In Inbox/Outbox/Unsent messages list, press .

### 2 Press [Del all(keep fol)].

- To delete all read mail: Press .
- To delete all unread mail: Press .
- To delete entire folder: Press .
- In Outbox list/unsent messages list: Press .
- To delete entire folder from Outbox list/unsent messages list: Press .

### 3 Enter terminal security code Yes .

### Note

- Inbox**, **Outbox** and **Drafts** cannot be deleted.
- SMS on the FOMA card cannot be deleted.
- Folders containing messages can be deleted.
- Protected messages cannot be deleted.
- When **Delete one folder** or **Delete sel folders** is selected, messages in the folder are also deleted. However, if the folder contains protected messages, the folder and the messages in the folder cannot be deleted.
- When **Del all(del fol)** is selected, only unprotected i-mode mail and SMS is deleted. Folders containing protected i-mode mail and SMS will not be deleted.

## Note

- Folders containing software compatible with a mail-type i-appli folder cannot be deleted. Delete the software and then delete the folder. When there is no compatible software, the folder can be deleted, but deleting one mail-type i-appli folder created in Inbox, Outbox or Unsent messages list will also delete all other mail-type i-appli folders.
- For deleting selected folders, press **[SelAll]/[C]** [ClrAll] to select or clear all.

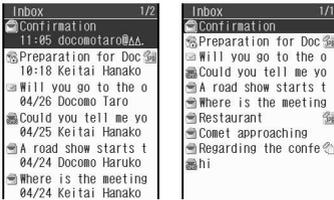
## Managing Mail

### Switching message display <Switch view mode>

Default setting **Two lines**

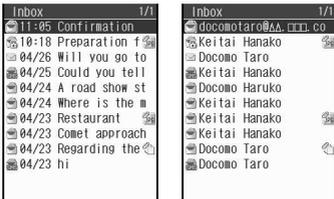
In the messages list, switch the view layout among the following six views.

- When the view layout is switched, the setting applies to Inbox, Outbox and Unsent messages.



Two lines

Title\*1



Date/time+title\*1

Name\*2



Date/time+name\*2

Address\*3

\*1 First characters of message for SMS.

\*2 Mail address or phone number when not saved in phonebook.

\*3 Phone number for SMS.

**1** In received messages/sent messages/unsent messages list (P. 229), press **[6] [1]** [Switch view mode].

**2** Select a view mode.

Two lines	<b>[1]</b>	Name	<b>[4]</b>
Title	<b>[2]</b>	Date/time+name	<b>[5]</b>
Date/time+title	<b>[3]</b>	Address	<b>[6]</b>

### Showing sender's address <Check address>

**1** In received messages list (P. 229), select message and press **[6] [3]** [Check address].

### Sorting mail <Sort>

#### Mail view method

Date (new→old)	Latest received/sent/saved date first
Date (old→new)	Latest received/sent/saved date last
By address	Depending on the sender's address, sorted by numbers → upper case alphabet → lower case alphabet
By subject	Depending on the title, sorted by single-byte (symbols → numbers → upper case alphabet → lower case alphabet) → double-byte (hiragana → katakana → kanji → pictographs → numbers → upper case alphabet → lower case alphabet) → single-byte katakana (Character code order is applied in each character type)
Protected preferred*	Protected mail → normal mail
Message with attachments*	Mail with attachments → mail without attachments
Size (big→small)	The largest files first
Size (small→big)	The smallest files first

\* Messages are sorted with newest mail first in each criterion.

**1** In received messages/sent messages/unsent messages list (P. 229), press **[6] [2]** [Sort].

**2** Select sort method and press **[0]**.

## Note

- In **Inbox** and **Outbox**, i-mode mail, FOMA terminal handset SMS and FOMA card SMS are sorted.
- When sorting mail by size, i-mode mail and SMS in the FOMA terminal handset are sorted first and then SMS in the FOMA card is sorted.
- The default setting is **Date(new→old)** (sort by the date sent/saved/received) for received, sent and unsent mail.

## Note

- Sort method returns to default setting when showing screens other than messages list. After checking message screen with changed display method, press **CLR** or view message list again after **Move one** or **Delete one** and changes remain.

## Moving mail to another folder <Move>

**1** In received messages/sent messages/unsent messages list (☞ P. 229), select mail and press **Ⓜ** **3** **1** [Move].

## 2 Select a transfer method.

To move one	<b>1</b> → select folder → ●
To move multiple ones in a folder collectively	<b>2</b> → select message ● (repeatable) → <b>Ⓜ</b> → select folder → ● ● Press <b>Ⓜ</b> [SelAll]/ <b>Ⓜ</b> [ClrAll] to select or clear all.
To move all in folder	<b>3</b> → select folder → ●

## Moving to another folder from message screen <Move one>

**1** In the received message screen (☞ P. 230), press **Ⓜ** **6** **1** [Move one].

- Press **Ⓜ** **7** **1** in the sent message screen.

## 2 Select folder and press ●.

## Note

- SMS on FOMA card cannot be moved within card.
- Already received i-appli mail can be manually sorted into the folders automatically created when downloading a mail-type i-appli.

## Protecting mail <Protect>

**1** In received messages/sent messages/unsent messages list (☞ P. 229), select mail and press **Ⓜ** **1** [Protect].

- In the received message screen, press **Ⓜ** **2** **1** to protect displayed mail.
- In the sent message screen, press **Ⓜ** **3** **1** to protect displayed mail.

## 2 Select a protecting/disabling method.

To protect one	<b>1</b> <b>1</b>
To protect multiple ones collectively	<b>1</b> <b>2</b> → select mail ● (repeatable) → <b>Ⓜ</b> ● Press <b>Ⓜ</b> [SelAll]/ <b>Ⓜ</b> [ClrAll] to select or clear all.
To protect all in folder	<b>1</b> <b>3</b>
To disable protection of one	<b>2</b> <b>1</b>
To disable protection of multiple ones collectively	<b>2</b> <b>2</b> → select mail ● (repeatable) → <b>Ⓜ</b> ● Press <b>Ⓜ</b> [SelAll]/ <b>Ⓜ</b> [ClrAll] to select or clear all.
To disable protection of all in folder	<b>2</b> <b>3</b>

## Note

- SMS on FOMA card cannot be protected. Copying a protected SMS to FOMA card will disable protection.

## Deleting mail <Delete> Deletion method for mail

Deletion method	Explanation	Screen
Delete one	Deletes i-mode mail/SMS individually.	Received/Sent/Unsent messages list Received/Sent message screen
Delete selected	Deletes selected unprotected i-mode mail/SMS collectively.	Received/Sent/Unsent messages list
Delete all in folder	Deletes all unprotected i-mode mail/SMS from folder.	
Delete read in folder (received messages)	Deletes all unprotected read i-mode mail/SMS from folder.	Received messages list
Delete unread in folder (received messages)	Deletes all unprotected unread i-mode mail/SMS from folder.	

### Delete mail individually <Delete one>

**1** In the received message screen, press **Ⓜ** **3**.  
● To delete a sent message: In the sent message screen, press **Ⓜ** **4**.

**2** Select **Yes** ▶ ●.

### Delete mail individually from messages list <Delete one>

In received messages/sent messages/unsent messages list, press **Ⓜ** **2** **1** ▶ **Yes** ▶ ●.

## Delete all mail in messages list <All in folder>

- 1 In received messages/sent messages/unsent messages list, press **[2]**.
- 2 Press **[5]** [All in folder].
  - To delete all read mail: Press **[3]**.
  - To delete all unread mail: Press **[4]**.
  - For sent/unsent message: Press **[3]**.
- 3 Enter terminal security code **[\*][0][\*]** **[Yes]** **[>]**.

## Select mail and delete <Delete selected>

- 1 In received messages/sent messages/unsent messages list, press **[2]**.
- 2 Press **[2]** [Delete selected].
- 3 Select message **[0]** (repeatable) **[>]** **[>]** **[Yes]** **[>]**.

## Delete mail in i-αppli folder <Delete>

- 1 In Inbox/Outbox list, select i-αppli folder **[>]** **[4]** [View i-mode mail].
  - In unsent messages list: Select i-αppli folder **[>]** **[3]**.
- 2 To delete one, select message **[>]** **[2]** **[1]** **[>]** **[Yes]** **[>]**.
  - To delete all received messages in folder: Press **[>]** **[2]** **[5]** **[>]** enter terminal security code **[\*][0][\*]** **[Yes]** **[>]**.
  - To delete all sent/unsent mail in folder: Press **[>]** **[2]** **[3]** **[>]** enter terminal security code **[\*][0][\*]** **[Yes]** **[>]**.
  - To delete read mail: Press **[>]** **[2]** **[3]** **[>]** enter terminal security code **[\*][0][\*]** **[Yes]** **[>]**.
  - To delete unread mail: Press **[>]** **[2]** **[4]** **[>]** enter terminal security code **[\*][0][\*]** **[Yes]** **[>]**.
  - To select and delete mail: Press **[>]** **[2]** **[2]** **[>]** select message **[0]** (repeatable) **[>]** **[>]** **[Yes]** **[>]**.

### Note

- In the messages list, selecting and deleting mail in the FOMA card is possible.
- For Delete selected, select up to 50 messages. When the number of messages in the folder is 50 or less, press **[SelAll]**/**[ClrAll]** to select or clear all.
- Depending on i-αppli software, i-αppli mail may be deleted automatically from folder.

## Received/Sent Messages History

### Using Mail History

The FOMA terminal stores a history of up to 30 received/sent i-mode mail or SMS starting with the newest. Use history to send mail, make voice/Videophone calls or save the other party's mail address or phone number to phonebook.

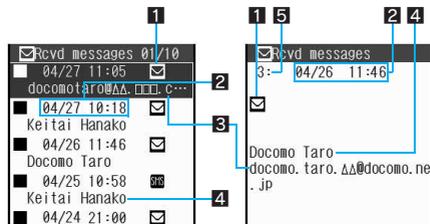
- When 30 entries are exceeded, entries are erased starting with the oldest.
- Parties that repeat are assigned as separate entries.
- Mail addresses from Broadcast mail are not recorded. All successfully sent mail can be checked in the sent messages screen (**[P. 230]**).
- Up to 50 single-byte characters appear for mail addresses.

## Received/Sent message list/details layouts

Here is an example using the received messages.

### Messages list

### Message details screen



### 1 Types of history

	i-mode mail
	SMS
	Mail that cannot be replied to, or SMS with no caller ID (Received messages history)/unsent messages (Sent messages history)

### 2 Received date/time (Received messages history) or Sent date/time (Sent messages history)

Indicates Received date/time or Sent date/time of messages.

### 3 Other party's mail address or phone number

Other party's mail address or phone number appears.

### 4 Name

Appears when the same mail address or phone number is already saved in phonebook.

### 5 History number

Received date/time or sent date/time is numbered starting from the most recent.

### Note

- Set to not show Received/Sent messages history (**[P. 154]**).

## Using Received/Sent messages history to send mail

### 1 In stand-by, press **[\*][1]** **[>]** [RcvdHist].

- Smaller numbers in the upper right part of the display represent newer received messages.
- **Show rcvd msgs set to OFF** appears when Show received messages is set to **OFF**.



- To send mail using Sent messages history, press  $\odot$  (☐)  $\odot$  [SentHist] in stand-by. **Show sent msgs set to OFF** appears when Show sent messages is set to **OFF**.

## 2 Select a history entry and press $\odot$ .

- Press  $\odot$  to end viewing.

## 3 Press $\odot$ [Mail].

- When i-mode mail history is selected, compose message screen appears. Recipient's mail address is entered in recipient field. Refer to steps 3 and 4 on P. 215 for subsequent steps.
- When SMS history is selected, compose SMS screen appears. Recipient's phone number is entered in recipient field. Refer to steps 3 and 4 on P. 240 for subsequent steps.

## Saving phone numbers and mail addresses from Received messages history to phonebook

### 1 In stand-by, press $\odot$ (\*☐) $\odot$ [RcvdHist], select a history entry, press $\odot$ and $\odot$ 1 [Add to phonebook].

- Alternatively, select an entry and press  $\odot$  1 in received messages list.
- Select i-mode mail history and perform operation to save mail address.
- Select SMS history and perform operation to save phone number.



### 2 Select a saving method.

To save new to FOMA terminal handset phonebook	1
To save new to FOMA card phonebook	2
To add/overwrite phonebook	3 → select name → $\odot$

- Mail address or phone number is entered in phonebook entry screen. Continue phonebook saving operations (☞ P. 98, P. 103).

#### Note

- Save phone numbers and mail addresses from Sent messages history to phonebook. Operations are the same as for Received messages history.

## Deleting mail history <Delete>

### 1 In the received messages/sent messages list (☞ P. 235), select history and press $\odot$ 2 [Delete].

### 2 Select deletion method.

To delete one	1 → Yes → $\odot$
To delete all	2 → Yes → $\odot$

## Related Operations

### Make calls from mail history <Phone>

- 1 In the received messages/sent messages list, select history  $\odot$  3  $\rightarrow$  Yes  $\rightarrow$   $\odot$ .
- 2 Press  $\odot$  to make voice call.
  - To make Videophone call: Press  $\odot$ .
  - To call PushTalk: Press  $\odot$ .

### Note (Related operations)

#### Making calls from message screen

- Calls can be placed when mail address and phone number of sender is saved in phonebook in advance.

## Mail Setting

### Setting FOMA Terminal Mail Functions

### Changing Font Size <Font Size>

Default setting **Normal**

Set i-mode mail/SMS font size.

- Font size does not change in template list screens or Deco-mail preview screens opened from a template while composing mail.

### 1 In stand-by, press $\odot$ 9 4 and select font size.

Large font	1
Normal	2
Small font	3

## Related Operations

### Change font size in message screen by one-touch operation

- To select a smaller font: Press 1.
- To select a larger font: Press 3.

### Change font size from Submenu in message screen <Font Size>

- 1 In the received message screen, press  $\odot$  3.
- 2 Select font size  $\rightarrow$   $\odot$ .
  - In the sent message screen: Press  $\odot$  4.

## Sorting Mail Automatically <Sort Rules>

Set Sort rules for folders and sort i-mode mail and SMS automatically.

- Rules to sort mail in **Inbox**, **Outbox** and **Unsent messages** are not available.
- SMS cannot be sorted to FOMA card.
- Sort to up to 25 folders (including i-appli folders) in Inbox/Outbox and set up to ten rules for each folder.

- Normal mail can be sorted to mail-type i-αpli folders. Sort rules for mail-type i-αpli take priority.

## Sort rules

The following six rules are available.

Address (From)	Sort by sender's address (Received mail only).
Address (From/Cc)/ Address (To/Cc)	Criteria are applied from the folder shown at top to From, To and Cc for received mail and To, Cc, and Bcc for sent mail.
Group	Sort by groups set in FOMA terminal handset phonebook.
Subject	Sort by text in subject.
Phonebook empty	Sort mail from senders not saved in FOMA terminal handset phonebook. Sort sent mail to a specified folder when an address not saved in the phonebook is entered in To/Cc.
All received (sent) messages	Sort all received (or sent) mail.

- **Folder 1** has top priority and the folder listed at the bottom has least priority if Sort rules for multiple folders coincide.
- Secret phonebook entries are treated as unsaved entries. Note that mail from secret entries will be sorted as **Phonebook empty** rather than **Group**. To apply **Group**, set Secret mode to **ON**.
- Sort mail by specified mail address. Specify the entire address including the portion after @ (up to 50 single-byte characters). However, **@docomo.ne.jp** can be abbreviated when sender is using an i-mode terminal (including mova). SMS can be sorted by specifying phone number.
- Note that **Group** and **Phonebook empty** are not available while Function lock is applied to phonebook.
- Mail from senders saved in FOMA card phonebook are sorted as **Phonebook empty**.
- i-αpli mail is sorted to the compatible mail-type i-αpli folder regardless of Sort rules.

## Setting Sort rules to folders

**1** In Inbox/Outbox list (☞ P. 229), select folder and press **[F1]** **[3]** [Sort rules].

- Set rules are prioritized from top to bottom.

**2** Select entry number and press **[F1]** to set Sort rules.

- Select a used number to edit Sort rules. Re-select Sort rules, press **[F1]**, select **Yes** and press **[F1]**.
- When setting mail-type i-αpli folder, **Mail will be used by software. Set mail sorting?** appears. Select **Yes**, and press **[F1]** to set Sort rules. Select **No**, press **[F1]** and the screen of step 1 reappears.

To sort received mail by sender's mail address	Select <b>Address(From)</b> → <b>[F1]</b> → select entry method → <b>[F1]</b> → select (or enter) mail address → <b>[F1]</b> ● Up to 20 single-byte characters appear.
To sort mail by mail address of sender or recipient(s)/ broadcast	Select <b>Address(From/Cc)</b> or <b>Address (To/Cc)</b> → <b>[F1]</b> → select entry method → <b>[F1]</b> → select (or enter) mail address → <b>[F1]</b> ● Up to 20 single-byte characters appear.
To sort by group	Select <b>Group</b> → <b>[F1]</b> → select group name → <b>[F1]</b> ● Group name appears.
To sort by text contained in subject	Select <b>Subject</b> → <b>[F1]</b> → enter text → <b>[F1]</b> ● Enter up to 30 single-byte (15 double-byte) characters. The first 20 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters are shown.
To sort by mail addresses not in FOMA terminal handset phonebook	Select <b>Phonebook empty</b> → <b>[F1]</b>
To sort by all received (sent) messages	Select <b>All rcvd messages</b> or <b>All sent messages</b> → <b>[F1]</b> → <b>Yes</b> → <b>[F1]</b> ● <b>All rcvd (sent) messages</b> is set to <b>[1]</b> . ● Select <b>No</b> and press <b>[F1]</b> to set to specified number.

**3** Repeat step 2 to set multiple rules.

**4** Press **[F1]** [Complete].

## Deleting specified Sort rules

Sort rules can be deleted.

**1** In Inbox/Outbox list (☞ P. 229), select folder and press **[F1]** **[3]** [Sort rules].

**2** Select sort rule, press **[F1]** and select a deletion method.

To delete one	<b>[1]</b> → <b>Yes</b> → <b>[F1]</b> → <b>[F1]</b>
To delete all	<b>[2]</b> → <b>Yes</b> → <b>[F1]</b> → <b>[F1]</b>

## Adding Signature to i-mode Mail

<Save Signature>

Default setting **ON**

Add a signature to notify name, phone number and mail address. Also, decorate a signature.

- Set to automatically add (enter) signature to the text when composing i-mode mail.
- Only one signature can be saved.
- Signature cannot be added to SMS.

## 1 In stand-by, press 9 0.

- When in the Cycloid position, press 9 0 1.
- When a signature is already saved, the saved signature appears.

## 2 Enter signature, press and [ON].

- Enter up to 10,000 single-byte (5,000 double-byte) characters. Insert up to 90 KB of images. Line breaks (↵) are available.

## Related Operations

### Decorate signature

#### 1 In stand-by, press 9 0.

- When in the Cycloid position: In stand-by, press 9 0 1.

#### 2 Decorate signature referring to steps 3 to 6 of "Inserting message text while decorating" on P. 218.

### Delete signature

#### 1 In stand-by, press 9 0.

- When in the Cycloid position: In stand-by, press 9 0 1.

#### 2 Press (for 1+ seconds) 2.

## Setting Check New Message Details

### <Check New Message>

**Default setting** i-mode mail, Message R, Message F: **ON**

Set message type to check (i-mode mail, Message R/F).

## 1 In stand-by, press 9 6, select type and **ON** or **OFF**.

i-mode mail	1 →  1 [ON] or  2 [OFF]
Message R	2 →  1 [ON] or  2 [OFF]
Message F	3 →  1 [ON] or  2 [OFF]

## 2 Press [Complete].

## Selecting and Receiving i-mode Mail

### <Receive Opt. Setting>

**Default setting** **OFF**

- All mail is retrieved when checking for new messages even if Receive option setting is set to **ON**. To not retrieve all mail, set to not check i-mode mail ( P. 225).

## 1 In stand-by, press 9 8, press [ON], select **Yes** and press .



## Creating Mail Member List <Mail Member>

Save multiple addresses for a mail member to easily specify multiple addresses. Unlike Broadcast mail, multiple addresses are specified collectively.

- Save up to five mail addresses per mail member.
- Save up to ten mail members.
- Charges are the same as when sending one mail (Network charges will increase as addresses are added).

## Saving addresses for mail members

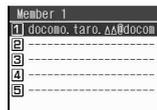
### 1 In stand-by, press 9 9.

### 2 Select number for mail member, press , select a slot and press .



### 3 Select entry method, press , select (or enter) mail address and press .

- When number selected is already in use, **Overwrite?** appears if entry method other than [Direct input] is pressed. Select **Yes** and press to select mail address. Select **No**, press and the screen of step 3 reappears. When [Direct input] is pressed, the address entry screen appears.



- To add mail address, select a slot, press and repeat step 3.

### 4 Press [Complete].

## Editing mail member names

### 1 In stand-by, press 9 9, select mail member and press 1 [Edit member].

- To reset member name, select a mail member and press 2 [Reset one member]. Select **Yes** and press to reset member names (**Member 1 to Member 10**).



### 2 Edit member name and press .

- Enter up to 20 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters.
- Press for 1+ seconds to delete member name.

## Deleting addresses saved for mail members

### 1 In stand-by, press 9 9, select mail member and press .

## 2 Select mail address, press and select deletion method.

To delete one	→ <b>Yes</b> →  →
To delete all	→ <b>Yes</b> →  → ● Delete all addresses for specified mail member.

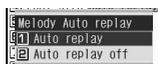
## Setting Whether to Automatically Replay Melody <Melody Auto Replay>

Default setting **Auto replay**

Set whether to automatically play melodies attached or pasted to Message R/F or received i-mode mail.

- Melodies which exceed 100 KB cannot be played back.

## 1 In stand-by, press and select whether to automatically play melodies.



Auto replay		Plays automatically when opened.
Auto replay off		Does not play automatically when opened.

### Note

- When **Auto replay** is set while in **Manner mode**, a confirmation screen appears to select whether to play or not. Select **Yes** to play.
- When One Seg is played using **Multi Window**, melodies cannot be played automatically even if **Auto replay** is set.

## Setting Quick Reply Mail Message <Quick Reply Mail>

Set messages in advance for Quick reply ( P. 226).

- Ten messages of up to 500 single-byte (250 double-byte) characters can be saved.
- The following messages are preset.

	また後でかけ直します (Will call back later)		よろしくお願い致します (Your cooperation is greatly appreciated)
	OKです (OK)		キャンセルです (Canceled)
	NGです (No good)		今忙しい (Busy)
	ありがとうございます (Thank you very much)		了解しました (Understood)
	ごめんなさい (I'm sorry)		ちょっと待ってください (One moment please) ● When in the Cycloid position: Press .

## 1 In stand-by, press , select number of the message to save or edit and press .

## 2 Edit message and press .

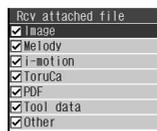
## Setting Whether to Receive Attached Files <Rcv Attached File>

Default setting **All attachments**

Set attached file types to be received. Attached files set not to be received are not acquired when mail is received. They are treated as attached files for manual reception.

- Refer to P. 227 on how to acquire user-acquired attached files for manual reception.

## 1 In stand-by, press .



## 2 Select type of attachment, press and then press .

- appears for selected and  appears for unselected entries. Press to switch.
- Press [SelAll]/ [ClrAll] to select or clear all.

### Note

- For Message R/F, all attached files are received regardless of settings.
- Melodies in MFi format pasted in the message text are received regardless of settings.

## Setting Received Mail Notice While Using Other Functions <Receive Display>

Default setting **Notice first**

Set notification method for when mail is received while using other functions.

- Receive display and receive complete screen are not shown while a call is in progress, i-appli is running, the camera is being activated, pattern definitions are being updated or Streaming type i-motion is being downloaded.  
They are also not shown while watching or recording One Seg in full-screen in the normal position or the Cycloid position.

## 1 In stand-by, press and select notification method.

Notice first		When receiving mail, Receive display and received , ,  or  icon appear. Called LED flashes, Mail ring tone sounds and receive complete screen appears.
--------------	--	--

Operation first	②	When receiving mail, received ☑, [R], [F] or [M] icon appears. Mail ring tone does not sound, called LED does not flash and vibrator does not activate. Receive display and receive complete screen are not shown.
-----------------	---	--

## Checking Mail Settings Status

<Check Mail Settings>

### 1 In stand-by, press [M] 9 [C] 3.

- When in the Cycloid position, press [M] 9 [C] 6.
- Press [C] to turn the page.
- Press [C] to end checking.

Check mail settings	
Recv. attached file	
Image	ON
Melody	ON
i-motion	ON
ToruCa	ON
PDF	ON
Tool data	ON
Other	ON

## Resetting Mail Settings

<Reset Mail Settings>

Reset mail settings to default values.

### 1 In stand-by, press [M] 9 [C] 4.

- When in the Cycloid position, press [M] 9 [C] 7.

### 2 Enter terminal security code, press [C], select Yes and press [C].

#### Note

- The following settings are not reset.
 

■ Save signature	■ SMS center
■ Quick reply mail	■ SMS expiry
■ Mail member	■ SMS input character

## Related Operations

Apply Function lock to Mail <Function lock>

### 1 In stand-by, press [M] 9 [C] 5.

- When in the Cycloid position: In stand-by, press [M] 9 [C] 8.

### 2 Enter terminal security code ▶ [C] ▶ [C].

## Compose/Send SMS

### Composing and Sending SMS (Short Messages)

Compose and send SMS.

- Enter phone number as the address for SMS.
- Number of characters that can be entered in SMS message text depends on SMS input character setting.
- Single-byte katakana and pictographs in SMS message text may not appear correctly for recipient.
- Exchange messages with users of non-DoCoMo overseas telecommunications providers. Refer to the DoCoMo web page for information on available countries and providers.

## 1 In stand-by, press [M] 5.

Compose SMS	
To	
Msg	

## 2 Select To, press [C] and select an entry method.

To select from phonebook	① → select recipient → [C] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If phone number exceeds 20 digits, exceeding portion is deleted.</li> </ul>
To enter directly	② → enter address → [C] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Enter phone number (up to 20 digits).</li> <li>• Press [0] for 1+ seconds to enter +. Enter up to 21 digits if + is entered.</li> <li>• For addresses of non-DoCoMo overseas telecommunications providers, enter + (press [0] for 1+ seconds), the country code, and the recipient's mobile phone number. If the phone number begins with 0, remove the 0. Alternatively, enter 010, the country code and the phone number (Add 010 to reply to SMS received from abroad).</li> </ul>
To select from Sent messages	③ → select recipient → [C] → [C] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Selectable when there are SMS sent messages.</li> </ul>
To select from Received messages	④ → select recipient → [C] → [C] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Selectable when there are SMS received messages.</li> </ul>

## 3 Select Msg, press [C], enter message text and press [C].

- If SMS input character is set to **Japanese(70Chara)**, up to 70 single- or double-byte characters can be entered. If SMS input character is set to **English(160Chara)**, up to 160 single-byte alphanumeric characters can be entered.
- Line breaks (↵) are counted as one character when set to **Japanese(70Chara)** and two characters when set to **English(160Chara)**. Spaces (blanks) are counted as one character.
- When set to **English(160Chara)**, [ ] ^ | { } are counted as single-byte characters in the message entry screen but are counted as double-byte characters when sent. **Transmission failed** may appear and message may not be sent even if 160 or fewer characters are entered in the message entry screen.

## 4 Press [C] [Send].

- When complete, **Sent SMS** appears.

- To set delivery notice, press **Ⓜ**(3) and either **1** [Request] or **2** [Do not request].
- To set expiration date, press **Ⓜ**(4), select expiration date and press **Ⓞ**.

### Note

- When entering address, + can only be entered at the beginning.
- Depending on the signal status, messages may not be sent. SMS that cannot be sent is saved as unsent SMS.
- Text may not appear correctly on receiving end depending on signal status.
- SMS can be exchanged without i-mode subscription.
- The FOMA terminal receives Short Mail from mova service i-mode terminals as SMS.
- Up to a combined total of 20 received and sent SMS can be saved on the FOMA card. Unsent SMS cannot be saved on the FOMA card.
- Delivery notice and expiration date set at time of sending are not reflected on **Report request** and **SMS expiry**.

### When called during editing

- Previous screen reappears after disconnecting and editing can be resumed.

### When 184 or 186 is added (☞ P. 46)

- SMS cannot be sent when **186** is added to beginning of address. SMS can be sent when **184** is added, but caller ID is notified.

## Saving SMS (Short Messages) and Sending Later <Save SMS>

Save SMS being composed to FOMA terminal handset and continue composing at a later time. Edit saved SMS and send.

- Refer to P. 240 for details on composing SMS.
- Up to 500 sent and unsent SMS (combined with i-mode mail) can be saved on the FOMA terminal handset.

## Saving unsent SMS

- 1 Press **Ⓜ**(2) [Save] while composing SMS (☞ steps 1 to 3 on P. 240).

- SMS being composed is saved as unsent SMS.

### Note

- Press **Ⓜ** while composing SMS and the end confirmation screen appears. Select **Yes** to cancel composing SMS. Canceled SMS is not saved.
- Unsent SMS cannot be copied (saved) to FOMA card.

## Editing/Sending saved SMS

- 1 In unsent messages list (☞ P. 229), select SMS and press **Ⓞ**.

- 2 Select item, press **Ⓞ**, edit and press **Ⓜ** [Send].

- Edit using same steps as when composing new message. Refer to steps 2 and 3 on P. 240 for details.

## Editing/Resending sent SMS

- 1 In sent messages list (☞ P. 229), select SMS and press **Ⓞ**.

- 2 Edit/Resend mail.

To edit	<b>Ⓞ</b> or <b>Ⓜ</b> (1) → edit SMS → <b>Ⓞ</b> ● Edit using same steps as when composing new message. Refer to steps 2 and 3 on P. 240 for details.
To resend	<b>Ⓜ</b> (2)

## Receive SMS

### Receiving SMS (Short Messages)

SMS is automatically received.

- Up to a combined total of 1,000 received SMS and i-mode mail can be saved on the FOMA terminal handset (Capacity varies depending on size of received messages).

- 1 SMS is automatically received.

- 2 SMS receive results appear and SMS ring tone sounds (**SMS** appears).



Main display  
Receive complete screen



Sub display  
Receive complete screen

- When the FOMA terminal is closed, the total number of i-mode mail and SMS appears after **Receive complete** appears on the sub display.

### Meaning of icons displayed in stand-by

(red font)	Unread SMS.
	Unread i-mode mail and SMS.
	i-mode mail and SMS on FOMA terminal handset are full.
(blue font)	SMS on FOMA card is full.
(red)	i-mode mail and SMS on FOMA terminal handset are full, and SMS on FOMA card is full.

- 3 In the receive complete screen, select **Mail** and press **Ⓞ**.

- If no operations are performed in receive complete screen for approximately 30 seconds, the screen before reception automatically reappears. **xx mail message(s)** appears when the stand-by display reappears.

## 4 Select folder, press **⊙**, select SMS and press **⊙**.

- Refer to “Checking for SMS (Short Messages)” on P. 242 for details on viewing received SMS.

### Note

- SMS ring tone can be changed (☞ P. 117).
- SMS on FOMA card cannot be overwritten.
- Copy received SMS saved on FOMA terminal handset to FOMA card. Delivery reports cannot be copied.
- When sent SMS are copied to FOMA card, the delivery reports are also copied.

### Receiving when not in stand-by

- When **Receive display** is set to **Notice first**, SMS ring tone sounds and icon (☞ P. 241) and receive complete screen appear.

## Checking for SMS (Short Messages)

### <SMS Check>

Received SMS is held at the SMS center while the handset is outside the service area, in Self mode, or turned off. Retrieve from the SMS center.

## 1 In stand-by, press **☑** **6** **2**.

- After the screen on the right appears, automatic retrieval starts if there is SMS held at the center.



### Note

- SMS cannot be received anymore when FOMA terminal handset and FOMA card memory are full. Delete/View unread SMS or disable protection (☞ P. 234). Read SMS or unprotected SMS are overwritten in order from the oldest first.
- Automatic retrieval may not start immediately after checking.

## Viewing Received SMS (Short Messages) <Display Received SMS>

Open received SMS.

- Received SMS are saved in **Inbox**. SMS are sorted into various folders according to Sort rules (☞ P. 237).
- Received SMS copied to FOMA card are also saved in **Inbox**.

## 1 In stand-by, press **☑** **1**.

- Box list layout (☞ P. 229)
- To view sent SMS, press **☑** **2** in stand-by.
- To view unsent SMS, press **☑** **3** in stand-by.

## 2 Select folder, press **⊙**, select SMS and press **⊙**.

- Message list/view layout for messages (☞ P. 229)
- To view received SMS in FOMA card, select **Inbox**, press **⊙**, select SMS and press **⊙**. In **Inbox**, received SMS list appears for both FOMA terminal handset and FOMA card. Distinguish by the icon (☞ P. 229).
- To view sent SMS in FOMA card, select **Outbox**, press **⊙**, select SMS and press **⊙**.
- Press **☑** to end viewing.



### Note

- Up to a combined total of 1,000 received SMS and i-mode mail can be saved on the FOMA terminal handset.

## Replying to Received SMS (Short Messages) <Reply to SMS>

Reply to SMS.

## 1 In SMS screen (☞ step 2 of “Viewing Received SMS (Short Messages)” on P. 242), press **☑** **1** **1** [Reply], compose SMS and press **☑** [Send].

- Press **☑** **1** **3** [Reply with quote] in SMS screen to quote the received SMS for creating a reply.
- Enter characters in message text according to sender's SMS input character.
- Refer to steps 2 and 3 on P. 240 for details.

### Note

- **Quick reply** is not available for SMS.
- SMS from User unset/Payphone/Not support cannot be replied to.
- If SMS in reply to FOMA card SMS is saved while being composed, the SMS is saved as unsent SMS on the FOMA terminal handset.
- **+** is added automatically at beginning of addresses if sender is a user of a non-DoCoMo overseas telecommunication provider.

## Forwarding Received SMS (Short Messages) <Forward SMS>

## 1 In SMS screen (☞ step 2 of “Viewing Received SMS (Short Messages)” on P. 242), press **☑** **1** **4** [Forward], compose SMS and press **☑** [Send].

- Refer to steps 2 and 3 on P. 240 for details.

## SMS Settings

### SMS (Short Messages) Settings

#### Setting SMS (Short Messages) Center <SMS Center>

Default setting **DoCoMo** (DoCoMo SMS center)

SMS center host can be changed.

- Not available if FOMA card is not inserted.

Setting does not normally need to be changed.

#### 1 In stand-by, press 9 .

- When in the Cycloid position, press 9 2.



#### 2 Press 2 [User set], enter SMS center address and press .

- Enter up to 20 digits.

#### 3 Press 1 [International] or 2 [Unknown].

#### Receiving Notification of SMS (Short Messages) Retrieval <Report Request>

Default setting **Do not request**

Set whether to receive delivery report for SMS.

- Not available if FOMA card is not inserted.

#### 1 In stand-by, press 9 .

- When in the Cycloid position, press 9 3.



#### 2 Select whether to receive delivery reports.

To receive	1
To not receive	2

#### Note

- Delivery reports are received as SMS.
- Report request can be set when SMS is composed also.
- A delivery report by itself cannot be copied to FOMA card or microSD Memory Card or be sent by Ir data transmission.

## Setting SMS (Short Messages)

### Expiration Date <SMS Expiry>

Default setting **3 days**

Set number of days for SMS to be stored at the SMS center on occasions such as the receiver being outside the service area and failed to receive the SMS. Select from 0 to 3 days.

If you select 0 days, SMS is resent within a fixed time period and deleted from the center.

- Not available if FOMA card is not inserted.

#### 1 In stand-by, press 9 1 and select length of time.

- When in the Cycloid position, press 9 4.

0 days	1	1 day	2	2 days	3	3 days	4
--------	---	-------	---	--------	---	--------	---



#### Note

- Setting can be made when SMS is composed also.

#### Setting Character Type to Enter in Message <SMS Input Character>

Default setting **Japanese(70Chara)**

Set type of characters that can be entered in SMS message text.

- Not available if FOMA card is not inserted.

#### 1 In stand-by, press 9 2.

- When in the Cycloid position, press 9 5.

#### 2 Select character type to enter.

Japanese	1
Single-byte alphanumeric characters	2

## Saving SMS (Short Messages) to FOMA Card

Copy SMS saved in FOMA terminal handset to FOMA card. Up to a combined total of 20 received and sent SMS can be saved to FOMA card.

- Insert FOMA card in advance.

#### Copying SMS (Short Messages) from FOMA Terminal Handset to FOMA Card

Example: When copying received SMS

#### 1 In stand-by, press 1, select folder and press .

- Received messages list appears.

- For sent SMS, press (2) in stand-by, select folder and press .
- To copy from SMS screen, press (6) (4) (For sent SMS, press (7) (4)) in SMS screen. Select **Yes** and press to copy.

## 2 Select SMS in FOMA terminal handset and press (3) (3) [Copy to UIM].

- When an SMS in FOMA terminal handset is selected, **Copy to UIM** appears in the Submenu.

### Meaning of icons

- In FOMA terminal handset

	Unread SMS
	Read SMS
	Sent SMS
	Unread SMS (protected)
	Read SMS (protected)
	Sent SMS (protected)

- In FOMA card

	Unread SMS
	Read SMS
	Sent SMS

## 3 Select copy method.

- Received SMS is copied to **Inbox**, and sent SMS is copied to **Outbox**.



To copy one	(1) → <b>Yes</b> →
To select and copy	(2) → select SMS  (repeatable) →  (6) → <b>Yes</b> → ● Press  [SelAll]/ [ClrAll] to select or clear all.

### Note

- Unsent SMS cannot be copied to FOMA card.
- Delivery reports cannot be copied.
- Overwrite copy is not available.
- Copying is canceled when the save limit for FOMA card is reached.
- When sent SMS are copied to FOMA card, the delivery reports are also copied. However, sent date and time are not copied.

## Copying FOMA Card SMS (Short Messages) to FOMA Terminal Handset

### Example: When copying received SMS

- 1 In Inbox list ( P. 229), select **Inbox** folder and press .

- For sent SMS, press (2) in stand-by, select **Outbox** folder and press .
- To copy from SMS screen, press (6) (4) (for sent SMS, press (7) (4)) in SMS screen. Select **Yes** and press to copy.

## 2 Select SMS in FOMA card and press (3) (3) [Copy to the phone].

- When an SMS in FOMA card is selected, **Copy to the phone** appears in the Submenu.

### Meaning of icons

	Unread SMS on FOMA card
	Read SMS on FOMA card
	Sent SMS on FOMA card

## 3 Select copy method.

- Received SMS is copied to **Inbox**, and sent SMS is copied to **Outbox**.



To copy one	(1) → <b>Yes</b> →
To select and copy	(2) → select SMS  (repeatable) →  (6) → <b>Yes</b> → ● Press  [SelAll]/ [ClrAll] to select or clear all.

### Note

- Overwrite copy is not available.
- Copying is canceled when the save limit for FOMA terminal handset (up to a combined total of 1,000 for i-mode mail and received SMS, up to 500 for sent SMS) is reached.

## Delete SMS

### Deleting SMS (Short Messages)

Delete SMS with the same operation as "Deleting mail" on P. 234.

## Scan Message

### Avoiding Unsolicited SMS (Short Messages)

Check SMS that came with phone numbers or URL in the confirmation screen.

- The confirmation screen does not appear for mopera mail.
- Refer to P. 458 for details on setting.
- To view received SMS, press in the screen on the right.



# i-appli

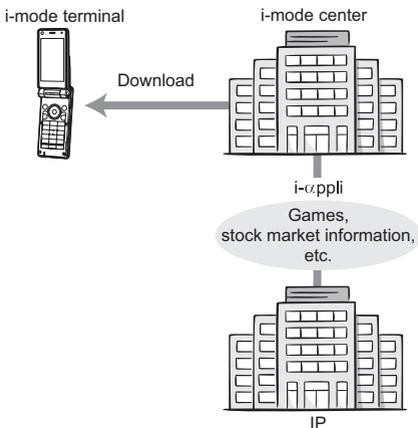
● i-appli .....	<i-appli>246
● i-appliDX .....	246
● Downloading i-appli from Sites .....	<Download>247
● Running i-appli .....	<Run i-appli>248
● Running i-appli Automatically .....	<Auto Start>255
● Running i-appli from Sites or i-mode Mail .....	<i-appli To Function>256
● Setting i-appli as the Stand-by Display .....	<i-appli Stand-by>257
● Managing i-appli .....	258
● Viewing i-appli Used Data in microSD Memory Card .....	<Used by i-appli (Contents Transfer Compatible)>259
● Using Various i-appli Functions .....	259

## i-appli

### i-appli

Download i-appli software from sites for more convenient use of the i-mode compatible FOMA terminal (i-mode terminal). Download various games to the i-mode terminal. Also, download market information i-appli and periodically receive automatic updates of the stock market.

With mapping i-appli, only necessary data is downloaded, enabling smoother scrolling. Directly save information from an i-appli to the phonebook or Schedule, or use an i-appli to link with Data box to store or retrieve images.



- To download i-appli ☎ P. 247
- To run i-appli ☎ P. 248
- To run i-appli automatically ☎ P. 255
- Depending on the software, the terminal ID and UIM ID may be used.
- Some software may transmit data when running. It is possible to configure the software not to transmit data.

### Using Saved Data

Use certain i-appli software to view, save and use data (phonebook, bookmarks, schedules, images, icon information and ToruCa) saved in the i-mode terminal. The following can be performed using saved data.

- Add to phonebook
- Save bookmarks
- Retrieve images from Data box
- Save new ToruCa
- Use icon information
- Save schedule
- Save images to Data box
- Use microSD Memory Card

## i-appliDX

Link i-appliDX with various information on the i-mode terminal (mail, call/received history, phonebook data, etc.), have animated characters assist in composing messages and inform who incoming callers are. Also link with mail to receive real-time information such as stock quotes and game progress.

### Using Saved Data

Use certain i-appliDX software to view, save and use saved data such as mail, Redial, Received calls and ring tones in addition to saved data (phonebook, bookmarks, schedules, images, icon information and ToruCa) available for use with regular i-appli. The following can be performed using saved data.

- Add to phonebook
- View phonebook
- Use icon information
- Save schedule
- Use compose i-mode message screen
- View latest Received calls
- Save ring tones
- Retrieve images from Data box
- Change screen settings (stand-by, incoming/outgoing calls, sending/receiving mail, receiving Message R/F)
- To verify the validity of the software, some i-appliDX software may transmit data regardless of the software connection setting. The number of connections and connection timing differ depending on the software.
- Set the date and time before starting i-appliDX software.
- Save bookmarks
- Use Mail menu
- View latest redial numbers
- View latest unread messages
- Change ring tones (call, mail, Message R/F)
- Save images to Data box
- Save new ToruCa, select and retrieve ToruCa
- Use microSD Memory Card

### Mail-type i-appli

A mail-type i-appli is an i-appliDX that provides more enjoyable and convenient use of i-appli software by exchanging information via i-mode mail. Receive real-time information such as stock quotes and game progress.

- Some i-appli mail may not be displayed properly when using mail-type i-appli.

### Osaifu-Keitai Compatible i-appli

Use the convenient features of Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli, such as reading and writing data on an IC card, downloading electronic money or railway tickets, viewing the balance and usage history on the mobile phone.

- When using Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli, information in the IC card is sent to the IP (Information Provider).
- Osaifu-Keitai ☎ P. 262

## Other Features

### i-appli stand-by

Set i-appli as stand-by and enjoy receiving mail or making calls while the i-appli is running. In addition, use the stand-by to conveniently display up-to-date news, weather and other information or have your favorite character inform you of incoming mail and alarm times (☞ P. 257).

- Use this function with software compatible with i-appli stand-by.

### i-appli auto start

Configure the i-appli software to start at a certain time, date or day of the week. Some software can also be set to start automatically at a preset interval (☞ P. 255).

### Camera

Use i-appli software to shoot still pictures with the camera on the i-mode terminal (☞ P. 260).

- Use this function with software compatible with camera function.

### Ir exchange

Use i-appli software to connect to infrared communication (Ir exchange) devices. Link to Ir exchange devices for even greater use of the i-mode terminal (☞ P. 260).

- Use this function with software compatible with Ir exchange function.
- Some data may not be transmitted depending on the Ir exchange function of the other device.

### Infrared remote control

Use i-appli software to operate various electronic devices compatible with Ir remote control. For example, use the pre-installed software, Gガイド番組組裏リモコン (G-GUIDE program schedule remote control), to use the handset as AV remote control linked with the TV program schedule (☞ P. 336).

- Use this function with software compatible with Ir remote control function. Software compatible with the other device is required.

### Bar code reader

Use i-appli software to read bar codes (JAN/QR codes) with the camera on the i-mode terminal (☞ P. 260).

## Download

### Downloading i-appli from Sites

Download i-appli software from sites and Internet web pages, and run the software on the FOMA terminal display.

- Save up to 100 i-appli (Capacity varies depending on size of software). Or, save up to five mail-type i-appli software.

### 1 While viewing sites (☞ steps 1 to 3 on P. 182) or Internet web pages (☞ steps 1 and 2 on P. 187), select software and press .

- The i-appli download screen appears and downloading begins.

For software which uses saved data, terminal and UIM ID, and microSD Memory Card	In the confirmation screen of download, select <b>Yes</b> →  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Press  [Svd data] to view a list of saved data.</li> </ul>
When <b>Run software?</b> appears	Select <b>Yes</b> →  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● The software may start automatically after downloading is complete. In such cases, the software cannot be saved to the FOMA terminal immediately after downloading. After ending the software, select whether to save the software available for saving.</li> </ul>
When the FOMA terminal handset does not have enough memory	After <b>Memory is full or saved data exceeds limit. Overwrite?</b> appears, select <b>Yes</b> →  → select software  (repeatable) → 
To stop downloading	While <b>Downloading</b> is displayed, press 

- If software was already downloaded with a different FOMA card, **Already downloaded by different UIM. Overwrite?** appears. Select **Yes** and press  to overwrite. However, Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli software is not overwritten.
- Depending on the software settings, the setting screens (Stand-by display, Network set, Program guide key setting) for i-appli may appear after downloading is complete. After setting items, press  [Complete].

### Note

- If download is failed due to weak signal strength, save the data downloaded until the interruption and download the remaining data from the software list (☞ P. 248).
- If software currently saved in the handset is deleted because of insufficient memory during download, and download fails due to weak signal strength, the deleted software cannot be restored.

## Note

- Information may not be provided if **Network set** is set to **No**.
-  appears when downloading i-αppli information or software from an SSL-enabled page.
- Once downloaded, some i-αppli software may continue transmitting data automatically. The FOMA terminal must be set up in advance to use this service.
- Terminal security code entry screen appears when i-αppli software is downloaded while **Function lock** is applied to i-αppli. When terminal security code is entered, Function lock is temporarily unset and download is possible.

### When selected software is already saved to the FOMA terminal

- If a new version of software is available, a confirmation screen asking whether to upgrade the software appears.  
Select **Yes** to begin download (upgrade).

### When Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli cannot be downloaded

- Depending on the IC card data capacity, downloading Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli may not be possible even when software storage space is available. Follow the instructions on the screen, delete the displayed software, and repeat the download (Depending on the software to be downloaded, some software may not appear as candidates for deletion).  
For some software, the software must be started and the data on the IC card must be deleted in order to delete the software itself.
- While **IC card lock** is set, Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli may not be downloaded.

### Memory area

- Data box** and i-αppli share memory area. Depending on the amount of data saved in Data box, i-αppli software may not be saved.

## Downloading mail-type i-αppli software

Note the following when downloading mail-type i-αppli software.

- When downloading mail-type i-αppli software, mail-type i-αppli folders are automatically created in Inbox, Outbox and Unsent messages. The folder name is the name of the downloaded mail-type i-αppli and cannot be changed.
- Save up to five mail-type i-αppli folders.
- If a mail-type i-αppli using the same folder is already on the software list, that software cannot be downloaded.
- If a mail-type i-αppli is downloaded again when only the folders for that i-αppli remain, those folders for the i-αppli can be re-used. To not use existing folders, delete the existing folders and create new folders. If new folders are not created, the mail-type i-αppli cannot be downloaded.
- Folders containing mail-type i-αppli cannot be deleted. If the folder contains no mail-type i-αppli, it can be deleted, but all folders created in Inbox, Outbox and Unsent messages are deleted collectively.

- When deleting mail-type i-αppli, select whether to simultaneously delete automatically created mail folders. If the folder contains protected messages, the folder cannot be deleted. When only the folder remains, move the cursor to the folder in Inbox, Outbox or Unsent messages folder, press , select **View i-mode mail** and press  to check a message.
- Mail-type i-αppli cannot be downloaded while Function lock is applied to mail ( P. 151).
- Mail-type i-αppli that changes the mail folder name cannot be downloaded or upgraded while Function lock is applied to mail.
- Mail-type i-αppli that creates new mail folders cannot be downloaded while Function lock is applied to mail.

## Viewing i-αppli Information During Download <Software Info>

Default setting OFF

- In stand-by, press  () for 1+ seconds, press  [Software info] and  [ON].

- Software description appears when download is started.



## Run i-αppli

### Running i-αppli

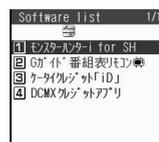
- Some i-αppli software may transmit data automatically when started. Use Network set ( P. 250) in advance to disable data transmission or check whether to connect when starting the software.

- In stand-by, press  () for 1+ seconds.

- Alternatively, press  () twice in stand-by to view the i-αppli screen.
- To show only Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli software, press    in stand-by and select IC card content.

- Press  [Software list].

- Titles of the software saved in the FOMA terminal appear.
- The following icons indicate the settings of the selected software.



Software list

### Meaning of icons

	Software with i-αppli stand-by function
	Software with Auto start function
	Software downloaded with SSL session
	i-αppliDX software
	Mail-type i-αppli software
	Software set as i-αppli stand-by

	Software set to Auto start
	Software with data transmission function
	Software to save i-αppli used data to a microSD Memory Card
	Software set to FOMA card operation restriction
	Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli software
	Software incompletely downloaded
	Software transferred using iC transfer service (P. 262)

### 3 Select software to run and press .

- i-αppli start screen appears and the software starts.
- For software incompletely downloaded, **Incomplete data, Download remaining data?** appears. Select **Yes** and press  to start downloading.
- To end, press  while the software is running, select **Yes** and press .
- When the software transferred using iC transfer service is selected from the IC card content, **Download software?** or **Connect to site to download software?** appears. Select **Yes** and press  to start downloading the software or connecting to the site.

i-αppli activating



#### Note

- If the FOMA card used when downloading the software is not inserted, some i-αppli may not run (start).
- When the time set for **Alarm** (Alarm/Schedule alarm/ToDo alarm/Reception reserve alarm/Recording reserve alarm) arrives, running software stops and the alarm screen appears. The software resumes when the alarm screen is closed. However, depending on the i-αppli software, the software may be ended when the alarm activates.
- Mail-type i-αppli can also be started from **Inbox**, **Outbox** or **Unsent messages**. Select the mail-type i-αppli folder from each folder list.
- Depending on the i-αppli, if a new version of the software is available, a confirmation screen for upgrading the software appears at startup.
- By installing a 3D polygon engine, 3D images can be displayed with i-αppli.  
3D polygons express three-dimensional images with depth, by combining polygons (triangles, squares, etc.).
- If there is a high number of connections while running software, **Data transmission is frequent. Continue transmission?** appears. Select whether to transmit data or not.
- When the display size used by software exceeds **240x240** in the Cycloid position, **Rotate the display, and use** appears and the software is interrupted. Return to the normal position to resume the software.

#### Note

- Some i-αppli software may save i-αppli used data to a microSD Memory Card. Saved i-αppli used data can be checked in i-αppli used data list. Check i-αppli used data properties for the software that uses an i-αppli used data (P. 259).
- If the microSD Memory Card or the battery pack is removed while the i-αppli used data is being saved/ deleted, the data may be unable to be viewed. In this case, format the microSD Memory Card with FOMA SH903iTV (Formatting deletes all the data in the microSD Memory Card).
- Some data saved on a microSD Memory Card may not be available on other models.
- Reading/writing data saved on/to microSD Memory Card from i-αppli may become impossible while other running functions are using the card.

#### Starting i-αppliDX software

- Some i-αppliDX software may transmit data to verify the validity of the software regardless of the software **Network set** (The number of connections and connection time differ depending on the software).
- If the correct date and time are not set, validity cannot be checked and the software cannot start.
- If the software is not validated, it cannot start until the validity is checked.

### Related Operations

#### Start from Shortcut menu

In stand-by, press  ▶ select software ▶ .

#### Set software <i-αppli volume>

In stand-by, press  (for 1+ seconds) ▶  (louder) or  (softer) ▶ .

#### View software description <Software info>

In the software list, select software ▶  .

#### Note (Related operations)

##### Shortcut menu

- Register frequently used i-αppli in advance (P. 380).
- If a calendar is shown in stand-by, press  to disable the calendar before continuing with operations.

##### Setting i-αppli volume

- Some i-αppli do not have sound.

##### Software info

- The information that appears in the description includes the software name, version, software by, storage, profile version, compatible models, Auto start time interval and SSL connection.
- The software name of the i-αppli cannot be changed.

## Configuring the Connection Setting

### <Network Set>

For each i-αppli software, set whether data can be transmitted while the i-αppli is running.

- This setting is valid only for software that transmits data.
- Network set is set to **Yes** when software is downloaded.

**1** In the software list (☞ P. 248), select software and press **Ⓜ** **6** [Set software use].

**2** Select **Network set**, press **⊙** and select whether to transmit data or not.

Yes (transmit)	<b>1</b>
No (not to transmit)	<b>2</b>
To check upon i-αppli startup	<b>3</b>

**3** Press **Ⓜ** [Complete].

#### Note

- Software may not function properly and information may not be available in a timely manner if Network set is set to **No**. This may also prevent the software from starting.
- Because images used with the i-αppli software and entered data are sent over the Internet, some of these information may be viewed by a third party ("Images used with the i-αppli software" include images shot using the camera function operated with i-αppli, images acquired using the Ir exchange function operated with i-αppli and images viewed and retrieved from **Data box** operated with i-αppli).

## Configuring the Icon Information Setting <Icon Info Set>

For each i-αppli software, set whether the software should be notified regarding icons indicating unread mail and Message R/F, battery level, Manner mode setting and whether the handset is inside or outside the service area.

- This setting is valid only for software that uses icon information.
- Icon information is set to **Yes** when software is downloaded.

**1** In the software list (☞ P. 248), select software and press **Ⓜ** **6** [Set software use].

**2** Select **Icon info set**, press **⊙** and press **1** [Yes].

**3** Press **Ⓜ** [Complete].

#### Note

- i-αppli requiring use of icon information may not function properly if set to **No**.
- If Icon information setting is set to **Yes**, the icon status for unread mail/Message R/F, battery level, Manner mode, and inside/outside the service area may be sent via the Internet to the IP (Information Provider) along with terminal ID and UIM ID, and this information may be viewed by a third party.

## Configuring the Phonebook and History Access Setting <View Phonebook/History>

Set whether to allow the i-αppli software to access the phonebook, Redial and Received calls. Setting this to **Yes** allows the i-αppli to access the phonebook, Redial and Received calls automatically.

- This setting is valid only for software that accesses the phonebook and history information.
- **Yes** is set when software is downloaded.

**1** In the software list (☞ P. 248), select software and press **Ⓜ** **6** [Set software use].

**2** Select **Allow access to phone book/call records by software**, press **⊙** and press **1** [Yes].

**3** Press **Ⓜ** [Complete].

#### Note

- Setting this to **No** may prevent operation of some i-αppli software.

## Configuring the Ring Tone and Screen Change Setting <Change Tone/Image>

Set whether to allow the i-αppli software to change the ring tone and screen, and whether to show a confirmation screen when making the changes. Setting this to **Yes** allows the i-αppli to change the ring tone and screen automatically.

- Change tone/image is set to **Yes** and Change tone/image confirmation screen is set to **No** when software is downloaded.

**1** In the software list (☞ P. 248), select software and press **Ⓜ** **6** [Set software use].

## 2 Select **Allow ring tone/image/icon changes by software**, press **⊙** and press **1** [Yes].

- To not allow changes, press **2** and proceed to step 4.

## 3 Select **Confirm all changes**, press **⊙** and press **1** [Yes].

- To not show a confirmation screen, press **2**.

## 4 Press **⊙** [Complete].

### Setting Program Guide i-appli Started from One Seg <Program Guide Key>

Set the Program guide i-appli available for One Seg.

- Program guide key is set to **No** when software is downloaded.

## 1 In the software list (P. 248), select software and press **⊙** [7] [Program guide key].

## 2 Press **1** [Yes].

### Starting One Software from Another Software

Some software allow starting other software without returning to the software list.

- If the software to start is not specified, follow the instructions on the screen to select the software.
- If the software to start is not saved in the FOMA terminal, download the software.

### Default Software

The following software are preset.

- モンスターハンター i for SH (Monster Hunter i for SH)
- Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE program schedule remote control)
- ケータイクレジット「iD (アイディ)」 (iD credit payment service)
- DCMXクレジットアプリ (DCMX credit appli)
- To use again after deleting, download preset software from the iMenu site, **SH-MODE**.

**iMenu** → メニュー / 検索 (Menu/Search) → ケータイ電話メーカー (Mobile phone manufacturer) → **SH-MODE**  
SH-MODE is only available in Japanese.



QR code to connect to SH-MODE

### ■ モンスターハンター i for SH (Monster Hunter i for SH)

Hunt monsters in this game application. Enjoy the unique and high-quality graphics on the wide screen (QVGA compatible) as well as the flexibly designed contents.

Player is a “hunter” who targets monsters. Follow quests asked by the mayor or people of ココット村 to play the game.

This software is not available in the Cycloid position. Use it in the normal position.

#### Starting the software

## 1 In the software list (P. 248), select **モンスターハンター i for SH (Monster Hunter i for SH)** and press **⊙**.

- The software starts and title screen appears.

## 2 Select **ゲームスタート (Start game)** and press **⊙**.

- Select オプション (Option) to set sounds, vibration, saving function, key operations, etc. for the game.

#### ココット村 screen

Select a quest from the quest level in accordance with quests asked by the mayor or people of villages.

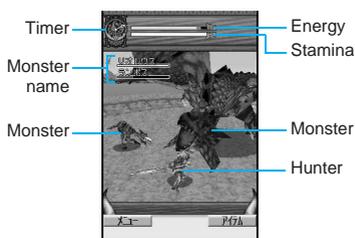
- Acceptable quests depend on the hunter rank (HR).
- The higher the player's hunter rank is, the more difficult acceptable quests can be.
- When an emergency quest appears, clear the emergency quest to accept the next-ranked quest.

#### Field screen

The display switches to the field screen after a quest is selected. Types of quests are 採集クエスト (Gathering quest) which is to collect mushrooms, etc., 討伐クエスト (Hunting quest) which is to hunt monsters and 捕獲クエスト (Harvest quest) which is to harvest monsters.

- Travel fields to get various items.
- Beat monsters to get items. The resulting items differ depending on the monster.

#### Battle screen



©CAPCOM 2007

- Timer : Indicates remaining time. Time is up when the white needle has come to the orange needle.
- Monster name: Indicates monster's name and energy. The battle ends when all monsters' energy is exhausted.
- Energy : Indicates hunter's energy. The battle ends when the energy is exhausted.
- Stamina : Indicates hunter's stamina. Stamina decreases due to guards, emergency avoidances and dashes.

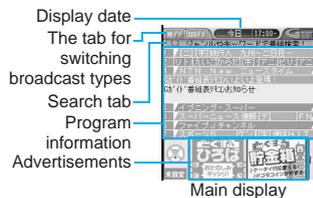
## Menu

- Map : Display a map in the field screen.
- View quest : View the quest in progress.
- Preparation list : Check the successfully prepared items.
- Status : Display details of the hunter.
- View equipment : Display details of the current equipment.
- Option : Set sounds, vibration, saving function, key operations, etc. for the game.
- Cancel quest : Cancel the quest currently in progress.
- Save : Save the quest currently in progress.

## Key operation

Key	コックツ村 screen	Field screen	Battle screen
⬇	Move the cursor or characters. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Move the cursor or characters in the direction of a pressed key.</li> <li>● Press ⬇ twice serially in the same direction in the field or battle screen to perform an emergency avoidance in the direction of a pressed key.</li> </ul>		
⊙	Open the menu of facilities.	Execute an action.	Attack
Ⓜ	Open/Close the menu screen. Close the item screen.		
Ⓜ	Open the item screen.		
4	-	Camera left turn	
5	-	Camera center alignment	
6	-	Camera right turn	
8	-	-	Attack
9	-	-	Special attack
0	-	-	Guard
Ⓜ	-	Dash	

## Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE program schedule remote control)



This convenient application combines the TV program schedule with a remote control and does not incur a monthly usage fee.

Easily download the information of TV programs on terrestrial digital broadcasting or BS digital broadcasting, which are being shown at a time of your target, anywhere at any time. Access information such as program titles, program details and start/end time for channels in your area. In addition, activate a One Seg from the program guide, and vice versa.

Programming your DVD hard disc recorder to record your favorite program is available through the internet (The recorder must support remote programming. And the initial setting to enable this appli function must have been made.). Search programs using keywords such as program genre or TV personality name. Also operate TVs, VCRs and DVD players (Some devices are not supported).

Refer to "Using the Infrared Remote Control Function" on P. 336 for precautions on operating the remote control.

The screen shown is only an example. Actual screens may differ. Program listings for your area will be shown.

When using for the first time, perform initial settings and agree to the user agreement.

Only packet transmission charges apply.

Refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]" for details.

## Starting the software

- 1 In the software list (参照 P. 248), select **Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE program schedule remote control) and press ⊙**.

- The software starts and the main screen appears.
- When starting the software for the first time, the initial setting screen appears.

- 2 Enter your postal code, birth year and gender.

- 3 Press Ⓜ [設定] (Set).

- The user agreement screen appears.

## 4 To agree, select はい (Yes) and press **⓪**.

- After transmission, the main screen and notice appear.

### Displaying program information

#### ● Switching between terrestrial and BS digital

In the main screen, press **⓪** to select the first tab for switching broadcast types and switch the broadcast wave with **⓪**.

- If viewing channels are not set when BS digital is selected, a notice appears. Press **⓪** [設定] (Set) and set viewing channels.

#### ● Changing program information

Program information and advertisements appear on the main screen. Press **⓪** to select channel while program information is selected. Press **⓪** to switch the time frame. Press **⓪** to view program information. If remote control registration and remote control channel settings are activated, Ir data is transmitted.

#### ● Common operations in the main screen

To activate One Seg (Terrestrial digital only)	<b>⓪</b>
To display menu	<b>⓪</b>
To set timer for recording One Seg (Terrestrial digital only)	<b>⓪</b>
To switch remote control (in the order of: TV1 → TV2 → Video → DVD)	<b>⓪</b>
To set recording schedule remotely	<b>⓪</b>

#### ● Operations in advertisements

When an advertisement is selected, the provided text information appears in a balloon. Pressing **⓪** may start the function (Phone To, Mail To, Web To) set in the advertisement.

### Viewing the program schedule for a specified date

## 1 In the main screen, press **⓪** [メニュー] (Menu), select 日時設定 (Specify date) and press **⓪**.

## 2 Select a date to display, press **⓪**, select the time to display and press **⓪**.

## 3 Press **⓪** [表示] (Display).

- The program schedule appears.  
When **Download programming data from server?** appears, select **YES** and press **⓪** to view program information.

### Searching programs by key word

## 1 In the main screen, press **⓪** and select the search tab.

## 2 Select キーワード (Key word) with **⓪**, press **⓪**, select a date to be searched, enter key words or select from the search history and press **⓪**.

- To search by genre, select ジャンル (Search by genre) with **⓪** and press **⓪**. Select the date to be searched, select the genre, press **⓪**, select a sub-genre and press **⓪**.

## 3 Select 検索 (Search) with **⓪**, press **⓪**, select **YES** and press **⓪**.

- In the search results screen, press **⓪** to show program information.

### Setting timer for recording One Seg

Select a One Seg program to be recorded from Program guide shown by this appli and set timer for recording the One Seg program.

#### ● How to set timer for recording a One Seg program

In the main screen, select a program to be recorded and select 予約実行 from #ワンセグ録画予約 of the menu. Since the timer setting screen for recording appears, follow the screen to set timer for recording.

- Alternatively, in the main screen, select a program to be recorded and press **⓪** to set timer for recording.

### Setting timer for starting One Seg

Select a One Seg program to be started from Program guide shown by this appli and set timer for starting the One Seg program.

#### ● How to set timer for starting a One Seg program

In the main screen, select a program to be started and select 予約実行 from 視聴予約 of the menu. Since the timer setting screen for starting appears, follow the screen to set timer for starting.

### Setting recording schedule function remotely

If your DVD hard disc recorder supports remote programming, setting the recorder timer remotely for recording a TV program is available from the TV program schedule shown by this appli via the internet. To enable this appli function, the initial setting described below is required.

#### ● Making the initial setting

## 1 Setup your DVD hard disc recorder for internet connection.

- Refer to the user's guide of the DVD hard disc recorder for the setting produce.

## 2 In the main screen, press **Ⓜ** [メニュー] (Menu), select **リモート録画予約** (Remote Record) and press **Ⓞ**.

- Follow the guidance displayed to complete the initial setting.

### ● Setting TV program recording schedule

Select a program to be recorded from the TV program schedule, and select **リモート録画予約** (Remote Record) from the menu. Your DVD hard disc recorder designated by the initial setting can be programmed via the internet to record the selected program.

Packet transmission charges apply when using this service.

## Related Operations

### View detailed program information

In the main screen, press **Ⓜ** ▶ **番組詳細** (Program details) ▶ **Ⓞ**.

### Set viewing channels

In the main screen, press **Ⓜ** ▶ **更新・設定** (Update or Setting) ▶ **Ⓞ** ▶ **視聴チャンネル** (Viewing channels) ▶ **Ⓞ** ▶ **select channel** **Ⓞ** (repeatable) ▶ **Ⓜ** ▶ **Ⓞ**.

### Register remote control

In the main screen, press **Ⓜ** ▶ **更新・設定** (Update or Setting) ▶ **Ⓞ** ▶ **リモコン登録** (Register remote control) ▶ **Ⓞ** ▶ **select device to register** **Ⓞ** **select the manufacturer** **Ⓜ** **Ⓞ** (repeatable).

### Reset

In the main screen, press **Ⓜ** ▶ **更新・設定** (Update or Setting) ▶ **Ⓞ** ▶ **リセット (Reset)** ▶ **Ⓞ** ▶ **YES** ▶ **Ⓞ** ▶ **Ⓞ**.

### Set the remote control channel

In the main screen, press **Ⓜ** ▶ **更新・設定** (Update or Setting) ▶ **Ⓞ** ▶ **リモコンチャンネル設定** (Remote control channel settings) ▶ **Ⓞ** ▶ **select channel** ▶ **Ⓜ** ▶ **Ⓞ**.

### Set the genre color classification setting

In the main screen, press **Ⓜ** ▶ **更新・設定** (Update or Setting) ▶ **Ⓞ** ▶ **ジャンル色分設定** (Genre color classification setting) ▶ **Ⓞ** ▶ **select genre** ▶ **Ⓞ** ▶ **select sub-genre** ▶ **Ⓞ** ▶ **select color** ▶ **Ⓞ** ▶ **Ⓜ** ▶ **Ⓞ**.

### Update to latest program schedule

In the main screen, press **Ⓜ** ▶ **更新・設定** (Update or Setting) ▶ **Ⓞ** ▶ **最新に更新** (Update to latest) ▶ **Ⓞ** ▶ **YES** ▶ **Ⓞ** ▶ **Ⓞ**.

## ■ ケータイクレジット「iD (アイディ)」 (iD credit payment service)

Mobile phone/Portable credit “iD” is a credit service available for shopping or cashing only by holding Osafu-Keitai over. Shopping is made easier and more convenient without taking out a card from your wallet or even signing.

- To use iD, the registration to a card issuer supporting iD, an iD appli and a Card appli offered by the issuer are required.

- When the iD appli is activated for the first time, “notes regarding use” must be agreed upon and the Card appli needs to be downloaded after preparing for the use.
- The cost for the credit service supporting iD (annual fee, etc.) varies depending on the card issuer.
- Packet transmission charges are applied to download an iD appli and a Card appli of each card issuer.
- Refer to the iD i-mode or webpage for details on iD.

i-mode site: **iMenu** → **メニュー** / 検索 (Menu/Search) → **ケータイクレジット「iD」** (iD credit payment service)  
Webpage: <http://id-credit.com>

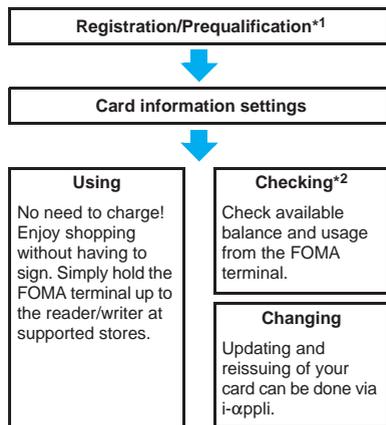


QR code to connect to the site

## ■ DCMXクレジットアプリ (DCMX credit appli)

“DCMX” is a credit service supporting “iD (アイディ)”, provided by the NTT DoCoMo group. DCMX includes three types of services; DCMX mini that provides 10,000 yen/month credit, DCMX and DCMX gold that offer cashing service and revolving credit, issuing you a credit card. DCMX mini allows you to enjoy Mobile phone/Portable credit iD by simply signing up from this appli.

### Appli Functions



- \*1 There will be a simple online prequalification at the time of subscription. Subscription of services other than DCMX mini, can be made on the i-mode subscription page that is automatically displayed.
- \*2 Usage check function is only available with DCMX mini.

- Refer to the website below for details on the service and how to apply.

i-mode site: **iMenu** → メニュー / 検索 (Menu/Search) → DCMX (ケータイクレジット) (iD credit payment service)  
 Webpage: <http://www.dcmx.jp>



QR code to connect to the site

- For details on this service, contact the number listed in “General Inquiries” on the back of this manual.
- When this appli is activated for the first time, “notes regarding use” must be agreed upon before use.
- Packet transmission charges are applied when the i-mode transmission is used for this appli.
- Activation from this appli becomes disabled when application and settings are completed. To check the usage or change the settings, activate the iD appli and select the DCMX appli for linked activation.
- Refer to “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode]” for details.

### Note

- The default settings of the preset i-appli functions are as follows.
- Change settings from the Submenu of the software list.

Settings item	Default setting			
	Monster Hunter i for SH	G-GUIDE program schedule remote control	iD credit payment service	DCMX credit appli
Stand-by display	-	-	-	-
Network set	Yes			
i-appli To	-	Yes		
Icon info set	-	-	-	-
Change tone/image	-	-	-	-
View phone-book/history	-	-	-	-
Program guide key	-	Yes	-	-

- Packet transmission charges apply when using this service.

### Precautions for Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli

- DoCoMo shall not be liable for information set in IC card.

## Auto Start

### Running i-appli Automatically

There are three methods to automatically start i-appli.

- Set the correct date and time in advance (☞ P. 45).

Auto start using the i-appli/IDX setting	Set Auto start to <b>ON</b> to enable.
Auto start using the software function	Auto start setting pre-installed in software. Set Auto start to <b>ON</b> and register software to enable. Register up to nine.
Auto start using the FOMA terminal setting	Set time, date and day for i-appli saved in FOMA terminal to set Auto start. Set Auto start to <b>ON</b> and set schedule to use. Register up to nine.

### Configuring Auto Start <Auto Start>

Default setting **OFF**

- 1 In stand-by, press (P) for 1+ seconds and press [Auto start].



Auto start screen

- 2 Press [ON].

### Setting software startup time with FOMA terminal settings

- 1 In the auto start screen, press [Details set] and select a number.

To save new	Select number → ● To save a new schedule, select a slot with -----.
To change	Select a number to change →  → 
To delete	Select a number to delete →  → 

- Auto start software list appears.

- 2 Select software, press , and set the start date and time.

- Use 24-hour format.
- Move the cursor with .



Schedule setting screen

To start daily	→ enter time →
To start on set day of week	→ select day of week  (repeatable) →  → enter time → ● Press  [SelAll]/ [ClrAll] to select or clear all days of the week.
To start on set date	→ enter date and time →

## Enabling Auto start setting for supported software

### 1 In the schedule setting screen, press **[4]** [Time interval].

- To disable, delete Auto start setting ("To delete" in step 1 of "Setting software startup time with FOMA terminal settings").
- **Time interval** cannot be selected for software without Auto start settings.

#### Note

- If Auto start cannot be started, the error is recorded in Auto start error history.
- Automatic startup is not available in the following situations:
  - Handset is turned off
  - Other functions are activated
  - i-αppli is running
  - Call is in progress
  - Auto start time is the same as alarm time of Schedule or ToDo list
  - i-αppli Function lock is set
- The functions below operate with the following priority when the same time is set.

	Priority (high → low)
Function	Auto power OFF → Auto power ON → Alarm → ToDo list → i-αppli Auto start

- **Reset settings** deletes i-αppli auto start error history and disables i-αppli Auto start settings.
- If transmission setting for software with Auto start settings is set to **Always confirm**, a transmission confirmation screen appears upon startup. If no operations are performed for five seconds, software starts automatically as if **No** was selected in confirmation screen.
- When two Auto start times for the same software are set within nine minutes of each other, Auto start does not function. Set Auto start time interval to ten minutes or more. **Run error** appears in the Auto start error history.

## i-αppli To Function

### Running i-αppli from Sites or i-mode Mail

If i-αppli To (Run i-αppli) is set, i-αppli can be started from a site, Internet web page, i-mode mail, Message R/F, screen memo, ToruCa or Data broadcasting.

- The following methods also start i-αppli.
  - When i-αppli start signal is received during Ir exchange
  - When i-αppli start information is read by Bar code reader
  - When i-αppli start information is read by holding the FeliCa mark up to a reader/writer (external device)
- Set whether to allow i-αppli To in i-αppli To settings.

## Configuring Startup with i-αppli To <i-αppli To>

Default setting **Yes**

Select whether to start i-αppli with i-αppli To for each software.

### 1 In the software list (☞ P. 248), select software and press **[6]** [Set software use].

### 2 Select *i-αppli To*, press **[0]** and press **[1]** [Yes].

### 3 Press **[5]** [Complete].

#### Note

- The software to start is determined by the site, Internet web page, i-mode mail, Message R/F, screen memo, ToruCa or Data broadcasting. Download the specified software in advance.

## Starting i-αppli from Sites or i-mode Mail <i-αppli To Function>

- If i-αppli To is set to **No**, i-αppli does not function.
- Cannot be activated as i-αppli stand-by.
- Full Browser is not available.

### 1 Select i-αppli in a site, Internet web page, i-mode mail, Message R/F, screen memo, ToruCa or Data broadcasting, press **[0]**, select **Yes** and press **[0]**.

- To cancel, press **[5]**, select **Yes** and press **[0]** while **i-αppli activating** appears.

#### Note

- When i-αppli is ended, the original site, Internet web page, received message screen, screen memo, ToruCa details screen or screen for watching One Seg reappears.
- If there is no software corresponding to the Run i-αppli setting, **No requested software** appears.
- Some software run from a site cannot be saved on the FOMA terminal.
- Depending on the site, the specified i-αppli software can be downloaded or updated if it is not saved on the FOMA terminal or if a newer version is available for the software saved on the FOMA terminal.
- Depending on the software settings, the software may start automatically after downloading is complete. In such cases, the software cannot be saved to the FOMA terminal immediately after downloading. After ending the software, select whether to save the software if available.
- Network set (☞ P. 250) may be required while running i-αppli software.

## Note

- i-αppli To from i-mode mail is a function only available from i-mode mail delivered from an IP (Information Provider). Not available for i-mode mail exchanged between FOMA terminals.

## i-αppli Stand-by

### Setting i-αppli as the Stand-by Display

- Press **[CLR]** to operate i-αppli set as the stand-by display.

### Setting i-αppli as the Stand-by Display <Stand-by Display>

- Set whether to transmit from the software set as the i-αppli stand-by, using Stand-by network set (**[P. 257]**).

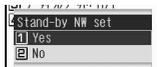
#### 1 In the software list (**[P. 248]**), select software, press **[OK]** **[4]** **[Stand-by display]**, select **Yes** and press **[OK]**.

- The software is set as i-αppli stand-by, and the software starts when the stand-by display reappears.

- The screen shown on the right appears when the software uses transmission. Select

**Yes** to allow transmission.

When **No** is selected, data is not transmitted and information may not be received.



## Note

- Only one software can be set as i-αppli stand-by.
- Some software cannot be set as i-αppli stand-by.
- If i-αppli stand-by is set, i-αppli appears as stand-by. The image set as **Stand-by display** of the Main display setting does not appear. If i-αppli stand-by is disabled, the image set as the stand-by display of the Main display setting appears.
- Web To function is not available from i-αppli stand-by.
- If software that transmits data is set as i-αppli stand-by, the software may not operate properly depending on the signal strength.
- If **All lock** is set when in i-αppli stand-by, i-αppli screen closes and 待受画面1 image appears. In addition, if **Function lock** is applied to i-αppli when in i-αppli stand-by, i-αppli screen closes and the image set as the stand-by display of the Main display setting appears. When All lock or i-αppli Function lock is disabled, i-αppli stand-by reappears.
- When the display size of software set as the i-αppli stand-by exceeds **240x240** in the Cycloid position, **This software cannot use in a horizontal position** appears and the software is interrupted. Return to the normal position to resume the software.
- If i-αppliDX is set as i-αppli stand-by, the i-αppliDX software may transmit data to verify the validity of the software regardless of the software transmission setting.

## Note

- If i-αppli stand-by is set, the i-αppli stand-by confirmation screen appears when the handset is turned on. Select **Yes** or do nothing for approximately five seconds to start i-αppli stand-by. Select **No** to show normal stand-by and cancel i-αppli stand-by settings. If the handset is turned on by the **Auto power ON** setting, the confirmation screen does not appear and i-αppli stand-by starts when the stand-by display reappears.

- If i-αppli stand-by is set, usable battery time decreases.
- The following operations end stand-by i-αppli.

- |                             |                                |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| ■ Camera                    | ■ Ir exchange                  |
| ■ Data box                  | ■ Downloading                  |
| ■ i-mode                    | ■ i-αppli software             |
| ■ Mail                      | ■ Starting i-αppli             |
| ■ Videophone                | ■ BookReader                   |
| ■ Data Security Service     | ■ Document Viewer              |
| ■ SD-Audio                  | ■ PDF Viewer                   |
| ■ Changing i-αppli settings | ■ Updating pattern definitions |
| ■ Playing i-motion          | ■ Updating software            |
| ■ ToruCa                    | ■ iC transmission              |
| ■ One Seg                   |                                |

### Security errors

- While i-αppli stand-by is set, if an incorrect i-αppli action is attempted, or use of a function not permitted by the software is attempted, i-αppli stand-by is disabled.
- If an error that cancels i-αppli stand-by occurs, the error time and other information appear and are recorded in the error history. No information is recorded when ended properly. When **Security error** appears in stand-by, press **[OK]** to view error history.

## Related Operations

### Set whether to transmit data from i-αppli stand-by <Stand-by network set>

- 1 In the software list, select software set as stand-by **[OK]** **[5]**.
- 2 Press **[1]**.

### Set i-αppli stand-by from menu <Stand-by display>

- 1 In stand-by, press **[OK]** **[2]** **[1]** **[1]** **[3]**.
- 2 Select software **[OK]**.
  - To set a different i-αppli as stand-by: Press **[1]** **[Set]** **[OK]** select software **[OK]** **[OK]** **[OK]**.
  - To end i-αppli set as stand-by: Press **[2]** **[End]**.
  - To disable i-αppli set as stand-by: Press **[3]** **[Terminated]**.

## Disabling i-αpli Stand-by

If i-αpli stand-by is disabled, the previous image set in Main display appears.

- Even if i-αpli stand-by is ended, i-αpli stand-by settings are not disabled and i-αpli stand-by is restarted when the stand-by display reappears.

- 1** In the software list (☞ P. 248), select software set as stand-by and press **[M] [4] [Stand-by display]**.
- 2** Select **Yes** and press **[OK]**.

## Managing i-αpli

Upgrade, delete and sort i-αpli saved in the FOMA terminal and view run error and trace information.

- Some software saved on the handset may be accessed by the IP (Information Provider) and service may be stopped directly. In such cases, the software cannot be run, set as stand-by or updated. Only deleting and viewing software details are available. To use again, the software needs to be contacted with an activation transmission. Contact the IP (Information Provider).
- Data may be sent from the IP (Information Provider) to some software saved on the handset.
- When IP (Information Provider) sends data to stop/resume software, the handset exchanges data and the i-mode icon flashes. Transmission charges are not incurred.

### Upgrading i-αpli <Upgrade>

Upgrade software saved in the FOMA terminal if a new version is available on the site. Some software automatically checks for updated information and upgrades itself when running.

- 1** In the software list (☞ P. 248), select software and press **[M] [2] [Upgrade]**.
- 2** Select **Yes** and press **[OK]**.
  - When software description appears, press **[OK]**.

#### Note

- i-αpli cannot be upgraded when the FOMA terminal handset does not have enough available memory. Delete other software or data in **Data box** that shares memory area with i-αpli.
- For some Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αpli, downloading and upgrading may not be available while **IC card is locked**.

## Related Operations

### Upgrade automatically when software is running

In the confirmation screen (**Upgrade software?**), select **Yes** ▶ **[OK]**.

#### Note (Related operations)

- Mail-type i-αpli software that changes the mail folder name cannot be upgraded while **Function lock** is applied to mail.

### Sorting i-αpli <Sort>

Default setting **DL(New→Old)**

Change the list order to one of the following.

DL (New→Old)	Latest download date first
DL (Old→New)	Oldest download date first
By usage	Most recently used software first
By size	Largest program size first

- 1** In the software list (☞ P. 248), press **[M] [8] [Sort]**, select sort method and press **[OK]**.

### Viewing error display <Error display>

View run error information (**Auto start error**, **Stand-by error** and **Security error**) and trace information.

- 1** In stand-by, press **[M] [F] (P)** for 1+ seconds and press **[6] [Error display]**.
- 2** Select error history and press **[OK]**.

#### Note

- If an error that cancels **i-αpli stand-by** occurs, the error time and other information appear and are recorded in the error history. No information is recorded when ended properly.

## Related Operations

### View Trace information <Trace info>

- 1** In stand-by, press **[M] (P)** (for 1+ seconds) ▶ **[7]**.
- 2** To end viewing, press **[OK]**.
  - To delete: Press **[M] ▶ Yes ▶ [OK]**.

#### Note (Related operations)

- If there is no trace information, **No Trace info available** appears.

#### For i-αpli creators

- If a created i-αpli does not function properly, use Trace information details as a reference.
- Trace information does not appear if there is no software set to obtain a trace.

## Applying Function lock to i-αppli

<Function lock>

**1** In stand-by, press **(F)** for 1+ seconds, press **(F)** [Function lock], enter terminal security code and press **(O)**.

**2** Select **ON** or **OFF**.

To lock	<b>(1)</b>
To disable lock	<b>(2)</b>

## Deleting i-αppli <Delete>

- G-GUIDE program schedule remote control cannot be deleted.

**1** In the software list (P. 248), select software and press **(F)** **(3)** [Delete].

**2** Select deletion method.

To delete one	<b>(1)</b> → Yes → <b>(O)</b>
To delete multiple ones collectively	<b>(2)</b> → select software <b>(O)</b> (repeatable) → <b>(F)</b> → Yes → <b>(O)</b> ● Press <b>(F)</b> [SelAll]/ <b>(F)</b> [ClrAll] to select or clear all.
To delete all	<b>(3)</b> → enter terminal security code → <b>(O)</b> → Yes → <b>(O)</b>

### Note

- When deleting mail-type i-αppli, select whether to simultaneously delete automatically created mail folders. If the folder contains protected messages, the folder cannot be deleted.
- When i-αppli used data of the software to be deleted is saved to the microSD Memory Card, select whether to delete the i-αppli used data simultaneously.
- When mail-type i-αppli software is deleted and only the folder remains, press **(F)** in **Inbox**, **Outbox** or **Unsent messages** folder and select **View i-mode mail** to check the i-mode mail in the folder. View the i-mode mail inside the folder without starting the mail-type i-αppli.

### Deleting Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli software

- For some software, the software must be started and the data on the IC card must be deleted in order to delete the software itself.
- Some Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli may not be able to be deleted.
- While **IC card lock** is set, Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli software may not be able to be deleted.

### Deleting all software including mail-type i-αppli

- If there is protected i-mode mail in the mail folders, the folders cannot be deleted.

## Used by i-αppli

(Contents Transfer Compatible)

## Viewing i-αppli Used Data in microSD Memory Card

- Delete i-αppli used data folders or view detailed information of a selected folder.
- Properties show Software/CP names, folder availability and cause for unavailability.
- The folders cannot be used under the following conditions.
  - Restrictions **Y**: the software to use the saved data does not exist.
  - UIM restrictions **Y**: the FOMA card inserted is different from the one that was used when saving the data.
  - Model rstrctns **Y**: the model of the FOMA terminal is different from the one that was used when saving the data.
  - Series rstrctns **Y**: the software series is different.

**1** In stand-by, press **(F)** for 1+ seconds and press **(5)** [Used by i-αppli].

To delete one data folder	Select folder → <b>(F)</b> → Yes → <b>(O)</b>
To display Properties	<b>(F)</b> ● Press <b>(O)</b> to end checking.

### Note

- Viewing i-αppli used data folders saved on microSD Memory Card may become impossible while other running functions are using the card. Exit other functions in advance.

## Using Various i-αppli Functions

- Depending on the function, other functions may need to be ended before using.

## Viewing Sites from i-αppli

- Download software that enables viewing of sites.
- Sites with URLs exceeding 255 characters, including single-byte alphanumeric characters and symbols, cannot be viewed.

**1** While software is running, select URL, press **(O)**, select **Yes** and press **(O)**.

- The method for viewing sites and Internet web pages varies depending on the software.

## Making Calls from i-αppli

Make voice/Videophone/PushTalk calls from the running software.

- Download software that supports the use of voice call, Videophone call and PushTalk.
- Calls cannot be made while Keypad dial lock or Self mode is set.

### 1 While software is running, select phone number, press , select Yes and press .

- Procedures for voice/Videophone/PushTalk calls differ depending on the software.
- A phone number to use for voice call/Videophone call/PushTalk appears.

### 2 Make a call.

Voice calls	 or 
Videophone	
PushTalk	 or  (  )

## Using the Camera from i-αppli

- When the camera is started from i-αppli, shot images are saved and used as part of i-αppli.

### 1 While software is running, select camera startup and press .

- Camera mode (still picture shooting screen) appears. Adjust the brightness and use Auto timer and Zoom.
- Use software to set **Image size**, **Continuous mode**, **Image quality** and **Frame**. Items that can be set, setting methods and camera startup method differ depending on the software.

### 2 Press [].

- To save the image, press .

#### Note

- Some software may automatically send images and entered data used with i-αppli over the Internet. Images used with i-αppli include images shot using the camera function operated with i-αppli, images selected from My picture of **Data box** operated with i-αppli and images acquired using the Ir exchange function operated with i-αppli.

## Using Bar Code Reader from i-αppli

### 1 While software is running, select Bar code reader startup and press .

- Camera mode (Bar code reader) is activated.
- Procedures for starting Bar code reader differ depending on the software.

### 2 Position camera to show bar code (JAN/QR code) and press [Scan].

- An image of the bar code (JAN/QR code) is shot.

#### Note

- Scanned data may be used for some software.

## Saving ToruCa from i-αppli

### 1 While software is running, select ToruCa item and press .

- Procedures for saving ToruCa differ depending on the software.

### 2 Preview or save item.

To preview ToruCa	Select <b>Preview</b> → 
To save a new item	Select <b>Save new</b> →  → select folder → 
To overwrite	Select <b>Overwrite</b> →  → select folder →  → select data →  → 

## Setting Alarms from i-αppli

- **Enter time** and **Set repeat** are entered with i-αppli.

### 1 While software is running, select alarm setting item, press and press [OK].

### 2 Press registered number and set the alarm.

- Refer to steps 2 to 4 on P. 369 for details.

## Using Ir Exchange from i-αppli

- Ir exchange ( P. 332) is not available while in Self mode.

### 1 While software is running, start Ir exchange, select Yes and press .

- Procedures for starting Ir exchange differ depending on the software.
- To cancel Ir exchange, press .

# Osaifu-Keitai/ToruCa

## ■ Osaifu-Keitai

- Osaifu-Keitai . . . . . 262
- iC Transfer Service . . . . . 262
- Starting Osaifu-Keitai Compatible i-appli . . . . . 263

## ■ ToruCa

- ToruCa . . . . . <ToruCa>264
- Retrieving ToruCa . . . . . <Retrieve ToruCa>265
- Viewing ToruCa . . . . . <ToruCa Viewer>265
- Viewing ToruCa List/Details Screen . . . . . 266
- Setting ToruCa . . . . . <ToruCa Settings>269
- Locking IC Card Functions . . . . . <IC Card Lock>270

## Osaifu-Keitai

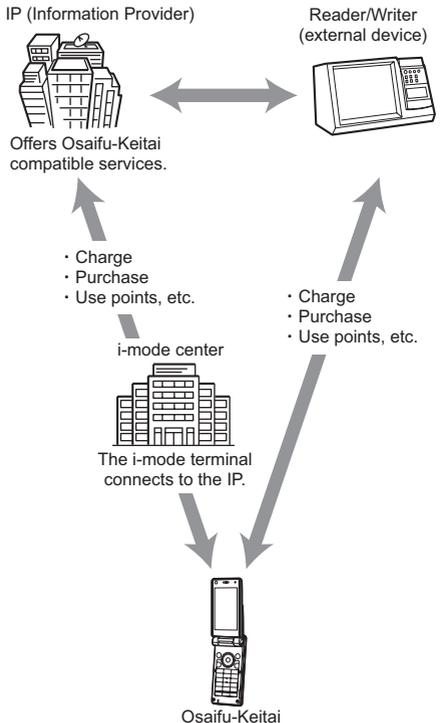
“Osaifu-Keitai” refers to useful IC card i-mode functions (i-mode FeliCa) and i-mode terminals equipped with IC cards.

FeliCa, using non-contact IC card technology, enables reading and writing of data without direct contact.

Simply hold the handset up to the reader/writer\* (external device) at supported stores to turn your mobile phone into a convenient tool with “Osaifu-Keitai”. Use electronic money to pay for shopping and use as an airline ticket or a point card.

Compared with already existing non-contact IC cards which support FeliCa, the IC card in Osaifu-Keitai enables depositing electronic money, checking your balance or viewing usage history from sites, and other useful functions.

\* A device to read/write data in IC cards.



Download Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli with IC card function to use IC card functions.

- Application and utilization methods vary for each Osaifu-Keitai compatible service. Contact the IP (Information Provider) for inquiries. Refer to “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode]” for precautions and details on using Osaifu-Keitai compatible services.
- Be sure to keep a memo of the names and contact information for Osaifu-Keitai compatible services being used. Osaifu-Keitai malfunctions, repairs, changing FOMA terminal or other handling may cause data saved in the IC card to be altered or lost (Note that as a rule, you will be asked to delete data when repairs are necessary). DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss of content. To delete data saved in the IC card, or when data is lost or altered, handling methods vary for each Osaifu-Keitai compatible service. Contact your IP (Information Provider) for more details.
- Be careful not to lose Osaifu-Keitai. If lost, handling methods vary for each Osaifu-Keitai compatible service. Contact your IP (Information Provider) for more details. In the FOMA terminal, IC card functions can be locked by Omakase Lock, IC card lock, Multi easy lock or Multi lock auto-set (☎ P. 149, P. 152, P. 153, P. 270).

## iC Transfer Service

**iC transfer service\*1** is a service which transfers the data on the IC card to a new Osaifu-Keitai collectively\*2. After the data on the IC card are transferred, Osaifu-Keitai compatible service is easily used only by downloading Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli. Use iC transfer service at a DoCoMo Shop or retailer.

**In addition, this service is available for terminals between the following models\*3. Refer to “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode]” for details.**

- \*1 Charges apply when iC transfer service is used (Charges may not apply for some services). In addition, packet transmission fees apply to download/ various settings of iC appli.
- \*2 Some services are not supported depending on the Osaifu-Keitai compatible service. Unsupported services are deleted when iC transfer service is used. Use a backup service of each Osaifu-Keitai compatible service or delete those services in advance.
- \*3 903i series, 703i series (excluding D703i, N703iμ, P703iμ)

## Starting Osaifu-Keitai Compatible i-αppli

### Using Osaifu-Keitai

Use Osaifu-Keitai in the following manner.

- When Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli is started or downloaded for the first time, **Current UIM necessary to use IC card** appears.

IC card functions are not available unless the FOMA card paired with the IC card is inserted.

In addition, to use the IC card functions with a different FOMA card inserted, insert the FOMA card paired with the IC card and delete all Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli.

Download Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli.  P. 247



Start Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli and read/write data in the IC card.  P. 263



Hold the FeliCa mark up to the reader/writer (external device).  P. 263

### Starting Osaifu-Keitai Compatible i-αppli and Reading/Writing Data in the IC Card

Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli enables charging of electronic money or railway tickets, checking balance and usage history, as well as other useful functions.

**1** In stand-by, press  9  2  4.

**2** Select Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli and press .

- Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli starts.

### Holding the FeliCa Mark Up to the Reader/Writer (External Device)

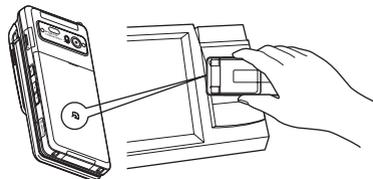
Hold the FeliCa mark up to the reader/writer (external device) to enable payment with electronic money, replacement for railway tickets, as well as other functions.

- Starting the software is not needed except for some services.
- Avoid contact between the FOMA terminal and reader/writer (external device).
- Only the side with the FeliCa mark can be read.
- Hold the FeliCa mark parallel to the reader/writer (external device).
- Hold the FOMA terminal up to the center of the reader/writer (external device).

- If you hold the FeliCa mark up to the reader/writer (external device) and it is still not recognized, try moving the handset around.
- Reading may not be possible if a metallic substance is present on the FeliCa mark side.

**1** Hold the FeliCa mark up to the reader/writer (external device).

- When the reader/writer (external device) recognizes the FOMA terminal, set the FOMA terminal called LED to flash and vibrator to activate ( P. 121, P. 140).



FeliCa mark

**2** Confirm that the data was read.

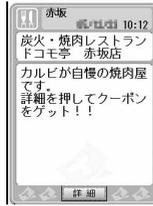
- Check the reader/writer (external device) display to confirm the read results.

### Precautions for Using Osaifu-Keitai

- When using Osaifu-Keitai, be sure to have the battery pack attached.
- Although Osaifu-Keitai is available when the handset is turned off, Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli cannot be started. Called LED does not flash and vibrator does not activate.
- Although Osaifu-Keitai is available during a call or i-mode connection, Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli cannot be started.
- i-αppli can be started and sites can be connected by reading startup information from a reader/writer (external device).
- Osaifu-Keitai may not be available even when holding FeliCa mark up to a reader/writer (external device) if battery is empty.
- FeliCa IC card function is not available while IC card is locked ( P. 270).
- Even if All lock ( P. 148) is enabled, FeliCa IC card functions are not locked.
- When Omakase Lock ( P. 149) is enabled, FeliCa IC card functions are also suspended. When Omakase Lock is disabled, the IC card lock ( P. 270) setting is followed.

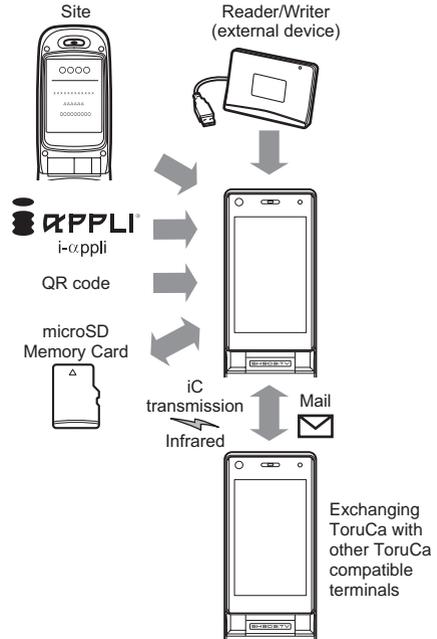
## Note

- Preinstalled i-appli software can also be used.
- In the following cases, data being read or written to the IC card from software will be interrupted. Operations after a call is ended vary depending on the service being used.
  - When a call is received while software is running, the software is interrupted. After the call is ended, the software resumes.
  - When the time set for **Alarm** (Alarm/Schedule alarm/ToDo alarm/Reception reserve alarm/Recording reserve alarm) arrives, running software stops and the alarm screen appears. The software resumes when the alarm screen is closed.
- Automatic startup is not available in the following situations:
  - Handset is turned off
  - Call is in progress
  - i-appli Function lock is set
  - Other functions are activated
  - i-appli is running
- Make sure to safeguard **terminal security code** and service passwords.



The retrieved ToruCa appears. Press **詳細** (Details) key to view further details.

## Retrieving ToruCa



## ToruCa

### ToruCa

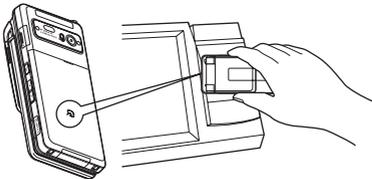
ToruCa is an electronic card that can be retrieved with Osaifu-Keitai. Use as fliers, restaurant cards, coupons, etc. ToruCa is available from reader/writer (external device), sites and QR codes. Easily share using mail, Infrared, iC transmission and microSD Memory Card.

Retrieved ToruCa is saved in **ToruCa of LifeKit** menu.

- ToruCa is available with compatible handsets. Refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]" for details.

## Using ToruCa

Hold Osaifu-Keitai up to the reader/writer (external device) and retrieve ToruCa.



## Note

- Normal packet transmission charges are incurred when retrieving ToruCa with i-mode transmissions.
- Some ToruCa may not be updated or sent using mail or Ir exchange depending on the settings of IP (Information Provider).

## Retrieve ToruCa

### Retrieving ToruCa

Retrieve ToruCa through a reader/writer (external device) using IC card function, or through i-mode mail attachment, i-αpli, downloading from i-mode, microSD Memory Card, iC transmission, Ir exchange, or QR code. Save up to 1,000 ToruCa (Capacity varies depending on size of ToruCa).

- Hold the FOMA terminal up to the reader/writer (external device) to use ToruCa with the automatic reading function. A used ToruCa is moved to the **Used ToruCa** folder.
- When Function lock is applied to ToruCa, Function lock must be disabled except for ToruCa retrieved using IC card function.

### Retrieving from Reader/Writer (External Device)

Hold the FOMA terminal up to the reader/writer (external device) and retrieve ToruCa/ToruCa (details).

- Retrieve ToruCa up to 1,024 bytes and ToruCa (details) up to 100 KB.
- **xx new ToruCa(s)** appears when a new ToruCa is retrieved using IC card functions.  appears when an unread ToruCa is in the FOMA terminal handset.
- The number of new ToruCa appears in the sub display if the FOMA terminal is closed.



Main display



Sub display

### 1 When ToruCa/ToruCa (details) is retrieved, the retrieval complete tone sounds, the called LED flashes and ToruCa/ToruCa (details) appears.

- If no operations are performed for approximately 15 seconds, the previous screen reappears and **xx new ToruCa(s)** appears in stand-by. Press  in stand-by, select **xx new ToruCa(s)** and press  to display ToruCa list.
- Set the handset not to display ToruCa/ToruCa (details) when retrieval is completed ( P. 269).
- For ToruCa including detailed information, a confirmation screen appears to select whether to access a site when retrieval is completed. Select **Yes** and press  to retrieve ToruCa (details).

### Note

- ToruCa cannot be retrieved using a reader/writer (external device) when **IC card lock** is set or retrieval from IC card is set to **OFF**.

### Retrieving from File Attachment

Retrieve ToruCa as an i-mode mail attachment.

### 1 Open received mail with ToruCa attached and select file to save.

### 2 Press .

- ToruCa/ToruCa (details) preview screen appears.

### 3 Select a saving method.

ToruCa	To save as is	 [Save] → <b>Yes</b> → 
	To save after retrieving ToruCa (details)	詳細 (Details) →  → <b>Yes</b> →  [Save] → <b>Yes</b> → 
ToruCa (details)	To save as is	 [Save] → <b>Yes</b> → 
	To save after updating ToruCa (details)	 [Update] → <b>Yes</b> →  →  [Save] → <b>Yes</b> → 

- Retrieve or update ToruCa (details) with i-mode transmission (Packet transmission fees apply).

### 4 Select phone or microSD and press .

### Note

- ToruCa cannot be saved if memory space is not available. Delete unnecessary ToruCa and increase available memory space to save ( P. 269).

#### microSD Memory Card

- Details cannot be retrieved from ToruCa saved on microSD Memory Card.
- Copy ToruCa saved on microSD Memory Card to the FOMA terminal handset ( P. 324).

#### ToruCa retrieved from i-mode and i-αpli

- Some ToruCa may not be retrieved from i-αpli.
- Some ToruCa cannot be sent as mail attachments, via **Ir exchange/iC transmission**, or copied to microSD Memory Cards.

## ToruCa Viewer

### Viewing ToruCa

View retrieved ToruCa and ToruCa (details).

### 1 In stand-by, press [9] [2] [3].

- Select → **microSD** to view information about ToruCa saved in microSD Memory Card.

### 2 Select a folder and press .

- Press  to show ToruCa list for all folders (Does not apply to microSD Memory Card).

### 3 Select data and press .

- Access functions such as Web To, Mail To and Phone To (AV Phone To) from the ToruCa or ToruCa (details) screen (Content of ToruCa saved in a microSD Memory Card cannot be used).

#### Note

- Terminal security code entry screen appears when ToruCa list or details screen is shown while **Function lock** is applied to ToruCa. Enter terminal security code to unlock Function lock temporarily and view.
- When ToruCa and One Seg are activated simultaneously in the Cycloid position, a substitute image will appear in **Multi Window**. In such cases, only voice and sound are available.

## Viewing ToruCa List/Details Screen

### Folder list layout



#### 1 →microSD

Select to view ToruCa folder list in microSD Memory Card (→**phone** appears when viewing list on the microSD Memory Card).

#### 2 Folder icons

	Folder with unread ToruCa
	Folder without unread ToruCa

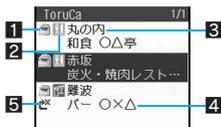
#### 3 Folder name

Show up to 18 single-byte (9 double-byte) characters.

#### 4 Used ToruCa

Used ToruCa is saved. Save up to 20 entries. When the save limit is exceeded, ToruCa are deleted starting with the oldest retrieved date.

### ToruCa list layout



#### 1 ToruCa type

	Unread ToruCa*1
	Unread ToruCa (expired)*2
	Read ToruCa
	Read ToruCa (expired)*2

\*1 ToruCa retrieved from sites and i-mode mail do not become unread.

\*2 When an expiration date is set to ToruCa, it appears on expired ToruCa.

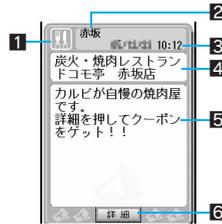
#### 2 Category

#### 3 Index

#### 4 Title

#### 5 Non-redistributable ToruCa

### ToruCa details screen layout



#### 1 Category

#### 2 Index

#### 3 Date retrieved

#### 4 Title

#### 5 Description

#### 6 Details key

Select to retrieve ToruCa (details).

### ToruCa (details) screen layout



#### 1 Category

#### 2 Index

#### 3 Date retrieved

#### 4 Title

#### 5 ToruCa (details)

## Retrieving ToruCa (Details) from ToruCa

1 In the ToruCa details screen ( P. 266), select **詳細** (Details) and press .

2 Select **Yes** and press .

- Handset connects to the i-mode site and ToruCa (details) is retrieved.

#### Note

- ToruCa (details) cannot be saved if memory space is not available. Delete unnecessary ToruCa and increase memory space to save ( P. 269).

## Related Operations

Save phone numbers and mail addresses in ToruCa to the phonebook <Add to phonebook>

- 1 In the ToruCa (details) screen or ToruCa details screen, press **Ⓜ** **6**.
- 2 Press **1** to save new to FOMA terminal handset phonebook.
  - To save new to the FOMA card phonebook: Press **2**.
  - To add/overwrite phonebook: Press **3** ▶ select name ▶ **Ⓜ**.
- 3 Add to phonebook (**☎** P. 98, P. 103).

Save ToruCa (details) image <Save image>

- 1 In the ToruCa (details) screen, press **Ⓜ** **5**.
- 2 Select image ▶ **Ⓜ** ▶ Yes ▶ **Ⓜ**.

### Note (Related operations)

- Adding to phonebook or saving ToruCa image is not available for used ToruCa or ToruCa saved in microSD Memory Card.

## Sorting ToruCa Automatically

<Sort Rules>

Set Sort rules for folders and sort ToruCa automatically.

- Set up to ten rules for each folder.
- The folder listed at the top has top priority and the folder listed at the bottom has least priority if Sort rules for multiple folders coincide.
- Sort rules cannot be set to the **ToruCa** and **Used ToruCa** folders.
- Only ToruCa retrieved with a reader/writer (external device) are automatically sorted.

### Setting Sort rules to folders

- 1 In stand-by, press **Ⓜ** **9** **2** **3**, select folder and press **Ⓜ** **4** [Sort rules].
- 2 Select entry number and press **Ⓜ** to set Sort rules.

- Select a used number to edit sort rules.

To sort by category	<b>1</b> → select category → <b>Ⓜ</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● Press <b>Ⓜ</b> in the category selection screen to show the icon list for the selected category. Press <b>Ⓜ</b> to return to the previous screen.</li></ul>
To sort by text contained in index	<b>2</b> → enter text → <b>Ⓜ</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● Enter up to 20 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters.</li></ul>
To sort by text contained in title	<b>3</b> → enter text → <b>Ⓜ</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● Enter up to 20 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters.</li></ul>
To sort all ToruCa	<b>4</b> → Yes → <b>Ⓜ</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● <b>All ToruCa</b> is set to <b>1</b>.</li><li>● Select <b>No</b> and press <b>Ⓜ</b> to set to a specified number.</li></ul>

- 3 Repeat step 2 to set multiple rules.

- 4 Press **Ⓜ** [Complete].

### Deleting specified sort rules

- 1 In stand-by, press **Ⓜ** **9** **2** **3**, select folder and press **Ⓜ** **4** [Sort rules].
- 2 Select entry number, press **Ⓜ** and select a deletion method.

To delete one	<b>1</b> → Yes → <b>Ⓜ</b> → <b>Ⓜ</b>
To delete all	<b>2</b> → Yes → <b>Ⓜ</b> → <b>Ⓜ</b>

## Managing Folders

Create up to 20 folders and manage files.

### Creating folders <New folder>

- 1 In stand-by, press **Ⓜ** **9** **2** **3**.
- 2 Press **Ⓜ** **1** **1** [New folder], enter folder name and press **Ⓜ**.
  - To delete **New folder** name, press **CLR** for 1+ seconds.

### Note

- Enter up to 18 single-byte (9 double-byte) characters for a folder name.

### Editing folder names <Edit folder name>

- 1 In stand-by, press **Ⓜ** **9** **2** **3**.
- 2 Select folder and press **Ⓜ** **1** **2** [Edit folder name].
- 3 Edit folder name and press **Ⓜ**.
  - To erase folder name, press **CLR** for 1+ seconds in the folder name editing screen.

### Note

- Only folder names of user-created folders can be edited.

### Moving folder order upward

<Move folder up>

- 1 In stand-by, press **Ⓜ** **9** **2** **3**.

## 2 Select folder and press **[F1]** **[F3]** [Move folder up].

- ToruCa folders, used ToruCa folders, the user-created folder at the top of the list or folders in microSD Memory Card cannot be moved.

## Applying Function lock to ToruCa <Function lock>

### 1 In stand-by, press **[9]** **[2]** **[3]**.

### 2 Press **[F1]** [Function lock].

### 3 Enter terminal security code and press **[OK]**.

### 4 Select **ON** or **OFF**.

To set	<b>[1]</b>
To disable	<b>[2]</b>

## Deleting folders <Delete>

### 1 In stand-by, press **[9]** **[2]** **[3]**, select folder and press **[F2]** [Delete].

### 2 Select a deletion method.

To delete folders individually	<b>[1]</b> → enter terminal security code → <b>[OK]</b> → <b>Yes</b> → <b>[OK]</b>
To delete folders collectively	<b>[2]</b> → select folder <b>[OK]</b> (repeatable) → <b>[F1]</b> → enter terminal security code → <b>[OK]</b> → <b>Yes</b> → <b>[OK]</b> ● Press <b>[SelAll]</b> / <b>[ClrAll]</b> to select or clear all.
To delete all ToruCa (keep folders)	<b>[3]</b> → enter terminal security code → <b>[OK]</b> → <b>Yes</b> → <b>[OK]</b>
To delete all folders and ToruCa	<b>[4]</b> → enter terminal security code → <b>[OK]</b> → <b>Yes</b> → <b>[OK]</b>

#### Note

- Only user-created folders can be deleted.

## Managing ToruCa

Delete, move, copy, and sort ToruCa and ToruCa (details) in the FOMA terminal handset or microSD Memory Card.

**microSD Memory Cards are sold separately. Purchase microSD Memory Cards at home electronics shops (P. 318).**

## Sorting ToruCa <Sort>

Default setting **Date(new→old)**

Change the list order to one of the following.

- Only ToruCa saved in the FOMA terminal handset is to be sorted.
- The setting continues after the ToruCa screen is ended after sorting.

Date (new→old)	Files are sorted with the latest save date first.
Date (old→new)	Files are sorted with the oldest save date first.
By category	Files are sorted by genre of category icon.
By index	Files are sorted by index in the following order: single-byte numbers → single-byte upper case alphabet → single-byte lower case alphabet → hiragana → double-byte katakana → kanji → Pictograph 1 → Pictograph 2 → double-byte numbers → double-byte upper case alphabet → double-byte lower case alphabet → single-byte katakana. ● Characters are sorted by character code.
By kana	Files are sorted by hiragana set to ToruCa.

### 1 In stand-by, press **[9]** **[2]** **[3]**.

### 2 Select folder, press **[OK]** and press **[F3]** [Sort].

### 3 Select a sort method and press **[OK]**.

## Moving/Copying ToruCa <Move/Copy/ Copy to microSD/Copy to the phone>

### 1 In stand-by, press **[9]** **[2]** **[3]**.

### 2 Select folder, press **[OK]**, select ToruCa and press **[F4]** [Move/Copy].

### 3 Select Move or Copy.

To move	<b>[1]</b>
To copy	<b>[2]</b>
To copy to microSD Memory Card/FOMA terminal handset	<b>[3]</b>

### 4 Select Move or Copy method.

To move or copy ToruCa individually	<b>[1]</b>
To move or copy selected ToruCa collectively	<b>[2]</b> → select ToruCa <b>[OK]</b> (repeatable) → <b>[OK]</b> ● Press <b>[SelAll]</b> / <b>[ClrAll]</b> to select or clear all.
To move or copy all ToruCa in the folder	<b>[3]</b> → enter terminal security code → <b>[OK]</b>

## 5 Select folder and press .

- When copying between the FOMA terminal handset and microSD Memory Card, select **Yes** and press .
- When **Includes image with file restrictions**, **ToruCa will be copied without details** appears, press  [Agree].

### Note

- ToruCa cannot be moved without created folders.
- ToruCa cannot be moved/copied to the used ToruCa folder.
- ToruCa cannot be moved between the FOMA terminal handset and microSD Memory Card.
- Folder selection is not required when copying between the FOMA terminal handset and microSD Memory Card.

## Deleting ToruCa <Delete>

### 1 In stand-by, press .

### 2 Select folder, press , select ToruCa and press [Delete].

### 3 Select a deletion method.

To delete ToruCa individually	 → <b>Yes</b> → 
To delete ToruCa collectively	 → select ToruCa  (repeatable) →  → <b>Yes</b> →  ● Press  [SelAll]/  [ClrAll] to select or clear all.
To delete all ToruCa in the folder	 → enter terminal security code →  → <b>Yes</b> → 

## Searching ToruCa

Search ToruCa by genre of category icons, index or title.

- ToruCa saved in the FOMA terminal handset is applicable.
- ToruCa cannot be searched inside the used ToruCa folder.

### 1 In stand-by, press , select folder and press [Search].

- Alternatively, select a folder, press  and  to search inside the selected folder.

### 2 Select the range of search.

To search inside selected folder	
To search all folders	

### 3 Select a search method and specify a keyword.

To search by genre of category icon	 → select category → 
To search by index	 → enter part of index →  
To search by title	 → enter part of title → 

- The search results list appears.
- Enter up to 20 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters for keywords (index and titles).

### 4 In the search results screen, press [Advanced search] to perform advanced search.

## Attaching ToruCa to i-mode Mail

- ToruCa exceeding 1 KB, ToruCa (details) exceeding 100 KB, non-redistributable ToruCa and used ToruCa cannot be attached to mail.

### 1 In the ToruCa (details) screen ( P. 266) or ToruCa details screen ( P. 266), press [Attach to mail].

- Alternatively, press  in the ToruCa list.

### 2 Compose and send i-mode mail.

- Refer to steps 2 to 4 on P. 214 for details.

### Note

- Cannot be sent to models that do not support ToruCa.
- When ToruCa (details) attached to mail includes an image with **file restrictions**, the mail is sent without ToruCa (details) retrieved. However, details can be retrieved again by the mail recipient.

## ToruCa Settings

### Setting ToruCa

Set to use ToruCa when holding the FOMA terminal up to the reader/writer (external device).

- The following items can be set.

Item	Setting details	Default setting
Retrieve from iC card	Set whether to retrieve using a reader/writer (external device) and iC transmission.	ON
Duplicate check	Set to check that the same ToruCa has not been saved before retrieving to prevent duplication.	ON

Item	Setting details	Default setting
Auto reading check	Set whether to automatically read available ToruCa when ToruCa is used by holding the FOMA terminal up to the reader/writer (external device). Set this item to <b>ON</b> to automatically recognize available ToruCa and transfer the recognized ToruCa to the <b>Used ToruCa</b> folder.	OFF
Auto display	Set whether to automatically view ToruCa when retrieving is completed.	ON

- When Auto reading check is set to **OFF**, some functions of ToruCa may not be available.
- When the FOMA terminal is held up to the reader/writer (external device) if Auto reading check is set to **OFF**, a confirmation screen may appear asking whether to use the automatic reading function. To use ToruCa, select **Yes**, press  $\odot$ , press  $\odot$  again and set this function to **ON**.

**1** In stand-by, press  $\odot$   $\boxed{9}$   $\boxed{2}$   $\boxed{3}$ .

**2** Press  $\odot$   $\boxed{8}$  [ToruCa settings] and select a setting item.

To set to retrieve from a reader/writer	$\boxed{1}$ → $\boxed{1}$ [ON] or $\boxed{2}$ [OFF]
To set Duplicate check	$\boxed{2}$ → $\boxed{1}$ [ON] or $\boxed{2}$ [OFF]
To set Auto reading check	$\boxed{3}$ → $\boxed{1}$ [ON] → <b>Yes</b> → $\odot$ → $\odot$ ● To disable: Press $\boxed{2}$ [OFF].
To set Auto display	$\boxed{4}$ → $\boxed{1}$ [ON] or $\boxed{2}$ [OFF]

## IC Card Lock

### Locking IC Card Functions

Lock IC card functions to restrict usage of the FeliCa IC card function.

### Locking IC Card Functions When Power Is Turned On <IC Lock (Power-on)>

Default setting **OFF**

Set IC card functions to automatically lock when the power is turned on.

**1** In stand-by, press  $\odot$   $\boxed{7}$   $\boxed{6}$ , enter terminal security code and press  $\odot$ .

**2** Press  $\boxed{4}$   $\boxed{1}$  [IC lock(power-on)] and select **ON** or **OFF**.

To set	$\boxed{1}$
To cancel	$\boxed{2}$

- Alternatively, press  $\odot$  for 1+ seconds in stand-by, select **Yes** and press  $\odot$  to set IC card lock. To disable, press  $\odot$  for 1+ seconds in stand-by, enter terminal security code and press  $\odot$ .

### Locking IC Card Functions When Power Is Turned Off <IC Lock (Power-off)>

Default setting **Follow power ON**

Set IC card functions to automatically lock when the power is turned off.

**1** In stand-by, press  $\odot$   $\boxed{7}$   $\boxed{6}$ , enter terminal security code and press  $\odot$ .

**2** Press  $\boxed{4}$   $\boxed{2}$  [IC lock(power-off)] and select whether to set IC card lock when the power is turned off.

To follow the setting when the power is ON	$\boxed{1}$
To set	$\boxed{2}$

#### Note

- If **Omakase Lock** is set, IC card is automatically locked.
- ToruCa cannot be retrieved using a reader/writer (external device) or the automatic reading function is not available when IC card is locked.
- IC card lock is set automatically when battery pack is removed. If the battery pack is inserted, IC card lock is disabled when turning the handset on. However, if the battery pack is removed with IC card lock applied at power-on, IC card lock is retained when reinserting the battery pack and turning the handset on.
- When IC card lock is set or IC card lock is set using Omakase Lock, IC card lock is retained even if battery becomes empty and power turns off.
- For some Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-appli, downloading and version upgrading may not be available while IC card is locked.

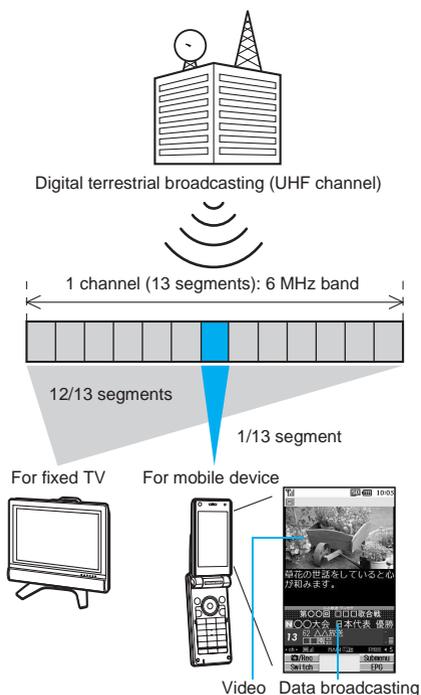
# Watching TV

● TV	272
● Setting Channels	<Channel Setting>274
● Watching TV	<Activate One Seg>275
● Using the Program Guide i-appli	<Program Guide>279
● Setting Timer for Starting or Recording TV Programs	<Booking List>280
● Using Data Broadcasting	283
● Using TVlink	<TVlink>284
● Recording One Seg While Watching	284
● Setting One Seg	<One Seg Settings>286

## TV

### One Seg

One Seg is a digital terrestrial broadcasting for mobile devices. The band of one channel (6 MHz) is divided into 13 segments. One of them is used for mobile devices. Thus, it is called One Seg. One Seg provides video and voice, together with data broadcasting. Also, One Seg allows data transmission to data broadcasting sites or i-mode sites. In other words, One Seg is a broadcasting service that completes with a help of communication. Packet transmission charges apply when using the communication. What One Seg provides is not only to receive information from the TV broadcasters (broadcast stations). It also makes it possible to send information to the TV broadcasters, using transmission function of a mobile phone. Use this function to join panel shows, enjoy TV shopping and more.



### About One Seg

- One Seg is a service provided by TV broadcasters (broadcast stations).
- In One Seg, a mobile phone can receive video, voice and sound, and other information of data broadcasting. Reception of them is free of charge and does not require any subscription.
- Information available in the area of the data broadcasting is "data broadcasting" information and "data broadcasting site" information. Information of "data broadcasting" is carried in a broadcast wave, together with video, voice and sound. "Data broadcasting site" information is used to access sites provided by the TV broadcaster (broadcast station). The "i-mode site" can also be accessed with this service. To access sites, subscription of the i-mode service, etc. is required.
- Packet transmission charges apply when accessing a site such as a "data broadcasting site", "i-mode site" or others. Also, paid sites (i-mode paid sites) require another cost for some sites.
- For details on the "One Seg" service, see the website below. The Association for Promotion of Digital Broadcasting <http://www.d-pa.org/>
- Information that One Seg can display is carried by a broadcast wave. Regardless of FOMA service area, your mobile phone cannot receive any One Seg information under situations that a broadcast wave cannot be received. For example, when your mobile phone is outside the service area or time of broadcasting.

### Broadcast Storage Area

A mobile phone has a storage area that is used exclusively for One Seg information. This area is called broadcast storage area, and its specifications are defined by ARIB\*1. When watching a program, the user may enter some information, following instructions provided in the data broadcasting area. The broadcast storage area stores this entered information, based on the setting made by the TV broadcaster (broadcast station). The stored information may be results of panel shows, member's number, gender, age, occupation or others. These stored items may be displayed even if not re-entered when the data broadcasting site is accessed. They may also be transmitted to the TV broadcaster (broadcast station). The broadcast storage area consists of two areas: one for individual broadcast stations and the other for a group of associated stations\*2. If information is stored in the area for individual broadcast stations, that information is only available for that broadcast station. Unlikely, information in the area for a group of associated stations is available for all the stations in the group. Refer to P. 286 for details on deleting the broadcasting storage area.

A confirmation screen appears asking whether to format the broadcasting storage area when a different FOMA card is inserted. Select **Yes** to format. Select **No** to not format. In this case, the services of the broadcasting storage area become unavailable.

\*1 ARIB refers to Association of Radio Industries and Businesses.

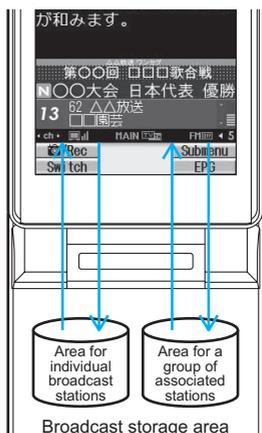
\*2 Associated stations refer to TV stations in the same associated enterprise, such as Fuji Television, Tokai Television and Kansai Telecasting.

## When the broadcasting storage area is full

There are eight areas for individual broadcast stations in the broadcasting storage area. If these eight areas are occupied, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to delete a stored item before information of a new broadcast station is stored. Select **Yes** to display a screen for deleting an item. Select an item and then **Yes** to store the new item.

## Using information in the broadcasting storage area

When using information in the broadcasting storage area while watching a TV program, **Use saved information? Used by same broadcasting group may be included** appears. Select **Yes** to not display the message again while watching the same program. Select **Yes(Always)** to not display the message for all the TV programs.



Broadcast storage area

## Other Features

- Using the Cycloid position and Multi Window
- Activating One Seg by rotating the display
- Selecting a station with remote control No.
- Switching between main and sub languages
- Using timer for starting or recording a program
- Recording movies and still pictures of a program
- Using the Program guide i-appli
- Displaying and using data broadcasting information
- Using TVlink

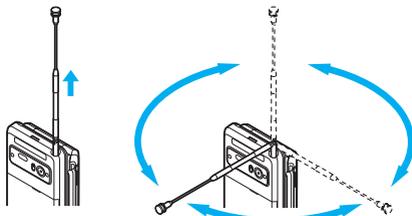
## Before Using TV

- Avoid watching One Seg for a long time while charging as this lessens the battery's service life.

## Using the TV antenna

Use the TV antenna to watch One Seg. Fully pull out the TV antenna for good reception.

- When the One Seg reception is poor, put the FOMA terminal away from your body and put it back repeatedly, or move to another place. Doing so may improve the reception. Also try putting down the TV antenna or changing its direction.
- Do not force to change the direction of the TV antenna.
- When putting the TV antenna back into the FOMA terminal, do not force to do so holding its top part. May result in damage. Hold the antenna's lower half and pull it down straight until its top part is fully put back into the FOMA terminal.



## Screen display for when One Seg is used for the first time

- A confirmation screen for using the service appears when One Seg is activated for the first time. Check the contents and press **⓪** [Agree] twice.

### Note

- In the following cases, a confirmation screen for using the service appears again.
  - When **Reset settings** is made
  - When **Delete user data** is performed
  - When another FOMA card is inserted

## Receiving a call or message while watching One Seg

When one of the followings is received while watching One Seg, the FOMA terminal suspends or stops playing the video, voice and sound. Then the terminal reacts to the reception.

- One Seg is suspended and restarted afterwards if the reception is:
  - Incoming voice call
  - PushTalk transmission
  - Notice of an alarm, scheduled item, ToDo and timer-set TV program
- One Seg is stopped and not restarted afterwards if answering:
  - Videophone call

### Note

- After a call is ended, One Seg may start automatically. At this time, the voice and sound are played in the volume for One Seg. Stay the FOMA terminal away from your ear in that case.
- The video appears on the right side of the screen without a suspend or stop in the Cycloid position (**Multi Window** function).
- Even if i-motion or Chaku-uta full® is set as the ring tone, the preset ring tone sounds when a call is received while running One Seg. In addition, the preset tone also sounds for PushTalk ring tone, Alarm, Schedule, ToDo and notice of a timer-set One Seg program.

## Note

- When talking in the Cycloid position, use a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately) or use **Hands-free**. When using the earpiece to talk, make sure to switch to the normal position.

## Other notes for TV

- When One Seg is activated for the first time, it cannot be activated in the condition that communication is disabled.
  - One Seg is not available when the FOMA card is not inserted, subscription with DoCoMo is canceled, or the FOMA service is disabled.
  - When One Seg is repeatedly played in the condition that communication is disabled (for example, the FOMA terminal is in Self mode or outside the FOMA service area), One Seg may not be activated even if the inserted FOMA card is subscribed to DoCoMo.
- In such cases, move into the FOMA service area and reactivate One Seg in there.
- DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss of stored content.

Before changing the model or asking for repair of your FOMA terminal, it is recommended to make a copy of the stored contents (still pictures taken from One Seg, TVlink, data in the broadcasting storage area, etc.) by preparing a memo or other means. The stored information cannot be transferred to another FOMA terminal.

## Channel Setting

### Setting Channels

To watch TV, select the channel list in the Channel setting.

- Up to 62 stations can be saved into one channel list. In addition, up to nine channel lists can be saved according to your area. Select one channel list to be used first.
- Save the channel list in the normal position.

### Saving a Broadcast Station into the Channel List <Auto Channel Set>

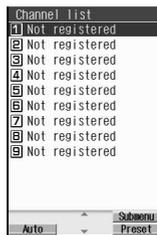
A broadcast station is automatically searched and saved into the channel list when a prefecture/district is selected.

#### 1 In stand-by, press **[TV]** **[9]** **[3]** **[1]**.

- Alternatively, press **[TV]** for 1+ seconds in stand-by to show the One Seg menu screen.



#### 2 Press **[6]** [Channel setting].



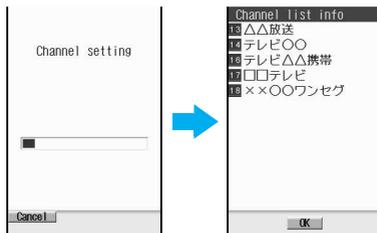
Channel list

#### 3 Select the destination No., press **[OK]** **[1]** [Auto channel set], select Yes and press **[OK]**.

- Alternatively, select the destination No. and press **[OK]** [Auto].

#### 4 Select a region, press **[OK]**, select a prefecture/district and press **[OK]**.

- Searching broadcast stations starts. It takes approximately 60 seconds to end the search. The channel list detailed screen appears when the search ends.



#### 5 Press **[OK]**, select Yes and press **[OK]**.

- The broadcast station is saved into the channel list. To use the saved channel list, refer to "Selecting a Channel List to Be Used" on P. 275.

## Note

- When the FOMA terminal is set to the Cycloid position during search of broadcast stations, the search is interrupted.

## Saving Preset Channel List

### <Preset CH Setting>

The broadcast information for each region is preset in the FOMA terminal. Save broadcast stations in a prefecture/district selected from the information into the channel list.

#### 1 In the channel list screen, select the destination No. and press **[OK]** **[2]** [Preset CH setting].

- Alternatively, select the destination No. and press **[OK]** [Preset] in the channel list screen.

#### 2 Select a region, press **[OK]**, select a prefecture/district and press **[OK]**.

### 3 Press $\odot$ , select Yes and press $\odot$ .

- The broadcast station is saved into the channel list. To use the saved channel list, refer to "Selecting a Channel List to Be Used" on P. 275.

#### Note

- The preset channels cannot be set depending on a selected prefecture/district. Make the automatic channel setting if not set.

## Selecting a Channel List to Be Used

### 1 In the channel list screen, select a channel list and press $\odot$ [Details].



- Channels are allocated to the remote control numbers 1 to 12. Easily select a channel by one-touch operation (参照 P. 275). The remote control number can be changed.
- To view the next page of the channel list, press  $\odot$ . To view the previous page, press  $\odot$ .

### 2 Press $\odot$ [Set].

- $\checkmark$  appears in the selected list.
- Alternatively, select a channel list and press  $\odot$  [Set] in the channel list screen.

## Related Operations

### Edit a title of channel list <Edit title>

In the channel list screen, select a channel list  $\blacktriangleright$   $\odot$  3  $\blacktriangleright$  edit the title  $\blacktriangleright$   $\odot$ .

### Delete a channel list <Delete>

1 In the channel list screen, select a channel list  $\blacktriangleright$   $\odot$  4.

2 Press 1 [Delete one].

- To delete all channel lists: Press 2  $\blacktriangleright$  enter terminal security code  $\blacktriangleright$   $\odot$ .

3 Select Yes  $\blacktriangleright$   $\odot$ .

### Delete a broadcast station in the channel list <Delete>

1 In the channel list screen, select a channel list  $\blacktriangleright$   $\odot$   $\blacktriangleright$  select a broadcast station  $\blacktriangleright$   $\odot$  1.

2 Select Yes  $\blacktriangleright$   $\odot$ .

### Change the remote control number

#### <Change remote no.>

1 In the channel list screen, select a channel list  $\blacktriangleright$   $\odot$   $\blacktriangleright$   $\odot$  2.

2 Select a broadcast station to be changed  $\blacktriangleright$   $\odot$   $\blacktriangleright$  select a new remote control number  $\blacktriangleright$   $\odot$ .

## Related Operations

### Reset channel settings <Reset>

In the channel list screen, press  $\odot$  5  $\blacktriangleright$  enter terminal security code  $\blacktriangleright$   $\odot$   $\blacktriangleright$  Yes  $\blacktriangleright$   $\odot$ .

### Note (Related operations)

#### Editing titles

- Enter up to 20 single/double-byte characters for the title.

#### Deleting

- The channel list being used cannot be deleted.

#### Deleting broadcast stations

- When only one station is saved, it cannot be deleted.

#### Reset

- Not available while watching One Seg.

## Activate One Seg

### Watching TV

Set the FOMA terminal to the Cycloid position to activate One Seg and watch TV (Rotation-link TV activation function). In addition, use another function while watching One Seg on Multi Window.

- Activate One Seg from the Program guide i-appli or the timer function for starting/recording a One Seg program. Also activate from program information on sites, Internet web pages, mail or i-Channel.
- Use FM transmitter to play voice and sound with an FM radio and others (参照 P. 361).

### 1 In stand-by, press $\odot$ 9 3 1 1.

- Alternatively, press  $\odot$  TV in stand-by or set the FOMA terminal to the Cycloid position.
- The last channel is set.

- In the following cases, **Invalid UIM. Initialize storage area?** appears. Check them and press  $\odot$ .

- When One Seg is activated for the first time
- When another FOMA card is inserted



### 2 Select a channel with $\odot$ .

- Channels appear in the order of remote control numbers 1 to 62.

#### Note

- When One Seg is activated in Manner mode, **In Manner mode, play sound?** appears. Select **Yes** to sound.
- When watching One Seg, the color such as a theme color may appear differently.
- One Seg may not be activated even if set to the Cycloid position depending on the functions being activated.

## Screen for Watching One Seg

### Normal position



### Cycloid position



#### 1 Video

#### 2 Subtitles

#### 3 Data broadcasting

- Data broadcasting is not available in the Cycloid position.

#### 4 Name of broadcast station and One Seg program

- Appears in the location of 2 when Subtitles is set to **OFF** in the Cycloid position.

#### 5 Channel number

#### 6 Icon indicating reception of broadcast waves



- Broadcast waves cannot be received outside the service area. appears, if outside the service area.

#### 7 Icon indicating the recording status

	Recording is being prepared
	Recording is in progress

#### 8 Icon indicating the settings of Main/Sub language

<b>MAIN</b>	Main language
<b>SUB</b>	Sub language
<b>MAIN SUB</b>	Main + Sub language

#### 9 Icon indicating operation mode

	Video mode (Normal position)
	Data broadcasting mode (Normal position)
	Video mode (Cycloid position)

#### 10 Icon indicating the settings of the Off timer

	Off timer is being set
--	------------------------

#### 11 Icon indicating the settings of the FM transmitter

	ON
	OFF

#### 12 Icon indicating volume

	◀0 (Volume 0) to ▶10 (Volume 10)
--	----------------------------------

- ◀M appears in the Silent status.

### Note

- Multi Window** does not show the items displayed in the screen for watching One Seg, such as the icons and the names of the broadcast station/program.

## Key operations while watching One Seg

### Video mode

	Normal position	Cycloid position	
		Full-screen	Multi Window
To select a station with UP/DOWN	 ● Select a station in order/reverse order of the remote control numbers 1 to 62.		● Select a station in order.
To select a station with one-touch operation	Remote control numbers 1 to 9:  to Remote control No.10: Remote control No.11: Remote control No.12:	-	-
To select a station by searching a frequency	(for 1+ seconds)/ (for 1+ seconds) ● Stations are searched and switched in order of received frequencies.	-	-
To adjust volume* (Volume 0 to 10)	(softer)/ (louder) or  (softer)/ (louder)	-	(softer)/ (louder)
To mute/disable		-	-
To turn Subtitles ON/OFF	(for 1+ seconds)	-	-
To activate the Program guide i-appli		-	-
To record a movie of One Seg programs	(for 1+ seconds) ● To stop, press .	-	-
To record One Seg programs as a still picture		-	-
To display Submenu		-	-
To display Mail menu	(for 1+ seconds) ● Inbox appears when received mail ticker is being displayed.	-	-
To switch between video mode and data broadcasting mode		-	-

	Normal position	Cycloid position	
		Full-screen	Multi Window
To temporarily display icons of the screen for watching One Seg and the name of broadcast station/program	-	(X) (for 1+ seconds) or (●)	-
To switch between One Seg and functions being activated	(TV) ● Switching may not available depending on the status of the functions being activated.		
To end One Seg	(M) or (CLR) → Yes → (●)		-

\* Keep the key pressed to adjust volume continuously.

## Data broadcasting mode

	Normal position
To select the highlight in data broadcasting items	(◀) / (▶)
To access a selected site	(●)
To move to the previous/next page	(◀) / (▶)
To record a movie of One Seg program	(M) (for 1+ seconds) ● To stop, press (M).
To record One Seg programs as a still picture	(S)
To operate data broadcasting	(CLR), (1) to (9), (0), (X), (H) ● Operations differ according to the data broadcasting.

## Related Operations

### Switch the display size of video in Cycloid position <Display mode (W)>

- 1 In the screen for watching One Seg, press (M) (2).
- 2 For Normal size, press (1).  
● For Large size: Press (2).

### Set whether to display the icon when video is enlarged in the Cycloid position <Mark display (W)>

- 1 In the screen for watching One Seg, press (M) (3).
- 2 To temporarily display, press (1).  
● To constantly display: Press (2).

### Set to display subtitles while watching One Seg <Subtitles>

- 1 In the screen for watching One Seg, press (M) (4).
- 2 To display subtitles, press (1).  
● To not display: Press (2).

## Related Operations

### Set to display subtitles when activating One Seg <Startup settings>

- 1 In the screen for watching One Seg, press (M) (4) (3).
- 2 To display subtitles when activating One Seg, press (1).  
● To display in conjunction with Manner mode when activating One Seg: Press (2).  
● To not display when activating One Seg: Press (3).

### Set the duration to automatically stop One Seg <Off timer>

- 1 In the screen for watching One Seg, press (M) (5).
- 2 Press (1) [After 30 min]/(2) [After 60 min]/(3) [After 90 min]/(4) [After 120 min].  
● To not set: Press (5).

### Using FM transmitter <FM transmitter out>

In the screen for watching One Seg, press (M) (7) (1).

### View key list <Key list>

In the screen for watching One Seg, press (M) (1).

### Set channels <Channel setting>

- 1 In the screen for watching One Seg, press (M) (2).
- 2 Refer to "Setting Channels" on P. 274 for the settings.

### Save the broadcast station of a One Seg program being watched into the channel list <Add channel>

In the screen for watching One Seg, press (M) (3).

### Compose a message including program information <Comp into message>

In the screen for watching One Seg, press (M) (5) (compose/send i-mode mail).

### Check available broadcast stations <Channel info>

In the screen for watching One Seg, press (M) (6).  
● To end checking: Press (●) or (CLR).

### View program information <Program info>

In the screen for watching One Seg, press (M) (7).  
● To end checking: Press (●) or (CLR).

## Note (Related operations)

### Display mode (W)

- The default setting is *Video(zoom)*.

### Mark display (W)

- Set whether to show icons (indicating Clock, Signal status, etc.) that appear on the right side of the screen. The default setting is *Full-time display*. If *Temporary display* is set, the icons appear for approximately two seconds when the channel and volume are changed. Regardless of this settings, when Display mode (W) is set to *Video(actual size)*, the icons and the broadcast station/program name always appear.

## Related Operations

### Note (Related operations)

#### Subtitles

- Whether to show subtitles when activating One Seg follows the setting for activating One Seg.
- Subtitles are not available for some programs. For the setting with subtitles shown, the subtitle area appears even if a program does not have subtitles.

#### Startup settings

- The default setting is **Linked manner**.
- If **Linked manner** is set, subtitles appear when One Seg is activated in Manner mode.

#### Off timer

- The default setting is **OFF**. Even after setting Off timer, it returns to **OFF** when One Seg is ended.

#### FM transmitter out

- Refer to P. 361 for details on using FM transmitter.

#### Add channel

- When a One Seg program in the different area from the one set to the channel list is being watched, the broadcast station of the program may not be added to the channel list.

To set the operation of the FOMA terminal closed*	(5) → (1) [Continue]/(2) [Silent]/(3) [End] ● The FOMA terminal is muted while recording even if set to <b>End</b> . Recording continues.
To set Mail ticker	(6) → (1) [Sender-title]/(2) [Only notice]/(3) [OFF]
To display the details of the One Seg settings, the image display settings (ⓘ P. 286) and the Sound FX settings (ⓘ P. 286)	(7) ● To end checking: Press (⊙) or (⊙).
To reset the One Seg settings, the image display settings (ⓘ P. 286), the Sound FX settings (ⓘ P. 286) and the Reset status display settings (ⓘ P. 286)	(8) → enter terminal security code → (⊙) → <b>Yes</b> → (⊙)

\* When One Seg is activated if the close operation is set to **Continue** or **Silent**, the information of data broadcasting or data broadcasting site may be automatically updated since One Seg is kept activated even with the FOMA terminal closed. In such cases, packet transmission charges may apply.

## Setting Video, Voice and Sound of One Seg <One Seg Settings>

Default setting	Vibrant image mode: <b>Dynamic</b> Brightness: <b>Automatic</b> Main/Sub language: <b>Main</b> Change language: <b>Main language</b> Set when folded: <b>Continue</b> Mail ticker: <b>Only notice</b>
-----------------	--

### 1 In the screen for watching One Seg, press (⊙) (⊙) (2) [One Seg settings] and select a setting item.

To set Vibrant image mode	(1) → (1) [Normal]/(2) [Dynamic]/(3) [Movie]
To adjust the display brightness	(2) → (2) [Manual] → (⊙) (brighter)/ (⊙) (darker) → (⊙) ● To automatically adjust the brightness according to the surrounding light: Press (2) → (1) [Automatic].
To switch between Main and Sub languages	(3) → (1) [Main]/(2) [Sub]/(3) [Main + Sub] ● After ending One Seg, the setting returns to <b>Main</b> .
To switch between Main language and Sub language	(4) → (1) [Main language]/(2) [Sub language] ● After ending One Seg, the setting returns to <b>Main language</b> .

### Note

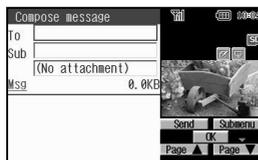
#### Mail ticker

- When the sender is not saved in the phonebook and Function lock is applied to phonebook, the sender's mail address appears if Mail ticker is set to **Sender+title**.
- If Mail ticker is set to **Sender+title** or **Only notice**, ticker appears regardless of the **Receive display** (video, voice and sound is being played).
- If Function lock is applied to mail or Folder security for the save destination folder of received mail is set to **ON** even when Mail ticker is set to **Sender+title**, only notification appears.

## Using Another Function While Watching TV

Use another function while watching One Seg on Multi Window in the Cycloid position.

### Example: When composing a message while watching One Seg



Multi Window

- Refer to "Watching One Seg in Multi Window" on P. 436 for functions which can be activated simultaneously.
- Data broadcasting is not available when watching One Seg on Multi Window.

- When TV is ended in the Cycloid position, a substitute image appears on Multi Window.

## 1 Set the FOMA terminal to the Cycloid position during another function is being activated.

- One Seg is activated in full-screen.

## 2 Press **TV**.

- A TV program is displayed in Multi Window. At the same time, the running function can be used on the left side.
- When **TV** is pressed, display is switched between full-screen and Multi Window for watching TV. Switching may not available depending on the status of the functions being activated.
- A TV program is displayed even if another function is activated with Multi Assistant while TV is running in the Cycloid position.

### When a call is received while watching One Seg

- When an incoming Videophone call is answered, One Seg ends.
- When a call is received in the normal position, running One Seg is suspended and the incoming call screen appears. Then, an incoming call can be answered. For a voice call or PushTalk, One Seg is suspended and restarted afterwards.
- In addition, when in the Cycloid position, switch to Multi Window. In such cases, the incoming call screen appears on the left side and an incoming call can be answered. Voice calls and PushTalk transmission can be made while watching TV on Multi Window, however, TV does not sound.
- When in the Cycloid position, switch to the normal position during an incoming call to answer the call, if Rotation link reply (P. 66) is set to **ON**.

#### Note

- Even if i-motion is set as the ring tone or the receive display, the default ring tone or the receive display is activated when a call is received while running One Seg.

### When mail is received while watching One Seg



— Ticker display —

When mail is received in the normal position or the Cycloid position (full-screen) while watching One Seg, Mail ticker appears on the screen. The mail ring tone, the receive display and the mail received screen are not activated. When Mail ticker is being displayed, press **TV** for 1+ seconds to view Inbox.

- In the Cycloid position, Mail ticker appears on the bottom of the display when Display mode (W) is set to **Video(zoom)** and on the left side when set to **Video(actual size)**.
- When displayed, press **CLR** to hide Mail ticker. Also, set the handset to display the sender and the subject in the Mail ticker or to not display the Mail ticker (P. 278).
- View a received message while watching One Seg in Multi Window. However, when the sender is not saved in the phonebook, **Sender address is reject unknown**. **Video off** appears and the One Seg program is switched to a substitute image.

#### Note

- In the following cases, the mail ring tone, the receive display and the mail received screen are activated.
  - When another function activated with **Multi Assistant** is displayed while One Seg is running in the normal position
  - When One Seg is played using Multi Window If i-motion is set as the mail ring tone or the mail received screen, the default settings are activated.

## Program Guide

### Using the Program Guide i-appli

Use the Program guide i-appli to start the One Seg program from the TV program guide.

Also, set timer for starting or recording a program.

- The Program guide i-appli is set to Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE program schedule remote control) by default. Refer to P. 252 for details on using Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE program schedule remote control). To set other software to the Program guide i-appli, refer to P. 251.
- When Channel setting (P. 274) is not made, Channel setting is activated if One Seg is activated from the Program guide i-appli. When One Seg is activated while the channel list is set, the channel set to the smallest number on the set channel list is selected.

## 1 In stand-by, press **9** **3** **1** **2**.

- Alternatively, press **EPG** or press **TV** in the screen for watching One Seg.
- In the Program guide i-appli screen, press **TV起動** to watch the selected program.



## Booking List

### Setting Timer for Starting or Recording TV Programs

Set timer for starting or recording TV programs. The alarm (start announcement) sounds one minute before the start time of a timer-set program. When timer is set for recording a TV program, the recording automatically starts. In addition, for starting TV programs, One Seg can be activated in the alarm screen if Linked startup setting is set to ON.

- Set the correct date and time in advance (☞ P. 45).
- Timers for starting and recording cannot be set when channels are not set.
- In the condition that a confirmation screen for using the service appears, such as when One Seg is activated for the first time, recording is not available even if timer is set for recording.
- The recorded video data is saved into the microSD Memory Card. To set timer for recording, insert the microSD Memory Card in advance.
- The copy control signals (indicating that “the program cannot be recorded (Copy Never)”, “the program can be recorded only once (Copy Once)” and “the program can be recorded without restrictions (Copy Free)”) are used in One Seg. They are set by each broadcast station.
- With the copy control signals indicating that “the program can be recorded only once (Copy Once)” and “the program can be recorded without restrictions (Copy Free)”, programs can be recorded.
- When the copy control signal changes to “the program cannot be recorded (Copy Never)” while recording a program, recording stops. Video data recorded up to that point is saved.
- Save up to 50 timer settings for recording and starting TV programs.
- Set timer for recording or starting a TV program from the program information shown in the Program guide i-αpli, sites and mail.
- Adjust the direction of the TV antenna, etc. and check whether the TV images are received clearly.
- Check whether there is enough remaining battery power of the FOMA terminal.

#### Estimated number of saved entries and recording time

- Record up to 99 entries for up to approximately 20 minutes when saving the recorded video data to 64 MB microSD Memory Card (Actual number varies depending on the recording time).

### Setting Timer for Recording or Starting One Seg Programs

#### Using the Program guide i-αpli <EPG>

- 1 In stand-by, press **9** **3** **1** **3** and press **[New]** or **[New]**.
- 2 Press **1** [EPG].

- The Program guide i-αpli is set to Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE program schedule remote control) by default. Refer to P. 252 for details on using Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE program schedule remote control).

### Setting date/time and a channel

<Manual input>

- 1 In stand-by, press **9** **3** **1** **3** and press **[New]** or **[New]**.
- 2 Press **2** [Manual input] and select a timer setting.

```

Start date:[--/--/----]
Start time:[  --:--]
Repeat  :[  ]
Channel :[  ]
Prog name:[  ]
Start ann:[ON ]
    
```

```

Start date:[--/--/----]
Start time:[  --:--]
End date :[--/--/----]
End time :[  --:--]
Repeat  :[  ]
Channel :[  ]
Prog name:[  ]
Start ann:[ON fixed]
    
```

Timer setting screen for starting a program

Timer setting screen for recording a program

To save timer for starting a program	<b>1</b>
To save timer for recording a program	<b>2</b> → <b>Yes</b> → <b>☉</b> ● Read descriptions on the timer setting screen carefully. Select <b>Yes(Always)</b> to not show the timer setting screen again.

- 3 Select **Start date** and **End date** (only for recording), press **☉** and enter the start date/time and the end date/time (only for recording), respectively.

- Refer to the step 2 of “Saving Schedules” on P. 372 for details on entering the date and time.
- Use 24-hour format for the time.

- 4 Select a repeat method.

To save a one-time timer	<b>1</b>
To set to repeat every day	<b>2</b> → enter number of repeats (00 to 99) → <b>☉</b>
To save a weekly timer	<b>3</b> → enter number of repeats (00 to 99) → <b>☉</b>

- **00** represents unlimited repeats.

- 5 Select **Channel**, press **☉**, select a channel and press **☉**.
- 6 Select **Prog name**, press **☉**, enter the program name and press **☉**.
  - Enter up to 200 single-byte (100 double-byte) characters.
- 7 Press **[Complete]**.

## Setting alarms

**Default setting** Reception: **ON**  
Recording: **ON fixed**

Set the alarm tone and volume for the start announcement.

- Timer for recording programs cannot be set to **OFF**.
- Ring duration of an alarm is 15 seconds. Ring duration cannot be changed.
- Refer to P. 369 for the priority of alarm functions.

Item	Setting details	Default setting
Alarm tone	Change the alarm tone.	着信音 1
Alarm volume	Change the alarm volume.	Volume 5
Linked startup setting (in timer for starting TV programs)	After the alarm screen appears, set whether to show a confirmation screen to activate One Seg.	ON

### 1 In the timer setting screen for starting or recording programs, select **Start ann** and press **⊙**.

- When setting timer for recording programs, proceed to step 3.

### 2 Press **1** [ON].

### 3 Press **1** [Alarm tone] and select an alarm tone.

To set a melody	<b>1</b>
To set Chaku-uta full®	<b>2</b>
To set an i-motion with voice only	<b>3</b>
To not set	<b>4</b>

### 4 Refer to step 2 on P. 116 and select an alarm tone.

### 5 Press **2** [Alarm volume], press **⬆** (louder) or **⬇** (softer) to adjust the volume and press **⊙**.

### 6 Press **3** [Linked startup] and select **1** [ON] or **2** [OFF].

### 7 Press **⊙** [Complete].

#### Note

- When the start date and time of timers for starting and recording a program are set to the same date and time, the timer for recording is prioritized.

#### Timer for starting programs

- When setting the timer, a confirmation screen appears if the same start date and time are already saved. To set, press **Yes**. For the already saved timer (including a repeat timer), its start announcement is changed to **OFF**.

#### Note

#### Timer for recording programs

- If the start date and time are the same as the end date and time of an existing timer-set program, a confirmation screen appears. To set, press **Yes**. The first recording ends approximately up to one minute earlier.
- Multiple programs cannot be recorded simultaneously. If the recording period is partially same as that of an existing timer-set program, a confirmation screen appears. To set, press **Yes**. The already saved timer (including a repeat timer) is deleted.

#### When the Start Time Arrives

An alarm sounds in accordance with the settings one minute before the start time. After 15 seconds, the alarm stops. Press a key other than **TV** and **Eco** to stop the alarm manually.

- Adjust the volume by pressing **⬆** (louder) or **⬇** (softer) when alarm volume is not set to Step.
- When an alarm notifying start of a program ends, if Linked startup setting is set to **ON**, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to activate One Seg. Select **Yes** and press **⊙** to activate One Seg. The confirmation screen does not appear when an alarm sounds while One Seg is activated. When a channel different from that of timer setting is being selected, a confirmation screen appears asking whether to change the channel. Then, press **Yes** and press **⊙** to switch to the timer-set channel.
- For timer for recording, One Seg starts in the Silent status when an alarm stops. In such cases, **⊙** appears in the screen for watching One Seg. When the set start time arrives, recording starts. The indication is switched to **●**. When an alarm sounds while One Seg is activated, a message appears when the alarm stops. One Seg is muted, and recording starts. The recorded video data is saved into the microSD Memory Card (**Video(microSD)** folder of Data box). When space of the microSD Memory Card is insufficient, recording stops automatically. In addition, data recorded up to that point is saved.
- When **Auto out on start** of FM transmitter is set to **ON** with Public mode (Drive mode) set, One Seg is activated when the set time for starting or recording a program arrives. However, FM radio waves are not transmitted. One Seg is activated in the Silent status. Set **FM transmitter out** to **OFF** to make a sound from the FOMA terminal (☞ P. 361).



Timer-set alarm screen for starting



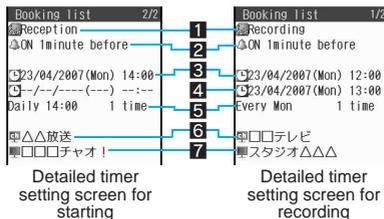
Timer-set alarm screen for recording

#### Note

- Alarm tone does not sound when in Normal or Silent manner mode. For Original manner mode, set the alarm tone **ON** or **OFF**.
- If the start time set for timer arrives while in **Public mode (Drive mode)**, alarm tone does not sound. Called LED and vibrator are not activated.

## Note

- **Reception alarm** or **Video rec alarm** appears on the sub display when the FOMA terminal is closed.
- In the following cases, timer-set alarms for starting or recording programs are activated. However, recording does not start.
  - When a function that cannot be activated simultaneously with One Seg is being used with **Multi Assistant**
  - When a FOMA card is removed or a different FOMA card is inserted after setting timer for recording
  - When battery level is insufficient
  - When the microSD Memory Card is not inserted
  - While Function lock is applied to multimedia
- In the following cases, timer-set alarms for starting or recording programs are not activated. In addition, recording does not start.
  - While making, receiving or during a voice/ Videophone call
  - While sending, receiving or during PushTalk
  - During Ir exchange or while sending data using Ir remote control
  - While All lock is set
  - While the power is off, the wakeup screen or end screen at power ON/OFF is displayed, or the Auto power OFF confirmation screen is displayed
  - While the screen indicating the battery empty is displayed
  - While sending/receiving a mail or SMS (when **Receive display** is set to **Operation first**)
  - During software update
  - While deleting user data collectively
  - During USB transmission
  - During packet transmission



- 1 Timer setting type
- 2 Start announcement setting
- 3 Start date and time
- 4 End date and time
- 5 Set repeat
- 6 Channel name
- 7 Program name

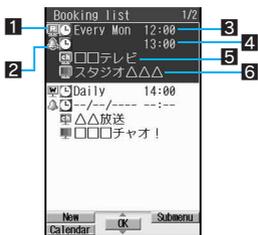
## Editing Timer Settings <Edit>

- 1 In Booking list screen, select a timer setting and press **[Edit]**.
  - In the detailed timer setting screen, press **[1]**.
- 2 Edit the timer settings, press **[Complete]** and select a save method.
  - Editing procedures are the same as when saving (P. 280).

To add a new entry	<b>[1]</b>
To overwrite	<b>[2] → Yes → [0]</b>

## Checking Timer Settings

- 1 In stand-by, press **[9] [3] [1] [3]**.
  - Press **[Calendar]** to show the calendar screen and check schedules.



Booking list

### 1 Timer setting type

	TV timer
	Recording timer

- 2 Alarm
- 3 Start date and time
- 4 End date and time
- 5 Channel name
- 6 Program name

- 2 Select a timer setting and press **[0]**.

## Managing Timer Settings

Delete or sort the timer setting.

### Deleting the timer setting <Delete>

- 1 In stand-by, press **[9] [3] [1] [3]**, select the timer setting and press **[Delete]**.
  - In the detailed timer setting screen, press **[2]**, select **Yes** and press **[0]** to delete the timer setting.

- 2 Select a deletion method.

To delete one	<b>[1] → Yes → [0]</b>
To delete entries collectively	<b>[2] → select a timer setting [0] (repeatable) → [2] → Yes → [0]</b>
To delete all entries up to the day before specified day	<b>[3] → enter terminal security code → [0] → Yes → [0]</b>
To delete all	<b>[4] → enter terminal security code → [0] → Yes → [0]</b>

### Sorting the timer settings <Sort>

Default setting **Air date(old→new)**

Sort by air date (old → new)	Oldest timer setting date first
Sort by air date (new → old)	Latest timer setting date first

Sort by timer settings for starting a program	Oldest date first (timer for starting) → Oldest date first (timer for recording)
Sort by timer settings for recording a program	Oldest date first (timer for recording) → Oldest date first (timer for starting)

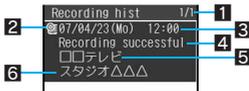
- Even when Booking list is closed, list order settings remain.

- In stand-by, press  $\odot$  [9] [3] [1] [3] and press  $\text{Ⓜ}$  [4] [Sort].**
- Select a sorting method and press  $\odot$ .**

## Viewing Timer History <Reserve Rec Hist>

Up to 50 timer recordings ended are saved as a timer history. Check the recordings.

- In stand-by, press  $\odot$  [9] [3] [1] [4].**
  - Alternatively, press  $\odot$  when **One Seg video** appears in stand-by.



- Number of entries/total entries**
- Icons indicating the recordings**

	Successful
	Failed

- Recording start date and time**
- Recordings**
  - Error details are shown when recording is failed.
- Broadcast station name**
- Program name**

## Using Data Broadcasting

Use data broadcasting as well as video, voice and sound for One Seg. In data broadcasting, use a variety of information including still pictures and movies. For example, connect sites available in programs, submit your opinion, etc. Depending on a program, use Phone To, Mail To and i-appli To functions, add indicated numbers to phonebook and save schedules.

- Voice and sound may be played when data broadcast or a data broadcast site is being displayed.
- Data broadcasting is not available in the Cycloid position.

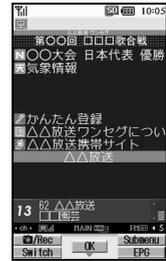
- In the screen for watching One Seg, press  $\text{Ⓜ}$  [Switch].**

- $\text{Ⓜ}$  appears and the screen is switched to the data broadcasting mode.
- Refer to P. 277 for operation in data broadcasting mode.
- Operation mode is switched between video mode and data broadcasting mode every time  $\text{Ⓜ}$  is pressed.

- Alternatively, press  $\text{Ⓜ}$  [4] in the screen for watching One Seg.



Divided-screen



Full-screen

- Select an item with  $\odot$  and press  $\odot$  [OK].**

- If a confirmation screen for connection appears, select **Yes** and press  $\odot$  to connect to i-mode. Select **Yes(Always)** to not show the confirmation screen again and information of data broadcasting or a data broadcasting site may be automatically updated. In such cases, packet transmission charges may apply.
- When an i-mode site is accessed from data broadcasting or a data broadcasting site, the i-mode site appears in full-screen without video of the One Seg.
- Refer to "Site Layout and Operation" on P. 184 for details on operation for viewing sites.

### Note

- To show the confirmation screen for connection again, perform **Reset status display**.
- The following messages may appear while using data broadcasting or a data broadcasting site. Select **Yes** to execute operation.

Message	Reason
Storage area is full. Delete?	Appears before a new broadcast station is stored if eight areas for individual broadcast stations in the broadcasting storage area are occupied.
Use saved information? It may include info used by the same broadcasting group*	Appears when a channel is changed, a new TV program is displayed or a next TV program starts after the current program ends.
Send out saved data? Access the site by i-mode*	Appears when asked for submission by the current program.
Connect to URL?*	Appears when accessing to an i-mode site from data broadcasting, a data broadcasting site or TVlink.
Connect to Data Broadcasting Site? Access the site by i-mode*	Appears when accessing to an i-mode site from data broadcasting or a data broadcasting site.
Add to phonebook?* Save schedule?* Save TVlink?*	Appears when information retrieved from data broadcasting is saved.

\* Select **Yes(Always)** to not show a confirmation screen again.

## Related Operations

Switch the display size of data broadcasting  
<Display mode (L)>

- In the screen for watching One Seg, press **Ⓜ** **1**.
- To show data broadcasting in full-screen: press **2**.
  - To show video and data broadcasting separately in a screen: press **1**.

Reload a data broadcasting site <Reload>

In the screen for watching One Seg, press **Ⓜ** **8** **1**.

Show certificate <Show certificate>

In the screen for watching One Seg, press **Ⓜ** **8** **2**.

Return from a data broadcasting site to data broadcasting <Return to data BC>

In the screen for watching One Seg, press **Ⓜ** **8** **3**.

### Note (Related operations)

Display mode (L)

- The default setting is **Video+data**. When One Seg is ended, this setting returns to **Video+data** even if it is already changed.

## TVlink

### Using TVlink

Save memo information and URL in some data broadcasting as TVlink. Use the TVlink list to quickly show memo information and a site saved in there.

- Up to 100 entries can be saved as TVlink.

### Saving as TVlink

- Select an item that can be saved as TVlink, press **Ⓞ**, select **Yes** and press **Ⓞ**.

- Procedures for saving TVlink differ depending on the program.
- A confirmation screen appears asking whether to overwrite when a site or memo information is already saved. To save, select **Yes** and press **Ⓞ**.

### Showing a Saved TVlink <TVlink>

- In stand-by, press **Ⓞ** **9** **3** **1** **5**.

- Alternatively, press **Ⓜ** **1** **8** in the screen for watching One Seg.



TVlink list

#### Meaning of icons

	Memo information
	Data broadcasting site
	i-mode site

## 2 Select TVlink to show.

To show memo information	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To end checking, press <b>Ⓞ</b> or <b>CLR</b>.</li> </ul>
To view data broadcasting sites	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Ⓞ</b> → <b>Yes</b> → <b>Ⓞ</b></li> <li>A data broadcasting site appears in full-screen. When the operation is performed in the screen for watching One Seg, One Seg ends.</li> </ul>
To view i-mode sites	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Ⓞ</b> → <b>Yes</b> → <b>Ⓞ</b></li> </ul>

- Expired TVlink cannot be displayed, but can be deleted.

## Related Operations

View detailed information <Show details>

In the TVlink list screen, select TVlink ▶ **Ⓜ** **1**.

- To end checking: Press **Ⓞ**.

Delete TVlink <Delete>

- In the TVlink list screen, select TVlink ▶ **Ⓜ** **2**.

Press **1** [Delete one].

- To delete multiple TVlinks collectively: Press **2** ▶ select TVlink **Ⓞ** (repeatable) ▶ **Ⓜ**.
- To delete all TVlinks: Press **3** ▶ enter terminal security code ▶ **Ⓞ**.

- Select **Yes** ▶ **Ⓞ**.

### Note (Related operations)

Delete TVlink

- For deleting selected TVlink, press **Ⓜ** [SelAll]/**Ⓜ** [ClrAll] to select or clear all.

## Recording One Seg While Watching

Record movies of a One Seg program being displayed or a scene as a still picture.

- The copy control signals (indicating that "the program cannot be recorded (Copy Never)", "the program can be recorded only once (Copy Once)" and "the program can be recorded without restrictions (Copy Free)") are used in One Seg. They are set by each broadcast station.
- With the copy control signals indicating that "the program can be recorded only once (Copy Once)" and "the program can be recorded without restrictions (Copy Free)", programs can be recorded.
- When the copy control signal changes to "the program cannot be recorded (Copy Never)" while recording a program, recording stops. Video data recorded up to that point is saved.
- Recording cannot be started when using Multi Window.

### Estimated number of saved entries and recording time

- Record up to 99 entries for up to approximately 20 minutes when saving the recorded video data to 64 MB microSD Memory Card (Actual number varies depending on the recording time).

## Recording Movies of One Seg Programs

The recorded video data is saved into the microSD Memory Card. To record movies of One Seg, insert the microSD Memory Card in advance.

**The microSD Memory Cards are sold separately.**

**Purchase microSD Memory Cards at home electronics shops (☎ P. 318).**

- Refer to "Playing Back Videos" on P. 311 for details on playing back a recorded program.

### 1 In the screen for watching One Seg, press [/Rec] for 1+ seconds.

- appears in the screen for watching One Seg. The indication is changed to when recording starts. Some recordings may take longer to start.
- Called LED flashes purple while recording.
- While recording, changing channels, setting channels and recording pictures are not available. The Program guide i-appli and TVlink cannot be used either.

### 2 To stop recording, press [Stop].

- Recording ends and is saved automatically.
- When space of the microSD Memory Card is insufficient, recording stops automatically. In addition, data recorded up to that point is saved.

## Setting the End Time of Recording Movies <Recording End Time>

Default setting **Unrestricted**

### 1 While recording movies, press and select the recording end time.

After 15 minutes		After 90 minutes	
After 30 minutes		After 120 minutes	
After 60 minutes		Unrestricted*	

\* Movies are recorded until available space on the microSD Memory Card becomes insufficient.

### 2 Select an operation after recording ends.

To end watching One Seg	Select <b>Yes</b> →
To continue watching One Seg	Select <b>No</b> →

## Recording Images of One Seg Programs as a Still Picture

When images of One Seg programs are recorded as a still picture, they are saved into the **TV image** folder in My picture of Data box on the FOMA terminal handset. Save up to 1,000 entries.

- Refer to "Displaying Saved Images" on P. 296 for displaying images recorded as a still picture.

### 1 In the screen for watching One Seg, press [/Rec].

- A One Seg program is recorded as a still picture and automatically saved. Some programs may take longer to be saved.

#### Note

- Recorded movies are automatically named as **PRGxxx** ("xxx" is a single-byte number). In the video file list screen (☎ P. 311), video files are shown with program names.
- Saved files of still pictures are named according to the date and time of recording. Example: April 23, 2007 at 1:05 PM → **200704231305xxx** ("xxx" is a single-byte number)
- Recorded movies and still pictures cannot be set as the stand-by display or the call/receive display.
- Recorded movies and still pictures cannot be sent as a mail attachment and sent using **Ir exchange** or **iC transmission**.
- **Edit movie** and **Edit image** are not available for recorded movies and still pictures.
- Recording continues even if the FOMA terminal is closed.
- When an incoming Videophone call is answered, One Seg ends. Also, recording of the movie ends, and the video data recorded up to that point is saved.
- When the time set for recording arrives while another movie is being recorded, the recording of the timer-set movie is started. Recording up to that point ends, and the video data is saved.
- Recording cannot be started when the FOMA terminal is in a place where broadcast waves cannot be received.
- Recording continues even if the FOMA terminal gets in a place where broadcast waves cannot be received. However, One Seg cannot be received while in the place.
- For still pictures, only images are recorded, and the contents of data broadcasting are not recorded.
- Still pictures cannot be recorded when data broadcasting is displayed in full-screen.

## One Seg Settings

### Setting One Seg

- In the Cycloid position, the settings of Erase storage area, One Seg Status, Reset status display and Reset One Seg are not available.

### Deleting Saved Data of Data Broadcasting <Erase Storage Area>

Delete saved data (in the broadcast storage area).

**1** In stand-by, press **⊙** **9** **3** **1** **7** **1**.

**2** Select an associated broadcast station, press **Ⓜ** and select a deletion method.

To delete one	<b>1</b>
To delete all	<b>2</b> → enter terminal security code → <b>⊙</b>

- To check broadcasters in a group of associated stations, press **Ⓜ** [Details]. To end checking, press **⊙** or **CLR**.
- To delete data of each broadcaster, select an associated broadcast station, press **⊙**, select a broadcaster, press **Ⓜ** and select a deletion method.

**3** Select Yes and press **⊙**.

### Setting to Not View Images in a Data Broadcasting Site <Set Image Display>

Default setting **ON**

**1** In stand-by, press **⊙** **9** **3** **1** **7** **2** and press **2** [**OFF**].

- Alternatively, press **Ⓜ** **8** **4** in the screen for watching One Seg.

### Muting Sound Effects of Data Broadcasting Sites <Sound FX>

Default setting **ON**

**1** In stand-by, press **⊙** **9** **3** **1** **7** **3** and press **2** [**OFF**].

- Alternatively, press **Ⓜ** **8** **5** in the screen for watching One Seg.

## Checking the One Seg Settings

### <One Seg Status>

View the image display settings, Sound FX settings and One Seg settings in the screen for watching One Seg (**Ⓜ** P. 278).

**1** In stand-by, press **⊙** **9** **3** **1** **7** **4**.

- To end checking, press **⊙** or **CLR**.

### Re-showing a Confirmation Screen for Data Broadcasting

#### <Reset Status Disp>

In a confirmation screen for connection of data broadcasting and data broadcasting sites, select **Yes(Always)** to not show similar confirmation screens. When the Reset status display settings are made, their confirmation screens reappear.

**1** In stand-by, press **⊙** **9** **3** **1** **7** **5**, enter terminal security code and press **⊙**.

- Alternatively, press **Ⓜ** **8** **6** in the screen for watching One Seg.

**2** Select Yes and press **⊙**.

## Resetting One Seg Settings

### <Reset One Seg>

Reset the settings for video, voice and sound of One Seg to default. Default settings are as follows.

- The broadcast storage area is not deleted.
- When resetting One Seg settings, the Reset status display settings are made at the same time.

	Setting item	Default setting
One Seg settings in the screen for watching One Seg ( <b>Ⓜ</b> P. 278)	Vibrant image mode	Dynamic
	Brightness	Automatic
	Main/Sub language	Main
	Change language	Main language
	Set when folded	Continue
One Seg settings in the One Seg menu	Mail ticker	Only notice
	Set image display	ON
	Sound FX	ON

**1** In stand-by, press **⊙** **9** **3** **1** **7** **6**, enter terminal security code and press **⊙**.

**2** Select Yes and press **⊙**.

# Full Browser

- Viewing Web Pages Designed for PC ..... 288
- Setting Full Browser ..... 292

## Viewing Web Pages Designed for PC

View Internet web pages that are not supported by i-mode as they appear on PCs with the FOMA terminal using the Full Browser.

- Some Internet web pages with large amounts of information do not appear properly.
- Packet transmission charges are incurred while Full Browser is connected.
- Full Browser is not supported by Pake-Houdai.
- Screen memos cannot be saved.
- Ring tone, i-appli, ToruCa, i-motion and Flash movie playback, downloading and saving are also not available.

**1** In stand-by, press  **9**.



Full Browser menu screen

**2** Specify the Internet web page to view.

To view a saved web page (portal site)	<b>1</b>
To view from bookmarks	<b>2</b> → select folder →  → select bookmark → 
To enter URL and view	<b>3</b> → <b>3</b> → enter URL →  ● Enter up to 512 single-byte characters (including <b>http://</b> ).

- It may take time to view some pages.

### Confirmation screen for the use of Full Browser

- If Full Browser Access Setting is set to **OFF** when Full Browser is started, the Access Setting screen appears to confirm the use of Full Browser. When **Yes** is selected, Access Setting is changed to **ON** and Internet web page is shown with Full Browser. This setting remains enabled after Full Browser is closed.

#### Note

- When accessing an Internet web page is attempted in the Cycloid position, **Rotate the display, and use** appears. Return to the normal position to access the Internet web page.

#### Note

#### Key operation during Full Browser

Key operation	Action
<b>1</b>	Window list appears. Switch windows.
<b>2</b>	Move to top of the screen.
<b>3</b>	Open link in new window.
<b>4</b>	Go back to previous page.
<b>5</b>	Open saved web page in new window.
<b>6</b>	Go to next page.
<b>7</b>	Search the web with a registered search engine.
<b>8</b>	Search text on the page.
<b>9</b>	Use bookmarks.

### Related Operations

#### Set a home page (portal site) <Set as Home URL>

While viewing an Internet web page with Full Browser ( steps 1 and 2 on P. 288), press  **7** **2** **2**.

- To enter URL to set a home page (portal site): In the Full Browser menu screen ( step 1 on P. 288), press **4** **1** ▶ enter URL ▶ .

#### View pages from URL History <URL history>

In the Full Browser menu screen, press **3** **2** ▶ select URL ▶ .

#### View the last viewed page <Last URL>

In the Full Browser menu screen, press **3** **1** ▶ .

#### View pages using Active marker

<Active marker>

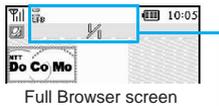
In stand-by, press  ▶  (Full Browser history) ▶  ▶ select history ▶ .

#### Note (Related operations)

- i-mode **Bookmarks** and Full Browser bookmarks are managed separately.
- **Bookmark** folder and **Search** folder are saved for Full Browser bookmarks by default. A combined total of 20 folders (including **Bookmark** and **Search** folders) can be saved.
- Save up to 100 bookmarks in total.
- Save up to 512 single-byte characters for URL (including **http://**).
- When searching the web, the site saved at the very top of the **Search** folder is used ( P. 291).

## Full Browser Display

Basic operations for Full Browser are the same as when accessing sites from the i-mode Go to location menu (P. 187). Operations that differ are mainly explained here.



Full Browser screen

### Icons that appear during browsing (Full Browser)

	Full Browser open (FB flashes during transmissions)
	Full Browser is accessing the web (↔ flashes when receiving data)
	Full Browser is accessing an inactive window (↔ flashes during transmissions)
	Full Browser is accessing a background frame (↔ flashes during transmissions)
	SSL page is being viewed
	Full Browser is in Horizontal scroll mode
	Frame is shown enlarged
	Multiple windows open (window/total number of windows)
	For unread i-mode mail, SMS and Message R/F

### Changing display mode

**1** In the Full Browser screen, press [Display Mode] and select a display mode.

Normal		Sets an Internet web page at a reduced size to fit display horizontally. Scroll up/down.
Horizontal scroll		Does not display at a reduced size. Scroll up/down/left/right.

### Vertical scroll

Scroll the screen up and down with .

- Alternatively, press [Page ] or [Page ] to scroll one screen at a time in Normal mode.

### Horizontal scroll (Horizontal scroll mode)

Scroll within the horizontal size of the page in Horizontal scroll mode with .

- For Horizontal scroll mode, press [Pg move] to switch to Horizontal page-scroll mode and scroll one screen at a time with . Press [Scroll] to return to Horizontal scroll mode.

### Jumping to the top of the page (Top)

- Press to jump to the top of the current page.

## Moving to previous/next page (Cache)

The FOMA terminal stores up to 900 KB of viewed Internet web pages. This is called the “cache” and can be shown easily.

- For Normal mode, press to show the previous page and then press to show the next page.
- For Horizontal scroll mode, press [Back] to show the previous page and then press [Next] to show the next page.
- Also, press to return to the previous page and to go to the next page.
- Press or repeatedly to scroll through previous pages. When using or to scroll through previous pages (C to B) and another page (D) is viewed, pressing or twice at D will not return to C. Page will scroll from B to A.  
<When scrolling A → B → C → B → D> (P. 186)
- Previously entered characters and settings are not restored for pages saved in the cache.
- If a new page is viewed when the cache is full, the oldest page in history is deleted.
- When scrolling through pages, if the page is no longer in the cache, the FOMA terminal cache size is exceeded or the page is set (created) to always reload up-to-date information, the handset downloads the page from the Internet web page.
- When switching to a screen saved in the cache, it may take time to view the page.
- Cache information is reset when the Full Browser is closed.

## Viewing pages using frames

View Internet web pages consisting of multiple frames.

Select a frame in the frame selection screen to show a page per frame.

- In the frame selection screen, press , select a frame and press to show the frame details screen.
- To return from individual frames to the frame selection screen, press [All frames].

### Note

- Set handset to not load images when viewing Internet web pages (P. 293).
- Some Internet web pages may appear different from actual ones. If characters do not appear properly, convert the character code. After converting character code four times, the site or web page is shown with original code.
- Some downloaded images may exceed the number of colors the FOMA terminal can show on the display depending on the file format.
- Press while viewing Internet web pages and end confirmation screen appears. Select **Yes** and the Full Browser ends.
- When **Accept calls**, **Reject calls**, **Reject by reason of non-disclosure** or **Reject unknown** is set, ring tone does not sound for callers without permission even while viewing an Internet web page. The caller's number and the name saved in phonebook are saved in Received calls. The caller hears a busy signal.

## Note

- appears on the display when data to show on the display could not be retrieved while viewing Internet web pages due to transmission errors and other causes. In such cases, the Internet web page may appear properly when reloaded.

## Related Operations

### Reload Internet web page <Reload>

In the Full Browser screen, press .

### View the URL <URL>

In the Full Browser screen, press .

### Convert character code <Character code>

In the Full Browser screen, press .

### Replay animated GIF <Retry>

In the Full Browser screen, press .

### Add bookmarks <Add bookmark>

- 1 In the Full Browser screen, press .
- 2 Select folder .
- 3 To save, select **OK** .
  - To change the title and save: Select **Edit title** .
  - To change folder and save: Select **Change folder** .

### Save Images <Save image>

- 1 In the Full Browser screen, press .
- 2 Select image .

### Send Internet web page URL by mail

#### <Compose message>

In the Full Browser screen, press .

## Note (Related operations)

### Save image

- Save up to 300 KB of GIF images, JPEG images, BMP images and PNG images. BMP images and PNG images can be saved on microSD Memory Card but not on the FOMA terminal handset.

## Viewing SSL-enabled pages

View Internet web pages that begin with **https://** (SSL pages) with the Full Browser. When Client certificate is required, a confirmation screen appears. Select **Yes**, press and enter PIN2 code to send.

- When viewing an SSL-enabled page, appears.
- When multiple windows are opened, does not appear if an SSL-enabled page is only open in the inactive windows.
- A screen confirming the end of SSL session appears when exiting an SSL-enabled page and showing a normal page.

## Related Operations

### View Internet web page server certificate

#### <View certificate>

In the Full Browser screen, press .

## Note (Related operations)

- If **This certificate has expired. Connect?** or other messages appears, the web page certificate is invalid, has expired or uses a different certificate from the FOMA terminal's certificate. When such messages appear, the page is not secure to send credit card numbers, postal addresses or other personal information. To continue viewing the page, select **Yes**. To not view the page, select **No**.

## Opening Multiple Windows

Open up to five browser windows simultaneously.

## Entering URL and viewing in a new window

View a different Internet web page in a separate window while viewing an Internet web page with Full Browser.

- 1 In the Full Browser screen ( P. 289), press [**Go to location**].

- 2 Specify the Internet web page to view.

To view from URL history	→ select URL history →
To enter URL and view	→ enter URL → <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Enter up to 512 single-byte characters (including <b>http://</b>).</li></ul>

- 3 Select **Open New Window** and press .

- Internet web page appears in a new window.

## Note

- A new window may not open when the number of frames which can be viewed is exceeded or when the memory is low.

## Viewing selected links in a new window

Keep the current window and view a selected link in a separate window.

- 1 In the Full Browser screen (☞ P. 289), select link and press **[3]** or **[Ⓜ][8][1]** [Open New Window].

## Viewing a list of open windows

Up to five windows are shown in the list.

- 1 In the Full Browser screen (☞ P. 289), press **[1]** or **[Ⓜ][8][2]** [Window list].
- 2 Select the next operation.

To switch the active window	Select a window → <b>[○]</b>
To close a selected window	Select a window → <b>[Ⓜ]</b>
To close all inactive windows	<b>[Ⓜ]</b>

## Closing a window

Close the active window.

- 1 In the Full Browser screen (☞ P. 289), press **[Ⓜ][8][3]** [Close Window].
- 2 Select Yes and press **[○]**.

## Related Operations

Select a bookmark and view in a new window <Bookmark list>

- 1 In the Full Browser screen, press **[Ⓜ][2][2]**.
- 2 Select folder **[○]** ▶ select bookmark **[Ⓜ]** [New WND].

View the registered home page (portal site) in a new window <Home>

- In the Full Browser screen, press **[5]** or **[Ⓜ][7][2][1]**.

## Uploading Files

Upload images from Internet web pages that support file uploads from forms.

- Upload GIF and JPEG images of up to 80 KB.

- 1 In the Full Browser screen (☞ P. 289), click the **参照 (browse)** button to select a file and press **[○]**.
- 2 Select folder, press **[○]**, select image and press **[○]**.
- 3 Select send key on the Internet web page and press **[○]**.

## Downloading Files

Download text files, PDF files and e-book from Internet web pages.

- Downloaded files are saved to the microSD Memory Card.
- Supported file types (file extension)  
Microsoft Word (.doc), Microsoft Excel (.xls), Microsoft PowerPoint (.ppt), PDF (.pdf), XPDF (.zbf), e-book in Text format (.zbf)
- Download files of up to 500 KB as a single file.

- 1 In the Full Browser screen (☞ P. 289), select the file to download and press **[○]**.
- 2 Select Yes and press **[○]**.
  - *Download file?* appears. Select Yes and press **[○]**.
- 3 When finished downloading, select **Save to ext mem** and press **[○]**.

## Searching the Web

Use search engines to search the web.

- 1 In the Full Browser screen (☞ P. 289), press **[7]** or **[Ⓜ][6][1]** [Search web].
  - The first Internet web page saved in the **Search** folder of Bookmark is connected. If no Internet web pages are saved in the **Search** folder, **No bookmarks** appears.
  - Follow instructions for each site for search methods.

## Searching the Page

Search for specific character strings in the page being viewed.

**1** In the Full Browser screen (P. 289), press **[Search page]**.

**2** Enter keyword and press **[OK]**.

## Viewing the Key List

**1** In the Full Browser screen (P. 289), press **[Key list]**.

## Switching from i-mode to Full Browser

Switch to Full Browser when an Internet web page viewed from i-mode does not appear properly.

**1** While viewing an Internet web page from i-mode, press **[Switch to FB]**, select **Yes** and press **[OK]**.

## Setting Full Browser

Set various functions related to Full Browser.

### Setting Cookies

Cookies temporarily record information such as user name, date/time and number of accesses in the FOMA terminal when an Internet web page is connected. This information is used when the Internet web page is accessed again.

- DoCoMo shall not be liable for any information obtained by a third party as a result of validating cookies.

## Validating/Invalidating cookies

Default setting **Valid**

Validate/Invalidate recording of cookies.

**1** In stand-by, press **[9][4][2][1]**.

**2** Select **Validate or Invalidate**.

Valid	<b>[1]</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Terminal security code may be required to switch from <b>Invalid</b> to <b>Valid</b>.</li></ul>
Valid (notify)	<b>[2]</b> → <b>[1]</b> [Sending], <b>[2]</b> [Receiving] or <b>[3]</b> [Sending/Receiving] <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Terminal security code may be required to switch from <b>Invalid</b> to <b>Valid(notify)</b>.</li></ul>
Invalid	<b>[3]</b>

### Note

- If the FOMA card that was inserted when cookies were set to **Valid** is removed and other FOMA cards are inserted, cookies are set to **Invalid**.
- When cookie setting is changed from **Invalid** to **Valid** or **Valid(notify)**, a confirmation screen to delete previous cookie information appears. Select **Yes** to delete.

## Deleting cookies

Delete all cookie information saved on the FOMA terminal.

**1** In stand-by, press **[9][4][2][2]**, enter terminal security code and press **[OK]**.

**2** Select **Yes** and press **[OK]**.

## Validating/Invalidating JavaScript

Default setting **Valid**

Set to run JavaScript program when included in Internet web page.

**1** In stand-by, press **[9][4][3]** and **[1]** [Valid].

- To set to **Invalid**: Press **[2]**.

## Hiding Images <Set Image Display>

Default setting **ON** (display)

Set to hide images when viewing Internet web pages with the Full Browser.

- 1 In stand-by, press **Ⓜ 9 4 4 2** and **2** [OFF].

## Changing Font Size <Font Size>

Default setting **Normal**

Set the font size for viewing Internet web pages with Full Browser.

- 1 In stand-by, press **Ⓜ 9 4 4 3** and select font size.

Large font	1	Small font	3
Normal	2	Minimum	4

### Note

- Some Internet web pages may not appear correctly when **Font size** is changed.

## Preventing New Windows from Opening Automatically <Window Open Guard>

Default setting **Invalid** (no guard)

Block JavaScript programs in Internet web pages that prompt a new window to open.

- 1 In stand-by, press **Ⓜ 9 4 5** and **1** [Valid].

## Performing Settings Regarding Referer

Default setting **Send**

The browser uses the Referer field to send the referring URL (server) to the destination's server when following links in Internet web pages. The FOMA terminal Full Browser also features this function. Set to send, send after confirmation or not send.

- DoCoMo shall not be liable for any information obtained by a third party as a result of using Referer.

- 1 In stand-by, press **Ⓜ 9 4 6**.

- 2 Select **Send or Unsend**.

To send	1
To not send	2
To notify	3

### Note

- Some Internet web pages may not appear correctly when Referer is not sent.

## Setting Whether to Use Full Browser Function <Access Setting>

Default setting **OFF**

Set whether to use Full Browser function.

- If **Yes** is selected, Access Setting is changed to **ON** and Full Browser can be started. If **No** is selected, Access Setting is changed to **OFF** and the Access Setting screen appears when Full Browser is started (P. 288).
- To use Full Browser function with the settings changed, be sure to read **For more information** in the Access Setting screen.

- 1 In stand-by, press **Ⓜ 9 4 7**, select **Yes** and press **Ⓞ**.

## Resetting Full Browser Settings <Reset Full Browser>

- Resetting the Full Browser settings also resets the registered home page.

- 1 In stand-by, press **Ⓜ 9 4 8**, enter terminal security code and press **Ⓞ**.
- 2 Select **Yes** and press **Ⓞ**.



# Displaying/Editing/ Managing Data

## ■ Using Still Pictures

- Displaying Saved Images . . . . . <Image Viewer>296
- Editing Still Pictures (SPEEDYLAB) . . . . . <Edit Image>300

## ■ Using Movies

- Playing Movie/i-motion . . . . . <i-motion Player>304
- Editing Movies (SPEEDYLAB) . . . . . <Edit Movie>309

## ■ Using Videos

- Playing Back Videos . . . . . <Video Player>311

## ■ Using Chara-den

- What Is Chara-den? . . . . . <Chara-den Player>313

## ■ Using Melodies

- Playing Back Melodies . . . . . <Melody Player>316

## ■ Using microSD Memory Cards

- microSD Memory Card . . . . . 318
- Transferring Data in FOMA Terminal to microSD Memory Card . . . . . <Contents Transfer Compatible>321
- Copying from FOMA Terminal to microSD Memory Card . . . . . <Copy to microSD>322
- Backing Up FOMA Terminal Handset Data . . . . . <Backup/Restore>322
- Previewing microSD Memory Card Data . . . . . <View microSD Data>323
- Copying from microSD Memory Card to FOMA Terminal . . . . . <Copy to the Phone>324
- Managing microSD Memory Card . . . . . 324

## ■ Using Various Data

- Managing Data . . . . . 328

## ■ Using Ir Exchange

- Ir Exchange . . . . . <Ir Exchange>332
- Sending and Receiving Data Individually . . . . . 335
- Sending and Receiving All Data Items . . . . . 335
- Using Ir Exchange with i-appli Software . . . . . 336
- Using the Infrared Remote Control Function . . . . . <Infrared Remote Control>336

## ■ Using iC Transmission Function

- iC Transmission . . . . . <iC Transmission>337
- Sending and Receiving Data Individually . . . . . 337
- Sending and Receiving All Data Items . . . . . 337

## ■ Using Voice Recorder

- Using the FOMA Terminal as a Voice Recorder . . . . . <Voice Recorder>338

## ■ Using PDF Viewer

- Displaying PDF Files . . . . . <PDF Viewer>339
- Managing PDF Files . . . . . 342

## ■ Document Viewer

- Displaying Word and Excel Files . . . . . <Document Viewer>344
- Managing Documents . . . . . 346

## ■ BookReader

- Displaying e-Book and e-Dictionary . . . . . <BookReader>346
- Using the Information in e-Book and e-Dictionary . . . . . 349
- Scanning Text to Search for Words in an e-Dictionary . . . . . <Character Reader>350
- Managing e-Book and e-Dictionary . . . . . 350

## ■ Printing Still Pictures

- Printing Saved Images . . . . . <Print Setting (DPOF)>352

## Displaying Saved Images

Play back still pictures shot with FOMA terminal, images downloaded from sites and Internet web pages or images for which One Seg programs are recorded as a still picture saved in My picture of Data box with Image Viewer.

- Save JPEG and GIF images stored in My picture of Data box to the Data Storage Center (P. 304).

### 1 In stand-by, press .

- Alternatively, press in the still picture shooting screen (P. 167).

- To view still pictures saved in microSD Memory Card, select →**microSD**.

To view still pictures saved in FOMA

terminal handset again, select →**phone**.



### 2 Select a folder and press .

- Refer to "Changing display method" on P. 297 for switching image list.



### 3 Select still picture and press .

- To view previous/next image, press .
- Switch between 1/1 and **Zoom** if a still picture is **less than 240x less than 320**.
- Switch between 1/1 and **Zoom** if a still picture is larger than **240** for the horizontal size or **320** for the vertical size.
- The display size cannot be changed for **240x320 or less** or **240 or lessx320** still pictures.
- Horizontally long JPEG images whose size is larger than **VGA: 480x640** are displayed as rotated 90° clockwise.
- Zoom and Shrink are not available for animated GIFs and Flash movies.
- Full-screen mode is available when the FOMA terminal is set to the Cycloid position.



Image display screen

## Note

- Data is not saved if memory is full. Delete unnecessary files to increase available space when saving still pictures shot with camera, edited still pictures and downloaded images to the FOMA terminal handset (P. 332). Check memory before shooting, editing still pictures or downloading images.
- Opening and saving becomes slower when more images are saved.
- Animated GIFs and Flash movies downloaded from a website or Internet web page may appear differently, such as frame dropping, from when seen on the site or page.
- The current file location (FOMA terminal handset or microSD Memory Card) is saved even if Image Viewer is ended, and is used the next time Image Viewer is started.

### Forward and store still pictures saved in My picture of Data box on a PC using microSD Memory Card (P. 318).

- Saved content may be lost due to malfunctions, repairs or other handling of the FOMA terminal. DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss of content.

## Related Operations

### Show in Full-screen mode

<Full-screen mode/Wide mode>

- 1 In the image display screen, press .

[My Picture setting].

- 2 Press to show in the Full-screen mode (in the size that fits within the display).

- To show in the Wide mode (in the size without margins): Press .
- To show Full-screen mode in the image display screen/image list with one-touch key operations: Press .
- To return: Press a key other than .

### Use Zoom (JPEG image only) <Zoom>

In the image display screen, press .

- To show other areas: Press .
- To return to original view: Press .
- To shrink (zoom out) enlarged still pictures: Press .

### Light up <Light up>

In the image display screen, press .

- Alternatively, press (for 1+ seconds).
- To turn off: Perform same steps or show another image.

### Set Playback light <Backlight time>

- 1 In My picture folder list, press .

- 2 Press [Always ON].

- To set same as light setting: Press .

## Note (Related operations)

### Light up

- Backlight turns off after time set for **Display light time** when Backlight time is set to **As light setting**.

## Related Operations

### Note (Related operations)

- When Backlight time is set to **Always ON**, even after time set for Display light time passes while playing Flash movies and animated GIFs, the backlight remains lit until image display is ended.
- Display is at brightest when lit up regardless of **Brightness** settings.

### Backlight time

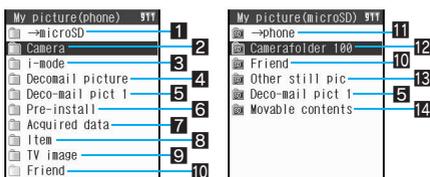
- The default setting is **As light setting** (P. 130).

## My Picture Folder List/Image List

Select → **microSD** or press (P) [Switch phone⇔SD] in My picture folder list to switch to microSD Memory Card folder (P. 320).

### My picture folder list layout

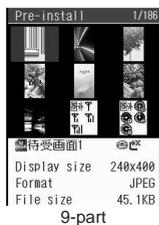
#### FOMA terminal handset microSD Memory Card



- Shows folder list of microSD Memory Card
- Folder for still pictures shot with FOMA terminal
- Folder for still pictures downloaded from sites and Internet web pages or retrieved via Message R/F or i-mode mail
- Folder for Deco-mail images
  - Deco-mail images are preset.
  - Deco-mail images which are downloaded from sites or Internet web pages, or retrieved via mail, are saved.
- Folder for Deco-mail pictographs
  - JPEG/GIF images and animated GIFs that are 20 × 20 pixels without file restrictions are saved.
- Folder for still pictures preset in FOMA terminal handset
- Folder for images retrieved via Bar code reader, microSD Memory Card, Ir exchange, iC transmission, FOMA USB cable (sold separately) or IrSS exchange
- Folder for frames and stamps downloaded from sites and Internet web pages
- Folder for images of which One Seg programs are recorded as a still picture
- Created folder (P. 325, P. 328)
- Shows folder list of FOMA terminal handset
- Folder for still pictures shot with FOMA terminal, DCF compliant JPEG and GIF images excluding animated GIF. When a still picture is shot or is copied from the FOMA terminal handset, a folder named Camerafolder 100 is automatically created. When the number of files reaches 400, a new folder named Camerafolder xxx ("xxx" in the folder name is a three-digit single-byte number between 100 and 999) is automatically created ("xxx" in the Camerafolder name can be changed but 000 to 099 are not available).
- Folder for animated GIF and non-DCF compliant JPEG copied from FOMA terminal handset
- Folder for images downloaded from sites, which has restrictions for outputting from the FOMA terminal

## Image list layout

Select a view method from the following three settings.



9-part



16-part



List display

- In 9-part and 16-part display, the file information of selected still picture is shown on the bottom of the display. Note that **unknown** appears for the display size, file format and file size of a file with the FOMA card restrictions applied.
- Up to three digits are shown at the upper right of the display to indicate the number of images. Therefore, if there are 1,000 images saved in a folder, **xxx/999** appears ("xxx" is the number of the selected image). In addition, **0/999** appears for the 1,000th image.

## Changing display method

<Switch view mode>

Default setting 9-part

- In stand-by, press (P) [9] [1] [1], select folder, press (P), and press (P) [1] [1] [Switch view mode].

- Select display method.

9-part	(1)
16-part	(2)
List display	(3)

- While showing the list, press (P) to view the next page and (P) to view the previous page.

### Note

- Enter up to 50 single-byte (25 double-byte) characters for title name. Up to 14 single-byte (7 double-byte) characters of the title are shown on screen. If a title name exceeds 14 single-byte (7 double-byte) characters, up to 12 single-byte (6 double-byte) characters are shown for the title name. Subsequent characters are shown as "...".

## Still picture types and their icons

### Still picture types

JPEG					
Icon: 76x76	sQCIF: 128x96	QCIF: 176x144	One Seg: 320x180	QVGA: 240x320	Stand-by: 240x400
JPEG					
CIF: 352x288	VGA: 480x640	Wide L: 1200x720	1.2M: 1280x960	UXGA: 1600x1200	
JPEG				GIF image Animated GIF	Flash movie
FullHD: 1920x1080	3M: 2048x1536	Other			

### Mark types

	Still pictures with FOMA card restrictions applied
	Still pictures set as stand-by display, Picture call, Own image and Schedule
	Still pictures with restrictions for mail attachment and output from the FOMA terminal
	Frames or stamps
	Still pictures downloaded with i-mode (excluding frames or stamps)
	Still pictures (excluding frames or stamps) retrieved via Bar code reader, microSD Memory Card, Ir exchange, iC transmissions, FOMA USB cable (sold separately) or IrSS transmissions
	Still pictures shot with camera
	Picture memos shot during Videophone calls
	Still pictures saved with e-book/ e-dictionary
	Still pictures cut out from PDF Viewer
	Images for which One Seg programs are recorded as a still picture
	When no image sizes are applied

- Check the image size with Display size of **File property** (P. 330).
- Refer to P. 164 for details on shot sizes and capacity.

### Playing Flash Movies

Play back Flash movies downloaded from sites and Internet web pages saved in **i-mode** folder in My picture of Data box.

- In stand-by, press , select folder, press , select Flash movie and press .**

- appears for Flash movies in image list.

- To restart playback, press to stop playback and press [Retry].

### Note

- Saved Flash movies may play differently from when on a site or Internet web page.

### Related Operations

#### Set Playback light <Backlight time>

- While stopped (paused) Flash movie, press .
- Press [ON].
  - To set same as light setting: Press .

#### Adjust playback volume <Set volume>

- In stand-by, press ▶ select folder ▶ ▶ (louder) or (softer) ▶ .

### Note (Related operations)

#### Backlight time

- The default setting is **As light setting** (P. 130).

#### Set volume

- The default setting is **Volume 5**.

### Viewing Slideshows <Slideshow>

Show all supported images in a folder consecutively.

- In stand-by, press , select folder and press [Start slideshow].**

- Press , or to end playback.

### Playing BGM during slideshow

**Default setting** Tone: G 線上のアリア  
Volume: **Silent**

Play BGM during slideshow. Set tone and volume.

- BGM cannot be played while in Manner mode.
- Select BGM tone from Melody of Data box.

- In stand-by, press , select folder and press [Slideshow].**

Slideshow
Start slideshow
BGM tone
BGM volume
Play interval
Effects settings

- Select tone and volume.**

To set tone	→ select folder →  → select melody → <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● To check melody, select a melody and press .</li> <li>To stop, press .</li> </ul>
To change volume	→ select volume →

## Setting playback interval and effects

Default setting Interval: **Normal**, Effects: **Random**

Set playback interval (speed) and effects of Slideshow in My picture.

**1** In stand-by, press **9 1 1**, select folder and press **3** [Slideshow].

**2** Press **4** [Play interval] and select interval.

Fastest	1	Images appears one after another.
Fast	2	Next image appears after approximately three seconds.
Normal	3	Next image appears after approximately five seconds.
Slow	4	Next image appears after approximately ten seconds.

Play interval may vary depending on image size.

**3** Press **5** [Effects settings] and select effect.

Diamond shape	1	Next image appears from inside to outside, like a rhomboid enlarging.
Pin-wheel	2	Next image spins and enlarges.
Wheel	3	Next image spins from center and enlarges.
Dissolve	4	Next image fades in.
Stretch	5	Next image enlarges vertically from center.
Random	6	Next image appears with an effect randomly selected.
OFF	7	Effect is not set.

## Attaching Still Pictures and Sending i-mode Mail

Select still picture from My picture of Data box and attach to i-mode mail.

- Send still pictures of up to 2 MB.
- Available still pictures are those received via i-mode mail as attachments, shot with FOMA terminal and downloaded from sites and Internet web pages that do not have restrictions for mail attachment and output from the FOMA terminal.
- Still pictures shot with FOMA terminal and those retrieved with microSD Memory Cards are available even when restricted.

**1** In stand-by, press **9 1 1**, select folder, press **3**, select still picture and press **5** [Mail].

- **QVGA: 240x320** is the suitable size for sending to i-mode terminals.

Compose message	
To	
Sub	
070423_1014	39.1KB
Msg	0.0KB

## 2 Compose and send i-mode mail.

- Refer to steps 2 to 4 on P. 214 for details.

## Setting an Image as Stand-by Display

<Set Screen>

Set still pictures saved in My picture of Data box as the stand-by display, call/receive display, send/receive display and display mark.

- Frames, stamps and images for which One Seg programs are recorded as a still picture are not available.
- Flash movies are available for stand-by, call/receive and send/receive display.
- Some JPEG images, animated GIFs and GIF images are not available for Animated notices.

**1** In stand-by, press **9 1 1**, select folder, press **3**, select still picture and press **4** [Set screen].

- Alternatively, press **3** in the image display screen (step 3 on P. 296), or press **4** for Flash movies while stopped.



**2** Select screen item and press **3**.

- To set as the stand-by display, select **Yes** and press **3**.
- Select additional items depending on the screen.

## Send Still Pictures Using High-speed Ir Exchange (IrSS Function)

Send JPEG images saved in My picture of Data box to IrSS compatible devices using high-speed Ir exchange.

- Still pictures that are restricted for output from the FOMA terminal are not available.
- IrSS is a simplex communication function compliant with IrSimple1.0 (Home Appliance Profile).
- IrSS performs a transmission without confirming the response of the receiver side since it uses a simplex communication. For this reason, the sender side completes the communication normally even if the receiver side does not.

**1** In stand-by, press **9 1 1**, select folder, press **3**, select still picture and press **6**.

**2** Set receiving FOMA terminal to receive data.

**3** Select **Yes** and press **3**.

- Press **3** to cancel transmission.
- When the transmission is successfully completed, **Sent** appears even if still pictures are not saved in the receiver side terminal.

## Edit Image

### Editing Still Pictures (SPEEDYLAB)

#### Compare before and after images while editing without interruption.

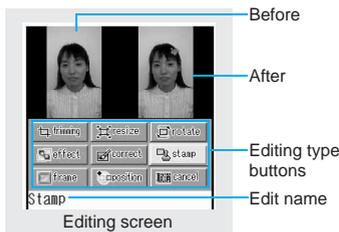
- Some images cannot be edited depending on the size of still picture shot with the FOMA terminal.
- Some images downloaded from sites or Internet web pages and images imported via DoCoMo keitai datalink cannot be edited.
- Image quality may deteriorate with repeated editing of an image after saving, such as by adding frames and stamps.
- Data size may increase/decrease when edited.
- Attach edited image to i-mode mail and send (☞ P. 301).
- Flash movies, animated GIFs or images for which One Seg programs are recorded as a still picture cannot be edited.

#### Opening Image Editing Screen

<Edit Image>

- In stand-by, press **Ⓞ** **9** **1** **1**, select folder, press **Ⓞ**, select still picture and press **Ⓞ** **1** **1** [Edit image].

- Alternatively, press **Ⓞ** **1** **1** in the image display screen (☞ step 3 on P. 296).
- Or, press **Ⓞ** **1** in the still picture preview screen after shooting (☞ step 3 on P. 168).



#### Editing type buttons

Use editing type buttons to access editing menu directly.

trimming	resize	rotate
Trimming (☞ P. 300)	Resize image (☞ P. 301)	Rotate (☞ P. 301)
effect	correct	stamp
Effect (☞ P. 302)	Correct image (☞ P. 302)	Stamp (☞ P. 302)
frame	position	cancel
Frame (☞ P. 303)	Change face position (☞ P. 303)	Undo (☞ P. 300)

Editing type buttons differ for functions and screens.

#### Key operations in editing screen

Perform one of the following to select editing types.

- Press **Ⓞ** and select editing type.
- Select editing type buttons with **Ⓞ**.

- Press dial key (**1** to **9**). Editing type buttons correspond to keypad layout.
  - Select another editing type to continue editing same still picture.
  - Editing is not available when Edit name cannot be selected.

#### Undoing previous operation <Undo>

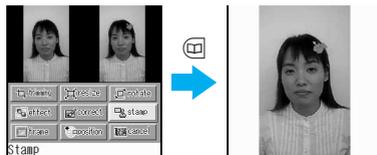
- Press **Ⓞ** **1** [Undo], select **Yes** and press **Ⓞ**.

- Last edit is undone (Operation cannot be performed if nothing was edited).
- Undo one step. Undo again to return to unedited still picture.

#### Showing in one screen

Show the edited still picture in a single screen. Before editing, the original still picture is shown in a single screen.

- Press **Ⓞ** [Chk img].



#### Note

- Edited still pictures are compressed when saved and may appear different during editing.

#### Changing Size of Still Pictures <Trimming>

Change size or trim still pictures to use as Icon image or to set as the stand-by display.

Original size	Available still picture sizes
Icon: 76x76	Icon: 76x76
sQCIF: 128x96	Icon: 76x76, sQCIF: 128x96
QCIF: 176x144	Icon: 76x76, sQCIF: 128x96, QCIF: 176x144
Stand-by: 240x400 Wide S: 400x240	Icon: 76x76, sQCIF: 128x96, QCIF: 176x144, QVGA: 240x320, Stand-by: 240x400, Icon (9-part)
QVGA: 240x320 CIF: 352x288 VGA: 480x640 Wide L: 1200x720 1.2M: 1280x960 UXGA: 1600x1200 FullHD: 1920x1080 3M: 2048x1536	Icon: 76x76, sQCIF: 128x96, QCIF: 176x144, QVGA: 240x320, Stand-by: 240x400

- Some still pictures from the microSD Memory Card, Ir exchange or DoCoMo keitai datalink can be resized depending on the size of the still picture.

- In the editing screen (☞ P. 300), press **Ⓞ** **1** [Trimming] and select the image size.

- Some still pictures cannot be edited depending on original size. Unavailable sizes cannot be selected.

Icon (76x76)	①
sQCIF (128x96)	②
QCIF (176x144)	③
QVGA (240x320)	④
Stand-by (240x400)	⑤
Icon (9-part)	⑥

- **Opening image** appears and edited still picture is displayed.
- Still picture is enlarged or reduced. Still picture is centered and margins are added to top and bottom if height is less than size.
- Once a **sQCIF: 128x96** image is edited (rotate 90°), it cannot be cut for the same size. Additionally, once **Stand-by (240x400)** image is edited (rotate 90°), it cannot be cut for icon (9-part).

## 2 Specify portion to cut with and press .

- Press  to zoom in and  to zoom out and cut with . Zooming in and out is not available for **Icon (9-part)**.

## 3 Save still picture.

- Refer to step 2 of "Rotating Still Pictures" on P. 301 for details on saving.

### Resizing Still Pictures <Resize Image>

Resize still picture depending on the intended use, such as for Deco-mail or stand-by display.

- Aspect ratio is maintained when still picture is resized. For images with differing aspect ratio, use Trimming to use as icon or Videophone substitute images.
- When image size is **sQCIF: 128x96**, **QCIF: 176x144**, **QVGA: 240x320** and file size (video) is 9 KB or less, still pictures cannot be resized for Deco-mail.

Original size	Available still picture sizes
Icon: 76x76	sQCIF: 128x96, QCIF: 176x144, QVGA: 240x320, Stand-by: 240x400
sQCIF: 128x96	Icon: 76x76, QCIF: 176x144, QVGA: 240x320, Stand-by: 240x400, Deco-mail
QCIF: 176x144	Icon: 76x76, sQCIF: 128x96, QVGA: 240x320, Stand-by: 240x400, Deco-mail
QVGA: 240x320	Icon: 76x76, sQCIF: 128x96, QCIF: 176x144, Deco-mail
Stand-by: 240x400 Wide S: 400x240	Icon: 76x76, sQCIF: 128x96, QCIF: 176x144, QVGA: 240x320, Stand-by: 240x400, Deco-mail
CIF: 352x288 VGA: 480x640 Wide L: 1200x720 1.2M: 1280x960 UXGA: 1600x1200 FullHD: 1920x1080 3M: 2048x1536	Icon: 76x76, sQCIF: 128x96, QCIF: 176x144, QVGA: 240x320, Stand-by: 240x400, Deco-mail

## 1 In the editing screen ( P. 300), press ② [Resize image] and select the image size.

Icon (76x76)	①
sQCIF (128x96)	②
QCIF (176x144)	③
QVGA (240x320)	④
Stand-by (240x400)	⑤
Deco-mail	⑥

- Still picture is compressed to 9 KB or less. Still pictures larger than **QVGA: 240x320** are resized to **QVGA: 240x320** or smaller.

- **Resizing** appears and edited still picture appears on the right.
- Still picture is enlarged or reduced. Still picture is centered and margins are added to top and bottom if height is less than size.

## 2 Save still picture.

- Refer to step 2 of "Rotating Still Pictures" on P. 301 for details on saving.

### Rotating Still Pictures <Rotate>

Rotate 90 degrees left/right or reverse images vertically/horizontally.

- Still pictures larger than **VGA: 480x640** are not available.

## 1 In the editing screen ( P. 300), press ③ [Rotate] and select the type of rotation.

Rotate 90° right	①
Rotate 90° left	②
Invert (up/down)	③
Invert (L/R)	④

## 2 Save still picture.

To save	 → <b>Yes</b> →  → <b>OK</b> → 
To change title and save	 → <b>Yes</b> →  → <b>Edit title</b> →  → edit title →  → <b>OK</b> → 
To change folder and save	 → <b>Yes</b> →  → <b>Change folder</b> →  → select folder →  → <b>OK</b> → 
To attach to i-mode mail and compose	 → <b>Yes</b> →  → <b>Compose message</b> →  → compose/send i-mode mail ● Still picture is automatically saved. ● Refer to steps 2 to 4 on P. 214 for details.
To make additional editing without saving	 → editing type number
To save before continuing	 → <b>OK</b> →  →  → editing type number

## Note

- Image quality may deteriorate when **trimmed** or **resized** still pictures are rotated. For some resized still pictures, their size may be changed to that other than shooting size (☞ P. 163). In such cases, some editing functions are not available (e.g. rotating, etc.).
- When still pictures are rotated left or right, the aspect ratio changes for sizes other than **Icon: 76x76**.
- Depending on the image, you may not be able to specify the folder destination.

## Adding Various Effects <Image Effect>

Change hue or feel of still pictures.

- Still pictures larger than **VGA: 480x640** are not available.
- Effects may differ depending on the still picture.

### 1 In the editing screen (☞ P. 300), press **Ⓜ** **4** **1** [Image effect] and select the type of effect.

Black & white	<b>1</b>	Ripple	<b>6</b>
Sepia	<b>2</b>	Kaleidoscope (L)	<b>7</b>
Sparkling	<b>3</b>	Kaleidoscope (S)	<b>8</b>
Colored pencil	<b>4</b>	Fish-eye	<b>↻</b> <b>1</b>
Faded edges	<b>5</b>		

### 2 Save still picture.

- Refer to step 2 of "Rotating Still Pictures" on P. 301 for details on saving.

## Decorating Faces <Face Effects>

Add expressive effects to still pictures of faces.

- Respect personal image rights when adding face effects, sending edited images via i-mode mail or setting edited images to stand-by.
- Face effects are added after automatically extracting face contour. Effects vary depending on position and size of face in still picture. Note the following. Out of focus, head tilted, dark, eyes hidden by hair, mouth open, glasses, facial hair, etc.
- Use larger portraits that face forward for Face effects.
- Still pictures larger than **VGA: 480x640** are not available.

### 1 In the editing screen (☞ P. 300), press **Ⓜ** **4** **2** [Face effects] and select the type of effect.

Slender	<b>1</b>	Hide wrinkles	<b>7</b>
Plump	<b>2</b>	Light skinned	<b>8</b>
Big eyes	<b>3</b>	Wrinkled face	<b>↻</b> <b>1</b>
Smile	<b>4</b>	Face symmetry (R)	<b>↻</b> <b>2</b>
Angry	<b>5</b>	Face symmetry (L)	<b>↻</b> <b>3</b>
Sad	<b>6</b>		

- When facial contours are not properly extracted, press **Ⓜ** **↻** **1** [Undo], select **Yes** and press **Ⓞ** to return to original image. Press **Ⓜ** **8** [Change face pos] and set contour manually. Refer to "Setting Contour Manually" on P. 303 for details.

## 2 Save still picture.

- Refer to step 2 of "Rotating Still Pictures" on P. 301 for details on saving.

## Correcting Still Pictures <Correct Image>

Correct sharpness and softness of still pictures.

- Still pictures larger than **VGA: 480x640** are not available.
- Degree of corrections differ depending on original still picture.

### 1 In the editing screen (☞ P. 300), press **Ⓜ** **5** [Correct image] and select the type of correction.

Sharpness	<b>1</b>	Emphasizes edges.
Softness	<b>2</b>	Blurs edges.
Sensitivity up	<b>3</b>	Increases brightness and contrast.
Vibrancy	<b>4</b>	Increases colorfulness.

### 2 Save still picture.

- Refer to step 2 of "Rotating Still Pictures" on P. 301 for details on saving.

## Pasting Image Stamps <Image Stamp>

Paste preset and downloaded image stamps such as stars, flowers and kiss marks.

- Still pictures larger than **VGA: 480x640** are not available.
- Image quality may deteriorate when Image stamps are added to trimmed or resized still pictures.

### 1 In the editing screen (☞ P. 300), press **Ⓜ** **6** **1** [Image stamp], select folder, press **Ⓞ**, select image stamp and press **Ⓜ** [OK].

- To check a stamp, select an image stamp and press **Ⓞ**. Press **CLR** and the previous screen reappears.
- Press **↻** to adjust location.
- Press **CLR** to re-select image stamp. Stamp selected is deleted and the editing screen reappears.

### 2 Press **Ⓞ**.

- Adjust location and press **Ⓞ** to paste same stamp.

### 3 Press **Ⓜ** [Complete] and save still picture.

- Refer to step 2 of "Rotating Still Pictures" on P. 301 for details on saving.

## Pasting Face Stamps <Face Stamp>

Add decorations such as tears, sunglasses and swirly cheeks.

- Respect personal image rights when adding face stamps, sending edited images via i-mode mail or setting edited images to stand-by.
- Use larger portraits that face forward.
- Face stamps are added after automatically extracting face contour. Effects vary depending on position and size of face in still picture. Note the following. Out of focus, head tilted, dark, eyes hidden by hair, mouth open, glasses, facial hair, etc.
- Still pictures larger than **VGA: 480x640** are not available.
- Image quality may deteriorate when Face stamps are added to trimmed or resized still pictures.

## 1 In the editing screen (P. 300), press [Face stamp] and select the type of stamp.

Anger	①	Sunglasses	⑤
Tears	②	Brainy glasses	⑥
Swirly cheeks	③	Mosaic (eyes)	⑦
Puppy dog eyes	④	Mosaic (face)	⑧

- When facial contours are not properly extracted, press [Undo], select **Yes** and press [Return] to return to original image. Press [Change face pos] and set contour manually. Refer to "Setting Contour Manually" on P. 303 for details.

## 2 Save still picture.

- Refer to step 2 of "Rotating Still Pictures" on P. 301 for details on saving.

## Pasting Character Stamps <Character Stamp>

Paste entered characters and date/time.

- Still pictures larger than **VGA: 480x640** are not available.
- Image quality may deteriorate when Character stamps are added to trimmed or resized still pictures.

## 1 In the editing screen (P. 300), press [Character stamp] and select a Character stamp.

Free word	① → enter text →	● Enter up to 22 single-byte (11 double-byte) characters. Text that exceeds display width is cut (Line breaks are not available).
Date	②	

- Press [Move] to adjust location.
- Press [Size] or [Size] to change the font size. The font size changes in the order of 20 dots 24 dots 30 dots 40 dots (double height size) 12 dots 16 dots 20 dots.

## 2 Press [Color] and select font color.

Orange	①	Yellow	⑤
Black	②	Green	⑥
White	③	Blue	⑦
Red	④		

## 3 Press [Save] and save still picture.

- Refer to step 2 of "Rotating Still Pictures" on P. 301 for details on saving.

## Adding a Frame <Frame>

### 1 In the editing screen (P. 300), press [Frame], select folder, press [Frame], select frame and press [OK].

- To preview, select a frame and press [Preview]. Press [Return] and the previous screen reappears.

### 2 Save still picture.

- Refer to step 2 of "Rotating Still Pictures" on P. 301 for details on saving.

#### Note

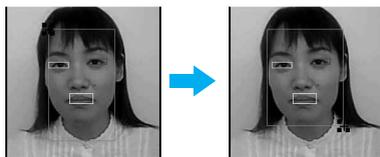
- Image quality may deteriorate when frames are added to trimmed or resized still pictures.

## Setting Contour Manually <Change Face Position>

Manually set the contour information (face contour, right eye contour, left eye contour and mouth contour) for each part of the face used in Face effects or Face stamp.

- + moves only within image.
- Outlines for contour are red for face, blue for right eye, green for left eye and yellow for mouth.
- Also use contour data with Facial treatment (P. 304).

### 1 In the editing screen (P. 300), press [Change face pos] and specify the face contour.



1. Move + to upper left of contour with [Move] and press [Return].

2. Move + to lower right of contour with [Move] and press [Return].

### 2 Set right eye contour.

1. Move + to upper left of contour with [Move] and press [Return].
2. Move + to lower right of contour with [Move] and press [Return].

### 3 Set left eye contour.

1. Move + to upper left of contour with [Move] and press [Return].
2. Move + to lower right of contour with [Move] and press [Return].

## 4 Set mouth contour.

1. Move + to upper left of contour with and press .
2. Move + to the lower right of contour with .

## 5 Press [Complete] and save still picture.

- Refer to step 2 of "Rotating Still Pictures" on P. 301 for details on saving.

### Note

- Press and hold to move + consecutively.
- Press while specifying the face contour to return to the previous step.
- Set contour data is saved when edited image is saved. Contour data settings return if edited image is not saved. Saved contour data is used the next time the image is edited.

## Making Up People's Faces

### <Facial Treatment>

Whiten or add natural make up to still pictures of people's faces.

- Still pictures larger than **VGA: 480x640** are not available.
- Effects may differ depending on the still picture.

## 1 In stand-by, press 9 1 1, select folder, press , select still picture and press 1 2 [Facial treatment].



## 2 Press and select the type of effect.

Whitening		Makes the complexion whiter.
Natural		Makes the skin look natural and healthy.
Undo		Undoes previous operation.

## 3 Save still picture.

- Refer to step 2 of "Rotating Still Pictures" on P. 301 for details on saving.

## Saving Still Pictures to Data Storage Center <Store at Center>

- Save JPEG or GIF images of 100 KB or less saved in My picture of Data box.
- Select and save up to ten files.
- This service is a paid service that requires subscription.
- Refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]" for details on the restoration of saved still pictures.

## 1 In image list screen ( P. 296), select still picture and press 8 [Store at Center].

## 2 Save still picture.

To save one	→ Yes →  → enter terminal security code →
To save files collectively	→ select still picture (repeatable) →  → Yes →  → enter terminal security code →

### Note

- Still pictures that are restricted for output from the FOMA terminal are not available.
- Still pictures saved onto a microSD Memory Card are not available directly. Copy to the **Acquired data** folder in My picture of FOMA terminal handset.
- Check the phonebook transmission history for transmissions of saving to the Data Storage Center ( P. 114).

## i-motion Player

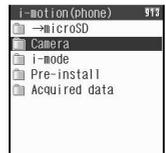
### Playing Movie/i-motion

Play back movies shot with FOMA terminal and i-motion downloaded from sites and Internet web pages saved in i-motion folder of Data box with i-motion player.

## 1 In stand-by, press 9 1 3.

- Alternatively, press 2 in the movie shooting screen ( P. 167).

- To view movies/i-motion saved in microSD Memory Card, select →microSD. To view movies/i-motion saved in FOMA terminal handset again, select →phone.



## 2 Select a folder and press .

- To switch image list, refer to "Changing display method" on P. 308.



## 3 Select movie/i-motion and press .



Playback icons

Movie playback screen

- Fixed animation appears for voice only movies/i-motion (i-motion with no video).
- Full-screen mode is available when the FOMA terminal is set to the Cycloid position.

To adjust volume*1	(softer) or  (louder) while playing, paused, or stopped
To fast forward*1	Press and hold  while playing or paused <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Plays when key is released during playback. Does not play when paused.</li> </ul>
To fast rewind*1	Press and hold  while playing or paused <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Plays when key is released during playback. Does not play when paused.</li> </ul>
To pause	[Pause] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Press  again to resume playback.</li> <li>● Press  while paused to advance by frame or  to rewind by frame.</li> </ul>
To stop	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Press  [Play] while stopped to resume playback from the beginning.</li> </ul>
To jump to assigned location	1 to  9 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Press while paused to jump to a location assigned to the key pressed. Press during playback to jump to the location assigned to the key pressed and resume playback.*2</li> </ul>
To play next movie/i-motion*1	while playing or stopped
To play previous movie/i-motion*1	while playing or stopped

\*1 For normal position, when in Full-screen mode/Wide mode display, operations for up/down and left/right are switched. Hold the FOMA terminal sideways and perform operations.

\*2 Press 1 during playback to return to the beginning of movie/i-motion. Press 2 to 9 to jump to locations divided by one-eighth increments of the recording time. However, it may not be possible to jump when the recording time is short.

- Supported movie/i-motion formats are as follows. Check the format of movies/i-motion at file format in **File property** (P. 330).

File format	Encoding	
MP4 (extensions: .mp4, .3gp, .m4a)	Image	MPEG-4, H.263, H.264
	Audio	AMR, AAC, HE-AAC, Enhanced aacPlus

File format		Encoding
ASF (extensions: .asf)	Image	MPEG-4
	Audio	AMR, G.726

- **sQCIF: 128x96, QCIF: 176x144, QQVGA: 160x120, hQVGA: 240x176, QVGA: 320x240, WQVGA: 400x240 and VGA: 640x480** can be played back.
- Movies/i-motion in ASF file format cannot be saved or copied to the FOMA terminal handset.
- **sQCIF: 128x96** and **QCIF: 176x144** are available for playback for movies encoded in H.263 format.
- Only Explicit format is available for voice encoded in HE-AAC format or Enhanced aacPlus format.
- Only Baseline Profile is available for movies encoded in H.264 format.

### Playback marks

Playback	Volume	to
	Surround ON	
	Surround OFF	
	Appears while buffering (Normal type/ Streaming type)	
	Download Incomplete	
	Repeat playback	
	Backlight time <b>Always ON</b>	
	Zoom playback	
	Actual size playback	
	Image size	
	Surround playback capable file	
	Stereo	
Monaural		
Track type	Voice	
	Image	
	Ticker	
	No audio	
	No image	

### Note

- Playback is paused if Submenu is selected. Playback may be resumed from a spot slightly before pausing depending on Submenu or data. Playback is stopped to return to the stopped of movie/i-motion if an alarm is activated or another function is activated using Multi Assistant.
- Jumping to specified location by pressing 1 to 9 is not available for some data or locations. In addition, some images are not available when forwarding or rewinding frames.

## Note

- Movies saved to microSD Memory Cards from external devices can be played back on the FOMA terminal (P. 438).
- Playback continues even if FOMA terminal is closed.
- The current file location (FOMA terminal handset or microSD Memory Card) is saved even if i-motion player is ended, and is used the next time i-motion player is activated.

### Forward and store movie/i-motion saved in i-motion of Data box on a PC using microSD Memory Card (P. 318).

- Saved content may be lost due to malfunctions, repairs or other handling of the FOMA terminal. DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss of content.

### When voice/Videophone call is received during movie/i-motion playback

- The incoming call screen appears and the call can be answered. Playback is canceled and the stopped movie/i-motion reappears after the call is ended. Even if Resume settings is set to **ON** on the microSD Memory Card for MP4 file saved on the FOMA terminal handset, playback cannot be resumed from where it was interrupted.

## Related Operations

### Show in Full-screen mode

#### <Full-screen mode/Wide mode>

- 1 Press **[M] [6]** [i-motion setting] while stopped (paused)/playing.
- 2 Press **[M] [1]** to show in the Full-screen mode (in the size that fits within the display).
  - To show in the Wide mode (in the size without margins): Press **[M] [2]**.
  - To show Full-screen mode during playback or in the movie list with one-touch key operations: Press **[M]**.
  - To return: Press **[M]**.
  - To switch from Wide mode to Full-screen mode: Press **[M]**.

### Repeat playback <Repeat playback>

- While stopped (paused)/playing, press **[M] [6] [1]**.
- To return to normal playback: Press **[M] [6] [1]**.
  - To stop playback: Press **[CLR]**.

### Change playback size <Change size>

- 1 While stopped (paused)/playing, press **[M] [6] [2]**.
- 2 Press **[1]** [Actual size]/**[2]** [Zoom].

### Light up <Light up>

- While stopped (paused)/playing, press **[M] [6] [3]**.
- Or, press **[H]** (for 1+ seconds).
  - To turn off: Perform same steps.

## Related Operations

### Set forwarding frame <Frame rate>

- 1 While stopped (paused)/playing, press **[M] [6] [8]**.
  - To set from movie editing screen: Press **[M] [6] [1]**.
- 2 To make frame rate more rough (high speed), press **[1]**.
  - To make frame rate more detailed: Press **[2]**.

### Set surround <Surround>

- 1 While stopped (paused)/playing, press **[M] [6] [4]**.
- 2 Press **[1]** [ON].

### Set Playback light <Backlight time>

- 1 In movie/i-motion folder list, press **[M] [4] [1]**.
  - To set in the image list: Press **[M] [8] [3]**.
- 2 Press **[2]** [Always ON].
  - To set same as light setting: Press **[1]**.

### Adjust playback volume <Set volume>

- 1 In movie/i-motion folder list, press **[M] [4] [2]**.
  - To set in the image list: Press **[M] [8] [4]**.
- 2 Press **[V]** (louder) or **[V]** (softer) **[M]**.

### Set resume playback settings <Resume settings>

- 1 In movie/i-motion folder list, select **→microSD** **[M]** **[M]** select folder **[M]** **[M]** **[M] [8] [5]** in the image list.
- 2 Press **[1]** to resume playback.

## Note (Related operations)

### Switch Full-screen mode/Wide mode

- Switch **hQVGA: 240×176**, **QVGA320×240**, **WQVGA: 400×240** or **VGA: 640×480** images to Wide mode.
- Horizontal full-screen is available when in Full-screen mode or Wide mode display.
- For **WQVGA: 400×240** images, Full-screen mode and Wide mode appear in the same way.

### Repeat playback

- Data with limitations on number of times to play back is not available for repeat playback.
- Press any key other than **[CLR]** and **[M]** within three seconds of repeating to stop repeat playback. However, press **[M]** for 1+ seconds to resume playback. In addition, press **[M]** to play back in the Full-screen mode and **[M]** to switch to the Send display.
- Press **[CLR]** or **[M]** to end repeat playback.

### Switch playback size

- Switch playback size to **Zoom** if image size is **sQCIF: 128×96**, **QCIF: 176×144** (without ticker), or **QQVGA: 160×120** (without ticker).
- The default setting is **Actual size**.

### Light up

- Backlight turns off after time set for **Display light time** when Backlight time is set to **As light setting**.
- When Backlight time is set to **Always ON**, even after time set for Display light time passes, the backlight remains lit until movie/i-motion is ended.

## Related Operations

### Note (Related operations)

- Display is at brightest when lit up regardless of **Brightness** settings.

#### Forwarding frame rate

- The default setting is **Rough (hi-speed)**.
- For voice only movies, **Fine** is not available and forwarding frame is set to **Rough (hi-speed)**.
- For some movies, **Fine** is not available and forwarding frame is set to **Rough (hi-speed)**.
- When editing in the movie editing screen, if image size is **hQVGA: 240x176** or **WQVGA: 400x240**, or if data size exceeds 500 KB, forwarding frame is set to **Rough (hi-speed)**.

#### Surround

- When i-motion player is activated, the movie/i-motion is played with surround sound **ON** when **Stereo effects** is set to **Surround** and **OFF** when a setting other than **Surround** is set. Set Surround **ON/OFF** during playback. Settings are applied to Stereo effects.
- Surround playback is available for 2-channel AAC-encoded movies/i-motion.
- Check movies/i-motion which supports surround settings with surround details of each file.

#### Backlight time

- The default setting is **As light setting** (☞ P. 130).

#### Set volume

- The default setting is **Volume 5**.

#### Resuming playback

- The default setting is **ON**.
- Resume playback is available for movies/i-motion saved in **microSD Memory Card**. However, it is not available for the movies/i-motion saved in the **Movable contents** folder and **Multimedia** folder.
- Set Resume setting to **ON** to resume playback of movies/i-motion saved in the microSD Memory Card that are interrupted by incoming calls.
- Resume settings are not available if no movies/i-motion are saved on the microSD Memory Card.

- 4 Folder for movies/i-motion preset in FOMA terminal handset
- 5 Folder for movies/i-motion retrieved via Bar code reader, microSD Memory Card, Ir exchange, iC transmission or FOMA USB cable (sold separately)
- 6 Created folder (☞ P. 325, P. 328)
- 7 Shows folder list of FOMA terminal handset
- 8 Folder for movies shot while set to voice only and to be saved on microSD Memory Card and Voice recorder audio
  - **Multimedia** folder name is fixed. Folder cannot be deleted.
  - Save up to 400 shot and recorded data items in **Multimedia** folder. Files are in MP4 format.
  - Save data other than those shot and recorded in **Multimedia** folder via a PC. Available file formats are MP4, ASF and 3GPP. Saved files are named MMF0001 to MMF9999. Up to 400 files can be viewed on the FOMA terminal. If there is data that cannot be played back or there are 401 items or more, data may not appear. The file names do not appear if they are not named as "MMFxxxx" ("xxxx" indicates a number).
- 9 Folder for storing downloaded movies/i-motion with restrictions for output from the FOMA terminal (Contents transfer compatible)
  - Data saved in the **Movable contents** folder is transferred from the FOMA terminal handset to microSD Memory Card. When the data is required for the FOMA terminal handset, transfer it to the FOMA terminal handset (☞ P. 321).

## Image list layout

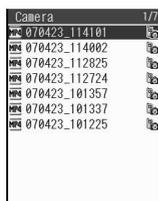
Select a view method from the following three settings.



9-part



16-part



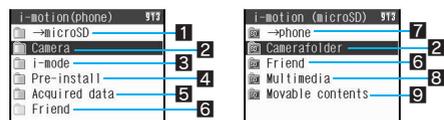
List display

## i-motion Folder List/Image List Layout

### i-motion folder list layout

Select →**microSD** or press (☞) (7) [Switch phone SD] in i-motion folder list to switch to microSD Memory Card folder.

### FOMA terminal handset microSD Memory Card



- 1 Shows folder list of microSD Memory Card
- 2 Folder for movies shot with FOMA terminal
- 3 Folder for movies/i-motion downloaded from sites and Internet web pages or retrieved via Message R/F or i-mode mail
- 4 Folder for movies/i-motion preset in FOMA terminal handset
- 5 Folder for movies/i-motion retrieved via Bar code reader, microSD Memory Card, Ir exchange, iC transmission or FOMA USB cable (sold separately)
- 6 Created folder (☞ P. 325, P. 328)
- 7 Shows folder list of FOMA terminal handset
- 8 Folder for movies shot while set to voice only and to be saved on microSD Memory Card and Voice recorder audio
  - **Multimedia** folder name is fixed. Folder cannot be deleted.
  - Save up to 400 shot and recorded data items in **Multimedia** folder. Files are in MP4 format.
  - Save data other than those shot and recorded in **Multimedia** folder via a PC. Available file formats are MP4, ASF and 3GPP. Saved files are named MMF0001 to MMF9999. Up to 400 files can be viewed on the FOMA terminal. If there is data that cannot be played back or there are 401 items or more, data may not appear. The file names do not appear if they are not named as "MMFxxxx" ("xxxx" indicates a number).
- 9 Folder for storing downloaded movies/i-motion with restrictions for output from the FOMA terminal (Contents transfer compatible)
  - Data saved in the **Movable contents** folder is transferred from the FOMA terminal handset to microSD Memory Card. When the data is required for the FOMA terminal handset, transfer it to the FOMA terminal handset (☞ P. 321).

- In 9-part and 16-part, (☞) or (☞) appears in place of image if movie/i-motion corresponds with below.
  - Data displayed as (☞)
    - Voice only data
    - Unsupported image size data
    - Unsupported image file format data
  - Data displayed as (☞)
    - Text only data
    - Images cannot be displayed (corrupted)
    - Data to which FOMA card restriction function applied in the **Movable contents** folder

- In 9-part and 16-part display, the file information of selected movie/i-motion is shown on the bottom of the display. Note that **unknown** appears for the display size, file format and file size of a file with the FOMA card restrictions applied.

## Changing display method

<Switch view mode>

Default setting 9-part

- 1 In stand-by, press **⊙** [9] [1] [3], select folder, press **⊙** and press **Ⓜ** [8] [1] [Switch view mode].

- 2 Select display method.

9-part	[1]
16-part	[2]
List display	[3]

- While showing the list, press **⊙** to view the next page and **⊙** to view the previous page.

### Note

- Enter up to 36 single-byte (18 double-byte) characters for title name of movies/i-motion. However, only 14 single-byte (7 double-byte) characters are shown on screen (If a title name exceeds 14 single-byte (7 double-byte) characters, up to 12 single-byte (6 double-byte) characters are shown for the title name).

## Movie/i-motion types and their icons

### Movie/i-motion types

MP4 (Mobile MP4)		ASF
Unlimited	Limited	-

### Mark types

	Movie/i-motion with FOMA card restrictions applied
	Movie/i-motion set as stand-by, Picture call, ring tone or Select ring tone, alarm, Schedule alarm or ToDo alarm
	Movie/i-motion with the restriction of mail attachment or output from the FOMA terminal
	Movie/i-motion downloaded with i-mode
	Movie/i-motion retrieved via microSD Memory Card, Ir exchange, iC transmissions or FOMA USB cable (sold separately)
	Movie/i-motion shot with camera

## Repeating Movies <Continuous Play>

Play all movies/i-motion in a folder in succession.

- 1 In stand-by, press **⊙** [9] [1] [3], select folder and press **Ⓜ** [3] [1] [Start cont play].

- Press **⊙** during playback to pause.
- Press **Ⓜ** during playback to stop. Press **⊙** to resume stopped movie/i-motion from beginning and continuous play is resumed.
- **Data unable to be played skipped** appears for movies/i-motion with restrictions on replay period or expiration date and the next movie/i-motion plays.

## Setting continuous play

Default setting Repeat playback: **No**  
Sample playback: **No**

Perform settings for movie/i-motion continuous play.

Setting	Function
Repeat playback	Sets repeat settings on or off. Settings are applied to all folders.
Sample playback	Sets maximum playback time (Transitions are not included). Settings are applied to all folders.

## Repeating playback

- 1 In stand-by, press **⊙** [9] [1] [3], select folder, press **Ⓜ** [3] [2] [Repeat playback] and [1] [Yes].

## Sampling playback

- 1 In stand-by, press **⊙** [9] [1] [3], select folder and press **Ⓜ** [3] [3] [Sample playback].

- 2 Select playback time.

5 seconds	[1]
15 seconds	[2]
No	[3]

## Attaching and Sending Movie/i-motion

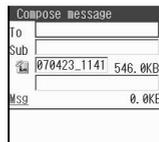
<i-motion Mail>

Attach movie/i-motion to i-mode mail and send.

- Send movies/i-motion of up to 2 MB in MP4 format.

- 1 In stand-by, press **⊙** [9] [1] [3], select folder, press **⊙**, select movie/i-motion and press **Ⓜ** [Mail].

- Selected movie/i-motion is attached.
- Select **For mail (short)** or **For mail (long)** if movie/i-motion exceeds 500 KB.
- Select **For mail (short)** and press **⊙** to cut out the first approximately 500 KB automatically.
- For movie/i-motion which exceed 2 MB, select **For mail (long)** and press **⊙** to cut out the first approximately 2 MB automatically. Movie/i-motion larger than 500 KB and 2 MB or less are not cut.



## 2 Compose and send i-mode mail.

- Refer to steps 2 to 4 on P. 214 for details.

### Setting Movie/i-motion as the Stand-by Display <AV Settings>

Set movie/i-motion as the stand-by display.

- If animated GIF, Flash movie or i-motion is set as stand-by, playback stops when switched to Calendar.
- Movie/i-motion with image size of **QQVGA: 160×120**, **WQVGA: 400×240** or **VGA: 640×480** are not available.
- Movie/i-motion in the **Movable contents** folder in microSD Memory Card can be set as stand-by display or ring tone. The set movie/i-motion is transferred to the **i-mode** folder in Data box on the FOMA terminal handset.

### 1 In stand-by, press **9**, **1**, **3**, select folder, press **0**, select movie/i-motion and press **0**, **4** [AV settings].

- Movies/i-motion with voice only (i-motion with no video) and ASF format movies/i-motion are not available.



### 2 Select item.

Stand-by display	<b>1</b>	Msg R ring tone	<b>6</b>
Phone ring tone	<b>2</b>	Msg F ring tone	<b>7</b>
V.phone ring tone	<b>3</b>	SMS ring tone	<b>8</b>
User unset tone	<b>4</b>	PushTalk tone	<b>0</b> , <b>1</b>
Mail ring tone	<b>5</b>		

### 3 When stand-by is selected, select Yes, press **0** and press **1** [Actual size] or **2** [Zoom].

- Zoom is not available for image sizes other than **sQCIF: 128×96** or **QCIF: 176×144**.

#### Note

- Some i-motion are not available to be set as the stand-by display.
- **Phone To (AV Phone To)**, **Mail To** and **Web To** are not available from i-motion stand-by.
- Set movie/i-motion stand-by volume with **Key/ Standby i-motion**.
- Only movie/i-motion with voice only (i-motion with no video) is available for PushTalk tone.

## Edit Movie

### Editing Movies (SPEEDYLAB)

Edit shot movies.

- Movie editing may not be available for some data recorded on devices other than FOMA SH903iTV.
- Movie editing is not available for One Seg programs recorded as video data.

### Opening Movie Editing Screen

<Edit Movie>

### 1 In stand-by, press **0**, **9**, **1**, **3**, select folder, press **0**, select movie and press **0**, **1**, **1** [Edit movie].

- Alternatively, press **0**, **1**, **1** while playing movie (P. 304) to stop and open movie editing screen.
- Press **0** to forward/rewind. Press for 1+ seconds to fast forward/fast rewind. Sound is off.
- Press **1** to **9** to jump to specified location. Depending on the movie, this feature may be unavailable.

Editing type icon



Movie editing screen

#### Editing type icons

	Capture still (P. 310)
	Image cutter (P. 310)
	File property (P. 309)
	Save (P. 310)
	End

### Key operations in movie editing screen

Perform one of the following to select editing types.

- Press **0** and select editing type.
- Select editing type icon with **0**.

### Related Operations

Hide ticker <Show ticker>

- 1 In the movie editing screen, press **0**, **6**, **2**.
- 2 Press **2** [OFF].

View detailed information <File property>

- In the movie editing screen, press **0**, **3**.
- To end viewing: Press **0** or **CLR**.

### Note (Related operations)

Show ticker

- The default setting is **ON**.
- Set to hide tickers from movies with tickers added. Tickers are shown for a preview.

## Cutting Movies <Image Cutter>

Cut out a portion and save as a new movie.

- Ticker is deleted unless entire length of ticker is included in portion to cut.

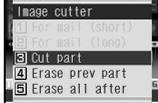
### Setting start and end points and cutting

Set starting point and ending point and cut.

- Not available for movies that are shorter than three seconds.

#### 1 In the movie editing screen (P. 309), press **[Image cutter]** and select cut method.

- Press **[Fwd]** to forward/rewind. Press for 1+ seconds to fast forward/fast rewind. Sound is off.
- Ending point must come after starting point.
- When the portion to cut is selected, a confirmation screen for the cut movie size appears.



To set starting point and ending point and cut	<b>[3]</b> [Cut part] → <b>[1]</b> [Origin] → <b>[1]</b> [Last] → <b>[1]</b>
To cut from starting point to end of file	<b>[4]</b> [Erase prev part] → <b>[1]</b> [Origin] → <b>[1]</b>
To cut from beginning of file to ending point	<b>[5]</b> [Erase all after] → <b>[1]</b> [Last] → <b>[1]</b>

#### 2 Save movie.



To save edited movie	<b>[4]</b> → <b>OK</b> → <b>[1]</b>
To change title and save	<b>[4]</b> → <b>Edit title</b> → <b>[1]</b> → edit title → <b>[1]</b> → <b>OK</b> → <b>[1]</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Up to 50 single-byte (25 double-byte) characters for still picture captures. Enter up to 36 single-byte (18 double-byte) characters for other movies.</li> </ul>
To change folder and save	<b>[4]</b> → <b>Change folder</b> → <b>[1]</b> → select folder → <b>[1]</b> → <b>OK</b> → <b>[1]</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Changing folders may not be available for movies on microSD Memory Cards.</li> </ul>
To attach to i-mode mail and send	<b>[4]</b> → <b>Compose message</b> → <b>[1]</b> → compose/send i-mode mail <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Movie is automatically saved.</li> <li>• Refer to steps 2 to 4 on P. 214 for details.</li> </ul>

To not save edited movie	<b>[5]</b> → <b>Yes</b> → <b>[1]</b>
To play edited movie	<b>[1]</b>

- When edited movie is larger than 500 KB, a screen to select whether to convert for mail attachment appears. Select **For mail (short)** and press **[1]** to cut out the first approximately 500 KB automatically. Select **For mail (long)** and press **[1]** to cut out the first approximately 2 MB automatically. To save as is, select **None** and press **[1]**.
- Next cutting cannot be performed until saving the movie.

### Cutting for Mail

Cut movie to attach to i-mode mail.

- Not available for movies that are approximately 500 KB or less.

#### 1 In the movie editing screen (P. 309), press **[Image cutter]** and select cut method.

For mail (short)	<b>[1]</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To automatically cut approximately 500 KB from starting point.</li> </ul>
For mail (long)	<b>[2]</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To automatically cut approximately 2 MB from starting point.</li> </ul>

- Press **[Fwd]** to forward/rewind. Press for 1+ seconds to fast forward/fast rewind.

#### 2 Press **[Origin]** at starting point and press **[1]**.

#### 3 Save movie.

- Refer to step 2 of "Setting start and end points and cutting" on P. 310 for details on saving.

## Saving Movie as a Still Picture <Capture Still>

Save a scene from a movie as a still picture.

Handle saved still picture as those shot with FOMA terminal. Attach to i-mode mail and send.

- Capture still is not available for voice only data.

#### 1 In the movie editing screen (P. 309), press **[Fwd]**, select scene to save as still picture and press **[1]** [Capture still].

#### 2 Select **OK** and press **[1]**.

- Scene is saved as a still picture.
- Refer to step 2 of "Rotating Still Pictures" on P. 301 for details on saving.

## Video Player

### Playing Back Videos

Record movies of One Seg programs with the FOMA terminal to save into the Video folder in the microSD Memory Card and the movies can be played back with Video player. microSD Memory Cards are sold separately. Purchase the microSD Memory Cards at home electronics shops (☎ P. 318).

- Display data broadcasting while playing back video. However, data broadcasting site, i-mode site, i-appli To function, displaying TVlink list and downloading ToruCa are not available.
- Use FM transmitter to play voice and sound with an FM radio and others (☎ P. 361).

**1** In stand-by, press **⊙** **9** **1** **4**.



Video file list

**2** Select video file and press **⊙**.



Playback display

Screen for playing video

- Video is displayed in full-screen when the FOMA terminal is set to the Cycloid position.
- When a video is played, data broadcasting appears. They are available in the broadcast station of a recorded program.
- When playing the video that was ended during the previous playback, the playback resumes from the spot where the playback stopped last time.

### Key operations during playback

To fast forward (▶▶), ▶▶×1, ▶▶×2, ▶▶×3, ▶▶×4)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● To speed up fast forward: Press <b>⊙</b> repeatedly.</li> <li>● To fast forward at speed of ▶▶×2: Press <b>⊙</b> for 1+ seconds.</li> </ul>
---	--

To fast reverse (◀◀×1, ◀◀×2, ◀◀×3, ◀◀×4)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● To speed up fast reverse: Press <b>⊙</b> repeatedly.</li> <li>● To fast reverse at speed of ◀◀×2: Press <b>⊙</b> for 1+ seconds.</li> </ul>
To pause	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Press <b>⊙</b> [Pause]</li> <li>● Press <b>⊙</b> again to resume playback.</li> </ul>
To stop	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Press <b>⊙</b> [Play] while stopped to resume playback from the beginning.</li> </ul>
To jump to assigned location	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Press during playback to jump to the location assigned to the key pressed and resume playback.*</li> </ul>
To mute/disable	
To turn Subtitles ON/OFF	
To adjust volume (Volume 0 to 10)	
To display Submenu	
To switch operation mode of video mode/data broadcasting mode (only in the normal position)	
To temporarily display icons of the screen for playing video and the name of broadcast station/program (only in the Cycloid position)	

\* Press **1** during playback to return to the beginning of video. Press **2** to **9** to jump to locations divided by one-ninth increments of the recording time. However, it may not be possible to jump when the recording time is short.

### Note

- Data broadcasting is activated only when a video is played in the normal speed or ▶▶.

### Related Operations

#### Switch the display size of data broadcasting

<Display mode (L)>

- 1** In the screen for playing video, press **⊙** **1**.
- 2** To display data broadcasting in full-screen, press **2**.
  - To display video and data broadcasting separately: Press **1**.

#### Switch the display size of video

<Display mode (W)>

- 1** In the screen for playing video, press **⊙** **2**.
- 2** For Normal size, press **1**.
  - For Large size: Press **2**.

## Related Operations

Set whether to display the icon when video is enlarged in the Cycloid position

<Mark display (W)>

- 1 In the screen for playing video, press **[M]** **[3]**.
- 2 To temporarily display, press **[1]**.
  - To constantly display: Press **[2]**.

Set to display subtitles while playing video

<Subtitles>

- 1 In the screen for playing video, press **[M]** **[4]**.
- 2 To display subtitles, press **[1]**.
  - To not display: Press **[2]**.

Set to display subtitles when activating Video player <Startup settings>

- 1 In the screen for playing video, press **[M]** **[4]** **[3]**.
- 2 To display subtitles when activating Video player, press **[1]**.
  - To display in conjunction with Manner mode when activating Video player: Press **[2]**.
  - To not display when activating Video player: Press **[3]**.

Using FM transmitter <FM transmitter out>

In the screen for playing video, press **[M]** **[5]** **[1]**.

Set to mute sound effects of data broadcasting <Sound FX>

In the screen for playing video, press **[M]** **[6]** **[5]** **[2]**.  
 ● To sound: Press **[1]**.

Display the confirmation screen for connection <Reset status disp>

In the screen for playing video, press **[M]** **[6]** **[6]** **[enter]** terminal security code **[enter]** **[enter]** Yes **[enter]** **[enter]**.

Switch between video mode and data broadcasting mode <Switch>

In the screen for playing video, press **[M]** **[7]**.

View detailed information <File property>

In the screen for playing video, press **[M]** **[8]**.  
 ● To end checking: Press **[enter]** or **[CLR]**.

View key list <Key list>

In the screen for playing video, press **[M]** **[1]**.

## Related Operations

### Note (Related operations)

#### Display mode (L)

- Available when the FOMA terminal is in the normal position.
- The default setting is **Video+data**. When Video player is ended, the setting returns to **Video+data**.

#### Display mode (W)

- Available when the FOMA terminal is in the Cycloid position.
- The default setting is **Video(zoom)**.

#### Subtitles

- The default setting is **OFF**. Whether to show subtitles when activating Video player follows the setting for activating Video player.
- Subtitles are not available for some programs.

#### Startup settings

- The default setting is **Linked manner**.
- If **Linked manner** is set, subtitles appear when Video player is activated in Manner mode.

#### FM transmitter out

- Refer to P. 361 for details on using FM transmitter.

## Setting Image and Voice of Current Playback <One Seg Settings>

#### Default setting

Vibrant image mode: **Dynamic**,  
 Brightness: **Automatic**,  
 Main/Sub language: **Main**,  
 Change language: **Main language**

- 1 In the screen for playing video, press **[M]** **[1]** **[2]** **[One Seg settings]** and select a setting item.

To set Vibrant image mode	<b>[1]</b> → <b>[1]</b> [Normal]/ <b>[2]</b> [Dynamic]/ <b>[3]</b> [Movie]
To adjust display brightness	<b>[2]</b> → <b>[2]</b> [Manual] → <b>[↑]</b> (brighter)/ <b>[↓]</b> (darker) → <b>[enter]</b> ● To automatically adjust the brightness according to the surrounding light: Press <b>[2]</b> → <b>[1]</b> [Automatic].
To switch Main/Sub language	<b>[3]</b> → <b>[1]</b> [Main]/ <b>[2]</b> [Sub]/ <b>[3]</b> [Main + Sub] ● When Video player is ended, the setting returns to <b>Main</b> .
To switch Main language/Sub language	<b>[4]</b> → <b>[1]</b> [Main language]/ <b>[2]</b> [Sub language] ● When Video player is ended, the setting returns to <b>Main language</b> .

## Managing Video File

Delete and sort video file.

### Editing title <Edit title>

- 1 In the video file list screen, select video file and press **[M]** **[1]** **[Edit title]**.

## 2 Edit the title and press .

- Enter up to 50 single-byte (25 double-byte) characters.
- To delete title, press  for 1+ seconds.

### Deleting video <Delete>

## 1 In the video file list screen, select video file and press [Delete].

## 2 Select deletion method.

To delete video file individually	 → <b>Yes</b> → 
To delete video file collectively	 → select video file  (repeatable) →  → <b>Yes</b> →  ● Press  [SelAll]/  [ClrAll] to select or clear all.
To delete all video file in the folder	 → enter terminal security code →  → <b>Yes</b> → 

### Viewing detailed information <File property>

- Refer to P. 330 for details on the information.

## 1 In the video file list screen, select video file and press [File property].

- In the screen for playing video, press  .
- Press  or  to end checking.

### Sorting video <Sort>

Default setting *Air date(new→old)*

Change the list order to one of the following.

Air date(new→old)	Latest air date first
Air date(old→new)	Oldest air date first
Program name	Alphabetical order of program names
Channel name	Alphabetical order of channel names
Size (big→small)	Largest files first
Size (small→big)	Smallest files first

## 1 In the video file list screen, press [Sort].

## 2 Select sorting method and press .

### Chara-den Player

## What Is Chara-den?

During a Videophone call, send a character instead of camera image. The character moves its mouth according to sound (for lip-sync supported data), raises its arms and legs, dances, and performs various actions. Check Chara-den's movements anytime with Chara-den player.

- Chara-den can also be downloaded from sites and Internet web pages ( P. 195).
- Keypad sound is disabled for the character operation during a Videophone call ( P. 75) or while Chara-den is played.

### Playing Chara-den <Chara-den Player>

Play Chara-den saved in Chara-den of Data box. Also perform actions.

## 1 In stand-by, press .

## 2 Select folder and press .

- To view the next page of the image list, press . To view the previous page, press .



Chara-den list

## 3 Select Chara-den and press .

- Chara-den is played.
- Press  or  to switch between Full-action mode and Part-action mode.
- To perform actions, press  or , select an action and press  or directly enter a shown action number ( to ). Alternatively, directly enter the action number without opening the Action list.
- Refer to P. 75 for details on preset Chara-den actions.



Action mode icon

### Action mode icon

	Full-action mode
	Part-action mode

### Note

#### Key operations for Chara-den player

 or 		 or 
Change action	Change screen size (  P. 313)	Action list (  P. 314)
	 to 	
Submenu	Actions (  P. 314)	Cancel action (  P. 314)

### Adjusting screen size <Screen size>

Adjust screen size.

- The default setting is **Zoom**.



1/1 (actual size)



Zoom

## 1 During Chara-den playback (step 3 on P. 313), press [1/1].

- To return to zoom size, press [Zoom].

## Related Operations

### Set Playback light <Backlight time>

#### 1 During Chara-den playback, press [1].

- To set from Chara-den list: Press [7] [2].

#### 2 Press [2] [Always ON].

- To set same as light setting: Press [1].

### Set Chara-den as Videophone substitute image <Substitute image>

#### During Chara-den playback, press [1] or [3] [1].

- To set from Chara-den list: Select Chara-den [3] [1].

### Set phonebook <Image for call>

#### 1 During Chara-den playback, press [2] or [3] [2].

- To set from Chara-den list: Select Chara-den [3] [2].

#### 2 Select [1] [New entry] or [2] [Add to phonebook].

## Note (Related operations)

### Backlight time

- The default setting is *As light setting* (P. 130).

### Substitute image

- [1] appears for set Chara-den.

## Calling with Chara-den as substitute image <Chara-den call>

Select a Chara-den to use as substitute image.

### 1 In stand-by, press [9] [1] [7], select a folder, press [1], select a Chara-den and press [6] [Chara-den call].

- To make a call during playback, press [5] [Chara-den call].

### 2 Select input method and make a Videophone call.

To make a call from phonebook	[1] → select person to call → [1]
To make a call with direct input	[2] → enter phone number → [1]

## Controlling Chara-den

### Making a Chara-den perform actions

Make Chara-den perform actions during Videophone calls or Chara-den playback.

- Select from a range of expressions, including happiness and anger, while in Full-action mode.
- Change to Part-action mode to move body parts.
- Perform different actions together in Part-action mode.
- Depending on the Chara-den, sound from a microphone can be synchronized with the movement of the mouth.
- Types of actions vary for each Chara-den.
- Depending on the Chara-den, actions may not be available.

### 1 In stand-by, press [9] [1] [7], select a folder, press [1], select a Chara-den and press [1].

### 2 Press [Action] or [1], select action and press [1].

- To show action list details, press [1].

- Alternatively, enter the action number by pressing [1] to [9] to have the character perform an action. Or, directly enter the action number without opening the Action list.

- Refer to P. 75 for details on preset Chara-den actions.

- Press [0] to end action.



## Note

- Depending on the Chara-den, some actions may be performed automatically.

## Managing Folders

### Creating folders <New folder>

### 1 In stand-by, press [9] [1] [7] and press [1] [1] [New folder].

### 2 Enter folder name and press [1].

- Enter up to 18 single-byte (9 double-byte) characters for a folder name.
- To delete **New folder** name, press [CLR] for 1+ seconds.

### Editing folder name <Edit folder name>

- Only folder names of created folders can be edited.

### 1 In stand-by, press [9] [1] [7], select folder and press [1] [1] [Edit folder name].

## 2 Edit folder name and press

- To erase folder name, press for 1+ seconds in the edit screen.

### ■ Deleting folder <Delete>

- Only created folders can be deleted.

## 1 In stand-by, press , select folder and press [Delete].

## 2 Select deletion method.

To delete folder individually	→ enter terminal security code →  → <b>Yes</b> →
To delete folders collectively	→ select folder  (repeatable) →  → enter terminal security code →  → <b>Yes</b> → ● Press  [SelAll]/ [ClrAll] to select or clear all.
To delete all Chara-den (keep folders)	→ enter terminal security code →  → <b>Yes</b> →
To delete all folders and Chara-den	→ enter terminal security code →  → <b>Yes</b> →

## Managing Chara-den

Delete/edit Chara-den title and sort Chara-den.

### ■ Editing title <Edit title>

## 1 In stand-by, press , select folder and press .

## 2 Select Chara-den and press [Direct input].

- To return to original title, press [Back to original].

## 3 Edit the title and press .

- Enter up to 50 single-byte (25 double-byte) characters. However, up to 14 single-byte (7 double-byte) characters of the title are shown on screen. If a title name exceeds 14 single-byte (7 double-byte) characters, up to 12 single-byte (6 double-byte) characters are shown for the title name. Subsequent characters are shown as "...".

- To erase current title, press for 1+ seconds.

### ■ Sorting Chara-den <Sort>

Default setting **Date (new→old)**

Change the list order to one of the following.

Date (new→old)	Files are sorted with the latest save date first.
Date (old→new)	Files are sorted with the oldest save date first.

By title name	Files are sorted by title in the following order: single-byte numbers → single-byte upper case alphabet → single-byte lower case alphabet → hiragana → double-byte katakana → kanji → Pictograph 1 → Pictograph 2 → double-byte numbers → double-byte upper case alphabet → double-byte lower case alphabet → single-byte katakana
By source	Blank → i-mode, by source
Size (big→small)	Files are sorted with the largest files first.
Size (small→big)	Files are sorted with the smallest files first.

## 1 In stand-by, press , select folder, press and press [Sort].

## 2 Select sorting method and press .

### ■ Moving Chara-den to another folder <Move>

## 1 In stand-by, press , select folder and press .

## 2 Select Chara-den and press [Move].

## 3 Select a transfer method.

To move Chara-den individually	→ select folder →
To move Chara-den collectively	→ select Chara-den  (repeatable) →  → select folder → ● Press  [SelAll]/ [ClrAll] to select or clear all.
To move all Chara-den in folder	→ enter terminal security code →  → select folder →

### ■ Viewing properties <File property>

The following information is shown.

- Date/time saved
- Display size
- File size
- File restriction: **Restricted/Not restricted**
- Ph/book settings: **ON/OFF**
- Video-phone: **ON/OFF**
- File name
- Title (Original)
- Source
- Moved to the microSD: **unavailable**

**1** In stand-by, press **9 1 7**, select folder and press **0**.

**2** Select Chara-den and press **0 4** [File property].

- To end viewing, press **0** or **CLR**.

### Deleting Chara-den <Delete>

**1** In stand-by, press **9 1 7**, select folder and press **0**.

**2** Select Chara-den and press **0 2** [Delete].

**3** Select deletion method.

To delete Chara-den individually	<b>1</b> → Yes → <b>0</b>
To delete Chara-den collectively	<b>2</b> → select Chara-den <b>0</b> (repeatable) → <b>0</b> → Yes → <b>0</b> ● Press <b>0</b> [SelAll]/ <b>0</b> [ClrAll] to select or clear all.
To delete all Chara-den in folders	<b>3</b> → enter terminal security code → <b>0</b> → Yes → <b>0</b>

### Note

- Delete all will erase preset Chara-den as well.
- To use again after deleting, download preset Chara-den from **SH-MODE** in the iMenu site (P. 195).

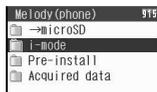
## Melody Player

### Playing Back Melodies

i-melodies downloaded from sites and Internet web pages and melodies attached to Message R/F or i-mode mail are saved to Melody of Data box. They can be played with Melody player.

**1** In stand-by, press **9 1 5**.

- To view melodies saved in microSD Memory Card, select →microSD. To view melodies saved in FOMA terminal handset again, select →phone.



**2** Select a folder and press **0**.

- To view the next page of the image list, press **0**. To view the previous page, press **0**.

**3** Select melody and press **0** [Play].

- Melody is played.
- Press **0** while playing to stop and the melody list reappears.

### Note

- Some melodies may not be played.
- Set melody as ring tone (P. 317).
- The current file location (FOMA terminal handset or microSD Memory Card) is saved even if Melody player is ended, and is used the next time Melody player is started.

**Forward and store melodies saved in Melody of Data box on a PC using microSD Memory Card** (P. 318).

- Saved content may be lost due to malfunctions, repairs or other handling of the FOMA terminal. DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss of content.

## Setting Playback Effects <Stereo Effects>

Change Stereo effects in Stereo effects

(P. 120).

**1** While playing melody (step 3 on P. 316), press **0 7 2** [Stereo effects] and select the type of Playback effect.

- Alternatively, press **0** [3D Stereo] while playing melody.

Stereo/3D sound	<b>1</b>	Melodies with 3D data are played in 3D sound. Melodies without 3D data are played in stereo sound.
Surround*1	<b>2</b>	Melodies are played back in surround sound. Melodies are played back in stereo sound even when 3D data is included.
OFF	<b>3</b>	Playback effects are not set. Melodies play in monaural*2.

\*1 Playback format that offers rich, vibrant sound

\*2 Playback format that does not feature rich sound

## Related Operations

### Adjust volume <Set volume>

In the screen in step 2 on P. 316 "Playing Back Melodies", press **0 7 3** **0** (louder) or **0** (softer) **0**.

### Set Equalizer <Equalizer>

**1** Press **0 7 1** while music is playing.

**2** To set to Normal playback, press **1**.

- To play back with equalizer set to Rock: Press **2**.
- To play back with equalizer set to Pops: Press **3**.
- To play back with equalizer set to Classic: Press **4**.

### Note (Related operations)

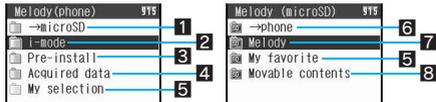
#### Set volume

- The default setting is **Volume 5**.

## Melody Folder List Layout

Select →**microSD** or press **[M] [7]** [Switch phone SD] in Melody folder list to switch to microSD Memory Card folder.

### FOMA terminal handset microSD Memory Card



- 1 Shows folder list of microSD Memory Card
- 2 Folder for melodies downloaded from sites and Internet web pages or retrieved via Message R/F or i-mode mail
- 3 Folder for melody preset in FOMA terminal handset
- 4 Folder for melodies retrieved via Bar code reader, microSD Memory Card, Ir exchange, iC transmission or FOMA USB cable (sold separately)
- 5 Created melody folder (see P. 325, P. 328)
- 6 Shows folder list of FOMA terminal handset
- 7 Preset melody folder
- 8 Folder for melodies downloaded from sites, which has restrictions for outputting from the FOMA terminal

## Melody types and their marks

### Melody types

SMF	MFi (no 3D data)	MFi (3D data)

### Mark types

	Melodies with FOMA card restrictions applied
	Melody set as ring tone
	Melodies downloaded with i-mode
	Melodies retrieved via Bar code reader, microSD Memory Cards, Ir exchange, iC transmission or FOMA USB cable (sold separately)
	Melodies with restrictions for mail attachment and output from the FOMA terminal

#### Note

- When MFi (3D data) is saved in the **Movable contents** folder, MFi (no 3D data) icon appears. However, 3D data is retained.

## Playing a Series of Melodies

### <Continuous Play>

Play all melodies in a folder in succession.

- 1 In stand-by, press **[M] [9] [1] [5]**, select folder and press **[M] [3]** [Continuous play].

To skip to the next melody	<b>[M]</b>
----------------------------	------------



To return to the beginning of the current melody	<b>[M]</b>
--	------------



- Press **[M]** again at the beginning of a melody to return to previous melody.

## Specifying Start Position <Start Position>

Only the specified section can be played.

- The play section is specified and cannot be changed.

- 1 In stand-by, press **[M] [9] [1] [5]**, select folder, press **[M]** and press **[M] [7] [1]** [Start position].

- 2 Select playback method.

To play entire melodies <b>Play all</b>	<b>[1]</b>
To play a portion of melodies <b>Play portion</b>	<b>[2]</b>

#### Note

- The entire melody is played when the start position is not specified even if the playback method is set to **Play portion**.

## Attaching Melodies and Sending i-mode Mail

Melody may not be played properly if other party is using a model released prior to FOMA SH900i. Select melody (SMF, MFi) from Melody of Data box and attach to i-mode mail.

- Maximum size for attachment is 100 KB. Files exceeding the limit are not attached.

- 1 In stand-by, press **[M] [9] [1] [5]**, select folder, press **[M]**, select melody and press **[M]** [Mail].

- Selected melody file is attached.

- 2 Compose and send i-mode mail.

- Refer to steps 2 to 4 on P. 214 for details.

#### Note

- Some MFi melodies, melodies attached to mail, melodies downloaded from i-mode, or SMF melodies acquired from i-appli with file restrictions cannot be attached to i-mode mail.

## Setting a Melody as the Ring Tone

### <Ring Tone>

Set melodies in Melody of Data box as the ring tone.

- 1 In stand-by, press **[M] [9] [1] [5]**, select folder, press **[M]**, select melody and press **[M]** [Ring tone] or **[M] [3]** [Ring tone].

## 2 Select item and press .

### microSD Memory Card

Use a microSD Memory Card with the FOMA terminal. The microSD Memory Card is a further miniaturized version of the miniSD Memory Card. Copy phonebook, mail and bookmarks from FOMA terminal handset to microSD Memory Card or copy from microSD to FOMA terminal handset. Also, view microSD data from the FOMA terminal. Refer to P. 463 for an estimated number of recordable still pictures/movies and voice recording times for microSD Memory Cards. With the microSD Memory Card adapter, use the card with SD compatible PCs, printers, etc. microSD Memory Cards are sold separately. Purchase microSD Memory Cards at home electronics shops.

Be aware of the following when using the microSD Memory Card.

- Do not insert or remove microSD Memory Card while FOMA terminal is on. Data may be damaged and operation may not work properly.
- Insert the microSD Memory Card into the slot correctly. The microSD Memory Card will not function when not inserted correctly.
- **microSD in use** or **Reading microSD** may appear when inserting the microSD Memory Card. In such cases, wait a moment before using.
- FOMA SH903iTV is compatible with commercially available microSD Memory Cards up to 2 GB (As of January 2007). Refer to the following sites for the latest information such as the manufacturer, available capacity, etc. of the microSD Memory Card. In addition, for microSD Memory Cards that are not provided in the sites, some of them may not operate.

- Accessing **SH-MODE** from i-mode (As of January 2007)  
**iMenu** → メニュー / 検索 (Menu/Search) → ケータイ電話 メーカー (Mobile phone manufacturer) → **SH-MODE**



QR code to connect to SH-MODE

- Accessing from a PC

<http://k-tai.sharp.co.jp/support/d/sh903itv/>

Note that the provided information is the information checked for operation. DoCoMo shall not be liable for all operations.

SH-MODE is only available in Japanese.

- FOMA SH903iTV allows you to transfer downloaded images, movies/i-motion, Melody, Chaku-uta full® and Kisekai Tool have restrictions for output from the FOMA terminal to microSD Memory Card. However, data cannot be saved when IP (Information Provider) does not provide permission.
- Be aware of the following for microSD Memory Cards.

- When a microSD Memory Card is inserted into the FOMA terminal, data is written for the use. The longer write time is required depending on the microSD Memory Card to use (Up to approximately 30 seconds).

During this time, do not remove the card or turn off the power. Data may be damaged and operation may not work properly.

- Not all microSD Memory Cards formatted by PCs or other devices can be used properly by the FOMA terminal. It is recommended to use microSD Memory Cards formatted by FOMA terminal. Refer to P. 325 for details on formatting. When a card is formatted, all saved data is lost.
- Do not remove microSD Memory Card while editing data on microSD Memory Card. Also do not turn off the FOMA terminal or microSD Memory Card inserted device while editing data. Data may be damaged and operation may not work properly.
- Data saved on microSD Memory Cards from other devices may not be displayed or played on FOMA terminal. Some data saved on microSD Memory Card from FOMA terminal may not be displayed or played on other devices.
- When a microSD Memory Card used with another FOMA terminal or PC is inserted into the FOMA SH903iTV, it sometimes cannot be used. Delete unnecessary data and insert again.
- To save music data to microSD Memory Card using SD-Jukebox, there are two methods available. One is to connect the FOMA terminal to a PC with the FOMA USB cable (sold separately), and the other is to use a PC or SD Memory Card reader/writer with an SD Memory slot supporting the copyright protection function.
- Dictionary data backed up to microSD Memory Card cannot be viewed.
- Back up the data saved in microSD Memory Card and store in another place. DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss or change of the saved data.

### Inserting/Removing the microSD Memory Card

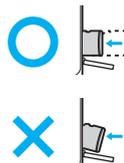
#### Inserting microSD Memory Card

Turn off FOMA terminal before inserting microSD Memory Card.

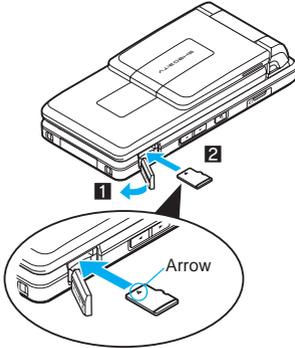
1 Open microSD Memory Card slot cover (1).

2 Slowly insert microSD Memory Card with the arrow ( ) facing up as shown in the diagram (2).

- Do not force the card in at an angle or with the wrong side up. The microSD Memory Card slot may be damaged.
- Push slowly with finger until a click is heard.



### 3 Close microSD Memory Card slot cover.



### Removing microSD Memory Card

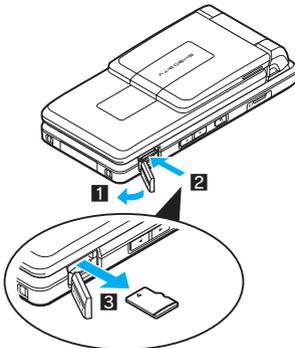
Turn off FOMA terminal before removing microSD Memory Card.

#### 1 Open microSD Memory Card slot cover (1) and gently push card in (2).

- Push until a click is heard. microSD Memory Card springs forward. Excessive force may damage FOMA terminal or card.

#### 2 Remove microSD Memory Card (3).

- Remove slowly and straight. Close microSD Memory Card slot cover after removing.



#### Note

- Keep your face away from microSD Memory Card when inserting or removing card. Card may pop out.
- To remove microSD Memory Card, press microSD Memory Card lightly until a click is heard and then pull out. Excessive force may damage FOMA terminal or card.
- Store microSD Memory Card in included case after removing.
- An alert tone sounds when a microSD Memory Card is inserted or removed while the power is on.

### microSD Memory Card Features

Copy FOMA terminal handset data to microSD Memory Card.

Select Copy one, Copy selected or Copy all.

Copy entire groups or folders for some functions.

#### Data available when copying from microSD Memory Card to FOMA terminal handset

Function	Total*1	Copy one/ Copy selected/ Copy all	Copy all in group	Copy all in folder
Phonebook*2	Combined maximum of up to 65,535 items			-
Schedule*3, 4			-	-
ToDo list*3			-	-
Text memo			-	-
Bookmark*5			-	-
i-mode mail/ SMS*6			-	
Still picture*7, 8	999 folders/ up to 400 still pictures per folder (IC P. 463)		-	
Movie*7	999 folders/ up to 400 movies per folder (IC P. 463)		-	
Melody*7	999 folders/ up to 400 melodies per folder		-	
PDF*7, 9	999 folders/up to 400 files per folder		-	
ToruCa	999 folders/up to 999 ToruCa per folder		-	

\*1 The above numbers may lessen depending on size of data and capacity of microSD Memory Card.

\*2 Secret settings, group number, group name, memory number, Secret code, Select ring tone, Mail ring tone, called LED color, mail/message LED color, Called LED pattern, Mail LED pattern and Substitute image settings are not copied. If **Image transfer** in phonebook is set to **No**, Picture call setting is not copied. Even if **Image transfer** is set to **Yes**, data with file restrictions (restrictions for output from the FOMA terminal) is not copied. Save destination for name, reading, phone number and mail address may change.

\*3 Secret settings and alarm information (except set alarm time) are not copied. Contacts, image settings, TV timer and Recording timer for Schedule are also not copied.

\*4 Holiday settings are not copied. Start date and time are entered for end date and time if entry with no end date and time is copied.

\*5 Folder information is not copied.

- \*6 Reply to or forward mail saved on microSD Memory Card. Mail saved in microSD Memory Card cannot be protected. Folder information is not copied.
- \*7 Copy only files that are not restricted for output from the FOMA terminal.
- \*8 Flash movies and frames are not copied to the microSD Memory Card.
- \*9 Some PDF files that failed to download may not be copied to the microSD Memory Card.

### Note

- Save still pictures and movies shot with FOMA terminal to microSD Memory Cards or FOMA terminal handset.
- Manager information is written to microSD Memory Card when data is copied.
- Some files directly copied from PC to microSD Memory Cards are not available on FOMA terminal. In such cases, use [DoCoMo keitai datalink](#). Refer to P. 406 for details on downloading DoCoMo keitai datalink.
- While **Function lock** is set, locked data cannot be operated. Enter terminal security code to unlock temporarily and operate.
- Details cannot be retrieved from ToruCa in a microSD Memory Card.

### ToruCa

- Depending on the size, some **ToruCa** cannot be copied to a microSD Memory Card.

### microSD manager screen

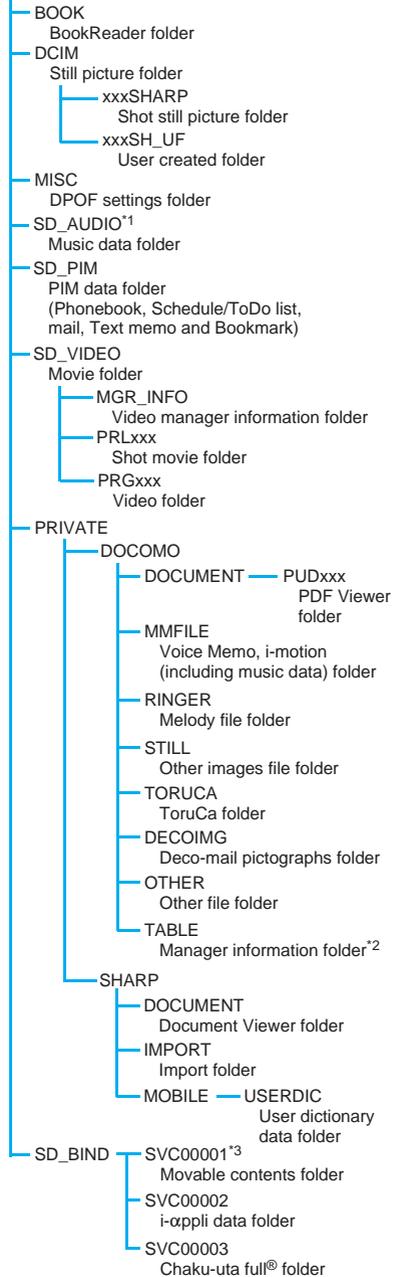
View microSD Memory Card data and back up or format card from microSD manager screen. In addition, connect the FOMA terminal to a PC with the FOMA USB cable (sold separately) and use as a microSD reader/writer (P. 326).



- Press **(9)(2)(6)** in stand-by to show microSD manager screen.
- Folder and file names on microSD Memory Cards are managed by "manager information". Update manager information if microSD Memory Card is used (data edited, added, deleted, etc.) with PC or other device (P. 327). Editing, saving, moving, or copying of data may not be available without proper manager information.

## microSD Memory Card Folder Structure

microSD Memory Card



\*1 Depending on the settings of the PC in use, folder may not appear. In addition, do not delete, change or add files in the folder under **SD\_AUDIO** directly from a PC. SD-Audio may not operate properly.

- \*2 **TABLE** folder contains folders for **DCIM**, **MMFILE**, **RINGER**, **STILL**, **SD\_VIDEO**, **DOCUMENT**, **TORUCA**, **DECOIMG** and **OTHER** information.
- \*3 If data saved in the **Movable contents** folder (in the **SD\_BIND** folder) in the microSD Memory Card are deleted, moved or edited by PC, the data in the **Movable contents** folder may not be accessed. In addition, if the microSD Memory Card or the battery pack is removed while data are being moved, deleted or saved, the data in the **Movable contents** folder may not be accessed. In this case, format the microSD Memory Card with FOMA SH903iTV (Formatting deletes all the data in the microSD Memory Card).
  - “xxx” in the folder names **xxxSHARP** and **xxxSH\_UF** is a three-digit single-byte number between 100 and 999 (“xxx” can be changed but 000 to 099 are not available).
  - Animated GIFs are stored in **STILL** folder. All other GIF files are stored in **DCIM** folder.
  - Data on microSD Memory Cards do not appear properly on FOMA terminal if folder name is changed or deleted with PC.
  - If using models released prior to FOMA SH901iS and PDF files are saved in **PRIVATEISHARPDOCUMENT** folder in the microSD Memory Card, move files to **PRIVATEIDOCOMOIDOCUMENTPUDxxx** folder. Update the manager information of the microSD Memory Card after moving the files. Double-byte characters are also available for PDF file names. When the file name is longer than 60 bytes including double-byte characters (excluding the file extension), edit the file name to 60 bytes or less (excluding the file extension).
  - If models released prior to FOMA SH902i is used with only sound data of i-motion saved in **PRIVATEISHARPIVOICE** folder in the microSD Memory Card, move the data to **PRIVATEIDOCOMOMMFILE** folder. Name the file as “MMFxxxx” (replace “xxxx” with numbers), and then save it. After that, update the manager information of the microSD Memory Card on the FOMA terminal.

## Contents Transfer Compatible

### Transferring Data in FOMA Terminal to microSD Memory Card

Transfer downloaded data that have restrictions for output from the FOMA terminal to a microSD Memory Card. Also, transfer (from a microSD Memory Card to the FOMA terminal handset) is also available. Data that can be transferred are images, movies/i-motion, melodies, Chaku-uta full® and Kisekai Tool.

- In microSD Memory Card, data are saved in the **Movable contents** folder.
- Transfer data set to **available** or **Yes (Same model only)** in their properties to a microSD Memory Card. Check the properties of data for transfer availability (P. 330).
- The data transferred to microSD Memory Card can be transferred to the FOMA terminal handset in the following situations:
  - When transfer to the FOMA terminal handset is **available** and the inserted FOMA card is the one that was inserted at data retrieval

- When transfer to the FOMA terminal handset is **Yes (Same model only)** and the inserted FOMA card is the one that was inserted at data retrieval

## Moving Data in FOMA Terminal to microSD Memory Card <Move → microSD>

### Example: i-motion

- 1 In stand-by, press **9 1 3**, select folder and press **0**.
  - To move all movies/i-motion collectively, select the folder in the folder list, press **6 2**, enter terminal security code and press **0**.
- 2 Select movie/i-motion, press **6 6** **2** [Move → microSD] and select a transfer method.

To transfer one movie/i-motion	<b>1</b>
To transfer all movies/i-motion in folder	<b>2</b> → enter terminal security code → <b>0</b>
To transfer multiple movies/i-motion collectively	<b>3</b> → select movie/i-motion <b>0</b> (repeatable) → <b>0</b> ● Press <b>6</b> [SelAll]/ <b>6</b> [ClrAll] to select or clear all.
To move to destination folder	<b>4</b> → select destination folder → <b>0</b>

## Transferring Data in microSD Memory Card to FOMA Terminal <Move to the Phone>

### Example: i-motion

- 1 In stand-by, press **9 1 3**, select → **microSD** and press **0**.
- 2 Select the **Movable contents** folder, press **0**, select folder and press **0**.
  - To move all movies/i-motion collectively, select the **Movable contents** folder, press **6 2**, enter terminal security code and press **0**.
  - To transfer all movies/i-motion in folder, select folder, press **6 1**, enter terminal security code and press **0**.
- 3 Select movie/i-motion, press **6 7** **2** [Move to the phone] and select a transfer method.

To move one movie/i-motion	<b>1</b>
To transfer multiple movies/i-motion collectively	<b>3</b> → select movie/i-motion <b>0</b> (repeatable) → <b>0</b> ● Press <b>6</b> [SelAll]/ <b>6</b> [ClrAll] to select or clear all.

- To transfer to the FOMA terminal handset, the **i-mode** folder is the only destination where movie/i-motions can be transferred.

## Copy to microSD

### Copying from FOMA Terminal to microSD Memory Card

Copy data from data list screen or details screen to microSD Memory Card. microSD Memory Cards are sold separately. Purchase microSD Memory Cards at home electronics shops (☎ P. 318).

- Submenu numbers vary depending on function and screen.

#### Example: When copying phonebook

**1** In stand-by, press **[☰]**, select name and press **[Ⓜ]** **[5]** **[2]** **[Copy to microSD]**.

- To check before copying, in the details screen, press **[Ⓜ]** **[3]** **[3]**, select **Yes** and press **[Ⓞ]**.

**2** Select copy method.

To copy one	<b>[1]</b> → <b>Yes</b> → <b>[Ⓞ]</b>
To copy all in group	<b>[2]</b> → select group → <b>[Ⓞ]</b> → enter terminal security code → <b>[Ⓞ]</b> → <b>Yes</b> → <b>[Ⓞ]</b>
To copy all	<b>[3]</b> → enter terminal security code → <b>[Ⓞ]</b> → <b>Yes</b> → <b>[Ⓞ]</b>
To copy selected	<b>[4]</b> → select name <b>[Ⓞ]</b> (repeatable) → <b>[Ⓜ]</b> → <b>Yes</b> → <b>[Ⓞ]</b> ● Press <b>[☑]</b> [SelAll]/ <b>[☒]</b> [ClrAll] to select or clear all.

#### Note

- When copying still pictures, melodies, movies/i-motion or PDF files from **Data box** to microSD Memory Card, destination folder can be selected.
- A mail message with the total size exceeding 100 KB (including attached files) cannot be copied.
- Copy up to 2 MB of PDF files between the FOMA terminal handset and microSD Memory Card.
- Still pictures or movies/i-motion copied to or from microSD Memory Card may deteriorate in image quality or may have different file sizes. When the destination folder contains more than 400 still pictures, a new folder is automatically created and images are saved in the new folder.
- Select up to 50 mail messages, phonebook entries, schedules, ToDo, **Bookmarks** and Text memo data when browsing microSD Memory Card for Copy selected or Delete selected.
- JPEG images in FOMA terminal handset may have different file sizes when copied to microSD Memory Card. When available memory space in FOMA terminal handset is low, images copied from handset to microSD Memory Card may not be copied back even if the original image is deleted.
- Images larger than maximum image size or file size may not be copied.
- An entry copied more than once is saved as separate data.

#### Note

- Data may not be copied depending on microSD Memory Card available space.

## Backup/Restore

### Backing Up FOMA Terminal Handset Data

Backup data from FOMA terminal handset functions (Phonebook, Mail, Schedule, ToDo list, Bookmark, Text memo) and dictionary data to microSD Memory Card. Owner information is also forwarded with phonebook Backup/restore. microSD Memory Cards are sold separately. Purchase microSD Memory Cards at home electronics shops (☎ P. 318).

- It is recommended to set this function when sharing information with same models or with microSD Memory Card compatible FOMA terminals, or when transferring data to a new handset, etc.
- When battery level is low, data may not be backed up properly. It is recommended to back up data while recharging battery.
- Set the correct date and time in advance (☎ P. 45).
- Locked functions cannot be backed up while Function lock is set.
- Phonebook cannot be backed up while Keypad dial lock is set.
- Dictionary data (user dictionaries and dictionaries replaced with download dictionaries) is saved as one file.
- Data other than dictionary data is saved as one file per function.

### Backing up from FOMA terminal to microSD Memory Card

**1** In stand-by, press **[Ⓞ]** **[9]** **[2]** **[6]** **[2]** **[1]**, select a function and press **[Ⓞ]**.

- When **Mail** is selected, mail categories appear. Select mail to back up and press **[Ⓞ]**.
- When **Bookmark** is selected, select **i-mode** or **Full Browser** and press **[Ⓞ]**.

**2** Enter terminal security code, press **[Ⓞ]**, select **Yes** and press **[Ⓞ]**.

- To back up the phonebook, a confirmation screen for saving owner information appears. To save, select **Yes** and press **[Ⓞ]**.

#### Note

- Some data may not be forwarded depending on microSD Memory Card available space.
- Some backed up data may not be read with other FOMA terminals.
- The following phonebook data cannot be backed up.
  - Secret code
  - Called LED
  - Select ring tone
  - Mail/message LED
  - Mail ring tone
  - Substitute imageSave destination for name, reading, phone number and mail address may change.

## Note

- When **Image transfer** is set to **Yes**, image set to Picture call is also backed up. Images that are backed up include still pictures or movies shot with your FOMA terminal camera, and also edited, and those retrieved from the source other than camera, which are available for output from the FOMA terminal.
- Alarm information other than alarm time for Schedule and ToDo list is not backed up. Contacts and image settings for Schedule are not backed up.
- If the number of registered entries in FOMA terminal handset phonebook is 0 when the phonebook is backed up, select **No** in the confirmation screen for saving owner information not to create the backup data.
- i-appli To and folder information in mail are not backed up.
- Phonebook entries and SMS in FOMA card are not backed up.
- Dictionary data is backed up after the one in microSD Memory Card is deleted.

**Note that when ToDo list is backed up, secret data is saved as ordinary data.**

## Reading backup data from microSD Memory Card to FOMA terminal

Read backup data from microSD Memory Card.

- When backing up data, keep or delete data in FOMA terminal handset.
- Perform operation when battery level is sufficient. Check battery level before starting.

### 1 In stand-by, press **9 2 6 2**, select a function and press **2**.

- When data cannot be found, **No data** appears and the screen of step 1 reappears.
- Backup date appears in data name. Example: April 23, 2007 1:05 PM → **datagr070423\_1305**
- When **Mail** is selected, select mail categories and press **2** to show mail backup list.
- When **Bookmark** is selected, select **i-mode** or **Full Browser** and press **2**.
- When **User dictionary** is selected, enter terminal security code and press **2** to overwrite or add.
- Select data and press **@ 2** to check contents.
- Select data and press **@ 3** to check properties. Title, file format, file name, location, file restriction and saved date/time appear.

### 2 Select backup data, press **2**, enter terminal security code and press **2**.

### 3 Select **Add** and press **2**.

- To overwrite FOMA terminal data, select **Overwrite**, press **2**, select **Yes** and press **2**. When overwriting phonebook, a confirmation screen asking whether to restore the owner information appears. Select **Yes** and press **2** to overwrite other than the phone number registered at time of subscription. Group names are also overwritten. Group settings which cannot be overwritten are reset to initial settings.

## Note

- Because folder information is not saved with mail and **Bookmarks**, received mail is saved to **Inbox**, sent mail is saved to **Outbox**, unsent mail is saved to **Drafts** and bookmarks are saved to **Bookmark** folder.
- Mail may take more time to transfer.
- User dictionaries are updated and dictionaries replaced with Download dictionaries are added. The title of read dictionary is always **User dictionary1**.
- When the phonebook backup data is restored, images set for Picture call are also restored. However, movies/i-motion cannot be restored.
- If **No** is selected in the confirmation screen asking whether to restore the owner information when the phonebook backup data including the owner information is restored, the owner information is saved as one entry in the phonebook. If the number of registered entries in the restored FOMA terminal phonebook reaches 750, additional entries are not restored.
- When **i-mode** or **Full Browser** is selected for restoration of bookmark backup data, both backup data appear on the screen. However, only the selected backup data can be restored.

## Deleting backup data

### 1 In stand-by, press **9 2 6 2**, select a function and press **2**.

- When **Mail** is selected, select mail categories and press **2** to show mail backup list.
- When **Bookmark** is selected, select **i-mode** or **Full Browser** and press **2**. Both backup data appear even when one of them is selected.

### 2 Select data, press **@ 1** [Delete] and select a deletion method.

To delete data individually	<b>1</b> → <b>Yes</b> → <b>2</b>
To delete data collectively	<b>2</b> → select data <b>2</b> (repeatable) → <b>2</b> → <b>Yes</b> → <b>2</b>
To delete all data in folder	<b>3</b> → enter terminal security code → <b>2</b> → <b>Yes</b> → <b>2</b>

## View microSD Data

### Previewing microSD Memory Card Data

Check data copied to microSD Memory Card from various function screens or microSD manager screen.  
**microSD Memory Cards are sold separately. Purchase microSD Memory Cards at home electronics shops (P. 318).**

## Checking from various function screens

Check data from the list screen.

### Example: When checking phonebook

#### 1 In stand-by, press and [View microSD data].

- Check data like checking data on FOMA terminal handset.
- Select backup data and press to check data on microSD Memory Card.
- When data cannot be found, **No data** appears and the previous screen reappears.

## Checking from microSD manager screen

#### 1 In stand-by, press , select a function and press .

- Data for selected functions appears in a list. When data cannot be found, a message stating so appears and the previous screen reappears.
- When **Mail** is selected, mail categories appear. Select **mail** to preview and press .
- To delete data, press , select **Delete** and press . Select deletion method, press and follow instructions on screen (Basic procedures are the same as for phonebook).
- To copy to FOMA terminal handset, press , select **Copy to the phone** and press . Select copy method, press and follow instructions on screen. Data created with Backup/restore ( P. 322) cannot be copied. However, view the details screen to copy the backed up data to the handset.
- To check data properties, press , select **Properties** and press .

#### 2 Select data and press .

- For details, refer to corresponding page for each function.

#### Note

- i-mode bookmarks and Full Browser bookmarks are shown together on the **bookmark** list of the microSD Memory Card. appears for i-mode bookmarks and appears for Full Browser bookmarks.

### Copy to the Phone

#### Copying from microSD Memory Card to FOMA Terminal

Copy data saved on microSD Memory Cards to the FOMA terminal handset. Select **Copy one**, **Copy selected** or **Copy all**.

Copy from each data list screen.

microSD Memory Cards are sold separately. Purchase microSD Memory Cards at home electronics shops ( P. 318).

- Submenu numbers vary depending on function and screen.

### Example: When copying phonebook

#### 1 In stand-by, press and [View microSD data].

#### 2 Select data, press [Copy to the phone] and select a copy method.

To copy one	→ <b>Yes</b> →
To copy selected	→ select name  (repeatable) →  → <b>Yes</b> →
To copy all	→ enter terminal security code →  → <b>Yes</b> →

- When copying one phonebook entry, **Store in PushTalk phonebook?** appears. To store, select **Yes** and press . When multiple phone numbers are stored, select the phone number.

#### Note

- Alternatively, copy data from microSD manager screen while checking data.
  - To copy the backed up data to microSD Memory Card, read the data from microSD Memory Card ( P. 323). However, view the details screen to copy the only backed up data to the handset.
  - Copy up to 2 MB of **PDF files** between the FOMA terminal handset and microSD Memory Card.
- #### Copying phonebook entries
- **No Name** appears when data without name is copied.
- #### Copying bookmarks
- **Will overwrite the same URL. Are you sure?** appears. To overwrite current data, select **Yes**.
  - If the maximum number of bookmarks is saved for either i-mode or Full Browser on the FOMA terminal handset, additional bookmarks are not copied when performing Copy selected or Copy all.

## Managing microSD Memory Card

Create/delete folders and edit folder names to manage microSD Memory Card data for My picture, MUSIC, i-motion, Melody and My Documents of Data box, Kisekae Tool, ToruCa and BookReader. View data details or set still pictures to print.

microSD Memory Cards are sold separately. Purchase microSD Memory Cards at home electronics shops ( P. 318).

- Save up to 400 files per folder on microSD Memory Card (excluding ToruCa). Refer to P. 319 to P. 321 for details on files and folders.

## Formatting microSD Memory Card

### <Format>

Format unformatted microSD Memory Cards on the FOMA terminal before use.

- Note that all data on microSD Memory Card is deleted when formatted.
- Perform operation when battery level is sufficient. Check battery level before starting.
- Not all microSD Memory Cards formatted by PCs or other devices can be used properly by the FOMA terminal. It is recommended to use microSD Memory Cards formatted by FOMA terminal.
- Note that if formatting is aborted, microSD Memory Card will not be recognized by the FOMA terminal, PCs and other devices. In such a case, format microSD Memory Card again.
- Do not remove microSD Memory Card during operation.
- **Unable to Format** may appear when some microSD Memory Card does not support the copyright protection function. microSD Memory Card may be used if inserted again. However, there is no guarantee for the save and copy of data since the microSD Memory Card is unsupported by FOMA terminal.
- Refer to the following sites for the latest information such as the manufacturer, available capacity, etc. of the microSD Memory Card. In addition, for microSD Memory Cards that are not provided in the sites, some of them may not operate.

- Accessing **SH-MODE** from i-mode (As of January 2007)

iMenu → メニュー / 検索  
(Menu/Search) → ケータイ電話  
メーカー (Mobile phone  
manufacturer) → **SH-MODE**



QR code to connect  
to SH-MODE

- Accessing from a PC

<http://k-tai.sharp.co.jp/support/d/sh903itv/>

Note that the provided information is the information checked for operation. DoCoMo shall not be liable for all operations.

SH-MODE is only available in Japanese.

**1** In stand-by, press **9 2 6 5**.

**2** Enter terminal security code, press **0**, select **Yes** and press **0**.

## Managing Folders

### Creating folders <New folder>

Example: My picture

**1** In stand-by, press **9 1 1**, select **microSD**, press **0** and press **1 1** [New folder].

**2** Select folder to create.

Camera folder	<b>1</b>
Other still pic	<b>2</b>
Deco-mail pict 1	<b>3</b>

**3** Enter folder name and press **0**.

- To delete **New folder** name, press **CLR** for 1+ seconds.

### Note

- When the microSD Memory Card memory is full, new folders cannot be created.
- Enter up to 18 single-byte (9 double-byte) characters for a folder name.
- Enter up to 20 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters for a folder name in the **Movable contents** folder. Enter up to 64 single/double-byte characters for the BookReader folder name.

### Editing folder names <Edit folder name>

Example: My picture

**1** In stand-by, press **9 1 1**, select **microSD**, press **0**, select folder and press **1 2** [Edit folder name].

**2** Edit folder name and press **0**.

- To delete folder name, press **CLR** for 1+ seconds in the edit screen.

### Note

- Only folder names of created folders can be edited. In addition, folder names in the **Movable contents** folder can be edited.

### Deleting folder <Delete>

Example: My picture

**1** In stand-by, press **9 1 1**, select **microSD** and press **0**.

**2** Select folder and press **2** [Delete].

**3** Select deletion method.

To delete folder individually	<b>1</b> → enter terminal security code → <b>0</b> → <b>Yes</b> → <b>0</b>
To delete folders collectively	<b>2</b> → select folder <b>0</b> (repeatable) → <b>0</b> → enter terminal security code → <b>0</b> → <b>Yes</b> → <b>0</b> ● Press <b>5</b> [SelAll]/ <b>6</b> [ClrAll] to select or clear all.
To delete all data (keep folders)	<b>3</b> → enter terminal security code → <b>0</b> → <b>Yes</b> → <b>0</b>
To delete all folders and data	<b>4</b> → enter terminal security code → <b>0</b> → <b>Yes</b> → <b>0</b>

## Note

- Delete data from microSD manager screen while checking data (☞ P. 324).
- The folder displayed at the top of **Movable contents** folder is automatically created. The folder cannot be deleted.
- Only created folders can be deleted.

## Managing Data

### Viewing data details <Properties>

#### Example: Phonebook

- In stand-by, press **[☐]**, press **[Ⓜ]** **[4]** [View microSD data], select data and press **[Ⓜ]** **[3]** [Properties].
  - To end viewing, press **[Ⓜ]**.

## Note

- Submenu numbers vary depending on function and screen.
- View properties while checking data in the microSD manager screen (☞ P. 324).

### Deleting data <Delete>

#### Example: Phonebook

- In stand-by, press **[☐]** and press **[Ⓜ]** **[4]** [View microSD data].
- Select data and press **[Ⓜ]** **[1]** [Delete].
- Select deletion method.

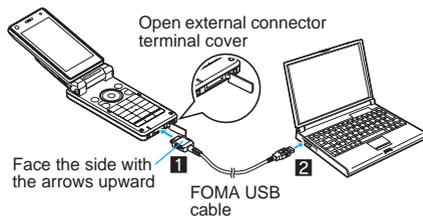
To delete data individually	<b>[1]</b> → <b>Yes</b> → <b>[Ⓜ]</b>
To delete data collectively	<b>[2]</b> → select name <b>[Ⓜ]</b> (repeatable) → <b>[Ⓜ]</b> → <b>Yes</b> → <b>[Ⓜ]</b>
To delete all data in folders	<b>[3]</b> → enter terminal security code → <b>[Ⓜ]</b> → <b>Yes</b> → <b>[Ⓜ]</b>

## Using as microSD Reader/Writer <USB Mode Setting>

Default setting **Communication mode**

Connect the FOMA terminal to a PC with the FOMA USB cable (sold separately) to read/write data from the PC.

Communication mode	Mode for packet transmissions, 64K data communications and sending and receiving data (OBEX) (☞ P. 404)
microSD mode	Mode for reading/writing the data saved on microSD Memory Card



- In stand-by, press **[Ⓜ]** **[9]** **[2]** **[6]** **[6]**.
  - Alternatively, press **[Ⓜ]** **[3]** **[6]** in stand-by.
- Press **[2]** [microSD mode], select **Yes** and press **[Ⓜ]**.
- Insert the FOMA terminal side connector of the FOMA USB cable into the external connection terminal on the FOMA terminal (**[1]**).
- Insert the PC side connector of the FOMA USB cable into the USB connector of the PC (**[2]**).
  - To return to Communication mode, press any key, select **Yes** and press **[Ⓜ]**. Alternatively, the mode automatically switches to Communication mode if FOMA USB cable is removed from a PC and no operations are made for approximately 90 seconds.
  - To disconnect the FOMA USB cable, follow the safe disconnecting method for each OS in a PC.

## Note

- The following devices are required to use the FOMA terminal as a microSD reader/writer.

Item	Description
Cable	FOMA USB cable (sold separately)
PC	A PC with a USB port (Universal Serial Bus Specification Rev. 1.1-compliant) usable with the FOMA USB cable (sold separately)
Compatible OS	Windows 2000/XP (Japanese version)

- Not all microSD Memory Cards formatted by PCs or other devices can be used properly by the FOMA terminal. Format the microSD Memory Card on the FOMA terminal.
- Make sure the FOMA terminal is properly connected to the PC. If not connected properly, sending and receiving data may not be possible, or data may be lost.
- Check whether there is enough remaining battery power of the FOMA terminal. If data communication is performed when the battery level is low or empty, sending and receiving data may not be possible, or data may be lost. Check the PC power supply as well.
- Make sure that the microSD Memory Card is already inserted when using it as a microSD Reader/Writer.
- Do not remove the microSD Memory Card while switching to microSD mode or in microSD mode. Data may be damaged and the FOMA terminal handset may not work properly.

## Note

- Do not remove the FOMA USB cable while reading/writing data. Sending and receiving data may not be possible, or data may be lost.

## Updating microSD Memory Card Manager Information <New Manager Info>

Update Manager information if microSD Memory Card is used (data edited, added, deleted, etc.) with other devices.

- Perform operation when battery level is sufficient. Check battery level before starting.
- Manager information may not be updated if there is no available space on the microSD Memory Card.
- microSD Memory Card may not operate properly if manager information is not updated on FOMA terminal.
- It may take time to update depends on number of files and amount of data on microSD Memory Card.
- Updating manager information is necessary when using data saved by another device.
- Be aware that updating manager information deletes titles of GIF images, movies and data in **Other images** and **Multimedia**. However, original titles for i-motion and melodies are not deleted.
- Do not remove microSD Memory Card while updating.

### 1 In stand-by, press 9 2 6 4.



### 2 Select item and press .

- Icon changes to .  appears for selected and  appears for unselected entries. Press to switch. Select all items to update.
- When **All** is selected, select **Yes** and press to start updating manager information.

### 3 Press [Complete], select Yes and press .

## Note

- While updating, voice/Videophone call and mail can be received. However, the following functions are not available:
  - i-αppli
  - Shooting still pictures/movies
  - Bar code reader
  - Document Viewer
  - Receiving Ir data
  - SD-Audio
  - Print setting (DPOF)
  - Checking memory of microSD Memory Card
  - Viewing microSD data from Phonebook/Mail/Schedule/ToDo list/Text memo/BookReader/ToruCa/Bookmark/My picture, i-motion, Melody, My Documents, MUSIC and Kisekae Tool of Data box

## Checking Data Created with PC and Other Device on FOMA Terminal <Import>

Use microSD Memory Card on the FOMA terminal to check data (phonebook, mail, schedule, ToDo list and still pictures/movies/i-motion/melodies/PDF in Data box) created on a PC or other devices.

- Use DoCoMo keitai datalink ( P. 406) to copy data from a PC or other devices to microSD Memory Card import folder in advance.

### 1 In stand-by, press 9 2 6 3.

### 2 Select function and press .

- When data cannot be found, **No data** appears and the screen of step 1 reappears.
- Data (file name) for selected function appears.
- To delete data, press 1. Subsequent steps are the same as for deleting data normally.
- To copy to FOMA terminal handset, press 2. Subsequent steps are the same as for copying data normally.
- When special symbols or katakana are included in a file name, the data may not be copied.
- To check data information, press 3. Not all data created on a PC or other devices has title information.

### 3 Select data and press .

## Note

- For melodies, copy up to 100 KB on the FOMA terminal handset and play up to 200 KB on microSD Memory Cards. Copy up to 2 MB for still pictures (JPEG images and GIF images), movies or PDF files.
- When backup data is put into the Import folder, only the first item is shown.
- Not all still pictures (JPEG/GIF) larger than 2,048 (W) × 2,048 (H) pixel can be viewed. Images from the image list may be displayed for larger images.
- PDF files cannot be displayed when saved in the Import folder. Copy to FOMA terminal handset to display.
- Attached files may be deleted in part or in whole under the following conditions.
  - File exceeding 2 MB is attached
  - 11 or more files are attached
- The following restrictions regarding file names apply to data in the Import folder.
  - Up to 228 single/double-byte characters for PIM data (excluding file extensions)
  - Up to 60 single/double-byte characters for PDF data (excluding file extensions)
  - Up to 100 single/double-byte characters for still pictures, movies and melodies (excluding file extensions)

## Managing Data

Data box consists of the following folders.

Data box

- My picture  
Still pictures shot with the FOMA terminal, images downloaded and images of TV programs recorded as a still picture with the FOMA terminal are saved (☎ P. 296).
- MUSIC  
Chaku-uta full® are saved (☎ P. 356).
- i-motion  
Movies shot with the FOMA terminal, recorded audio and downloaded i-motion are saved (☎ P. 304).
- Video (microSD)  
One Seg programs recorded with the FOMA terminal are saved to the microSD Memory Card (☎ P. 311).
- Melody  
Melodies are saved (☎ P. 316).
- My Documents  
PDF files are saved (☎ P. 339).
- Chara-den  
Chara-den are saved (☎ P. 313).
- Kisekae Tool  
Kisekae Tool are saved (☎ P. 136).
- Print setting (DPOF)  
Information such as the number of prints for still pictures saved on the microSD Memory Card is saved to the microSD Memory Card (☎ P. 352).

- Refer to P. 315 for details on managing Chara-den data and P. 312 for managing video file.

## Managing Folders

Manage data by creating up to 20 folders each for My picture, MUSIC, i-motion, Melody, My Documents, Chara-den and Kisekae Tool of Data box.

- Refer to P. 314 for details on managing Chara-den folder.

### Creating folders <New folder>

Example: My picture

**1** In stand-by, press **⊙** **9** **1** **1** and press **Ⓜ** **1** **1** [**New folder**].

**2** Enter folder name and press **⊙**.

- To delete **New folder** name, press **CLR** for 1+ seconds.

#### Note

- Enter up to 18 single-byte (9 double-byte) characters for a folder name.

### Editing folder names <Edit folder name>

Example: My picture

**1** In stand-by, press **⊙** **9** **1** **1**, select folder and press **Ⓜ** **1** **2** [**Edit folder name**].

**2** Edit folder name and press **⊙**.

- To erase folder name, press **CLR** for 1+ seconds in the edit screen.

#### Note

- Only folder names of created folders can be edited.

### Deleting folders <Delete>

Example: My picture

**1** In stand-by, press **⊙** **9** **1** **1**, select folder and press **Ⓜ** **2** [**Delete**].

**2** Select deletion method.

To delete folder individually	<b>1</b> → enter terminal security code → <b>⊙</b> → <b>Yes</b> → <b>⊙</b>
To delete folders collectively	<b>2</b> → select folder <b>⊙</b> (repeatable) → <b>Ⓜ</b> → enter terminal security code → <b>⊙</b> → <b>Yes</b> → <b>⊙</b> ● Press <b>Ⓜ</b> [SelAll]/ <b>Ⓜ</b> [ClrAll] to select or clear all.
To delete all data (keep folders)	<b>3</b> → enter terminal security code → <b>⊙</b> → <b>Yes</b> → <b>⊙</b>
To delete all folders and data	<b>4</b> → enter terminal security code → <b>⊙</b> → <b>Yes</b> → <b>⊙</b>

#### Note

- Only created folders can be deleted.
- Saved data is deleted along with folder.
- Folders containing data saved as stand-by display, ring tone and other functions cannot be deleted. Disable setting and try again.
- Deleting all the folders will also delete all the data preset in the **Decomail picture** and **Deco-mail pict 1** folders.
- To use again after deleting, download the preset data from the iMenu site, **SH-MODE** (☎ P. 192).

## Managing Data

Delete and sort data.

- Submenu numbers vary for the Music and **Movable contents** folder.

### Editing title <Edit title>

Example: My picture

**1** In stand-by, press **⊙** **9** **1** **1**, select folder and press **⊙**.

## 2 Select data and press **[M] [1] [3]** [Edit title].

## 3 Edit the title and press **[OK]**.

- To delete title, press **[CLR]** for 1+ seconds in edit screen.

### Note

- Title names are names that appear on data lists. File names are names used for data sent as **i-mode mail** attachments.
- Enter up to 50 single-byte (25 double-byte) characters. For **i-motion**, enter up to 36 single-byte (18 double-byte) characters.
- When changing a title of MUSIC, i-motion, Melody, Chara-den or Kisekae Tool, select **Edit title** and then select **Direct input** or **Back to original**.
- Up to 14 single-byte (7 double-byte) characters of the title are shown on screen (If a title name exceeds 14 single-byte (7 double-byte) characters, up to 12 single-byte (6 double-byte) characters are shown for the title name).

## Editing file names <Edit file name>

### Example: My picture

## 1 In stand-by, press **[OK] [9] [1] [1]**, select folder, press **[OK]**, select data and press **[M] [1] [4]** [Edit file name].

## 2 Edit file name and press **[OK]**.

- To delete file name, press **[CLR]** for 1+ seconds in the edit screen.

### Note

- Enter up to 36 single-byte characters for the file name.
- File names for the following data cannot be edited: data with file restrictions (data downloaded from sites or Internet web pages, attached to **i-mode mail** or saved from i-appli), picture memos shot during a Videophone call, images of One Seg **recorded as a still picture** or data saved on a **microSD Memory Card**.

## Sorting data <Sort>

Default setting **Date (new→old)**

Change the list order to one of the following.

Date (new→old)*1	Files are sorted with the latest save date first.
Date (old→new)*1	Files are sorted with the oldest save date first.
By title name	Files are sorted by title in the following order: single-byte numbers → single-byte upper case alphabet → single-byte lower case alphabet → hiragana → double-byte katakana → kanji → Pictograph 1 → Pictograph 2 → double-byte numbers → double-byte upper case alphabet → double-byte lower case alphabet → single-byte katakana.

By source*2	Files are sorted by acquisition method in the following order: blank → i-mode → camera → data transfer → Videophone.
Size (big→small)	Files are sorted with the largest files first.
Size (small→big)	Files are sorted with the smallest files first.
By artist (Music only)	Files are sorted with artist's name in character code order.

\*1 If the file restriction of the data in the microSD Memory Card is changed, time and date information is updated. As a result, the time and date displayed in the Date/time saved of File property may be different from a result sorted by Date.

\*2 File acquisition source differs by data type.

### Example: My picture

## 1 In stand-by, press **[OK] [9] [1] [1]**, select folder, press **[OK]** and press **[M] [1] [2]** [Sort].

## 2 Select sort method and press **[OK]**.

## Moving data to another folder <Move>

### Example: My picture

## 1 In stand-by, press **[OK] [9] [1] [1]**, select folder and press **[OK]**.

## 2 Select data and press **[M] [6] [1]** [Move].

## 3 Select a transfer method.

To move data individually	<b>[1]</b> → select folder → <b>[OK]</b>
To move all data in folders	<b>[2]</b> → enter terminal security code → <b>[OK]</b> → select folder → <b>[OK]</b>
To move selected data collectively	<b>[3]</b> → select data <b>[OK]</b> (repeatable) → <b>[M]</b> → select folder → <b>[OK]</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press <b>[F] [SelAll]/[C] [ClrAll]</b> to select or clear all.</li> </ul>

### Note

- Data cannot be moved without created folders.
- Only one data can be moved from a created folder to the default folder.
- If the destination folder on microSD Memory Card contains more than 400 still pictures, movies/ i-motion, melodies and PDF, the exceeded amount cannot be moved.
- Data contained in the **Multimedia** folder on the microSD Memory Card cannot be moved to **Camera folder**.
- If **[CLR]** or **[M]** is pressed while data are transferred to another folder in a FOMA terminal handset, **Canceling** appears. However, the transfer processing is not canceled.

## Viewing detailed information

### <File property>

The following information is shown.

- Refer to P. 315 for details on file properties of Chara-den.

Item	My picture	MUSIC	i-motion	Melody	PDF	Kisekae Tool	Video
Date/time saved							
Date/time saved (Exif) (images shot with camera only)		-	-	-	-	-	-
Date/time made	-	-	-	(MFi only)		-	-
Display size <sup>*1</sup> (excluding Flash movies)		-		-	-	-	-
File size							
File size (video) (JPEG images only)		-	-	-	-	-	-
File format (excluding Flash movies)						-	
File restriction: <b>Restricted/Not restricted</b>							-
Tone settings <sup>*2</sup>	-						
Set screen <sup>*2</sup>		-		-	-	-	-
Ph/book settings <sup>*2</sup>					-	-	-
Schedule/ToDo <sup>*2</sup>					-	-	-
Videophone <sup>*2</sup>		-	-	-	-	-	-
Record message <sup>*2</sup>		-	-	-	-	-	-
Owner Information <sup>*2</sup>		-	-	-	-	-	-
Daily alarm <sup>*2</sup>	-				-	-	-
Slideshow settings <sup>*2</sup>	-	-	-				
Creator	-	-		-	-	-	-
Copyright	-	-		-	-	-	-
Description	-	-		-	-	-	-
Title	-		-	-	-	-	-
Artist	-		-	-	-	-	-
Album	-		-	-	-	-	-
Year	-		-	-	-	-	-

Item	My picture	MUSIC	i-motion	Melody	PDF	Kisekae Tool	Video
Genre	-		-	-	-	-	-
Comment	-		-	-	-	-	-
Track number	-		-	-	-	-	-
Composer	-		-	-	-	-	-
Lyricist	-		-	-	-	-	-
Rights holder	-		-	-	-	-	-
Selling agency	-		-	-	-	-	-
Rights information	-		-	-	-	-	-
Label	-		-	-	-	-	-
URL info	-		-	-	-	-	-
File name							
Shooting date (JPEG images only)		-	-	-	-	-	-
Title (Original)	-				-		-
Restriction (Number of times): <b>MobileMP4/MP4<sup>3</sup></b>	-				-		-
Restriction (Expiration date): <b>MobileMP4/MP4<sup>3</sup></b>	-			-	-		-
Restriction (Duration): <b>MobileMP4/MP4<sup>3</sup></b>	-				-		-
Sound: <b>AAC/AMR/HE-AAC/Enhanced aacPlus/unknown/Bit rate (Music only)<sup>4</sup></b>	-				-		-
Source							
Ring tone: <b>available/unavailable</b>	-	-		-	-	-	-
Receive display: <b>available/unavailable</b>	-	-		-	-	-	-
Full song ring tone: <b>available/unavailable</b>	-		-	-	-	-	-
Point ring tone: <b>available/unavailable</b>	-		-	-	-	-	-

Item	My picture	MUSIC	i-motion	Melody	PDF	Kisekae Tool	Video
Savable Jacket image: <b>Restricted/Not restricted</b>	-		-	-	-	-	-
Savable Image: <b>Restricted/Not restricted</b>	-		-	-	-	-	-
Savable Lyric: <b>Restricted/Not restricted</b>	-		-	-	-	-	-
Play time	-		-	-	-	-	-
Surround playback: <b>available/unavailable</b> <sup>4</sup>	-		-	-	-	-	-
Change theme color: <b>Restricted/Not restricted</b>	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
Move to the microSD: <b>available/unavailable/Yes(Same model only)</b> <sup>5,6</sup>							-
Start video recording	-	-	-	-	-	-	
Recording end time	-	-	-	-	-	-	
Channel name	-	-	-	-	-	-	
Program name	-	-	-	-	-	-	

\*1 Display size appears in pixels.

\*2 Not displayed for file properties of microSD Memory Card.

\*3 Not displayed for i-motion without replay restrictions. **Not restricted** is displayed for music, indicating that there is no restriction.

\*4 Not displayed for movies/i-motion with no audio sound.

\*5 Contents that can be copied appears as **available**.

\*6 **Moved to the phone** for data in microSD Memory Card.

### Example: My picture

**1** In stand-by, press  $\odot$  [9] [1] [1], select folder and press  $\odot$ .

**2** Select data and press  $\text{Ⓜ}$  [5] [File property].

- To end viewing, press  $\odot$  or  $\text{CLR}$ .

## Restricting output of still pictures and movies from the FOMA terminal

### <File restriction>

Restrict still pictures and movies from mail attachment and output from the FOMA terminal.

- If a File restriction is set on data shot with the FOMA terminal, although sending the data as an attachment to i-mode mail is possible, the receiver will not be able to send restricted data to another party.
- File restrictions on data downloaded from sites or Internet web pages, attached to i-mode mail, or saved from i-appli, images for which One Seg programs are recorded as a still picture and picture memos shot during Videophone cannot be changed.
- Only data created through editing or shot by the FOMA SH903iTV can be changed.
- Even if movies shot with the FOMA SH903iTV, file restrictions cannot be changed for i-motion downloaded from sites or Internet web pages, or i-motion retrieved from a URL in an i-motion mail message.

### Example: My picture

**1** In stand-by, press  $\odot$  [9] [1] [1], select folder and press  $\odot$ .

**2** Select data, press  $\text{Ⓜ}$  [1] [5] [File restriction] and press [1] [Restricted].

## Deleting data <Delete>

### Example: My picture

**1** In stand-by, press  $\odot$  [9] [1] [1], select folder and press  $\odot$ .

**2** Select data and press  $\text{Ⓜ}$  [2] [Delete].

- To delete data on microSD Memory Card, press  $\rightarrow$  **microSD** in folder list  $\rightarrow$   $\odot$   $\rightarrow$  select folder  $\rightarrow$   $\odot$   $\rightarrow$  select data  $\rightarrow$   $\text{Ⓜ}$   $\rightarrow$  **Delete**  $\rightarrow$   $\odot$ .

**3** Select deletion method.

To delete data individually	[1] $\rightarrow$ <b>Yes</b> $\rightarrow$ $\odot$
To delete data collectively	[2] $\rightarrow$ select data $\odot$ (repeatable) $\rightarrow$ $\text{Ⓜ}$ $\rightarrow$ <b>Yes</b> $\rightarrow$ $\odot$ • Press $\text{Ⓜ}$ [SelAll]/ $\text{Ⓜ}$ [ClrAll] to select or clear all.
To delete all data in folders	[3] $\rightarrow$ enter terminal security code $\rightarrow$ $\odot$ $\rightarrow$ <b>Yes</b> $\rightarrow$ $\odot$

### Note

- Cannot delete all in folder for data set as stand-by display, ring tone and other functions.
- Data in **Pre-install** folder of My picture and **Pre-install** folder in Melody cannot be deleted.

## Checking Available Memory

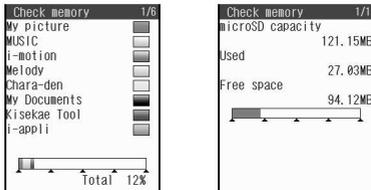
### <Check Memory>

Check the following contents.

Item	Details
Phonebook, Schedule, ToDo	Number of remaining entries, registered entries, and secret entries
Bookmark, Text memo	Number of remaining entries and registered entries
Inbox, Outbox, Unsent messages, Message R/F, Screen memo, Deco-mail template, ToruCa	Percentage used (%)
My picture, MUSIC, i-motion, Melody, Chara-den, My Documents, Kisekae Tool, i-appli of Data box	Total percentage used (%)
microSD Memory Card	Amount, amount used, and free space
FOMA card	Number of remaining phonebook entries and registered entries, and percentage used for SMS (%)

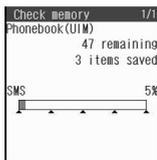
- Secret data items can only be displayed when Secret mode is set to **ON** (P. 154).

### 1 In stand-by, press **[3] [1] [2]**.



FOMA terminal handset

microSD Memory Card



FOMA card

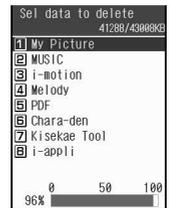
- Press **[→]** [microSD] to check microSD Memory Card or FOMA card memory usage and microSD Memory Card usage status appears. Press **[←]** [UIM] again for FOMA card usage status.
- Current available memory status is shown.
- Indicator and scale are estimates.
- To show available memory status for other functions while checking available memory on the FOMA terminal handset, press **[←]**.
- Press **[OK]**, **[CLR]** or **[END]** to end checking.
- The number of phonebook entries includes secret data.

## When Memory Is Low or Saved Data Is Full

Data and files cannot be saved when memory is low or saved data is full. Saving to microSD Memory Cards or deleting unnecessary files is recommended.

- If the number of saved data is full, data and file cannot be saved, even if available memory exists. Delete unnecessary data before saving.
- If saving images, Chaku-uta full®, i-motion, melodies, Chara-den, i-appli software, PDF files and Kisekae Tool when the memory is full, **Memory is full or saved data exceeds limit. Overwrite?** appears. Delete any unnecessary data or files before saving.
- When the memory space is not enough to save data downloaded from sites and Internet web pages, which has restrictions for outputting from the FOMA terminal, a confirmation screen for overwriting appears and the data can be saved by deleting the data in the **Movable contents** folder.

### 1 In the confirmation screen, select **Yes** and press **[OK]** to overwrite.



### 2 Select data type, press **[OK]**, select folder and press **[OK]**.

### 3 Select data and press **[OK]**.

- appears for selected and  appears for unselected entries. Press **[OK]** to switch.
- Select data until the memory allocation status reaches 100%.

### 4 Press **[Complete]**, select **Yes** and press **[OK]**.

## Ir Exchange

### Ir Exchange

Use Ir exchange to send and receive phonebook, schedule, mail, still picture and other data to and from other FOMA terminals which also support infrared communication. In addition, use Ir exchange from i-appli to operate simultaneously with other devices.

- The FOMA terminal Ir exchange function conforms with IrMC1.1. However, depending on the function, some data may not be sent or received even when the other party's terminal complies with IrMC1.1.
- Data (My picture, i-motion, Melody, etc.) of Data box may not be sent from FOMA SH903iTV to another FOMA terminal using Ir exchange.

- During Ir exchange, the FOMA terminal status is the same as when outside the service area. Therefore, functions such as making/receiving calls, i-mode, sending/receiving i-mode mail, sending/receiving SMS, and receiving Message R/F are not available.
- Ir exchange is not available during a call.
- The FOMA terminal Ir receive function and the Ir send function of the contents in Data box conform with IrSimple1.0.
- JPEG images saved in My picture of Data box can be sent by high-speed Ir exchange (IrSS function\*) (P. 299).

\* IrSS is a simplex communication function compliant with IrSimple1.0 (Home Appliance Profile).

### When Lock Functions Are Set

- Ir exchange is not available while All lock or Self mode is set.
- Phonebook data cannot be sent or received when Keypad dial lock is set.
- Data of locked functions cannot be received while Function lock is set. For example, while Function lock is applied to phonebook, phonebook data cannot be received. However, data can be sent when Function lock is temporarily disabled.

### Using Ir Exchange

Use Ir exchange to send and receive the following data.

#### Data that can be sent from the FOMA terminal

Function	One	All items	Remarks
Phonebook			Group information, PushTalk numbers, and PushTalk group information are not sent when sending data items individually. Secret phonebook entries cannot be sent individually unless Secret mode is set to <b>ON</b> . Secret code, Select ring tone, Mail ring tone, called LED color, mail/message LED color, Called LED pattern, Mail LED pattern settings, and Substitute image settings are not sent. Owner Information is sent when sending all phonebook data. Also, Secret phonebook entries is sent.
Schedule			Secret schedules cannot be sent individually unless Secret mode is set to <b>ON</b> . When sending all items, data saved as secret data is also sent. Alarm information other than alarm time (ring duration, alarm tone, alarm volume), contacts, and image setting information cannot be sent. Data with no end date/time set will be sent with start date/time set as end date/time. Information of timer for starting or recording the TV program cannot be sent.

Function	One	All items	Remarks
ToDo list			Secret ToDo list entries cannot be sent individually unless Secret mode is set to <b>ON</b> . When sending all items, data saved as secret data is also sent and saved by the receiver as normal data. For alarm information (ring duration, alarm tone, alarm volume, contacts settings), only alarm time can be sent.
Text memo			-
i-mode mail/SMS			Pasted data, attached files, and protected mail can be sent. Data that cannot be attached is not sent. Folder information cannot be sent. Using Ir exchange, a mail exceeding 100 KB (including attached files) may not be sent to the other party properly.
Bookmark			Both i-mode bookmark and Full browser bookmark can be sent. Folder information cannot be sent.
Still pictures, movies/ i-motion, melodies, PDF of Data box		x	Data downloaded from sites or Internet web pages, or received as i-mode mail attachments that have file restrictions cannot be sent. Data pre-registered in the FOMA terminal cannot be sent. Data that can be sent is up to 2 MB for still picture, 2 MB for movie, 100 KB for melody and 2 MB for PDF files.
Owner Information			Saved as phonebook entry by receiver. Refer to the phonebook remarks column.
ToruCa			ToruCa exceeding 1 KB, ToruCa (details) exceeding 100 KB, non-redistributable ToruCa and used ToruCa cannot be sent. Folder information cannot be sent.

#### Data that can be received by the FOMA terminal

Function	One	All items	Storage location	Storage order
Phonebook			Phonebook	When receiving a single data item, smallest available memory number after <b>010</b> is automatically added. When receiving all phonebook entries, all owner information except own FOMA terminal's phone number is overwritten. <b>No Name</b> appears for data without name saved.
Schedule			Schedule	Saved in order of start date/time.
ToDo list			ToDo list	Saved in order of expiration date.
Text memo			Text memo	Saved in order of last revision date/time.
i-mode mail/SMS			i-mode mail/SMS	Saved in order of date/time received, sent or saved.

Function	One	All items	Storage location	Storage order
Bookmark			Bookmark	Saved at the top when receiving one bookmark. When receiving all bookmarks, they are saved in the order used, starting from the oldest.
Still pictures, movies/ i-motion, melodies, PDF of Data box		x	My picture, i-motion, Melody, My Documents of Data box	Saved at the top of the <b>Acquired data</b> folder in the selected folder.
Owner Information			Phonebook	When receiving a single data item, the item is saved in the smallest available memory number after <b>010</b> . Refer to the phonebook storage order column.
ToruCa			ToruCa	-

### Note

- Data saved on microSD Memory Cards cannot be sent or received.
- Note that if overwriting existing data with new data is selected when receiving all the items of a function, all existing data for that function will be deleted.
- FOMA card phonebook data cannot be sent or received.
- Sort settings for folders are not reflected when bookmarks, i-mode mail, SMS and ToruCa are sent or received.

### Sending or receiving single phonebook entry

- Received phonebook data is automatically added to the smallest available memory number after **010**. When no memory number after **010** is available, data is added to an available memory number after **000**.
- Group numbers for all entries are set to (**Not specified**).

### Receiving all phonebook entries

- For Receive all, memory number, secret settings, group names, group numbers, PushTalk numbers, PushTalk group names, and PushTalk group numbers are also saved.

### Sending or receiving mail message

- For i-mode mail with i-αppli To pasted, the pasted information is deleted and is not sent or received.

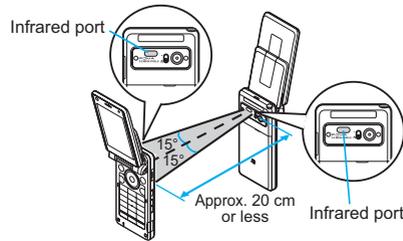
### Sending or receiving pictographs

- For functions which pictographs can be saved, pictographs can be sent and received. However, pictographs may not appear properly on PCs and mobile phones not supporting i-mode. The pictographs may not appear properly on i-mode terminal depending on the receiving model.

### ToruCa

- Some ToruCa may not be sent as a mail attachment, sent using Ir exchange or copied to the microSD Memory Card.

## Precautions for using the Ir exchange function



- Face the Ir ports of the receiving and sending FOMA terminals each other and set the distance between them to approximately 20 cm or less as shown above.
- In the following circumstances, leave the Ir ports facing each other and do not move.
  - When data is received, **Save xxx?** appears on the receiving FOMA terminal, until **Yes** or **No** is selected.
  - Until data receiving/sending is completed.
- Ir exchange may not function properly directly under fluorescent lights, near other equipment using infrared signals, or in areas of direct sunlight.
- If either of the infrared ports is dirty, Ir exchange will become difficult. Take care not to scratch the ports, and wipe off any dirt with a soft cloth.

### Note

- When Ir exchange could not be performed properly, the following messages appear.  
**Authentication failed. Retry?**  
**No response Retry?**  
If these messages appear, select **Yes** to try again.
- If Ir exchange fails, move the FOMA terminals close and try again.
- Images sent by Ir exchange may deteriorate in image quality or may have different file sizes.
- IrSS performs a transmission without confirming the response of the receiver side since it uses a simplex communication. For this reason, the sender side completes the communication normally even if the receiver side does not.

## Authentication Password

Terminal security code and authentication password entry are required for sending or receiving all data items.

- For terminal security code, enter current security code set in the FOMA terminal.
- Authentication password is a password exclusively for Ir exchange. Before starting data transfer, the sender and receiver must enter the same user-specified four-digit password. This password can be changed for each Ir exchange operation.

## Sending and Receiving Data Individually

Use Ir exchange to send/receive data individually on the FOMA terminal.

- Refer to P. 333 for details on data that can be sent and received.

### Sending Single Data Item <Send Ir Data>

Send one data item, operating from the list screen or details screen of data to send.

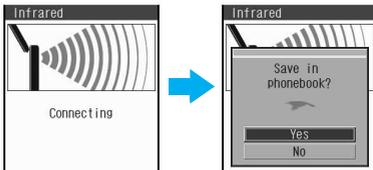
Example: For phonebook

- 1 In phonebook list (☞ P. 108) or details screen (☞ P. 108), select data, press **[M]**, select **Send data**, press **[O]**, select **Send Ir data** and press **[O]**.**
  - Operation can be performed using Submenu numbers. However, numbers differ depending on the type of screen or data to be sent.
- 2 Set receiving FOMA terminal to receive single data item.**
- 3 Press **[1]** [Send], select **Yes** and press **[O]**.**

### Receiving Single Data Item <Receive Ir Data>

Receive one data item, operating from the Ir data receiving screen.

- 1 In stand-by, press **[O]** **9** **2** **2** **1**, select **Yes** and press **[O]**.**



When phonebook is received

- Ready sender's FOMA terminal to send one data item.
  - The FOMA terminal waits to receive data. Data is automatically received when data is sent within 30 seconds.
- 2 Select **Yes** and press **[O]**.**
    - When phonebook is received, **Store in PushTalk phonebook?** appears. To store, select **Yes** and press **[O]**. When multiple phone numbers are stored, select the phone number.

- When received bookmark is identical to existing bookmark, **The same URL is saved. Overwrite?** appears. To overwrite current data, select **Yes** and press **[O]**.

## Sending and Receiving All Data Items

Use Ir exchange to send/receive all data items on the FOMA terminal.

- Refer to P. 333 for details on data that can be sent and received.

### Sending All Data Items <Send All Ir Data>

Operate from the list screen of data to send.

Example: For phonebook

- 1 In phonebook list (☞ P. 108), press **[M]**, select **Send data**, press **[O]**, select **Send Ir data** and press **[O]**.**
  - Operation can be performed using Submenu numbers. However, numbers differ depending on the type of screen or data to be sent.
- 2 Press **[2]** [Send all].**
- 3 Ready receiving FOMA terminal to receive all data items.**
- 4 Enter terminal security code and press **[O]**.**
- 5 Enter authentication password (four digits), press **[O]**, select **Yes** and press **[O]**.**

- If the entered authentication password matches an authentication password entered by receiver, data sending begins.

#### Note

- When all **Bookmarks** are received, they appear on the receiver's bookmark list in the order used, starting from the oldest.
- When sending all schedules, operate from Calendar or Show all schedules.

### Receiving All Data Items <Receive All Ir Data>

Receive all data items using Ir exchange, operating from the Ir data receiving screen.

- To receive all data items, terminal security code and authentication password entries are required.
- When all data items are received, saved data will be overwritten.

- 1 In stand-by, press **9 2 2 2**, select **Yes** and press **0**.
- 2 Enter terminal security code and press **0**.
- 3 Ready sender's FOMA terminal to send all data.
  - Remember the authentication password entered in the sender's FOMA terminal.
- 4 Enter the same authentication password (four digits) entered on sender's FOMA terminal and press **0**.
  - Ir exchange automatically begins when data is sent from other party's FOMA terminal within 30 seconds.
- 5 Select **Yes** and press **0**.
  - To cancel Receive all while receiving data, press **0** [Cancel].

## Using Ir Exchange with i-αpli Software

Use the Ir exchange function (P. 332) from running software. Activating i-αpli from Ir exchange is also possible.

- While in Self mode, Ir exchange is not available.
- While Function lock is applied to i-αpli, i-αpli will not activate.

## Activating Ir Exchange from i-αpli

- 1 While running software, activate Ir exchange, select **Yes** and press **0**.
  - Procedures for starting Ir exchange differ, depending on the software.
  - Ir exchange begins.
  - Press **0** to cancel Ir exchange.

## Activating i-αpli from Ir Exchange

During Ir exchange, if a signal to activate i-αpli is received from devices supporting infrared communication, software can be activated.

- When i-αpli To is set to **No**, i-αpli will not activate from Ir exchange.
- Cannot be activated as i-αpli stand-by.

- 1 In stand-by, press **9 2 2 1**.
  - The FOMA terminal waits to receive data. Refer to step 1 of "Receiving Single Data Item" on P. 335.
- 2 Software is activated when signal to activate i-αpli is received from the sender's FOMA terminal.

## Infrared Remote Control

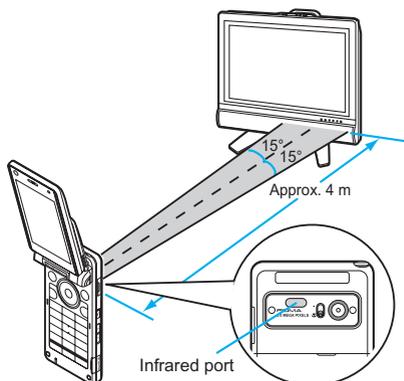
### Using the Infrared Remote Control Function

Use the FOMA terminal's Infrared port from i-αpli software to operate equipment supporting remote control such as TVs and VCRs.

- To use the infrared remote control function, download compatible i-αpli software (The preinstalled software Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE program schedule remote control) supports Ir remote control function).
- While in Self mode, the Ir remote control function cannot be used.

## Remote Control Operation

Start i-αpli software that supports Ir remote control functions, point the FOMA terminal's Ir port to the front of the remote control sensor on the TV, VCR or other devices to operate, and perform remote control operations.



- Actual operational methods will differ with each i-αpli software application. Refer to P. 252 for details on Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE program schedule remote control).
- Control devices from a distance of up to approximately four meters (Distance will vary depending on the device, the ambient brightness and other factors).
- appears when an Ir remote control signal is being sent.

### Note

- Depending on the device, operation may not run properly.
- Remote control operation may not run properly directly under fluorescent lights, near other equipment using infrared signals, or in areas of direct sunlight.

## iC Transmission

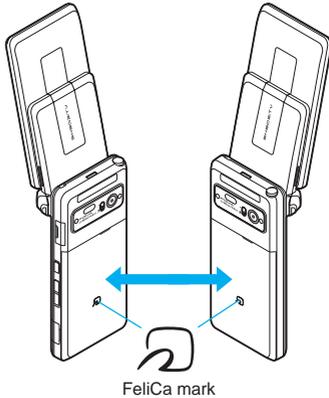
### iC Transmission

Send and receive phonebook entries, schedules or data from mail, still pictures, etc. to/from other FOMA terminals also equipped with iC transmission function.

- During iC transmission, the FOMA terminal status is the same as when outside the service area. Therefore, functions such as making/receiving calls, i-mode, sending/receiving i-mode mail, sending/receiving SMS, and receiving Message R/F are not available.
- iC transmission is not available during a call.
- iC transmission is not available while IC card is locked.
- Data that can be sent and received or operations when various lock functions are set are same as for Ir exchange. Refer to P. 332 for details.

#### Precautions for using iC transmission function

- Use while placing FeliCa mark (📍) of receiving side FOMA terminal on that of sending side FOMA terminal. Do not move the FOMA terminals until all data are sent and received.
- Set the FOMA terminal called LED to flash and vibrator to activate during iC transmission (📖 P. 121, P. 140).



## Sending and Receiving Data Individually

Use iC transmission function to send/receive data individually on the FOMA terminal.

### Sending Single Data Item <Send>

Send one data item, operating from the list screen or details screen of data to send.

#### Example: For phonebook

- 1 In phonebook list (📖 P. 108) or details screen (📖 P. 108), select data, press Ⓜ, select **Send data**, press Ⓜ, select **iC transmission** and press Ⓜ.

- Operation can be performed by entering the Submenu numbers. However, numbers differ depending on the type of screen or data to be sent.

- 2 Press [1] [Send], select **Yes** and press Ⓜ.

- 3 Place FeliCa mark (📍) on that of other party's FOMA terminal.

- When completed, **Transmission completed** appears, and the previous screen reappears.

## Receiving Single Data Item

- 1 In stand-by, place FeliCa mark (📍) on that of other party's FOMA terminal.

- 2 Select **Yes** and press Ⓜ.

- When receiving phonebook, **Store in PushTalk phonebook?** appears. To store, select **Yes** and press Ⓜ. When multiple phone numbers are saved, select the phone number.

## Sending and Receiving All Data Items

Use iC transmission function to send/receive all data items on the FOMA terminal.

- The sender and receiver must specify the same authentication password in advance.

### Sending All Data Items <Send All>

Operate from the list screen of data to send.

#### Example: For phonebook

- 1 In phonebook list (📖 P. 108), press Ⓜ, select **Send data**, press Ⓜ, select **iC transmission** and press Ⓜ.

- Operation can be performed by entering the Submenu numbers. However, numbers differ depending on the type of screen or data to be sent.

- 2 Press [2] [Send all].

- 3 Enter terminal security code and press Ⓜ.

- 4 Enter authentication password (four digits), press Ⓜ, select **Yes** and press Ⓜ.

## 5 Place FeliCa mark (📶) on that of other party's FOMA terminal.

- When completed, *Transmission completed* appears, and the previous screen reappears.

### Receiving All Data Items

#### 1 In stand-by, place FeliCa mark (📶) on that of other party's FOMA terminal.

#### 2 Select Yes and press Ⓞ.

#### 3 Enter terminal security code and press Ⓞ.

#### 4 Enter authentication password (four digits) and press Ⓞ.

#### 5 Select Yes and press Ⓞ.

- When completed, *Exchange completed* appears, and the previous screen reappears.
- To cancel receive all data items when receiving, press Ⓞ [Cancel].

### Voice Recorder

## Using the FOMA Terminal as a Voice Recorder

Use the FOMA terminal as a voice recorder. Voice recorder uses the movie shooting function and saves movie data with *Voice only* (no image) to the *Multimedia* folder on the microSD Memory Card. microSD Memory Cards are sold separately. Purchase microSD Memory Cards at home electronics shops (📖 P. 318).

- Voice recorder cannot be selected when a microSD Memory Card is not inserted.
- Record up to approximately ten hours when saving to 64 MB microSD Memory Card.
- Save up to 400 recordings (Actual number varies depending on recording time). Record up to six hours per recording. When recording is attempted after the 400th recording, *Record error* appears and Voice recorder ends. Delete unnecessary data and try again.
- Play back recorded voice or audio with i-motion player (📖 P. 304).
- Recorded data is saved without file restrictions.
- Recording within a distance of approximately 1.5 meters is recommended.
- Recording continues even if the FOMA terminal is closed during recording and *Voice recording* appears on the sub display.

### Recording

#### 1 In stand-by, press Ⓞ [9] [3] [3] and Ⓞ [Record].

- When recording starts, the shutter sounds and the Camera LED automatically flashes in blue. The Camera LED automatically turns off when recording ends (Camera LED cannot be turned off during recording).
- Press Ⓞ to pause. Press Ⓞ to resume.

#### 2 To stop recording, press Ⓞ [Stop].

- Recording stops automatically when the remaining time indicator reads *00:00:00* (recording file size reaches limit or microSD Memory Card has no available space).

#### 3 Press [1] [Save].

- To play back recorded audio, press [2] [Play]. To pause playback, press Ⓞ [Pause]. To stop playback, press [4]. Press [4] and the previous screen reappears.
- To not save, press [3] [Cancel], select *Yes* and press Ⓞ.

#### Note

- When a voice/Videophone call is received during recording, recording automatically stops and the call can be answered. After the call ends, the save confirmation screen appears.
- Play back recorded audio with i-motion player. In i-motion folder list on the microSD Memory Card, select *Multimedia* (📖 P. 307).

### Changing Settings for Voice Recorder

The following settings can be made for Voice recorder. Refer to the section on shooting movies for details (📖 P. 169).

#### Opening Data box <Display Data box>

Displays files in the specified save folder.

#### 1 In stand-by, press Ⓞ [9] [3] [3] and press Ⓞ [1] [Display Data box].

#### Setting Auto timer <Auto timer>

Default setting OFF

#### 1 In stand-by, press Ⓞ [9] [3] [3] and press Ⓞ [2] [Auto timer].

#### 2 Select a set time.

To disable	[1]
To set to two seconds	[2]
To set to five seconds	[3]
To set to ten seconds	[4]

# Displaying PDF Files

Display PDF files saved on FOMA terminal handset and microSD Memory Card.

Download, display and save PDF files from sites and Internet web pages (☎ P. 193).

- Save files in advance to My document of Data box or **PRIVATE\DOCOMO\DOCUMENT\PUdxxx** folder on microSD Memory Card. To save to microSD Memory Card, save the file and update the microSD Memory Card manager information (☎ P. 320, P. 327).
- To view PDF files saved on microSD Memory Card, insert the microSD Memory Card in advance.

In order to differentiate the file type, an alphanumeric character string called a file extension, such as ".pdf", is added to the end of the file name on a PC (Depending on the PC settings, file extension may not appear). Refer to the user's guide for the PC or software being used.

## 1 In stand-by, press **9 3 6**.

- Alternatively, press **9 1 6** in stand-by.

## 2 Select a folder and press **0**.

- To view the next page, press **0**. To view the previous page, press **0**.
- To view PDF files saved on microSD Memory Card, select **microSD** and press **0**. Alternatively, press **4**.

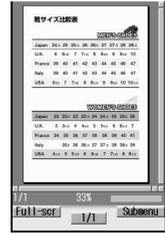
### PDF marks

	Downloaded PDF files of all pages
	Partially downloaded PDF files of individual pages
	PDF files that failed to download due to interrupted connection, etc.
	PDF files downloaded with i-mode
	PDF files retrieved from microSD Memory Cards
	PDF files with file restrictions
	PDF files with FOMA card restrictions applied

## 3 Select a file and press **0**.

- When only a portion (i.e. some pages) of the PDF file is downloaded, **Continue downloading following pages?** may appear. Select **Yes** and press **0** to download the following pages.
- When a PDF file that cannot be successfully downloaded is selected, **Data is incomplete. Download remaining data?** appears. Select **Yes** and press **0** to start downloading.

- PDF files are displayed in accordance with settings such as Magnification.



Details screen

To scroll screen	Up and down	Up: <b>0</b> Down: <b>0</b>
	Left and right	Left: <b>0</b> Right: <b>0</b>
To display entire page		<b>0</b> [Fit]
To display Actual size (when displayed as <i>Fit</i> )		<b>0</b> [1/1]
To display in full-screen		<b>0</b> Press <b>CLR</b> to end full-screen.
To view next page		<b>0</b>
To view previous page		<b>0</b>
To end		<b>0</b> ● If a file is not saved, the save confirmation screen appears.

### Note

- While **Function lock** is applied to multimedia, terminal security code is required to display files.
- The current file location (FOMA terminal handset or microSD Memory Card) is saved even if PDF Viewer is ended, and is used the next time PDF Viewer is activated.
- Depending on the PDF file, a password may be required. Enter password (up to 32 digits) and press **0**.
- Some formats and complex designs not compatible with the PDF Viewer may not appear correctly.
- Some files may not be displayed depending on the software used to create the file.
- Some files may take more time to display or may not be able to display entire contents.
- PDF files with ~, , - , \$ , £ , and ~ included in the file name are not supported.

### Operations in full-screen

To move up/down/left/right	<b>0</b>
To zoom/shrink	<b>3</b> or <b>1</b>
To rotate 90° left	<b>2</b>
To save displayed image as a still picture	<b>8</b>
To view previous page	<b>0</b>
To view next page	<b>0</b>

## Operating the details screen

- Use PDF Viewer details screen in the following ways.

Zoom in		Zooms screen in 10% increments, up to 1,000%.	
Zoom out		Shrinks screen in 10% decrements, down to 8%.	
Rotate view		Rotates screen 90° right or left.	
Set screen	Page layout	Single page	Displays file one page at a time (Default setting).
		Continuous	When file contains multiple pages, displays pages vertically in succession.
		Continuous facing	When file contains multiple pages, displays two pages at a time.
	View types	Fit page	Displays entire page (Default setting).
		Actual size	Displays PDF file at full size.
		Fit width	Sets PDF file to fit display horizontally.
Scroll bar		Sets whether to display scroll bar. The default setting is <b>ON</b> .	
Page numbers		Sets whether to display page numbers. The default setting is <b>ON</b> .	
Magnification		Sets whether to display magnification. The default setting is <b>ON</b> .	
Move page	Go to first page		When file contains multiple pages, moves to first page.
	Go to last page		When file contains multiple pages, moves to last page.
	Specified page		When file contains multiple pages, displays specified page.
Bookmark/mark	Display bookmark	Bookmark	Displays up to 50 bookmark titles already saved in PDF file and jumps to selected bookmark.
		i-mode bookmark	Displays added bookmarks and jumps to selected bookmark. In addition, deletes bookmark, changes title and displays properties.
	Add bookmark		Adds bookmark. Magnification and rotation settings can be saved. Register up to ten bookmarks.
	Display mark		Displays mark list. Deletes mark.
Add mark		Adds mark to center of displayed screen. Register up to ten marks.	
Search		Searches for a character string (up to 16 single-byte characters), and displays search results highlighted.	
Search criteria		Search criteria can be set.	
Display link/Open PDF Viewer		Switches between Display link and Open PDF Viewer. When Display link is set, links within the file, Web To, Mail To and Phone To (AV Phone To) are available.	
Cut image		Part of the screen is cut and image is saved in JPEG format.	

Save	Saves PDF file on FOMA terminal handset or microSD Memory Card. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● On microSD Memory Card, PDF files downloaded with all pages can be saved without file restrictions.</li> </ul>
File property	Displays information about PDF file. Displayed information is date/time saved, date/time created, file size, file format, file restriction, file name, source and availability of transfer to microSD/phone.
Doc properties	Displays properties of PDF file. Displayed information is title, author, subtitle, keywords, date/time created, date/time updated, application, PDF conversion and file size.
Light Up	Displays at maximum brightness.
Download remains	Downloads all pages that have not been downloaded of PDF files partially downloaded and PDF files that failed to download.
Key list	Opens the operation guide to search for an operation.

### Zoom/Shrink screen <Zoom in/Zoom out>

- 1 In the details screen, press **[2]**.
- 2 Press **[4]** to set position to zoom in center of screen **[2]** **[Zoom ]** or **[3]** **[Zoom ]**.
  - To end: Press **[0]** or **[CLR]**.

### Rotate view <Rotate view>

- In the details screen, press **[2]** **[2]** **[1]** **[Rotate 90° right]**.
- To rotate screen 90° left: Press **[2]** **[2]**.

### Set Page layout <Page layout>

- In the details screen, press **[2]** **[3]** **[1]** **[select page layout type]** **[0]**.

### Set display method <View types>

- In the details screen, press **[2]** **[3]** **[2]** **[select view type]** **[0]**.

### Display scroll bar, page numbers and magnification

#### <Scroll bar, Page numbers, Magnification>

- 1 In the details screen, press **[2]** **[3]**.
- 2 To display scroll bar, press **[3]**.
  - To display page numbers: Press **[4]**.
  - To display magnification: Press **[5]**.
- 3 Press **[1]**.

### Display specified page <Move page>

- In the details screen, press **[2]** **[4]** **[3]** **[enter page number]** **[0]**.
- To view first page: Press **[2]** **[4]** **[1]**.
  - To view last page: Press **[2]** **[4]** **[2]**.

### Add Bookmark <Add i-mode bookmark>

- 1 In the details screen, press **Ⓜ** **5** **2**.
- 2 Select **OK** **▶** **Ⓞ**.
  - To add bookmark after editing title: Select **Edit title** **▶** **▶** edit title **▶** **Ⓞ**.
  - When ten bookmarks are already saved: Select **OK** **▶** **▶** **Yes** **▶** **▶** select bookmark to overwrite **▶** **Ⓞ**.

### Display bookmark list <Display bookmark>

- 1 In the details screen, press **Ⓜ** **5** **1**.
- 2 To display preset bookmarks, press **1**.
  - To display i-mode bookmark: Press **2**.
- 3 To jump to bookmark, select bookmark **▶** **Ⓞ**.
  - To edit title of i-mode bookmark: Press **Ⓜ** **2** **▶** edit title **▶** **Ⓞ**.
  - To display properties of i-mode bookmark: Press **Ⓜ** **3** **▶** **Ⓞ** or **CLR** after confirming.

### Delete i-mode bookmark <Delete one>

- 1 In the details screen, press **Ⓜ** **5** **1** **2** **▶** select i-mode bookmark **▶** **Ⓜ** **1**.
- 2 Press **1**.
  - To delete i-mode bookmarks collectively: Press **2** **▶** select i-mode bookmarks **Ⓞ** (repeatable) **▶** **Ⓜ**.
  - To delete all bookmarks: Press **3** **▶** enter terminal security code **▶** **Ⓞ**.
- 3 Select **Yes** **▶** **Ⓞ**.

### Add mark <Add mark>

- 1 In the details screen, press **Ⓜ** **5** **4**.
- 2 Select **Yes** **▶** **Ⓞ**.
  - When ten marks are already saved: Select **Yes** **▶** **▶** select mark to overwrite **▶** **Ⓞ**.

### Display mark list <Display mark>

In the details screen, press **Ⓜ** **5** **3**.

### Delete marks <Delete one>

- 1 In the details screen, press **Ⓜ** **5** **3** **▶** select mark **▶** **Ⓜ** **1**.
- 2 Press **1**.
  - To delete marks collectively: Press **2** **▶** select mark **Ⓞ** (repeatable) **▶** **Ⓜ**.
  - To delete all marks: Press **3** **▶** enter terminal security code **▶** **Ⓞ**.
- 3 Select **Yes** **▶** **Ⓞ**.

### Search for character string <Search>

- 1 In the details screen, press **Ⓜ** **6** **▶** enter character string **▶** **Ⓞ**.
- 2 To search for next search result, press **⏪** or **Ⓜ** **1**.
  - To search for previous search result: Press **⏩** or **Ⓜ** **2**.
  - To search for a new character string: Press **Ⓜ** **3** **▶** enter character string **▶** **Ⓞ**.
  - To set search criteria: Press **Ⓜ** **4** **▶** **1** [Case-sensitive]/**2** [Entire matches] **▶** **1** [ON]/**2** [OFF] **▶** **Ⓜ**.
  - To cancel search: Press **Ⓞ** or **CLR** in search screen.
- 3 To end search mode, press **⏪** or **CLR**.

### Set Search criteria <Search criteria>

- 1 In the details screen, press **Ⓜ** **7**.
- 2 To search for case-sensitive, press **1**.
  - To search for exact match: Press **2**.
- 3 Press **1** [ON]/**2** [OFF] **▶** **Ⓜ**.

### Set to Display link mode <Display link>

- In the details screen, press **Ⓜ** **8**.
- To return to original view: Press **Ⓜ** **1** or **CLR**.

### Save displayed image as a still picture <Cut image>

- In the details screen, press **Ⓜ** **1** **▶** **Yes** **▶** **Ⓞ**.

### Save file <Save>

- In the details screen, press **Ⓜ** **2** **▶** select folder **▶** **Ⓞ**.

### Display text properties <Document properties>

- In the details screen, press **Ⓜ** **4**.
- To end viewing: Press **Ⓞ** or **CLR**.

### Light up <Light Up>

- In the details screen, press **Ⓜ** **5**.

### Download all PDF files <Download remains>

- In the details screen, press **Ⓜ** **6** **▶** **Yes** **▶** **Ⓞ**.

### Viewing the key list

- In the details screen, press **Ⓜ** **7**.

### Note

#### Zoom in/Zoom out

- Adjust the center position or magnification for zoom by repeating step 2.

#### Rotate 90° left

- Every time operation is repeated, screen is rotated left (rotated right for *Rotate 90° right*) an additional 90°.

#### Page layout

- When activated from a site or Internet web page, Page layout is set to **Single page**.

#### Adding bookmarks and marks

- Added bookmarks appear at the bottom of the bookmarks list and added marks appear at the bottom of the marks list.
- Added bookmarks may be deleted when moving PDF files to a PC using the microSD Memory Card or Ir exchange.

#### Deleting bookmarks and marks

- For deleting selected, press **Ⓜ** [SelAll]/**Ⓜ** [ClrAll] to select or clear all.

#### Search

- Previous character string appears in the character string entry screen.
- When search reaches the last page, a confirmation screen appears prompting whether to continue searching from the first page. Select **Yes** to search from the first page.
- If New search is performed in step 2 of "Search for character string" on P. 341, search starts from the first page. Previous search result is deleted.

## Note

### Display link

- Screen cannot be scrolled when in Display link mode.
- Refer to P. 195 for details on Web To, Mail To and Phone To (AV Phone To).

### Cut image

- Depending on the security settings, some PDF files may not be cut.
- Cut document image to **Stand-by: 240x400** and save on FOMA terminal handset as a still picture (JPEG image).
- Images cut from PDF files with restrictions for output from the FOMA terminal or screen copy are restricted to output from the FOMA terminal. However, they can be transferred to the microSD Memory Card (Contents transfer compatible).

### Document properties

- Items not set in the PDF file cannot be displayed.

## Shortcut keys

- Operations frequently used on the details screen are allocated to the keys below for convenient use.

Key	Operation	Page
	Displays previous page	P. 340
	Displays next page	
	Zoom out* <sup>1</sup>	
	Rotate 90° left	
	Zoom in* <sup>2</sup>	
	Moves to specified page	
	Bookmark · mark	
	Search	
	Display link	
	Cut image	
	Set screen	
	Save	
	Full-screen	
	Light Up (for 1+ seconds)	
	Key list	

\*1 Each time key is pressed, image shrinks. Keep the key pressed and then release it. The longer the key is pressed, the smaller the image becomes.

\*2 Each time key is pressed, image enlarges. Keep the key pressed and then release it. The longer the key is pressed, the larger the image becomes.

## Attaching PDF Files and Sending i-mode Mail

- Sending is available for PDF files up to 2 MB.
- PDF data with restrictions for output from the FOMA terminal are not sent.

- In stand-by, press , select folder, press , select PDF file and press [Mail].**

## 2 Compose and send i-mode mail.

- Refer to steps 2 to 4 on P. 214 for details.

## Managing PDF Files

### Manage PDF files by dividing into folders, editing titles, deleting and sorting.

- PDF files without restrictions copy to microSD Memory Cards ( P. 322) and send to other FOMA terminals using Ir exchange function ( P. 332).

## Managing Folders

Create up to 20 folders and manage files.

### Creating folders <New folder>

- In stand-by, press and press [New folder].**

- Enter folder name and press .**

- To delete **New folder** name, press for 1+ seconds.

### Note

- Enter up to 18 single-byte (9 double-byte) characters for a folder name.

### Editing folder names <Edit folder name>

- In stand-by, press , select folder and press [Edit folder name].**

- Edit folder name and press .**

- To erase folder name, press for 1+ seconds in the edit screen.

### Note

- Only folder names of created folders can be edited.

### Deleting folders <Delete>

- In stand-by, press , select folder and press [Delete].**

- Select deletion method.**

To delete folder individually	→ enter terminal security code →  → <b>Yes</b> →
To delete folders collectively	→ select folder  (repeatable) →  → enter terminal security code →  → <b>Yes</b> → ● Press  [SelAll]/ [ClrAll] to select or clear all.
To delete all data (keep folders)	→ enter terminal security code →  → <b>Yes</b> →

To delete all folders	(4) → enter terminal security code → ● → Yes → ●
-----------------------	--

### Note

- Only created folders can be deleted.
- Saved files are deleted along with folder.

## Managing PDF Files

Delete and sort PDF files.

### Editing title <Edit title>

- 1 In stand-by, press ● (9) (3) (6), select folder and press ●.**
- 2 Select file and press ● (1) [Edit title].**
- 3 Edit the title and press ●.**
  - To delete title, press **CLR** for 1+ seconds in the edit screen.

### Note

- Enter up to 50 single-byte (25 double-byte) characters.
- Up to 14 single-byte (7 double-byte) characters of the title are shown on screen (If a title name exceeds 14 single-byte (7 double-byte) characters, up to 12 single-byte (6 double-byte) characters are shown for the title name).

### Sorting files <Sort>

Default setting **Date (new→old)**

Change the list order to one of the following.

- Even when PDF Viewer is ended, list order settings remain.

Date (new→old)	Files are sorted with the latest save date first.
Date (old→new)	Files are sorted with the oldest save date first.
By title name	Files are sorted by title in the following order: single-byte numbers → single-byte upper case alphabet → single-byte lower case alphabet → hiragana → double-byte katakana → kanji → Pictograph 1 → Pictograph 2 → double-byte numbers → double-byte upper case alphabet → double-byte lower case alphabet → single-byte katakana.
By source*	Files are sorted by acquisition method in the following order: blank → i-mode → data transfer.
Size (big→small)	Files are sorted with the largest files first.
Size (small→big)	Files are sorted with the smallest files first.

\* File acquisition source differs by file type.

- 1 In stand-by, press ● (9) (3) (6), select folder, press ● and press ● (6) (1) [Sort].**

## 2 Select sort method and press ●.

### Moving file to another folder <Move>

- 1 In stand-by, press ● (9) (3) (6), select folder and press ●.**
- 2 Select file and press ● (4) (1) [Move].**
- 3 Select transfer method.**

To move file individually	(1) → select folder → ●
To move files collectively	(2) → select file ● (repeatable) → ● → select folder → ● ● Press ● [SelAll]/● [ClrAll] to select or clear all.
To move all files in folders	(3) → enter terminal security code → ● → select folder → ●

### Viewing detailed information

#### <File property>

- 1 In stand-by, press ● (9) (3) (6), select folder and press ●.**
- 2 Select file and press ● (3) [File property].**
  - In the details screen, press ● (3).
  - To end viewing, press ● or **CLR**.

### Note

- Displayed information is date/time saved, date/time made, file size, file format, file restriction, file name, source and availability of transfer to microSD/phone.

### Deleting data <Delete>

- 1 In stand-by, press ● (9) (3) (6), select folder, press ●, select file and press ● (2) [Delete].**
  - To delete files on microSD Memory Card, press ● (4) in folder list, select folder, press ●, select file and press ● (2).
- 2 Select deletion method.**

To delete file individually	(1) → Yes → ●
To delete files collectively	(2) → select file ● (repeatable) → ● → Yes → ● ● Press ● [SelAll]/● [ClrAll] to select or clear all.
To delete all files in folders	(3) → enter terminal security code → ● → Yes → ●

# Displaying Word and Excel Files

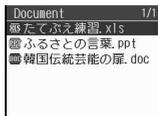
Display files saved on microSD Memory Card, such as Microsoft Word, Microsoft Excel and image files on FOMA terminal.  
 microSD Memory Cards are sold separately.  
 Purchase microSD Memory Cards at home electronics shops (P. 318).

- Supported file types (file extension)\*:
    - Microsoft Word (.doc), Microsoft Excel (.xls), Microsoft PowerPoint (.ppt), Plain Text (.txt), JPEG (.jpg, .jpeg), GIF (.gif), PNG (.png), BMP (.bmp)
  - Place file to view in **PRIVATE\SHARP\DOCUMENT** folder of the microSD Memory Card in advance (P. 320).
  - Before using this function, insert microSD Memory Card into FOMA terminal microSD Memory Card slot in advance.
  - If PDF files are saved in **PRIVATE\SHARP\DOCUMENT** folder in the microSD card using SH506iC, SH900i, or SH901iC, move files to **PRIVATE\DOC\MOM\DOCUMENT\PUDEXXX** folder.
- \* In order to differentiate the file type, an alphanumeric character string called a file extension, such as ".doc" or ".xls", is added to the end of the file name on a PC (Depending on the PC settings, file extension may not appear). Refer to the user's guide for the PC or software being used.

**1** In stand-by, press **[9] [3] [5]**.

**2** Select a folder and press **[0]**.

- To view the next page of the image list, press **[0]**. To view the previous page, press **[0]**.



**3** Select a file and press **[0]**.



Details screen

To scroll up/down/left/right	Up: <b>[0]</b> Down: <b>[0]</b> Left: <b>[0]</b> Right: <b>[0]</b>
To show entire page in center of display	<b>[0]</b>
To show in Full-screen mode	<b>[0]</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press <b>[0]</b> or <b>[CLR]</b> to end full-screen.</li> <li>Not available in the Cycloid position.</li> </ul>
To view next page	<b>[0]</b> [Page ]
To view previous page	<b>[0]</b> [Page ]

**Note**

**Operations in full-screen**

To move up/down/left/right	<b>[0]</b>
To zoom/shrink	<b>[3]</b> or <b>[1]</b>
To rotate 90° left No rotation	<b>[2]</b>
To save displayed image as a still picture	<b>[6]</b> <b>[1]</b>
To display Submenu	<b>[0]</b>
To view previous page	<b>[0]</b>
To view next page	<b>[0]</b>
To fit to screen	<b>[0]</b>
To light up	<b>[7]</b>

- While **Function lock** is applied to multimedia, terminal security code is required to activate Document Viewer.

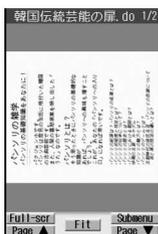
**When using Document Viewer**

- File contents may appear differently from when displayed on a PC depending on the contents.
  - Some files may take longer to be displayed depending on file size. Some files may not be able to display entire contents.
  - Fonts supported by Document Viewer differ from those supported by a PC and may cause file to not be displayed properly.
  - Files with names that exceed 230 characters (including file extensions) cannot be displayed.
  - The number of digits that appears in a cell on a Microsoft Excel worksheet may differ from when displayed on a PC. In addition, Japanese era names cannot be displayed.
- Up to 400 files per folder can be viewed in file list.
- Refer to <http://k-tai.sharp.co.jp/support/d/sh903tv/> for details on files that can be displayed using Document Viewer.
- If a Videophone call is made/received or packet transmission is performed while Document Viewer is being activated, Document Viewer is ended.

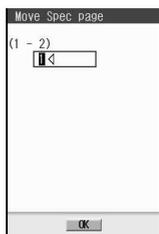
## Operating the details screen

- Use Document Viewer details screen in the following ways.

Shrink		Displays screen at a reduced size.
Rotate view		Switches between rotating the view 90° left and no rotation.
Zoom		Displays screen at an enlarged size.
Magnifier		Magnifies the area specified by the cursor and view in the lower part of the display in order to distinguish characters. The lower part of the display changes as the cursor is moved. Magnified area can be enlarged or shrunk.
Move	Move w/in screen	Displays upper left, upper right, lower left, lower right or center of page without changing magnification.
	Move Spec page	When file contains multiple pages, displays specified page.
Cut image	Save image	Cuts document image to the displayed size and saves on microSD Memory Card as a still picture (JPEG).
	Compose message	Cuts a still picture and send as an i-mode mail attachment.
Light Up		Displays at maximum brightness.
Key list		Opens the operation guide to search for an operation.



Rotate 90° left screen



Move Spec page screen



Magnifier screen



Move w/in screen  
(when upper left is selected)

### Zoom/Shrink <Zoom/Shrink>

- In the details screen, press **[Zoom]** **[Shrink]**.
- To display entire page: Press **[Home]**.

### Rotate view 90° left <Rotate view>

- In the details screen, press **[Rotate]**.
- To return to original view: Press **[Home]**.

### Enlarge with Magnifier <Magnifier>

- In the details screen, press **[Magnifier]** **[Move]** **[Cursor]**.
- To zoom/shrink specified area: Press **[Zoom]** **[Shrink]** or **[Home]**.
  - To end Magnifier: Press **[Home]**.

### Display edges or center of page

#### <Move w/in screen>

- In the details screen, press **[Move]** **[1]** **[Move]** **[Direction]**.

### Display specified page <Move Spec page>

- In the details screen, press **[Move Spec]** **[Page]** **[Number]**.

### Save displayed image as a still picture

#### <Save image>

- In the details screen, press **[Save]** **[1]**.
- To send as an i-mode mail attachment: Press **[Send]** **[2]**.

### Light up <Light Up>

- In the details screen, press **[Light]**.

### Viewing the Key List <Key List>

- In the details screen, press **[Key]**.

### Set display light <Backlight time>

- 1 In file list, press **[Light]**.
  - 2 Press **[2]** [Always ON].
- To set same as light setting: Press **[1]**.

## Note

### Shrink

- Files cannot be shrunk to a size smaller than the size of fitting the screen (**Fit** display).

### Save image

- Cut image is not available when there is no available space on microSD Memory Card.

### Backlight time

- The default setting is **As light setting** (P. 130).

## Shortcut keys

Operations frequently used on the details screen are allocated to the keys below for convenient use.

Key	Operation	Page
⊕	Scroll up/down/left/right <sup>*1</sup>	P. 344
⏪	Displays previous page	P. 344
⏩	Displays next page	P. 344
⦶ [Fit]	Displays entire page	P. 344
Ⓜ	Full-screen	P. 344
①	Shrink <sup>*2</sup>	P. 345
②	Rotate 90° left No rotation	P. 345
③	Zoom <sup>*3</sup>	P. 345
④	Magnifier	P. 345
⑤	Move	P. 345
⑥	Cut image	P. 345
⑦	Light Up	P. 345
⑧	Key list	P. 345

\*1 Keep key pressed to scroll continuously.

\*2 Each time key is pressed, image shrinks. Keep key pressed to gradually shrink image.

\*3 Each time key is pressed, image enlarges. Keep key pressed to gradually enlarge image.

## Managing Documents

Using Document Viewer, delete files in the **Document** folder on the microSD Memory Card, view file properties and sort files. Operation is not available for folders other than the **Document** folder. Operate from My picture (📖 P. 328). microSD Memory Cards are sold separately. Purchase microSD Memory Cards at home electronics shops (📖 P. 318).

### Sorting files <Sort>

Default setting **By title name**

Change the **Document** folder order to one of the following.

- Even when Document Viewer is ended, list order settings remain.

By title name	Files are sorted by title in the following order: single-byte numbers → single-byte alphabet → hiragana → double-byte katakana → kanji → Pictograph 1 → Pictograph 2 → double-byte numbers → double-byte alphabet → single-byte katakana. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Characters are sorted in the Unicode order but upper case/lower case is not distinguished for English characters.</li> </ul>
Date (new→old)	Files are sorted with the latest save date first.
Date (old→new)	Files are sorted with the oldest save date first.
Size (big→small)	Files are sorted with the largest files first.

Size (small→big)	Files are sorted with the smallest files first.
------------------	---

**1** In stand-by, press **Ⓜ** [9] [3] [5], select folder, press **Ⓜ** and press **Ⓜ** [3] [Sort].

**2** Select sort method and press **Ⓜ**.

### Viewing detailed information

<File property>

**1** In stand-by, press **Ⓜ** [9] [3] [5], select folder and press **Ⓜ**.

**2** Select file and press **Ⓜ** [2] [File property].

- To end viewing, press **Ⓜ**.

### Note

- Date/time saved, file size, file format and file name appear.

#### Folder name/File name

- Folder names and file names appear blank if folders and files are named using unsupported character codes with a PC or other devices.

### Deleting files <Delete>

Delete files in **Document** folder.

**1** In stand-by, press **Ⓜ** [9] [3] [5], select folder, press **Ⓜ**, select file and press **Ⓜ** [1] [Delete].

**2** Select deletion method.

To delete file individually	<b>①</b> → <b>Yes</b> → <b>Ⓜ</b>
To delete files collectively	<b>②</b> → select file <b>Ⓜ</b> (repeatable) → <b>Ⓜ</b> → <b>Yes</b> → <b>Ⓜ</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Press <b>Ⓜ</b> [SelAll]/<b>Ⓜ</b> [ClrAll] to select or clear all.</li> </ul>
To delete all files in folders	<b>③</b> → enter terminal security code → <b>Ⓜ</b> → <b>Yes</b> → <b>Ⓜ</b>

### BookReader

## Displaying e-Book and e-Dictionary

An e-book/e-dictionary saved on microSD Memory Card can be viewed on the FOMA terminal.

microSD Memory Cards are sold separately. Purchase microSD Memory Cards at home electronics shops (📖 P. 318).

- e-books/e-dictionaries (file extensions) that can be viewed: X MDF format (.zbf) (Media binding X MDF is not supported), Text format (.zbx, .txt, .text)

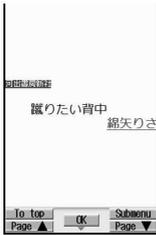
- Place file to view in the **IBOOK** folder of the microSD Memory Card in advance (☞ P. 320).
- Supportbook is preset on the FOMA terminal handset.
- To use e-book/e-dictionary, insert microSD Memory Card containing an e-book/e-dictionary into FOMA terminal microSD Memory Card slot in advance. When using Supportbook, microSD Memory Card need not be inserted.
- Depending on the e-book/e-dictionary, voice or images may be included in the data. However, voices cannot be used on the FOMA terminal. In some cases, images may not be shown either.

## 1 In stand-by, press **[9] [3] [4]**, select folder and press **[0]**.

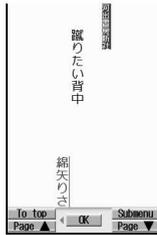
- In previous viewing, if **[0]** was pressed to end, the page displayed at time of termination appears.

## 2 Select e-book/e-dictionary and press **[0]**.

- If e-book/e-dictionary ended by pressing **[CLR]** in previous viewing is selected, the page displayed at time of termination appears.



Details screen (Horizontal)



Details screen (Vertical)

To move a line	Horizontal screen	↻
	Vertical screen	↻
To view next page		[Page ]
To view previous page		[Page ]
To jump to first page		[0] or [0] [4] [2]
To return to BookReader list		[CLR] or [0] [4] [4]

### Note

- The details screen uses “蹴りたい背中” (Keritai Senaka) by Risa Wataya provided by ©ザウルスセレクト文庫 (©Zaurus Select Library)/河出書房新社 (Kawade Shobo Shinsha Publishers).
- When Function lock is applied to multimedia, terminal security code is required to activate Book Reader.

## Displaying history

Display previous pages in order.

- When there is no history, operation is not available.

To display pages viewed in backward order	Horizontal screen	↶
	Vertical screen	↶
To display pages viewed in forward order	Horizontal screen	↷
	Vertical screen	↷

### Note

- When **[0]** is pressed to end BookReader, the page displayed at the time of termination automatically appears the next time BookReader is activated. However, page does not appear when file displayed at time of BookReader termination is not saved on re-inserted microSD Memory Card or when activated from **Character reader**. Page also does not appear if **Supportbook** is opened from stand-by.
- Depending on the e-book/e-dictionary, a password may be required. Enter password (up to 16 digits) and press **[0]**.
- For certain data, information to move to other pages may be contained. Select character string or image with the information and press **[0]** to move to the specified page. To return to the original page, press **↶** (in Horizontal screen) or **↶** (in Vertical screen) on the destination page.
- Up to 400 files can be viewed in file list.

### Using Multi Assistant

- Press **[MULTI]** while composing message to use BookReader.

## Related Operations

### Switch folders <Switch folder>

In stand-by, press **[9] [3] [4]** ▶ **[0] [3]** ▶ select folder ▶ **[0]**.

### Note (Related operations)

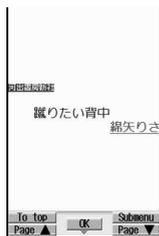
#### Switching display folders

- Display folder with e-book of XMDF format that was used on non-FOMA terminals such as mobile information devices.
- Depending on mobile information devices used, folders may not be displayed.

## Operating the details screen

Use e-book/e-dictionary details screen in the following ways.

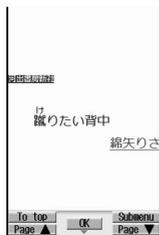
Bookmark	Insert bookmark	Adds a bookmark to the page being viewed. Up to two bookmarks (up to ten books) can be set for one e-book/e-dictionary.
	Move to bookmark	Displays page bookmarked previously.
File property		Shows properties of e-book/e-dictionary.
Current location		Approximate position of current page, in respect to total pages, is shown (percentage).
Move	Table of contents	When table of contents is available for data, displays page from table of contents.
	To top	Displays first page.
	To end	Displays last page.
	List	Displays BookReader list.
	Set % move	Displays page which is located approximately specified percentage into the document.
Copy Text		Copies character string from e-book/e-dictionary. Can be pasted to other screens. Up to 20 single-byte (20 double-byte) characters can be copied at once.
Display settings	Font size	Sets font size of e-book/e-dictionary to <b>Large font</b> , <b>Default</b> or <b>Small font</b> . Default setting is <b>Default</b> .
	Text direction	Sets the screen to display horizontally or vertically. Default setting is <b>Vertical</b> .
	Ruby text	Sets whether to show ruby text (reading of kanji). Default setting is <b>OFF</b> .



Horizontal screen



Vertical screen



Ruby text **ON**

### Insert Bookmark <Insert bookmark>

- 1 In the details screen, press **[F1]**.
- 2 Press **[1]**.
  - To set Bookmark 2: Press **[2]**.

### Move to Bookmark <Move to bookmark>

In the details screen, press **[F1]** **[2]** ▶ select bookmark ▶ **[0]**.

### Check e-book/e-dictionary details <File property>

- In the details screen, press **[F2]**.
- To end checking: Press **[0]**.

### Check current display location

#### <Current location>

- In the details screen, press **[F3]**.
- To end checking: Press **[0]**.

### Display from table of contents

#### <Table of contents>

- In the details screen, press **[F4]** **[1]** ▶ select item ▶ **[0]**.

### Jump to last page <To end>

In the details screen, press **[F4]** **[3]**.

### Move to a page by specifying percentage

#### <Set % move>

In the details screen, press **[F4]** **[5]** ▶ enter percentage (two digits: 00 to 99 percent) ▶ **[0]**.

### Copy characters <Copy text>

In the details screen, press **[F5]** ▶ select first character ▶ **[0]** ▶ select last character ▶ **[0]**.

### Set font size <Font size>

In the details screen, press **[F7]** **[1]** ▶ select character size ▶ **[0]**.

### Switch between vertical and horizontal view

#### <Text direction>

- 1 In the details screen, press **[F7]** **[2]**.
- 2 Press **[2]** [Horizontal].
  - To set vertical display: Press **[1]**.

### Show ruby text (reading of kanji) <Ruby text>

- 1 In the details screen, press **[F7]** **[3]**.
- 2 Press **[1]**.

### Note

#### Bookmarks

- When the 11th bookmark is set, the oldest bookmark is automatically deleted.

## Note

- When BookReader ends, the last page displayed is automatically set as **Auto bookmark 1**. The next time the same e-book/e-dictionary is displayed and ended, the last page viewed is set as **Auto bookmark 1** and the previously set **Auto bookmark 1** is reset to **Auto bookmark 2** (Up to two auto bookmarks can be set for each e-book/e-dictionary (up to ten total) and are automatically deleted from the oldest).
- **Auto bookmark** cannot be set when battery pack is removed.
- When **[MAG]** is pressed in stand-by to activate **Supportbook** (preset), the first page appears instead of **Auto bookmark**. When Supportbook is opened from Multi Assistant, **Auto bookmark** is not used. The top page or page corresponding to the function that Multi Assistant was activated from is shown.

### Copying

- Scanned text is discarded when the power is turned off.
- Certain characters cannot be copied.
- Masked characters, ruby text, and external characters cannot be copied.

### Display settings

- Depending on the data, switching display may not be possible, or the display setting for the e-book/e-dictionary may be specified.
- Supportbook (preset) cannot be switched between vertical/horizontal display.

### Ruby text

- For e-book/e-dictionary with no ruby text settings, readings are not available.

## Using Supportbook (Help)

### 1 In stand-by, press **[MAG]**.

- Activate corresponding functions from Supportbook (preset) (☞ P. 36).

## Searching in dictionary

Operations for dictionary and e-book are the same. Explanations below use the dictionary as an example.

- Text scanned with Character reader can be looked up in the e-dictionary as well (☞ P. 180).
- Insert microSD Memory Card containing an e-dictionary in advance.  
Purchase the dictionary separately.

### 1 In stand-by, press **[9][3][4]**, select folder, press **[MAG]**, select dictionary and press **[MAG]**.

- To read text with Character reader, press **[MAG]** [Character reader] (☞ P. 350).

### 2 Select input field, press **[MAG]**, enter word and press **[MAG]**.

- Enter up to 255 characters.
- Read characters are entered when a dictionary is started from Character reader.

### 3 Select word and press **[MAG]**.

## Using the Information in e-Book and e-Dictionary

Perform various functions from e-book/e-dictionary, such as moving data to another page, using Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To, Web To, playing back movies, saving still pictures, and masking character strings (supported pages only).

- Insert microSD Memory Card containing an e-book/e-dictionary in advance.

## Using Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To and Web To

Use information (such as phone numbers, mail addresses, and URLs) highlighted in e-book/e-dictionary, or images embedded with Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To, Web To functions to easily make calls, send mail, or view sites and Internet web pages (☞ P. 195).

### 1 In stand-by, press **[9][3][4]**, select folder, press **[MAG]**, select e-book/e-dictionary and press **[MAG]**.

### 2 Select phone number, mail address, or URL and press **[MAG]**.

- When set in image, press **[2]** [Move to link].

### 3 Select Yes and press **[MAG]**.

- When Phone To (AV Phone To) is set, check the phone number and press **[MAG]** to make a Videophone call. For voice call, check the phone number and press **[MAG]**.
- When Mail To is set, compose message screen with mail address already entered appears.
- When Web To is set, connection starts, and site or Internet web page appears.

## Note

- In some cases, even if phone numbers, mail addresses, or URLs are displayed, making calls, sending messages, and displaying sites may not be possible.

## Jumping to the linked site

When a link for another page is set on a character string or image, that page can be displayed.

- 1 In the details screen in step 1 of “Using Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To and Web To” on P. 349, select a character string or image with link and press .

## Playing back movies

Movies can be played back when information to execute movie is set in the image.

- 1 In the details screen in step 1 of “Using Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To and Web To” on P. 349, select image and press   [Run movie].

## Related Operations

### Mask character strings and images <Mask>

In the details screen in step 1 of “Using Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To and Web To”, select character string/image .

- To display masked character string: Select character string .
- To display masked image: Select image .

## Saving Images in e-Book/e-Dictionary

Still pictures shown in e-book/e-dictionary can be set as the stand-by display ( P. 125) when saved in My picture ( P. 296).

- Some images, such as those in PNG format, cannot be saved.
- Image is saved in the **Camera** folder in My picture ( P. 297).
- Save up to 1,000 images. Saved amount may vary depending on available memory.
- All images are saved as having copyrights. Images cannot be saved on microSD Memory Cards, nor attached to mail.

- 1 In the details screen in step 1 of “Using Phone To (AV Phone To), Mail To and Web To” on P. 349, select still picture and press   [Save to My pic].

## Character Reader

### Scanning Text to Search for Words in an e-Dictionary

While displaying e-dictionary, search for English words scanned with FOMA terminal.

- Insert microSD Memory Card containing an e-dictionary in advance.
- Refer to P. 178 for details on Character Reader.

## Example: When searching in an English-Japanese dictionary

- 1 In the details screen in step 1 of “Searching in dictionary” on P. 349, press   [Character reader].



- 2 Display text to be scanned in the center of the screen ( P. 179).

- 3 Press .

- Text is shot as a still picture and appears on the display.
- Press  to specify the line to scan (Text is read one line at a time).

- 4 Press  [Scan].

- When scanning is complete, candidates screen appears with scanned text.



- 5 Select word to search for and press .

## Managing e-Book and e-Dictionary

Create folders for e-book/e-dictionary files, manage, delete, move and rename e-book/e-dictionary files, or view their properties.

## Managing Folders

Create up to 398 folders and manage files.

### Creating folders <New folder>

- 1 In stand-by, press     and press    [New folder].

- 2 Enter folder name and press .

- To delete **New folder** name, press  for 1+ seconds.

### Note

- Enter up to 64 single/double-byte characters.

## Editing folder names <Edit folder name>

1 In stand-by, press **⓪** **9** **3** **4**, select folder and press **⓪** **1** **2** [Edit folder name].

2 Edit folder name and press **⓪**.

- To erase folder name, press **⓪** for 1+ seconds in the edit screen.

### Note

- Only folder names of created folders can be edited.

#### Folder name/File name

- Folder names and file names appear blank if folders and files are named using unsupported character codes with a PC or other devices.

## Deleting folders <Delete>

1 In stand-by, press **⓪** **9** **3** **4**, select folder and press **⓪** **2** [Delete].

2 Select deletion method.

To delete folder individually	<b>1</b> → enter terminal security code → <b>⓪</b> → <b>Yes</b> → <b>⓪</b>
To delete folders collectively	<b>2</b> → enter terminal security code → <b>⓪</b> → select folder <b>⓪</b> (repeatable) → <b>⓪</b> → <b>Yes</b> → <b>⓪</b> ● Press <b>⓪</b> [SelAll]/ <b>⓪</b> [ClrAll] to select or clear all.
To delete all folders	<b>3</b> → enter terminal security code → <b>⓪</b> → <b>Yes</b> → <b>⓪</b>

### Note

- Only created folders can be deleted.
- All files saved in the folder can be deleted.

## Managing e-Book and e-Dictionary

Delete or move an e-book/e-dictionary.

## Editing file names <Edit file name>

Supportbook (preset) file names cannot be changed.

1 In stand-by, press **⓪** **9** **3** **4**, select folder and press **⓪**.

2 Select e-book/e-dictionary and press **⓪** **1** [Edit file name].

3 Enter file name and press **⓪**.

- To erase file name, press **⓪** for 1+ seconds in the edit screen.

### Note

- Enter up to 64 single/double-byte characters for the file name.
- File names up to eight single-byte characters and their extensions may be changed from lower to upper case.

**Moving file to another folder <Move>**  
Supportbook (preset) cannot be moved.

1 In stand-by, press **⓪** **9** **3** **4**, select folder and press **⓪**.

2 Select e-book/e-dictionary and press **⓪** **4** [Move].

3 Select a transfer method.

To move file individually	<b>1</b> → select folder → <b>⓪</b>
To move files collectively	<b>2</b> → select file <b>⓪</b> (repeatable) → <b>⓪</b> → select folder → <b>⓪</b> ● Press <b>⓪</b> [SelAll]/ <b>⓪</b> [ClrAll] to select or clear all.
To move all files in folders	<b>3</b> → enter terminal security code → <b>⓪</b> → select folder → <b>⓪</b>

## Viewing detailed information <File property>

The following information is shown.

- In XPDF format (.zbf), for the BookReader list, title, file name, author, publisher and file size appear. For the details screen, series, title, subtitle, file name, author, publishing company, publisher, summary, distribution date/time, file size and distribution date/time stamping information appear (Information listed does not appear if not saved in e-book/e-dictionary).

1 In stand-by, press **⓪** **9** **3** **4**, select folder and press **⓪**.

2 Select e-book/e-dictionary, press **⓪** and press **⓪** **2** [File property].

- To view from BookReader list, press **⓪** **3**.
- To end viewing, press **⓪**.

### Note

- File properties for **Supportbook** (preset) are not available.
- File names appear with their extensions.

## Deleting an e-book/e-dictionary <Delete>

Supportbook (preset) cannot be deleted.

1 In stand-by, press **⓪** **9** **3** **4**, select folder and press **⓪**.

## 2 Select e-book/e-dictionary and press **[2]** [Delete].

## 3 Select deletion method.

To delete file individually	<b>[1]</b> → <b>Yes</b> → <b>[0]</b>
To delete files collectively	<b>[2]</b> → select e-book/e-dictionary <b>[0]</b> (repeatable) → <b>[2]</b> → <b>Yes</b> → <b>[0]</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Press <b>[5]</b> [SelAll]/<b>[5]</b> [ClrAll] to select or clear all.</li> </ul>
To delete all files in folders	<b>[3]</b> → enter terminal security code → <b>[0]</b> → <b>Yes</b> → <b>[0]</b>

## Print Setting (DPOF)

### Printing Saved Images

DPOF (Digital Print Order Format) is a format for printing still pictures shot with a digital camera. Designate still pictures on microSD Memory Card and print specified images/quantity at a digital camera print shop which supports DPOF or use a DPOF compatible printer.

- Still pictures downloaded from sites or Internet web pages cannot be printed. JPEG images that can be copied to microSD Memory Card can be printed.
- Refer to printing device user's guide for details on printing.
- Folder for DPOF use
  - Still picture folder/user created folder (P. 320)
  - DCF compliant folder created by other devices (P. 175)
- File for DPOF use
  - Still pictures saved in above folders (DCF compliant JPEG)
- Still pictures on FOMA terminal handset cannot be designated.

### Setting Printing Method for Images Saved in the microSD Memory Card <Print Setting (DPOF)>

- Non-DCF compliant still pictures saved on microSD Memory Cards with other devices may not be printed.
- Printing is not available for files which are cut from PDF Viewer and have file restrictions.

## 1 In stand-by, press **[0]** **[9]** **[1]** **[9]**.

- When DPOF is already set by another device, a confirmation screen appears. To clear, select **Yes** and press **[0]**. Current DPOF must be cleared to set a new DPOF.

## 2 Set the printing details.

To designate the number of prints	Select folder → <b>[0]</b> → select still picture → <b>[2]</b> → enter number of prints (0 to 99) → <b>[0]</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Select still picture and enter the quantity to print by pressing <b>[0]</b> to <b>[9]</b>.</li> <li>● Set to continue printing other still pictures.</li> </ul>
To print same quantity of all still pictures	<b>[2]</b> <b>[1]</b> → <b>[1]</b> → enter number of prints (0 to 99) → <b>[0]</b>
To print same number of still pictures <b>Over 640x480</b>	<b>[2]</b> <b>[1]</b> → <b>[2]</b> → enter number of prints (0 to 99) → <b>[0]</b>
To print same number of still pictures <b>Over 1024x768</b>	<b>[2]</b> <b>[1]</b> → <b>[3]</b> → enter number of prints (0 to 99) → <b>[0]</b>
To cancel all designated print settings	<b>[2]</b> <b>[2]</b> → <b>Yes</b> → <b>[0]</b>
To add date	<b>[2]</b> <b>[3]</b> → <b>[1]</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Date in properties of still picture can be added.</li> </ul>
To specify index print	Designate the number of prints → <b>[2]</b> <b>[4]</b> → <b>[1]</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Index print enables thumbnail-size images to be printed along with the file name on postcard or A4 size paper.</li> </ul>
To check Designated print status	<b>[2]</b> <b>[5]</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● When using Specify group, an approximate quantity appears.</li> <li>● Press <b>[0]</b> to end checking.</li> </ul>

## 3 Press **[5]** [Complete], select **Yes** and press **[0]**.

- Select **No** and press **[0]** to specify again.

## 4 Press **[0]** [OK].

## Related Operations

### Sort still pictures <Sort>

In stand-by, press **[0]** **[9]** **[1]** **[9]** ▶ select folder ▶ **[0]** ▶ **[2]** ▶ select sort method ▶ **[0]**.

# Music Playback

## ■ Music Playback

- Playing Back Music ..... 354
- Using Music Player ..... <Music>354
- Downloading Chaku-uta full® ..... <Chaku-uta full® Download>356
- Saving Music Data to microSD Memory Card ..... 356
- Managing Playlist ..... 357
- Using SD-Audio ..... <SD-Audio>358

## ■ FM Transmitter

- Using FM Transmitter..... <FM Transmitter Out>361

## Playing Back Music

Play back music on the FOMA terminal with the following methods. These methods must be selected depending on music data type.

- Mail and browsing of i-mode sites are available while listening to music (Background playback). Refer to "Multi Assistant (Multitask) Combinations" on P. 435 for the combinations of functions that can be used simultaneously.

### Music player (☞ P. 354)

Play back Chaku-uta full<sup>®</sup> downloaded from sites and Internet web pages. Also, play back voice only i-motion (including audio data) saved in the microSD Memory Card.

- i-motion can be played back using i-motion player (☞ P. 304).

### SD-Audio (☞ P. 358)

Use SD-Jukebox or PC to play back music saved in the microSD Memory Card.

## Music

### Using Music Player

- The songs that can be played back are as follows.

Song type	File format	Audio codec
Chaku-uta full <sup>®</sup>	MFF	MPEG4-AAC, HE-AAC, Enhanced aacPlus
Data in <b>Multimedia</b>	MP4	AMR, MPEG4-AAC, HE-AAC, Enhanced aacPlus

- The songs and playback time that can be saved are as follows.

Song type	FOMA terminal handset	microSD Memory Card	Maximum playback time
Chaku-uta full <sup>®</sup>	Up to 100	Up to 400 per folder	Approx. 540 minutes
Data in <b>Multimedia</b>	-	Up to 400 per folder	Approx. 540 minutes

Capacity varies depending on the size of a song or the capacity of microSD Memory Card.

- Use FM transmitter to play back songs with an FM radio and others (☞ P. 361).

## 1 In stand-by, press .

- The song previously played resumes from a song when stopped. Press **CLS** to view the end confirmation screen, select **Yes** and press to view the data type selection screen.



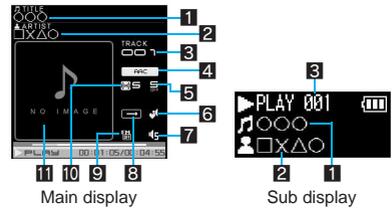
## 2 Select a data type.

Chaku-uta full <sup>®</sup>	Select <b>i-mode</b> → <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Data and folders are shown together. To select a song in a folder, select the folder and press .</li> <li>To select Chaku-uta full<sup>®</sup> saved in microSD Memory Card, press  [-&gt;microSD] → <b>Movable contents</b> →  → select the folder → .</li> </ul>
Data in <b>Multimedia</b>	Select <b>i-mode</b> →  →  [->microSD] → <b>Multimedia</b> →
Playlist	Select <b>Playlist</b> →  → select a playlist →

- A song list screen appears.

## 3 Select a song and press .

Music player screen



- Title name
- Artist's name
- Track number
- Codec
- Surround
- Manner playback status
- Volume
- Playback mode
- FM transmitter setting
- Stereo/monaural
- Cover image (only for Chaku-uta full<sup>®</sup>)

- When Chaku-uta full<sup>®</sup> saved in the middle of download is selected, a confirmation screen asking whether to download the remaining data appears. Select **Yes** and press to download.

## Key operations during playback

	When FOMA terminal is open	When FOMA terminal is closed
To pause	⏸ [Pause]	-
To stop	⏹ [Stop]	-
To adjust volume (Volume 0 to 10)	🔊 (softer) or 🔊 (louder) ● Keep key pressed to adjust volume continuously.	⏮ (softer) or ⏭ (louder)
To play previous song/To return to beginning of song	⏮ ● If playback time is less than approximately two seconds, the previous song is played. If playback time is approximately two seconds or more, the song returns to the beginning. ● Keep key pressed for fast reverse.	⏮ (for 1+ seconds) ● If playback time is less than approximately two seconds, the previous song is played. If playback time is approximately two seconds or more, the song returns to the beginning.
To play next song	⏭ ● Keep key pressed for fast forward.	⏭ (for 1+ seconds)
To view an image of Chaku-uta full®	🖼 ● Not displayed without images.	-
To view lyrics of Chaku-uta full®	📄 ● Not displayed without lyrics.	-
To turn FM transmitter ON/OFF	📻	-
To end Music player	⏹ or 🏠 → Yes →	-
To display Submenu	Ⓜ	-
To scroll the sub display	-	⏮ ● The title and artist's name are not scrolled if they are 14 single-byte (7 double-byte) characters or less.

- Press a dial key (1 to 9) to jump to a location assigned to the key and resume playback. Press 1 during playback to return to the beginning of song. Press 2 to 8 to jump to locations divided by one-eighth increments of the recording time. Press 9 to jump to the end of song. However, it may not be possible to jump depending on songs.
- When Manner playback is set to **ON**, the volume over 6 is changed into 5 (Change the volume from Volume 0 to 5).
- If the FM transmitter output is set to **ON** when a flat-plug earphone set (sold separately) is not connected, the volume cannot be adjusted with the FOMA terminal. Adjust it with an FM receiver.

## When connecting a flat-plug earphone set (sold separately)

- The following operation is available with a flat-plug stereo earphone set (sold separately) or a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately).

To play/ To pause	Press a switch. ● Alternates each time the switch is pressed.
----------------------	--

### Note

- When the battery level does not indicate , a confirmation screen appears to select whether to play or not when playback resumes or during playback. Select **Yes** to play. Also a confirmation screen may appear depending on the use even when the battery level indicates .
- When a call is received during playback, the playback is stopped, the incoming call screen appears, and the call can be answered. When Music player screen appears after the call is ended, playback resumes from the spot where the playback stopped when the call was received.
- Using other functions during playback may cause music to skip.

## Related Operations

### View the list of songs for playback

#### <Playback song list>

In the Music player screen, press  or .

#### Set Repeat/Shuffle playback <Set playback mode>

1 In the Music player screen, press   1.

2 To repeat all songs, press .

- To set to Normal playback: Press .

- To repeat one song: Press .

- To set to Shuffle: Press .

- To set to Repeat shuffle: Press .

#### Set Surround <Surround>

In the Music player screen, press   2 ▶

 1 while music is stopped.

#### Set to Manner playback mode <Manner playback>

In the Music player screen, press   3 ▶  1.

### Note (Related operations)

#### Playback song list

- If Playback song list is displayed during music playback, **not acquired yet** may appear on the list.

#### Surround

- When Music player is activated, the movie/i-motion is played with surround sound **ON** when Stereo effects (P. 120) is set to **Surround** and **OFF** when a setting other than **Surround** is set. Set Surround **ON/OFF** while music is stopped. The settings are applied to Stereo effects.

#### Manner playback

- If the FM transmitter output is set to **ON** when a flat-plug earphone set (sold separately) is not connected, the setting is not available.

## Setting Chaku-uta full® as the Ring Tone <Ring Tone>

**1** In the song list screen of Chaku-uta full®, select Chaku-uta full® and press **[4]** [Ring tone].

**2** Select a ring tone item.

Voice call	<b>[1]</b>	Message R	<b>[5]</b>
Videophone	<b>[2]</b>	Message F	<b>[6]</b>
User unset	<b>[3]</b>	SMS	<b>[7]</b>
Mail	<b>[4]</b>	PushTalk	<b>[8]</b>

**3** Select the setting range.

To set a full song	<p><b>[1]</b> [Full song ring tone]</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When Chaku-uta full® saved in the <b>Movable contents</b> folder in the microSD Memory Card is selected, the confirmation screen for transferring to the FOMA terminal handset appears. Press <b>[0]</b> to set Chaku-uta full® as the ring tone.</li> </ul>
To set part of song	<p><b>[2]</b> [Point ring tone] → select range → <b>[i]</b> → <b>Yes</b> → <b>[0]</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>For Point ring tone, the selected range is saved as i-motion and set as the ring tone.</li> <li>The selectable range is pre-determined.</li> </ul>

- Some Chaku-uta full® can be set to only **Full song ring tone** or **Point ring tone**. In addition, some cannot be set to **Ring tone**.

## Editing Chaku-uta full® Information <Edit Info>

Edit the Chaku-uta full® information which includes Title, Artist's name, Album's name, Genre, Year, Comment, Track number and Total.

**1** In the song list screen of Chaku-uta full®, select Chaku-uta full® and press **[7]** [Edit info].

**2** Select the item to be edited, press **[0]**, edit and press **[0]**.

- To undo, select **Back to original**, press **[0]**, select **Yes** and press **[0]**.

## Chaku-uta full® Download

### Downloading Chaku-uta full®

Save Chaku-uta full® downloaded from sites and Internet web pages.

- Download up to 5 MB Chaku-uta full®.
- When a song with copyright is downloaded, it cannot be played back using a different FOMA card.

**1** While viewing sites (steps 1 to 3 on P. 182) or Internet web pages (steps 1 and 2 on P. 187), select Chaku-uta full® and press **[0]**.

**2** Save.

To save Chaku-uta full®	<p><b>[2]</b> → select folder → <b>[0]</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To save to microSD Memory Card, select → <b>microSD</b> → <b>[0]</b> → <b>Movable contents</b> → <b>[0]</b>.</li> </ul>
To play Chaku-uta full®	<p><b>[1]</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To return to the previous screen, press <b>[CLR]</b>.</li> </ul>
To view detailed information	<p><b>[3]</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To return to the previous screen, press <b>[0]</b> or <b>[CLR]</b>.</li> </ul>
To not save	<p><b>[4]</b> → <b>No</b> → <b>[0]</b></p>

- When saving is completed, a confirmation screen asking whether to play Chaku-uta full® appears. Select **Yes** and press **[0]** to play.
- Do not remove microSD Memory Card while reading/writing/aborting data. Sending and receiving data may not be possible, or data may be lost.

## Saving Music Data to microSD Memory Card

microSD Memory Cards are sold separately.

Purchase microSD Memory Cards at home electronics shops (P. 318).

Songs saved on the microSD Memory Card can be used for personal use only.

Refrain from infringing upon intellectual property rights of a third party's copyrighted material.

Do not copy or transfer songs saved on the microSD Memory Card to PC or any other medium.

- Refer to "Transferring Data in FOMA Terminal to microSD Memory Card" on P. 321 or "Downloading Chaku-uta full®" on P. 356 for saving Chaku-uta full® to the **Movable contents** folder in the microSD Memory Card.

## Playing i-motion (Including Audio Data) Created with PC on the FOMA Terminal

Use a PC to save songs from a purchased CD to the microSD Memory Card and play on the FOMA terminal.

The following explains how to connect the FOMA terminal to a PC with the FOMA USB cable (sold separately) and save music data in **Multimedia** folder in i-motion of Data box to play.

### 1 Convert songs taken from CDs to MP4 format using commercially available software, and save them on a PC.

- For details on how to use the software, see the maker's website, etc.

### 2 Insert microSD Memory Card in the FOMA terminal and set FOMA terminal to *microSD mode* (☞ P. 326).

### 3 Connect the FOMA terminal to PC with the FOMA USB cable.

### 4 Copy a song.

- Copy procedure is as follows.
  1. **Rename the file created in step 1 to "MMFxxxx.3gp"/"MMFxxxx.mp4".**
    - To rename files, first set the PC to show extensions.
    - Enter the renamed file name within the range between "MMF0001" and "MMF9999" in single-byte excluding the file extension.
  2. **Copy to the PRIVATEIDOCOMOMMFILE folder in the microSD Memory Card.**
    - If there is no **MMFILE** folder in the microSD Memory Card, insert the microSD Memory Card into the FOMA terminal so it is recognized, and re-insert into the PC.
    - For details on folder structure in the microSD Memory Card, refer to P. 320.

### 5 Disconnect FOMA USB cable from the FOMA terminal after copying the song.

- To disconnect the FOMA USB cable, follow the safe disconnecting method for hardware of each OS in a PC.

### 6 Press a key, select **Yes** and press **⏪**.

- Switch to Communication mode automatically.

### 7 Update microSD Memory Card Manager Information.

- Refer to P. 327 for details.

## To play i-motion with i-motion player

### 1 In stand-by, press **⏪** [9] [1] [3], press **⏪** [7], select a song from the **Multimedia** folder and play i-motion (including audio data).

- Refer to P. 304 for details on i-motion playback, P. 306 for Repeat playback, and P. 308 for Continuous play.
- Refer to P. 354 for methods of playing back with Music player.
- Up to 400 files in the **Multimedia** folder are shown. Data may not appear if data in the folder exceeds 400 items or there are data that cannot be played back.

#### Note

- Playback is stopped if call is received or alarm activates.
- Audio files may not play properly depending on the software.

## Managing Playlist

User playlist created by FOMA terminal is available for playback on the FOMA terminal.

- User playlist: Create up to ten playlists. Register up to 99 songs per playlist.

## Creating Playlist

### 1 In the song list screen of Chaku-uta full®/data in **Multimedia**, select a song and press **⏪** [2] [Add to playlist].

### 2 Select a saving method.

To save one	[1]
To save multiple ones collectively	[2] → select a song <b>⏪</b> (repeatable) → <b>⏪</b> [Confirm] ● Press <b>⏪</b> [SelAll]/ <b>⏪</b> [ClrAll] to select or clear all.
To save all	[3] → <b>Yes</b> → <b>⏪</b>

### 3 Save.

To create a new playlist and save	<b>⏪</b> [New] → enter a playlist name → <b>⏪</b> ● Enter up to 50 characters for a playlist name.
To add songs to a playlist	Select a playlist → <b>⏪</b> [Add]
To overwrite songs saved in a playlist	Select a playlist → <b>⏪</b> [Ovrwrite] → <b>Yes</b> → <b>⏪</b>

## Play a playlist

- 1 In stand-by, press **Ⓞ** **9** **1** **2**, select **Playlist** and press **Ⓞ**.
- 2 Select a playlist and press **Ⓜ** [Play].
  - To select and play back a song in a playlist, press **Ⓞ**, select a song and press **Ⓞ**.

## Related Operations

### Create a new playlist <New playlist>

- 1 In the User playlist screen, press **Ⓜ** or **Ⓜ** **1** **1**.
- 2 Enter the playlist name **▶** **Ⓞ**.

### Copy a playlist <Copy>

In the User playlist screen, select a playlist **▶** **Ⓜ** **4** **▶** enter a playlist name **▶** **Ⓞ**.

### Edit a playlist name <Edit playlist name>

In the User playlist screen, select a playlist **▶** **Ⓜ** **1** **2** **▶** edit a playlist name **▶** **Ⓞ**.

### Add songs to a playlist <Add song>

- 1 In the User playlist screen, select a playlist **▶** **Ⓞ** **▶** **Ⓜ** or **Ⓜ** **1**.
- 2 Select a folder **▶** **Ⓞ** **▶** select a song **▶** **Ⓜ**.

### Move playlist order upward <Move playlist ( )>

In the User playlist screen, select a playlist **▶** **Ⓜ** or **Ⓜ** **3**.

### Delete playlists <Delete>

- 1 In the User playlist screen, select a playlist **▶** **Ⓜ** **2**.
- 2 To delete one playlist, press **1**.
  - To delete multiple playlists collectively: Press **2** **▶** select a playlist **Ⓞ** (repeatable) **▶** **Ⓜ** **▶** enter terminal security code **▶** **Ⓞ**.
  - To delete all playlists: Press **3** **▶** enter terminal security code **▶** **Ⓞ**.
- 3 Select **Yes** **▶** **Ⓞ**.

### Delete songs saved in a playlist <Delete>

- 1 In the User playlist screen, select a playlist **▶** **Ⓞ** **▶** select a song **▶** **Ⓜ** **2**.
- 2 To delete one song, press **1**.
  - To delete multiple songs collectively: Press **2** **▶** select a song **Ⓞ** (repeatable) **▶** **Ⓜ**.
  - To delete all songs: Press **3**.
- 3 Select **Yes** **▶** **Ⓞ**.

### Shuffle songs saved in a playlist <Shuffle>

- 1 In the User playlist screen, select a playlist **▶** **Ⓞ** **▶** **Ⓜ** **3**.
- 2 Select a song to be moved **Ⓞ** select a destination **Ⓞ** (repeatable) **▶** **Ⓜ**.

### Update a playlist <Update playlist>

In the User playlist screen, select a playlist **▶** **Ⓞ** **▶** **Ⓜ** **8** **▶** **Yes** **▶** **Ⓞ**.

## Related Operations

### Note (Related operations)

#### Deleting songs saved in a playlist

- The original songs are not deleted even if a song is deleted from a playlist.

#### Updating a playlist

- In the following cases, songs are deleted from a playlist when the playlist is updated.
  - When an original data is deleted/transferred
  - When microSD Memory Card is not inserted although a song in microSD Memory Card was added to a playlist
- A song which has reached the limitations of number of replays, expiration date or replay period is not deleted even if a playlist is updated.

## SD-Audio

### Using SD-Audio

Use SD-Jukebox or PC to save songs from a purchased CD to the microSD Memory Card and play on the FOMA terminal. microSD Memory Cards are sold separately. Purchase a microSD Memory Card at home electronics shops (☎ P. 318).

- The music data that can be played back using SD-Audio are as follows.

Type	Software	Format
SD-Audio data	SD-Jukebox	SD-Audio compatible AAC

- Songs saved on the microSD Memory Card can be used for personal use only.
- Refrain from infringing upon intellectual property rights of a third party's copyrighted material.
- Do not copy or transfer songs saved on the microSD Memory Card to a PC or any other medium.
- Use FM transmitter to play back songs with an FM radio and others (☎ P. 361).

### SD-Jukebox

SD-Jukebox can be purchased in the following web page.

[http://www.sense.panasonic.co.jp/PanaSense/special/soft/sd\\_jukebox/](http://www.sense.panasonic.co.jp/PanaSense/special/soft/sd_jukebox/)

SD-Jukebox compatible OS are Windows 2000 and Windows XP. Refer to the following web page for details on the system requirements.

<http://panasonic.jp/support/software/sdjb/>

## Saving Music Data to microSD Memory Card

Connect the FOMA terminal and PC using FOMA USB cable (sold separately) and save music data to microSD Memory Card.

- SD Memory Card readers/writers can also be used. However, the reader/writer must support copyright protection function.

- 1 Install SD-Jukebox on the PC.**
- 2 Insert microSD Memory Card in the FOMA terminal and set FOMA terminal to *microSD mode* (P. 326).**
- 3 Connect the FOMA terminal to PC with the FOMA USB cable.**
- 4 Start SD-Jukebox and insert audio CD in the PC.**
- 5 Select songs to save and copy to microSD Memory Card.**
  - Refer to SD-Jukebox help for operation methods.
- 6 Disconnect FOMA USB cable from the FOMA terminal after copying the song.**
  - To disconnect the FOMA USB cable, follow the safe disconnecting method for hardware of each OS in a PC.

- 7 Press any key, select Yes and press .**
  - Switch to Communication mode automatically.

## Playing Back Songs with SD-Audio

Play back the music data saved in the **SD-AUDIO** folder of the microSD Memory Card in AAC format.

- 1 In stand-by, press  9 3 2.**
- 2 Press  [Play].**
  - The song previously played resumes from the spot when stopped.

## Key operations during playback

	When FOMA terminal is open	When FOMA terminal is closed
To pause	 [Pause]	-
To adjust volume (Volume 0 to 10)	 (softer) or  (louder) ● Keep key pressed to adjust volume continuously.	 (softer) or  (louder)
To play previous song/To return to beginning of song	 ● If playback time is less than approximately two seconds, the previous song is played. If playback time is approximately two seconds or more, the song returns to the beginning. ● Keep key pressed for fast reverse.	 (for 1+ seconds) ● If playback time is less than approximately two seconds, the previous song is played. If playback time is approximately two seconds or more, the song returns to the beginning.
To play next song	 ● Keep key pressed for fast forward.	 (for 1+ seconds)
To turn FM transmitter ON/OFF		-
To end SD-Audio	 or  → Yes →	-
To display Submenu		-
To scroll the sub display	-	 ● The title and artist's name are not scrolled if they are 14 single-byte (7 double-byte) characters or less.

- Press a dial key ( to ) to jump to a location assigned to the key and resume playback. Press  during playback to return to the beginning of song. Press  to  to jump to locations divided by one-eighth increments of the recording time. Press  to jump to the end of song. However, it may not be possible to jump depending on songs.
- When Manner playback is set to **ON**, the volume over 6 is changed into 5 (Change the volume from Volume 0 to 5).
- If the FM transmitter output is set to **ON** when a flat-plug earphone set (sold separately) is not connected, the volume cannot be adjusted with the FOMA terminal. Adjust it with an FM receiver.

## When connecting a flat-plug earphone set (sold separately)

- The following operation is available with a flat-plug stereo earphone set (sold separately) or a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately).

To play/ To pause	Press a switch. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Alternates each time the switch is pressed.</li></ul>
----------------------	---

### Note

- When the battery level does not indicate    , a confirmation screen appears to select whether to play or not when playback resumes or during playback. Select **Yes** to play. Also a confirmation screen may appear depending on the use even when the battery level indicates .
- Playback may stop if a call is received, alarm activates or other function is operated during playback.
- Using other functions during playback may cause music to skip.
- During SD-Audio playback, the history information of the last song played (track number and playback time) is retained in the microSD Memory Card. Playback resumes from the ending point the next time the song is played. However, when SD-Audio is ended after a playlist is switched, the next playback starts with the first song of the switched playlist. If songs on the microSD Memory Card are deleted or added with the FOMA terminal or PC, the history information is cleared and may be used for different files.
- When the battery pack or the microSD Memory Card is removed during SD-Audio playback, the history information of the last played back song is not retained. If a song is deleted or sorted, the history information is cleared.
- Since a song is composed of two-second units, if the playback is stopped, the stopped position and the resumed position may not be the same.
- When **Function lock** is applied to multimedia, enter terminal security code to activate SD-Audio.
- During SD-Audio playback, the microSD Memory Card cannot be used with other functions.
- While microSD Memory Card is in use with other functions, SD-Audio cannot be started up.

## Related Operations

### Set Repeat/Shuffle playback

<Set playback mode>

- 1 While music is paused/playing, press   .
- 2 Press  to repeat all songs.
  - To set to normal playback: Press .
  - To repeat one song: Press .
  - To set to Shuffle: Press .
  - To set to Repeat shuffle: Press .

### Set Manner playback <Manner playback>

- While music is paused/playing, press    .

## Related Operations

### Set Surround <Surround>

- While music is paused, press    .

### Set Playback screen <Playback screen>

- 1 While music is paused, press  .
- 2 To set to Pattern1, press 
  - To set to Pattern2: Press .
  - To set to Pattern3: Press .
  - To set an image: Press   select folder   .

### Edit title or artist name <Edit track info>

- 1 While music is paused, press  
  - Edit in the playlist screen: Select a song **Song list** in the playlist   select a song  .
- 2 To edit title, press   
  - To edit artist name: Press   .

### Note (Related operations)

#### Manner playback

- If the FM transmitter output is set to **ON** when a flat-plug earphone set (sold separately) is not connected, the setting is not available.

#### Surround

- When SD-Audio is activated, the movie/i-motion is played with surround sound **ON** when Stereo effects ( P. 120) is set to **Surround** and **OFF** when a setting other than **Surround** is set. Set Surround **ON/OFF** while music is paused. The settings are applied to Stereo effects.

#### Edit info

- When songs are saved from audio CDs to microSD Memory Card, title (double-byte), title (single-byte), artist (double-byte), artist (single-byte), album (double-byte), album (single-byte) and genre are set.
- Edit title (double-byte) and artist (double-byte). Character limit for title/artist is 125 characters in total. Title (single-byte), artist's name (single-byte), album (double-byte), album (single-byte) and genre cannot be viewed on the FOMA terminal.
- If data is included in the items that cannot be viewed on the FOMA terminal, the number of characters that can be edited is decreased.

## Using Playlist <Playlist>

Use a saved playlist to play back.

- Display Song list and user playlists made with SD-Jukebox.
- Save up to 99 songs in one user playlist.

### 1 While music is paused, press [Current playlist].

- Proceed to step 4 to select a song from current playlist. Also, available to select it while playing music.

### 2 Press [Playlist].

- Alternatively, press  to view a playlist.

### 3 Select a playlist and press **[Enter]**.

- Select a playlist and press **[Enter]** to see properties of a playlist.

### 4 Select song to play and press **[Play]**.

#### Related Operations

##### Delete music data <Delete track>

- 1 Select *Song list* in the playlist ▶ **[Enter]** ▶ select a song ▶ **[Enter]** **[3]**.
- 2 To delete one song, press **[1]**.
  - To delete songs collectively: Press **[2]** ▶ enter terminal security code ▶ **[Enter]** ▶ select song **[Enter]** (repeatable) ▶ **[Enter]**.
  - To delete all songs: Press **[3]** ▶ enter terminal security code ▶ **[Enter]**.
- 3 Select **Yes** ▶ **[Enter]**.

##### Shuffle songs in the playlist <Shuffle>

- Select *Song list* in the playlist ▶ **[Enter]** ▶ **[Enter]** ▶ **[4]** ▶ select song to be moved ▶ select destination **[Enter]** (repeatable) ▶ **[Enter]**.

##### View detailed information <File property>

- In the playlist screen, select a song ▶ **[Enter]** **[6]**.
- To end checking: Press **[Enter]** or **[CLR]**.

#### Note (Related operations)

##### Deleting track/Shuffling

- Deleting and Shuffling are not available while showing user playlists.

### Searching tracks in a playlist

#### <Search track>

- 1 While music is paused, press **[Enter]** **[5]** **[Search track]** in the playlist screen and select a search method.

Search by title	<b>[1]</b> → enter title → <b>[Enter]</b>
Search by artist	<b>[2]</b> → enter artist's name → <b>[Enter]</b>
Select from search history	<b>[3]</b> → select search history → <b>[Enter]</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● The latest five search results are displayed.</li></ul>

- To delete a track from the search results list: Press **[Enter]** **[1]** → select deleting method. Deleting a track from the search results list does not mean deleting the source track data.
- To start over: Press **[Enter]** **[2]**.
- To return to the playlist screen: Press **[Enter]** **[4]** or **[CLR]**.
- The search history is cleared when SD-Audio is ended.

### 2 Select a track to play and press **[Play]**.

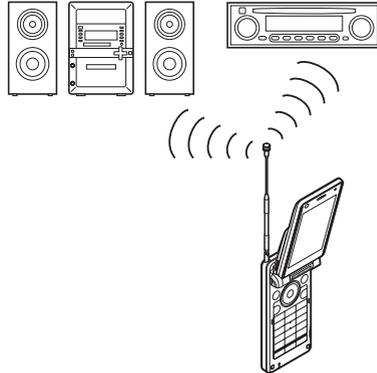
- When **[Enter]** **[1]** [Show srch results] is pressed during playback, the screen returns to the search results list.

#### FM Transmitter Out

#### Using FM Transmitter

Default setting **OFF**

Transmit the sound and music of One Seg, Video player, Music player or SD-Audio from the FOMA terminal with FM radio waves, receive and play back with an FM radio, an in-vehicle FM tuner, etc.



- Pull out a TV antenna of the FOMA terminal when using FM transmitter (**[P. 273]**).

### 1 Activate a function to be sent to start data.

- Refer to the page of each function for details on the startup method.
  - One Seg (**[P. 275]**)
  - Video player (**[P. 311]**)
  - Music player (**[P. 354]**)
  - SD-Audio (**[P. 358]**)



For Music player

### 2 Press **[Enter]**, select **FM transmitter out** and press **[Enter]**.

### 3 Press **[1]** [ON].

- FM radio waves are transmitted.
- The FOMA terminal does not sound while FM radio waves are transmitted.
- To disable, press **[2]** [OFF].

- For Music player or SD-Audio, in the playback screen, press [FM/ON]/ [FM/OFF] to switch between **ON** and **OFF**.
- When Auto out on start is set to **ON**, FM radio waves are automatically transmitted if each of the functions is activated.

## 4 Tune received frequency of FM receiver into transmit frequency of FM transmitter.

- The default setting for transmit frequency of FM transmitter is **77.4 MHz**. Change on the Frequency setting ( P. 362).
- The volume cannot be adjusted with the FOMA terminal during FM transmitter output. Adjust it with an FM receiver. Additionally, make sure that the volume of the FM receiver is not too loud before ending the FOMA transmitter function.

### Note

- FM transmitter uses weak waves. For this reason, a noise may occur or the sound may be interrupted due to the conditions of an FM receiver, surrounding environment, the installation of the receiver or the location of its antenna. In such cases, change the direction of the FOMA terminal's TV antenna for clearer hearing. Note that the noise or the sound interruption may not be solved.
- When there are objects blocking between the FOMA terminal and a receiver or metallic objects near the FOMA terminal, a noise may occur or the sound may be interrupted.
- FM transmitter is not available overseas.
- When a call or mail is received or an alarm is activated during FM transmitter output, FM transmitter output is interrupted. In such cases, the ring tone or the alarm sounds from the FOMA terminal speakers. FM transmitter output is restarted when ending the operation for each function.
- FM transmitter is not available in the following cases.
  - While in Self mode
  - While the FOMA terminal is connected to an external device
  - When Music player or SD-Audio is used with a flat-plug earphone set (sold separately)

## Setting FM Transmit Frequency

<Frequency Setting>

Default setting **77.4 MHz**

Change transmit frequency of FM transmitter. Select frequency other than that of FM broadcasting of your area.

**1** Activate a function to be sent, press , select **FM transmitter out** and press .

**2** Press [3] [Frequency setting] and select frequency.

Freq 1 (77.4 MHz)	
Freq 2 (78.3 MHz)	
Freq 3 (79.0 MHz)	
Freq 4 (84.1 MHz)	
Freq 5 (85.0 MHz)	

## Setting FM Transmitter to ON Automatically <Auto Out on Start>

Default setting **OFF**

Set to automatically transmit FM radio waves when each function is activated.

- Set **ON/OFF** by function. This setting is enabled from the next startup.

**1** Activate a function to be sent, press , select **FM transmitter out** and press .

**2** Press [4] [Auto out on start] and select **ON/OFF**.

To transmit at startup	
To not transmit at startup	

# Other Useful Functions

- Checking Settings ..... <Check Settings>364
- Multiaccess..... <Multiaccess>364
- Using Multi Assistant (Multitask) ..... <Multi Assistant (Multitask)>364
- Retrieving the Recently Used Function or File..... <Active Marker>365
- Turning Power On Automatically ..... <Auto Power ON>367
- Turning Power Off Automatically ..... <Auto Power OFF>368
- Sounding Alarm After Set Time Passes ..... <Timer>368
- Sounding Alarm at Set Time ..... <Alarm>369
- Managing Schedules ..... <Schedule>371
- Saving ToDo Lists ..... <ToDo List>377
- Accessing Functions Quickly ..... <Shortcut Menu>380
- Saving Own Name and Image ..... <Owner Information>381
- Recording Other's Voice During Call or Own Voice When in Stand-by  
..... <Voice Memo (During Call)/Voice Memo (Stand-by)>382
- Using as Calculator ..... <Calculator>383
- Displaying the Call Duration/Charge ..... <Talk Time/Cost>384
- Entering Memos ..... <Text Memo>385
- Using Earphone/Microphone with Switch..... <Earphone/Microphone with Switch>386
- Answering Calls Automatically with Earphone ..... <Set Auto Answer>388
- Resetting Settings ..... <Reset Settings>388
- Deleting All Saved Data ..... <Delete User Data>388

## Check Settings

### Checking Settings

Check settings for various functions.

**1** In stand-by, press **Ⓞ** **3** **1** **4**, enter terminal security code and press **Ⓞ**.

**2** Select function to check.

- Settings appear. Press **Ⓞ** to turn the page.
- Press **Ⓞ** and the previous screen reappears.

Sound	phone ring	vol	1/14
Phone ring tone			
V. phone ring tone		Volume 5	
Payphone ring tone		Volume 5	
User unset		Volume 5	

When **Sound** is selected

Sound	<b>1</b>	i-mode	<b>6</b>
Display	<b>2</b>	Full Browser	<b>7</b>
General settings	<b>3</b>	Mail/Message	<b>8</b>
		i-appli	<b>9</b>
Phone settings	<b>4</b>	ToruCa	<b>10</b>
Security	<b>5</b>		

## Multiaccess

### Multiaccess

Use voice communications and some packet transmissions (receiving i-mode mail or data communications with a PC) simultaneously with the FOMA terminal. This is called Multiaccess.

- Receiving SMS during communication (such as voice call) is available besides Multiaccess.
- Packet transmissions other than the above (i-mode and sending i-mode mail) are available during voice calls.
- i-mode mail cannot be received during Videophone call. i-mode mail is held at the i-mode center.

### Multiaccess Compatibility

Refer to "Multiaccess Combinations" on P. 434 for the main combinations of transmission functions available for simultaneous use on the FOMA terminal.

### Receiving i-mode Mail or SMS During Calls

**1** Receive i-mode mail or SMS during a voice call.

- **✉**, **📧** or **📧** appears on the display.
- Alternatively, continue the call and read i-mode mail or SMS afterwards.

**2** During a call, press **MULTI** to read i-mode mail or SMS.

- Refer to P. 364 for instructions on Multi Assistant.
- Press **MULTI** and voice call screen reappears.



**3** Select **Mail**, press **Ⓞ**, select **Inbox** and press **Ⓞ**.

**4** Select folder, press **Ⓞ**, select mail and press **Ⓞ**.

- Press **MULTI**, select **Voice call**, press **Ⓞ** and voice call screen reappears.

## Making a Call During i-mode

Make a voice call with Phone To (AV Phone To) while in i-mode.

- i-mode is disconnected when dialing Videophone or PushTalk.

**1** Select phone number from sites or Internet web pages and press **Ⓞ**.

**2** Select **Yes**, press **Ⓞ** and press **📞** or **Ⓞ** [Call].

- Number is dialed while connected to i-mode.

**3** Press **📞** after call.

- The site or Internet web page reappears.

## Multi Assistant (Multitask)

### Using Multi Assistant (Multitask)

**Multi Assistant (Multitask)** is a function that allows multiple functions to be used simultaneously, such as composing of a message during a voice call or while watching One Seg.

- Four or more functions may be used simultaneously when voice call or data transmission is received.
- An icon for the activated function (Multitask display) appears in the upper part of the display (☞ P. 30).

## Retrieving a New Function

Start a different function while using a function such as voice call.

- Other functions are not available with Multi Assistant when in stand-by, during Videophone call or PushTalk transmission, camera or voice recorder is activated, mail is being sent or received, Ir transmission is in progress, alarm or timer is being set, microSD manager, other setting screen, Top menu, Zoom menu or Shortcut menu is open.

## 1 Press **[MULTI]** during a voice call or while using a function.

- When application icon selection screen does not appear, press **[Switch]** multiple times.
- Alternatively, press **[Switch]** to switch or select the function to use when the application list selection screen appears.
- When Multi Assistant is not available, Multi Assistant screen does not appear even when **[MULTI]** is pressed.
- Press **[TV]** during a voice call or while using a function or set the FOMA terminal to the Cycloid position to activate One Seg.



Application icon selection screen



Application list selection screen

## 2 Select the icon for the function to use and press **[OK]**.

- Move the cursor with **[Up/Down]**.
- Unavailable functions cannot be used.
- Select an item and press **[OK]** when the function list appears. Refer to the corresponding page for details on each function.
- To make a voice call, press **[Call]** in Multi Assistant screen, enter the phone number and press **[Call]**.
- To switch the function icon position on the application icon selection screen, select a function icon, press **[Move]**, select destination position and press **[OK]**. Press **[Reset]** to undo.

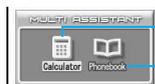


When **Phonebook** is selected

## Switching Screens

Switch between screens when multiple functions are being used with Multi Assistant.

## 1 Press **[MULTI]** while multiple functions are in use.



- First function
- Second function

Application icon switching screen

- Icons for functions in use appear in the Application icon switching screen (When four or more functions are in use, the application list switching screen appears).
- Press **[TV]** to switch screens between running One Seg and running another function.

## 2 Select the function to use with **[Up/Down]** and press **[OK]**.

- When four or more functions are operating, select the function with **[Up/Down]** and press **[OK]**.

## Ending the Function

### Ending the shown function

## 1 Press **[End]** while multiple functions are in use.

- The shown function ends and another function in use appears.

### Ending the selected function

## 1 Press **[MULTI]** while multiple functions are in use.

## 2 Select the function with **[Up/Down]** and press **[End]**.

- When four or more functions are operating, select the function with **[Up/Down]** and press **[End]**.
- To end all functions, press **[End all]**, select **Yes** and press **[OK]**. Select **No** and press **[OK]** to return to the functions operating in step 1.

## Active Marker

## Retrieving the Recently Used Function or File

Easily retrieve functions, pages and images that were recently used from stand-by. The current day's schedule and ToDo list details are also available.

Icon	Function	Explanation
	i-mode history	The URL and title for five i-mode sites most recently accessed from the i-mode menu are recorded. Select from the history list to access the same sites quickly (Each site is recorded as one history item).
	Full Browser history	The URL and title for five sites most recently accessed from the Internet (Full Browser) are recorded. Select from the history list to access the same sites quickly (Each site is recorded as one history item).
	MUSIC history	A song most recently played with SD-Audio and Music player is recorded. Select <b>Playback SD-audio</b> or <b>Playback MUSIC</b> to play back easily (Voice only i-motion (melodies with no video) is not recorded).
	Show schedule	Up to five of the earliest schedule entries for the current day and ToDo list tasks that begin/end on the current day appear. Select from the list to view the details screen.

Icon	Function	Explanation
	Mail history	The five messages most recently viewed are recorded. Select from the history to view message screen.
	My Picture history	The five images most recently viewed with Image Viewer are recorded. Select from the history list to view (Flash movies and animated GIFs are not recorded).
	i-motion history	The five i-motion most recently played with i-motion player are recorded. Select from the history list to play back.
	i-appli history	The five most recently activated saved i-appli are recorded. Select from the history list to activate (Stand-by i-appli is not recorded).

## 1 In stand-by, press .

- When calendar is shown in stand-by, press , disable the calendar display and press .



Desktop icon selection screen

## 2 Select desktop icon, press , select history and press .

- History does not appear for desktop icons without history.
- Selected function activates.
- Terminal security code is required while Function lock is set for the selected function.
- When the selected file or message has been deleted or moved, **Unable to start. May be deleted or moved** or **Unable to start. May be deleted** appears and cannot be opened. In addition, when My Picture history or i-motion history is selected, the image displayed in the Display calendar/date area switches to a substitute image. If there is no i-appli corresponding to the selected history item, **No requested software** appears.
- My Picture history and i-motion history data are shown and can be used even if moved within folders in the FOMA terminal handset.

### Calendar/Date area

- When the history of **Show schedule** is being displayed, calendar appears. If set to **My Picture history** or **i-motion history**, selected image appears. In other cases, **Disp calendar/date** settings are followed.

## Changing the Active Marker Design

### Changing the Active marker design <Screen theme>

Set a uniform theme for desktop icon title images and actions.

#### 1 In the desktop icon selection screen, press [1] [Screen theme] and select theme.

LUMINOUS	
LIGHTNING	
CRYSTAL	

### Setting background of Active marker <Set background>

Default setting 待受画像 1

Change the Active marker background.

- Use JPEG/GIF images sized 240 (W) × 400 (H) pixels or smaller (Flash movies and animated GIFs are not available).
- The set background does not appear if the FOMA terminal is in the Cycloid position.

#### 1 In the desktop icon selection screen, press [2] [Set background], select folder, press , select a still picture and press .

- To check still picture, select a still picture and press . Press  and the previous screen reappears.

### Setting Display calendar/date <Display calendar/date>

- When the history of **Show schedule** is being displayed, calendar appears. If set to **My Picture history** or **i-motion history**, selected image appears.

#### 1 In the desktop icon selection screen, press [3] [Disp calendar/date] and select content to show.

To show calendar	
To show date	
To not show	

### Deleting history <Delete history>

- Schedule entries cannot be deleted.

#### 1 In the desktop icon selection screen, press [4] [Delete history] and select deletion method.

To delete all in the category	
To delete all	 → enter terminal security code → 

## Showing desktop icons

<Set display category>

Default setting *All desktop icons are shown*

Set to show desktop icon by function.

- 1 In the desktop icon selection screen, press **[\*] 5 [Set disp category]**, enter terminal security code and press **[\*]**.



- 2 Select item to show/hide, press **[\*]** and **[\*]** [Complete].

- indicates show and  indicates hide.
- Press **[\*]** to switch between show and hide.
- Press **[\*]** [SelAll]/**[\*]** [ClrAll] to select or clear all.

## Auto Power ON

### Turning Power On Automatically

Default setting *OFF* (disabled)

Turn FOMA terminal on automatically at a specified time.

- Auto power ON settings are repeated daily until disabled.
- Disable Auto power ON before turning the handset off when near high precision instruments, aboard aircraft, in hospitals or in other locations where use is prohibited.

- 1 In stand-by, press **[\*] 3 3 1**.

- Set the correct date and time in advance (**[\*] P. 45**).



- 2 Select *Auto power ON*, press **[\*]**, select *ON* and press **[\*]**.
- 3 Select *Time*, press **[\*]**, enter time to activate (four digits) and press **[\*]**.
  - Use 24-hour format.
  - Move the cursor with **[\*]**.
- 4 Select *Alarm settings*, press **[\*]**, select *ON* and press **[\*]**.

- To disable the alarm, select *OFF*, press **[\*]** and proceed to step 7.

- 5 Select *Alarm tone*, press **[\*]**, select folder, press **[\*]**, select alarm tone and press **[\*]** [OK].

- To preview alarm tone, select an alarm tone and press **[\*]**. To stop, press **[\*]**.

- 6 Select *Alarm volume*, press **[\*]**, adjust volume with **[\*]** (louder) or **[\*]** (softer) and press **[\*]**.

- 7 Press **[\*]** [Complete].

- *Alarm does not sound until PIN1 code is entered if Set PIN1 code is ON* appears when alarm setting is set to *ON*. Press **[\*]** [Agree] to set Auto power ON.

## When the set time arrives

Power automatically turns on and *Auto power ON It's time* appears.

- Message also appears when power is already on.
- When PIN1 code settings (**[\*] P. 146**) are set to *ON*, the PIN1 code entry screen appears and *Auto power ON It's time* appears after entering PIN1 code.
- Alarm sounds for approximately 15 seconds if set. Press a key other than **[\*]** and **[\*]** to stop.
- While engaged in a call or receiving a call, alarm sounds after the call is disconnected.

## Note

- If Auto power ON and *Alarm* (Alarm/Schedule alarm/ToDo alarm/Reception reserve alarm/Recording reserve alarm) are set for the same time, Auto power ON takes priority. Wait a while (approximately 15 seconds) or press a key to clear the Auto power ON notification screen, and the alarm activates.
- If Auto power ON and *Auto power OFF* are set for the same time, power turns on if FOMA terminal is off and turns off if on. However, when power is on, power may turn on immediately after power turns off.
- Auto power ON may not function when the battery pack is removed and the power is turned off.

## Turning the Handset On at the Alarm Time and Sounding Alarm

<Link Alarm/Power ON>

Default setting *OFF*

- When Auto power ON and Link alarm/power ON are set for the same time, Auto power ON is prioritized.

- 1 In stand-by, press **[\*] 3 3 3** and **[\*]** [ON].

- 2 Press **[\*]** [Agree].

## Turning Power Off Automatically

Default setting OFF (disabled)

Turn FOMA terminal off automatically at a specified time.

- Auto power OFF settings are repeated daily until disabled.

**1** In stand-by, press **⓪** **3** **3** **2**.

- Set the correct date and time in advance (☞ P. 45).

**2** Select **Auto power OFF**, press **⓪**, select **ON** and press **⓪**.

**3** Select **Time**, press **⓪**, enter time to activate (four digits) and press **⓪**.

- Use 24-hour format.
- Move the cursor with **⓪**.

**4** Press **⓪** [Complete].

- Auto power OFF is set.

### When the set time arrives

If other operations are performed at set time (i.e. not in stand-by: i-mode, Mail, Alarm (ringing), Calculator, Schedule, ToDo, Timer, Melody player, One Seg, Continuous play/Slideshow/ full-screen of Data box, etc.), the confirmation screen appears. Select **Yes** or wait for approximately one minute to turn off the handset.



Confirmation screen

Select **No** to continue the operations.

- If in a call, the confirmation screen appears after the call is ended and the handset is returned to the screen before the call.
- If software is being updated (☞ P. 452), the confirmation screen appears after software update is completed and returning to stand-by.
- While the confirmation screen is displayed, timer-set alarms for starting or recording programs are not activated. In addition, recording does not start.

### Note

- If Auto power OFF and **Alarm** (Alarm/Schedule alarm/ToDo alarm/Reception reserve alarm/Recording reserve alarm) are set for the same time, handset turns off and alarm does not sound (However, if handset is restarted immediately or **No** is selected in the confirmation screen, alarm sounds).
- Handset does not turn off at time set for Auto power OFF if i-appli is running. Auto power OFF confirmation screen appears when i-appli is ended. If no operations are made, handset automatically turns off.

### Note

- Handset does not turn off at time set for Auto power OFF if **Ir exchange** function is activated. Auto power OFF confirmation screen appears when Ir exchange is ended. If no operations are made, handset automatically turns off.
- If **Auto power ON** and Auto power OFF are set for the same time, power turns on if FOMA terminal is off and turns off if on. However, when power is on, power may turn on immediately after power turns off.

### Timer

## Sounding Alarm After Set Time Passes

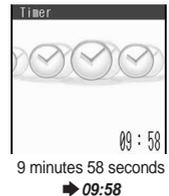
Sound an alarm or light LED after a set amount of time passes.

- While alarm sounds, press a key other than **TV** and **End** to stop.
- Set the timer sound and ring duration with Timer sound of Sound settings (☞ P. 118).
- If Vibration mode (☞ P. 121) is set, vibrator operates along with alarm.

**1** In stand-by, press **⓪** **9** **2** **8** **3**.

**2** Enter time and press **⓪** [Start].

- The two digits on the left are minutes and the two on the right are seconds.
- Set between 1 second and 99 minutes 59 seconds.
- Timer ends if power is turned off.



To stop	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Press <b>⓪</b> [Start] to resume.</li> <li>• Press <b>⓪</b> [Reset] to reset to <b>3 minutes</b>.</li> </ul>
To disable	<b>⓪</b>

### Note

- Also set notice LED actions (☞ P. 140).
- Timer continues even when a call or mail is received. However, if the time arrives while the timer is not shown such as during a call or when receiving mail, the alarm does not sound.

## Related Operations

Use timer from stand-by <Timer>

In stand-by, enter time (1 to 99 minutes) ▶

**⓪** **3**.

## Alarm

### Sounding Alarm at Set Time

Activate melody, Chaku-uta full® or movie/i-motion at the set time/day.

- If Vibration mode (☞ P. 121) is set, vibrator operates along with alarm.

## Setting Alarms

### Default setting

Alarm tone: 着信音 1, Alarm volume: **Volume 5**, Snooze setting: **OFF**, Ring duration: **15 seconds**

Basic setting methods for alarm time and day are described below.

- Set the operations when alarm is activated (☞ P. 369). For the settings, change the alarm volume and tone, display a message and a phone number or perform other operations. Also, change stereo effects (☞ P. 120) and an LED (☞ P. 140).

Message	Show messages when alarm operates. Enter up to 60 single-byte (30 double-byte) characters.
Contacts	Show phone numbers when alarm operates. Make calls when alarm operates.
Alarm tone	Change alarm tone. Melody, Chaku-uta full® and movie/i-motion are available.
Alarm volume	Change the volume.
Snooze setting	Set the number of times to ring alarm and its interval.
Ring duration	Change the duration to ring alarm.

## 1 In stand-by, press **9** **2** **8** **4** and enter registration number.

- Set the correct date and time in advance (☞ P. 45).
- Save up to nine alarms. Alarms are repeated until disabled when set to activate everyday or if the day of the week setting is set to repeat.



Alarm setting screen

## 2 Press **1** [Enter Time], enter activation time (four digits) and press **0**.

- Use 24-hour format.
- Move cursor with **0**.

## 3 Press **2** [Set repeat] and select a repeat method.

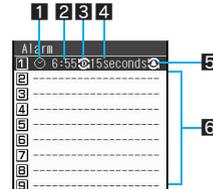
To sound once	<b>1</b>
	● Setting is disabled after activation.

To sound on specified day	<b>2</b> → select day <b>0</b> (repeatable) → <b>0</b> ● If a check is placed in <b>Exclude holidays</b> , alarm does not activate for set vacations or holidays. ● To disable, select day and press <b>0</b> . ● Press <b>0</b> [SelAll]/ <b>0</b> [ClrAll] to select or clear all.
To sound every day	<b>3</b>

## 4 Press **0** [Complete].

- Press **0** to end setting (**0** appears in stand-by display).

### Setting details



**1** Appears when alarm is set

**2** Time

**3** Repeat frequency

<b>1</b>	Once only
<b>2</b>	Set day of week
<b>3</b>	Daily

**4** Duration of alarm

**5** Appears when snooze is set

**6** Unsaved

### Note

- When multiple alarm functions are set to the same time, the alarms are prioritized in the following order.

	Priority (high → low)
Alarm function	Recording → Reception → Alarm → Schedule/ToDo list

- One-time alarm can also be easily set on the current day (the following day if set time has passed) (Quick alarm).

## Related Operations

### Set alarm from stand-by <Quick alarm>

In stand-by, enter time (ex. 2:05 PM: 1405) ▶ **0** **2**.

### Display messages <Message>

In the alarm setting screen, press **3** ▶ enter message ▶ **0**.

### Display contacts <Contacts>

**1** In the alarm setting screen, press **4**.

**2** Press **1** ▶ select name ▶ **0**.

- To input directly: Press **2** ▶ enter phone number ▶ **0**.

## Related Operations

### Change alarm tone <Alarm tone>

- 1 In the alarm setting screen, press **[5]**.
- 2 Press **[1]** [Melody].
  - To set Chaku-uta full®: Press **[2]**.
  - To set movie/i-motion: Press **[3]**.
  - To not set: Press **[4]**.
- 3 Refer to step 2 on P. 116 and select alarm tone.

### Change alarm volume <Alarm volume>

- 1 In the alarm setting screen, press **[6]**.
- 2 Press **[↑]** (louder) or **[↓]** (softer) **[↵]**.
  - To not sound alarm: Select **Silent**.

### Set number of times and interval of alarm

#### < Snooze setting >

- 1 In the alarm setting screen, press **[7]**.
- 2 Press **[1]**.
- 3 Enter interval (two digits: 02 to 15 minutes) **[↵]** **[↵]** enter times (2 to 6) **[↵]**.

### Change ring duration <Ring duration>

In the alarm setting screen, press **[8]** **[↵]** enter ring duration (two digits: 02 to 99 seconds) **[↵]** **[↵]**.

### Note (Related operations)

#### Setting alarms from stand-by (Quick alarm)

- The alarm set is saved for the current day (the following day if set time has passed) as **Quick alarm** in Schedule with **No category**.

#### Contacts

- Contacts cannot be entered while **Keypad dial lock** is set.
- **Terminal security code** is required to use Phonebook while **Function lock** is applied to phonebook.

#### Setting alarm tone

- When **Function lock** is applied to Multimedia, **terminal security code** needs to be entered to set **Melody**, **MUSIC** or **i-motion**.

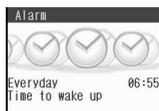
#### Snooze interval

- If a voice call is received while snoozing or snooze time arrives during a call, alarm rings immediately after the call is ended. If the set interval is not reached during the call, snoozing begins after the call is ended and the alarm rings in the set interval.

## When Set Time Arrives

### 1 Alarm sounds.

- Alarm operates in accordance with alarm tone, volume and duration settings (Saved messages and image saved as contacts in phonebook are also displayed).
- **Alarm** appears in the sub display if the FOMA terminal is closed.
- LED also flashes if Alarm/Timer LED (P. 140) are set.



- Vibrator functions with alarm if Vibration mode (P. 121) is set.
- Adjust the volume with **[↑]** (louder) or **[↓]** (softer) when volume is not set to Step.

### 2 Press a key other than **[TV]** and **[Eco]** to stop.

- Press **[⏏]** to clear the displayed screen.
- When snooze is set, alarm continues to ring in set intervals if a key other than **[⏏]** is pressed to stop alarm. When alarm is turned off by pressing **[⏏]**, snooze settings are canceled.
- Press **[☎]** to make a call to the saved contact.

### Note

- If Picture call is set for a phonebook entry with contacts set for alarm, the image appears when alarm sounds.
- When picture call and group picture call are set for a phonebook entry with contacts set for alarm, the Picture call saved in the entry has priority.
- When an i-motion with image and voice is set as alarm tone, i-motion image appears regardless of Picture call set for contacts.
- When an i-motion with voice only (melodies with no video) is set as alarm tone, the picture call set for contact appears. When an i-motion is set for Picture call, regular alarm screen appears.
- While **Memo/Schedule/ToDo/Alarm Function lock** is set, alarm does not sound at set time.
- If the time set for alarm, Schedule alarm or ToDo alarm arrives during **Ir exchange**, data transmission or **Ir remote control**, alarm activates after transmission ends and the stand-by display reappears. However, if time set arrives during **software update**, alarm may not activate even when updating is completed.

#### If alarm duration passes before step 2 is performed

- Alarm stops and a message stating alarm time has passed appears (The set alarm time appears).

#### If alarm time arrives during a call

- Alarm is activated when the call is ended and handset is returned to the screen from before the call.

#### If alarm time arrives when receiving mail

- Mail ring tone stops and Alarm is activated.

#### If alarm time arrives while in Manner mode

- In Normal manner mode, alarm tone does not sound but vibrator is activated. In Silent manner mode, alarm tone does not sound and vibrator is not activated. In Original manner mode, alarm tone and vibrator **ON** or **OFF** settings are followed. If vibrator is set to **ON** in Normal or Original manner mode, vibrator operates in **Pattern 1** even if **Vibrator** is set to **OFF**.

#### If alarm time arrives while in Public mode (Drive mode)

- Alarm tone does not sound. Called LED, vibrator and sub display are not activated.

## Note

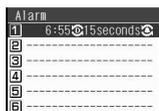
### If alarm time arrives when watching One Seg

- One Seg is interrupted and alarm is activated when the FOMA terminal is in the normal position. The display is switched to **Multi Window** and alarm is activated when in the Cycloid position. When alarm ends, the screen is returned to that for watching One Seg in either position.

## Disabling/Deleting/Changing Alarm Settings

Change/disable/delete alarm settings individually. Details are erased when alarm is deleted. Details are retained when disabled. To use the same details, set again.

- In stand-by, press **[M] [9] [2] [8] [4]** and select a registration number to disable, delete or change.



When disabled

To disable	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To disable, select a slot with ☺. When disabled, ☺ disappears.</li> </ul>
To set again	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To set again, select a slot without ☺. When set, ☺ appears and 📞 appears in stand-by.</li> </ul>
To delete	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>☺ → <b>Yes</b> → <b>[M]</b></li> <li>Details are deleted and ----- appears in Alarm list.</li> </ul>

## Registering from Zoom menu

- Set alarm time only. Other items are set in the following ways.  
Set repeat: **Daily** Message: none Contacts: none Alarm tone: the alarm tone set previously Alarm volume: **Volume 5** Snooze setting: **OFF** Ring duration: **60 seconds**

- In stand-by, press **[M]**, select **Useful func** and press **[M]**.

- Press **[M]** [Menu] to switch from Top menu or Shortcut menu.

- Select **Alarm**, press **[M]**, select a registration number and press **[M]**.

- Enter time (four digits) and press **[M]**.

- Use 24-hour format.
- Move cursor with **[←]**.

## Disabling/Deleting/Changing alarm settings from Zoom menu

- Perform step 1 of "Registering from Zoom menu" on P. 371, select **Alarm** and press **[M]**.

- Select registration number to disable, delete or change.

- Refer to step 1 of "Disabling/Deleting/Changing Alarm Settings" on P. 371 for procedure.

## Schedule

### Managing Schedules

Manage schedules by saving start date and time, end date and time, details and contacts (phone number). Sound alarm before scheduled time or show a message, phone number or still picture. Additionally, search schedules by contacts, call using the shown phone number or create mail. Easily save category icons on the icon calendar. Add details later (☞ P. 372).

- Set the correct date and time in advance (☞ P. 45).
- Save up to 300 schedules.
- Save schedules between January 1, 2000 and December 31, 2099.

## Displaying Calendar <Calendar>

Display calendar (☞ P. 126). Check saved schedules.

In addition, check the settings of timer for starting or recording TV programs on calendar (☞ P. 282).

- Japanese national holidays as stipulated in the revised National Holiday Law and Welfare Law for the Elderly (Law No. 43, 2005) are set by default (as of January 2007). Dates for Spring Equinox Day and Autumnal Equinox Day may differ because they are released on February 1 of the previous year. Holidays are shown in red.
- Add holidays and vacations and show on calendar.

- In stand-by, press **[M] [9] [2] [7] [1]**.

- Current month's calendar appears.
- Press **[M]** to close calendar.



Calendar

To show last month	[←]
To show next month	[→]

## Specifying date <Go to date>

1 In Calendar, press **[Go to date]**.



2 Enter date and press **[OK]**.

## Related Operations

### Show calendar by entering date from stand-by

In stand-by, enter date **[Go to date]**.

### Note (Related operations)

- Entered dates and calendar shown correlate as follows.
 

01 to 31	Current month (1st to 31st)
0101 to 1231	Specified date (January 1 to December 31)
20000101 to 20991231	Specified date and year (January 1, 2000 to December 31, 2099)

## Changing calendar format

<Switch view mode>

Default setting **Normal display**

- Calendar display in stand-by is not changed when calendar is changed to Icon display (Set schedules and vacation are reflected). Refer to P. 126 for details on setting stand-by calendar display.

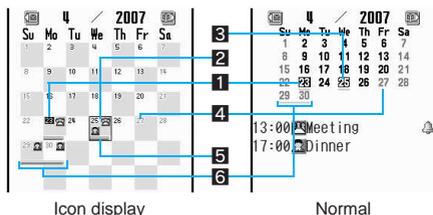
1 In Calendar, press **[Switch view mode]** and select format.

- To show a schedule, select schedule and press **[OK]** (P. 375).



To show in normal display	<b>[1]</b>
To show in icon display	<b>[2]</b>

## Calendar layout



- 1 Today (Highlighted)
- 2 Selected day (Shown in a black box)
- 3 Selected day (Shown green)
- 4 Set vacation (Shown red)
- 5 Saved schedule (Icon display by category)
  - TV icon appears for timer for starting TV programs and recording.

- 6 Schedule saved (Underlined)
  - Schedule is two or more days (Underlined)

## Saving Schedules

Basic saving methods for schedules including time and date, agenda, category and contact are explained below.

- Always set start date/time and agenda.

1 In stand-by, press **[New]**, select day and press **[New]** or **[New]**.

- When in Icon calendar, press **[New]**.
- Sound alarm (P. 373) before scheduled time or save schedules as Secret (P. 374).



Schedule saving screen

2 Select Date, press **[Go to date]**, and enter the start date of the schedule.



- To select a date from a calendar, press **[Go to date]**, select a start date and press **[OK]**.

Selected day  
Select day with **[Go to date]**.

Calendar date selection screen

3 Enter time, press **[OK]** and select a repeat method.

To save a one-time schedule	<b>[1]</b> → to step 5
To set to repeat every day	<b>[2]</b>
To save a weekly schedule	<b>[3]</b>
To save a monthly schedule	<b>[4]</b>
To save an annual schedule	<b>[5]</b>

- Use 24-hour format.
- If end date and time are entered, select **Once only**.
- To reset end date and time, press **[Reset]**.

4 Enter number of times to repeat (00 to 99) and press **[OK]**.

- 00 represents unlimited times.

5 Select **Smry**, press **[OK]**, enter summary and press **[OK]**.

- Enter up to 40 single-byte (20 double-byte) characters.

## 6 Select *Ctgr*, press , select category icon and press .

### Categories

Icon	Category	Icon	Category
	No category		Birthday
	Personal		Hobby
	Holiday		Date
	Travel		Karaoke
	Business		Party
	Meeting		Shopping
	Meals		School
	Drive		Business trip
	Exercise		Appreciation
	Anniversary		Hospital

- Selected category appears.
- Once a category is selected, the previously selected category appears first.

## 7 Select *Image*, press and select a still picture.

To set	<p>① → select folder →  → select still picture → </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To check still picture, select a still picture and press . Press  and the previous screen reappears.</li> </ul>
To not set	②

- Movies/i-motion cannot be selected.
- Title of selected still picture appears.
- Set image appears in Schedule list and schedule details screen.

## 8 Select *Cntcts*, press , select input method and set contact.

- Set contact information to show the contact in the schedule details or alarm screen, allowing for easy calling.
- Contacts are not available while Keypad dial lock is set.



To select from phonebook	<p>① → enter phone number → </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Entries without phone numbers are not available.</li> </ul>
To input directly	② → enter phone number → 

## 9 Select *Agenda*, press , enter agenda and press .

- Enter up to 200 single-byte (100 double-byte) characters.

## 10 Press [Complete].

### Note

- Refer to P. 322 for details on copying to microSD Memory Card.
- Refer to P. 332 for details on Ir exchange.
- Refer to P. 337 for details on iC transmission.
- Images registered in a schedule are deleted when the schedule is sent as an i-mode mail attachment, sent via Ir or iC transmission or copied to a microSD Memory Card.

**Note information saved in Schedule separately or transfer/store on a PC using microSD Memory Card** ( P. 318) or **DoCoMo keitai datalink** ( P. 406).

## Related Operations

### Save only category icon from icon calendar

In Calendar, press  (3) (1) (2) ▶ select day ▶  ▶ select category icon ▶ .

### Note (Related operations)

#### Contents of Schedule

Date	Selected day + set time
Summary	-
Category	Category of selected icon
Alarm	OFF
Image	-
Contacts	-
Secret	OFF
Agenda	<b>No content</b> is entered.

## Setting Alarms

Sound an alarm before the scheduled time. Also set alarm actions.

- If Vibration mode ( P. 121) is set, vibrator operates along with alarm.
- If multiple Schedule alarms are set for the same time, the set alarm sounds for the set number of times.

Alarm time	Set to sound an alarm before the scheduled time.
Ring duration	Change the duration the alarm sounds.
Alarm tone	Change alarm tone.
Alarm volume	Change alarm volume.

- Set the above in the schedule saving screen ( P. 372).

## Setting alarms

### Default setting

Alarm time: **00 minutes**, Ring duration:  
**15 seconds**, Alarm tone: 着信音 1,  
Alarm volume: **Volume 5**

- In schedule saving screen (P. 372), select **Alarm**, press **[ON]**.



Alarm setting screen

- Press **[1]** [Alarm time], enter time to sound alarm (minutes before the scheduled time: 00 to 99) and press **[OK]**.

- Press **[Complete]**.

- Schedule saving screen reappears.

## Related Operations

### Change alarm duration <Ring duration>

In the alarm setting screen, press **[2]** ▶ ring duration (two digits: 02 to 99 seconds) ▶ **[OK]**.

### Change alarm tone <Alarm tone>

- In the alarm setting screen, press **[3]**.

- Press **[1]** [Melody].

- To set Chaku-uta full®: Press **[2]**.
- To set movie/i-motion: Press **[3]**.
- To not set: Press **[4]**.

- Refer to step 2 on P. 116 and select alarm tone.

### Change alarm volume <Alarm volume>

In the alarm setting screen, press **[4]** ▶ (louder) or (softer) ▶ **[OK]**.

- To not sound alarm: Select **Silent**.

## Setting as Secret

When schedules are set as Secret, they cannot be seen unless terminal security code is entered and Secret mode is set to **ON**. This allows you to protect your personal information.

- Refer to P. 154 for details on setting Secret mode.
- Set Secret mode to **ON** (P. 154) in advance to disable secret setting.

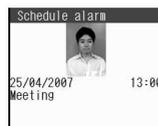
- In schedule saving screen (P. 372), select **Secret**, press **[OK]** and **[1]** [ON].

## When Alarm Time Arrives

Alarm operates in accordance with settings. Press a key other than **[TV]** and **[Eco]** to stop alarm. If contact is saved, contact information appears when the alarm is stopped (P. 369).

- Adjust the volume by pressing (louder) or (softer) when alarm volume is not set to Step.
- If images are set for Schedule, i-motion with images is set for alarm tone or phonebook entries set as contacts have Picture call set, those images appear in the following priority.

	Priority (high → low)
Image	i-motion set as alarm tone → schedule image → phonebook picture call → group picture call → alarm image



Standard schedule



Secret data

- Secret schedules are notified by alarm but phone numbers, messages and images do not appear. Appears when Secret mode is set to **ON** (P. 154).
- While Memo/Schedule/ToDo/Alarm Function lock is set, alarm does not sound at the set time.
- Alarm tone does not sound when in Normal or Silent manner mode. For Original manner mode, set the alarm tone **ON** or **OFF**.
- If the time set for alarm arrives while in Public mode (Drive mode), alarm tone does not sound. Called LED, vibrator and sub display are not activated.

## Saving Vacation <Set Vacation>

Set certain days or certain days of the week as vacations. Set up to 100 vacations. Disable all set vacations or all past vacations (excluding vacations set to specific day of week) collectively.

- For Disable all, vacations set to specific days of week return to the default settings (Saturday and Sunday).

- In Calendar (P. 371), select day to set as vacation (or disable vacation settings), press **[4]** **[1]** [Set vacation] and select method of setting.

- Days do not need to be selected when disabling all vacations and setting weekly vacations.

To set/disable selected vacation	<b>[1]</b> ● When day set as vacation is selected, setting is disabled.
To set weekly vacations	<b>[2]</b> → select day (repeatable) → <b>[OK]</b> ● Press <b>[SelAll]</b> / <b>[ClrAll]</b> to select or clear all.

- Set vacation appears red.

## Related Operations

### Collectively disable set vacations <Disable all>

- In Calendar, press **Ⓜ** **4** **1**.
- Press **4** **▶** **Yes** **▶** **⊙**.
  - To disable all past vacations: Press **3** **▶** **Yes** **▶** **⊙**.

### Note (Related operations)

- Vacations set to specific day of week return to default settings (Saturday and Sunday).

## Saving Holidays <Set Holiday>

- Save up to 20 holidays in addition to the preset Japanese national holidays.

- In Calendar (☞ P. 371), select day to set as holiday and press **Ⓜ** **4** **2** [**Set holiday**].



- Press **1** [**Save new**].
  - To disable all set holidays, press **2** [**Reset**], select **Yes** and press **⊙**.

- Select method of setting holidays.

To set (day)/(month) of every year	<b>1</b>
To set 1 <sup>st</sup> /2 <sup>nd</sup> /3 <sup>rd</sup> /4 <sup>th</sup> /5 <sup>th</sup> (day) of (month) of every year	<b>2</b>

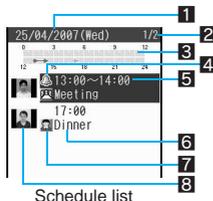
- Enter holiday name and press **⊙**.
  - Enter up to 40 single-byte (20 double-byte) characters.
  - In schedule details screen, press **Ⓜ** **1** [**Edit**] to change the details for the set holiday. Enter day to change, press **⊙** and proceed to step 3.
  - Set holiday appears red.

## Checking Schedules

Check contents of saved schedules. The settings of timer for starting or recording TV programs are also available. Sort them by categories or contacts. Place calls or send i-mode mail if phone number or mail address is saved. Schedules can also be copied.

- In stand-by, press **⊙** **9** **2** **7** **1**, select day and press **⊙**.
  - Up to five schedules for selected day are listed (Schedule list).
  - Press **Ⓜ** [**Previous**] to show previous day's schedule list.
  - Press **Ⓜ** [**Next**] to show next day's schedule list.

- To check secret schedules, set Secret mode to **ON** (☞ P. 154).
- To check schedules in microSD Memory Cards, press **Ⓜ** **7** in Calendar.



- Date
- Number of saved schedules for the day
- Time bar  
Schedule start time to end time is indicated in 30 minute intervals.
- Alarm
- Start time
- Summary or Agenda\*
- Category
- Image (image saved in My picture or phonebook)
  - \* If summary is saved, the first 16 single-byte (8 double-byte) characters appear.
  - If summary is not saved, the first 16 single-byte (8 double-byte) characters of Agenda appear.

- Select schedule and press **⊙**.

- If an image is saved, press **Ⓜ** to preview.
- If contact is saved, phone number appears and call can be made. Name appears if saved in phonebook. Press **⊙** and the phonebook entry details screen (☞ P. 108) appears. Make calls or send mail.
- Press **Ⓜ** [**Previous**] to check a schedule saved for the previous day. Press **Ⓜ** [**Next**] to check a schedule saved for the next day. For the day with multiple schedules saved, check the schedules using **⊙** to switch.
- Press **Ⓜ** to end viewing.



### Note

- Press **Ⓜ** to view Schedule during a voice call or while composing message (☞ P. 364).

## Related Operations

### Display by category <Show by category>

In stand-by, press **⊙** **9** **2** **7** **1** **▶** **Ⓜ** **3** **3** **▶** select category **▶** **⊙**.

### Display by contacts <Show by contact>

In stand-by, press **⊙** **9** **2** **7** **1** **▶** **Ⓜ** **3** **4** **▶** select contacts **▶** **⊙**.

## Related Operations

### Check all schedules <Show all schedules>

- In stand-by, press **9 2 7 1** ▶ **3 2**.
- To check the schedule: Select schedule ▶ **3**.
  - To check schedule in microSD Memory Cards: In Calendar, press **7**.

### Make calls from schedule

- In the schedule details screen, press **3** [Phone].
- Press **3** to make a voice call.
  - To make Videophone call: Press **3**.
  - To send PushTalk transmissions: Press **3**.

### Create i-mode mail from schedule

- In the schedule details screen, press **3** [Phone] ▶ select address ▶ **3** [Mail] ▶ compose message.

### Schedules attach to i-mode mail

#### <Attach to mail>

- In the schedule details screen, press **3 4** ▶ compose message.

### Copy schedules <Copy>

- In the schedule details screen, press **3 5 1**.
- Paste copied schedule in mail text, phonebook and other text entry screens.

### Apply Function lock to Schedule <Function lock>

- In stand-by, press **9 2 7 1** ▶ **8** ▶ enter terminal security code ▶ **1**.

## Note (Related operations)

### Composing i-mode mail

- Compose i-mode mail from schedule if mail address is saved in phonebook.

### File attachment

- TV timer or Recording timer cannot be attached.

## Editing Schedules <Edit>

- In stand-by, press **9 2 7 1**, select day, press **3**, select schedule and press **3 2** [Edit].

- To select secret schedules, set Secret mode to **ON** (P. 154).

Date	: [ 25/04/2007 ]
Schry	: [ ]
Ctgr	: [Personal ]
Alarm	: [OFF ]
Image	: [070423_1014 ]
Contcts	: [090XXXXXXX ]
Secret	: [OFF ]
Agenda	: [Dinner ]

- Edit schedule, press **3** [Complete] and select save method.

- Editing procedures are the same as when saving (P. 372).

To save as a new schedule	<b>1</b>
To overwrite schedule	<b>2</b> → Yes → <b>3</b>

## Saving contacts from Received calls and Redial

Save phone numbers from Received calls and Redial as contact information.

- Select Received call (P. 54) or Redial (P. 53) and press **3 1** [Create schedule].

### Contents of Schedule

	Received calls	Redial
Date	Received date and time	Called date and time
Summary	-	
Category	No category	
Alarm	OFF	
Image	-	
Contacts	Phone number	
Secret	OFF	
Agenda	<b>No content</b> is entered.	

- Add and save the contents (P. 372).

## Saving contents of i-mode mail

Save contents of received/sent mail as Agenda.

- Attachments are not saved.

- Show received messages (P. 228) and press **3 7 4** [Create schedule].

- For sent mail, open sent mail and press **3 8 4**.

### Contents of Schedule

	Received mail	Sent mail
Date	Received date and time	Sent date and time
Summary	-	
Category	No category	
Alarm	OFF	
Image	-	
Contacts	First phone number saved in phonebook (Contact is not saved if not saved in phonebook)	First phone number saved in phonebook (Contact is not saved if not saved in phonebook)
Secret	OFF	
Agenda	Subject and message (Up to 200 single-byte (100 double-byte) characters)	

- Add and save the contents (P. 372).

## Saving contents of text memos

Save text from text memos as Agenda.

- In stand-by, press **9 2 8 2**, select text memo and press **1 3** [Create schedule].

### Contents of Schedule

Date	--/------
Summary	-
Category	Category of Text memo
Alarm	OFF
Image	-
Contacts	-
Secret	OFF
Agenda	Content of Text memo

- Add and save the contents (steps 2 to 10 on P. 372).

## Saving still pictures from My picture

Save still pictures from My picture of Data box to Schedule.

- Movies/i-motion in Data box are not available.

- Select still picture (steps 1 to 3 on P. 296) and press **3 8** [Set schedule image].

### Contents of Schedule

Date	Save date and time of still picture
Summary	-
Category	No category
Alarm	OFF
Image	Title of still picture
Contacts	-
Secret	OFF
Agenda	<b>No content</b> is entered.

- Add and save the contents (steps 2 to 10 on P. 372).

### Note

- While previewing a shot still picture, press **3 3** [Schedule] to save to schedule. Still picture cannot be saved to Schedule if save destination is set as microSD Memory Card. Set save destination to the FOMA terminal handset before shooting.
- Still pictures on microSD Memory Cards are not directly available. Copy to FOMA terminal handset before saving.

## Deleting Schedules <Delete>

Use one of the following to delete schedules.

To delete one	Deletes entries individually.
To delete all past ones	Deletes all entries prior to specified day.
To delete all	Deletes all entries.
To delete selected ones	Deletes entries collectively.

- In stand-by, press **9 2 7 1**, press **3 2** [Show all scheds], select schedule and press **3** [Delete].

- When selecting secret schedules for Delete one or Delete selected, set Secret mode to **ON** (P. 154).
- To delete selected entries, select in step 2.
- For Delete all past, all schedules prior to the selected day are deleted.



- Select deletion method.

To delete one	<b>1</b> → Yes → <b>0</b>
To delete all past ones	<b>2</b> → enter terminal security code → <b>0</b> → Yes → <b>0</b>
To delete all	<b>3</b> → enter terminal security code → <b>0</b> → Yes → <b>0</b>
To delete ones collectively	<b>4</b> → select schedule <b>0</b> (repeatable) → <b>0</b> → Yes → <b>0</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press <b>0</b> [SelAll]/<b>0</b> [ClrAll] to select or clear all.</li> </ul>

## Related Operations

### Delete entries from Calendar

- In Calendar, press **2**.
- Press **1** [Delete all past].
  - To delete all: Press **2**.
- Enter terminal security code ▶ **0** ▶ Yes ▶ **0**.

## ToDo List

### Saving ToDo Lists

Save dates and details of tasks and manage schedules. Set priority and sound alarms for notification. When secret tasks are set, the data cannot be read unless the terminal security code (P. 144) is entered and Secret mode is set to **ON**. This allows you to protect your personal information.

- Set the correct date and time in advance (P. 45).
- Save up to 100 in ToDo lists.
- Save schedules between January 1, 2000 and December 31, 2099.

Basic saving methods for tasks including date, details, and category are explained below.

**1** In stand-by, press **[9] [2] [7] [2]** and **[New]** or **[1] [New]**.

```

Date : [---/---/--- ]
End   : [---/---/--- ]
Status : [Needs action ]
I     : [Not set      ]
Agenda : [             ]
Smry  : [             ]
Ctgr  : [No category ]
Alarm : [OFF         ]
Secret : [OFF         ]
Task saving screen
  
```

**2** Select **Date**, press **[Date]**, enter date (time) and press **[OK]**.

- To set end date, select **End**, press **[Date]**, enter end date (time) and press **[OK]**.
- To set status, select **Status**, press **[Status]**, select status and press **[OK]**.
- To set priority, select **I**, press **[I]**, select priority and press **[OK]**.

**3** Select **Agenda**, press **[Agenda]**, enter agenda and press **[OK]**.

- Enter up to 200 single-byte (100 double-byte) characters.
- Select **Smry**, press **[Smry]**, enter summary and press **[OK]**. Enter up to 40 single-byte (20 double-byte) characters.

**4** Select **Ctgr**, press **[Ctgr]**, select category icon and press **[OK]**.

- Refer to P. 373 for details on categories.
- Once a category is selected, the previously selected category appears first.

```

Date : [25/04/2007 ]
End   : [25/04/2007 ]
Status : [Needs action ]
I     : [High         ]
Agenda : [Meeting for ]
Smry  : [Pre30       ]
Ctgr  : [Meeting     ]
Alarm : [OFF         ]
Secret : [OFF         ]
  
```

**5** Press **[Complete]**.

- When a task is not entered, entry is not completed even if **[Complete]** is pressed.

#### Note

- Refer to P. 322 for details on copying to microSD Memory Card.
- Refer to P. 332 for details on Ir exchange.
- Refer to P. 337 for details on iC transmission.

**Note information saved in ToDo lists separately or transfer/store them on a PC using microSD Memory Cards (P. 318) or DoCoMo keitai datalink (P. 406).**

## Related Operations

### Sound alarm before task <Alarm settings>

- 1 In the task saving screen, select **Alarm**.
- 2 Press **[OK]**.
- 3 Press **[Alarm time]** enter time (number of minutes before scheduled task) **[OK]**.
  - To set a contact in the alarm: Press **[5]** select input method **[OK]** set contact **[OK]**.
- 4 Press **[OK]**.

### Save tasks as secret data <Secret>

- 1 In the task saving screen, select **Secret**.
- 2 Press **[OK]**.

### Note (Related operations)

#### Alarm settings

- For details on how to change alarm tone type, refer to "Setting Alarms" on P. 373 in Schedule.
- Set contact information to show in the alarm screen, allowing for easy calling.
- Contacts are not available while Keypad dial lock is set.

#### Secret mode

- Refer to P. 154 for details on setting Secret mode.

## When Alarm Time Arrives

Alarm operates in accordance with settings.

Press a key other than **[TV]** and **[Eco]** to stop alarm (P. 370).



Standard schedule



Secret data

- Secret tasks are notified by alarm but phone numbers, messages and images do not appear. Appears when Secret mode is set to **ON** (P. 154).
- While Memo/Schedule/ToDo/Alarm Function lock is set, alarm does not sound at set time.
- Alarm tone does not sound when in Normal or Silent manner mode. For Original manner mode, set the alarm tone **ON** or **OFF**.
- If the time set for alarm arrives while in Public mode (Drive mode), alarm tone does not sound. Called LED, vibrator and sub display are not activated.

#### Note

- If Picture call is set for a phonebook entry with contacts set for alarm, the image appears when alarm sounds.
- When an i-motion with image and voice is set as alarm tone, i-motion image appears regardless of picture call set for contact.

## Note

- When an i-motion with voice only (melodies with no video) is set as alarm tone, the picture call set for contact appears. When an i-motion is set for Picture call, regular alarm screen appears.

## Checking ToDo Lists

### 1 In stand-by, press $\odot$ [9] [2] [7] [2].

- To check schedules in microSD Memory Cards, press  $\odot$  [1] in task list.



- \* If summary is saved, the first 18 single-byte (9 double-byte) characters appear. If summary is not saved, the first 18 single-byte (9 double-byte) characters of Agenda appear.

### 2 Select a task and press $\odot$ [Show].

To copy Agenda	$\odot$ [2]
To end viewing	$\odot$ [3]



## Note

- Press  $\text{[MMS]}$  to view ToDo list during a voice call or while composing message ( $\text{P. 364}$ ).

## Related Operations

### Change status <Change status>

In stand-by, press  $\odot$  [9] [2] [7] [2] ▶ select task ▶  $\odot$  [6] ▶ select item ▶  $\odot$ .

### Show by status/category

<Show by status/Show by category>

1 In stand-by, press  $\odot$  [9] [2] [7] [2].

2 Press  $\odot$  [7] [1].

- To show by category: Press  $\odot$  [7] [2].

3 Select item ▶  $\odot$ .

### Check finished ToDo list

In stand-by, press  $\odot$  [9] [2] [7] [2] ▶ select task ▶  $\odot$  [✓].

- To mark as unread ( $\text{[M]}$ ): Select task marked  $\text{[M]}$  and press  $\odot$  [✓].

## Related Operations

### ToDo list attach to i-mode mail <Attach to mail>

In stand-by, press  $\odot$  [9] [2] [7] [2] ▶ select task ▶  $\odot$  [4] ▶ compose message.

### Apply Function lock to ToDo list

<Function lock>

In stand-by, press  $\odot$  [9] [2] [7] [2] ▶  $\odot$  [2] ▶ enter terminal security code ▶  $\odot$  [1].

## Note (Related operations)

### Checking ToDo lists

- End date is entered automatically.

## Editing ToDo Lists <Edit>

### 1 In stand-by, press $\odot$ [9] [2] [7] [2], select a task and press $\odot$ [2] [Edit].

### 2 Edit task.

- Editing procedures are the same as when saving ( $\text{P. 377}$ ).
- To set end date, select **End** and press  $\odot$  in the task saving screen. Enter end date (time) and press  $\odot$ .

### 3 When finished editing, press $\odot$ [Complete] and select save method.

To save as new	[1]
To overwrite	[2] → Yes → $\odot$

## Deleting ToDo Lists <Delete>

Delete completed and Delete all are not available when tasks are listed by status or category.

### 1 In stand-by, press $\odot$ [9] [2] [7] [2], select a task and press $\odot$ [3] [Delete].

- Entries do not need to be selected for **Delete completed** and **Delete all**.



### 2 Select deletion method.

To delete one	[1] → Yes → $\odot$
To delete all completed ones	[2] → enter terminal security code → $\odot$ → Yes → $\odot$
To delete all	[3] → enter terminal security code → $\odot$ → Yes → $\odot$
To delete ones collectively	[4] → select task $\odot$ (repeatable) → $\odot$ → Yes → $\odot$ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press <math>\odot</math> [SelAll]/<math>\odot</math> [ClrAll] to select or clear all.</li> </ul>

## Shortcut Menu

### Accessing Functions Quickly

Save frequently used functions as shortcuts for easy access.

### Saving to Shortcut Menu

Save up to 18 shortcuts. The following shortcuts are preset. Overwrite them with i-appli software, bookmarks and other frequently used functions.



SHORT CUT 1



SHORT CUT 2

### 1 Press **[MULTI]** for 1+ seconds in function with **↵** shown to save.

- When registered i-appli software or URL bookmarks are deleted, they are automatically deleted from the Shortcut menu.

### 2 Select destination to save and press **○**.

### 3 Select Yes and press **○** to overwrite.

#### Note

- When **Reset settings** is made, shortcuts return to default settings.

### Running Shortcut Menu

### 1 In stand-by, press **○**, select shortcut icon and press **○**.

- Saved function activates.
- Menus saved at the top of **SHORT CUT 1** are assigned to **[1]** to **[3]**. Execute those functions by pressing each key for 1+ seconds in stand-by.
- Alternatively, press **○** in stand-by to show the Shortcut menu. However, if Top menu or Zoom menu appears, press **[Menu]** to switch to the Shortcut menu. In stand-by, press **○** to show the menu that was last used.
- When a calendar is shown in stand-by, press **[Calendar]** to disable the calendar display and press **○**.
- Press **[Page Up]** or **[Page Down]** to turn the Shortcut menu page.

#### Note

- The following menus are preset at the top of **SHORT CUT 1**.

Menu	Assigned key
Booking list	[1]
Receive Ir data	[2]
Bar code reader	[3]

### Deleting from Shortcut Menu

### 1 In the Shortcut menu, select the shortcut icon and press **[Delete]**.

### 2 Select deletion method.

To delete one	[1] → Yes → <b>○</b>
To delete all	[2] → enter terminal security code → <b>○</b> → Yes → <b>○</b>

- Selected shortcut is deleted from Shortcut menu.

### Moving Shortcut Menu Icons

#### <Move Icon>

### 1 In the Shortcut menu, select the shortcut icon and press **[Move icon]**.

### 2 Select target location and press **○**.

- Shortcuts are switched.

### Setting Shortcut Menu Icons

#### <Icon Image Settings>

Change Shortcut menu icons.

Set two images; one for selected and another for unselected.

- Use 76 (W) × 76 (H) pixel JPEG images, GIF images or animated GIFs.
- Up to three scenes are used for animated GIFs. Image for selected icon is not available.

### 1 In the Shortcut menu, select the shortcut icon and press **[Icon image]**.



## 2 Select folder, press , select still picture for unselected icon and press [OK].

- The icon is set.
- To check still picture, select a still picture and press . Press **CLR** to return.

## 3 Select still picture for selected icon.

To set the same image for unselected and selected icon	Select <b>No</b> → 
To set a different selected icon	Select <b>Yes</b> →  → select folder →  → select still picture → 

- If an animated GIF is selected in step 2, the shortcut menu screen reappears.

### Note

- Images that cannot be set to shortcut icons do not appear.
- Icons in the preset Shortcut menu are animated GIFs.
- If a still picture in My picture is set as a shortcut icon, even if deleted, the image is retained until the shortcut icon setting is changed.

## Setting Action Focus to Shortcut Menu Icons <Action Focus>

Default setting **Stardust**

- Action focus is applied to last image for animated GIFs.

## 1 In the Shortcut menu, press ③ [Action Focus] and select Action focus type.

Globe	①	Circular frames appear and rotate at varying speeds.
Target	②	Large square becomes smaller.
Mist	③	Fog-like veil light covers icons.
Stardust	④	Light sparkles.
Windmill	⑤	Three lines appear and rotate under the icon.
Ripple	⑥	Rings move outward.
OFF	⑦	Nothing is set.

## Setting Shortcut Menu Background <Set Background>

- Use JPEG and GIF images (Flash movies and animated GIFs are not available).

## 1 In the Shortcut menu, press ④ [Set background].

## 2 Select folder, press , select still picture and press [OK].

- To check still picture, select a still picture and press . Press **CLR** to return.

### Note

- Still pictures that cannot be set as background images do not appear.
- If a still picture in My picture is set as a background image, even if deleted, the image is retained until the background setting is changed.

## Resetting Shortcut Menu <Reset Menu>

Reset Shortcut menu to default items.

## 1 In the Shortcut menu, press ⑤ [Reset menu], enter terminal security code and press .

## 2 Select Yes and press .

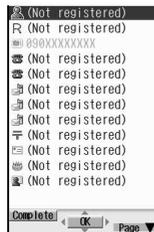
## Owner Information

### Saving Own Name and Image

Save and edit name, reading, phone number, mail address, postal code, postal address, birthday, memo and own image.

Save three phone numbers (including Own number) and three mail addresses.

### Items to set



- Only the phone number of the inserted FOMA card appears by default. Add acquired i-mode mail address.

Icon	Item
	Name (up to 32 single-byte/16 double-byte characters)
	Reading (up to 32 single-byte characters)
	Own number (cannot be edited)
	Phone number (two numbers, up to 26 digits per number)
	Mail address (three addresses, up to 50 single-byte characters per address)
	Postal code (up to seven single-byte digits)
	Postal address (up to 100 single-byte/50 double-byte characters)
	Birthday (single-byte numbers, from January 1, 1900 to December 31, 2099)
	Memo (up to 200 single-byte/100 double-byte characters)
	Own image

**1** In stand-by, press and [Details].

**2** Enter terminal security code, press and [Edit].

**3** Select items with and save details.

- Editing procedures are the same as phonebook. Refer to P. 98 to P. 101 for details.
- Screen of step 2 reappears after each item is saved. Continue setting other items.
- Press in each entry screen to delete name, reading, phone number, mail address, postal code, postal address, birthday and memo. Select to delete Own image.

**4** After saving items, press [Complete].

- Select icon with to show saved details.

#### Note

- Customize i-mode mail address ( P. 213).
- Changes for i-mode mail address are not reflected in owner information. Save mail address manually.
- Copy microSD Memory Card phonebook contents to owner information ( P. 107).

## Related Operations

### Check own i-mode mail address (i-mode subscribers only)

In stand-by, press [iMenu] ▶ *English iMenu* ▶ ▶ *Options* ▶ ▶ *Mail Settings* ▶ ▶ *Confirm Mail Address* ▶ .

## Showing Owner Information Details

- Also, copy characters from owner information items and paste in other screens.

**1** In stand-by, press and [Details].

**2** Enter terminal security code and press .

- Press to view saved items in order.
- To copy Owner information, select item to copy with and press . Names, own number, other phone numbers, mail addresses, postal addresses, and memos can be copied.

#### Note

- Alternatively, send owner information to other FOMA terminals with Ir exchange ( P. 335).
- Refer to P. 337 for details on iC transmission.

## Related Operations

### Copy while creating i-mode mail or SMS

**1** In stand-by, press ▶ select *Msg* ▶ .

- For SMS: In-stand-by, press ▶ select *Msg* ▶ ▶ .

**2** Press ▶ enter terminal security code ▶ ▶ select item ▶ .

### Copy owner information to microSD Memory Card <Copy to microSD>

In the owner information details screen, press ▶ *Yes* ▶ .

### Restrict transferring of own image with Ir exchange or iC transmission, or copying to microSD Memory Card <Image transfer>

In the owner information details screen, press ▶ .

## Voice Memo (During Call)/ Voice Memo (Stand-by)

### Recording Other's Voice During Call or Own Voice When in Stand-by

Record other party's voice during a call (Voice memo (during call)) or own voice when in stand-by (Voice memo (stand-by)).

- Use recorded Stand-by voice memos for On hold tone ( P. 68), Hold tone ( P. 68) or Reply message ( P. 73).
- Record up to three Record messages (voice calls) ( P. 71) and Voice memos of approximately 15 seconds each.
- Record up to two Record messages (Videophone) of approximately 15 seconds each.

## Recording Other Party's Voice During a Call <Voice Memo>

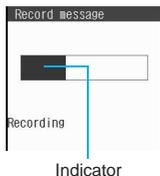
**1** During a voice call, press **[M]** **[2]** [Voice memo].

- Alternatively, press **[7]** for 1+ seconds during a voice call.
- Notes on recording are the same as for recording own voice when in stand-by (**[P]** P. 383).
- To stop recording, press **[M]** (Voice is recorded until stopped).

## Recording Own Voice When in Stand-by <Stand-by Voice Memo>

**1** In stand-by, press **[9]** **[2]** **[8]** **[5]** and press **[1]** [Record].

- Alternatively, press **[7]** for 1+ seconds in stand-by.
- Recording begins.
- Speak within approximately 10 cm away.
- Recording automatically ends after approximately 15 seconds.
- Indicator is an estimate.
- To stop recording, press **[0]** [Stop] (Voice is recorded until stopped).



### Note

- Refer to P. 74 for details on playing/deleting Voice memos during calls and stand-by.
- Voice memos of three seconds or less may not be recorded.
- Own voice is not recorded in Voice memo (during call). However, own voice may be recorded due to line status.
- Messages that indicate outside the service area, changed phone number, etc. cannot be recorded.
- **Key/Standby i-motion** is silenced while recording Voice memo (stand-by).

### When call is received during Voice memo (stand-by)

- Recording is stopped. Press **[A]** to answer the call (Voice is recorded until stopped).

### Keep a separate memo and note recorded memos

- Recorded content may be altered or lost by misuse, static, electronic noise, malfunction, repairs, changing FOMA terminal or other handling. DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss of content.

## Calculator

### Using as Calculator

Add, subtract, multiply, divide, calculate percentages and sales tax.

- Refer to P. 434 for examples of various calculations.

**1** In stand-by, press **[9]** **[2]** **[8]** **[1]**.

- Another alternative: In stand-by, enter numbers to calculate → press **[4]**.

**2** Enter numbers to calculate.

- Use the following to enter.

<b>[0]</b> to <b>[9]</b>	Numbers 0 to 9
<b>[.]</b>	Decimal point
<b>[+/-]</b>	Switch between + and -*

\* Input a numerical value and then press **[+/-]** to switch between + and -.

- Press **[C]** to erase all entered numbers (Press **[C]** to end when number is 0).

**3** Select calculation.

- Mathematical functions are allotted to guide key.

<b>[+]</b>	Add	<b>[-]</b>	Subtract
<b>[x]</b>	Multiply	<b>[÷]</b>	Divide



- Also perform the following.

<b>[M]</b>	CM Clear memory	<b>[M]</b>	RM Recall memory	<b>[%]</b>	% Calculate percentage
<b>[TAX]</b>	TAX Calculate tax	<b>[M+]</b>	M+ Add memory		

Calculator

**4** Enter numbers to calculate and press **[=]**.

- Press **[A]** to end Calculator. The stand-by display reappears.

### Note

- The stand-by display does not reappear when **Alarm**, **Schedule alarm** or **ToDo alarm** activates while Calculator is being used. Calculator reappears after Alarm operation ends.
- Results are retained if memory is used.

## Related Operations

### Change tax rate

In Calculator, press **[TAX]** (for 1+ seconds) ▶ enter tax rate (01 to 99) ▶ **[0]**.

## Related Operations

### Calculate tax

Display results and press [TAX].

- To calculate amount without tax: Display results and press [TAX] [TAX] (-TAX).

### Copy calculation contents

Press (for 1+ seconds) during calculation.

### Note (Related operations)

#### Calculating tax

- The default setting for tax rate is 5%.
- The amount after the decimal point is rounded off.  
Example: If 120 [TAX] is pressed, **5Tax** appears.

## Talk Time/Cost

### Displaying the Call Duration/Charge

Check previous or total call duration/charge for voice calls, Videophone calls, etc.

- Voice call duration, Videophone call duration and 64K data communication duration appear for call duration. Duration time includes calls made and received.
- Call charge includes only calls made. When calls are made to toll-free numbers, directory assistance (104), etc., **OYEN** or **XXXXXXXXYEN** appears.
- Call charges for switching between Videophone and voice call appear as **Last call cost ¥** and **V.phone call cost ¥**. Charges for calls switched multiple times appear for each voice/Videophone call in total.
- Call charge is saved on the FOMA card. If a different FOMA card is inserted, the total call charges stored (those calculated since December 2004) on the currently inserted card appears.

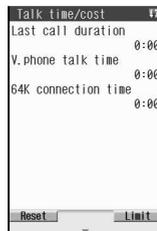
Total call charges on a FOMA card cannot be viewed on models released prior to the FOMA 901i series (However, total charge is saved on the FOMA card).

- Call duration/charge that appears can be reset.
- Call duration/charge is an estimate and may differ from actual amount. Call charge does not include consumption tax.
- Enter the four- to eight-digit number for PIN1/PIN2 code ( P. 144).

## Displaying the Call Details

### 1 In stand-by, press 4 7.

- While accessing the FOMA card, **Reading UIM data** appears.
- If the information has never been reset, **--/--/---(-)----** appears for the reset date and time.
- When total call charge is reset, the charges at the time of resetting are saved for the reset date and time.
- Press to end viewing.



### Note

- Transmission duration and charge for PushTalk transmission, i-mode and packet transmissions are not counted. Refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode]" for details on checking i-mode charge.
- If previous call duration exceeds 9:59:59, the counter restarts from 0:00.
- If total call duration exceeds 999:59:59, the counter restarts from 0:00.
- Time used receiving or making a call is not counted.
- Last call cost is reset to **XXXXXXXXYEN** when the power is turned off.
- Transmission charges for Chaku-moji are not included.

## Resetting Call Duration/Call Cost

The recorded previous call duration or the total call duration/cost can be reset to **0**.

### 1 In stand-by, press 4 7 and press [Reset].



### 2 Select item to reset.

To reset total call cost	<b>1</b> → enter PIN2 code →  → <b>Yes</b> →
To reset total call duration	<b>2</b> → enter terminal security code →  → <b>Yes</b> →

- The reset year, month and day are saved in **reset date**.

## Setting Call Cost Limit Notice

<Limit Settings>

Default setting **Disable**

Show a message or sound an alarm in stand-by when the set maximum talk cost is exceeded after the call is ended. Show reset notification and reset total call cost on the first of the month.

- 1 In stand-by, press **[4][7]** and press **[Limit]**.
- 2 Press **[1]** [Limit settings], enter terminal security code and press **[OK]**.
- 3 Select **Limit settings**, press **[OK]** and press **[1]** [Enable].
- 4 Select **Limit settings**, press **[OK]**, enter maximum cost limit and press **[OK]**.
  - Enter from 10 to 100,000 yen in 10 yen increments.
  - The default setting is 0 yen.
- 5 Select **Notice method**, press **[OK]** and **[2]** [Stand-by].
  - To sound an alarm as well as displaying a message, press **[1]**, set the alarm tone (**[P. 370]**)/alarm volume (**[P. 370]**/ring duration (**[P. 370]**) and press **[Complete]**.
- 6 Select **Auto reset**, press **[OK]** and select whether to reset automatically.

To set	<b>[1]</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• When 12 a.m. of the first of the month passes or at a later date set in Date settings (<b>[P. 45]</b>), <b>Reset time passed</b> appears in stand-by and call cost can be reset.</li></ul>
To not set	<b>[2]</b>

- 7 Press **[Complete]**, enter PIN2 code and press **[OK]**.

### Note

- If Limit settings message appears in stand-by, reset to delete message.

## Related Operations

Delete Limit settings message in stand-by  
<Delete notice>

In stand-by, press **[4][7]** **[OK]** **[2]** enter terminal security code **[OK]**.

## Related Operations

Reset call charge from reset notification screen

When **Reset time passed** appears in stand-by, press **[OK]** **[OK]** enter PIN2 code **[OK]** **[Yes]** **[OK]**.

### Note (Related operations)

#### Delete notice

- When Limit settings message is deleted, the message is not displayed until All calls cost is reset or Limit settings is set again.

#### Auto Reset

- Reset notification is deleted when reset is canceled or **No** is selected in the confirmation screen. Reset notification is not displayed again until 12 a.m. of the first day of the next month.

## Text Memo

### Entering Memos

Save frequently used phrases and use them when composing message, Schedule and ToDo list.

- 1 In stand-by, press **[9][2][8][2]**.
  - Save up to ten text memos. Sort them into 20 types.

Text memo list
- 2 Press **[New]** or **[1][1]** [New].
  - To preview saved memo, select a memo and press **[OK]**.

Text memo  
Text : [ ]  
Group : [No category ]
- 3 Select **Text**, press **[OK]**, enter message and press **[OK]**.
  - Enter up to 128 single-byte (64 double-byte) characters.
- 4 Select **Group**, press **[OK]**, select category icon and press **[OK]**.
  - Select category from 20 types. Refer to P. 373 for details on categories.
  - Once a category is selected, the previously selected category appears first.
- 5 Press **[Complete]**.

### Note

- Refer to P. 322 for details on copying to microSD Memory Card.
- Refer to P. 332 for details on Ir exchange.
- Refer to P. 337 for details on iC transmission.

## Note

Note information saved in Text memos separately or transfer/store them on a PC using microSD Memory Cards (P. 318).

## Using Memos

Use saved memos when composing message, Schedule or ToDo list.

### 1 In text memo list (P. 385), select memo and press [Show].

Text MEMO 1/1	
23/04/2007 (Mon) 10:30	Date created
23/04/2007 (Mon) 11:00	Last edit date
Holiday	Category
The library is closed every Monday.	Agenda

### 2 Select memo function.

To use for composing a message	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Compose message screen appears. Content of memo is entered in <b>Msg</b>.</li> </ul>
To use for Schedule	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The schedule saving screen appears. Content of memo is entered in <b>Agenda</b> and memo type is entered in <b>Ctgr</b>.</li> </ul>
To use for ToDo list	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Task saving screen appears. Content of memo is entered in <b>Agenda</b> and memo type is entered in <b>Ctgr</b>.</li> </ul>

## Note

- Press [MMS] to start Text memo during a voice call or while composing message (P. 364).

## Editing Saved Memos

### 1 In text memo list (P. 385), select memo and press [Edit].

### 2 Edit memo.

- Editing procedures are the same as when saving (P. 385).

### 3 When finished editing, press [Complete] and select save method.

To save as new	1
To overwrite	2 → Yes →

## Deleting Memos

### 1 In text memo list (P. 385), select memo and press [Delete].

### 2 Select deletion method.

To delete one memo	1 → Yes →
To delete multiple memos	2 → select memo (repeatable) → → Yes → • Press [SelAll]/[ClrAll] to select or clear all.
To delete all memos	3 → enter terminal security code → → Yes →

## Related Operations

### Apply Function lock to Text memo

#### <Function lock>

In stand-by, press [9][2][8][2] [7] enter terminal security code [1].

#### Note (Related operations)

- When setting Function lock for Text memo, Function lock is also set for **Schedule**, **ToDo list** and **Alarm**, and the alarm does not sound at the set time.

## Earphone/Microphone with Switch

### Using Earphone/Microphone with Switch

Connect a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately) to the earphone/microphone terminal to call numbers saved in the phonebook or answer voice/Videophone or PushTalk calls by merely pushing a switch.

- Use earphone/microphone individually or in conjunction with the following.
  - Flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch
  - Earphone/microphone with switch + Earphone plug adapter P001
  - Stereo earphone set P001 + Earphone plug adapter P001
  - Earphone terminal P001 + Earphone plug adapter P001
- Separate stereo earphones are required.
- Use FOMA terminal keys to place Videophone or PushTalk calls.
- Do not forcefully pull rubber earphone/microphone terminal cover. May damage the cover.

## Setting Earphone/Microphone with Switch

### <Earphone/Microphone Auto Calling>

Default setting **OFF**

Set flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch to make voice calls using only the switch. Save phone numbers to FOMA terminal handset phonebook and specify memory number.

- Save one entry from memory numbers 000 to 749 from the FOMA terminal handset phonebook.
- Making Videophone calls is not available from switch.

**1** In stand-by, press  **6** **2** and press **1** [ON].

**2** Enter memory number (three digits: 000 to 749) and press .

- Earphone/Microphone auto calling is set.

## Making Voice Calls with Switch

**1** Connect flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch.

- Insert plug of flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch into earphone/microphone terminal.

**2** In stand-by, press switch for 2+ seconds.

- The phone number for the memory number set for earphone/microphone auto calling is dialed automatically.
- If multiple phone numbers are saved for memory number set for earphone/microphone auto calling in the phonebook, the first phone number saved is called. If the slot for the first phone number is empty, then the second phone number is called. If the slot for the second phone number is empty, then the third phone number is called.

**3** Press switch for 2+ seconds to finish call.

- Alternatively, press  on FOMA terminal to disconnect.

### Note

- When a memory number set for earphone/microphone auto calling is set as Secret, set **Secret mode** to **ON** before using switch to call.
- Calls may be placed accidentally if FOMA terminal is carried in bags with flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch connected. Disconnect when not in use.
- Calls cannot be placed while **Function lock** is applied to phonebook.
- Calls may be placed if earphone/microphone without switch is rapidly inserted and removed.
- **Key/Standby i-motion** is output to flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch when connected.
- The volume for earphone is the same as set in Earpiece volume ( P. 67).

## Answering Calls with Switch

**1** Connect flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch.

- Insert plug of flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch into earphone/microphone terminal.

**2** Ring tone sounds when call is received.

- Ring tone sounds from the device set for Ring output ( P. 122).

**3** Press switch for 2+ seconds.

- Alternatively, press  on FOMA terminal to connect.
- When a Videophone call is received while the FOMA terminal is closed, press switch to send image set in Substitute image ( P. 78). If the FOMA terminal is open, the camera image is sent.

**4** Press switch for 2+ seconds to finish call.

- Alternatively, press  on FOMA terminal to disconnect.

### Note

- Call may be answered accidentally if connected while ring tone is ringing. Disconnect when not in use.
- Do not press switch repeatedly. Call may be placed and received automatically.
- Do not wind cord for flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch around FOMA terminal. Internal antenna may not work properly.
- Placing cord for flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch near internal antenna causes noise.
- Secure plug. Sound may not be audible if not completely inserted.
- A beep sounds when plug is inserted only halfway during a call. This is not a malfunction.
- A pop may sound when power is turned on. This is not a malfunction.

## Set Auto Answer

# Answering Calls Automatically with Earphone

Default setting **OFF**

Automatically connect voice/Videophone/ PushTalk calls received while flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (sold separately) is connected.

- Set time before voice/Videophone call is automatically connected (Receive time).
- Auto answer set is not available when flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch is not connected (excluding PushTalk).

**1** In stand-by, press **⓪ 6 3 2**.

**2** Select item and set Auto answer.

To set for voice and Videophone calls	<p><b>1 1</b> → enter ring time (three digits: 000 to 120 seconds) → <b>⓪</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Call is automatically answered after approximately two seconds if <b>⓪</b> is pressed without entering time (The default setting is <b>2 seconds</b>).</li> <li>● Calls are answered without ringing or vibrating when set to <b>000 seconds</b>.</li> </ul>
To set for PushTalk	<b>2 1</b>

### Note

- Calls from those set for Reject calls or Accept calls are not answered automatically.
- Set different Set auto answer and Record message ring times.
- **Voice Mail Service** and **Call Forwarding Service** may be prioritized if Set auto answer is set to same time.  
To prioritize Set auto answer, set Receive time shorter than for **Record message**, **Voice Mail Service** or **Call Forwarding Service**.
- The PushTalk in Set auto answer is linked with the Set auto answer in the PushTalk phonebook (⓪ P. 92). Setting one of them to **ON** switches the other to **ON**. Auto answer is not available while in Manner mode.
- For Videophone calls, the image set in **Substitute image** is sent to the other party. Setting can be switched to send camera image instead (⓪ P. 77).

## Reset Settings

# Resetting Settings

Restore default values.

- Refer to "Menu Lists" on P. 418 to P. 425 for default settings.
- For Kisekæe Tool in the Pre-installed folder, **White** (for the handset color White) can be set regardless of the handset color. Refer to "Using Kisekæe Tool" on P. 136 for the items to which Kisekæe Tool can be set.

**1** In stand-by, press **⓪ 1 1**, enter terminal security code and press **⓪**.

**2** Select Yes and press **⓪**.

### Note

When reset

- The following are not reset (deleted/changed). Refer to respective pages to reset.

Date settings (⓪ P. 45)	ToDo list (⓪ P. 379)
Terminal security code (⓪ P. 145)	Screen memo (⓪ P. 192)
Owner information (⓪ P. 381)	Sent/Received and Unsent mail (⓪ P. 234)
Accept calls list (⓪ P. 155)	Saved signature (⓪ P. 238)
Reject calls list (⓪ P. 156)	Network service settings (⓪ P. 392 to P. 401)
Recordings such as Record message (⓪ P. 74)	Phonebook entries (⓪ P. 112)
Data box data (⓪ P. 328 and P. 331)	microSD Memory Card data (⓪ P. 326)
Camera images (⓪ P. 328 and P. 331)	Text memo (⓪ P. 386)
Select language (⓪ P. 44)	User dictionary (⓪ P. 414)
Alarm (⓪ P. 371)	Download dictionary (⓪ P. 415)
Schedule (⓪ P. 377)	

- Refer to P. 199 for details on resetting i-mode.
- Refer to P. 240 for details on resetting mail settings.
- Refer to P. 286 for details on resetting One Seg.
- When Reset settings is performed, i-Channel ticker does not appear. The i-Channel tickers appear automatically when the latest information is received or the channel list is shown.

## Delete User Data

# Deleting All Saved Data

Delete all saved data and return all functions to default settings.

- Terminal security code returns to default number **0000**.
- Protected data in FOMA terminal are also deleted.

- Other functions are not available while deleting. Receiving voice call/videophone call/mail, alarms and One Seg timer recording are also not available while deleting.
- Recharge battery before deleting data. If battery level is low, data may not be completely deleted.
- Do not turn off handset while deleting.
- Melodies in Pre-install folder in Melody of Data box and still pictures, animated GIFs, and Flash movies in Pre-install folder in My picture of Data box are not deleted. Chara-den, i-motion, Deco-mail images (Decomail pictures, Deco-mail pictographs and Template) and PDF files are deleted.
- Refer to the "Menu List" on P. 418 to P. 425 for details on default settings.

Deleted data	Phonebook, PushTalk phonebook, still picture/movie/melody/Chara-den/Chaku-uta full®/PDF files/Kisekae Tool of Data box, i-αplli, mail, Message R/F, bookmarks, screen memo, download dictionary, Voice memo, Text memo, ToDo list, Alarm settings, Received calls, Redial, Sent messages, Mail history, URL history, signature, User dictionary, BookReader bookmarks, folders*, SMS (Short Messages), i-αplli mail data, mail templates, Record messages (including recorded voice guidance), data read by Bar code reader, Schedule (including saved/changed holidays), ToruCa, Last URL, Phonebook transmission history, Chaku-moji message, software update reservation information, history of timer recording
Data not deleted (returns to default settings)	Functions that can be reset (☎ P. 388) and the following functions return to default settings. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Main display setting, Sub display setting, Ring tone, Record message reply message, phrases, memory term item, Settings, Terminal security code, Date settings, Top menu, Shortcut menu, call duration, Personalize setting, reply message, USSD, owner information (excluding own number), PushTalk group, Set PushTalk, mail member, entered URL, international prefix, operation settings for My picture, i-motion, Melody and My Documents of Data box, mail setting, i-mode setting, i-αplli setting, data in the broadcast storage area, TVlink, Channel list</li> </ul>

\* Preset folders are not deleted.

**1** In stand-by, press **☉** **7** **8** **1**.

**2** Press **☉** **[Agree]**, enter terminal security code and press **☉**.

- *This may take about 20 minutes. OK?* appears.

**3** Select **Yes** and press **☉**.

- *Delete and restart. OK?* appears.

**4** Select **Yes** and press **☉**.

- FOMA terminal restarts after deleting.

**Note**

- Download preset i-αplli, Chara-den, i-motion, **Deco-mail** images and Kisekae Tool from the iMenu site **SH-MODE**. Packet transmission charges apply when downloading (☎ P. 192, P. 195, P. 206, P. 247).
- Data saved/registered/set in FOMA card or microSD Memory Card are not deleted.
- Deleting data collectively is not available while other functions are performed.
- More time may be required when deleting large amounts of data collectively.
- While deleting data collectively, the display may become garbled, so do not close the FOMA terminal.
- When Delete user data is performed, i-Channel ticker does not appear. The i-Channel tickers appear automatically when the latest information is received or the channel list is shown.
- i-αplli Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE program schedule remote control), ケータイクレジット「iD」 (iD credit payment service) and DCMX credit appli are not deleted.

**Deleting Secret Data Collectively**

**<Delete Secret Data>**

Delete secret phonebooks, schedule and ToDo lists collectively.

- Available regardless of Secret mode settings.

**1** In stand-by, press **☉** **7** **8** **2**.

**2** Enter terminal security code, press **☉**, select **Yes** and press **☉**.



# Network Services

- Network Services from the FOMA Terminal. . . . . 392
- Using Voice Mail Service . . . . . <Voice Mail Service>392
- Using Call Waiting . . . . . <Call Waiting>394
- Using Call Forwarding Service . . . . . <Call Forwarding Service>395
- Using Nuisance Call Barring Service . . . . . <Nuisance Call Barring Service>396
- Using Caller ID Request Service . . . . . <Caller ID Request Service>397
- Using Dual Network Service. . . . . <Dual Network Service>397
- Switching Guidance Language. . . . . <English Guidance>398
- Using Service Numbers . . . . . <Service Number>399
- Selecting Actions for Incoming Calls During a Call . . . . . <Arrival Call Act>399
- Activating/Deactivating Arrival Actions. . . . . <Set Arrival Act>399
- Setting Remote Control . . . . . <Remote Control>399
- Using Multi Number . . . . . <Multi Number>400
- Using OFFICEED. . . . . <OFFICEED>401
- Using Additional Services. . . . . <Additional Services (USSD)>401

This manual explains the outline of each network service based on the operation using the FOMA terminal menu. For details: "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]"

## Network Services from the FOMA Terminal

Use the following network services on the FOMA terminal. For the outline and use of each service, refer to reference pages in the following table.

Service name	Subscription	Monthly fee	Page
Voice Mail Service	Necessary	Fees apply	P. 392
Call Waiting	Necessary	Fees apply	P. 394
Call Forwarding Service	Necessary	Free	P. 395
Nuisance Call Barring Service	Necessary	Free	P. 396
Notify Caller ID Service	Not necessary	Free	P. 46
Public mode (Drive mode)	Not necessary	Free	P. 68
Public mode (Power off)	Not necessary	Free	P. 70
Caller ID Request Service	Not necessary	Free	P. 397
Dual Network Service	Necessary	Fees apply	P. 397
English Guidance	Not necessary	Free	P. 398
Multi Number	Necessary	Fees apply	P. 400
OFFICEED	Necessary	Fees apply	P. 401

"Deactivate" does not mean that the Voice Mail Service, Call Forwarding Service or other subscriptions are canceled.

- "OFFICEED" is a service that requires subscription. Refer to the NTT DoCoMo web page for corporations (<http://www.docomo.biz/d/212/>) for further information.
- Network services are not available outside the service area or in a place with no signal.
- Refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]" for details.
- For subscription and inquiries, contact the number listed in "General Inquiries" on the back of this manual.

### Note

- Network services are operated by connecting to the network service center and are not available while handset is outside the service area (Public mode (Drive mode) can be set from outside the service area).
- Add services to the menu when new network services become available from DoCoMo (P. 401).

## Voice Mail Service

### Using Voice Mail Service

Voice Mail Service is a service for answering incoming voice/Videophone calls with Reply message and recording callers' messages when the handset is outside the service area or turned off, or when calls cannot be answered.

- If Record message (P. 71) is also set, set ring time for Voice Mail Service shorter to prioritize answering duration for Record message.
- If a voice/Videophone call is not answered when Voice Mail Service is set to "Activate", the call is saved as "Missed calls" in "Received calls" and **xx missed call(s)** appears in stand-by.

### Note

- Record up to 20 messages respectively for voice and Videophone calls with three minutes of recording time per message. Messages are saved for up to 72 hours.
- Ring tone sounds for the set ringing time (can be changed: P. 392) when a call is received while Voice Mail Service is set to "Activate". Answering during the set ringing time connects call. Calls are automatically forwarded to Voice Mail Service center after set time. Forwarded calls are noted in stand-by and **Received calls**. However, when ringing time is set to **0 seconds**, calls are not saved in Received calls.
- If a Videophone call is received from the Videophone compatible model when Voice Mail Service is set to "Activate", the call is connected to Voice Mail Service and message recording is activated after the set ringing time passes. Answering during the set ringing time connects call without connecting to Voice Mail Service.
- Make a voice call to **1412** to change the Videophone call settings of Voice Mail Service.
- When the call is connected to Voice Mail Service with Chara-den, the DTMF operations become unavailable. Switch to the DTMF mode from the function menu (P. 50).

## Basic Flow of Voice Mail Service

- STEP 1 Activate Voice Mail Service.
- STEP 2 Voice/Videophone call is received.
- STEP 3 Call is connected to Voice Mail Service center if not answered.
- STEP 4 Caller records a message.
- STEP 5 Play back message.

## Activating/Deactivating Voice Mail Service <Activate/Deactivate VoiceMail>

### Activating Voice Mail Service

- 1 In stand-by, press **☉ 4 1 3**.
- 2 Select activation method.

To activate service	<b>☉ → Yes → ☉</b>
To set ringing time before activating	<b>☉ → enter ringing time (000 to 120 seconds) → ☉ → Yes → ☉</b>

- Alternatively, press **☉ 4 1 4** in stand-by to set the ringing time.

## Deactivating Voice Mail Service

- In stand-by, press **☉** **4** **1** **5**, select **Yes** and press **☉**.

## Playing Back Messages <Play Messages>

- In stand-by, press **☉** **4** **1** **2**, select **Yes** and press **☉**.

- Play back messages according to voice guidance.

### Note

- When **☎ xx voice mail(s)** appears in stand-by, press **☉** and **Play messages?** appears. Select **Yes** and press **☉** to play back the messages. If i-appli is set as stand-by, the display message disappears when **CLR** is pressed.
- Number that appears is the number of new messages notified by guidance when playing back. Saved messages are not included.
- Videophone messages can be played back by making a Videophone call to **1417**.

## Setting Voice Mail Service Using Voice Guidance <Voice Mail Setting>

- In stand-by, press **☉** **4** **1** **7**, select **Yes** and press **☉**.

- Press **9** and set according to voice guidance.

To set message stating unavailability	<b>1</b>
To confirm or set Reply message or announcement	<b>2</b>
To confirm or set Caller ID guidance	<b>3</b>

## Checking for New Messages <Check Messages>

- In stand-by, press **☉** **4** **1** **1**.
  - If there are new messages of voice call, **☎ xx voice mail(s)** appears in stand-by.
  - When a Videophone message is received, an SMS informing that a new message is recorded is received.

## Checking and Changing Voice Mail Service Settings <Status (Voice Mail)>

- In stand-by, press **☉** **4** **1** **6**.
  - Current settings appear.

Status(Voice Mail) <b>▼</b>	
Voice mail:Inactive	
Ring time:15sec.	

When inactive

## 2 Press **☉** and select function.

To activate service	<b>1</b> <b>1</b> → <b>Yes</b> → <b>☉</b>
To set ringing time before activating	<b>1</b> <b>2</b> → enter ringing time (000 to 120 seconds) → <b>☉</b> → <b>Yes</b> → <b>☉</b>
To deactivate service	<b>2</b> → <b>Yes</b> → <b>☉</b>
To change ringing time	<b>3</b> → enter ringing time (000 to 120 seconds) → <b>☉</b>

## Sounding Alarm When New Message Is Stored <Voice Mail Alarm>

- In stand-by, press **☉** **4** **1** **8** **1** and press **1** **[ON]**.

- Voice mail alarm is set.

## Deleting New Message Icon <Delete Display>

Delete **☎ xx voice mail(s)** that appears when new message is received.

- In stand-by, press **☉**, select **Top menu**, press **☉** **4** **1** **8** **2**, select **Yes** and press **☉**.

- ☎ xx voice mail(s)** disappears.
- Press **CLR** for 1+ seconds to delete **☎ xx voice mail(s)** displayed in stand-by.

### Note

- If messages are still stored at Voice Mail center, even if **☎ xx voice mail(s)** disappears, these messages are not deleted. **☎ xx voice mail(s)** reappears when message is checked or new message is recorded.

## Using Missed Call Notification Function <Start/Stop Notification>

Receive SMS notifying missed calls received while the handset is outside the service area, in Self mode or turned off.

- Missed calls are notified even if Reject all SMS is set.
- Receiving SMS is free of charge.
- Up to five Voice mail notifications can be received by one SMS.

## Activating Missed call notification

- In stand-by, press **☉** **4** **1** **9** **1**.

- Select whether to notify calls with no ID or not.

To notify calls	Select <b>Yes</b> → <b>☉</b> → <b>Yes</b> → <b>☉</b>
To not notify calls	Select <b>No</b> → <b>☉</b> → <b>Yes</b> → <b>☉</b>

- Select **Yes** in the activate Missed call notification screen. The function is activated.

## Deactivating Missed call notification

- 1 In stand-by, press **☎ 4 1 9 2**, select **Yes** and press **☎**.

## Checking Missed call notification settings

- 1 In stand-by, press **☎ 4 1 9 3**.
  - Current settings appear.

## Call Waiting

### Using Call Waiting

Call Waiting is a service for placing the current call on hold and answering a new incoming call when the handset beeps during a call to notify you of another call.

In addition, place the current call on hold and make a new call.

- To use Call Waiting, set "Arrival call action" (P. 399) to "Answer" in advance. If set differently, Call Waiting is not available even if Call Waiting is activated.
- Call Waiting cannot be set from outside the service area.

#### Note

- Videophone calls cannot be placed on hold to answer or place voice/Videophone calls.
- Voice calls cannot be placed on hold to answer or place incoming Videophone calls.

## Activating/Deactivating Call Waiting

<Activate/Deactivate>

### Activating Call Waiting

- 1 In stand-by, press **☎ 4 2 1**, select **Yes** and press **☎**.

### Deactivating Call Waiting

- 1 In stand-by, press **☎ 4 2 2**, select **Yes** and press **☎**.

#### Note

- Charges are incurred by caller when call is on hold.
- Placing current voice call on hold and making a voice call to another party is possible even when Call Waiting is deactivated.

### Checking settings

- 1 In stand-by, press **☎ 4 2 3**.
  - Current settings appear.

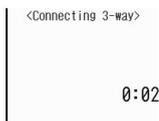


Status request 023  
Call waiting: Active  
When active

## Placing current call on hold and answer a voice call

- 1 When a beeping tone is heard during a call, press **☎**.

- Original call is placed on hold and incoming call is connected.
- Press **☎** to switch between callers.



<Connecting 3-way>  
0:02

- 2 Press **☎** when finished.

- Press **☎** to reconnect original call.
- To end the call on hold
- Press **☎ 3** [Disconnect].

#### Note

- When a Videophone call is received during a voice call or when a voice/Videophone call is received during a Videophone call, in-call ring tone is not heard and the incoming call cannot be answered. When the voice/Videophone is ended, **mised call(s)** appears in stand-by.

## Disconnecting current call and answer a voice call

- 1 When a beeping tone is heard during a call, press **☎**.

- Ring tone for incoming call sounds.

- 2 Press **☎**.

- Incoming call is connected.

## Placing current call on hold and place a separate call

- 1 Dial other party's phone number during a call.

- Alternatively, select the number from phonebook, Received calls or Redial.

- 2 Press **☎**.

- Speak to the new party.
- Original call is automatically placed on hold.
- Press **☎** to switch between calls.



Calling  
Docomo Taro  
090XXXXXXXX

- 3 Press **☎** when finished with the new call.

- New call is disconnected.
- Press **☎** to reconnect original call.

## Call Forwarding Service

### Using Call Forwarding Service

Call Forwarding Service is a service for forwarding voice/Videophone calls to designated phone numbers when the handset is outside the service area or turned off, or when calls are not answered within set ringing time.

- To prioritize Call Forwarding Service when Record message (☎ P. 71) is also set, set the ringing time for Call Forwarding Service shorter than the answering duration for Record message.
- If a voice/Videophone call is not answered when Call Forwarding Service is set to "Activate", the call is saved as "Missed call" in "Received calls" and **xx missed call(s)** appears in stand-by.

#### Note

- For **Videophone calls**, the caller sees a message that the call is being forwarded. The forward guidance is not played.
- Ring tone sounds for the set ringing time (can be changed: ☎ P. 395) when Call Forwarding Service is set to "Activate". Answer while ringing to connect call. Calls are automatically forwarded to the set destination after set time passes. Forwarded calls are noted in stand-by and saved in **Received calls**. However, calls are not saved in Received calls if ringing time is set to **0 seconds**.
- Collect calls (receiver accepts charges) are not connected when Call Forwarding Service is set to "Activate".
- Calls received while engaged in a call can be automatically forwarded.
- Call forwarding is automatically deactivated if **Voice Mail Service** is set to "Activate".
- Setting Call Forwarding Service from FOMA terminal is not available from outside the service area. In such cases, access Call Forwarding Service from touch-tone telephones and payphones using **network security code**. **Remote control settings** must be set in advance.

### Basic Flow of Call Forwarding Service

- STEP 1 Register forwarding destination.  
STEP 2 Activate Call Forwarding Service.  
STEP 3 Voice/Videophone call is received.  
STEP 4 Call is automatically forwarded to the destination if not answered.

## Activating/Deactivating Call Forwarding Service <Activate/Deactivate>

### Activating Call Forwarding Service

- 1 In stand-by, press **☎** **4** **3** **1**.
- 2 Press **3** [**Forwarding number**] and enter the number to send to.

To input directly	<b>1</b> → enter phone number → <b>☎</b>
To enter from phonebook	<b>2</b> → select name → <b>☎</b> → <b>☎</b>
- 3 Press **2** [**Set ring time**], enter ringing time (three digits: 000 to 120 seconds) and press **☎**.
- 4 Press **1** [**Activate**], select **Yes** and press **☎**.

#### Note

- Calls are automatically forwarded without sounding ring tone while the handset is outside the service area, in **Self mode** or turned off.
- Answer while ring tone is ringing to connect call.

### Deactivating Call Forwarding Service

- 1 In stand-by, press **☎** **4** **3** **2**, select **Yes** and press **☎**.

### Forwarding voice calls received during voice calls

- 1 While the handset beeps during a call, press **☎** **2** [**Forward calls**].
  - Received call is forwarded to set destination.

### Forwarding calls while ring tone is sounding

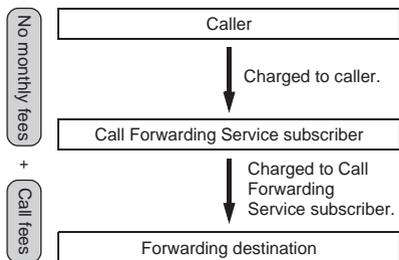
- 1 While ring tone is sounding, press **☎** **2** [**Forward calls**].
  - Received call is forwarded to set destination.
  - For Videophone calls, press **☎** **3**.

### Setting Call forwarding guidance

- 1 In stand-by, press **1** **4** **2** **9** **☎**.
  - Set according to voice guidance.

## Call Forwarding Service fees

### Call fees

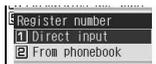


Operations for setting destination, activating and deactivating are not charged.

## Changing Forwarding Destination

<Register Number>

- In stand-by, press **☉ 4 3 3**, select input method and edit phone number.



To input directly	<b>1</b> → enter phone number → <b>☉</b>
To enter from phonebook	<b>2</b> → select name → <b>☉</b> → <b>☉</b>

- Select whether to activate Call Forwarding Service or not.

To just change	<b>1</b>
To change and activate the service	<b>2</b>

## Using Voice Mail Service When Forwarding Destination Is Busy

<Forwarding No. Busy>

- Subscription for Voice Mail Service (monthly fees apply) is required.

- In stand-by, press **☉ 4 3 4**, select **Yes** and press **☉**.

## Checking Call Forwarding Service Settings <Status Request>

- In stand-by, press **☉ 4 3 5**.
  - Current settings appear.

## Nuisance Call Barring Service

### Using Nuisance Call Barring Service

Register phone numbers for “nuisance calls” such as prank calls. When numbers are registered for the Nuisance Call Barring Service, calls are automatically rejected and a guidance answers them.

- A ring tone does not sound when calls are received from registered numbers. In addition, the calls are not saved in Received calls.

#### Note

- Reject callers with no ID.
- International calls may not be rejected.

## Barring Last Caller <Register Caller>

- In stand-by, press **☉ 4 4 1**, select **Yes** and press **☉**.

- Last non-PushTalk caller is registered for Nuisance Call Barring Service.

## Registering Selected Numbers for Nuisance Call Barring Service

<Register Selected No>

- In stand-by, press **☉ 4 4 2** and select where to retrieve the phone number from.

To select from Received calls	<b>1</b> → select phone number → <b>☉</b> → <b>Yes</b> → <b>☉</b>
To select from Redial	<b>2</b> → select phone number → <b>☉</b> → <b>Yes</b> → <b>☉</b>
To select from phonebook	<b>3</b> → select phone number → <b>☉</b> → <b>Yes</b> → <b>☉</b>

- If 30 phone numbers are already registered, **Exceeds limit. Delete oldest entry and save new one?** appears. Select **Yes** and press **☉** to overwrite.

#### Note

- Received calls for User unset and PushTalk call/received history cannot be registered to bar calls.

## Deleting All Saved Numbers <Delete All Entries>

- In stand-by, press **☉ 4 4 3**, select **Yes** and press **☉**.

## Deleting last saved number

1 In stand-by, press **☉ 4 4 4**, select **Yes** and press **☉**.

- The last saved number is deleted. Repeat this operation to delete numbers individually from the last saved number.

## Confirming Total Numbers Set

<Check No of Entries>

1 In stand-by, press **☉ 4 4 5**.

- The number of saved entries appears.

### Note

- Use Delete all entries or Delete last entry to delete phone numbers. Deleting only specified numbers cannot be performed.

## When other services are active

The following actions are taken when various services are activated.

- When a PushTalk call is received from a number registered to the Nuisance Call Barring Service, a guidance message is not played to the other party and the call is disconnected.

Service	Response
Voice Mail Service	Rejection message is played. Message is not recorded.
Call Forwarding Service	Rejection message is played. Call is not forwarded.
Call Waiting	Rejection message is played.
Caller ID Request Service	Rejection message is played.

## Caller ID Request Service

### Using Caller ID Request Service

Caller ID request is a service for playing Caller ID Request for voice/Videophone calls without caller ID and disconnecting the calls automatically.

- When calls are not received with the Caller ID Request Service, the calls are not saved in "Received calls" and **xx missed call(s)** does not appear.
- When PushTalk is received without caller ID, a message is not played and the call is disconnected.

## When other services are active

The following actions are taken when Caller ID Request Service is set to "Activate" along with the various services.

Service	Response to unidentified callers
Voice Mail Service	Caller ID request message is played. Message is not recorded.
Call Forwarding Service	Caller ID request message is played. Call is not forwarded.
Call Waiting	Caller ID request message is played.
Nuisance Call Barring Service	Rejection message is played when called by a rejected nuisance number.

## Activating Caller ID Request Service

<Activate>

1 In stand-by, press **☉ 4 6 1**, select **Yes** and press **☉**.

## Deactivating Caller ID Request Service <Deactivate>

1 In stand-by, press **☉ 4 6 2**, select **Yes** and press **☉**.

## Checking Settings <Status Request>

1 In stand-by, press **☉ 4 6 3**.  
● Current settings appear.

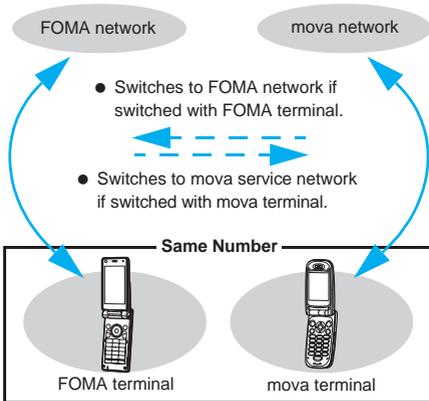
## Dual Network Service

### Using Dual Network Service

A mova terminal is available with a phone number registered for the FOMA terminal. FOMA and mova can be switched depending on service area.

- FOMA and mova terminals cannot be used simultaneously.
- Enter the four-digit number for the network security code (☎ P. 144).

## Switching Dual Network Service



- Certain services are restricted.
- FOMA and mova cannot be used simultaneously.
- Switch using unavailable terminals for the Dual Network Service.

## Switching to FOMA Network

### <Switching>

Switch handset to FOMA network.

- In stand-by, press  $\odot$  5 2 1.**
  - Network security code entry screen appears.
- Enter network security code, press  $\odot$ , select Yes and press  $\odot$ .**
  - Network is switched.

### Note

- Check signal status before switching.  $\bar{r}$  indicates signal strength, not availability of network service.

## Checking Settings <Status Request>

- In stand-by, press  $\odot$  5 2 2.**
  - Current settings appear.

## English Guidance

## Switching Guidance Language

Change into English the guidance language for network service settings such as “Voice Mail Service” and the voice guidance notifying that the handset is outside the service area.

- Cannot be set from outside the service area.
- If caller subscribes to this service, caller’s settings are prioritized.

## Available guidances

	Menu item	Details
Outgoing (Played when setting network services)	Japanese	All guidances are in Japanese.
	English	All guidances are in English.
Incoming (Played when called)	Japanese	All guidances are in Japanese.
	Japanese+English	English follows Japanese guidance.
	English+Japanese	Japanese follows English guidance.

- In stand-by, press  $\odot$  5 3 1 and select Guidance type.**

To set for outgoing and incoming	1
To set only for outgoing	2
To set only for incoming	3

Selection
1) Call+rcv call
2) Call only
3) Rcv call only

- Select language.**

Outgoing guidance		Incoming guidance	
Japanese	1	Japanese	1
English	2	Japanese+English	2
		English+Japanese	3

## Checking Settings <Status Request>

- In stand-by, press  $\odot$  5 3 2.**
  - Current settings appear.

Status request	532
Outgoing calls set to Japanese.	
Incoming calls set to Japanese	

## Service Number

### Using Service Numbers

Call can be made to Repair inquiries and General inquiries.

- Items may appear differently or may not appear depending on the FOMA card to be used.

**1** In stand-by, press **☉ 5 4**, select item, select **Yes** and press **☉**.

ドコモ故障問合せ (Repair inquiries)	①	Call can be made to Repair inquiries.
ドコモ総合案内・受付 (General inquiries)	②	Call can be made to General inquiries.

#### Note

- Before calling to Repair inquiries, refer to "Troubleshooting" (P. 438 to P. 441) and check by yourself.
- ドコモ故障問合せ (Repair inquiries), ドコモ総合案内・受付 (General inquiries), etc. may not appear depending on the FOMA card used.  
When not displayed, save numbers of "General Inquiries", "Repairs", etc. on the back of this manual.

## Arrival Call Act

### Selecting Actions for Incoming Calls During a Call

Select actions for voice calls received during a voice call if "Voice Mail Service", "Call Forwarding Service" or "Call Waiting" is subscribed.

- If "Voice Mail Service", "Call Forwarding Service" or "Call Waiting" is not subscribed, calls cannot be answered during a call.
- Set arrival actions to "Activate" to use Arrival call action.

#### Available actions

Voice Mail	Calls received while engaged in a call are automatically forwarded to Voice Mail Service center. Messages are stored regardless of Voice Mail Service settings.
Call Forwarding	Calls received while engaged in a call are automatically forwarded. Voice calls received while engaged in a call are automatically forwarded regardless of Call Forwarding Service settings.
Call Rejection	Calls received while engaged in a call are automatically rejected.
Answer	Follows Call Waiting settings if set to "Activate". If set to "Deactivate", one of the following applies. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Disconnect current call and answer incoming call.</li> <li>Manually connect incoming calls to Voice Mail Service, Call Forwarding Service, or reject.</li> <li>Voice Mail Service and Call Forwarding Service settings are used if set to "Activate".</li> </ul>

- To use Call Waiting, set Arrival call act to **Answer**.

- No matter the Arrival call action setting, if a call is received while engaged in another call it is saved in Received calls.

**1** In stand-by, press **☉ 4 9** and select an arrival action.

Voice Mail	①	Call Rejection	③
Call forwarding	②	Answer	④

## Set Arrival Act

### Activating/Deactivating Arrival Actions

Set arrival actions to "Activate" to receive another voice call according to Arrival call act (P. 399) during a voice call.

- Cannot be set from outside the service area.

#### Activating Arrival Actions <Activate>

**1** In stand-by, press **☉ 4 8 1**, select **Yes** and press **☉**.

#### Deactivating Arrival Actions <Deactivate>

**1** In stand-by, press **☉ 4 8 2**, select **Yes** and press **☉**.

#### Checking Settings <Status Request>

**1** In stand-by, press **☉ 4 8 3**.

- Current settings appear.

## Remote Control

### Setting Remote Control

Set "Voice Mail Service" or "Call Forwarding Service" remotely from touch-tone landline phones, payphones and DoCoMo mobile phones.

- Remote control is also available from outside the FOMA service area.
- To perform remote operations, set Remote control to "Activate" in advance.
- Cannot be set from outside the service area.

#### Activating Remote Control <Activate>

**1** In stand-by, press **☉ 5 1 1**, select **Yes** and press **☉**.

#### Deactivating Remote Control <Deactivate>

**1** In stand-by, press **☉ 5 1 2**, select **Yes** and press **☉**.

## Checking Settings <Status Request>

- 1 In stand-by, press .
  - Current settings appear.

### Accessing network services from other phones

- For details on operating Network services from a payphone: "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]".

## Multi Number

### Using Multi Number

**Multi Number is a service for using up to two phone numbers, Additional Number1 and Additional Number2, besides Basic Number on the FOMA terminal.**

- Set a name and ring tone (P. 116) for each number.
- Multi Number settings (name, phone number, etc.) registered in the FOMA terminal may be deleted when a FOMA card is removed or replaced. In such cases, register again.
- A registered name appears according to each Multi Number (Basic Number/Additional Number1/Additional Number2) on the screen when a call is being made/received.
- When making a call from Redial or Received calls, the previously used Multi Number is displayed and dialed.

### Registering Multi Number <Number Setting>

**Default setting** Ring tone: 着信音 1

- "Primary number" cannot be deleted.
- The registered phone number and name appear in the Multi Number selection screen when calling or incoming call screen.

- 1 In stand-by, press , select number to register to and press .
- 2 Enter name and press .
- Enter up to 14 single-byte (7 double-byte) characters.
- 3 Enter phone number and press .
- Enter up to 26 digits for phone number. **P** cannot be entered.
- 4 Select ring tone and press [OK].
  - Refer to P. 116 for details on setting the ring tone.

### Calling from the selected phone number

- 1 In stand-by, enter a phone number.
- 2 Press [Sel Multi number].
- 3 Select a phone number and press .
- Dial input is not available after Multi Number is selected.
- 4 Press .
- Call is placed from the phone number selected.

#### Note

- To select a number from **Received calls** or **Redial**, select a person to call, press and perform steps 3 and 4.
- Alternative to the above, enter **\*590#**, **\*591#**, **\*592#** at the end of a phone number and make a call. Adding **\*590#** selects "Primary number", **\*591#** selects the "Additional Number1", and the **\*592#** selects the "Additional Number2". In that case, a phone number selected as a calling number for Multi Number in the **Sel Multi number** of the Submenu is prioritized to make a call.

### Setting the Phone Number to Use When Calling <Set Multi Number>

- Use the set phone number to call all destinations.

- 1 In stand-by, press .
- 2 Select the phone number to use, press , select **Yes** and press .
- The set phone number is available for outgoing calls.

### Checking the Multi Number Setting <Status Request>

- 1 In stand-by, press .
- Current settings appear.

### Editing Multi Number

- 1 In stand-by, press .
- 2 Select number and press [Edit].
  - Editing procedures are the same as when registering.

## Deleting Multi Number

- 1 In stand-by, press **[\*] 5 6 3**.
- 2 Select number and press **[\*] 2** [Delete].
- 3 Select Yes and press **[\*]**.

## OFFICEED

### Using OFFICEED

“OFFICEED” is the in-group flat-rate service offered with a specified IMCS (Inbuilding Mobile Communication System). Using this service requires a separate subscription. Refer to the NTT DoCoMo web page for corporations (<http://www.docomo.biz/d/212/>) for further information.

## Additional Services (USSD)

### Using Additional Services

Save and use new DoCoMo network services when they are added.

- Cannot be set from outside the service area.
- Save these new service special numbers or codes in the FOMA terminal.
- When there is a service code, it is saved as a “USSD” on the FOMA terminal.

## Saving Services <USSD>

- Save up to ten new DoCoMo network services.

- 1 In stand-by, press **[\*] 5 5 1**.
- 2 Select a number to save, press **[\*]** **[1]** [Edit], enter service name and press **[\*]**.
  - Enter up to 20 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters.
- 3 Enter special number or service code for the service to add and press **[\*]**.

## Using Saved Services

- 1 In stand-by, press **[\*] 5 5 1**.
- 2 Select service and press **[\*]** [Call].

## Deleting Registered Services

- 1 In stand-by, press **[\*] 5 5 1**.
- 2 Select service and select deletion method.

To delete one	<b>[*] 2</b> → Yes → <b>[*]</b>
To delete all	<b>[*] 3</b> → enter terminal security code → <b>[*]</b> → Yes → <b>[*]</b>

## Changing Receive Display for Saved Service <Reply Message>

- 1 In stand-by, press **[\*] 5 5 2**.
- 2 Select Receive display and edit.

To edit	<b>[*] 1</b> → enter receive display name → <b>[*]</b> → enter special number or service code → <b>[*]</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● Enter up to 20 single-byte (10 double-byte) characters for receive display name.</li></ul>
To delete one	<b>[*] 2</b> → Yes → <b>[*]</b>
To delete all	<b>[*] 3</b> → enter terminal security code → <b>[*]</b> → Yes → <b>[*]</b>



# Data Communication

● Data Communication .....	404
● Before Use .....	405
● General Flow to Prepare for Data Communication .....	406
● AT Commands .....	406
● CD-ROM .....	406
● DoCoMo Keitai Datalink .....	406

Refer to “Manual for Data Communication” in PDF format in the accompanying CD-ROM\* for details on data communication. Adobe Reader (version 6.0 and above is recommended) is required to view “Manual for Data Communication” in PDF format. Install it from the accompanying CD-ROM to your personal computer if not installed. Refer to Adobe Reader Help for details on how to use the software.

\* Place the accompanying CD-ROM in the PC and the initial screen appears. Click 取扱説明書 (User's Manual) → データ通信マニュアル (PDFファイル) (Manual for Data Communication (PDF file)). If the initial screen does not appear, click マイコンピュータ (My Computer), select and right-click **FOMA\_SH903iTV**, click エクスプローラ (Explorer), double-click **manual** and double-click **SH903iTV\_E\_Manual.pdf**.

## Data Communication

### Data Communication Available from the FOMA Terminal

FOMA terminal communication formats fall into three categories: packet transmission, 64K data communication and data transfer.

- FOMA terminal does not support fax transmissions.
- FOMA terminal supports data communication with musea, sigmarion and sigmarion . Update musea and sigmarion before using.  
Refer to the DoCoMo web page for details on how to update.
- The FOMA terminal is not compatible with Remote Wakeup.

#### Packet transmission

Charges incurred are based on the amount of data sent and received. When you are only connected to the network and are not sending or receiving data, no communication charges are incurred. Remain connected to the network, with no charge, and only send or receive data when necessary. Uses access points that are compatible with FOMA packet transmission, such as the DoCoMo Internet Connection Services "mopera U" and "mopera", and sends and receives data at speeds up to 64 kbps and 384 kbps respectively (A best-effort connection is provided in which transmission speeds vary depending on the transmission environment and network traffic conditions).

For packet transmission, connect the FOMA terminal to a device such as a PC and perform appropriate settings. Best suited for when sending and receiving mail text data or other relatively small amounts of data at high speeds. Sending or receiving large files will lead to higher transmission charges.

Making voice calls while performing packet transmissions with a PC or other devices is possible (☎ P. 364).

#### 64K data communications

Charges incurred are based on the connection time. Uses access points that are compatible with FOMA 64K data communications, such as the DoCoMo Internet Communication Services "mopera U" and "mopera", or a synchronous ISDN 64K access point. Connect the FOMA terminal to a device such as a PC and perform appropriate settings to use 64K data communications. Best suited for sending and receiving relatively large amounts of data, such as downloading Data box contents. Note that long-time communication leads to higher transmission charges.

#### Data transfer

Transfer or exchange data using a FOMA USB cable (sold separately) or Ir exchange without charges. Send or receive data such as phonebook entries, sent/received messages, and bookmarks.

Use infrared communication when connecting the FOMA terminal to another FOMA terminal or mobile phone. Use either the FOMA USB cable or infrared communication when connecting the FOMA terminal to a PC.

### Things to Keep in Mind

#### Internet service provider fees

When using the Internet, usage fees are charged by the Internet service provider. These usage fees, paid to the Internet service provider, are separate from the FOMA service fee. Contact your Internet service provider for more information about usage fees.

Use the DoCoMo Internet Connection Services "mopera U" and "mopera". Subscription to "mopera U" requires a charge. "mopera" requires no subscription and charges no monthly usage fee.

#### Host (Internet service provider, etc.) settings

Hosts for packet transmission and 64K data communications differ. For packet transmission, use a host that supports FOMA packet transmission, and for 64K data communications, use a host that supports FOMA 64K data communications or synchronous ISDN 64K communication.

- Connecting to DoPa access points is not possible.
- Connecting to PHS 64K/32K data communication data access points (such as PIAFS) is not possible.

#### User authentication

Depending on the host, user authentication (ID and password) may be necessary when connecting. In such cases, enter your ID and password using communication software (dial-up network) to connect. Your ID and password are provided by your host Internet service provider or host network administrator. Contact your host Internet service provider or host network administrator for more information.

#### Packet transmission and 64K data communications conditions

The following conditions are necessary for communication using the FOMA terminal.

- PC must support FOMA USB cable.
- Must be within the FOMA service area.
- For packet transmission, access point must be compatible with FOMA packet transmission.
- For 64K data communications, host must support FOMA 64K data communications or synchronous ISDN 64K communications.

However, even if above conditions are met, communication may not be possible due to a busy base station or poor signal conditions.

#### Note

- When performing packet transmission, the device connected to your FOMA terminal must be a JATE (Japan Approvals Institute for Telecommunications Equipment) authorized product.

## Before Use

### Confirming the Operating Environment

The following lists the operating requirements for using data communications.

Item	System requirements	
	Communication setting file/FOMA PC Setup Software	FirstPass PC Software
PC	PC/AT compatible A USB port (USB specification 1.1/2.0-compliant) is required.	PC/AT compatible
OS	Windows 2000, Windows XP (all Japanese versions)	
Required memory*	Windows 2000: At least 64 MB Windows XP: At least 128 MB	Windows 2000: At least 32 MB Windows XP: At least 128 MB
Hard disk*	At least 5 MB free space	At least 10 MB free space
Browser	–	Windows 2000: Internet Explorer 5.5 and above Windows XP: Internet Explorer 6.0 and above

\* Required memory and hard disk are for the "FOMA PC Setup Software" and "FirstPass PC Software" operating environment. May differ depending on the PC system configuration.

- The operation in an upgraded OS cannot be guaranteed.
- Depending on the operating environment, use of the software may not be possible. DoCoMo holds no responsibility for responding to inquiries or guaranteeing operation in environments other than those specified above.

### Required Equipment

The following hardware and software are required besides the FOMA terminal and a PC.

- FOMA USB cable (sold separately) or FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (sold separately)
- CD-ROM "FOMA SH903iTV CD-ROM" (accessory)

#### Note

- Purchase a dedicated USB cable "FOMA USB cable" or "FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01". USB cables for PC are not available since the connector shape is different.
- The explanations in this manual are based on the case of "FOMA USB cable".

### Data communication terminology

#### APN (Access Point Name)

A character string used by Internet service providers and corporate LANs for identification purposes. The APN of the DoCoMo Internet Connection Service mopera U is **mopera.net** and mopera is **mopera.ne.jp**.

#### cid (Context Identifier)

Registration number assigned when an APN is registered to the FOMA terminal. On the FOMA terminal, numbers 1 to 10 can be used.

#### DNS (Domain Name System)

System that converts domain names (for example, **nttdocomo.co.jp**) into IP addresses used on the PC.

#### IrDA (Infrared Data Association)

Organization that establishes the standard for infrared exchange.

#### IrMC (Ir Mobile Communications)

Standard created for the purpose of transferring data between mobile phones or PDAs (Personal Digital Assistants). Exchange phone numbers and schedules between mobile phones or PDAs with IrMC-compliant infrared terminals.

#### OBEX (Object Exchange)

One of the international data communication standards. Enables sending and receiving data between OBEX-compatible devices such as mobile phones, PCs, digital cameras and printers.

#### QoS (Quality of Service)

Service quality. Technology for using lines as the user intends, during communication. Set communication speed for connection, etc. on the FOMA terminal.

#### W-CDMA

One of the third-generation mobile communication systems (IMT-2000) recognized as a global standard. The FOMA terminal is compliant with the W-CDMA standard.

#### W-TCP

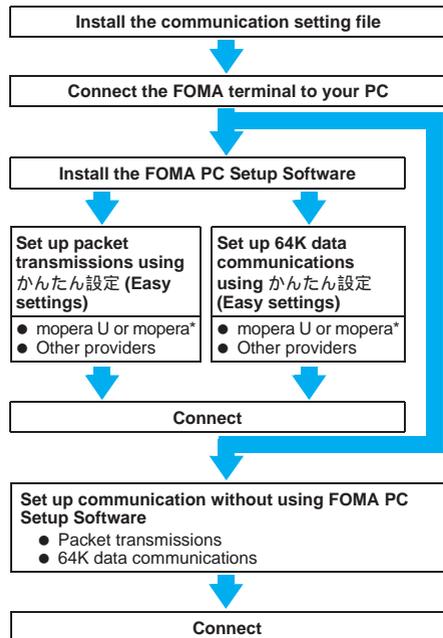
A TCP parameter for maximizing TCP/IP transfer capabilities when using packet transmission on the FOMA network. Use this communication setting to maximize the communication performance of the FOMA terminal.

#### Users with PC administrator rights

Authority that makes access to all OS systems possible. On a single PC, at least one person is set as a user with PC administrator rights. Normally, users without PC administrator rights cannot install or uninstall drivers or software.

## General Flow to Prepare for Data Communication

This section describes the preparation required to connect the FOMA terminal to your PC, and use packet transmission and 64K data communications. The general flow is as shown below.



\* Use "mopera U" (subscription necessary) for broadband Internet. Subscribe to a plan that only charges for months which the service was used. Also available is "mopera", a simple Internet connection service with no subscription necessary.

## Communication Setting File

To connect the FOMA terminal to your PC for data communication, installation of the communication setting file from the accompanying CD-ROM is required.

## FOMA PC Setup Software/FirstPass PC Software

Install the FOMA PC Setup Software from the accompanying CD-ROM to PC and make a variety of necessary settings to perform packet transmission and 64K data communications connecting the FOMA terminal to PC. FirstPass PC Software enables access to FirstPass supported sites via a PC Web browser with user certificates obtained by the FOMA terminal. Refer to "FirstPassManual" on the accompanying CD-ROM for details. Adobe Reader (version 6.0 and above is recommended) is required to view "FirstPassManual" (PDF format).

## AT Commands

AT commands are commands used to set FOMA terminal functions from a PC. When AT commands are entered from a PC, the FOMA terminal performs the corresponding operations. Refer to "Manual for Data Communication" in the accompanying CD-ROM for details on AT commands.

## CD-ROM

The accompanying CD-ROM in this manual contains the software for data transmissions on the FOMA terminal and the manuals (in PDF format) such as "Manual for Data Communication" and "Kuten Code List". Refer to the accompanying CD-ROM for details.

### ■ Contained software and PDF

- SH903iTV Communication Setting File
- FOMA PC Setup Software
- Information on DoCoMo keitai datalink
- FirstPass PC Software
- データ通信マニュアル and "Manual for Data Communication" in PDF format
- 区画コード一覧 and "Kuten Code List" in PDF format
- Adobe® Reader®7.0
- Information on mopera U

The following warning message may appear when a CD-ROM is set in a PC. This warning is shown by the security setting of Internet Explorer but does not cause any problem for use.

Click はい (Yes).

The following screen is an example for Windows XP. The screen depends on your PC.



## DoCoMo Keitai Datalink

Use DoCoMo keitai datalink software to back up the data such as "phonebook" and "mail" from the user's mobile phone to a PC and edit them. The software can be downloaded from an NTT DoCoMo web page. Refer to the following URL for details and downloading. Alternatively, access the following page using the accompanying CD-ROM. <http://datalink.nttdocomo.co.jp>

Refer to the web page above for details on downloading, transferable data, operating environment, installing and operating instructions, restrictions, etc.

Refer to the software's help feature for the operation procedure after installation. A FOMA USB cable (sold separately) is required to use DoCoMo keitai datalink.

# Text Input

- Entering Text ..... <Text Input>408
- 5-touch Input Method Text Entry ..... <5-touch>408
- Editing/Saving Phrases ..... <Save Phrases>413
- Cutting/Copying/Pasting Text ..... <Copy Text>413
- Inputting Kuten Code ..... <Kuten Code Input>414
- Registering Frequently Used Words ..... <Register Words (User Dictionary)>414
- Resetting Memorized Conversion Candidates ..... <Clear Memory Terms>415
- Using a Downloaded Dictionary ..... <Download Dictionary>415
- Selecting Conversion Method ..... <Quick Dictionary/Next Word Guess>416
- 2-touch Input Method Text Entry ..... <2-touch>416

Refer to “Kuten Code List” in PDF format in the accompanying CD-ROM for details on kuten code list. Adobe Reader (version 6.0 and above is recommended) is required to view “Kuten Code List” in PDF format. Install it from the accompanying CD-ROM to your personal computer if not installed.

## Text Input

### Entering Text

Enter text for various functions on the FOMA terminal, such as phonebook and mail. Before entering text, it is recommended to learn about the text input methods.

#### Text input methods

5-touch	Each key is assigned multiple characters. Press key multiple times to enter character. Refer to P. 428 to P. 429 for details on key assignment. Press  to scroll backwards through characters.
2-touch	Use two-digit combinations to enter character, as when sending text to pagers. Refer to P. 430 for details on two-digit combinations.

- Refer to P. 416 for details on selecting text input methods.
- Each method has input modes for entering different types of characters ( P. 410, P. 416).

#### Types of characters which can be entered

Double-byte	Kanji, hiragana, katakana, alphabet (upper/lower case), numbers, symbols, pictographs
Single-byte	Katakana, alphabet (upper/lower case), numbers, symbols

- Use double-byte alphanumeric mode to enter double-byte numbers.
- Refer to P. 428 to P. 430 for details.

#### Quick dictionary and Next word guess

Quick dictionary	For every one to five hiragana characters entered, conversion candidate words starting with those characters appear. Commonly used words are registered in a specialized dictionary.
Next word guess	After characters are confirmed, the next word is predicted from previous input/conversion records, automatically showing candidate characters that follow confirmed characters.

- Both conversion functions are enabled as the default setting. Functions can be disabled individually ( P. 416).
- Memorized conversion candidates can be reset ( P. 415).

#### Note

- Design of the text input screen depends on the function.

### 5-touch

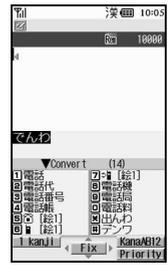
#### 5-touch Input Method Text Entry

### Entering Kanji, Hiragana, Katakana (Double-byte)

In kanji mode, convert hiragana to kanji, hiragana, katakana (double-byte) and symbols.

## 1 In text input screen, press the dial keys and enter hiragana.

- Every time the key is pressed, the character changes.
- Kanji candidates appear every time a hiragana character is entered.
- To enter multiple characters assigned to the same key, press to move the cursor, or press the same key for 1+ seconds after entering a character. Example: To enter あい, press → → → , or press → (for 1+ seconds) → .
- To enter katakana or alphanumerics, press . Every time the key is pressed, Input mode (type of characters) changes.



## 2 Move the cursor to the kanji candidate field with , select character and press .

- Alternatively, press to , , or corresponding to list number of conversion candidates to enter.
- Press to stop selection. The cursor returns to the text input screen. Continue entering text.



Conversion candidates field

To show the next list screen	[Next] →  [Next] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press  [Next] once when the cursor is on the last candidate of the list.</li> </ul>
To show the previous list screen	[Previous] →  [Previous] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press  [Previous] once when the cursor is on the first candidate of the list.</li> </ul>
When the kanji is not available	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When the cursor is on the text input screen, use  to change highlighted characters and convert again.</li> <li>When the cursor is on the Conversion candidates field, press  [Reslct] or  [Reslct→] to change characters.</li> <li>Press  for 1-touch conversion ( P. 409).</li> </ul>

#### Note

#### Canceling text input

- Press to cancel text input and return to the previous screen. If text is already entered, press to delete all text ( P. 410), and press again. If cursor is in middle of text, press for 1+ seconds twice and press .

## Related Operations

### Add dakuten ( ` )

Enter character ▶ ( ` ).

### Add handakuten ( ^ )

Enter character ▶ ( ` ) ( ` ).

### Convert to lower case

Enter character ▶ ( [Caps]).

### Add a space at the end of message

Press ( [Space]).

### Undo entry <Undo>

Enter text ▶ operation (delete, cut) ▶ ( [Undo]).

### Change font size <Font size>

1 In text input screen, press ( [Font size]) ▶ Chara entry/dict ▶ ( [Font size]).

2 Press (1) [Large font], (2) [Default] or (3) [Small font].

### View key list <Key list>

In text input screen, press ( [Key list]) ▶ Key list ▶ ( [Key list]).

## Note (Related operations)

### Dakuten and handakuten

- For single-byte katakana, press ( ` ) once for dakuten ( ` ), twice for handakuten ( ^ ), three times to add a prolonged sound ( ー ) and four times for a line break ( ↵ ). Press five times to return to dakuten ( ` ). The added marks count as one character.
- For double-byte hiragana, press ( ` ) once for a dakuten ( ` ), twice for a handakuten ( ^ ), and three times to restore the original character.

### Lower case

- For alphabet, text is converted to lower case. The entry mode is also switched to lower case.

### Entering a space

- A single-byte space will be entered regardless of input mode. Each space counts as one character.

### Undo operation

- If ( [Undo]) is pressed 11+ times, **UNDO Unable to undo anymore** appears and the screen 10 times before reappears. When entering message, undo is available only once.
- After text is edited, operations in memory are cleared.
- Undo may not be available depending on the entry screen.

### Font size

- Font size setting is not available in some text input screens.
- Large font** is 24 pixels, **Default** is 20 pixels and **Small font** is 16 pixels. In the input screen for saving to phonebook, **Small font** is 12 pixels.
- When Decorate mail is selected from the submenu in the message entry screen, the font size can be changed to that with one size larger or smaller pixels. Available pixels are 30, 24, 20, 16 and 12 pixels.
- Also set display font width ( [P. 141]).

## 1-character conversion

After a kanji has been entered, characters will convert to that kanji next time when the first character is entered.

## When the kanji cannot be found

### <1 kanji conversion>

Enter a single kanji by its on or kun reading.

1 In text input screen, enter hiragana and press ( [1 kanji]).

2 Select kanji and press ( [OK]).

## Note

- There are 6,355 kanji available from JIS level-1/level-2 kanji sets.
- Complex kanji are changed in part or are excluded.

## Quickly specifying character string

### <1-touch conversion>

Use 1-touch conversion to convert kanji using all the hiragana combinations assigned to each key. The same key does not need to be pressed multiple times for the hiragana.

### Example: When entering おはよう

1 In text input screen, press (1) (6) (8) (1).

- 1-touch conversion works best with nouns.
- For characters with dakuten/handakuten marks, press the key for the unmarked character once, then enter the dakuten/handakuten mark.

Example: for 勉強, enter (6) ( ` ) (0) (2) (8) (1).



2 Press ( [Reslct]).

- Press ( [Reslct]) or ( [Reslct]) in 1-touch conversion status to change the pre-converted characters to convert. Further conversion is 1-touch conversion.
- The character strings used most frequently appear first in the list.
- When candidates appear, press ( [Reslct]) to return to the pre-converted hiragana. If ( [OK]) is pressed, normal conversion candidates appear.



- Reading is not automatically entered if 1-touch conversion is used to enter name when adding to phonebook.

### 3 Select candidate and press .

#### Predictive headword conversion

In 1-touch conversion, words that start with the characters assigned to the pressed key (words starting with あ, い, う, え, お when あ is entered) appear according to the time of day.

- Words shown are already registered.
- Words shown are grouped into the following times: 5:00 to 10:59, 11:00 to 16:59, 17:00 to 22:59, and 23:00 to 4:59.

#### 1-touch single-character memory

If the first character for a character string previously used in 1-touch conversion is entered (example: あ when あたあさわ was converted into お父さん), the previously converted word (お父さん) appears.

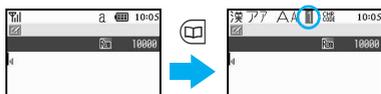
### Switching Input Modes in 5-touch Input

Switch input modes to enter various types of text.

#### Input mode

- Kanji/hiragana
- Double-byte katakana
- Single-byte katakana
- Double-byte alphanumeric characters
- Single-byte alphanumeric characters
- Single-byte numbers
- Kuten code

### 1 In text input screen, press [Chara].



- When pressing  [Chara], 1 (single-byte numbers) →  (JIS kuten code) → 漢 (kanji/hiragana) → ア (double-byte katakana) → △ (single-byte katakana) → A (double-byte alphanumeric) → A (single-byte alphanumeric) cycles through in this order.
- After pressing  [Chara], pressing  will switch the input modes in the same order. Press  to switch in the reverse order.

#### Note

- When *Pict/Sym* appears on text input screen, press  [Pict/Sym] to switch to pictograph or symbol mode ( P. 412).

## Editing Text

### Adding characters

#### 1 Move cursor to location to add characters and input text.

Example: When entering **最** in front of 接近



Move the cursor



Text input

Character is added

### Deleting text

#### 1 Move cursor to the left of the character to delete and press .

- The character to the right of the cursor is deleted.
- When the cursor is on a character, the character at the location is deleted.

Example: When deleting **ご**



Move the cursor



 twice

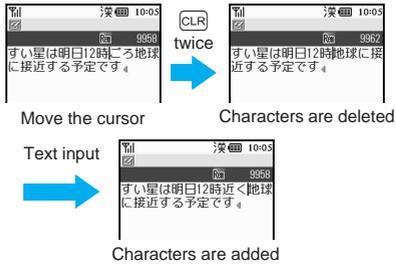
Characters are deleted

- Press  for 1+ seconds to delete multiple characters according to the location of the cursor.
  - When characters are before/after the cursor or when characters are only after the cursor, all characters on and after the cursor are deleted.
  - If there are characters only before the cursor, all characters before the cursor are deleted.

### Changing characters

#### 1 Delete and re-enter characters.

## Example: When changing ころ to 近く

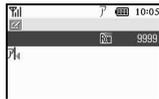


## Entering Katakana (Single-byte)

1 Press **[Chara]** multiple times and **ア** appears.

2 Press the dial key to enter single-byte katakana.

- Enter next character, or press **[OK]** or **[Left]** to confirm.
  - When entering text for i-mode mail, press **[Envelope]** to confirm.
  - To enter multiple characters assigned to the same key, press **[Left]** to move the cursor or, after entering the first character, press the same key for 1+ seconds.
- Example: To enter **アイ**, press **[1]** → **[Dial]** → **[1]** or **[1]** → **[1]** (for 1+ seconds) → **[1]**.



## Related Operations

Convert hiragana to katakana (double- and single-byte) <Kana/English>

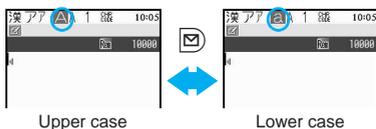
Enter hiragana ▶ **[Kana/English]** ▶ double-byte katakana/ single-byte katakana ▶ **[Dial]**.

## Entering Alphanumeric Characters

### Entering alphabet

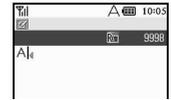
1 Press **[Chara]** multiple times and **A** or **a** appears.

- Enter double-byte alphanumerics while **A** is shown and single-byte alphanumerics while **a** is shown.
- Press **[Shift]** to switch between upper case and lower case. Also, press **[Shift]** after entering characters to convert characters entered just before.



## 2 Press the dial key to enter alphabet.

- Enter next character, or press **[OK]** or **[Left]** to confirm.
  - When entering text for i-mode mail, press **[Envelope]** to confirm.
  - To enter multiple characters assigned to the same key, press **[Left]** to move the cursor or, after entering the first character, press the same key for 1+ seconds.
- Example: To enter **AB** or **ab**, press **[2]** → **[Dial]** → **[2]** or press **[2]** → **[2]** (for 1+ seconds) → **[2]**.
- If an English word is entered in kanji mode (example: はうす), single-byte English (example: **House**, **house**, etc.) appears in the conversion candidates.
  - If hiragana is entered in kanji mode (example: ひとみ), single-byte English (example: **hitomi**, etc.) appears in the conversion candidates.



## Entering numbers

1 Press **[Chara]** multiple times and **1** appears.

2 Press the dial key to enter numbers.

- Confirms automatically.
  - In double-byte alphanumeric mode (upper/lower case), press key multiple times for double-byte number.
- Example: For **1** → Press **[1]** five times.  
For **2** → Press **[2]** seven times (upper case)/ press **[2]** four times (lower case).
  - Alternatively enter hiragana in kanji mode, and select numbers from conversion candidates.



## Related Operations

Convert hiragana to alphabet/numbers <Kana/English>

Enter hiragana ▶ **[Kana/English]** ▶ alphabet/number ▶ **[Dial]**.

### Note (Related operations)

- Conversion candidates appear for the number or alphabet allotted to the key.
- Example: Enter **い** (1) (1) (2) (2) and press **[Kana/English]** [**KanaAB12**], **イ** (double-byte katakana), **い** (single-byte katakana), **/ 2** (double-byte numbers), **12** (single-byte numbers), **/ B** (double-byte upper case alphabet), **/B** (single-byte upper case alphabet), **/ b** (double-byte lower case alphabet), **/b** (single-byte lower case alphabet), **/ 1 2 2** (double-byte numbers) and **1122** (single-byte numbers) appear.

## Using Bar Code Reader to Enter Characters

Enter text read from bar codes (JAN/QR codes) into text input fields while connected to i-mode (☞ "Selecting items and entering text in sites/Internet web pages" on P. 185).

**1** In text input fields on sites and Internet web pages, press **[6]** **[3]** **[Bar code reader]**.

**2** Scan data.  
 ● Refer to P. 176 for details on Bar code reader usage.

## Using Preset Phrases <Insert Phrase>

Use preset phrases (☞ P. 433), original phrases (☞ P. 413) and enter mail addresses easily.

**1** In text input screen, press **[@]**, select *Insert phrase* and press **[0]**.

- Alternatively, press **[0]** for 1+ seconds in text input screen.
- To show all phrases, press **[0]**. Select phrase (All) screen appears.



Insert phrase screen

**2** Select type of phrase and press **[0]**.

**3** Select phrase, press **[0]**, confirm phrase and press **[0]**.

**Inputting mail address easily**  
 ● Mail addresses use single-byte characters.

**1** In text input screen, press **[0]** for 1+ seconds, select phrase and press **[0]**.

### Note

- When the Select phrase (All) screen appears, phrases appear in the used order starting with the most recently used phrase.

## Entering Pictographs/Symbols

Enter pictographs and symbols. Also enter Deco-mail pictographs to message text and signature.

- Deco-mail pictograph table (☞ P. 432)
- Deco-mail pictographs cannot be entered when Function lock is applied to multimedia.

**1** In text input screen, press **[0]** to switch between *Pictograph* and *Symbol*.

To show the next list screen	<b>[Next]</b> → <b>[Next]</b> ● Press <b>[Next]</b> once when the cursor is on the last pictograph or symbol of the list.
To show the previous list screen	<b>[Previous]</b> → <b>[Previous]</b> ● Press <b>[Previous]</b> once when the cursor is on the first pictograph or symbol of the list.

**2** Select pictograph or symbol and press **[0]**.

- Enter consecutively.
- The following lists the operation available while entering pictographs.

To switch between Pictograph 1/ Pictograph 2/ Deco-mail pictograph	<b>[@]</b> ● To create a mail message or signature, press <b>[@]</b> to switch from Pictograph 1 → Pictograph 2 → Pictograph D (Deco-mail pictograph) → Pictograph 1... ● In other cases than creating a mail message or signature, press <b>[@]</b> to switch from Pictograph 1 → Pictograph 2 → Pictograph 1...
To return to the previous input mode	<b>[CLR]</b>

- The following lists the operation available while entering symbols.

To switch between single- and double-byte symbols	<b>[@]</b>
To return to the previous input mode	<b>[CLR]</b>

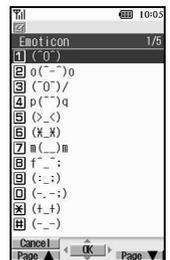
### Note

- Enter Deco-mail pictographs while composing mail to create **Deco-mail**.
- Convert keywords "keyword (reading)" to pictographs. Refer to "Pictograph List" on P. 431.
- Refer to "Symbols/Special Character List" on P. 430 for details on available symbols and special characters.
- The ten symbols used most recently appear on the first line.
- Use the same operation for **2-touch input**.

## Entering Emoticons <Emoticon>

Emoticon table (☞ P. 433)

**1** In text input screen, press **[@]**, select *Emoticon* and press **[0]**.



To show the next list screen	☐ [Page ] → ☐ [Page ] ● Press ☐ [Page ] once when the cursor is on the last line of the list.
To show the previous list screen	☐ [Page ] → ☐ [Page ] ● Press ☐ [Page ] once when the cursor is on the first line of the list.

## 2 Select emoticon and press **⓪**.

- Alternatively, enter the number.

### Note

- Enter かお in hiragana to see emoticons in the kanji candidates list.

## Save Phrases

### Editing/Saving Phrases

Register frequently used original phrases and edit preset phrases.

- Refer to P. 433 for details on preset phrases.
- Enter up to 128 single-byte (64 double-byte) characters for each phrase.
- Phrases can be reset to default settings.

## 1 In stand-by, press **⓪** **3** **2** **3** and **6** [Original phrase].

- To edit saved phrases, select **1** to **5**.

## 2 Select number to register to and press **⓪** [Edit].

## 3 Enter phrase and press **⓪**.

### Resetting to default phrases <Reset>

Reset phrases to their default settings.

The following reset commands are available.

To reset one	Resets one phrase at a time.
To reset folder	Resets all phrases in one category.
To reset all	Resets all phrases.

## Related Operations

### Reset one/folder <Reset one/Reset folder>

- 1 In stand-by, press **⓪** **3** **2** **3** ▶ select category ▶ **⓪** ▶ select phrase ▶ **⓪**.**
  - Submenu does not appear for folder not edited.
- 2 Press **1** [Reset one].**
  - To reset all phrases in a folder: Press **2**.
- 3 Select Yes ▶ **⓪**.**

### Reset all phrases <Reset all>

- 1 In stand-by, press **⓪** **3** **2** **3** ▶ **⓪**.**
- 2 Select Yes ▶ **⓪**.**

## Copy Text

### Cutting/Copying/Pasting Text

Copy/cut a character string and paste it to a different location.

- Paste text onto the same screen or another text input screen (Cannot paste to a screen in which Submenu is not displayed).
- Cut text is deleted from its original location.
- Cut/copy up to 10,000 single-byte (5,000 double-byte) characters at once.
- Only one character string can be copied/cut at a time. Copying/cutting again will replace the old text with the new text.

## Copying/Cutting Text

Example: When copying/cutting text from text memo

## 1 In text input screen, move cursor to the first character to copy or cut.

## 2 Select copy or cut.

To copy	<b>⓪</b> <b>1</b> → <b>⓪</b>
To cut	<b>⓪</b> (for 1+ seconds) ● From the menu, press <b>⓪</b> <b>2</b> and <b>⓪</b> .

## 3 Move the cursor to the last character and press **⓪**.

- Selected text to copy is highlighted (The highlighted text is copied or cut).
- Press **⓪** for 1+ seconds to select all characters after character selected in step 1.
- Press **⓪** for 1+ seconds to select all characters before character selected in step 1.

## Copying the Contents of Mail

Example: When copying message text

## 1 Open received mail and press **⓪** **6** **2** [Copy].

- For sent mail, press **⓪** **7** **2** in sent message screen.
- For unsent mail, select *Msg* in compose message screen, press **⓪** and **⓪** **3**. Proceed to step 3.

## 2 Select item to copy.

To copy address	<b>1</b> ● The address is copied and operation ends.
To copy subject	<b>2</b>
To copy message	<b>3</b>

**3** Move the cursor to the first character to copy and press **[Start]**.

**4** Move the cursor to the last character to copy and press **[Copy]**.

## Pasting Text

Example: When pasting text into a new message

**1** Open the text input screen to paste to, move the cursor to the paste location and press **[X]** for 1+ seconds.

- From the menu, press **[5]**, move the cursor to the paste location and press **[X]**.
- Character string in memory is inserted.

### Note

- In fields that accept only single-byte characters such as the **Reading** field in the phonebook, only single-byte characters in memory are pasted. Depending on the location, only the allowed number of characters is pasted.
- Text stays in memory until new text is copied/cut or power is turned off.

## Kuten Code Input

### Inputting Kuten Code

Use four-digit kuten codes to enter kanji, hiragana, katakana, symbol, and alphanumeric characters.

- Each kuten code corresponds to a specific character.
- Refer to "Kuten Code List" in PDF format in the accompanying CD-ROM for details on kuten code list.

**1** In text input screen, press **[CHR CODE]** multiple times and appears.

**2** Enter four-digit kuten code.

- After the fourth digit is entered, the character appears.
- Before the fourth digit is entered, press **[CLR]** to clear the numbers when the wrong kuten code is entered. Re-enter correct code.

## Register Words (User Dictionary)

### Registering Frequently Used Words

Register up to 100 frequently used words with a short keyword (up to eight hiragana) for easy retrieval. When a keyword is entered and converted to kanji, the registered word appears in the candidate list and can be easily entered.

- The same keyword can be registered up to five times.

### Registering a New Word

**1** In stand-by, press **[3][2][1]**.

- User dictionary list appears.
- Press **[1]** to switch between word and keyword lists.

**2** Select **Save new** and press **[X]**.

**3** Enter word and press **[X]**.

- Enter up to 30 single-byte (15 double-byte) characters.
- Line breaks cannot be entered.

**4** Enter keyword and press **[X]**.

- Enter up to eight double-byte hiragana.

### Editing Registered Words

**1** In stand-by, press **[3][2][1]**, select word and press **[X]**.

**2** Edit word and press **[X]**.

**3** Edit keyword, press **[X]** and select a saving method.

- To not edit, press **[X]** and select a saving method.

To save a new word	<b>[1]</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● New word cannot be registered if the same keyword is registered five times.</li></ul>
To overwrite	<b>[2]</b>

### Deleting Registered Words

**1** In stand-by, press **[3][2][1]**, select word and press **[@][1]** [Delete].

**2** Select **Yes** and press **[X]**.

## Clear Memory Terms

### Resetting Memorized Conversion Candidates

All conversion candidates memorized through functions such as Quick dictionary and Next word guess can be reset.

- Pictograph and symbol conversion candidates are also reset.

**1** In stand-by, press  $\odot$  [3] [2] [4], enter terminal security code and press  $\odot$ .

**2** Select Yes and press  $\odot$ .

## Download Dictionary

### Using a Downloaded Dictionary

Default setting No dictionaries registered

Save up to ten dictionaries for Japanese conversion downloaded from sites and Internet web pages on the FOMA terminal. Use five of these dictionaries for kanji conversion. When dictionaries for such as technical terms are downloaded, the terms in the dictionaries appear as the conversion candidates.

- User dictionary can be replaced with Downloaded dictionary.
- Refer to P. 194 for details on downloading dictionaries.

## Setting/Clearing a Dictionary

**1** In stand-by, press  $\odot$  [3] [2] [2].

- Registered dictionaries appear. Dictionaries currently in use appear with  $\text{Ⓜ}$ .

**2** Select dictionary and set or clear.

To set/clear a dictionary	$\text{Ⓜ}$ [1] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● If five dictionaries are already set, <b>5 dictionaries can be saved</b> appears. Clear dictionary currently in use and try again.</li> <li>● If a set dictionary is selected, it is cleared.</li> </ul>
To check dictionary information	$\text{Ⓜ}$ [4] <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Dictionary information (title, author, version, download date, etc.) appears. Press <math>\text{CLR}</math> or <math>\text{Ⓜ}</math> [Back] and the previous screen reappears.</li> </ul>

### Note

- Alternatively, press  $\text{Ⓜ}$  in text input screen, select **Chara entry/dict** and press [3] [5] [Dwld dictionary] to set/clear dictionary.

## Checking Dictionary Contents

**1** In stand-by, press  $\odot$  [3] [2] [2], select dictionary and press  $\odot$  [Show].

- To show word details, press  $\odot$  [Detail].
- Press  $\text{CLR}$  to end checking.
- To show a list of keywords, press  $\text{Ⓜ}$  [Switch]. Press  $\text{Ⓜ}$  to switch between **word list** and **keyword list**.

## Deleting a Dictionary

Delete dictionaries individually or collectively.

**1** In stand-by, press  $\odot$  [3] [2] [2], select dictionary and press  $\text{Ⓜ}$  [5] [Delete].

**2** Select deletion method.

To delete one dictionary	[1] → Yes → $\odot$
To delete all dictionaries	[2] → Yes → $\odot$

### Note

- If a different FOMA card from when the dictionary was downloaded is inserted, a FOMA card restriction mark appears next to the dictionary. In such cases, dictionary contents cannot be checked, but can be deleted.

## Replacing User Dictionary with Download Dictionary

<Dwld Dictionary>

Replace the User dictionary with Download dictionary.

**1** In stand-by, press  $\odot$  [3] [2] [1] and  $\text{Ⓜ}$  [2] [Dwld dictionary].

**2** Select destination to save to and press  $\odot$ .

- To overwrite a saved dictionary, select **Yes** and press  $\odot$ .
- In the Set dictionary confirmation screen, select **Yes** and press  $\odot$  to set dictionary. If five dictionaries are already set, confirmation screen does not appear.

### Note

- User dictionary is deleted when replaced with Download dictionary.

## Related Operations

Edit title of dictionary replaced with download dictionary <Change name>

In stand-by, press  $\odot$  [3] [2] [2] ▶ select dictionary ▶  $\text{Ⓜ}$  [3] ▶ edit title ▶  $\odot$ .

## Related Operations

Edit contents of dictionary replaced with download dictionary <Edit dictionary>

- 1 In stand-by, press **Ⓞ** **③** **②** **②** ▶ select dictionary ▶ **Ⓞ** **⑥**.
- 2 Select word ▶ **Ⓞ**.
  - To register a new word: Press **①**.
- 3 Edit word ▶ **Ⓞ** ▶ edit keyword ▶ **Ⓞ** ▶ **Ⓞ**.

## Quick Dictionary/Next Word Guess Selecting Conversion Method

Default setting Quick dictionary: **ON** (use),  
Next word guess: **ON** (use)

Set to enable/disable Quick dictionary and Next word guess (☞ P. 408).

- 1 In text input screen, press **Ⓞ**, select **Chara entry/dict**, press **Ⓞ** and press **③** **②** [Quick dictionary].
  - Alternatively, press **Ⓞ** [Guess]/**Ⓞ** [Normal] to switch **ON/OFF** when the cursor is in the Conversion candidates field.
  - For Next word guess, press **Ⓞ**, select **Chara entry/dict**, press **Ⓞ** and press **③** **③**.
- 2 Press **①** [ON].

## Setting the Priority for Conversion Candidates <First Candidate>

Default setting All High

Prioritize English words, surnames, geographic names, proper nouns and emoticons in the conversion candidate list.

- 1 In text input screen, press **Ⓞ**, select **Chara entry/dict**, press **Ⓞ** and press **③** **①** [First candidate].
- 2 Select an item and press **Ⓞ**.
  - indicates high priority and  low priority.
- 3 Press **Ⓞ** [Complete].

## Including Emoticons as Conversion Candidates <With Emoticons>

Default setting **ON**

Set whether to include pictographs/emoticons in the conversion candidates list. If pictographs/emoticons are included, they appear as candidates of characters that may follow emotional adjectives such as “happy”.

- 1 In text input screen, press **Ⓞ**, select **Chara entry/dict**, press **Ⓞ** and press **③** **④** [With emoticons].

- 2 Press **①** [ON].

## 2-touch

### 2-touch Input Method Text Entry

#### Setting 2-touch Input <Conversion Method>

Use 2-touch input to enter hiragana with two keys. This method is recommended for users accustomed to 2-touch character input.

- 1 In text input screen, press **Ⓞ**, select **Chara entry/dict**, press **Ⓞ** and press **①** **②** [2-touch].
  - 2-touch input continues until handset is returned to normal input (**5-touch**).
  - Operation for inserting preset phrases is the same for 2-touch and 5-touch.
  - Katakana/alphanumeric conversion is not available in 2-touch input.
  - To return to 5-touch input, press **Ⓞ** in text input screen, select **Chara entry/dict**, press **Ⓞ** and press **①** **①**.

## Changing Input Mode

- 1 In text input screen, press **Ⓞ** [Chara].
  - Every time **Ⓞ** is pressed, input modes cycle in the order of **CHAR** (kuten code) → Full (double-byte upper case letters) → Half (single-byte upper case letters).

### Note

- Switch upper/lower case while in single/double-byte mode.  
After entering text, press **Ⓞ** [Caps] to convert characters individually (☞ P. 411).
- After pressing **Ⓞ** [Chara] once in the text input screen, pressing **Ⓞ** will switch the input modes in the same order. Press **Ⓞ** to switch in the reverse order.

## Entering Text

In 2-touch input, enter two digits to specify a character.

- 1 In text input screen, enter two digits.  
Example: **②** **②** ▶ き
  - Refer to P. 430 for details on character assignments.

# Appendix/Using with External Devices/Troubleshooting

● Menu List	418
● Pre-installed Data	425
● Dial Key Assignments (5-touch)	428
● Dial Key Assignments (2-touch)	430
● Symbols/Special Character List	430
● Pictograph/Emoticon List	431
● Phrase List	433
● Using the Calculator	434
● Multiaccess Combinations	434
● Multi Assistant (Multitask) Combinations	435
● Services Available from the FOMA Terminal	436
● Options and Accessories	437
● Using with External Devices	438
<b>■ Troubleshooting</b>	
● Troubleshooting	438
● List of Error Messages	441
● Warranty and After-sales Services	450
● Updating Software	<Software Update>452
● Protecting Your FOMA Terminal from Harmful Files	<Scanning Function>458
● Main Specifications	461
● Number of Saved/Registered/Protected Entries in the FOMA Terminal	462
● Specific Absorption Rate (SAR)	464
● Japan Export Control Regulation/Export Administration Regulation	464

# Menu List

Select a menu by selecting series of function menus from the Top menu.

- When settings are reset (☎ P. 388), functions return to default settings (marked with a -).
- Menu list shows how to select function menus in the normal position. Some function numbers may be changed when the FOMA terminal is set to the Cycloid position. Refer to the reference page of each item for details.

## i-mode menu

		Function menu	Default setting	Page	
i-mode	iMenu		-	P. 182	
	MessageR/F	① MessageR	-	P. 201	
② MessageF		-	P. 201		
	Bookmark		-	P. 189	
	Check new message		-	P. 201 P. 225	
	Screen Memo		-	P. 191	
Go to location		① Last URL	-	P. 183	
		② URL history	-	P. 188	
		③ Input URL	http://	P. 187	
i-mode setting	① Shared	① Connection timeout	60 seconds	P. 198	
		② Host selection	i-mode (UIM)	P. 198	
	② Mail/Message*			-	-
		③ Internet	① Set image display	ON	P. 199
			② Font size	Normal	P. 184
			③ Certificates	All enabled	P. 203
			④ i-motion setting	Automatic replay: Yes i-motion type: Standard type	P. 207
			⑤ Secure setting	Cert Operation: - DoCoMo CA Host: DoCoMo	P. 203 P. 205
			⑥ Use phone info	Yes	P. 199
	⑦ Sound fx setting		Volume 5	P. 184	
	④ i-mode arrival act		PushTalk preferred	P. 199	
	⑤ Reset i-mode		-	P. 199	
	⑥ Function lock		OFF	P. 183	
i-Channel	① Run i-Channel list		-	P. 209	
	② i-Channel ticker	① Main display	ON	P. 210	
		② Sub display	OFF	P. 210	
	③ Reset i-Channel		-	P. 210	
Internet(FB)	① Home		-	P. 288	
	② Bookmark		-	P. 288	
	③ Go to location	① Last URL	-	P. 288	
		② URL history	-	P. 288	
		③ Input URL	http://	P. 288	
	④ FB Settings	① Home URL	http://	P. 288	
		② Cookie Setting	Set: Valid Delete: -	P. 292	
		③ Script Setting	Valid	P. 292	
		④ Set screen	Display Mode: Normal Set image display: ON Font size: Normal	P. 289 P. 293	
		⑤ Window Open Guard	Invalid	P. 293	
		⑥ Referer Setting	Send	P. 293	
⑦ Access Setting		OFF	P. 293		
⑧ Reset full browser		-	P. 293		

\* The same menus are shown as those shown when **Mail** → **Mail setting** is selected in the Top menu.

- The numbers displayed in i-mode menu may differ from the dial keys.

## i-αppli menu

	Function menu	Default setting	Page
i-αppli	① Software list	-	P. 248
	② i-αppli volume	Volume 5	P. 249
	③ Software info	OFF	P. 248
	④ Auto start	OFF	P. 255
	⑤ Used by i-αppli	-	P. 259
	⑥ Error display	-	P. 258
	⑦ Trace info	-	P. 258
	⑧ Function lock	OFF	P. 259

## Camera menu

	Function menu	Default setting	Page
Camera	① Shoot still pic	-	P. 167
	② Shoot movie	-	P. 169
	③ Character reader	-	P. 178
	④ Bar code reader	-	P. 176

## Mail menu

	Function menu	Default setting	Page	
Mail	Inbox	-	P. 229	
	Outbox	-	P. 229	
	Unsent messages	-	P. 229	
	Compose message	-	P. 214	
	Compose SMS	-	P. 240	
	Check new message	① Check new message	-	P. 201 P. 225
		② SMS check	-	P. 242
	Template	-	P. 219	
	Receive option	-	P. 224	
	Mail setting	① Quick reply mail	-	P. 239
		② Rcv attached file	All attachments	P. 239
		③ Melody Auto replay	Auto replay	P. 239
		④ Font size	Normal	P. 236
		⑤ Receive display	Notice first	P. 239
		⑥ Check new message	i-mode mail, MessageR, MessageF: ON	P. 238
		⑦ Auto message display	Msg R preferred	P. 201
		⑧ Receive opt. setting	OFF	P. 238
		⑨ Mail member	-	P. 238
		⑩ Save signature	ON	P. 237
		ⓧ SMS center	DoCoMo	P. 243
		Ⓜ Report request	Do not request	P. 243
		○① SMS expiry	3 days	P. 243
		○② SMS input character	Japanese(70Chara)	P. 243
		○③ Check mail settings	-	P. 240
	○④ Reset mail settings	-	P. 240	
	○⑤ Function lock	OFF	P. 240	

● The numbers displayed in mail menu may differ from the dial keys.

## Data box menu

Function menu		Default setting	Page
Data box	① My picture	-	P. 296
	② MUSIC	-	P. 354
	③ i-motion	-	P. 304
	④ Video(microSD)	-	P. 311
	⑤ Melody	-	P. 316
	⑥ My Documents	-	P. 339
	⑦ Chara-den	-	P. 313
	⑧ Kisekae Tool	-	P. 136
	⑨ Print setting(DPOF)	-	P. 352

## Phonebook menu

Function menu	Default setting	Page
Phonebook	-	P. 107

## Settings menu

- On default settings, **White**, **Black** or **Brown** appears according to handset color for items that can be set on Kisekae Tool (☎ P. 136). The title name of Kisekae Tool appears when Kisekae Tool settings are changed.

Function menu		Default setting	Page		
Settings	① Sound	① Select volume	① phone ring vol	Phone ring tone, V.phone ring tone, Payphone ring tone, User unset, Unknown tone: Volume 5	P. 118
			② Mail ring vol	Mail ring tone, MessageR ring tone, MessageF ring tone, SMS ring tone: Volume 5	P. 119
			③ PushTalk tone vol	Volume 5	P. 119
			④ Setting sound vol	Key/Standby i-motion, Charge start sound, Charge end sound, Timer sound: Volume 5	P. 119
		② Select sound	① Select ring tone	Phone ring tone: 着信音 1 V.phone ring tone, Payphone ring tone, User unset, Unknown tone: Phone ring tone	P. 116
			② Select mail tone	Mail ring tone: 着信音 2 MessageR ring tone, MessageF ring tone, SMS ring tone: Mail ring tone	P. 117
			③ PushTalk tone	着信音 1	P. 117
			④ Setting sounds	Shutter sound: Default tone Timer sound: T1 (標準音)	P. 175 P. 118
		③ Vibrator	① Vibration mode	OFF	P. 121
			② Mail vibration	OFF	P. 121
			③ IC card vibrator	OFF	P. 121
		④ Manner mode	① Normal	-	P. 123
	② Silent		-	P. 123	
	③ Original		Record message, Vibrator, Mic sensitivity up: ON Alarm tone, Key/Standby i-motion, Low battery alarm: OFF Ring tone, Mail ring tone: Silent	P. 124	
	⑤ Ring output		Earp.+speaker	P. 122	
	⑥ Ring time setting	① Mail ring time set	ON/3 seconds	P. 122	
		② PT ring time set	30 seconds	P. 122	
	⑦ Set mute ring time		OFF	P. 158	
	⑧ Hold/On hold tone	① Set on hold tone	On hold tone 1	P. 68	
		② Set hold tone	Hold melody 1	P. 68	
	⑨ Sound playback	① Stereo effects	Stereo/3D sound	P. 120	
		② Pref playback sound	Music player pref	P. 121	

Function menu		Default setting	Page		
Settings	②Display	①Main display	①Stand-by display	待受画面1 (Handset color: White), 待受画面2 (Handset color: Black), 待受画面3 (Handset color: Brown)*	P. 125
			②Clock display	Clock display: ON(Large) Set clock style: 待受時計1 Set disp position: Down	P. 127
			③Calendar display	OFF	P. 126
		②Sub display setting	①Caller ID display	ON	P. 129
			②Clock display	Stand-by clock(L)	P. 130
		③Font style	Bold	P. 141	
		④Personalize	①Call/Rcv display	Picture call set: ON Outgoing calls: 電話発信1 (Handset color: White), 電話発信2 (Handset color: Black), 電話発信3 (Handset color: Brown)* Incoming voice calls, Incoming video phone: 電話着信1 (Handset color: White), 電話着信2 (Handset color: Black), 電話着信3 (Handset color: Brown)* Payphone, User unset, Not support: 電話着信1	P. 127 P. 129
				②Send/Rcv display	Send display: メール送信1 (Handset color: White), メール送信2 (Handset color: Black), メール送信3 (Handset color: Brown)* Receive display: メール受信1 (Handset color: White), メール受信2 (Handset color: Black), メール受信3 (Handset color: Brown)* Mail rcvd screen: メール受信結果1 (Handset color: White), メール受信結果2 (Handset color: Black), メール受信結果3 (Handset color: Brown)*
			③Submenu image	Upper image: メニュー枠1(上) Lower image: メニュー枠1(下)	P. 132
			④Animate notices	お知らせアニメ1 (Handset color: White), お知らせアニメ2 (Handset color: Black), お知らせアニメ3 (Handset color: Brown)*	P. 133
	⑤Signal/batt/s clock		Signal icon: 電波マーク1 (Handset color: White), 電波マーク2 (Handset color: Black), 電波マーク3 (Handset color: Brown)* Battery icon: 電池残量1 (Handset color: White), 電池残量2 (Handset color: Black), 電池残量3 (Handset color: Brown)* Small clock: 時計表示1	P. 133	
	⑥Theme color		ModernWhite (Handset color: White), MidnightBlack (Handset color: Black), StreetBrown (Handset color: Brown)*	P. 133	
	⑤LED settings		①Called LED	①Phone	LED color settings: Aqua LED pattern settings: Excite
		②Video-phone		LED color settings: Aqua LED pattern settings: Notice	P. 138 P. 139
		③PushTalk		LED color settings: Sun set LED pattern settings: Morse code	P. 138 P. 139
		④Missed call notice		ON	P. 140
		②Mail LED	①Mail/Message LED	LED color settings: Leaf LED pattern settings: Breath New unrd mail noti: ON	P. 138 P. 139 P. 140
			②Mail send/rcv LED	ON (LED color settings: Sky LED pattern settings: Breath)	P. 139
		③In-call LED	OFF	P. 139	
		④Alarm/Timer LED	ON (LED color settings: Aurora LED pattern settings: Morse code)	P. 140	

\* When Delete all data or Reset settings is performed, the setting will be for the White handset.

		Function menu	Default setting	Page			
Settings	② Display	⑤ LED settings	⑤ IC card LED	ON	P. 140		
			⑥ open-clos/rotatLED	ON (LED color settings: Aqua LED pattern settings: Notice)	P. 140		
		⑥ Vibrant image mode		Dynamic	P. 141		
		⑦ Power saver set	① Normal(auto bright)		-	P. 130	
			② Normal(fixed bright)		-	P. 130	
			③ Power saver(Eco)		-	P. 130	
			④ User set	① Display light time	Normal: 10 seconds Charging, i-mode: Same as normal Video-phone: ON	P. 130	
				② Screen dsp time	1 minute	P. 132	
		③ Brightness		Automatic	P. 132		
		④ Keypad light setting		Light	P. 131		
		⑥ Private filter	① Linked manner		OFF	P. 142	
	② Filter density		Normal	P. 142			
	③ General settings	① Check status	① Owner Information		-	P. 382	
			② Check memory		-	P. 332	
			③ Battery level		-	P. 43	
			④ Check settings		-	P. 364	
		② Text input setting	① User dictionary		-	P. 414	
			② Dwnld dictionary		-	P. 415	
			③ Edit phrase		-	P. 413	
			④ Clear memory terms		-	P. 415	
		③ Auto power ON/OFF	① Auto power ON		OFF	P. 367	
			② Auto power OFF		OFF	P. 368	
			③ Link alarm/power ON		OFF	P. 367	
		④ Date settings		Auto time set: ON	P. 45		
		⑤ Select language		日本語	P. 44		
		⑥ USB mode setting		Communication mode	P. 326		
		⑦ Scanning function	① Update		-	P. 458	
			② Set auto-update		-	P. 459	
			③ Set scan		Scan, Scan message: Enable	P. 458	
			④ Version		-	P. 460	
		⑥ Software update		-	P. 452		
		⑨ Reset settings		-	P. 388		
		④ NW Services	① Voice Mail	① Check messages		-	P. 393
				② Play Messages		-	P. 393
				③ Activate VoiceMail		-	P. 392
	④ Set ring time			-	P. 392		
	⑤ Deactivate VoiceMail			-	P. 393		
	⑥ Status(Voice Mail)			-	P. 393		
	⑦ Voice Mail setting			-	P. 393		
	⑧ Notification setting			Voice mail alarm: ON	P. 393		
	⑨ Notification			-	P. 393		
	② Call waiting		① Activate		-	P. 394	
			② Deactivate		-	P. 394	
			③ Status request		-	P. 394	
	③ Call forwarding		① Activate		-	P. 395	
			② Deactivate		-	P. 395	
			③ Register number		-	P. 396	
④ Forwarding No. busy			-	P. 396			
⑤ Status request		-	P. 396				

Function menu		Default setting	Page		
Settings	④ NW Services	① Register caller	-	P. 396	
		② Register selected No	-	P. 396	
		③ Delete all entries	-	P. 396	
		④ Delete last entry	-	P. 397	
		⑤ Check No of entries	-	P. 397	
		⑤ Notify caller ID	① Status request	User unset	P. 46
			② Notify caller ID	-	P. 46
		⑥ Caller ID request	① Activate	-	P. 397
			② Deactivate	-	P. 397
			③ Status request	-	P. 397
		⑦ Talk time/cost	-	P. 384	
		⑧ Set arrival act	① Activate	-	P. 399
			② Deactivate	-	P. 399
			③ Status request	-	P. 399
	⑨ Arrival Call Act	① Voice Mail	-	P. 399	
		② Call forwarding	-	P. 399	
		③ Call Rejection	-	P. 399	
		④ Answer	-	P. 399	
	⑤ Other NW Services	① Remote control	① Activate	-	P. 399
			② Deactivate	-	P. 399
			③ Status request	-	P. 400
		② Dual network	① Switching	-	P. 398
			② Status request	-	P. 398
		③ English guidance	① Guidance setting	-	P. 398
			② Status request	-	P. 398
		④ Service number	① ドコモ故障問合せ	-	P. 399
			② ドコモ総合案内・受付	-	P. 399
		⑤ Additional service	① USSD	-	P. 401
	② Reply message		-	P. 401	
	⑥ Multi number	① Set multi number	-	P. 400	
		② Status request	-	P. 400	
		③ Number setting	-	P. 400	
	⑦ Chaku-moji	① Create message	-	P. 56	
② Message display		With caller ID	P. 56		
⑥ Phone settings	① In-call settings	① Noise reduction	ON	P. 62	
		② Reconnect	Alarm on(high)	P. 62	
		③ Quality alarm	Alarm on(high)	P. 122	
	② Ear/mic auto calling	OFF	P. 387		
	③ Incoming settings	① Any key answer	ON	P. 66	
		② Set auto answer	Phone/Videophone, PushTalk: OFF	P. 388	
		③ Rotation-link repl	ON	P. 66	
	④ Videophone set	① Redial voice call	OFF	P. 81	
		② Set sending image	Substitute image: Dimo* On hold image: テレビ電話代替 Hold image: テレビ電話代替	P. 77	
		③ Display setting	Show me small	P. 80	
		④ Subscreen position	Upper left	P. 80	
		⑤ Visual preference	Normal	P. 79	
		⑥ Notify switch mode	-	P. 82	
		⑦ Hands-free V.phone	ON	P. 79	
⑧ Packet trans arr act	V-phone priority	P. 82			

\* テレビ電話代替 is set when Reset settings (P. 388) is performed after **Dimo** is deleted from Chara-den.

Function menu		Default setting	Page		
Settings	⑤ Phone settings	① Record message	OFF	P. 71	
		② Answering duration	13 seconds	P. 73	
		③ Reply message	Reply message 1	P. 73	
		④ V.phone reply image	テレビ電話代替	P. 73	
		⑥ Set PushTalk	① Caller ID setting	No ID	P. 94
			② Set PT arrival act	Answer	P. 94
			③ Hands-free PT	ON	P. 94
		⑦ Set when folded	① Phone/Videophone	Finish call	P. 66
			② PushTalk	Speaker phone	P. 66
		⑧ Self mode		OFF	P. 150
	⑨ Other settings	① Int'l prefix	First entry: 009130-010	P. 61	
		② Sub address	ON	P. 61	
		③ Int'l dial assist	① Int'l prefix conv	ON	P. 60
			② Int'l prefix	WORLD CALL 009130-010	P. 60
	⑦ Security	① Secret mode	OFF	P. 154	
		② UIM Settings	① PIN1 code input set	OFF	P. 146
			② Change PIN1 code	0000	P. 147
			③ Change PIN2 code	0000	P. 147
		③ Accept/Reject calls	① Accept calls	OFF	P. 156
			② Reject calls	OFF	P. 157
③ Reject unknown			Accept	P. 159	
④ Reject user unset			Accept	P. 158	
⑤ Reject payphone			Accept	P. 158	
⑥ Reject not support			Accept	P. 158	
④ Show call/received		① Show rcvd calls	ON	P. 153	
		② Show redial	ON	P. 153	
⑤ Show sent/received		① Show sent messages	ON	P. 154	
		② Show rcvd messages	ON	P. 154	
⑥ Lock settings		① All lock	-	P. 148	
		② Keypad dial lock	OFF	P. 152	
		③ Function lock	OFF	P. 151	
		④ IC card lock	IC lock(power-on): OFF IC lock(power-off): Follow power ON	P. 270	
		⑤ Multi lock auto-set	OFF	P. 153	
⑦ Change security code		0000	P. 145		
⑧ Delete all data	① Delete user data	-	P. 388		
	② Del secret data	-	P. 389		
⑨ Initial settings		-	P. 45		

## LifeKit menu

Function menu		Default setting	Page
LifeKit	① Bar code reader	-	P. 176
	② Receive Ir data	-	P. 335
		-	P. 335
	③ ToruCa	-	P. 264
	④ IC card content	-	P. 263
	⑤ IC card lock	① IC lock(power-on)	OFF
② IC lock(power-off)		Follow power ON	P. 270

Function menu		Default setting	Page	
LifeKit	⑤ microSD manager	① View microSD data	-	P. 323
		② Backup/restore	-	P. 322
		③ Import	-	P. 327
		④ New manager info	-	P. 327
		⑤ Format	-	P. 325
		⑥ USB mode setting	Communication mode	P. 326
	⑦ Schedule	① Schedule	-	P. 371
		② ToDo list	-	P. 377
	⑧ Useful functions	① Calculator	-	P. 383
		② Text memo	-	P. 385
		③ Timer	-	P. 368
		④ Alarm	-	P. 369
		⑤ Voice memo/Rec msg	-	P. 382
		⑥ Character reader	-	P. 350
		⑦ Data Sec. Service	Send phonebook img: OFF	P. 112 P. 114 P. 159

## Media tool menu

Function menu		Default setting	Page
Media tool	① One Seg	-	P. 275
	② SD-Audio	-	P. 358
	③ Voice recorder	-	P. 338
	④ BookReader	-	P. 346
	⑤ Document Viewer	-	P. 344
	⑥ PDF Viewer	-	P. 339

## Pre-installed Data

### Stand-by display



待受画面 1  
(Stand-by:  
240x400)



待受画面 2  
(Stand-by:  
240x400)



待受画面 3  
(Stand-by:  
240x400)



待受画面 4 \*  
(Flash movie)



待受画面 5  
(Stand-by:  
240x400)



待受画面 6  
(Stand-by:  
240x400)



待受画面 7  
(Stand-by:  
240x400)

\*©CAPCOM 2007

## Pre-installed frames



フレーム 1



フレーム 2



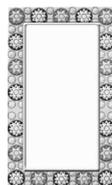
フレーム 3



フレーム 4



フレーム 5



フレーム 6



フレーム 7



フレーム 8



フレーム 9

- Each frame is available in **QCIF: 176×144**, **QVGA: 240×320**, **Stand-by: 240×400**, **Wide S: 400×240**, **CIF: 352×288** and **VGA: 480×640** sizes.

## Deco-mail templates



おつかれさま



ごめんなさい



だ〜いすき



オメデト~



ハア〜イ



オハよう



おやすみ



ありがトン



頑張って



おかえりい



だいすき



ただいま



ヨロシク



オッケイ



メルアド変えました



I Love You



Happy Birthday



ありがとう



がんばれ



おっけー



NG



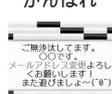
Thank You



わーいわーい



え・・・



あいさつ



Good afternoon



誕生日おめでとう

# Decomail pictures



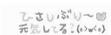
オハよう



おやすみ



ハア-イ



ひさしぶり~



ばいばいっつ



おかえりい



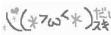
ただいま



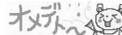
オツカレサマ



だ-いすき



だいスキ



オメデト~



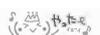
ありがトン



ヨロシク



オッケイ



やった~



頑張って



ナデナデ



ツカレタヨ~



ゴメンなさい



ごめんっ



ネムイ-



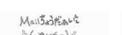
えっ



メルアド変更



TELちょうだい



Mailちょうだい



TELしてイ?



おこる



なく



超ハッピー



悩む

Mailちょうだい TELしてイ?

おこる

なく

超ハッピー

悩む

ショック



さみしい



暑い



ばいばい



ファイト



オヤスミ



Good!



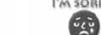
Hello!



おめでとう!



寒い



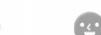
ごめんね



いししし



NO!



OK!



Thank You



え・・・



Love



ありがとう



わーい



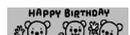
OK



NG!



ガンバレ



Happy Birthday



ハート



きらきら



お花



ポップ



ハート

Blue

チェック

Linestone

星

石

波

0

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

AM

PM

コロソ

スラッシュ

晴れ

夜

曇り

雨

やった!

大泣き

駄目だ・・・

がーん1

ドキドキ

GJ!

ブンブン

電話

メール

あっぱれ

日本一

あたり

にこにこ

えーんえーん

ブンブン

ZZZ..

チラっ

照れっ

びっくり!

スキ

キライ

ありがとう

ちゃぶ台返し

真っ青

感動

チュッ

バンザイ

お腹すいた

やった~\*

ごめんなさい\*

いただきます\*

しょんぼり\*



おやすみ\*



ガーデン\*



クラッカー\*

\*©Disney

# Dial Key Assignments (5-touch)

Use dial keys to enter text. Each key has multiple characters assigned to it.

- Press the key multiple times to switch characters.
- Example: If [1] is pressed three times in double-byte katakana mode, [1] [ア] → [1] [イ] → [1] [ウ] appears.
- Press [↶] to scroll backwards through characters.

## Double-byte Characters

Key	Kanji (hiragana) input mode	Double-byte katakana input mode	Double-byte alphanumeric input mode		Kuten code mode
			Upper and lower case	Lower case	
[1]	あいうえおあいうえお	アイウエオアイウエオ	. / _ @ 1 (space)	. / _ @ 1 (space)	1
[2]	かきくけこ	カキクケコ	A B C a b c 2	a b c 2	2
[3]	さしすせそ	サシスセソ	D E F d e f 3	d e f 3	3
[4]	たちつてとっ	タチツテトッ	G H I g h i 4	g h i 4	4
[5]	なにぬねの	ナニヌネノ	J K L j k l 5	j k l 5	5
[6]	はひふへほ	ハヒフヘホ	M N O m n o 6	m n o 6	6
[7]	まみむめも	マミムメモ	P Q R S p q r s 7	p q r s 7	7
[8]	やゆよやゆよ	ヤユヨヤユヨ	T U V t u v 8	t u v 8	8
[9]	らりるれろ	ラリルレロ	W X Y Z w x y z 9	w x y z 9	9
[0]	わをん (space)	ワヲン (space)	0 (space)	0 (space)	0
[0] to [9] for 1+seconds	*3				0 to 9
[✕]	° ° ↓*1			↓*1	↓
[#]	Double-byte symbol conversion (ー、。！？・)				n/a
[↶]	1-touch conversion (previous candidate)	Cursor up			
[↷]	Normal conversion (next candidate) ↓*1	Cursor down/↓*1			
[↶]	Shrink highlighted segment	Cursor left			
[↷]	Expand highlighted segment	Cursor right			
[⇄]	Change character input modes				
[⇄] for 1+seconds	Show "Internet" preset phrases				
[⇄]	Conversion to lower case characters (for characters which can be lower case)	Conversion between upper and lower case characters + Switching between upper/lower case character input modes	Conversion to upper case characters + Switching between upper/lower case character input modes	n/a	
[⇄] for 1+seconds	Insert phrase				
[CLR]*4	Single character deletion, canceling conversion	Single character deletion			Deletion of entered code or single character
[CLR] for 1+seconds	Deletion of all characters in front of the cursor*2				
[↶]	Apply, OK	OK			
[↶]	Show in reverse order or undo				Undo

\*1 Press after confirming a character to enter a line break (↓). ↓ appears as a single-byte character but is counted as a double-byte character. Edit/delete new line mark like any other character. Available when inputting text for messages, Schedule, ToDo list and Text memo.

\*2 When characters are before/after the cursor or when characters are only after the cursor, all characters at and after the cursor are deleted.

\*3 Press a key for 1+ seconds to enter the next character assigned to the same key.

\*4 Press [CLR] without entering characters and the previous screen reappears.

● Some hiragana and katakana with a dakuten mark may be partially omitted.

## Single-byte Characters

Key	Single-byte katakana mode	Single-byte alphanumeric mode		Single-byte numeric input mode
		Upper and lower case	Lower case	
	アイウエオアイウエオ	. / _ 0 1 (space)	. / _ 0 1 (space)	1
	カキクケコ	A B C a b c 2	a b c 2	2
	サシスセソ	D E F d e f 3	d e f 3	3
	タチツテト	G H I g h i 4	g h i 4	4
	ナニヌネノ	J K L j k l 5	j k l 5	5
	ハヒフハホ	M N O m n o 6	m n o 6	6
	マミムメモ	P Q R S p q r s 7	p q r s 7	7
	ヤユヨヤユヨ	T U V t u v 8	t u v 8	8
	ラリルレロ	W X Y Z w x y z 9	w x y z 9	9
	ワヲン (space)	0 (space)	0 (space)	0
		*4		*5
	° ° - ↓	↓*1		*
	Single-byte symbol conversion (-, ., !, ?, ~, (, ), ', :, ;, ¥, &)*3			#
	Cursor up			P (during entry of a phone number)/ Cursor up
	Cursor down/↓*1			
	Cursor left			
	Cursor right			
	Change character input modes			
	Show "Internet" preset phrases			
	Conversion to lower case characters (for characters which can be lower case)	Conversion between upper and lower case characters + Switching between upper/lower case character input modes	Conversion to upper case characters + Switching between upper/lower case character input modes	n/a
	Insert phrase			
	Single character deletion			
	Deletion of all characters in front of the cursor*2			
	OK			
	Show in reverse order or undo			Undo

\*1 A line break (↓) is entered. ↓ appears as a single-byte character but is counted as a double-byte character. Edit/delete new line mark like any other character. Available when inputting text for messages, Schedule, ToDo list and Text memo.

\*2 When characters are before/after the cursor or when characters are only after the cursor, all characters at and after the cursor are deleted.

\*3 During single-byte alphanumeric input (entering mail addresses, URL), " ", "°" or "-" cannot be entered.

\*4 Press a key for 1+ seconds to enter the next character assigned to the same key.

\*5 Press for 1+ seconds to enter "+".

### How characters are counted

One double-byte character is counted as two single-byte characters.

A single-byte dakuten/handakuten mark is counted as a single character.



# Pictograph/Emoticon List

## Pictograph List

Enter reading to convert to pictographs.

### Pictograph 1

Keyword (Reading)	Pictograph												
はれ		ほすけつと、ほすけ		びーる、さけ		しーでいー		かちんこ		はた		かわい	
くもり		はた		ほんばー		はーと、はあと		ふくろ		ふりーだいや		きす	
あめ、かさ		ほけつととべる、ほけべる		あていっく		すべーど		べん		しーふだいや		ひかひか、まらまら	
ゆき		でんしゃ		あていっく、あていっく		だいや		ひとかけ		もほきゅー		ひらめき	
かみなり		ちかてつ		えいが		め		いす		いち		むか、いかり	
うすまき、たいふう		しんかんせん		あじむ、あじむ		あじむ、あじむ		よる、つき		に		ばんち	
きり		くるま		あじむ、あじむ		あじむ、あじむ		さん		さん		ぼくだん	
こさめ		くるま		ゆうえんち		くー		おん		よん、し		おんぶ	
おひつじ		ぼす		おんがく		ちよき、ふい		えんど		ご		やじむし、ぼつど	
おうし		ふぬ		あーと		とけい		な		のく		ねる、ねむい	222
ふたご		ひこうき		えんげき		あじむし、あじむし		でんわ		なな、しち		びっくり	!
かに		いえ		いべんと		あじむし、あじむし		めーる		はち		びっくり	!?
しし		びる		ちけつと		あし		ふあつす		きゅー、く		びっくり	!!
おとめ		ゆうびんきょく		たばこ、まつえん		くつ		あいちーど		ぜろ		しようけき、いらいら	
てんびん		びょういん		きんぐ		かぬ		あいちーど		はーと、はあと		あせ	?
さざり		ざんこう		かめら		くるまいす		めーる		はーと、はあと		あせ	?
いて		ざんこう、えーていーえむ		かばん		しんげつ、つき		ども		しつれん、はーと、はあと		だっしゅ	3
やぎ		ほてる		ほん		つき		ども		はーと、はあと		-	~
みずがめ		こんびに		りほん		はんげつ、つき		ゆうりょう		かお、にこ		-	?
うお		がそりん、すたんど		おれぜんと		みづつき、つき		ふり、むりょう		かお、むか		おーけー	OK
すぼーつ		ちゅうしゃじょう		ぼーすてー		まんげつ、つき		あいでいー		かお、かなしい		-	?
やきゅう		しんごう		でんわ		いぬ		かき、しーくれつと、ぼすわーど		かお、かなしい		-	?
ごるふ		とこれ		でんわ、けいたい		ねこ		りたーん		かお、ふらふら		??	??
てにす		れすとらん		めも		ふつと、りそーと		くりあ		やじむし、くつど		-	?
さっかー		まっさてん		てれび		くりすます		むしめがね、るべ、さーち		おんぶ		-	?
すきー		ぼー		げーむ		やじむし、ひだりした		にゅー		おんせん		-	?

### Pictograph 2

Keyword (Reading)	Pictograph	Keyword (Reading)	Pictograph	Keyword (Reading)	Pictograph	Keyword (Reading)	Pictograph	Keyword (Reading)	Pictograph	Keyword (Reading)	Pictograph	Keyword (Reading)	Pictograph
あいあぶり		らぶれたー		かお、あせ		かお、かなしい		きんし		ちゅーりっぷ		かたつむり	
あいあぶり		れんち、こうく		かお、あせ		かお、なみだ、かなしい		あせ、くしつ、くしつ、くしつ		ぼな		ひよこ	
ていーしゃつ、しゃつ		えんぴつ		かお、むか		えぬじー		ごうかく		りんご		べんごん	
さいふ		おうびん		かお、ほけ		くりっぷ		まんしつ、まんせき、まんしゅ		め		さかな	
くちべに、げしろう		ゆびわ		はーと		こびーらいと		やじむし、きゆう		かお、うまい		かお	
しーほん、すほん		すなごけい、とけい		おーけー、くつど、ないす		ていー、おーべー、まーく、しゅつぷう		TM		さくら		かお	
すのぼ		じてんしゃ		かお、べー		はしる、ひと		がっこう		おんぎり、おんずび		うま	
べる、ちやべる		おちや、ゆのみ		かお、ういんく		まるひ		なみ		けーき		ふた	
どあ		うでごけい、とけい		かお、にこ、うれい		りさいくる		ふじさん、やま		とっくり、さげ		わいん、さげ	
おかね、どるぶくろ		かお		かお、おまか、かなしい		まるあーる、しゅうひょう		くるーぼー		らーめん、どんぶり		かお、げつそい、まげ	
ぼんご		かお、にこ		ねこ		きん、けいこ		さくらんぼ、ちえりー		はん、しよく		おん	

- The pictographs may not appear properly depending on the receiving model. In addition, pictographs may not appear properly on PCs and mobile phones not supporting i-mode. Pictographs other than , and appear as spaces in SMS.
- When "keyword (reading)" is entered, 絵1 (Pict-1)/絵2 (Pict-2) appears after the conversion candidate. However, even if the candidate is selected, the characters of 絵1 (Pict-1)/絵2 (Pict-2) are not entered.

## Deco-mail pictograph

Title	Deco-mail pict	Title	Deco-mail pict	Title	Deco-mail pict	Title	Deco-mail pict	Title	Deco-mail pict	Title	Deco-mail pict	Title	Deco-mail pict
笑う		花1		定食		自転車		公園		赤ちゃん 天使		ねご感謝	
わーい		花2		サラダ		走る		噴水		赤ちゃん		うさぎ感謝	
ニッコリ		花3		料理		マイク		教会		床屋		べんぎん 謝罪	
ウインク		キラキラ星		焼き魚 (鮭)		時計		お城(和 風)		注射		ねご謝罪	
ひや~		流れ星		幕の内弁当		掃除		交番		王冠		うさぎ謝罪	
眼い		晴		ケーキ大		風呂		郵便局		ティアラ		かぶりくま 泣き	
目がハート		曇		ケーキ小		うち		家		音符		べんぎん 泣き	
冷や汗1		傘		かき水		洗濯		野球		星		ねご泣き	
冷や汗2		雨かえる		チョコレート		ドレス		バスケット		アンテナ		うさぎ泣き	
泣き顔		雪		スナック菓 子		サングラス		サッカー		門松		べんぎん 怒る	
悲しい		雷		ドーナツ		スーツ		バレエボ ール		羽子板		ねご怒る	
我慢		メール		ソフトク リーム		カジュアル スーツ		卓球		鏡餅		うさぎ怒る	
泣く		べんぎん (メール)		アイスク リーム		ネクタイ		スキー		富士山		アイス びっくり	
怒る		着信		プリン		Gパン		スノーボ ード		バレンタ イン		べんぎん 焦り	
ぶっくっく		コーヒー		せんべい		スカート		ゴルフ		ひなまつり		ねご焦り	
べー		ジュース		いちご		ハイヒール		サーフィン		花見		うさぎ焦り	
げっそり		ビール		みかん		革靴		テニス		七夕		アイス もらイヤ	
走る人		乾杯		りんご		スニーカー		釣り		うちわ		かぶりくま 照れ	
バイバイ		日本酒		さくらんぼ		水着(女 性)		ヨガ		線香花火		かぶりくま てへ	
グッド		赤ワイン		ぶどう		水着(男 性)		ウォーキ ング		花火		吹き出し1	
OK		カクテル		バナナ		アタッシュ ケース		ノートPC		クリスマス 1		吹き出し2	
BAD!		ごはん		スイカ		ブランド バッグ		携帯クラ ム		クリスマス 2		吹き出し3	
ピース!		寿司		パイナッ プル		着物		携帯スイ ベル		誕生日		着もじ	
パチパチ		おにぎり		桃		病院		薄型テレビ		結婚式		テレビ電話	
矢印 (アップ)		食パン		メロン		遊園地		ヘッドホ ン		旅行		ッシュト ーク	
矢印 (ダウン)		ハンバー ガー		柿		学校		一眼レフ カメラ		Dimo 冷や汗*		デコレ ーション メー	
ハート		焼き鳥		電車		会社		CD/DVD		Dimo がーん*		がーん	
ハート大		ステーキ		バス		プール		キャンディ		Dimo がっかり*		ありがとう	
3ハート		ラーメン		車		ホテル		天使の羽		かぶりくま ウインク		おはよう	
3ハート大		パスタ		タクシー		ガソリン スタンド		チューリッ プ		アイス ウインク		おやすみ	
ハート ブレイク1		カレー		救急車		カラオケ ボックス		バラ		アイス喜び			
ハート ブレイク2		おでん		パトカー		工場		きのこ		べんぎん 喜び			
リボン		ナルト		飛行機		灯台		てんと虫		ねご喜び			
音符1		焼肉		オートバイ		大仏		蝶		うさぎ喜び			
音符2		カツ丼		スクーター		信号		チューリッ プ		べんぎん 感謝			

\* ©Disney

- Deco-mail pictographs may not appear properly depending on the other party's model. In addition, Deco-mail pictographs may not appear properly on PCs and mobile phones not supporting i-mode.
- If Deco-mail is sent to a Deco-mail unsupported terminal, a URL is sent in the message text. The recipient must select the mail with the URL to view Deco-mail.

## Emoticon List

(^^)	(+_+)	(^^<	Φ(. .)	(^^)Y☆Y(^^)
o(^-^o	(-_-)	(☆_☆)	(^人^)	o(^-^o)(o^-^o)
(^0^)/	(v_v)	(/><)/	<(^_>	(/^o^)/
p(^~^q	(T_T)	(-_-#)	(^_d^)	(^o^)\(-_-)
(><)	(≡_≡)	(^ ;)	\(^~:)	(UoU)。。。)
(X_X)	(@_@)	(-_-メ)	(#^.#)	(^^)\(^o^)
m(^_)m	(?_?)	(^▽^)	(^0)=3	\^o^/
f^~;	(; ;)	!(^^)!	(; ^ .)	(TT_TTT)
(: ;)	(O_O)	o(><)o	(^~^ ;)	??(^o.)??
(.-;)	(^_)	(。 。 ;)	(^▽^ ;)	(^-)-☆

- Alternatively enter かお (Face) to view emoticon candidates and enter into text.

## Phrase List

Greetings	1	おはようございます	Reply	1	OKです
	2	おやすみなさい		2	NGです
	3	昨日は、どうもありがとうございました		3	ありがとう
	4	行ってきます		4	ごめんなさい
	5	いってらっしゃい		5	待ってて
	6	お疲れ様でした		6	今忙しい
	7	お世話になっております		7	後で連絡入れます
	8	こんにちは		8	保留です
	9	こんばんは		9	キャンセルです
Business	1	直行します	Internet	1	.ne.jp
	2	直帰します		2	.co.jp
	3	休暇をとります		3	.ac.jp
	4	半休します		4	.or.jp
	5	電車遅延のため、遅れます		5	.go.jp
	6	本日の会議は中止となりました		6	.com
	7	出欠をご連絡ください		7	@docomo.ne.jp
	8	次の指示を待ってください		8	http://
	9	携帯の電源を切ります		9	www.
Private	1	遊びに行こう	Original phrase	1	-----
	2	飲みに行きませんか?		2	-----
	3	遅れます		3	-----
	4	変更します		4	-----
	5	中止です		5	-----
	6	先に行きます		6	-----
	7	先に帰ります		7	-----
	8	時間でず		8	-----
	9	何してるの?		9	-----

- Original phrases are not registered in handset at the time of purchase.

# Using the Calculator

## Example of various calculations

Example calculations		Operation	Displayed result
Addition, subtraction, multiplication, division	$14 \times 3 + 5 =$	$14[\times]3[+]5[=]$	47
	$(-24) \div 4 - 2 =$	$[-]24[\div]4[-]2[=]$	-8
Constants	$34 + 57 =$	$34[+]57[=]$	91
	$45 + 57 =$	$45[+]57[=]$	102
	$48 - 23 =$	$48[-]23[=]$	25
	$14 - 23 =$	$14[-]23[=]$	-9
	$68 \times 25 =$	$68[\times]25[=]$	1,700
	$68 \times 40 =$	$68[\times]40[=]$	2,720
Percentages	What is 10% of 200?	$200[\times]10[\%]$	20
	9 is what % of 36?	$9[\div]36[\%]$	25
Consumption tax calculation	How much tax is included in 3,000 yen?	$3000[\text{TAX}]$	142 Tax
	How much is 3,000 yen without tax?	$3000[\text{TAX}][\text{TAX}]$	2,858 -TAX
Premiums, discounts	10% increase of 200?	$200[+]10[\%]$ (Or $200[\times]10[\%][+]1[=]$ )	220
	20% discount of 500?	$500[-]20[\%]$ (Or $500[\times]20[\%][-]1[=]$ )	400
Powers	$(4^3) =$	$4[\times]3[=][\times]4[=]$	4,096
Inverse numbers	$1 \div 8 =$	$8[\div]1[=]$	0.125
Memory calculations	Sum $27 \times 5 =$ $+ )87 \div 3 =$ $+ )68 + 15 =$ $(\text{Sum}) =$	$[\text{CM}]27[\times]5[\text{M}+]$	M 135
		$87[\div]3[\text{M}+]$	M 29
		$68[+]15[\text{M}+]$	M 83
		$[\text{RM}]$ (also functions as a [=])	M 247
Temporary memory	$(13 + 3 \times 4) \times (50 - 45) =$	$[\text{CM}]13[\text{M}+]3[\times]4[\text{M}+]50[-]45[\times][\text{RM}][=]$	M 125
Constant memory	$135 \times (12 + 14) =$	$[\text{CM}]12[+]14[\text{M}+]$	M 26
	$(12 + 14) \div 5 =$	$135[\times][\text{RM}][=]$ $[\text{RM}][\div]5[=]$	M 3,510 M 5.2

- **M** appears when a value other than **0** is in memory.

### Note

- Press  $\square$  [CM] to clear the memory before starting.
- Numbers after the decimal point are left off when calculating tax.  
Example: If 120 [TAX] is pressed, **5Tax** appears.

### When E appears

- When **E** appears as a result, no further calculations can be made. Press  $\square$  [C•CE].  
When dividing by 0 (Example:  $5 [\div] 0 [=]$ )  
When the number of integers in the memory exceeds 12 digits (Example:  $[\text{CM}] 999999999999 [\text{M}+] 1 [\text{M}+]$ )  
When the number of integers in a calculation is 12 digits or more (Example:  $1000000000 [\div] 0.01 [\%]$ )

## Multiaccess Combinations

Below are the main combinations of transmission functions operable simultaneously.

Transmission type	Voice call		Video-phone		i-mode	i-mode mail		SMS		Data trans. (packet)		Data trans. (64K)		PushTalk		Push-Talk-Plus	One Seg	
	Make	Receive	Make	Receive		Send	Receive	Send	Receive	Send	Receive	Send	Receive	Send	Receive			Network connection
Phone	'1	'1	x	x <sup>2</sup>										x	x <sup>2</sup>	x	x <sup>2</sup>	x

Transmission type	Voice call		Videophone		i-mode	i-mode mail		SMS		Data trans. (packet)		Data trans. (64K)		PushTalk		Push-Talk-Plus	One Seg
	Make	Receive	Make	Receive		Send	Receive	Send	Receive	Send	Receive	Send	Receive	Send	Receive	Network connection	Active One Seg
Videophone	x	x <sup>*2</sup>	x	x <sup>*2</sup>	x	x	x	x		x	x	x	x <sup>*2</sup>	x	x	x	x
i-mode			'6	'3	x					x	x	x	x <sup>*2</sup>	'4	'7	x	
i-αppli transmission	'4	'4	'4	'3	x	'4		'4		x	x	x	x <sup>*2</sup>	'4	'7	x	x
Transmitting data (packet)			x	x <sup>*2</sup>	x	x	x	x		x	x	x	x <sup>*2</sup>	x	x	x	
Transmitting data (64K)	x	x <sup>*2</sup>	x	x <sup>*2</sup>	x	x	x	x		x	x	x	x <sup>*2</sup>	x	x	x	x
PushTalk transmission	x	'5	x	x <sup>*2</sup>	x	x	x	x		x	x	x	x <sup>*2</sup>	x <sup>*8</sup>	x <sup>*2</sup>	x	x
PushTalk-Plus (Network connection)			x	x <sup>*2</sup>	x	x	x	x		x	x	x	x <sup>*2</sup>			x	
Activate One Seg			x	'9													x

- : Current transmission is retained and new transmission is processed.
- x: Current transmission is retained (Cannot process new transmission).
- : New transmission is processed depending on the condition.
- \*1 Available when subscribed to Call Waiting (☎ P. 394).
- \*2 The call is saved in Received calls.
- \*3 Receive a Videophone call or continue packet transmission (☎ P. 82).
- \*4 i-mode/i-αppli transmission is disconnected and new transmission is processed.
- \*5 When **Set PT arrival act** is set to **Call Rejection** (Default setting: **Answer**), the current PushTalk call is continued. Change **Set PT arrival act** to a setting other than **Call Rejection** to answer a voice call during a PushTalk call (☎ P. 94). After the setting is changed, PushTalk transmission is terminated if voice call is received and answered. If the voice call is ignored, the PushTalk is not terminated.
- \*6 Videophone call is transmitted after disconnecting i-mode connection.
- \*7 When **i-mode arrival act** is set to **PushTalk preferred** (default setting), i-mode and i-αppli transmissions are disconnected and new transmission is processed (☎ P. 199).
- \*8 Sending a transmission to add a member is possible only when a PushTalk sender is Myself.
- \*9 When an incoming call is answered, One Seg is interrupted.

## Multi Assistant (Multitask) Combinations

Below are the main combinations available with Multi Assistant (Multitask).

Additional function	Power saver set	Manner mode/ Mail/Read mail/ToDo/ Dial Input/Phone	Multi Assistant screen/ Call from history/	i-mode	i-mode bookmark	Full Browser/i-Channel/ Search the Internet/ Browser bookmark/	i-αppli	Supportbook/ BookReader	Data box/Music player	Open phonebook/ Phonebook/	Schedule/View schedule	Calculator	Text memo	Videophone	PushTalk calling	Document Viewer	TouCa	SD-Audio	One Seg	i-motion player*1
Current function																				
i-αppli				x	x	x	x	x	x								x	x	x	x
PDF Viewer				x			x		x							x				x
Music player							x		x											x
i-motion player*1							x		x											x
SD-Audio																		x	x	x
One Seg							x <sup>*2</sup>		x <sup>*3</sup>					x				x	x	x
Phonebook/ PushTalk phonebook										x										
Text memo													x							
Calculator												x								
Chara-den player							x		x											x
Schedule											x									
Data box							x		x											x <sup>*4</sup> x
Voice call									x					x	x			x		x



## Note

- An additional 90 yen (94.5 yen including tax) handling fee is charged for each call when collect calls (106) are made (As of January 2007).
- An additional 100 yen (105 yen including tax) directory fee is charged when using directory assistance (104). People with disabilities in vision or upper limbs can receive this service free of charge. For details, call 116 (NTT sales counter) from a landline phone (As of January 2007).
- When calling 110, 119, and 118 from your FOMA terminal, your location cannot be pinpointed. For verification purposes, the police or fire stations may return your call. State that you are calling from a mobile phone, and give your phone number and exact location.  
Remain stationary to ensure that you are not disconnected while making an emergency call, and keep handset turned on to receive calls for about ten minutes afterwards.
- Depending on the region, calls to the police or fire station may not be connected. In such cases, use the nearest payphone or landline phone.
- If landline phones subscribed to **Call forwarding** is set to forward calls to mobile phones, callers may hear the phone ringing even if the mobile phone is busy, outside the service area, in **Self mode** or turned off depending on the settings for the landline phones/mobile phones.
- Services such as 116 (NTT sales counter), Dial Q2, message service and credit card calls are not available (Automatic credit card calls to a FOMA terminal can be made from a landline telephone or payphone).

## Options and Accessories

Combine the FOMA terminal with various optional accessories (sold separately) for expanded personal and business use.

Some products may not be available in certain areas. Contact a DoCoMo Shop or retailer for details.

Refer to the user's guide of each product for more details.

- FOMA AC Adapter 01
- Battery Pack SH11
- Desktop Holder SH13
- Back Cover SH14
- FOMA DC Adapter 01
- Flat-plug Earphone/Microphone with Switch P01/P02
- Earphone Plug Adapter P001
- Earphone/Microphone with Switch P001\*1/P002\*1
- Stereo Earphone Set P001\*1
- Earphone Terminal P001\*1
- Bone conduction microphone/receiver
- FOMA Indoor Booster Antenna
- FOMA USB Cable
- Flat-plug Stereo Earphone Set P01
- FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global use\*2
- In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01\*3
- FOMA In-Car Hands-Free Cable 01
- In-Car Holder 01\*4
- FOMA Dry Battery Adapter 01
- Carry Case L 01
- FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01
- FOMA Indoor Booster Antenna (Stand Type)

\*1 Earphone/Microphone with switch, Stereo earphone set and Earphone terminal cannot be used without Earphone plug adapter.

\*2 To use the adapter overseas, a conversion plug adapter that is compatible with the voltage of your country of stay is required.

\*3 FOMA In-Car Hands-Free Cable 01 is required to charge and connect to FOMA SH903iTV with the USB cable.

\*4 Activate Side key guard settings to use the In-Car Holder 01.

## Using with External Devices

Using supported external devices, play back movies saved on microSD Memory Cards on the FOMA terminal.\*

microSD Memory Cards are sold separately. Purchase microSD Memory Cards at home electronics shops (☎ P. 318).

For details on compatible devices, refer to <http://k-tai.sharp.co.jp/support/d/sh903itv/>. Or, contact the number below.

- Play i-motion created on external devices (including audio data) on the FOMA terminal (☎ P. 357).

\* Some movies cannot be played back depending on the file format or the type of external device.

Sharp Data Communication Support Center

TEL: 03-5396-2351

Hours: 10:00 am to 12:00 noon, 1:00 pm to 5:00 pm, Monday through Friday  
(Closed on weekends, national holidays, and company holidays)

- Check the phone number carefully before dialing.

## About Movie Player Software

QuickTime™ Player (Free) ver. 6.4 or later (or ver. 6.3+3GPP) provided by Apple Computer, Inc. is required to play back movies on a PC.

QuickTime™ Player can be downloaded from the Apple Computer, Inc. web page.

<http://www.apple.com/jp/quicktime/download/>

- To download, a PC connected to the Internet is required. Additional transmission fees are charged for downloading.
- Refer to the Apple Computer, Inc. web page for details on the operating environment, downloading, and usage instructions.

## Troubleshooting

Check to see if software update is necessary. If so, perform update (Updating Software ☎ P. 452).

Problem	Explanation	Page
Does not function	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● Is the FOMA terminal turned off?</li><li>● Is the battery level sufficient?</li><li>● Is the battery pack inserted properly?</li></ul>	P. 43 P. 43 P. 39
Does not turn on	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● Was (☎) pressed for 2+ seconds?</li><li>● Is the battery level sufficient?</li><li>● If handset does not turn on after alert tone sounds, recharge the battery.</li><li>● Is the battery pack inserted properly?</li></ul>	P. 43 P. 43 P. 39
Power turns off	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● Is the IC portion of the FOMA card dirty?</li><li>● Is the battery pack connector terminal or FOMA terminal charger terminal dirty?</li></ul>	P. 36 P. 39
Does not recharge	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>● Is the battery pack inserted properly?</li><li>● Is the temperature of the FOMA terminal or battery high?</li><li>● Is the charger terminal dirty? Clean terminal with a cotton swab.</li><li>● Is the AC adapter connector properly connected to the FOMA terminal and Desktop holder?</li><li>● Is the FOMA terminal properly set in the Desktop holder?</li></ul>	P. 39 P. 40 - P. 41 P. 42 P. 42

Problem	Explanation	Page
Handset is recharged but quickly loses power	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Is the FOMA terminal properly set in the Desktop holder?</li> <li>● Is the battery still usable?</li> <li>● Is the charger terminal dirty? Clean terminal with a cotton swab.</li> <li>● Battery duration varies depending on handset use.</li> </ul>	P. 42 P. 40 - P. 40
Keys do not respond	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Is the FOMA terminal turned off?</li> <li>● Is All lock or Key guard active?</li> </ul>	P. 43 P. 148 P. 153
☎ appears and calls cannot be made	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Is the handset outside the service area or in a place with a weak signal?</li> </ul>	P. 28
Self appears and calls cannot be made	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Is Self mode set?</li> </ul>	P. 150
Calls cannot be made from the phonebook	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Is phonebook Function lock set?</li> <li>● Is All lock enabled?</li> </ul>	P. 151 P. 148
Calls cannot be made with the dial keys	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Is Keypad dial lock set?</li> <li>● Is All lock enabled?</li> </ul>	P. 152 P. 148
Busy signal sounds after dialing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Was <b>090, 080, 070</b> or the area code dialed?</li> <li>● Does ☎ appear?</li> <li>● If the other party's signal is weak, the call may not connect.</li> </ul>	P. 49 P. 28 -
Call is interrupted or disconnects	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Is the handset in an area with a weak signal?</li> <li>● Is the battery level sufficient?</li> </ul>	P. 28 P. 43
The other party's voice is too loud or is distorted	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Is the earpiece volume too high?</li> </ul>	P. 67
Clicks sound during a call	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● The FOMA terminal has a weak signal and is switching areas.</li> </ul>	-
When saving to phonebook, cannot select <b>Sent messages</b> or <b>Rcvd messages</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Is Show sent messages or Show received messages set to <b>OFF</b>?</li> </ul>	P. 154
When a message is received, set ring tone does not sound	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Is Receive display set to <b>Operation first</b>?</li> </ul>	P. 239
Ring tone does not sound	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Is the phone ring volume set to <b>Silent</b>?</li> <li>● Is the battery level sufficient?</li> <li>● Is the FOMA terminal turned off?</li> <li>● Is a call in progress?</li> <li>● Is a call on hold?</li> <li>● Is Ring start time set?</li> <li>● Is Accept calls set?</li> <li>● Is Reject calls set?</li> <li>● Is Reject by reason of non-disclosure set?</li> <li>● Is Reject unknown set?</li> <li>● Is the Voice Mail Service active and is the ringing time set to <b>0 seconds</b>?</li> <li>● Is Public mode (Drive mode) active?</li> <li>● Is Manner mode active?</li> </ul>	P. 118 P. 43 P. 43 P. 63 P. 67 P. 158 P. 156 P. 157 P. 159 P. 392 P. 68 P. 123

Problem	Explanation	Page
When a message is received, a different ring tone sounds	● When a specific mail ring tone is saved in the phonebook for a particular individual, that mail ring tone sounds.	P. 100
	● When a specific mail ring tone is saved in the phonebook for a particular group, that mail ring tone sounds.	P. 105
	● When different mail ring tones are set for both individual and group, the mail ring tone for the individual sounds.	P. 117
	● When multiple messages are received, the specific mail ring tone of the last person sounds.	-
	● When the other party's mail address is <b>phone number@docomo.ne.jp</b> , save only the phone number for the mail address and set a specific mail ring tone.	P. 100
	● Is the sender's mail address saved correctly in the phonebook or is a specific mail ring tone set?	P. 100
	● When SMS is received, specified mail ring tone sounds if set in phonebook. ● Is the phone number saved correctly?	- P. 98
When a call or mail is received, LED flashes in another way than settings	● When a call or mail is received from the other party for which phonebook called LED/phonebook mail LED is set, LED flashes according to the LED settings.	P. 100
	● When a call or mail is received from the other party for which group called LED/group mail LED is set, LED flashes according to the LED settings that are made for the group.	P. 105
	● When a call or mail is received from the other party for which both phonebook called LED/phonebook mail LED and group called LED/group mail LED are set, LED flashes according to the LED settings made with phonebook called LED/phonebook mail LED.	P. 138
	● When multiple messages are received, LED flashes according to the LED settings made for the last received mail address.	-
	● When the other party's mail address is <b>phone number@docomo.ne.jp</b> , save only the phone number for the mail address in the phonebook and make the LED settings.	P. 100
	● Is the sender's mail address saved correctly in the phonebook and are LED settings made?	P. 98
	● When SMS is received, LED settings become valid if made in phonebook. ● Is the phone number saved correctly?	P. 100 P. 98
<b>Service not registered</b> appears	● Subscription is required to use i-mode. ● If contract is made for i-mode after purchase, turn off FOMA terminal power and restart.	- -
The date appears backwards	● Is Select language set to 日本語 ?	P. 44
<b>Please wait</b> appears and cannot be cleared	● The audio line or the packet communication system is not in service, or the audio line network or the packet communication network is extremely congested. Try again later.	-
Cannot make/receive calls, send/receive mail or use i-mode	● Is the battery level sufficient?	P. 43
	● Does 電波 appear?	P. 28
	● Is Self mode set to <b>ON</b> ?	P. 150
Cannot enter text	● Has the character limit been exceeded?	-
Display is blank	● Is the FOMA terminal turned off?	P. 43
	● Is the battery level sufficient?	P. 43
	● Is Power saver mode active?	P. 132
	● Is Auto power OFF set?	P. 368
Message on DoCoMo web page or お知らせ (News) on iMenu says software update is necessary	● Software needs to be updated. Update software.	P. 452

Problem	Explanation	Page
IC card (for FeliCa functions) is unusable	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Is IC card lock or Omakase Lock all enabled?</li> <li>● Is the battery level sufficient?</li> </ul>	P. 149 P. 270 P. 43
Screen is washed out	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Is Private filter set to enabled? Press  for 1+ seconds to disable Private filter.</li> </ul>	P. 142
Display is too dark or keypad backlight does not light	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Is Brightness in Power saver set to <b>Automatic</b>? Brightness of the display and keypad backlight are automatically adjusted according to the surrounding light.</li> </ul>	P. 132
Brightness sensor does not function properly	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Are there any stickers attached to the sensor?</li> </ul>	P. 24
Total call charge does not increase	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Total call charge for FOMA card does not increase when maximum limit (approximately 16,770,000 yen) has been reached. Reset total call charge to 0 yen.</li> </ul>	P. 384

## List of Error Messages

- A three-digit number will also appear with some messages. Some of the numbers are codes used only by DoCoMo.

Message	Explanation	Page
Database recovery will be performed	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Restoration for the database in Data box is performed. The following information or others in Data box may not be restored. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Damaged data</li> <li>■ Folders created by users However, data in the folders are not deleted and remain in the source folders.</li> <li>■ i-motion and music data with file restrictions</li> <li>■ PDF files that are not pre-installed</li> <li>■ Some data saved in Data box, which is used by i-appli</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	-
Disable accept calls	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Phone number is set to be accepted. Disable and try again.</li> </ul>	P. 156
Enter correct Network security code	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Appears when an incorrect network security code is entered. Enter correct network security code. FOMA terminal owner will be asked to bring FOMA terminal and identification (a driver's license, etc.) to a DoCoMo Shop in the case of a forgotten security code.</li> </ul>	P. 144
Error in image. Does not work correctly	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Flash movie has an error.</li> </ul>	-
Exceeds max number of simultaneous calls	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Appears when PushTalk transmissions are sent to five members or more from the PushTalk phonebook. Set four members or less.</li> </ul>	P. 91
Function is locked	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Phonebook Function lock is set. Disable and try again.</li> </ul>	P. 151
Insert UIM	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Make sure the FOMA card is properly inserted.</li> </ul>	P. 36
Keypad dial lock	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Disable Keypad dial lock when calling from functions other than phonebook (excluding microSD Memory Card phonebook) and Redial.</li> </ul>	P. 152
Memory is full	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Appears when the FOMA terminal handset phonebook has 750 phone numbers or mail addresses saved and another number or address is about to be added.</li> </ul>	P. 96
PIN1 code blocked	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Appears when power is turned on while PIN1 code is locked. Enter correct PUK when prompt appears to disable PIN lock.</li> </ul>	P. 147
Please enter security code	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Appears when a restricted operation was attempted while Function lock is set. Enter correct terminal security code to temporarily disable Function lock and continue operation.</li> </ul>	P. 151

Message	Explanation	Page
Please wait	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The audio line or the packet communication system is not in service, or the audio line network or the packet communication network is extremely congested. Try again later. Press a dial key to erase the message.</li> <li>Calls to 110, 119 and 118 are available. However, a call may not be connected depending on phone line conditions.</li> </ul>	-
Please wait for a while (packet)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The packet communication system is not in service, or the packet communication network is extremely congested. Try again later.</li> </ul>	-
PUK is blocked	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when power is turned on or a FOMA card operation is used while PUK is blocked. Contact a DoCoMo Shop.</li> </ul>	P. 145
Record error	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when recording is attempted after 400 items are recorded and Voice recorder ends. Delete unnecessary data before recording.</li> </ul>	P. 338
Recording failed	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the save destination is the microSD Memory Card and there is no available space, Camera mode ends and the stand-by display reappears.</li> </ul>	-
Secret data saved	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when Secret mode is not active and secret data is about to be sent by 2-touch dialing.</li> </ul>	P. 113 P. 154
Security code is wrong Please enter 4-8 digits	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when an incorrect terminal security code is entered. Enter correct terminal security code. FOMA terminal owner will be asked to bring FOMA terminal and identification (a driver's license, etc.) to a DoCoMo Shop in the case of a forgotten security code.</li> </ul>	P. 144
Self mode	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when a restricted operation was attempted while in Self mode.</li> </ul>	P. 150
Service unavailable	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when network service is attempted but handset is outside the service area or in a place with no signal. Retry after moving to a location where  appears.</li> </ul>	P. 28
Some items cannot be copied. Copy anyway?	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Since capacity of FOMA terminal handset phonebook and FOMA card phonebook differ, only the first phone number/mail address is copied to FOMA card. Characters and character limits also differ. Appears if some data cannot be copied. Select <b>Yes</b> to copy the first phone number/mail address.</li> </ul>	-
This UIM cannot be recognized	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when a FOMA card not usable by the terminal may have been inserted.</li> <li>Appears when FOMA card may be damaged or not properly inserted. Make sure the FOMA card is properly inserted.</li> </ul>	- P. 36
Unable to record any more	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Three Record messages (voice call) and two Record messages (Videophone) have been recorded. Delete unnecessary messages and start again.</li> </ul>	P. 75
Unable to renew memory number xxx	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when attempting to save a phonebook entry to the same memory number that stores secret data when Secret mode is not active.</li> <li>Appears when attempting to save a phonebook entry to the same memory number that stores an entry for Accept/Reject call.</li> </ul>	P. 113 P. 155 P. 156
Unable to save part of data. OK to save?	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when invalid data is included to save the characters scanned by Character reader to Phonebook. Select <b>Yes</b> to save.</li> </ul>	-
Unable to use at the moment	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when Videophone calling is attempted from outside the service area or in a place with no signal.</li> </ul>	P. 28
Unable to use Connected to external device	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>i-mode can only be disconnected. Other i-mode operations are not available because handset is connected to an external device.</li> </ul>	P. 438
You already have 3 voice memos saved	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Three Record messages (voice call) and less than two Record messages (Videophone) have been recorded. Delete unnecessary messages and start again.</li> </ul>	P. 75
You already have two messages saved	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Less than three Record messages (voice call) and two Record messages (Videophone) have been recorded. Delete unnecessary messages and start again.</li> </ul>	P. 75

Message	Explanation	Page
おまかせロック中です	● Appears when Omakase Lock is set.	P. 149

## i-mode

- Numbers in brackets ( ) appearing in i-mode error messages are sent from the i-mode center as a code to distinguish between errors.

Message	Explanation	Page
Already downloaded	● The same version of the software has been already downloaded.	P. 258
An attached file will be deleted	● File with restrictions for i-mode mail attachment or output from the FOMA terminal is attached to i-mode mail to be forwarded or replied to with Reply with quote. Press <b>⊙</b> [OK] and the i-mode mail without the attachment appears on the i-mode mail editing screen.	P. 220
Attachable size exceeded. Unable to attach	● File exceeds size limit and cannot be attached. Delete some of message text or send message without attaching the file.	P. 220
Authentication canceled	● Appears when <b>Cancel</b> is selected or <b>CLR</b> is pressed in the authentication screen.	-
Authentication type is not supported (401)	● Appears when authentication is not possible. Previous screen reappears.	-
Can not open any more window	● Appears if a new window cannot be opened when the number of frames which can be viewed is exceeded or the memory is low.	-
Capacity exceeded. Some data may be lost. End editing?	● Appears when message text alone exceeds 10,000 bytes. Select <b>Yes</b> and press <b>⊙</b> to open compose message screen. Excess data is deleted and <b>✕</b> appears. Depending on mail content (text, images, etc.) excess data may not be deleted. To re-edit, select <b>No</b> , press <b>⊙</b> and the message entry screen reappears. Edit to 10,000 bytes or less.	-
Certificate is rejected (tampered)	● Appears when rewritten SSL certificate is received. SSL session cannot be performed with this site or Internet web page.	P. 183
Connection failed	● Appears when host is set incorrectly. Properly re-set <b>Host selection</b> in i-mode settings. ● Site or Internet web page connection failed for an unspecified reason. Try again later.	P. 198 P. 182
Connection failed	● When dialing a Videophone call, the other party has Caller ID Request Service activated and the call does not connect. Set to send caller ID and call again.	P. 46
Connection failed (403)	● Site or Internet web page connection failed for an unspecified reason. Try again later.	P. 182
Connection interrupted	● i-mode has been disconnected due to a weak signal. Try i-mode again after moving to an area with a strong signal. ● Even if a signal is strong and <b>⌂</b> appears, the site or Internet web page is extremely congested. Try again later.	P. 28 -
(During Ir exchange) Connection suspended No response Retry? Authentication failed. Retry?	● Appears when canceling Ir exchange. ● Appears when other party could not be recognized. Select <b>Yes</b> and press <b>⊙</b> to try again. ● Appears when Ir exchange was not properly performed. Select <b>Yes</b> and press <b>⊙</b> to try again.	P. 334 P. 334 P. 334
Content length exceeds maximum size for i-motion	● Appears when Streaming type i-motion file exceeds 2 MB and cannot be downloaded.	P. 205
Content length exceeds replayable size for i-motion	● Appears when Standard type i-motion file exceeds 500 KB and cannot be downloaded.	P. 205
Continue using i-appli and transmit data?	● When <b>No</b> is selected for <b>Data transmission is frequent. Continue transmission?</b> , this message appears when i-appli once again attempts transmission. ● To transmit and continue use of i-appli, select <b>Yes</b> . To not transmit and continue use of i-appli, select <b>No</b> . Select <b>Terminate i-appli</b> to end i-appli.	P. 249 -

Message	Explanation	Page
Data in IC-card is full. Unable to download. Delete service?	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Appears when space of IC card is not enough to download Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli. Select <b>Yes</b> and press  [OK] to display the already registered Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli list and the capacity (bytes) in the IC card. After checking how much capacity is lacking, select services to be deleted and start i-αppli to delete them. Depending on the Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli, however, only the Osaifu-Keitai compatible i-αppli list appears after selecting <b>Yes</b> and pressing  [OK]. In this case, select i-αppli to be deleted from the list.</li> </ul>	-
Data transmission is frequent. Continue transmission?	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Data transmission is noticeably frequent during i-αppli use.</li> <li>● To transmit and continue use of i-αppli, select <b>Yes</b>. To not transmit and continue use of i-αppli, select <b>No</b>. Select <b>Terminate</b> to end i-αppli.</li> </ul>	P. 249 -
Download aborted	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Appears when downloading is canceled during download.</li> </ul>	-
Download failed Invalid content Download failed	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Appears when there is no data to download, or the data is invalid. Downloading is not possible.</li> <li>● Downloading is not possible due to invalid data or unsupported format.</li> </ul>	- -
Duplicate address deleted	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● A duplicate address is deleted when the same mail address is set as address or broadcast for i-mode mail.</li> </ul>	P. 216
Folder is full	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● If i-mode mail is received when there is no available space in memory and no unprotected read mail, <b>Folder is full</b> appears. <b>0</b> appears for the number of messages in receive complete screen.</li> </ul>	-
Handset memory is full. Unable to receive anymore or UIM is full. Unable to receive anymore	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Appears when FOMA terminal handset and FOMA card memory are full. SMS cannot be received. Check the unread i-mode mail/SMS ( P. 223, P. 242), disable the protect ( P. 234), and delete the unnecessary i-mode mail/SMS ( P. 234, P. 244) on FOMA terminal handset and FOMA card.</li> </ul>	-
"i-αppli To" function is not set	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Appears when attempting to start software, unauthorized to be linked, from a site, Internet web page, Message R/F, or i-mode mail. The software could not be started.</li> </ul>	P. 256
Input error (205)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Appears when server is about to reset contents after sending text entered in a site or Internet web page. All text and settings entered on screen are deleted (Contents sent before the error message appeared has already been sent).</li> </ul>	-
Invalid content. Change i-motion type for replay. Change setting?	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Appears when attempting to download Streaming type i-motion when i-motion type setting is set to <b>Standard type</b>.</li> </ul>	P. 208
Invalid UIM. Requested service not available	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Appears when attempting to view screen memo or Message R/F protected by FOMA card restriction functions.</li> <li>● Appears when attempting to activate i-αppli from the software list.</li> <li>● Appears when attempting to activate i-αppli from sites, Internet web pages, or i-mode mail.</li> </ul>	P. 37 - P. 37
Invalid UIM. download/ Upgrade/start/save not possible	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Appears when the information of an inserted FOMA card (UIM) is different from that mapped to FeliCa.</li> </ul>	-
Is the ToruCa automatic reading function in a mobile phone used through the reader/writer?	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Appears when Auto reading check of ToruCa is set to <b>OFF</b> and the automatic reading function is attempted to use with the reader/writer (external device). Select <b>Yes</b>, press , and press  [Agree] to set Auto reading check to <b>ON</b> and make the automatic reading function available.</li> </ul>	P. 270
Memory low	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Software cannot be run due to lack of available memory.</li> <li>● Processing suspended and i-mode terminated due to lack of available memory.</li> </ul>	- -
Memory shortage. Return to Internet(FB) Menu	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Appears if available memory space is lacking while viewing an Internet web page with Full Browser. In this case, select <b>Agree</b>. All the open windows are closed.</li> </ul>	P. 290
No content is available (204)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Appears when there is no data to display at the connected site or Internet web page.</li> </ul>	-

Message	Explanation	Page
No more space Overwrite?	● Appears when screen memo memory is full. Select <b>Yes</b> and select a screen memo to overwrite. Proceed to the save confirmation screen. Select <b>No</b> and the site or Internet web page reappears.	-
No requested software	● Appears when attempting to start a non-existent i-appli software from i-mode mail or Ir exchange function.	P. 256
(During iC transmission) No response	● Appears when the other party could not be recognized.	-
No response (408)	● Transmission disconnected due to no reply from the site or Internet web page. Try again later.	P. 182
Not enough space. Continue to overwrite?	● Appears when the screen memo is larger than the available memory space. Select <b>Yes</b> and select a screen memo to overwrite. The screen memo is deleted upon selection. Select <b>No</b> and the site or Internet web page reappears.	-
Out of service area	● Appears when attempting to use i-mode service outside the service area or in a place with no signal. To use i-mode service, move to a location where <b>Y</b> ill appears.	-
Page is not found (404)	● Specified site or Internet web page was not found. Site or Internet web page may not exist.	-
Password is not correct (401)	● Appears when authentication is not possible on the authentication screen.	-
Phone/Terminal and UIM ID will be sent	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● May appear while viewing sites or Internet web pages. Select <b>Yes</b> and press <b>OK</b> to send "Terminal and UIM ID". To not send and return to the previous screen, select <b>No</b> and press <b>OK</b>, or press <b>CLR</b>.</li> <li>● "Terminal ID and UIM ID" are used by the IP (Information Provider) to identify the handset and offer customized information to each customer, and also determine what contents offered by the IP are available for each handset.</li> <li>● "Terminal ID and UIM ID" are sent to the IP (Information Provider) using the Internet so a third party may obtain it. However, customer's phone number, postal address, age and sex are not sent to the IP in this operation.</li> </ul>	P. 183 - -
Receiving data exceeds maximum size for i-motion	● Appears when Streaming type i-motion file exceeds 2 MB and could not be downloaded completely.	P. 205
Receiving data exceeds replayable size for i-motion	● Appears when Standard type i-motion file exceeds 500 KB and download is not completed.	P. 205
Requested software unavailable	● Appears when attempting to start software from a site, Internet web page, Message R/F, i-mode mail, or Ir exchange function, and the specified software could not be started.	P. 256
Root certificate has expired. Connect?	● Appears when a server certificate whose signature has expired is received. To connect without safety assured, select <b>Yes</b> and press <b>OK</b> [Select]. To not connect, select <b>No</b> and press <b>OK</b> . Set date and time.	P. 183
Root certificate is not valid	● Appears when a certificate set to Disable is received. Confirm why the certificate was set to Disable. When the certificate has no security problems, set it to Enable, and then reconnect to the site.	P. 203
Save aborted	● Appears when data cannot be saved during the download of i-appli.	-
Service is used by the previous software. Unable to download/update/run. Delete a service?	● When the same service has already been downloaded, a new service cannot be downloaded/updated/run unless the already registered service is deleted. Select <b>Yes</b> to display the service to be deleted. Delete the registered service.	-
Service not registered	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● i-mode is not subscribed to. Subscription is required to use i-mode.</li> <li>● If contract is made for i-mode after purchase, turn off FOMA terminal power and restart.</li> </ul>	P. 182 -

Message	Explanation	Page
Size of this page is not supported	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Size of data received from site or Internet web page exceeds maximum for one page. Receiving is suspended and data received up to suspension is displayed.</li> <li>● Appears when maximum data size is exceeded while loading a melody or a downloaded dictionary.</li> </ul>	P. 187 -
SMS is full Unable to copy anymore	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Appears when the maximum number of SMS are saved in the FOMA terminal handset or the FOMA card and no further messages could be copied.</li> </ul>	P. 243
Software already updated	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● The i-αppli is the latest version, and will not be upgraded.</li> </ul>	P. 258
Software terminated due to security error	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Invalid action was attempted by i-αppli.</li> <li>● Appears when i-αppli software attempts invalid action. Error history is saved when software is terminated due to a security error.</li> </ul>	P. 257 P. 257
SSL Session cannot be established	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Appears when the attempt to connect to a site or Internet web page supporting SSL session failed. Try again later.</li> </ul>	P. 183
SSL session failed	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Appears when an error occurs during SSL authentication and the SSL session is disconnected.</li> </ul>	P. 183
This certificate has expired. Connect?	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Appears when an SSL server certificate that has expired or has not started its validity period is received. To connect without safety assured, select <b>Yes</b> and press <input type="radio"/> [Select]. To not connect, select <b>No</b> and press <input type="radio"/> [OK].</li> </ul>	P. 183
This certificate is not valid for this URL. Connect?	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Appears when the received SSL server certificate contains invalid information. To connect without safety assured, select <b>Yes</b> and press <input type="radio"/> [Select]. To not connect, select <b>No</b> and press <input type="radio"/> [OK].</li> </ul>	P. 183
This data may not be replayed. Download?	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Appears when i-motion file in a format other than MP4 (Mobile MP4) is loaded.</li> </ul>	P. 308
This site is not certified. Connect?	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Appears when a server certificate that cannot be verified on the FOMA terminal is received. To connect without safety assured, select <b>Yes</b> and press <input type="radio"/> [OK]. To not connect, select <b>No</b> and press <input type="radio"/> [OK].</li> </ul>	P. 183
This software contains an error	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● i-αppli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded or upgraded.</li> </ul>	-
This software contains an error. Unable to download	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● i-αppli data contains an error and software cannot be downloaded or upgraded.</li> </ul>	-
This software is not supported by this phone	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Appears when attempting to download an i-αppli not supported by the FOMA terminal. The software cannot be downloaded.</li> </ul>	-
Time out	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Time set in <b>Connection timeout</b> elapsed, and site or Internet web page connection, or i-mode mail transmission was cut off. Try again later.</li> </ul>	P. 198
Too many unsent messages. Unable to activate	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Unsent messages are full. New mail cannot be composed. Send or delete unsent messages and compose again.</li> </ul>	P. 222 P. 234
Too much data was entered	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Data could not be sent because character string or URL entered in text box or other input field was too long. Retry after erasing some text.</li> </ul>	-
Transmission failed	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Appears when i-mode mail or SMS was not sent properly. Try again from a location with a strong signal. When <b>Address is not valid</b> appears as well, resend after editing the address. When this message appears with <b>i-mode Center is busy. Please try again later</b>, try sending again later. When <b>Target server is full</b> appears along with this message, mail cannot be sent because a recipient cannot receive the message.</li> </ul>	-
Unable to protect anymore	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Number of protected messages for Message R/F, mail, and sent messages exceeds maximum. Disable protection.</li> </ul>	P. 234
Unable to retrieve the requested URL (504)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Site or Internet web page connection failed for an unspecified reason. Try again later.</li> </ul>	P. 182
URL address changed (301)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Since the site or Internet web page moved, the URL changed. If old URL is registered as bookmark, new URL is registered.</li> </ul>	P. 188

Message	Explanation	Page
URL address is not valid (301) URL address is not valid (302)	● Data received contains error and cannot be displayed. Received data is discarded.	-
URL is too long to register	● URL exceeds maximum number of characters and cannot be registered as a bookmark.	P. 188
Usage is currently restricted. Try again later	● Appears when excessive amounts of data is downloaded during a certain time span for users of the flat-rate i-mode packet transmission service. Connection will be restricted for a certain amount of time. Try i-mode again later.	P. 182
以下の宛先にはメール送信できませんでした (561) Mails could not be sent to following address. .ne.jp The mail address depends on the recipient address.	● Appears when mail could not be properly sent to a displayed address.	-
“.ne.jp”宛のメールが混み合っているため、送信することができません (555) Unable to send. “.ne.jp” is not available temporarily. The domain name depends on the recipient address.	● Appears when the line system is not in service, or when the line is extremely congested. Try again later.	-

## PDF Viewer/Document Viewer

Message	Explanation	Page
An error has occurred Viewer will close	● Appears when Document Viewer is activated and an error has occurred in analyzing while loading the next page. Appears when file data is corrupted.	-
Document may not be fully displayed	● File size is too large to be displayed in Document Viewer. ● Appears when file contains functions unsupported by Document Viewer. ● Appears when memory is low and Document Viewer does not start properly. ● Appears when connection times out while starting Document Viewer. Occurs when file requires an extended period of time for analysis. ● Appears when an attempt to display file properties failed.	P. 344 P. 344 - - P. 346
Memory is full. Cannot overwrite	● Appears when memory is full and data cannot be overwritten.	-
Memory is full. Unable to update	● Appears when memory is full and data cannot be updated.	-
One Seg in progress. Unable to activate	● Appears when Document Viewer is activated while a One Seg program is being recorded or a program recorded is being played back.	-
Unable to activate	● Appears when Document Viewer is activated but memory is too low to activate functions such as Magnifier or Zoom at selected area.	-

## Data box

Message	Explanation	Page
Battery low	● Battery level is low. Camera mode cannot be activated. Use after fully charging the battery.	P. 40

Message	Explanation	Page
Camera function is not available now	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Appears when camera portion becomes hot from being stored in a hot place or being used for an extended period of time. Use the camera after letting it cool down.</li> <li>● May appear due to functional limitations when a call is received while the camera shooting screen is shown. In such cases, activate camera again after ringing stops or call is disconnected.</li> <li>● May appear when the FOMA terminal is opened if the terminal is closed immediately after the camera is activated from phonebook or mail. Activate the camera again.</li> </ul>	-
Link set for data in folder. Unable to delete part of data	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Appears when attempting to delete folders containing data that cannot be deleted, such as data set for stand-by, ring tone, etc., by performing Delete all folders.</li> <li>● Appears when folders exist in folders such as xxxSHARP/xxxSH_UF/PRLxxx. Delete applicable folder with a PC or other devices, or format a microSD Memory Card.</li> </ul>	P. 328 P. 325
Memory is almost full. Delete unneeded images	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● FOMA terminal handset memory is low. Delete other pictures to save image with current settings.</li> </ul>	-
Memory is full. Unable to save anymore	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Appears when maximum number of entries is exceeded during copying. Delete unnecessary data and copy data again.</li> </ul>	-
Replay period has expired. Delete?	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Appears when attempting to play i-motion that has passed its replay period.</li> </ul>	P. 207
Replay period has not yet started	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Appears when attempting to play i-motion before the set replay period.</li> </ul>	P. 207
This data can no longer be replayed. Delete?	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Appears when attempting to play i-motion that has reached its playback count limit.</li> </ul>	P. 207
This data cannot be replayed. Delete?	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Appears when attempting to play i-motion after resetting date and time.</li> </ul>	-
Unable to copy part of data	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Appears when there are files or folders on the microSD Memory Card that were created on a PC or a handset other than the FOMA SH903iTV.</li> </ul>	P. 320
Unsupported. Cannot edit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Image data is invalid and image cannot be edited.</li> </ul>	-

## Multi Assistant (Multitask)

Message	Explanation	Page
Battery empty. Unsaved data will be lost. Ending current operation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Appears if battery starts to run out. Charge the battery.</li> </ul>	P. 40 P. 43
Function is already running. End and restart?	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Appears when a function that is already running is selected. Quit the function and run again or switch to the screen for the running function.</li> </ul>	-
Incompatible function running. Unable to start. Please end the function pushing the Multi button	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Function that cannot be used simultaneously is running. Quit the function and try again.</li> </ul>	-
Unable to start any more. Please end the function pushing the Multi button	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Appears when the maximum number of functions are running. Quit unused functions and try again.</li> </ul>	-

## One Seg

Message	Explanation	Page
Copy-protected program.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Appears when copy signal indicates that the One Seg program cannot be recorded.</li> </ul>	P. 284
Copy-protected program. End recording.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● While recording a One Seg program, appears when another program starts despite copy control signal indicates that program cannot be recorded.</li> </ul>	-
Memory low. Could not record	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Appears when images for which One Seg programs are recorded as a still picture cannot be saved with insufficient memory of FOMA terminal handset.</li> <li>● Appears when One Seg programs cannot be recorded with insufficient space of microSD Memory Card.</li> </ul>	-
Memory low. End recording	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Appears when available space on the microSD Memory Card becomes insufficient while recording a program.</li> </ul>	-
Out of Digital TV service area. Unable to record	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● Appears when One Seg cannot be recorded because the FOMA terminal is in a place where broadcast waves cannot be received. Move to a location where  appears to use.</li> </ul>	P. 276

Message	Explanation	Page
SD is in use. Could not record	● Appears when microSD Memory Card is used at start of recording.	P. 318
SD is not inserted. Could not record	● Appears when microSD Memory Card is not inserted at start of recording.	P. 318
Unable to connect site	● Appears when attempting to connect to data broadcasting site and i-mode site from data broadcasting while playing back video.	P. 311
Unable to receive ToruCa	● Appears when attempting to download ToruCa from data broadcasting while playing back video.	P. 311
Unable to start i-αppli	● Appears when attempting to activate i-αppli from data broadcasting while playing back video.	P. 311
Unable to start TVlink	● Appears when attempting to activate TVlink from data broadcasting while playing back video.	P. 311
Unavailable channel.	● Appears when the One Seg program stops and broadcast waves cannot be received. ● The message may appear even if the One Seg program is available depending on the reception status of broadcast waves.	- -
Unavailable channel.	● Appears when the FOMA terminal is in a place where broadcast waves cannot be received. Move to a location where  appears to use.	P. 276
Unavailable Channel.	● Appears when the specified channel is not detected or when the FOMA terminal is in a place where broadcast waves cannot be received.	-

## Other messages

Message	Explanation	Page
Battery too low. Please recharge and retry	● Appears when battery level is  or  while updating software. Recharge battery to  .	P. 40
Connection failed	● Appears when software could not be updated. Perform software update again.	P. 452
Invalid file contents. Unable to display	● The manager information file of microSD Memory Card is incorrect. The available space of microSD Memory Card is insufficient, and the manager information may not be updated correctly. Delete unnecessary files, increase available memory space and perform "New manager info".	P. 327
Other functions running. Unable to activate	● Software could not be updated at the set time because other functions are running. Update immediately or set another date and time.	P. 452
Root certificate is not valid	● Appears when Root Certificate is not set to valid when updating software. Set certificates 1 to 11 in <b>Certificates</b> to valid.	P. 203
SSL session was terminated	● Appears when FOMA terminal date is not saved correctly when updating software. Set the FOMA terminal date.	P. 45
Unable to Format	● Appears when some microSD Memory Card does not support the copyright protection function. microSD Memory Card may be used if inserted again. However, there is no guarantee for the save and copy of data since the microSD Memory Card is unsupported by FOMA terminal.	P. 325
Unable to use the main camera at the moment	● Appears when FOMA terminal becomes hot from being stored in a hot place or used for an extended period of time. Use the camera after letting it cool down. ● Appears when using Videophone main camera while battery level is low. Use after charging battery.	- -
プッシュトークグループに一部受信できませんでした	● Appears when a PushTalk group cannot be registered any more for the reason that PushTalk groups downloaded from the service center exceed 19 entries or the phone number has already been registered, while attempting to update the service center and the phonebook of the FOMA terminal.	-
無効なデータが含まれています 一部送信できませんでした	● Appears when images with FOMA card restriction are deleted before transmission, while attempting to update the service center with the phonebook of the FOMA terminal handset or to save selected mails.	-
メモリ不足のためピクチャーコール画像を受信できませんでした	● Appears when free space in the FOMA terminal handset memory is insufficient to store an image, while attempting to update the service center with the phonebook of the FOMA terminal handset.	-

# Warranty and After-sales Services

## Warranty

Make sure that the warranty card is included with your FOMA terminal at the time of purchase. Check that the name of the retailer, the date of purchase, and the necessary details have been filled in on the warranty card. Be sure to keep it in a safe place.

Contact the retailer if any necessary details on the warranty card are not completed.

The warranty period without charge is one year from the date of purchase.

- For the purpose of improvement, the specifications for this product and its accessories are subject to complete or partial change without prior notice.
- Information registered in your FOMA terminal, such as phonebook entries, may be lost or damaged if your FOMA terminal is damaged, repaired, or mishandled. It is recommended that a memo be kept of all data stored in the FOMA. If the FOMA terminal is repaired, information downloaded using i-mode and i-appli cannot be transferred (excluding some cases) to a repaired handset due to copyright law.  
For this FOMA terminal, data such as phonebook entries, etc. can be saved in the microSD Memory Card. For this FOMA terminal, i-motion and data available for i-appli can be saved to the microSD Memory Card. For this FOMA terminal, data such as phonebook entries, etc. can be stored in the Data Storage Center by using the Data Security Service (a paid service that requires subscription).  
If you own a PC (Windows 2000 Professional, Windows XP Home Edition, Windows XP Professional), you can transfer and store registered information such as phonebook entries using special DoCoMo keitai datalink (P. 406) and the FOMA USB cable (sold separately).

## After-sales Services

### If you have problems with your FOMA

Refer to “Troubleshooting” before requesting repairs.

Contact a number listed in “Repairs” on the back of this manual if problems persist.

### If your FOMA needs repairs after contacting DoCoMo

Bring your FOMA terminal to a repair counter that DoCoMo specifies. However, the repair shop is only open during business hours. Make sure to bring your warranty card with you.

### During the warranty period

The FOMA terminal will be repaired without charge in accordance with the terms of the warranty.

- When bringing the FOMA terminal in for repairs, be sure to bring the warranty card. Even during the warranty period, a fee will be charged for repairs of malfunctions or damage caused by improper handling by the customer, or when no warranty certificate is presented.
- Repairs for damages caused by the use of devices and accessories other than those specified by DoCoMo will also incur a fee, even during the warranty period.

Repairs may not be possible in the following circumstances.

- Repairs to your FOMA terminal may not be possible if the moisture detection seal has reacted, if damage from water exposure, condensation, sweat, or other liquids are found, or if the internal circuit board is damaged or deformed. Even when repairs are possible, repair charges will be incurred because the warranty does not cover such damage.

### After the warranty period has expired

Charged repairs will be carried out upon request.

### Replacement parts

Replacement parts (required to maintain the functionality of the FOMA terminal) will be kept in stock basically for six years following termination of production. However, note that there may be a case when repair is not possible for the shortage of replacement parts depending on the faulty part. Repairs may be possible even after this period has passed, depending on the type of malfunction. Contact number listed in “Repairs” on the back of this manual for details.

## IMPORTANT!

Never attempt to modify the FOMA terminal or its accessories.

- May cause fire, injury, or malfunction.
- Technical standards for the FOMA terminal and FOMA card are established by law to avoid interference and malfunctions of the network. FOMA terminals and FOMA cards that do not meet standards cannot be used.
- If your FOMA terminal has been modified previously (replacement of parts, modification, coating, etc.), it will only be accepted for the repair of a malfunction if it has been restored to its original state (as a standard DoCoMo product). However, repairs may be refused depending on the extent of the modification.
- Repairs for any malfunction or damage caused by such modifications will incur fees, even during the warranty period.

Do not peel off the model nameplate attached to the FOMA terminal.

- The nameplate seal functions as a certification that the equipment conforms to the prescribed technical standards. If the nameplate is removed or is replaced, repairs may be refused because conformity to the standards cannot be determined.

技術基準適合認証品

Information stored in your FOMA terminal, such as the settings of various functions and the total call duration, may be cleared or reset if your FOMA terminal is damaged, repaired, or mishandled.

- If this occurs, please re-enter the information or re-specify the settings.

The following sections of the FOMA terminal contain parts that generate magnetic waves. Keep ATM cards and other objects likely to be affected by magnetic waves away from the FOMA terminal. Cards may become unusable.

- Sections: Speaker, Earpiece

If your FOMA terminal gets wet or has been in a humid location, turn off the power, take out the battery immediately, and bring it to a repair counter that DoCoMo specifies as soon as possible. However, depending on the condition, repairs may not be possible.

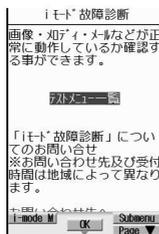
## Memory dial (Phonebook) and downloaded information

- It is recommended that you keep a separate memo of the information you register on your FOMA terminal. DoCoMo shall not be liable for data that may be modified or lost.
- Created, imported or downloaded data may be modified or deleted when upgrading or repairing the FOMA terminal. DoCoMo shall not be liable for any modification or deletion of content. DoCoMo may, at our convenience, exchange your FOMA terminal for a substitute in lieu of repairs. For this FOMA terminal, only data including downloaded images or melodies or data created by the user will be transferred at the time of repair (Some contents cannot be transferred. Also, contents may not be transferred depending on the degree of malfunction).  
Transferring may take long or be even unavailable depending on the size of data saved in the FOMA terminal.

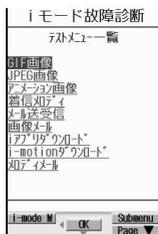
## i モード故障診断サイト (i-mode Fault Diagnosis Site)

Check whether the FOMA terminal can normally send and receive mail, download melodies or perform other operations.

i-mode fault diagnosis site is only available in Japanese.



Top screen



Test menu list

## Accessing the “i-mode fault diagnosis site”



i-mode site: **iMenu** → お知らせ (News) → サービス・機能 (Services/Functions) →  
iモード (i-mode) → iモード故障診断 (i-mode fault diagnosis)

QR code to connect  
to the site

- Packet transmission charges do not apply for the i-mode fault diagnosis.
- The test items differ depending on the FOMA terminal model. In addition, the test items may be changed.
- Before checking the operation with the test items, read precautions in the site carefully to execute the test.
- For accessing the i-mode fault diagnosis site and testing mail transmission, information about your FOMA terminal (model name, mail address, etc.) is automatically sent to the server (i-mode fault diagnosis server). Sent information is only used for i-mode fault diagnosis.
- When a malfunction is found after checking, contact the number listed in “Repairs” on the back of this manual.

## Software Update

### Updating Software

**Check for FOMA terminal software updates. If necessary, use packet transmission\* to download software and update.**

\* There is no packet transmission charge for updating software.

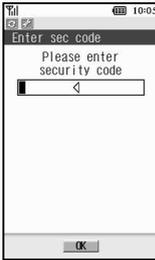
Check the DoCoMo web page or お知らせ (News) on iMenu for updates.

- When updating, select “Now update” or “Reserve”.
  - Now update: Update immediately.
  - Reserve: Software updates automatically on set date and time.
- Software is updated even when host for i-mode is changed to a custom host.
- Recharge battery before updating software.
- Software cannot be updated during the following conditions.
  - Date and time are set incorrectly
  - Battery level is below the necessary level to update software
  - During a call/Outside the service area
  - While in Self mode
  - Connected to an external device
  - All lock is set
  - Function lock is set
  - Omakase Lock is set
- If PIN1 code is set to **ON** and software is updated, PIN1 code input screen appears after automatic reload. Correct PIN1 code must be entered to make/receive calls and use other communications functions.
- Downloading and rewriting software may take time.
- Making/receiving calls, transmission functions and other functions cannot be used while software is being updated (Receiving voice calls is possible except rewriting).
- While updating software, received i-mode mail and Message R/F are held at i-mode center. Received SMS is held at SMS center.
- If i-mode mail or Message R/F is held at i-mode center, appears but will disappear when software is reloaded after update. In addition, even if Receive option is set to **ON** and mail is received during software update, notices may not appear on the display after update is completed. Mail and messages are held at i-mode center.
- During software update, the handset makes an SSL connection with the server (DoCoMo site). Set the Root Certificate to valid (The default setting is **Enable**. P. 203).
- It is recommended to update software at a location with a strong signal (three bars for the antenna icon) and when you are not moving.
  - If signal status becomes weak or download is interrupted when downloading software, update software again in a location with good signal conditions.
- If software has already been uploaded, **No update is needed. Please continue to use as before** appears when software update is checked.
- When updating software, information about handset (model, serial number, etc.) is automatically sent to the server (DoCoMo software update server). Sent information is only used for software update.
- Do not remove the battery pack while the software is updating. Failure to update software may occur.

- Software can be updated even if handset contains phonebook, camera or download data. However, DoCoMo cannot protect data that could be lost due to malfunction, damage, water exposure and so on. It is recommended that important data be backed up (☞ P. 322, P. 406) before updating (Note that some data, such as downloaded data, cannot be backed up).
- If software update fails, **Rewrite failed** appears and all operations are not available. In this case, bring FOMA terminal to a repair counter that DoCoMo specifies.
- During software update, timer-set alarms for starting or recording programs are not activated. In addition, recording does not start.

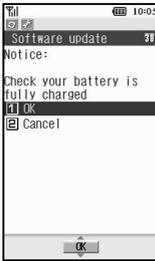
## Starting Software Update

### 1 In stand-by, press **3 8**.



- In initial settings, software update can also be activated after software update confirmation screen appears (☞ P. 45).

### 2 Enter terminal security code and press **0**.

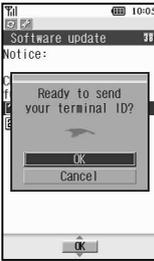


- Numbers are masked with asterisks. The default setting is **0000**.
- If battery level is insufficient when software update warning screen is shown, press **2** [Cancel]. Fully charge battery and try again.

### 3 Press **1** [OK].



## 4 Select OK and press .



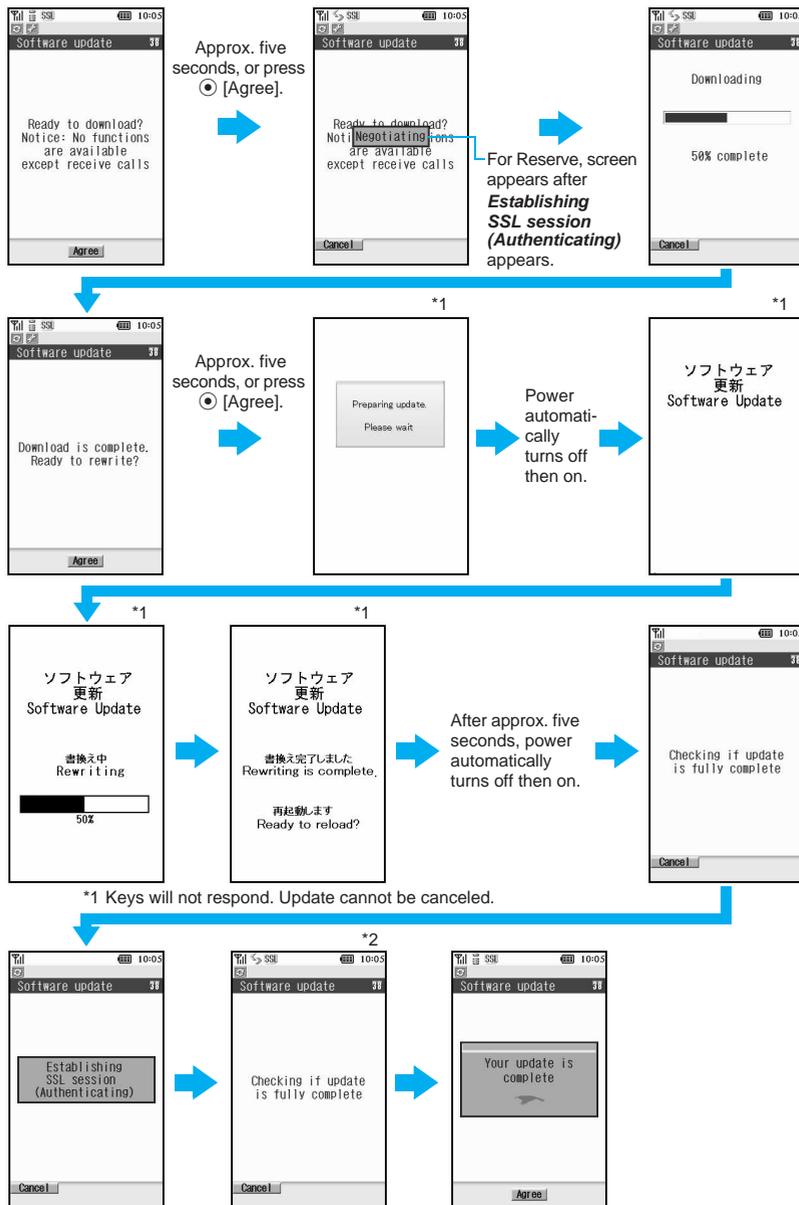
## 5 Select OK and press .



- When updating software, information about handset (model, serial number, etc.) is automatically sent to the server (DoCoMo software update server). Sent information is only used for software update.
- When updating is not necessary, **No update is needed**. **Please continue to use as before** appears. Press  and resume operations.
- When updates are necessary, **Update is needed** appears. Select **Now update** or **Reserve**.
- Press  to cancel.

## 1 Perform steps 1 to 5 on P. 453 and press **[1]** [Now update].

- Software download starts. Software is automatically updated without selecting menus.
- Press **[3]** [Cancel] to not update.



\*2 After **Checking if update is fully complete** appears, next screen appears immediately.

- A screen asking to end or not appears if  is pressed. If download is aborted, data downloaded up to that point is deleted (Cannot operate during software rewrite).



- When **Server is busy** appears after **Negotiating**, press **1** [Reserve]. Refer to steps 2 to 4 of "Updating Software Later" on P. 456 for subsequent steps. Press **2** [Cancel] to not reserve. A screen appears prompting to stop. To stop, select **Yes** and press **0**.

## 2 Press **0** [Agree].

### Note

- When **Preparing update. Please wait, Software update, Software Update Rewriting** or **Rewriting is complete. Ready to reload?** appears during steps 1 and 2, the handset status is the same as when outside the service area and calls cannot be answered. Calls can be answered in other screens. The previous screen reappears when the call is ended.
- While performing steps 1 and 2, received i-mode mail and Message R/F are held at i-mode center. Received SMS is held at SMS center.
- When **Update complete** or **Check update** appears in stand-by after software update, press **0**. If **terminal security code** is entered when software update is incomplete, a message stating so appears. Press **0** and retry update.

## Updating Software Later <Reserve>

Set date and time to update software when downloading takes too much time or the server is extremely congested.

### 1 Perform steps 1 to 5 on P. 453 and press **2** [Reserve].



- Schedule selection screen appears.
- The time and date are the same as the server time.
- To cancel operation, in steps 1 to 4, press , select **Yes** and press **0**.

### 2 Select preferred date/time and press **0**.

- A confirmation screen appears.
- Alternatively, select the date and time after selecting **Other date/time** and accessing the server. Select the date and press **0**, then select the time and press **0**. In the screen to select times, schedule status appears as **:Avail** and **:Limited** for each time slot. Select a time and press **0** to reconnect to the server and show schedule candidates. Select a schedule and press **0**.

### 3 Select **Yes** and press **0**.

- The preferred date/time is reserved.

### 4 Press **0** [Agree].

**Note**

- Incoming calls can be received during the above operation. The previous screen reappears when the call is ended. Received i-mode mail and Message R/F are held at i-mode center. Received SMS is held at SMS center.

**When the reserved date and time arrives**



The screen on the left appears in the stand-by display when the reserved time arrives. Software update will automatically start. Software will not update if the handset is turned off when the reserved time arrives. Refer to step 1 of “Updating Software Immediately” for subsequent steps.

After approximately five seconds or pressing **OK** [Agree], software update automatically starts.

- Before software updates, make sure the stand-by screen is displayed and the handset is in a place with a strong signal. Software is not updated if the battery level is below the necessary level to update software at the reserved date and time.
- Software is not updated if the handset at the reserved date and time is performing functions such as sending mail, i-mode, i-appli, using menus, connecting to an external device, or is in Self mode/All lock/Function lock/Omakase Lock. Note that once the set time has passed, software is not updated even when the screen returns to stand-by. When receiving mail, software update begins after mail reception is completed.
- If the alarm or another function takes place at the same time (any time excluding Auto manner mode disable), alarm or the function is prioritized and software is not updated.
- When the FOMA terminal is turned off at the reserved date and time for software update or when the FOMA terminal is turned off right after the update starts, the update will be canceled.
- If a call is in progress at the set date and time for software update, software update starts when returning to stand-by within ten minutes. Software is not updated if ten minutes pass before returning to stand-by.
- If “Delete all data (Delete user data)” (P. 388) is performed after reservation is completed, the reservation is canceled. Reserve the software update again.

**Confirming/Changing/Canceling Reservation**

**1** In stand-by, press **OK** [3] [8], enter terminal security code and press **OK**.



- Reserved date and time appears.

To confirm	1
To change	2 → <b>OK</b> → <b>OK</b> . Preferred date screen appears. • Refer to steps 2 to 4 of “Updating Software Later” on P. 456 for subsequent steps.
To cancel	3 → <b>Yes</b> → <b>OK</b> → <b>OK</b> → <b>OK</b> after <b>The reservation is canceled</b> appears

**Note**

- Incoming calls can be received during the above operation. The previous screen reappears when the call is ended. Received i-mode mail and Message R/F are held at i-mode center. Received SMS is held at SMS center.

# Protecting Your FOMA Terminal from Harmful Files

First, update pattern definitions to bring them up-to-date.

**Stop activating or delete any data or applications that could cause operational malfunctions. These types of data include data or programs that are attached to i-mode mail, or downloaded from sites or external devices.**

- Pattern definitions are used for checking. When new problems are discovered, pattern definitions are immediately upgraded. Update the pattern definitions.
- The scan function helps to protect the handset from damage caused by data such as data received from web pages or mail. If the pattern definition corresponding to a particular harmful file is not downloaded or saved, the scan function will not be able to protect the FOMA terminal.
- Pattern definitions vary depending on the phone model. Therefore, DoCoMo may discontinue offering pattern definitions for a particular model three years after the release date.

## Setting Scan Functions <Set Scan>

Default setting **All Enabled**

When Scan function is set to **Enable**, data and programs are automatically checked when running. Set whether to apply Scan function to SMS.

- Scan message can be set only when Scan function is set to **Enable**.
- When Scan function is set to **Disable**, Scan message is set to **Disable** regardless of current settings.

**1** In stand-by, press **⓪** **3** **7** **3** and press **1** [Scan].



**2** Press **1** [Enable], select **Yes** and press **⓪**.

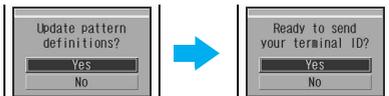
**3** Press **2** [Scan message].

**4** Press **1** [Enable], select **Yes** and press **⓪**.

- When Scan function is set and malicious data is detected, security warning appears in five levels (☞ P. 460).

## Updating Pattern Definitions <Update>

**1** In stand-by, press **⓪** **3** **7** **1**, select **Yes** and press **⓪**.



- To not send terminal ID, select **No** and press **⓪**.

**2** Select **Yes** and press **⓪**.

- Downloading starts.
- To cancel download, press **⓪** [Cancel] or **⓪**, select **Yes** and press **⓪**.
- When updating is not necessary, **Pattern definitions are up-to-date** appears. Press **⓪** and resume operations.

### 3 Press **[OK]** when updating is completed.

#### Note

- When updating pattern definitions, information about the handset (model, serial number, etc.) is automatically sent to the server (DoCoMo scan function server). Sent information is only used for pattern definition update.
- Correctly set the FOMA terminal date (year/month/day) beforehand.
- Download may be interrupted if signal is weak.

### Updating Pattern Definitions Automatically <Set Auto-update>

Set auto-update to **Enable** to automatically update pattern definitions when a new version becomes available.

When auto-update is successful, a message stating so appears. Auto-update is not performed depending on the status of the FOMA terminal. In such cases, a message stating that pattern definitions have been updated appears.

### 1 In stand-by, press **[\*][3][7][2]**, select **Enable** and press **[OK]**.



### 2 Select **Yes** and press **[OK]**.

### 3 Select **Yes** and press **[OK]**.

### 4 Press **[OK]** [Agree].

#### Note

- Information regarding Enable/Disable for Set auto-update is saved on the network. Therefore, **Enable** is always selected on the FOMA terminal when setting.
- When setting auto-update, information about the handset (model, serial number, etc.) is automatically sent to the server (DoCoMo scan function server). Sent information is only used for pattern definition update.
- Download may be interrupted if signal is weak.

## Displaying Scanned Results

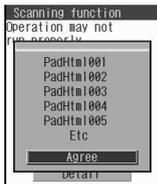
When data that can cause malfunctions are detected, a warning screen appears.

### Scanned results display

Level 0	Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4
<p>Displaying, activating, and calling are available. Appears when there was an error previously, but there is no error presently. Select <b>Agree</b> and press <input type="radio"/> to show, activate or call.</p>	<p>Select <b>No</b> and press <input type="radio"/> to show, activate or call. Select <b>Yes</b> and press <input type="radio"/> to cancel the operation.</p>	<p>Displaying, activating, and calling are not available. Select <b>Agree</b> and press <input type="radio"/> to end.</p>	<p>Displaying, activating, and calling are not available. Select <b>Yes</b>, press <input type="radio"/>, select <b>Yes</b> in the delete confirmation screen and press <input type="radio"/> to delete the data. Select <b>No</b> and press <input type="radio"/> to end without deleting.</p>	<p>Displaying, activating, and calling are not available. Select <b>Agree</b> and press <input type="radio"/> to delete the data.</p>

Warning screens other than the above may appear depending on the contents of pattern definitions.

### Displaying detected errors



- In the warning screen, select **Detail** and press  to show error names. When no error name exists for the contents of the pattern data, **Detail** does not appear.
- Up to five error names appear. **Etc** appears below the fifth error name when more than six are detected. If same error is detected more than once, it is only listed once.

## Checking Version of Pattern Definitions <Version>

1 In stand-by, press  3  7  4.



# Main Specifications

Product name		FOMA SH903iTV
Size		111 (H) x 50 (W) x 25 (D) mm (when folded)
Weight		Approximately 143 g (with battery pack installed)
Continuous stand-by time*1, 3		At rest: Approximately 580 hours*4 When mobile: Approximately 440 hours*5
Consecutive call duration*2, 3		Voice call: Approximately 200 minutes Videophone: Approximately 130 minutes
Time for watching One Seg		Approximately 320 minutes
Charge time		AC adapter: Approximately 140 minutes DC adapter: Approximately 140 minutes
LCD	Type	Main display: Mobile ASV LCD (262,144 colors) Sub display: Organic EL (one color)
	Size	Main display: Approximately 3.0 inches Sub display: Approximately 0.8 inches
	Pixels	Main display: 96,000 pixels (240x400 dots) Sub display: 3,744 pixels (96x39 dots)
Image pickup device	Type	Main camera: CMOS*6 Sub camera: CMOS*6
	Size	Main camera: 1/3 inches Sub camera: 1/7 inches
Camera	Effective pixels	Main camera: Approximately 2 million pixels Sub camera: Approximately 0.11 million pixels
		Main camera: Approximately 1.9 million pixels Sub camera: Approximately 0.1 million pixels
	Zoom (Digital)	Main camera: Up to approximately 19 times Sub camera: Up to approximately 4 times
Recording	Number of still pictures recorded	Approximately 1,000 shots (when saved into the handset)*7
	Continuous shooting of still pictures	6/9/25 shots
	File format for still picture	JPEG
	Recording time for movies	Approximately 434 seconds per recording (when saved into the handset)*8
		Approximately 60 minutes per recording (when saved into the microSD Memory Card (64 MB))*9
File format for movie	MP4	
Music Playback	Continuous playback time	i-motion (Compatible with background playback*10): Approximately 540 minutes*11
		Chaku-uta full® (Compatible with background playback): Approximately 540 minutes*11
		SD-Audio data (Compatible with background playback): Approximately 540 minutes*11

\*1 Continuous stand-by time is an estimate of the time when FOMA SH903iTV is folded and in a status where signals are received. Talk and stand-by times may be reduced by about half depending on conditions including battery level status, functions used, temperature and other environmental conditions, and signal strength (no signal or weak signal). Using i-mode reduces talk (transmission) and stand-by times. In addition, watching One Seg, composing i-mode mail and activating downloaded i-appli or the i-appli stand-by will also shorten call (transmission)/stand-by duration even if calls or i-mode transmission are not made.

\*2 Consecutive call duration is an estimate of the time when talking in a location where the signal is normal.

\*3 The above mentioned call duration and stand-by time are shortened with the use of data communications, multiaccess, and the camera.

\*4 Continuous stand-by time is the average usage time when FOMA SH903iTV is folded and in a status where signals are received.

- \*5 Continuous stand-by time is the average usage time when FOMA SH903iTV is folded and in At rest, When mobile or Outside the service area status.
- \*6 A CMOS (Complementary Metal-Oxide Semiconductor) is image devices equivalent to the film of silver salt cameras.
- \*7 Still picture size: sQCIF (128×96 pixels)/Quality: NORMAL/File size: 10 KB
- \*8 Movie size: sQCIF (128×96 pixels)/Quality: NORMAL/File size limit: For mail (long)/Type: Image + voice
- \*9 Movie size: sQCIF (128×96 pixels)/Quality: NORMAL/File size limit: Unrestricted/Type: Image + voice
- \*10 When playing back with Music player
- \*11 File: AAC format

## Number of Saved/Registered/Protected Entries in the FOMA Terminal

Data type		Number of applicable entries to be saved/registered	Number of applicable entries to be protected	Page	
Phonebook		750 <sup>*1</sup>	-	P. 96	
Schedule	Schedule	300	-	P. 371	
	Vacation	100	-	P. 374	
	Holiday	20 <sup>*2</sup>	-	P. 375	
ToDo		100	-	P. 377	
Text memo		10	-	P. 385	
Mail (The total number of SMS and i-mode mail)	Received mail		1,000 <sup>*3, 4</sup>	1,000	P. 228
	User created folder		20	-	P. 231
			500 <sup>*3, 4</sup>	500	P. 228
	Sent mail		20	-	P. 231
			500 <sup>*4</sup>	500	P. 228
	Unsent mail	User created folder	20	-	P. 231
Deco-mail templates		10 to 100 <sup>*5</sup>	-	P. 219	
Message	Message R	50 <sup>*4</sup>	25	P. 200	
	Message F	50 <sup>*4</sup>	25		
Bookmark		100	-	P. 188	
Bookmark folder		20	-	P. 190	
Screen memo		400 <sup>*4</sup>	400 <sup>*4</sup>	P. 190	
i-appli		100 <sup>*4</sup>	-	P. 247	
Mail-type i-appli		5	-	P. 247	
Still picture		1,000 <sup>*4</sup>	-	P. 192	
User created folder		20	-	P. 328	
Movie/i-motion		100 <sup>*4</sup>	-	P. 205	
User created folder		20	-	P. 328	
Kisekae Tool		50 <sup>*4</sup>	-	P. 194	
User created folder		20	-	P. 328	
Chara-den		50 <sup>*4</sup>	-	P. 195	
User created folder		20	-	P. 328	
Melody		500 <sup>*4</sup>	-	P. 193	
User created folder		20	-	P. 328	
Chaku-uta full®		100 <sup>*4</sup>	-	P. 354	
User created folder		20	-	P. 328	
PDF data		50 <sup>*4</sup>	-	P. 193	
User created folder		20	-	P. 328	
ToruCa		1,000 <sup>*4</sup>	-	P. 265	
User created folder		20	-	P. 267	

- \*1 Up to 50 entries can be saved in the FOMA card.
- \*2 Save a national holiday besides holidays already saved.
- \*3 For SMS, up to 20 received and sent messages can be saved in the FOMA card (P. 243).
- \*4 The number of entries may decrease according to the size of data.
- \*5 Pre-installed data is included.

### Note

- Saved content may be lost due to malfunctions, repairs or other handling of the FOMA terminal. DoCoMo shall not be liable for any loss of content. Note saved contents separately or transfer/store them on a PC using microSD Memory Cards (P. 318) or DoCoMo keitai datalink (P. 406).

## Main Specifications (Data Box)

The following are estimates of the number of shot still pictures, movie shooting times, and voice recording times that can be saved to the microSD Memory Card.

**microSD Memory Cards are sold separately.**

**Purchase microSD Memory Cards at home electronics shops (P. 318).**

- Depending on conditions, such as the shooting environment and subject, the number of still pictures and the recording times that can be saved may decrease.

### Estimated number of images that can be shot (64 MB)

	ECONOMY	NORMAL	SUPER FINE
sQCIF: 128x96	3,700 shots	1,800 shots	1,800 shots
QCIF: 176x144	3,700 shots	1,800 shots	1,200 shots
QVGA: 240x320	1,800 shots	1,500 shots	620 shots
Stand-by: 240x400	1,800 shots	1,200 shots	620 shots
Wide S: 400x240	1,800 shots	1,200 shots	620 shots
CIF: 352x288	1,800 shots	1,200 shots	620 shots
VGA: 480x640	1,200 shots	930 shots	620 shots
Wide L: 1200x720	620 shots	410 shots	260 shots
1.2M: 1280x960	620 shots	310 shots	180 shots
UXGA: 1600x1200	310 shots	180 shots	120 shots

### Estimated movie shooting times (64 MB)

			ECONOMY	NORMAL	FINE	SUPER FINE
sQCIF: 128x96	For mail (short)	Image + voice	155 seconds	105 seconds	52 seconds	-
		Image only	214 seconds	130 seconds	62 seconds	-
	For mail (long)	Image + voice	638 seconds	434 seconds	215 seconds	-
		Image only	879 seconds	534 seconds	257 seconds	-
	Unrestricted*	Image + voice	314 minutes	214 minutes	108 minutes	-
		Image only	433 minutes	263 minutes	129 minutes	-
QCIF: 176x144	For mail (short)	Image + voice	134 seconds	78 seconds	28 seconds	19 seconds
		Image only	176 seconds	91 seconds	31 seconds	20 seconds
	For mail (long)	Image + voice	552 seconds	323 seconds	117 seconds	79 seconds
		Image only	723 seconds	375 seconds	129 seconds	85 seconds
	Unrestricted*	Image + voice	263 minutes	162 minutes	58 minutes	39 minutes
		Image only	344 minutes	188 minutes	64 minutes	42 minutes
QVGA: 320x240	For mail (short)	Image + voice	-	-	-	10 seconds
		Image only	-	-	-	10 seconds
	For mail (long)	Image + voice	-	-	-	41 seconds
		Image only	-	-	-	42 seconds
	Unrestricted	Image + voice	-	-	-	20 minutes
		Image only	-	-	-	20 minutes

			ECONOMY	NORMAL	FINE	SUPER FINE
VGA: 640x480	For mail (short)	Image + voice	-	-	-	-
		Image only	-	-	-	-
	For mail (long)	Image + voice	-	-	-	16 seconds
		Image only	-	-	-	16 seconds
	Unrestricted	Image + voice	-	-	-	7 minutes
		Image only	-	-	-	7 minutes

\* Up to approximately 60 minutes for continuous recording time per shot.

## Voice recording times (Voice recorder)

- Up to approximately ten hours when using 64 MB.

## Specific Absorption Rate (SAR)

This model phone FOMA SH903iTV meets the MIC's\* technical regulation for exposure to radio waves.

The technical regulation established permitted levels of radio frequency energy, based on standards that were developed by independent scientific organizations through periodic and thorough evaluation of scientific studies. The regulation employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate, or SAR. The SAR limit is 2 watts/kilogram (W/kg)\*\* averaged over ten grams of tissue. The limit includes a substantial safety margin designed to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health. The value of the limit is equal to the international guidelines recommended by ICNIRP\*\*\*. All phone models should be confirmed to comply with the regulation, before they are available for sale to the public. The highest SAR value for this model phone is 0.224 W/kg. It was taken by the Telecom Engineering Center (TELEC), a Registered Certification Agency on the Radio Law. The test for SAR was conducted in accordance with the MIC testing procedure using standard operating positions with the phone transmitting at its highest permitted power level in all tested frequency bands. While there may be differences between the SAR levels of various phones and at various positions, they all meet the MIC's technical regulation. Although the SAR is determined at the highest certified power level, the actual SAR of the phone during operation can be well below the maximum value.

For further information about SAR, please see the following websites:

World Health Organization (WHO)	<a href="http://www.who.int/peh-emf/">http://www.who.int/peh-emf/</a>
ICNIRP	<a href="http://www.icnirp.de/">http://www.icnirp.de/</a>
MIC	<a href="http://www.tele.soumu.go.jp/e/ele/body/index.htm">http://www.tele.soumu.go.jp/e/ele/body/index.htm</a>
TELEC	<a href="http://www.telec.or.jp/ENG/Index_e.htm">http://www.telec.or.jp/ENG/Index_e.htm</a>
NTT DoCoMo	<a href="http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english/product/">http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english/product/</a>
SHARP Corporation	<a href="http://www.sharp.co.jp/products/menu/phone/cellular/sar/index.html">http://www.sharp.co.jp/products/menu/phone/cellular/sar/index.html</a>

\* Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications

\*\* The technical regulation is provided in Article 14-2 of the Ministry Ordinance Regulating Radio Equipment.

\*\*\* International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection

## Japan Export Control Regulation/Export Administration Regulation

The Japan Export Control Regulation ("Foreign Exchange and International Trade Law" and its related laws) will be applied to this product and its accessories under certain conditions. The Export Administration Regulation is also applied. To export or reexport this terminal and its accessories, conduct all legally required procedures at your own risk and expense. For details on the procedures, contact the Ministry of Economy, Trade and Industry or the US Department of Commerce.

# Index/Quick Manual

● Index .....	466
● Quick Manual .....	476

## How to Use Index

This index lists function names, words, and key words in alphanumeric order. If you cannot remember a function name, search with key words.

### <Example: When searching “Omakase Lock”>

To search with function names

OCR . . . . .	178
OFFICEED . . . . .	401
<b>Omakase Lock . . . . .</b>	<b>149</b>
On hold . . . . .	67
One Seg	
Activate One Seg . . . . .	275

To search with key words

<b>Lock function . . . . .</b>	<b>148</b>
All lock . . . . .	148
Function lock . . . . .	151
Keypad dial lock . . . . .	152
Multi easy lock . . . . .	152
<b>Omakase Lock . . . . .</b>	<b>149</b>
Self mode . . . . .	150

## Numerics

186/184 . . . . .	58
1-touch conversion	
1-touch single character	
memory . . . . .	410
Predictive headword	
conversion . . . . .	410
2-touch dialing . . . . .	113
2-touch input . . . . .	416
Change input mode . . . . .	416
Conversion method . . . . .	416
Key assignments . . . . .	430
Text input . . . . .	416
3D sound . . . . .	120
5-touch input . . . . .	408
Key assignments . . . . .	428

## A

About this manual . . . . .	1
AC adapter . . . . .	41
Accept calls . . . . .	155
Disable . . . . .	156
Save list . . . . .	155
Settings . . . . .	156
Active marker . . . . .	365
Delete history . . . . .	366
Display calendar/date	
. . . . .	366
Screen theme . . . . .	366
Set background . . . . .	366
Set display category	
. . . . .	367
Additional services . . . . .	401

Delete . . . . .	401
Reply message . . . . .	401
After-sales service . . . . .	450
Alarm . . . . .	369
Quick alarm . . . . .	369
Reception reserve alarm	
. . . . .	281
Recording reserve alarm	
. . . . .	281
Schedule alarm . . . . .	373
Snooze . . . . .	370
ToDo alarm settings . . . . .	378
All lock . . . . .	148
Disable . . . . .	149
Settings . . . . .	148
Animate notices . . . . .	133
Answering calls/Videophone	
calls . . . . .	63
Any key answer . . . . .	66
Arrival call action . . . . .	399
ASF file . . . . .	305
Authentication password	
. . . . .	334
Auto power OFF . . . . .	368
Auto power ON . . . . .	367

## B

Background playback	
. . . . .	354, 461
Bar code reader . . . . .	176
Add bookmark . . . . .	178
Add to phonebook . . . . .	178
Battery	

Battery pack . . . . .	39
Charging . . . . .	40
Check battery level . . . . .	43
Times of use . . . . .	40
Bookmark . . . . .	188
Attach to mail . . . . .	189
Delete . . . . .	190
Display . . . . .	189
Edit title . . . . .	190
Bookmark folder . . . . .	190
BookReader . . . . .	346
Copy text . . . . .	348
Current location . . . . .	348
Delete . . . . .	351
Display history . . . . .	347
File property . . . . .	348, 351
Font size . . . . .	348
Insert bookmark . . . . .	348
Link . . . . .	350
Mail To . . . . .	349
Mask . . . . .	350
Move . . . . .	351
Move to bookmark . . . . .	348
Phone To (AV Phone To)	
. . . . .	349
Ruby text . . . . .	348
Save to My picture . . . . .	350
Search dictionary . . . . .	349
Set % move . . . . .	348
Switch folder . . . . .	347
Table of contents . . . . .	348
Text direction . . . . .	348
To end . . . . .	348
To top . . . . .	347
Web To . . . . .	349
Brightness . . . . .	132

**C**

Cache	185
Calculator	383
Calculation example	434
Calendar	371
Disable set vacations	375
Display	371
Go to date	372
Set holiday	375
Set vacations	374
Switch view mode	372
Call Forwarding Service	395
Forward calls	395
Forwarded party busy	396
Register number	396
Status request	396
Call Waiting	394
Call/Receive display	127
Caller ID Request Service	397
Activate	397
Deactivate	397
Status request	397
Camera	162
Activate/Deactivate	166
Auto save mode	176
Auto timer	172
Bar code reader	176
Brightness	170
Character reader	178
Closeup	169
Continuous mode	168
Display indicators	164
Display light time	174
Effect shot	173
File size limit	172
Fix camera shake	174
Full-screen mode	175
Image quality	171
Image size	163
Key list	167
Main/sub camera	171
Number of recordable images	164
Save camera settings	176
Select size	171
Send message	176
Shoot	167, 169
Shoot by scene	174
Shoot movie	169
Shoot still picture	167
Shoot with frame	173
Shooting settings	174
Shutter sound	175
Switch camera-mode	170
Switch image/voice	173
Switch phone⇔SD	175
Zoom in and out	170
Certificate operations	203
Change certificate issue	205
Download	204
Invalidate	205
Issue	204
Site access	204
Certificates	203
Chaku-moji	56
Create message	56
Message display	56
Chaku-uta full®	354, 356
Download	356
Edit information	356
Ring tone	356
Change i-mode password	187
Character reader	178
Add bookmark	180
Add to phonebook	180
Search dictionary	180
Chara-den	313
Action list	75, 314
Backlight time	314
Change action	76
Change Chara-den	76
Change send image	75
Chara-den call	314
Chara-den player	313
Chara-den settings	101, 314
Delete	316
Download	195
File property	315
Image for call	314
Move	315
Playback	313
Sort	315
Substitute image	314
Check mail address	382
Check memory	332
Check new messages	201, 225
Check settings	364
Clear memory terms	415
Component names and functions	24
Contents transfer compatible	259, 321
Continuous mode	168
Copy	413
Copy item	111
Copy text	413
Cut	413
Paste	414
Create/Edit/Delete folder	328
Cut	413
Cycloid position	27

**D**

Data communication	404
Data Security Service	112, 114, 159
Connect to the data storage center	114
Mail	231
Phonebook	112, 114
Send phonebook image	114
Show phonebook transfer history	114
Still picture	304
Date settings	45
DC adapter	41
Deco-mail	216
Compose Deco-mail	218
Edit template	220
Open template	219
Save template	228
View image in mail	228
Deco-mail pictograph 1	216
Deco-mail pictograph list	432
Enter	214, 412
Delete	190
Bookmark	190
Deco-mail template	220
Download dictionary	415
PDF files	343
Phonebook	112
PushTalk phonebook	92

Record message/Voice memo . . . . .	75	Set/Clear . . . . .	415
Recording timer . . . . .	282	DPOF (Print setting) . . . . .	352
Redial/Received calls . . . . .	54	Dual Network Service . . . . .	397
Register words . . . . .	414	Status request . . . . .	398
Schedule . . . . .	377	Switching . . . . .	398
Screen memo . . . . .	192	<b>E</b>	
Shortcut menu . . . . .	380	<b>Earpiece/Microphone . . . . .</b>	<b>386</b>
SMS . . . . .	244	<b>Earpiece/Microphone with switch . . . . .</b>	<b>386</b>
Text . . . . .	410	Answering calls . . . . .	387
ToDo list . . . . .	379	Earpiece/Microphone auto calling . . . . .	387
TV timer . . . . .	282	Making calls . . . . .	387
Video file . . . . .	313	Set auto answer . . . . .	388
Delete all data . . . . .	388	Earpiece volume . . . . .	67, 119
Delete secret data . . . . .	389	Edit image . . . . .	300
Delete user data . . . . .	388	Change face position . . . . .	303
Desktop holder . . . . .	42	Character stamp . . . . .	303
Disable PIN lock . . . . .	147	Check image . . . . .	300
Disable/Delete/Change alarm settings . . . . .	371	Correct image . . . . .	302
Display light time . . . . .	130	Face effects . . . . .	302
DoCoMo keitai data link . . . . .	406	Face stamp . . . . .	302
Document Viewer . . . . .	344	Facial treatment . . . . .	304
Backlight time . . . . .	345	Frame . . . . .	303
Cut image . . . . .	345	Image editing screen . . . . .	300
Delete . . . . .	346	Image effect . . . . .	302
Display . . . . .	344	Image stamp . . . . .	302
File property . . . . .	346	Resize image . . . . .	301
Light up . . . . .	345	Rotate . . . . .	301
Magnifier . . . . .	345	Trimming . . . . .	300
Move spec page . . . . .	345	Edit movie . . . . .	309
Move within screen . . . . .	345	Capture still . . . . .	310
Rotate view . . . . .	345	File property . . . . .	309
Save image . . . . .	345	Image cutter . . . . .	310
Shortcut key . . . . .	346	Movie editing screen . . . . .	309
Sort . . . . .	346	Show ticker . . . . .	309
Zoom/Shrink . . . . .	345	Edit phonebook entries . . . . .	111
Download		Emoticon	
Chaku-uta full® . . . . .	356	Emoticon list . . . . .	433
Chara-den . . . . .	195	Enter . . . . .	412
Client certificate . . . . .	204	English guidance . . . . .	398
Deco-mail template . . . . .	192	Status request . . . . .	398
Dictionary file . . . . .	194	Enter alphabet . . . . .	411
i-appli . . . . .	247	Enter numbers . . . . .	411
i-melody . . . . .	193	Enter PIN1 code at power on . . . . .	146
i-motion . . . . .	206	Error messages list . . . . .	441
Kisekae Tool . . . . .	194		
PDF files . . . . .	193		
ToruCa . . . . .	195		
Download dictionary . . . . .	415		
Check . . . . .	415		
Delete . . . . .	415		

## F

FeliCa . . . . .	262
IC card lock . . . . .	270
Precautions for using Osaifu-Keitai . . . . .	263
Use Osaifu-Keitai . . . . .	263
File playback . . . . .	78
File restriction . . . . .	331
FirstPass . . . . .	203
Flash movie	
Display . . . . .	184
Playback . . . . .	298
Sound effects setting . . . . .	197
Use phone information . . . . .	199
FM transmitter output . . . . .	361
Auto out on start . . . . .	362
Frequency setting . . . . .	362
FOMA card . . . . .	36
FOMA card (UIM) settings . . . . .	146
PIN1 code/PIN2 code . . . . .	144
Restriction functions . . . . .	37
FOMA card phonebook	
Copy to FOMA terminal phonebook . . . . .	103
Save . . . . .	103
FOMA terminal phonebook	
Copy to FOMA card phonebook . . . . .	103
Save . . . . .	96
Font style . . . . .	141
Frame	
Shoot with frame . . . . .	173
Full Browser . . . . .	288
Access setting . . . . .	293
Add bookmark . . . . .	290
Cookie setting . . . . .	292
Display . . . . .	289
Download . . . . .	291
Font size . . . . .	293
Key list . . . . .	292
Multiple windows . . . . .	290
Referer setting . . . . .	293
Reset full browser . . . . .	293
Script setting . . . . .	292
Search page . . . . .	292
Search web . . . . .	291
Set image display . . . . .	293
SSL . . . . .	290



Alarm/Timer LED . . . . .	140	Delete . . . . .	238	Menu selections . . . . .	32
Called LED color . . . . .	138	Edit member . . . . .	238	Function number . . . . .	32
IC card LED . . . . .	140	Register address . . . . .	238	Submenu . . . . .	35
In-call LED . . . . .	139	Mail setting		Top menu . . . . .	33
LED pattern settings		Check mail settings . . . . .	240	Zoom menu . . . . .	34
. . . . .	139	Check new messages		Message . . . . .	200
Mail send/receive LED		. . . . .	238	Auto message display	
. . . . .	139	Font size . . . . .	236	. . . . .	201
Open-close/Rotation LED		Mail member . . . . .	238	Delete . . . . .	203
. . . . .	140	Melody Auto replay . . . . .	239	Display . . . . .	201
Link alarm/power ON . . . . .	367	Quick reply mail . . . . .	239	Message F . . . . .	200
Lock function . . . . .	148	Receive attached file		Message R . . . . .	200
All lock . . . . .	148	. . . . .	239	Protect set . . . . .	203
Function lock . . . . .	151	Receive display . . . . .	239	Receive . . . . .	200
Keypad dial lock . . . . .	152	Receive option setting		View attachment . . . . .	202
Multi easy lock . . . . .	152	. . . . .	238	View image in mail . . . . .	202
Omakase Lock . . . . .	149	Reset mail settings . . . . .	240	Message service . . . . .	200
Self mode . . . . .	150	Save signature . . . . .	237	microSD Memory Card . . . . .	318
Side key guard . . . . .	153	Sort rules . . . . .	236	Backup/restore . . . . .	322
<b>M</b>		Mail To function . . . . .	196	Copy to microSD . . . . .	322
Mail . . . . .	211	Main display . . . . .	125	Copy to the phone . . . . .	324
Add to phonebook . . . . .	226	Calendar display . . . . .	126	Format . . . . .	325
Attached files for manual		Clock display . . . . .	127	Move to the microSD	
reception . . . . .	227	Stand-by display . . . . .	125	. . . . .	321
Attachment . . . . .	220	Main specifications . . . . .	461	Move to the phone . . . . .	321
BOX list . . . . .	229	Making calls/Videophone calls		New manager information	
Broadcast . . . . .	216	. . . . .	49	. . . . .	327
Check address . . . . .	233	Manner mode . . . . .	123	View data . . . . .	323
Compose . . . . .	214	Auto disable . . . . .	124	Missed call notice . . . . .	140
Delete . . . . .	234	Disable . . . . .	124	Missed calls . . . . .	71
Folder security . . . . .	232	Original manner mode		Multi Assistant (Multitask)	
Forward . . . . .	226	. . . . .	124	Combinations . . . . .	364
i-mode mail . . . . .	212	Setting . . . . .	123	. . . . .	435
i-motion mail . . . . .	308	Media To function . . . . .	197	Multi easy lock . . . . .	152
Inbox . . . . .	228	Melody player . . . . .	316	Disable . . . . .	152
Mail list layout . . . . .	229	Continuous play . . . . .	317	Multi lock auto-set . . . . .	153
Mail menu . . . . .	214	Equalizer . . . . .	316	Multi Number . . . . .	400
Message screen . . . . .	229	Play . . . . .	316	Number setting . . . . .	400
Move . . . . .	234	Playback effects . . . . .	316	Set multi number . . . . .	400
Outbox . . . . .	228	Ring tone . . . . .	317	Status request . . . . .	400
Protect . . . . .	234	Send message . . . . .	317	Multi Window . . . . .	278
Quick reply . . . . .	226	Set volume . . . . .	316	Multiaccess . . . . .	364
Receive option . . . . .	224	Start position . . . . .	317	Combinations . . . . .	434
Register address . . . . .	226	Memory number . . . . .	99	Multi-guide key . . . . .	27
Reply . . . . .	225	Menu list . . . . .	418	Music playback . . . . .	353
Ring time setting . . . . .	122	Camera . . . . .	419	Music player . . . . .	354
Save . . . . .	222	Data Box . . . . .	420	Chaku-uta full® download	
Send . . . . .	214	i-αppli . . . . .	419	. . . . .	356
Signature . . . . .	215	i-mode . . . . .	418	Create playlist . . . . .	357
Sort . . . . .	233	LifeKit . . . . .	424	Edit information . . . . .	356
Store at center . . . . .	231	Mail . . . . .	419	FM transmitter output . . . . .	361
Unsent Messages . . . . .	228	Media tool . . . . .	425	Manner playback . . . . .	355
View attachment . . . . .	227	Phonebook . . . . .	420	Play playlist . . . . .	358
Mail member . . . . .	238	Settings . . . . .	420		

Playback song list . . . . .	355
Ring tone . . . . .	356
Save i-motion . . . . .	356
Set playback mode . . . . .	355
Surround . . . . .	355
My menu . . . . .	186

## N

Network connection . . . . .	92
Network security code . . . . .	144
Network service . . . . .	391
Additional services . . . . .	401
Arrival call action . . . . .	399
Call Forwarding Service . . . . .	395
Call Waiting . . . . .	394
Caller ID Request Service . . . . .	397
Dual Network Service . . . . .	397
English guidance . . . . .	398
Multi Number . . . . .	400
Nuisance Call Barring Service . . . . .	396
OFFICEED . . . . .	401
Remote control . . . . .	399
Set arrival action . . . . .	399
Voice Mail Service . . . . .	392
Network services from the FOMA terminal . . . . .	392
New unread mail notice . . . . .	140
Next word guess . . . . .	408
Noise reduction . . . . .	62
Normal position . . . . .	27
Notify caller ID . . . . .	46
Nuisance Call Barring Service . . . . .	396
Check No of entries . . . . .	397
Delete all entries . . . . .	396
Register caller . . . . .	396
Register selected No. . . . .	396
Number of protected entries . . . . .	462
Number of registered entries . . . . .	462
Number of saved entries . . . . .	462

## O

OCR . . . . .	178
OFFICEED . . . . .	401
Omakase Lock . . . . .	149
On hold . . . . .	67
One Seg . . . . .	
Activate One Seg . . . . .	275
Auto channel setting . . . . .	274
Booking list . . . . .	280
Channel setting . . . . .	274
Data broadcasting . . . . .	283
Erase storage area . . . . .	286
FM transmitter output . . . . .	361
Multi Window . . . . .	278
One Seg settings . . . . .	278, 286
One Seg status . . . . .	286
Preset channel setting . . . . .	274
Program guide . . . . .	279
Recording end time . . . . .	285
Recording movies . . . . .	285
Recording still pictures . . . . .	285
Recording timer . . . . .	280
Reset One Seg . . . . .	286
Reset status display . . . . .	286
Set image display . . . . .	286
Sound effects . . . . .	286
TV antenna . . . . .	273
TV timer . . . . .	280
TVlink . . . . .	284
Operation guidance . . . . .	27
Options and accessories . . . . .	437
Original manner mode . . . . .	124
Osaifu-Keitai . . . . .	262
FeliCa . . . . .	262
i-appli . . . . .	263
IC card lock . . . . .	270
i-mode FeliCa . . . . .	262
Own number . . . . .	46
Owner information . . . . .	381

## P

Packet transmission arrival action . . . . .	82
Paging service . . . . .	58, 408
Paste . . . . .	414
Pause Dial . . . . .	58

PDF Viewer . . . . .	339
Add i-mode bookmark . . . . .	341
Add mark . . . . .	341
Cut image . . . . .	341
Delete . . . . .	343
Delete one bookmark . . . . .	341
Delete one mark . . . . .	341
Display . . . . .	339
Display bookmark . . . . .	341
Display link . . . . .	341
Display mark . . . . .	341
Document properties . . . . .	341
Download remains . . . . .	341
File property . . . . .	343
Full-screen . . . . .	339
Key list . . . . .	341
Light up . . . . .	341
Magnification . . . . .	340
Move . . . . .	343
Move page . . . . .	340
Page layout . . . . .	340
Page numbers . . . . .	340
Rotate view . . . . .	340
Save . . . . .	341
Scroll bar . . . . .	340
Search criteria . . . . .	341
Search text string . . . . .	341
Send message . . . . .	342
Shortcut key . . . . .	342
Sort . . . . .	343
Zoom in/Zoom out . . . . .	340
Personalize . . . . .	132
Animate notices . . . . .	133
Call/Receive display . . . . .	127
Picture call set . . . . .	129
Send/Receive display . . . . .	128
Signal/battery/small clock . . . . .	133
Submenu image . . . . .	132
Theme color . . . . .	133
Personalize menu . . . . .	134
Phone ring volume . . . . .	118
Mail ring volume . . . . .	119
PushTalk tone volume . . . . .	119
Phone To (AV Phone To) function . . . . .	195
Phonebook . . . . .	96
Add to PushTalk phonebook . . . . .	111

Birthday .....	100	Prefer playback sound...	121	Inbox .....	228
Called LED color .....	100, 106	Print setting (DPOF) .....	352	Received messages .....	235
Called LED pattern .....	100, 106	Priority		SMS .....	241
Chaku-moji .....	56, 110	Auto start .....	256	Receive option (mail) .....	224
Connect to the data storage center .....	114	LED settings .....	138	Received calls .....	53
Copy item .....	111	Light duration .....	131	Received messages .....	235
Copy to FOMA card ..	103	Picture call .....	129	Add to phonebook .....	236
Delete .....	112	PushTalk caller ID .....	94	Send message .....	235
Image transfer .....	110	Schedule alarm .....	374	Reconnect .....	62
Mail LED color ...	100, 106	Select ring tone .....	117	Record	
Mail LED pattern .....	100, 106	Substitute image .....	79	Voice memo (during call) .....	383
Mail ring tone ...	100, 105	Private filter setting .....	142	Voice memo (stand-by) .....	383
Making calls .....	109	Filter density .....	142	Record message (voice/	
Memo .....	100	Linked manner .....	142	Videophone calls) .....	71
Phonebook entry screen .....	97	Public mode (Drive mode) .....	68	Answering duration .....	73
Picture call set ...	100, 106	Public mode (Power OFF) .....	70	Delete .....	75
Postal address .....	100	PushTalk .....	83	Disable .....	72
Postal code .....	100	Add group .....	90	Play .....	74
Save .....	96	Add member .....	87	Quick message .....	74
Save to FOMA card .....	103	Caller ID setting .....	94	Reply message .....	73
Search by .....	107	Delete .....	93	Settings .....	71
Secret code .....	100	Edit data .....	91	V.phone reply image ..	73
Select group .....	99	Hands-free PushTalk ..	94	Redial .....	53
Select ring tone ..	100, 105	i-mode arrival action ..	199	Delete .....	54
Set secret .....	100	Network connection ...	92	Save to phonebook (handset) .....	104
Substitute image .....	101	New group .....	90	Register words .....	414
Switch view mode ...	110	Phonebook .....	89	Delete .....	414
Videophone image ...	110	Receive .....	88	Edit .....	414
Phrase		Reconnect .....	62	Register .....	414
Edit .....	413	Reconnect .....	62	Reject by reason of	
Insert phrase .....	412	Ring time setting .....	122	non-disclosure .....	157
Phrase list .....	433	Send .....	86, 91	Reasons .....	158
Reset .....	413	Set auto answer .....	388	Reject calls .....	156
Save .....	413	Set mute ring time ...	158	Disable .....	157
Pictograph		Set PushTalk arrival actions .....	94	Save list .....	156
Deco-mail pictograph list .....	432	Set when folded .....	66	Settings .....	157
Enter .....	412	PushTalkPlus .....	84	Reject payphone .....	157
Pictograph list .....	431	<b>Q</b>		Reject unknown .....	159
Picture call set .....	129	QR code .....	176	Reject unsupported ID ..	158
PIN1 code/PIN2 code ...	144	Quality alarm .....	122	Reject user unset .....	157
Change .....	147	Quick alarm .....	369	Remote control .....	399
Disable lock .....	147	Quick dictionary .....	408	Activate .....	399
FOMA card (UIM) settings .....	146	Quick manual .....	476	Deactivate .....	399
PIN1 code input set ...	146	Quick silent .....	124	Status request .....	400
Play melody .....	316	<b>R</b>		Reset i-mode .....	199
Power ON/OFF .....	43	Receive		Reset settings .....	388
Power saver set .....	130	i-mode mail .....	222	Ring output .....	122

Rotation-link reply . . . . .	66	Search dictionary . . . . .	349	Send own no./No caller ID . . . . .	57
		Character reader . . . . .	350	Send/Receive display . . . . .	128
<b>S</b>		Search phonebook . . . . .	107	Sent messages . . . . .	235
Safety precautions . . . . .	12	By group . . . . .	109	Send message . . . . .	235
SAR . . . . .	464	By memory number . . . . .	108	Service number . . . . .	399
Save original phrase . . . . .	413	By reading . . . . .	108	Services available from the FOMA terminal . . . . .	436
Save task . . . . .	377	Secret mode . . . . .	154	Set alarm . . . . .	369
Schedule . . . . .	371	Disable . . . . .	154	Set arrival action . . . . .	399
Attach to mail . . . . .	376	Settings . . . . .	154	Activate . . . . .	399
Change alarm tone . . . . .	374	Security codes . . . . .	144	Deactivate . . . . .	399
Change alarm volume . . . . .	374	Security Scan (Scanning function) . . . . .	458	Status request . . . . .	399
Check . . . . .	375	Security settings . . . . .	143	Set auto answer . . . . .	388
Copy . . . . .	376	Accept/reject calls . . . . .	155, 156	Set hold tone . . . . .	68
Create i-mode mail . . . . .	376	All lock . . . . .	148	Set mute ring time . . . . .	158
Delete . . . . .	377	Change PIN1 code/PIN2 code . . . . .	147	Set on hold tone . . . . .	68
Edit . . . . .	376	Function lock . . . . .	151	Set screen . . . . .	299
Making calls . . . . .	376	Keypad dial lock . . . . .	152	Set secret . . . . .	113
Ring duration . . . . .	374	PIN1 code input set . . . . .	146	Set sounds/Set volume . . . . .	
Save . . . . .	372	Secret mode . . . . .	154	Charge end sound . . . . .	120
Save from icon calendar . . . . .	373	Show call/received . . . . .	153	Charge start sound . . . . .	120
Save from mail . . . . .	376	Show sent/received . . . . .	154	Key/Standby i-motion . . . . .	119
Save from My picture . . . . .	377	Select language . . . . .	44	Shutter sound . . . . .	175
Save from Received calls . . . . .	376	Select ring tone . . . . .	116	Timer sound . . . . .	118, 120
Save from text memo . . . . .	377	Mail ring tone . . . . .	117	Set when folded . . . . .	66
Secret data . . . . .	374	Payphone ring tone . . . . .	116	Shoot movie . . . . .	169
Show all schedules . . . . .	376	Phone ring tone . . . . .	116	Shoot still picture . . . . .	167
Show by category . . . . .	375	PushTalk tone . . . . .	117	Shortcut menu . . . . .	380
Show by contact . . . . .	375	Videophone ring tone . . . . .	116	Action focus . . . . .	381
Screen display time . . . . .	132	Select shutter sound . . . . .	175	Delete . . . . .	380
Screen memo . . . . .	190	Select volume . . . . .	118	Icon image settings . . . . .	380
Delete . . . . .	192	Charge end sound . . . . .	120	Move icon . . . . .	380
Display . . . . .	191	Charge start sound . . . . .	120	Reset menu . . . . .	381
Edit title . . . . .	192	Earpiece volume . . . . .	67, 119	Save . . . . .	380
File property . . . . .	191	Key/Standby i-motion . . . . .	119	Set background . . . . .	381
Save . . . . .	191	Mail ring volume . . . . .	119	Show by contact (Schedule) . . . . .	375
SD-Audio . . . . .	358	Phone ring volume . . . . .	118	Show call/received . . . . .	153
Delete track . . . . .	361	PushTalk tone volume . . . . .	119	Save to schedule . . . . .	376
Edit track information . . . . .	360	Timer sound . . . . .	118, 120	Show sent/received . . . . .	154
FM transmitter output . . . . .	361	Self mode . . . . .	150	Side key guard . . . . .	153
Manner playback . . . . .	360	Send . . . . .		Signal/battery/small clock . . . . .	133
Play . . . . .	359	Movie/i-motion . . . . .	220, 308	Signature . . . . .	
Playback screen . . . . .	360	Sent messages . . . . .	214	Add signature . . . . .	215
Playlist . . . . .	360	SMS . . . . .	240	Save signature . . . . .	237
Save . . . . .	359	Still picture . . . . .	220, 299	Silent . . . . .	66
Search track . . . . .	361			Slideshow . . . . .	298
Set playback mode . . . . .	360				
Surround . . . . .	360				



Reserve recording history	283
Sort	282

## U

Undo	409
Update	458
URL	
Delete URL history	188
History	188
Last URL	183
USB mode setting	326
Communication mode	
	326
microSD mode	326
Use phone information	199
User dictionary	414
Delete	414
Download dictionary	415
Edit	414
Register	414
Using with external devices	438

## V

Vibrant image mode	141
Vibrator	121
Video file	312
Delete	313
Edit title	312
File property	313
Sort	313
Video player	311
FM transmitter output	361
One Seg settings	312
Playback	311
Videophone	48
Brightness	78

Change send image	77
Display setting	80
Hold active call	51
Hold image	79
Lighting	81
Main/sub camera	78
Notify switch-mode	82
On hold image	79
Packet transmission arrival	
action	82
Picture memo	82
Redial voice call	81
Reverse on/off	81
Self-portrait	81
Subscreen display	80
Substitute image	78
Videophone image	78, 110
Visual preference	79
Zoom	77
View sites	182
Access FirstPass center	204
Add to phonebook	186
Bookmark	188
Character code	188
Connection timeout	198
Download PDF	193
Font size	184
i-melody	193
i-motion	205
Reload	186
Save image	192
Screen memo	190
Set image display	199
Sound effects setting	184
SSL	183
URL history	188
View Flash movies	184
View URL	186
View the display	28

View URL	186
Voice Mail Service	392
Activate/Deactivate	392
Check messages	393
Delete display	393
Play messages	393
Start/Stop notification	
	393
Status request	393
Voice mail alarm	393
Voice mail setting	393
Voice memo	382
Voice memo (during call)	
	383
Voice memo (stand-by)	
	383
Voice memo (during call)	
	74, 382
Delete	75
Play	74
Voice memo (stand-by)	
	382
Voice recorder	338
Settings	338

## W

Warranty	450
Web To function	196
WORLD CALL	59
WORLD WING	38

## Z

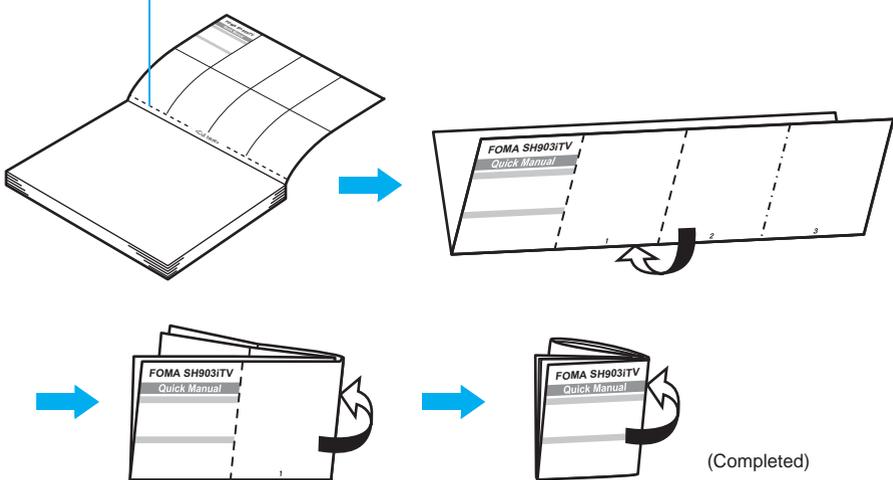
Zoom	
Camera	170
Image Viewer	296
PDF Viewer	340

## How to Use the Quick Manual

Remove the Quick Manual attached to the end of this manual by cutting along the perforated marks and fold it as shown below.

### Folding the Quick Manual

Cut along the perforated marks.



### Warning

- Be careful of injuries when cutting out Quick Manual.

This manual is produced of recyclable material. Please recycle when no longer needed.





Function menu	Function number
Service number	トコモ故障問合せ (5)(4)(1)
Additional service	トコモ総合案内・受付 (5)(4)(2)
Multi number	USSD (5)(5)(1)
	Reply message (5)(5)(2)
	Set multi number (5)(6)(1)
	Status request (5)(6)(2)
	Number setting (5)(6)(3)
Chaku-moji	Create message (5)(7)(1)
	Message display (5)(7)(2)

### Phone settings

Function menu	Function number
In-call settings	Noise reduction (6)(1)(1)
	Reconnect (6)(1)(2)
	Quality alarm (6)(1)(3)
Ear/mic auto calling	(6)(2)
Incoming settings	Any key answer (6)(3)(1)
	Set auto answer (6)(3)(2)
	Rotation-link repl (6)(3)(3)
Videophone set	Redial voice call (6)(4)(1)
	Set sending image (6)(4)(2)
	Display setting (6)(4)(3)
	Subscreen position (6)(4)(4)
	Visual preference (6)(4)(5)
	Notify switch mode (6)(4)(6)
	Hands-free V.phone (6)(4)(7)
	Packet trans arr act (6)(4)(8)

-16-

Function menu	Function number
Record message	Record message (6)(5)(1)
	Answering duration (6)(5)(2)
	Reply message (6)(5)(3)
	V.phone reply image (6)(5)(4)
Set PushTalk	Caller ID setting (6)(6)(1)
	Set PT arrival act (6)(6)(2)
	Hands-free PT (6)(6)(3)
Set when folded	Phone/Videophone (6)(7)(1)
	PushTalk (6)(7)(2)
Self mode	(6)(8)
Other settings	Int'l prefix (6)(9)(1)
	Sub address (6)(9)(2)
	Int'l dia assist (6)(9)(3)

### Security

Function menu	Function number
Secret mode	(7)(1)
UI/M Settings	PIN1 code input set (7)(2)(1)
	Change PIN1 code (7)(2)(2)
	Change PIN2 code (7)(2)(3)
Accept/Reject calls	Accept calls (7)(3)(1)
	Reject calls (7)(3)(2)
	Reject unknown (7)(3)(3)
	Reject user unset (7)(3)(4)
	Reject payphone (7)(3)(5)
	Reject not support (7)(3)(6)

-17-

Function menu	Function number
Show call/received	Show rcvd calls (7)(4)(1)
	Show redial (7)(4)(2)
Show sent/received	Show sent messages (7)(5)(1)
	Show rcvd messages (7)(5)(2)
Lock settings	All lock (7)(6)(1)
	Keypad dial lock (7)(6)(2)
	Function lock (7)(6)(3)
	IC card lock (7)(6)(4)
	Multi lock auto-set (7)(6)(5)
Change security code	(7)(7)
Delete all data	Delete user data (7)(8)(1)
	Del secret data (7)(8)(2)

### Other settings

Function menu	Function number
Initial settings	(8)
Own number	(0)

### Data box

Function menu	Function number
My picture	(9)(1)(1)
MUSIC	(9)(1)(2)
i-motion	(9)(1)(3)
Video(microSD)	(9)(1)(4)
Melody	(9)(1)(5)
My Documents	(9)(1)(6)

-18-

Function menu	Function number
Useful functions	Character reader (9)(2)(8)(6)
	Data Sec. Service (9)(2)(8)(7)

### Media tool

Function menu	Function number
One Seg	(9)(3)(1)
SD-Audio	(9)(3)(2)
Voice recorder	(9)(3)(3)
BookReader	(9)(3)(4)
Document Viewer	(9)(3)(5)
PDF Viewer	(9)(3)(6)

### Other Functions

Manner mode enable/disable	[M] (for 1+ seconds)
Public mode (Drive mode) activate/deactivate	[X] (for 1+ seconds)
Multi easy lock activate/deactivate	[O] (for 1+ seconds)
Show Redial	[C]
Show Received calls	[D]
Show i-Channel properties	[CLR] (CH)/[CLS] (CH) (for 1+ seconds)
Active marker	[A]
Show i-mode menu	[I]
Show i-appli screen	[I] (P) (for 1+ seconds)

-20-

Activate Record message/Voice memo	[7] (for 1+ seconds)
Display Mail menu	[M]
View phonebook	[R]
Activate camera (still picture mode)	[C]
Activate camera (movie mode)	In still picture shooting screen, press [C] (2)
Display Data box	[D] (for 1+ seconds)
Supportbook (preset)	In stand-by, press [M] (M)
Activate Multi Assistant (Multitask)	[M] while running an application
Register Shortcut menu	[M] (for 1+ seconds) when [M] appears
Earpiece Volume	During call, press [V]/[Q]
Side Key Guard/Disable	[V] (for 1+ seconds)
Activate One Seg	[TV]
Display One Seg menu	[TV] (for 1+ seconds)
Private filter ON/OFF	[Sec] (for 1+ seconds)

### Network Services

In the confirmation screen, select Yes and press [O].

-21-

### Voice Mail Service

Voice Mail Service is a paid option (monthly fees apply) that requires subscription.

- STEP 1** Activate Voice Mail Service.  
**STEP 2** Voice/Videophone call is received.  
**STEP 3** Call is connected to Voice Mail Service center if not answered.  
**STEP 4** Caller records a message.  
**STEP 5** Play message.

Activate	In stand-by, press [O] (4)(1)(3)(1)
Set ringing time before activating	In stand-by, press [O] (4)(1)(3)(2) ▶ enter ringing time ▶ [O]
Deactivate	In stand-by, press [O] (4)(1)(5)
Play messages	In stand-by, press [O] (4)(1)(2)
Set Voice Mail Service with voice guidance	In stand-by, press [O] (4)(1)(7)
Check new message	In stand-by, press [O] (4)(1)(1)
Check and change Voice Mail Service settings	In stand-by, press [O] (4)(1)(6) ▶ [O] ▶ setting
Voice mail alarm	In stand-by, press [O] (4)(1)(8)(1) ▶ [1] [ON]

-22-

Function menu	Function number
Chara-den	(9)(1)(7)
Kisekae Tool	(9)(1)(8)
Print setting(DPOF)	(9)(1)(9)

### LifeKit

Function menu	Function number
Bar code reader	(9)(2)(1)
Receive Ir data	(9)(2)(2)
ToruCa	(9)(2)(3)
IC card content	(9)(2)(4)
IC card lock	IC lock(power-on) (9)(2)(5)(1)
	IC lock(power-off) (9)(2)(5)(2)
microSD manager	View microSD data (9)(2)(6)(1)
	Backup/restore (9)(2)(6)(2)
	Import (9)(2)(6)(3)
	New manager info (9)(2)(6)(4)
	Format (9)(2)(6)(5)
	USB mode setting (9)(2)(6)(6)
Schedule	Schedule (9)(2)(7)(1)
	ToDo list (9)(2)(7)(2)
Useful functions	Calculator (9)(2)(8)(1)
	Text memo (9)(2)(8)(2)
	Timer (9)(2)(8)(3)
	Alarm (9)(2)(8)(4)
	Voice memo/Rec msg (9)(2)(8)(5)

-19-

Delete display	In stand-by, press [O] ▶ <b>Top menu</b> ▶ [O] (4)(1)(8)(2)
Start notification	In stand-by, press [O] (4)(1)(9)(1)
Stop notification	In stand-by, press [O] (4)(1)(9)(2)
Check status (notification)	In stand-by, press [O] (4)(1)(9)(3)

### Call Waiting

Call Waiting is a paid option (monthly fees apply) that requires subscription.

Activate	In stand-by, press [O] (4)(2)(1)
Deactivate	In stand-by, press [O] (4)(2)(2)
Status request	In stand-by, press [O] (4)(2)(3)
Place current call on hold and answer a voice call	Beeps during call ▶ [H] ▶ call ▶ [O] ▶ call
Disconnect current call and answer a voice call	Beeps during call ▶ [H] ▶ [O] ▶ call
Place current call on hold and place a separate call	Dial during call ▶ [H] ▶ call ▶ [O] ▶ call

-23-

### Call Forwarding Service

Call Forwarding Service is a free option that requires subscription.

**STEP 1** Register forwarding destination.

**STEP 2** Activate Call Forwarding Service.

**STEP 3** Voice/Videophone call is received.

**STEP 4** Call is automatically forwarded to the destination if not answered.

Activate	In stand-by, press <b>☉</b> (4) (3) (1) (3) (1) (1) (2) (1) enter forwarding number (2) (1) enter ringing time (1)
Deactivate	In stand-by, press <b>☉</b> (4) (3) (2)
Register number	In stand-by, press <b>☉</b> (4) (3) (3) (1) (1) edit forwarding number (1) (1)
Use Voice Mail Service when forward party busy	In stand-by, press <b>☉</b> (4) (3) (4)
Status request	In stand-by, press <b>☉</b> (4) (3) (5)
Forward calls received while receiving call or during call	While receiving call or during call, press <b>☉</b> (2)

-24-

### Nuisance Call Barring Service

Nuisance Call Barring Service is a free option that requires subscription.

Register last caller for Nuisance Call Barring Service	In stand-by, press <b>☉</b> (4) (4) (1)
Register selected numbers for Nuisance Call Barring Service	In stand-by, press <b>☉</b> (4) (4) (2)
Delete all entries	In stand-by, press <b>☉</b> (4) (4) (3)
Deleting last saved entry	In stand-by, press <b>☉</b> (4) (4) (4)
Confirm total numbers set	In stand-by, press <b>☉</b> (4) (4) (5)

### Caller ID Request Service

Subscription is not required (no monthly fees).

Activate	In stand-by, press <b>☉</b> (4) (6) (1)
Deactivate	In stand-by, press <b>☉</b> (4) (6) (2)
Status request	In stand-by, press <b>☉</b> (4) (6) (3)

### Dual Network Service

Dual Network Service is a paid option (monthly fees apply) that requires subscription.

-25-

Switch to FOMA terminal	In stand-by, press <b>☉</b> (5) (2) (1) (1) enter network security code (four digits) (1)
Status request	In stand-by, press <b>☉</b> (5) (2) (2)

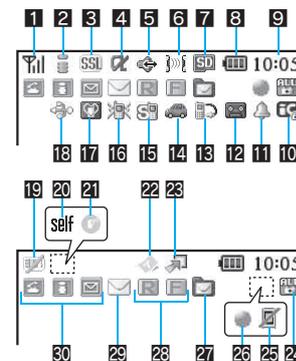
### Using Services from the FOMA Terminal

Service	Phone number
Collect call (recipient is charged for call)	(No area code) 106
Standard directory assistance calls or calls to DoCoMo directory assistance for mobile phones (fees apply)	(No area code) 104
● Only registered users appear in directory assistance.	
Send telegram (fees apply; telegram charge) 8 AM to 10 PM	(No area code) 115
Time (fees apply)	(No area code) 117
Weather forecast (fees apply)	(No area code) 119
Police	(No area code) 110
Fire/ambulance	(No area code) 119
Maritime emergency	(No area code) 118
Disaster message (fees apply)	(No area code) 171

-26-

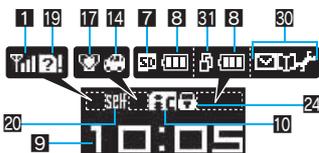
### Icon List

#### Main Display



-27-

### Sub Display



The display allows you to check the current status after the power is turned on or while setting up functions. (The main display is described first and the sub display next).

1	Signal strength indicator
2	i-mode/Full Browser
3	SSL indicator
4	i-appli indicator
5	Hands-free
6	Ir exchange/External device indicator
7	microSD Memory Card is inserted
	Data on microSD Memory Card is being viewed

-28-

8	Battery level
	Charging
9	Clock display
10	IC Card lock
11	Alarm (Alarm/Schedule/ToDo list/ Reception/Recording)
12	Record message
	Number of messages
13	Earphone/Microphone connected
14	Public mode (Drive mode)
15	Silent
16	Vibrator enabled
17	Manner mode active
18	FOMA USB cable is connected
19	Appears when FOMA card is malfunctioning or not inserted
	Non-DoCoMo FOMA card is inserted
20	Self mode enabled
21	PushTalk in progress
22	View ToruCa
23	Shortcut menu registration indicator
24	Restriction enabled
25	Private filter
26	One Seg being recoded

-29-

27	Mail being held at the center
	Mail being held at the center full
28	Unread Message R/F
	Received Message R/F full
	Message R/F being held at the center
	Message R/F being held at the center full
	Unread Message R/F, Message R/F being held at the center
	Unread Message R/F, Message R/F being held at the center full
	Received Message R/F full, Message R/F being held at the center
	Received Message R/F and Message R/F being held at the center full
29	Unread mail
	Inbox full
	Unread SMS
	SMS is full
30	Multitask
	● When two or more functions are running, icons also appear on the sub display.
31	Other than the stand-by display are shown on the main display

Refer to P. 28 to P. 30 of Manual for detailed explanations on displayed icons.

-30-

### <Emergency contacts in case of loss or other accidents>

#### Omakase Lock

Enable/Disable Omakase Lock

☎ 0120-524-360

Office hours: 24hours

#### Other contacts

- <Contacts: >
- <Contacts: >
- <Contacts: >

Please confirm the phone number before you dial.

-31-

# Please Follow Proper Etiquette

When using your FOMA terminal, please be considerate of those around you.

## Turn Off Your FOMA Terminal in the Following Places

### When in an area where use is prohibited

There are places where the use of mobile phones is prohibited. Be sure to turn off your FOMA terminal in the following places.

On an airplane      In a hospital

There are people outside hospital wards who also use electric medical equipment. Please make sure that your FOMA terminal is turned off in the lobby and waiting room.

### While driving

Talking on FOMA terminal while driving is dangerous and may result in an accident.

Please pull over to a safe place and use your FOMA terminal or set Public mode (Drive mode).

### When in crowded places such as rush-hour trains in case somebody nearby is using an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted cardioverter-defibrillator

Your FOMA terminal may affect the operation of such equipment.

### When in public places such as theaters, movie theaters, or museums

Use of your FOMA terminal in quiet public places will annoy others.

## Be Careful of Where You Use Your FOMA Terminal and the Volume of Your Voice and the Ring Tone

When using your FOMA terminal in a restaurant or a hotel lobby, lower your voice. In crowded places, be careful not to obstruct other pedestrians.

## Be Considerate of the Privacy of the Individuals Around You



Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending images using camera-equipped mobile phones.

## The Following Functions Will Help You to Keep Your Manners in Public

There are useful functions you can use to set your FOMA terminal not to answer incoming calls, and to silence all sounds.

### Manner mode (☞ P. 123)/Original manner mode (☞ P. 124)

Silences the Key/Standby i-motion sound and all the sounds from the FOMA terminal, and Record message is set (Manner mode). When in Manner mode, automatically set functions (Record message, Vibrator, Mic sensitivity up, Ring tone, Mail ring tone, alarm tone, Key/Standby i-motion sound and Low battery alarm) can be set to ON (enable) or OFF (disable) (Original manner mode).

### Public mode (Drive mode) (☞ P. 68)

The caller hears a guidance message that informs the receiver is driving and unable to answer. The call then disconnects. Your FOMA terminal does not sound even when it receives calls, so you can drive safely.

### Vibration mode (☞ P. 121)

Notifies incoming calls by vibration.

### Record message (☞ P. 71)

When you are unable to take a call, the Record message function records the caller's message.

You can also use optional services such as Voice Mail Service (☞ P. 392) and Call Forwarding Service (☞ P. 395).

Access DoCoMo e-site for procedures to change your address or billing plan and for request of information materials.

**From i-mode** iMenu ▶ 料金&お申込・設定 (Charges & Applications/Setting) ▶  
ドコモeサイト (DoCoMo e-site) **Packet communication charges free**

**From PC** My DoCoMo (<http://www.mydocomo.com/>) ▶ 各種手続き (ドコモeサイト)  
(Application procedure (DoCoMo e-site))

- You will need your **Network Security Code** to access e-site from i-mode.
- No packet communication charges are incurred when accessing e-site from i-mode. Accessing from overseas will incur charges.
- You will need your **DoCoMo ID/Password** to access e-site from PC.
- If you do not have or you have forgotten your **Network Security Code** or **DoCoMo ID/Password**, contact the DoCoMo Information Center listed below.
- DoCoMo e-site may not be available depending upon the content of your subscription.
- You may not be able to access some e-site services due to system maintenance, etc.

## General Inquiries <DoCoMo Information Center>

(In English)

 **0120-005-250** (toll free)

\* Can be called from mobile phones and PHSs.

(In Japanese only)

 (No prefix) **151** (toll free)

\* Can only be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSs.

## Repairs

(In Japanese only)

 (No prefix) **113** (toll free)

\* Can only be called from DoCoMo mobile phones and PHSs.

(In Japanese only)

 **0120-800-000** (toll free)

\* Can be called from mobile phones and PHSs.

\* Please confirm the phone number before you dial.

\* For further information, refer to the "Service Station List" included with your FOMA terminal and other devices.



**Don't forget your mobile phone  
... or your manners!**

When using your mobile phone in public, don't forget to show common courtesy and consideration for others around you.

## Sales NTT DoCoMo Group

NTT DoCoMo Hokkaido, Inc.	NTT DoCoMo Tohoku, Inc.	NTT DoCoMo, Inc.
NTT DoCoMo Tokai, Inc.	NTT DoCoMo Hokuriku, Inc.	NTT DoCoMo Kansai, Inc.
NTT DoCoMo Chugoku, Inc.	NTT DoCoMo Shikoku, Inc.	NTT DoCoMo Kyushu, Inc.

**Manufacturer: SHARP Corporation**



To prevent damage to the environment,  
bring used battery packs to an NTT  
DoCoMo service counter, an NTT  
DoCoMo agent or a recycle center.



Made from 100% recycled paper.



This manual is printed using an ink  
based on soy bean oil.

'07.2 (1.1 Edition)  
TINSJA130AFZZ  
07B 3.7 YM TU484①

# FOMA® SH903iTV

## Manual for Data Communication

● Data Communication .....	1
● Before Use .....	2
● General Flow to Prepare for Data Communication .....	3
● Connecting the FOMA Terminal to Your PC .....	3
● Installing the Communication Setting File .....	4
● Communication Settings with the FOMA PC Setup Software .....	6
● Communication Settings Without the FOMA PC Setup Software .....	16
● Sending and Receiving Data (OBEX) .....	23
● AT Command List .....	25

### **Data Communication manual**

This manual explains the necessary items to perform the data communication with FOMA SH903iTV and the installation methods of "SH903iTV Communication Setting File (Driver)" and "FOMA PC Setting Software" in the CD-ROM.

### **For Windows XP operation**

This manual is compliant with Windows XP Service Pack 2. The operation procedure and screens may be partly different depending on the use environment.

## Data Communication

### Data Communication Available from the FOMA Terminal

FOMA terminal communication formats fall into three categories: packet transmission, 64K data communication and data transfer.

- FOMA terminal does not support fax transmissions.
- FOMA terminal supports data communication with musea, sigmarion and sigmarion . Update musea and sigmarion before using.  
Refer to the DoCoMo web page for details on how to update.
- The FOMA terminal is not compatible with Remote Wakeup.

#### Packet transmission

Charges incurred are based on the amount of data sent and received. When you are only connected to the network and are not sending or receiving data, no communication charges are incurred. Remain connected to the network, with no charge, and only send or receive data when necessary. Uses access points that are compatible with FOMA packet transmission, such as the DoCoMo Internet Connection Services "mopera U" and "mopera", and sends and receives data at speeds up to 64 kbps and 384 kbps respectively (A best-effort connection is provided in which transmission speeds vary depending on the transmission environment and network traffic conditions).

For packet transmission, connect the FOMA terminal to a device such as a PC and perform appropriate settings. Best suited for sending and receiving mail text data or other relatively small amounts of data at high speeds.

Note that sending or receiving large files will lead to higher transmission charges.

Making voice calls while performing packet transmissions with a PC or other devices is possible.

#### 64K data communications

Charges incurred are based on the connection time. Uses access points that are compatible with FOMA 64K data communications, such as the DoCoMo Internet Connection Services "mopera U" and "mopera", or a synchronous ISDN 64K access point. Connect the FOMA terminal to a device such as a PC and perform appropriate settings to use 64K data communications. Best suited for sending and receiving relatively large amounts of data, such as downloading Data box contents.

Note that long-time communication leads to higher transmission charges.

#### Data transfer

Transfer or exchange data using a FOMA USB cable (sold separately) or Ir exchange without charges. Send or receive data such as phonebook entries, sent/received messages, and bookmarks.

Use infrared communication when connecting the FOMA terminal to another FOMA terminal or mobile phone. Use either the FOMA USB cable or infrared communication when connecting the FOMA terminal to a device such as a PC.

### Things to Keep in Mind

#### Internet service provider fees

When using the Internet, usage fees are charged by the Internet service provider. These usage fees, paid to the Internet service provider, are separate from the FOMA service fee. Contact your Internet service provider for more information about usage fees.

Use the DoCoMo Internet Connection Services "mopera U" and "mopera". Subscription to "mopera U" requires a charge. "mopera" requires no subscription and charges no monthly usage fee.

#### Host (Internet service provider, etc.) settings

Hosts for packet transmission and 64K data communications differ. For packet transmission, use a host that supports FOMA packet transmission, and for 64K data communications, use a host that supports FOMA 64K data communications or synchronous ISDN 64K communication.

- Connecting to DoPa access points is not possible.
- Connecting to PHS 64K/32K data communication data access points (such as PIAFS) is not possible.

#### User authentication

Depending on the host, user authentication (ID and password) may be necessary when connecting. In such cases, enter your ID and password using communication software (dial-up network) to connect. Your ID and password are provided by your host Internet service provider or host network administrator. Contact your host Internet service provider or host network administrator for more information.

#### Packet transmission and 64K data communications conditions

The following conditions are necessary for communication using the FOMA terminal.

- PC must support FOMA USB cable.
- Must be within the FOMA service area.
- For packet transmission, access point must be compatible with FOMA packet transmission.
- For 64K data communications, host must support FOMA 64K data communications or synchronous ISDN 64K communications.

However, even if above conditions are met, communication may not be possible due to a busy base station or poor signal conditions.

#### Note

- When performing packet transmission, the device connected to your FOMA terminal must be a JATE (Japan Approvals Institute for Telecommunications Equipment) authorized product.

## Before Use

### Confirming the Operating Environment

The following lists the operating requirements for using data communications.

Item	System requirements	
	Communication setting file/FOMA PC Setup Software	FirstPass PC Software
PC	PC/AT compatible A USB port (USB specification 1.1/2.0-compliant) is required.	PC/AT compatible
OS	Windows 2000, Windows XP (all Japanese versions)	
Required memory*	Windows 2000: At least 64 MB Windows XP: At least 128 MB	Windows 2000: At least 32 MB Windows XP: At least 128 MB
Hard disk*	At least 5 MB free space	At least 10 MB free space
Browser		Windows 2000: Internet Explorer 5.5 and above Windows XP: Internet Explorer 6.0 and above

\* Required memory and hard disk are for the "FOMA PC Setup Software" and "FirstPass PC Software" operating environment. May differ depending on the PC system configuration.

- The operation in an upgraded OS cannot be guaranteed.
- Depending on the operating environment, use of the software may not be possible. DoCoMo holds no responsibility for responding to inquiries or guaranteeing operation in environments other than those specified above.

The following warning message may appear when a CD-ROM is set in a PC. This warning is shown by the security setting of Internet Explorer but does not cause any problem for use.

Click はい (Yes).

The following screen is an example for Windows XP. The screen depends on your PC.



### Required Equipment

The following hardware and software are required besides the FOMA terminal and a PC.

- FOMA USB cable (sold separately) or FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01 (sold separately)
- CD-ROM "FOMA SH903iTV CD-ROM" (accessory)

#### Note

- Purchase a dedicated USB cable "FOMA USB cable" or "FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01". USB cables for PC are not available since the connector shape is different.
- The explanations in this manual are based on the case of "FOMA USB cable".

### Data communication terminology

#### APN (Access Point Name)

A character string used by Internet service providers and corporate LANs for identification purposes. The APN of the DoCoMo Internet Connection Service mopera U is **mopera.net** and mopera is **mopera.ne.jp**.

#### cid (Context Identifier)

Registration number assigned when an APN is registered to the FOMA terminal. On the FOMA terminal, numbers 1 to 10 can be used.

#### DNS (Domain Name System)

System that converts domain names (for example, **nttdocomo.co.jp**) into IP addresses used on the PC.

#### IrDA (Infrared Data Association)

Organization that establishes the standard for infrared exchange.

#### IrMC (Ir Mobile Communications)

Standard created for the purpose of transferring data between mobile phones or PDAs (Personal Digital Assistants). Exchange phone numbers and schedules between mobile phones or PDAs with IrMC-compliant infrared terminals.

#### OBEX (Object Exchange)

One of the international data communication standards. Enables sending and receiving data between OBEX-compatible devices such as mobile phones, PCs, digital cameras and printers.

#### QoS (Quality of Service)

Service quality. Technology for using lines as the user intends, during communication. Set communication speed for connection, etc. on the FOMA terminal (P. 28 and P. 34).

#### W-CDMA

One of the third-generation mobile communication systems (IMT-2000) recognized as a global standard. The FOMA terminal is compliant with the W-CDMA standard.

#### W-TCP

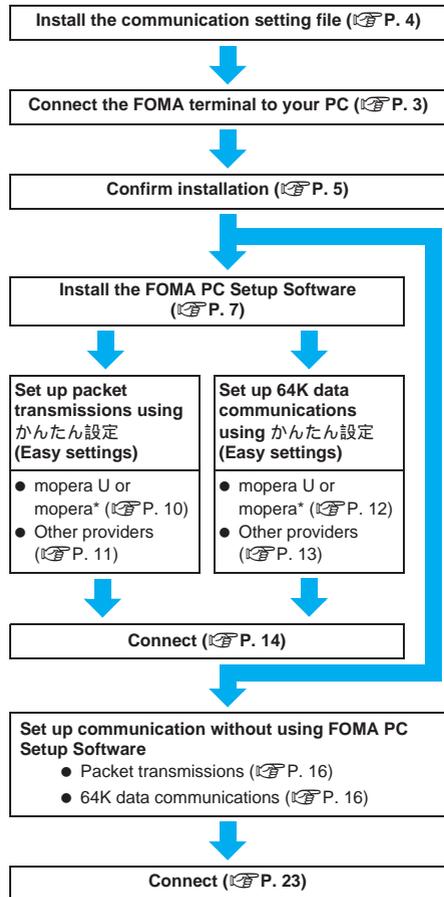
A TCP parameter for maximizing TCP/IP transfer capabilities when using packet transmission on the FOMA network. Use this communication setting to maximize the communication performance of the FOMA terminal.

#### Users with PC administrator rights

Authority that makes access to all OS systems possible. On a single PC, at least one person is set as a user with PC administrator rights. Normally, users without PC administrator rights cannot install or uninstall drivers or software.

## General Flow to Prepare for Data Communication

This section describes the preparation required to connect the FOMA terminal to your PC, and use packet transmission and 64K data communications. The general flow is as shown below.



\* Use "mopera U" (subscription necessary) for the broadband Internet connection, etc. Subscribe to a plan that only charges for months which the service was used. Also available is "mopera", a simple Internet connection service with no subscription necessary.

## Communication Setting File

To connect the FOMA terminal to your PC for data communication, installation of the communication setting file from the accompanying CD-ROM is required (P. 4 to P. 6).

### Note

- If installation fails and **FOMA SH903iTV** is not listed in the screens of step 3 on P. 5, uninstall the communication setting file (P. 5) and install it again.
- If, for some reason, the PC is unable to recognize the FOMA terminal, uninstall the communication setting file (P. 5) and install it again.

## FOMA PC Setup Software/FirstPass PC Software

Install the FOMA PC Setup Software from the accompanying CD-ROM to PC and make a variety of necessary settings to perform packet transmission and 64K data communications connecting the FOMA terminal to PC (P. 6). FirstPass PC Software enables access to FirstPass supported sites via a PC Web browser with user certificates obtained by the FOMA terminal.

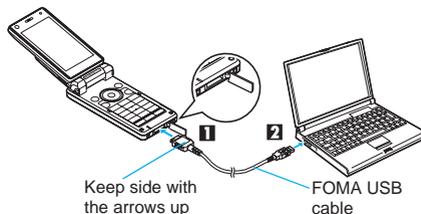
Refer to "FirstPassManual" on the accompanying CD-ROM for details. Adobe Reader (version 6.0 and above is recommended) is required to view "FirstPassManual" (PDF format).

## Connecting the FOMA Terminal to Your PC

Connect the FOMA terminal to your PC with both devices turned on. If the communication setting file is already installed, appears on the FOMA terminal screen.

## Connecting Using the FOMA USB Cable

Open external connection terminal cover



**1** Insert the FOMA side of the FOMA USB cable (sold separately) into the external connection terminal on the FOMA terminal (1).

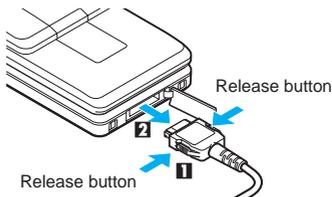
**2** Insert the PC side of the FOMA USB cable into the PC USB connector (2).

- If the FOMA terminal is connected to the PC before the communication setting file is installed, the PC automatically recognizes that the FOMA USB cable has been inserted and requests the driver, and a wizard screen appears.

In this case, remove the FOMA terminal and click キャンセル (Cancel) to exit the wizard.

### How to remove

**1** Hold the release button on the FOMA terminal side of the FOMA USB cables (1), and pull out from the FOMA terminal (2). Pull by force may cause a malfunction.



**2** Pull the FOMA USB cable out from the PC.

### Note

- Connecting the FOMA terminal while charging in the desktop holder is also possible.
- Do not remove the FOMA USB cable during data transmission. Otherwise, transmission disconnection or data loss may occur.

## Installing the Communication Setting File

To make data communication by connecting the FOMA terminal to a PC, the communication setting file is required. Install the file before connecting the FOMA terminal for the first time to the PC.

### Installing the Communication Setting File (Driver)

- Install on the PC using a user with administrator rights.
- Perform steps 1 to 3 first, and then connect the FOMA terminal to the PC.

**1** Insert the accompanying CD-ROM into your PC.

- The initial screen appears.



Microsoft Internet Explorer 6.0 and above is recommended for activating menus.

Take the steps below if one of the followings happens; none of the recommended applications is installed in your PC, menus do not appear even if the CD-ROM is set, or the initial screen does not appear for unknown reasons.

Click ファイル名を指定して実行 (Run) in スタート (Start) menu, enter <CD-ROM drivename>:\USBDRV\SH903iTin.exe, click **OK** and proceed to step 3.

**2** Click データリンクソフト・各種設定ソフト (Data link software/Setting software) FOMA通信設定ファイル (USBドライバ) (FOMA Communication setting file (USB driver)) in the FOMA通信設定ファイル (USBドライバ) (FOMA Communication setting file (USB driver)) column, and then double-click **SH903iTin.exe**.

**3** Click インストール開始 (Start installation).

- FOMA SH903iTVとPCをFOMA USB接続ケーブルにて接続してください。(Connect FOMA SH903iTV to PC with FOMA USB cable.) appears after a set period of time.

**4** Connect the FOMA terminal to your PC when FOMA SH903iTVとPCをFOMA USB接続ケーブルにて接続してください。(Connect FOMA SH903iTV to PC with FOMA USB cable.) appears.

- The installation in progress screen appears and installation automatically begins.
- Connect the FOMA terminal while the power is on.

## 5 Click OK when FOMA SH903iTVドライバのインストールが完了しました。(FOMA SH903iTV driver installation completed.) appears.

- Installation of the communication setting file completes.
- Go to "Confirming the Installed Communication Setting File (Driver)", and confirm the installed communication setting file.

### Note

- Installation may take a few minutes.
- When a message prompting to restart the PC appears, follow the instruction and restart.
- If a PC and the FOMA terminal are connected before the communication setting file is installed, another driver may be automatically installed. When this happens, performing the operation in step 2 displays a message saying that the installed driver must be uninstalled. In this case, uninstall the driver following instruction shown on the screen and install the communication setting file.

## Confirming the Installed Communication Setting File (Driver)

If the FOMA terminal is not properly recognized by the PC, set up and communications are not possible.

Example: Confirming Windows XP drivers.

- The screens are different for other operating systems.

## 1 Click スタート (Start) menu → コントロールパネル (Control Panel), and then click the パフォーマンスとメンテナンス (Performance and Maintenance) icon システム (System) icon.

- System properties screen appears.

### Windows 2000

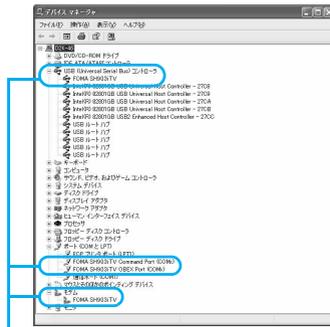
- Select スタート (Start) menu → 設定 (Settings) → コントロールパネル (Control Panel), and then double-click the システム (System) icon.

## 2 Click the ハードウェア (Hardware) tab and then click デバイスマネージャ (Device Manager).

- The device manager screen appears.

## 3 Click on each device, and confirm the name of the installed device.

Confirm that the names of all the installed devices are displayed for **USB (Universal Serial Bus) コントローラ** (USB (Universal Serial Bus) controllers), **ポート (COMとLPT)** (Ports (COM & LPT)) and **モデム (Modems)**.



If recognized, they will appear in this manner.

- The following drivers are installed when the communication setting file is installed.

Device type	Device name
USB (Universal Serial Bus) controllers	● FOMA SH903iTV
Ports (COM and LPT)	● FOMA SH903iTV Command Port (COMx) ● FOMA SH903iTV OBEX Port (COMx)
Modem	● FOMA SH903iTV

The "x" from "COMx" is a number and differs depending on the PC.

## Related Operations

If installation fails or FOMA SH903iTV does not appear in the screen of step 3

- Uninstall the file, and then install it again. Refer to "Uninstalling the Communication Setting File (Driver)" for steps on uninstalling.

## Uninstalling the Communication Setting File (Driver)

This section describes how to uninstall the communication setting file.

- When uninstalling the Communication Setting File, be sure to use a user with administrator rights. An error will occur when other users attempt to uninstall this software.

Contact the computer manufacturer or Microsoft Corporation for information about configuring the administrator rights setting.

## ■ Uninstalling from the accompanying CD-ROM

Example: Uninstalling from Windows XP.

- The screens are different for other operating systems.

### 1 Insert the accompanying CD-ROM into your PC.

- When the initial screen (図P. 4) appears, exit the screen (Close the screen). The initial screen may not appear when the CD-ROM is inserted into the PC depending on your settings.

### 2 Click スタート (Start) menu → ファイル名を指定して実行 (Run).

- The ファイル名を指定して実行 (Run) screen appears.

### 3 Enter <CD-ROM drivename>: \*\$USBDRV\*Win2000\*SH903iTV.exe and click OK.



### 4 When FOMA SH903iTVドライバをアンインストールしますか? (Uninstall FOMA SH903iTV driver?) appears, click はい (Yes).

- Uninstallation of the communication setting file begins.

### 5 When FOMA SH903iTVドライバを削除しました。(FOMA SH903iTV driver deleted.) appears, click OK.

- Uninstallation of the communication setting file finishes.

## ■ Uninstalling from the control panel

Example: Uninstalling from Windows XP.

- The screens are different for other operating systems.

### 1 Click スタート (Start) menu → コントロールパネル (Control panel) and click the プログラムの追加と削除 (Add/Remove programs) icon.

- The プログラムの追加と削除 (Add/Remove programs) screen appears.

#### Windows 2000

- Click スタート (Start) menu → 設定 (Settings) → コントロールパネル (Control panel) and double-click the アプリケーションの追加と削除 (Add/Remove application) icon. The アプリケーションの追加と削除 (Add/Remove application) screen appears.

### 2 Select FOMA SH903iTV USB and click 変更と削除 (Change and Delete).

### 3 When FOMA SH903iTVドライバをアンインストールしますか? (Uninstall FOMA SH903iTV driver?) appears, click はい (Yes).

- Uninstallation of the communication setting file begins.

### 4 When FOMA SH903iTVドライバを削除しました。(FOMA SH903iTV driver deleted.) appears, click OK.

- Uninstallation of the communication setting file finishes.

## Communication Settings with the FOMA PC Setup Software

### FOMA PC Setup Software

Various network settings are required to connect the FOMA terminal to a PC to send packet transmissions and 64K data communications. Use the FOMA PC Setup Software to easily make the following settings.

#### Easy settings

Follow the menu to easily create dial-up settings for FOMA data transmissions and configure the W-TCP setting.

#### W-TCP settings

This optimizes the network settings in the PC before using **FOMA packet transmission**. Use the **W-TCP settings** to optimize the transmission settings and fully utilize the transmission performance.

#### Setting the Host (APN)

This configures the host (APN) required for packet transmissions.

Unlike in the case of 64K data communications, the host for FOMA packet transmissions does not use a telephone number. A host name, called an APN (Access Point Name), is registered to the FOMA terminal for each host in advance. The registration number (cid) of the APN is assigned to the host telephone number field and a connection is established. The APN **mopera.ne.jp** is registered in the first cid (cid1) and **mopera.net** is registered in the third cid (cid3) at the time of purchase for connection to mopera or mopera U. Configure a separate APN to connect to another provider or a corporate LAN. cid [Context Identifier] ...

This number is a number for managing hosts (APNs) used for packet transmission, registered in the FOMA terminal. This is configured when an APN is registered in the FOMA terminal.

## Note

- Alternatively, configure packet transmissions and 64K data communications without using the FOMA PC Setup Software (☞ P. 16).
- FOMA PC Setup Software of versions earlier than 3.0.1 (earlier version FOMA PC Setup Software) supplied with a FOMA terminal released before this handset are installed in the PC, uninstall the earlier version FOMA PC Setup Software in advance.

## From installing the FOMA PC Setup Software to connecting to the Internet

Check the operating environment of the FOMA PC Setup Software (☞ P. 2).

### STEP 1 Install the FOMA PC Setup Software

Uninstall earlier version FOMA PC Setup Software if installed before installing FOMA PC Setup Software of version 3.0.1. If earlier version FOMA PC Setup Software is installed, FOMA PC Setup Software of version 3.0.1 cannot be installed.

When a screen appears to indicate that earlier version W-TCP Setup Software and earlier version APN Setup Software are installed, refer to P. 9.

### STEP 2 Setup preparation

Check the following before making any settings.

- The FOMA terminal is connected to a PC (☞ P. 3)
- The FOMA terminal is recognized on the PC (☞ P. 5)

If the FOMA terminal is not properly recognized by the PC, setup and communications are not possible. Install the communication setting file (☞ P. 4).

### STEP 3 Use Easy settings to configure the network

- Packet transmissions using mopera U or mopera (☞ P. 10)
- Packet transmissions using other providers (☞ P. 11)
- 64K data communications using mopera U or mopera (☞ P. 12)
- 64K data communications using other providers (☞ P. 13)

Refer to P. 16 and following pages for other settings.

### STEP 4 Establish a connection (☞ P. 14)

Connect to the Internet.

## Installing the FOMA PC Setup Software/FirstPass PC Software

- To install the FOMA PC Setup or FirstPass PC Software on a PC, the PC user must have administrative rights. An error will occur when other users attempt to install this software. Contact the computer manufacturer or Microsoft Corporation for information about configuring the administrator rights setting.
- Close all other programs before beginning installation. If other programs are running, click キャンセル (Cancel) on the FOMA PC Setup Software screen, close all other programs after saving, then restart installation.

Example: Installing on Windows XP.

- The screens are different for other operating systems.

## 1 Insert the accompanying CD-ROM into your PC.

- The initial screen appears (☞ P. 4). Microsoft Internet Explorer 6.0 and above is recommended for activating menus. Take the steps below if one of the following happens; none of the recommended applications is installed in your PC, menus do not appear even if the CD-ROM is set, or the initial screen does not appear for unknown reasons. Click ファイル名を指定して実行 (Run) in スタート (Start) menu, enter <CD-ROM drive name>: #pcset#FOMA\_PCSET#setup.exe click **OK** and proceed to step 4.

## 2 Click データリンクソフト・各種設定ソフト (Data link software/Setting software) インストール (Install) in the FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC Setup Software) column.

- When インストール (Install) is clicked, the following warning message may appear. This warning is shown by the security setting of Internet Explorer but does not cause any problem for use.

- When the ファイルのダウンロード セキュリティの警告 (File Download - Security Warning) screen appears

Click 実行 (Run).



- When the Internet Explorer セキュリティの警告 (Internet Explorer - Security Warning) screen appears

Click 実行する (Run).



## To install FirstPass PC Software

- In the initial screen, click データリンクソフト・各種設定ソフト (Data link software/Setting software) インストール (Install) in the **FirstPass PC**ソフト (FirstPass PC Software) column.
- A warning screen similar to the one that appears when the FOMA PC Setup Software is installed may appear depending on the security settings of Internet Explorer, but does not cause any problem for use.
- Follow the instructions in **FirstPassManual** found in the FirstPassPCSoft folder of the CD-ROM to install.

## Windows 2000

- In the initial screen, click データリンクソフト・各種設定ソフト (Data link software/Setting software) インストール (Install) in the **FOMA PC設定ソフト (FOMA PC Setup Software)/FirstPass PCソフト (FirstPass PC Software) column** 開く (Open).

## 3 Click インストール (Install).

- Installation begins.

## 4 Click 次へ (Next).

- Refer to "Notes about installing the FOMA PC Setup Software" on P. 8 if a screen appears, stating that an earlier version of W-TCP Setup Software, FOMA Data Transmission Setup Software or FOMA PC Setup Software is already installed.

## 5 Read the licensing agreement and click はい (Yes) to agree.



- This is the user licensing agreement for the FOMA PC Setup Software. Clicking はい (Yes) (No) cancels the installation.

## 6 Make sure that タスクトレイに常駐する (Resident in task tray) is checked and click 次へ (Next).



- After setup, the W-TCP Settings icon is added to the task tray (参照 P. 14). Adding the icon to the task tray is recommended, as it enables optimization setting of W-TCP transmissions. This icon can be removed or added after installation.

## 7 Confirm the destination program folder and click 次へ (Next).



- To change the destination program folder, click 参照 (Browse), select a destination for installation and click 次へ (Next).

## 8 Confirm the program folder name and click 次へ (Next).



- To change, enter a new folder name and click 次へ (Next).

## 9 Click 完了 (Finish) on the InstallShield Wizardの完了 (InstallShield Wizard completed) screen.

- The FOMA PC Setup Software restarts. Now configure the settings (参照 P. 10).

## Notes about installing the FOMA PC Setup Software

### ● If an earlier version of W-TCP Setup Software, FOMA Data Transmission Software or FOMA PC Setup Software is installed

If an earlier version of W-TCP Setup Software, FOMA Data Transmission Software or FOMA PC Setup Software is installed, a warning screen appears. Click **OK** and uninstall the software using プログラム (アプリケーション) の追加と削除 (Add/Remove programs (application)) before installing the FOMA PC Setup Software (Ver. 3.0.1).

### ● If キャンセル (Cancel) is clicked during installation

The setup cancellation screen appears if キャンセル (Cancel) or いいえ (No) is clicked during setup to cancel installation. To continue with the installation, click いいえ (No). To cancel the installation, click はい (Yes).

## Checking the FOMA PC Setup Software version

In the startup screen of the FOMA PC Setup Software, select **メニュー (Menu)** **バージョン情報 (Version information)** to view version information.

## Uninstalling the FOMA PC Setup Software/FirstPass PC Software

### Before uninstalling the software

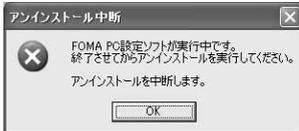
Return the transmission settings changed for the FOMA back to their original settings before uninstalling the FOMA PC Setup Software.

- To uninstall the FOMA PC Setup or FirstPass PC Software on a PC, the PC user must have administrative rights. An error will occur when other users attempt to uninstall this software. Contact the computer manufacturer or Microsoft Corporation for information about configuring the administrator rights setting.

### 1 Right-click in the task tray and click **終了 (Exit)**.



### 2 End any programs that are running.



- The above screen will appear when attempting to uninstall, while FOMA PC Setup Software or W-TCP Setup Software are running. Cancel the uninstallation program and close the running programs.

## Uninstalling the software

Example: Uninstalling from Windows XP.

- The screens are different for other operating systems.

### 1 Click **スタート (Start) menu** → **コントロールパネル (Control panel)** and click the **プログラムの追加と削除 (Add/Remove programs)** icon.

- The **プログラムの追加と削除 (Add/Remove programs)** screen appears.

## Windows 2000

- Click **スタート (Start) menu** → **設定 (Settings)** → **コントロールパネル (Control panel)** and double-click the **アプリケーションの追加と削除 (Add/Remove application)** icon. The **アプリケーションの追加と削除 (Add/Remove application)** screen appears.

### 2 Select **NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC 設定ソフト (NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC Setup Software)** and click **削除 (Remove)**.

Select **NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC 設定ソフト (NTT DoCoMo FOMA PC Setup Software)**.



Click here

### To uninstall FirstPass PC Software

- Select **FirstPass PC ソフト (FirstPass PC Software)** and click **変更と削除 (Change/Remove)**.

### 3 Confirm the program name to delete and click **はい (Yes)**.

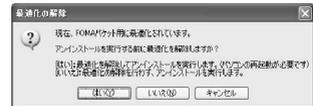
- Uninstallation of the FOMA PC Setup Software begins.

### 4 Click **完了 (Complete)**.

- Uninstallation of the FOMA PC Setup Software is completed.

### Disabling W-TCP optimization

- The screen below appears when W-TCP is optimized.
- Click **はい (Yes)** to disable optimization. W-TCP optimization is disabled after the PC is restarted.



## Setting Up Communication

Use this setup software to easily create a dial-up setting for FOMA data communications.

- Check that the FOMA terminal is correctly connected to the PC before making any settings (☞ P. 3).

### 1 Start the FOMA PC Setup Software.



- Click スタート (Start) menu → すべてのプログラム (All Programs) (for Windows 2000, select プログラム (Programs)) → FOMA PC 設定ソフト (FOMA PC Setup Software) → FOMA PC 設定ソフト (FOMA PC Setup Software). The screen above appears when FOMA PC Setup Software starts.

## Easy Settings

### Communication setting

### 1 Start the FOMA PC Setup Software and click メニュー (Menu) 通信設定 (Communication setting).

### 2 Select 通信ポート指定 (Specify communication port) and click OK.

- Normally, select 自動設定 (推奨) (Automatic setting (recommended)). The connected FOMA terminal is automatically specified.
- To specify a COM port, select **COM**ポート指定 (Specify COM port) and specify a COM port number (COM 1 to 99) to which the FOMA terminal is connected.



#### Note

- Refer to "Confirming the Installed Communication Setting File (Driver)" on P. 5 for the checking method of COM ports.

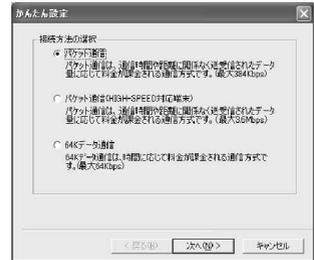
### Selecting packet transmission from Easy settings (with mopera U or mopera)

The setting is made for high-speed packet transmissions at a maximum speed of 384 kbps. The provider uses mopera U or mopera, the DoCoMo Internet Connection Service.

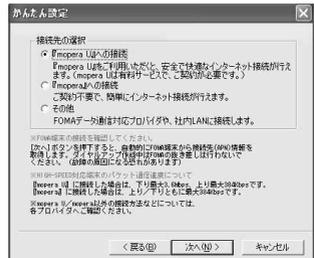
### 1 Start the FOMA PC Setup Software and click かんたん設定 (Easy settings).



### 2 Select パケット通信 (Packet transmission) and click 次へ (Next).



### 3 Select 『mopera U』への接続 (mopera U connection) or 『mopera』への接続 (mopera connection) and click 次へ (Next).



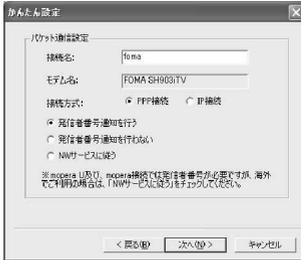
- mopera U is a paid service that requires subscription. A subscription confirmation message appears when mopera U is selected.
- Using another provider (☞ P. 11)

### 4 Click OK on the FOMA 端末設定取得 (FOMA terminal setting acquisition) screen.

- The Host (APN) setting is acquired from the FOMA terminal connected to the PC. Wait until acquisition is complete.

## 5 Enter the connection name and click 次へ (Next).

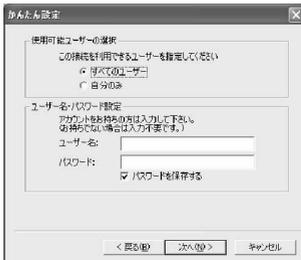
- FOMA SH903iTV supports only PPP connections. Select **PPP接続** (PPP connection) for connection.



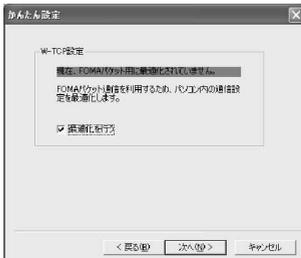
- Enter a name in the **接続名** (Connection name) field.
- The following single-byte characters cannot be entered.  
¥ / : \* ? ! < > | ”
- When connecting to mopera U or mopera, select **発信者番号通知を行う** (Enable Notify caller ID).

## 6 Click 次へ (Next).

- When using mopera U or mopera, **ユーザー名** (User name) and **パスワード** (Password) can be left blank to connect.
- Specify the users to whom rights are granted.



## 7 Make sure that 最適化を行う (Optimize) is checked and click 次へ (Next).



- The W-TCP setting required for packet transmissions is optimized. This screen does not appear if the W-TCP setting has already been optimized.

## 8 Confirm the setting information and click 完了 (Finish).

- The settings appear in a list. Check that the settings are correct.

If **デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショートカットを作成する** (Create dial-up shortcut on desktop) is checked , a shortcut is created automatically.

To change the settings, click **戻る** (Back).

## 9 Click OK on the 完了 (Finish) screen.

- Restart the PC to enable the changes to the settings. Click **はい** (Yes) when a message appears prompting to restart the PC.
- Sending and receiving transmissions (P. 14)

## ■ Selecting packet transmission from Easy settings (with other providers)

The setting is made for high-speed packet transmissions at a maximum speed of 384 kbps.

## 1 Follow steps 1 to 4 of “Selecting packet transmission from Easy settings (with mopera U or mopera)” on P. 10.

- Select **その他** (Other) for the host in step 3.

## 2 Enter the connection name and click 接続先 (APN) 設定 (Host (APN) settings).



- Enter a name in the **接続名** (Connection name) field.
- The following single-byte characters cannot be entered.  
¥ / : \* ? ! < > | ”
- If **発信者番号通知を行う** (Send caller ID) is selected, the caller ID is sent when transmission is executed. For details on the Notify caller ID setting, follow instructions provided by your provider.

## Advanced settings (TCP/IP settings)

- Click **詳細情報の設定** (Advanced) and the IP Address/Name server setting screen appears. To enter dial-up information, such as the provider or corporate LAN, register the necessary addresses according to the instructions.

### 3 Configure the host (APN).

- The default setting for the first cid is **mopera.ne.jp**, the APN used to connect to mopera. The default setting for the third cid is **mopera.net**, the APN used to connect to mopera U.

#### 1 Click 追加 (Add).

The 接続先 (APN) の追加 (Add host (APN)) screen appears.

#### 2 Properly enter the FOMA packet transmission supported host name (APN) for the provider in the 接続先 (APN) (Host (APN)) field, and click OK.

The 接続先 (APN) 設定 (Host (APN) settings) screen reappears.

- Enter only single-byte alphanumeric characters, hyphen (-) or period (.) for 接続先 (APN) (Host (APN)). Register up to ten cids.

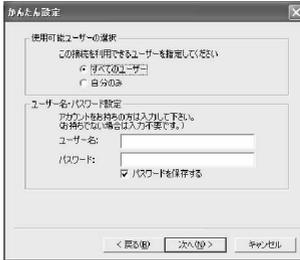
### 4 Click OK on the 接続先 (APN) 設定 (Host (APN) settings) screen.

- The screen in step 2 reappears. The host (APN) set in step 3 appears in 接続先 (APN) の選択 (Selected host (APN)).

### 5 Check the host name (APN) in 接続先 (APN) の選択 (Selected host (APN)) and click 次へ (Next).

### 6 Enter the user name and password and click 次へ (Next).

- Enter the user name and password provided by the provider while making sure that the use of upper and lower case characters is correct.
- Specify the users to whom rights are granted.



### 7 Make sure that 最適化を行う (Optimize) is checked and click 次へ (Next).



- The W-TCP setting required for packet transmissions is optimized. This screen does not appear if the W-TCP setting has already been optimized.

### 8 Confirm the setting information and click 完了 (Finish).

- The settings appear in a list. Check that the settings are correct.

If デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショートカットを作成する (Create dial-up shortcut on desktop) is checked , a shortcut is created automatically.

To change the settings, click 戻る (Back).

### 9 Click OK on the 完了 (Finish) screen.

- Restart the PC to enable the changes to the settings. Click はい (Yes) when a message appears prompting to restart the PC.
- Sending and receiving transmissions (☞ P. 14)

## Selecting 64K data communications from Easy settings (with mopera U or mopera)

The setting is made for 64K data communications. The provider uses mopera U or mopera, the DoCoMo Internet Connection Service.

### 1 Follow steps 1 to 4 of “Selecting packet transmission from Easy settings (with mopera U or mopera)” on P. 10.

- Select **64K データ通信** (64K data communications) for the connection method in step 2.

### 2 Enter the connection name, select a modem and click 次へ (Next).

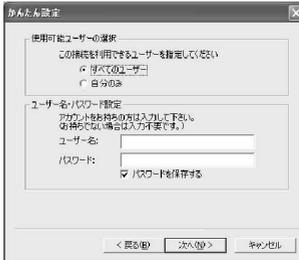


- Enter a name in the 接続名 (Connection name) field.
- The following single-byte characters cannot be entered.  
¥ / : \* ? ! < > | "
- Make sure that **FOMA SH903ITV** is set in モデムの選択 (Selected modem).

- When connecting to moperla U or moperla, select 発信者番号通知を行う (Enable Notify caller ID).

### 3 Click 次へ (Next).

- When using moperla U or moperla, ユーザー名 (User name) and パスワード (Password) can be left blank to connect.
- Specify the users to whom rights are granted.



### 4 Confirm the setting information and click 完了 (Finish).

- The settings appear in a list. Check that the settings are correct.  
If デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショートカットを作成する (Create dial-up shortcut on desktop) is checked , a shortcut is created automatically.  
To change the settings, click 戻る (Back).

### 5 Click OK on the 完了 (Finish) screen.

- Sending and receiving transmissions (P. 14)

## Selecting 64K data communications from Easy settings (with other providers)

The setting is made for 64K data communications.

### 1 Follow steps 1 to 4 of “Selecting packet transmission from Easy settings (with moperla U or moperla)” on P. 10.

- Select 64K データ通信 (64K data communications) in step 2 and その他 (Other) in step 3.

## 2 Make the settings and click 次へ (Next).



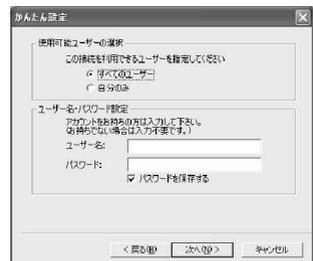
- To connect to a provider with an ISDN synchronous 64K access point, make the following settings when creating a dial-up setting.
  - Connection name: Enter a connection name.
  - Selected modem: FOMA SH903iTV
  - Phone Number: Enter the phone number provided by the provider.
- The following single-byte characters cannot be entered for the connection name.  
¥ / : \* ? ! < > | ”
- The following characters can be entered for the phone number.  
0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 A B C D P T W a b c d p t w !  
@ \$ - . ( ) + \* # , & and single-byte space
- If 発信者番号通知を行う (Send caller ID) is selected, the caller ID is sent when transmission is executed. For details on the Notify caller ID setting, follow instructions provided by your provider.

### Advanced settings (TCP/IP settings)

- Click 詳細情報の設定 (Advanced) and the IP Address/Name server setting screen appears. To enter dial-up information, such as the provider or corporate LAN, register the necessary addresses according to the instructions.

### 3 Enter the user name and password and click 次へ (Next).

- Enter the user name and password provided by the provider while making sure that the use of upper and lower case characters is correct.
- Specify the users to whom rights are granted.



## 4 Confirm the setting information and click 完了 (Finish).

- The settings appear in a list. Check that the settings are correct.

If デスクトップにダイヤルアップのショートカットを作成する (Create dial-up shortcut on desktop) is checked , a shortcut is created automatically.

To change the settings, click 戻る (Back).

## 5 Click OK on the 完了 (Finish) screen.

### Executing the Configured Transmission

Example: Executing the configured transmission from Windows XP.

- The screens are different for other operating systems.

## 1 Double-click the connection icon on the desktop.

- The connection screen appears.
- The name of the connection icon is the connection name entered in the earlier setting.



## 2 Click ダイヤル (Dial).

- The connection starts.



- When using mopera U or mopera, ユーザー名 (User name) and パスワード (Password) can be left blank to connect.
- If a user name and password are entered in step 3 on P. 13, that information is entered automatically into the ユーザー名 (User name) and パスワード (Password) fields.
- When using other providers or dial-up to connect, enter the ユーザー名 (User name) and パスワード (Password) and click ダイヤル (Dial).
- When Save user name and password field is checked , the user name and password do not need to be entered next time.

### Note

- When there is no connection icon on the desktop <Windows XP>  
Click スタート (Start) menu → すべてのプログラム (All programs) → アクセサリ (Accessories) → 通信 (Communications) → ネットワーク接続 (Network connections).  
<Windows 2000>  
Click スタート (Start) menu → プログラム (Programs) → アクセサリ (Accessories) → 通信 (Communications) → ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続 (Network and dial-up connections).
- A screen appears on the FOMA terminal showing the calling for packet transmission or dialing for 64K data communications.
- The transmission speed shown on the PC may differ from the actual transmission speed.

### Disconnecting

Simply closing the browser may not disconnect the connection. Follow the steps below to properly disconnect.

## 1 Click in the task tray and click 切断 (Disconnect).

- The connection is disconnected.

### W-TCP Setting

#### W-TCP function

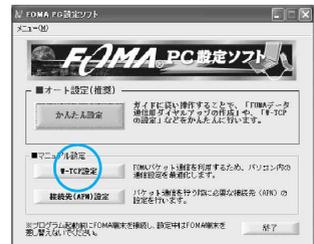
W-TCP Setup Software is a TCP parameter setup tool used to optimize the TCP/IP transmission capacity when sending and receiving packet transmissions over the FOMA network. Configure the transmission settings with this software to fully utilize the transmission performance of the FOMA terminal.

#### Enabling and disabling optimization

##### • For Windows XP

On Windows XP, configuring optimization for each dial-up setting is possible.

## 1 Start the FOMA PC Setup Software and click W-TCP 設定 (W-TCP setting).



## To use the W-TCP setting icon in the task tray

- Click  in the task tray to start W-TCP settings.



## 2 Perform the next operation.

### When the system setting is not optimized

- The following screen appears.  
Select **384 kbps** and click **最適化を行う** (Optimize).  
The W-TCP setting (Dial-up) screen appears. Select the dial-up setting to optimize and click **実行** (Run). Optimization of the system setting and dial-up setting begins.  
Follow the instructions on the screen to restart the PC. After the PC is restarted, optimization of the system setting is enabled.



### When the system setting is optimized

- The following screen appears.  
To change the dial-up, select and optimize the dial-up to be set.  
The changes to the settings take effect after the PC is restarted.



### Disabling optimization

- Click **システム設定** (System settings) on the W-TCP setting (Dial-up) screen.  
The following screen appears.  
Click **最適化を解除する** (Disable optimization) **OK** to disable the setting, for example, in order to send and receive transmissions without the use of the FOMA terminal. The restart confirmation screen appears. End all currently running programs and restart the PC to disable the optimization setting.



## ● For Windows 2000

### 1 Perform the operation in step 1 of "For Windows XP".

### 2 Perform the next operation.

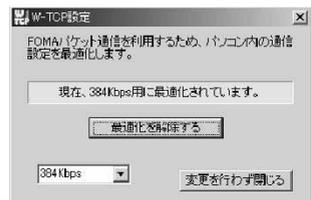
#### When the system setting is not optimized

- The following screen appears.  
Select **384 kbps**, click **最適化を行う** (Optimize), end all currently running programs and restart the PC to enable the optimization setting.



#### When the system setting is optimized

- The following screen appears.  
Click **最適化を解除する** (Disable optimization) **OK** to disable the setting, for example, in order to send and receive transmissions without the use of the FOMA terminal. The restart confirmation screen appears. End all currently running programs and restart the PC to disable the optimization setting.



## Host (APN) Settings

### Reading Host (APN) information from the FOMA terminal

Click **接続先 (APN) 設定** (Host (APN) settings) and on the retrieve setting from FOMA



terminal screen, click **OK**. The connected FOMA terminal is accessed automatically and the registered host (APN) information is read (This operation is not performed if the FOMA terminal is not connected). The setting information can also be read by selecting from the toolbar **ファイル (File)** → **FOMA 端末から設定を取得** (Retrieve setting from FOMA terminal).

### Adding, editing or deleting a host (APN)

#### ● To add a host (APN)

Click **追加 (Add)** on the host (APN) settings screen.

#### ● To edit a registered host (APN)

On the host (APN) settings screen, select the host (APN) and click **編集 (Edit)**.

#### ● To delete a registered host (APN)

On the host (APN) settings screen, select the host (APN) and click **削除 (Delete)**.

- The host (APN) registered to the first and third cid cannot be deleted. When the third number (cid) is selected and **削除 (delete)** is clicked, the number is not actually deleted. The number returns to **mopera.net**.

### Saving to a file

Select **ファイル (File)** from the toolbar to back up the host (APN) settings registered to the FOMA terminal or to save settings being edited.

### Loading settings from a file

To load saved host (APN) settings in order to re-edit them or write them onto the FOMA terminal, select the appropriate function from the **ファイル (File)** menu on the toolbar.

### Writing host (APN) information onto the FOMA terminal

To write the indicated host (APN) setting to the FOMA terminal, click **FOMA 端末へ設定を書き込む** (Write settings onto FOMA terminal) on the Host (APN) setting screen.

## Creating dial-up settings

On the host (APN) settings screen, select an added or edited host (APN) and click **ダイヤルアップ作成** (New dial-up). A screen confirming the writing of the setting to the FOMA terminal appears. Click **はい (Yes)**. After the setting is written to the host (APN), the **パケット通信ダイヤルアップの作成** (New dial-up for packet transmission) screen appears.

Enter a connection name and click **アカウント・パスワードの設定** (Set account and password) (Can be left blank to connect when using **mopera U** or **mopera**).

Enter a **ユーザー名 (User name)** and **パスワード (Password)**, specify the users to whom rights are granted and click **OK**.

If the IP and DNS information from your provider are available, click **詳細情報の設定 (Advanced)** on the new dial-up for packet transmission screen, enter the necessary information and click **OK**.

After entering the information, click **OK OK FOMA 端末へ設定を書き込む** (Write settings onto FOMA terminal), confirm that the old setting is to be overwritten and then write the settings.

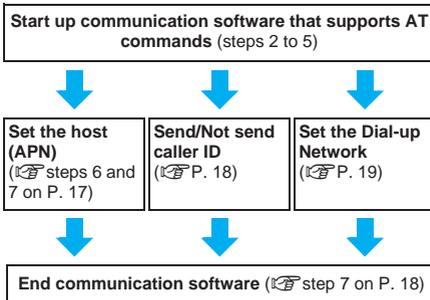
## Communication Settings Without the FOMA PC Setup Software

### Setting Communications for Packet Transmissions and 64K Data Communications

This section describes how to set up packet transmission and 64K data communications without using the FOMA PC Setup Software.

To make the settings, communication software for entering AT commands are required. "Hyper Terminal", which is included as standard with Windows, is used here.

- The flow for setting up with use of AT commands is as follows.
- To use 64K data communications, there is no host (APN) setting.



## Note

- Install communication setting file before making settings for packet transmission and 64K data communications (P. 4).
- AT commands are commands for controlling the modem. The FOMA terminal is compliant with AT commands and also supports some extended commands, as well as some unique AT commands.
- Making host (APN) settings is not necessary when using mopera U or mopera, the DoCoMo Internet Connection Service, since it is set as the default.
- Set Notify caller ID as necessary (When using mopera U or mopera, set **Send**). The default setting is **Not send**.
- Set other settings as necessary. Use is possible with the default settings.

## Setting the Host (APN)

Set the host (APN) for using packet transmission. Register up to 10 numbers. Hosts are managed using cid numbers from 1 to 10 (P. 17). The default setting for the first cid is **mopera.ne.jp**, the APN used to connect to mopera. The setting for the third cid is **mopera.net**, the APN used to connect to mopera U. Save hosts (APN) to cid2 or 4 to 10.

- The registered cid is the connection number set in the dial-up connection settings.
- Contact the Internet service provider or network administrator for hosts (APNs) other than mopera U or mopera.

Example: For Windows XP

- The screens are different for other operating systems.

## 1 Connect the FOMA terminal to your PC.

## 2 Select スタート (Start) menu → すべてのプログラム (All Programs) → アクセサリー (Accessories) → 通信 (Communications) → ハイパーターミナル (Hyper terminal).

- Hyper terminal starts up.

### For Windows 2000

- Select スタート (Start) menu → プログラム (Programs) → アクセサリー (Accessories) → 通信 (Communications) → ハイパーターミナル (Hyper terminal).

## 3 Enter a name in the 名前 (Name) field and click **OK**.



- The advanced settings screen for phone number appears.

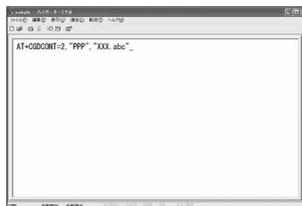
## 4 Select **FOMA SH903iTV** from 接続方法 (Connection method), enter a temporary number in 電話番号 (Phone number) field that does not actually exist (such as 0), and click **OK**.



- For the area code, the default setting in Windows (such as **03**), appears. Set any number for the area code, since it is not related to the host (APN) setting.

## 5 When the connection screen appears, click **キャンセル (Cancel)**.

## 6 Enter host (APN) and press **[Enter]**.



- Enter host (APN) in the format: AT+CGDCONT=<cid>, "PPP", "APN" (P. 28).<br><cid> : Enter 2 or any of 4 to 10.<br>"PPP" : Enter "PPP" as is.<br>"APN" : Enter the host (APN) enclosed in " .
- If **OK** appears, the APN is set successfully.
- To check the current host (APN) setting, enter AT+CGDCONT? and the settings appear in a list.

## When nothing appears on the screen when AT commands are entered

- ATE1☐

Refer to P. 31 for details on AT commands.

## When resetting APN settings using AT commands

- AT+CGDCONT=☐☐☐☐ : To reset all the cids
- AT+CGDCONT=<cid>☐☐☐☐: To reset only specific cids

When reset, <cid>=1 returns to “mopera.ne.jp” (default setting), <cid>=3 returns to “mopera.net” (default setting) and settings for <cid>=2 or 4 to 10 are unregistered.

## When confirming APN settings using AT commands

- AT+CGDCONT?☐☐☐☐

Refer to P. 28 for details on AT commands.



## 7 Confirm that OK appears and select ハイパーターミナルの終了 (Exit hyper terminal) from the ファイル (File) menu.



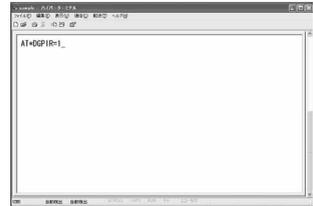
- Hyper terminal ends.
- セッション × × × を保存しますか? (Save session xxx?) appears. However there is no need to save.

## Setting Send/Not Send Caller ID

Handset number (Caller ID) is important personal information. Use caution when setting.

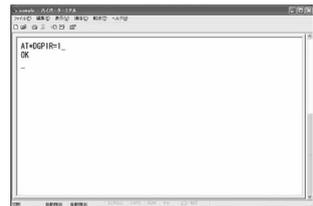
### 1 Follow steps 1 to 5 of “Setting the Host (APN)” on P. 17.

## 2 Set either Send caller ID (186) or Not send caller ID (184) during packet transmission.



- Enter in the format: “AT\*DGPIR=<n>” (☞ P. 27).  
AT\*DGPIR=1☐☐:  
Adds “184” when packet transmission is established with the host (APN).  
AT\*DGPIR=2☐☐:  
Adds “186” when packet transmission is established with the host (APN).

## 3 Confirm that OK appears.



## Send/Not send setting on dial-up networks

Adding “186” (Send) and “184” (Not send) to the host number in dial-up networks is also possible. Setting “186” (Send) and “184” (Not send) in both the \*DGPIR command setting and the dial-up network setting results in the following.

Dial-up network setting (when <cid>=1)	Using the *DGPIR command Send/Not send setting	Send/Not send caller ID
*99***1#	Not set (default setting)	Send
	Not send	Not send
	Send	Send
184*99***1#	Not set (default setting)	Not send (dial-up network “184” is given priority)
	Not send	
	Send	
186*99***1#	Not set (default setting)	Send (dial-up network “186” is given priority)
	Not send	
	Send	

- Enter “AT\*DGPIR=0” to return “186” (Send)/“184” (Not send) to **Not set** (default setting).
- Set **Send** for sending caller ID when using mopera U or mopera, the DoCoMo Internet Connection Service.

## Setting the Dial-up Network

Set the host and TCP/IP protocol. Contact the Internet service provider or network administrator for more information on settings.

### Hosts

For packet transmissions, set the host (APN) in advance. Register numbers (cid) 1 to 10 for the host (APN) in advance, to enable using packet transmission by specifying control numbers. Host (APN) settings are the equivalent to a phonebook for packet transmissions on a PC. Compared to normal phonebook entries, they appear as follows.

In phonebook	In Packet transmission setting
Registered number (memory number)	Control numbers (cids) 1 to 10
Other party's name	Host name (host (APN))
Other party's phone number	*99***<cid>#

For example, when the mopera host (APN), **mopera.ne.jp**, is registered for cid1, connecting to mopera is possible by specifying the host number **\*99\*\*\*1#**. Other registered cids can be used similarly.

\*99\*\*\*1# : Connects to host (APN) registered to cid1. Alternatively, connect with just \*99#.

\*99\*\*\*2# : Connects to host (APN) registered to cid2.

\*99\*\*\*10# : Connects to host (APN) registered to cid10.

As the default setting, **mopera.ne.jp**, the APN used to connect to mopera is registered for cid1, and **mopera.net**, the APN used to connect to mopera U is registered for cid3. When connecting to a corporate LAN or Internet service providers other than mopera or mopera U, register the host (APN) using cid2 or cid4 to 10 (P. 17).

For 64K data communications, enter the access point phone number supplied by the Internet service provider or network administrator.

- Contact the Internet service provider or network administrator for more information on settings.
- Access point phone number is **\*8701** for mopera U and **\*9601** for mopera when using 64K data communications.
- When using packet transmissions, enter **\*99\*\*\*3#** for mopera U and **\*99\*\*\*1#** for mopera (default setting).

### Setting a dial-up network on Windows XP

On Windows XP, use ネットワークの接続ウィザード (Network connection wizard) to set both the host (APN) and TCP/IP protocol.

Example: Using <cid>=3 to connect to mopera U, the DoCoMo Internet Connection Service.

- Subscription to mopera U requires a charge.

1 Click スタート (Start) menu → すべてのプログラム (All programs) → アクセサリ (Accessories) → 通信 (Communications) → ネットワーク接続 (Network connections).

- The network connections screen appears.

2 Click 新しい接続を作成する (Create new connection) in ネットワークタスク (Network tasks).

- A new connection wizard screen appears.

3 Click 次へ (Next).

- The screen to select network connection type appears.

4 Select インターネットに接続する (Dial-up to the Internet) and click 次へ (Next).

- A preparation screen appears.

5 Select 接続を手動でセットアップする (Manually set up Internet connection) and click 次へ (Next).

- The Internet connection screen appears.

6 Select ダイヤルアップモデムを使用して接続する (Connect through phone line and modem) and click 次へ (Next).

- A screen to specify the device appears.

7 Select モデム - FOMA SH903iTV (COMx) (Modem - FOMA SH903iTV (COMx)) and click 次へ (Next).

- A number will replace "x".
- The connection name screen appears.
- Screen does not appear when no modems other than **FOMA SH903iTV** are installed.

8 Enter a connection name in the ISP名 (ISP name) field and click 次へ (Next).



- The phone number to dial screen appears.
- The **ISP名** is the name of the internet service provider.

## 9 Enter the host number in 電話番号 (Phone number) field and click 次へ (Next).



- The Internet account connection information screen appears.
- To connect to <cid>=3 (mopera U), enter “\*99\*\*\*3#”.

## 10 Set options in the screen, as shown below and click 次へ (Next).



- The new connection wizard completed screen appears.
- When using mopera U or mopera, ユーザー名 (User name) and パスワード (Password) can be left blank to connect.
- When connection to the Internet using a provider other than mopera U or mopera, enter the user name and password for the provider in the ユーザー名 (User name) and パスワード (Password) fields.

## 11 When 新しい接続ウィザードの完了 (New connection wizard completed) appears, click 完了 (Finish).

- The newly created connection wizard appears.

## 12 Confirm the setting information and click キャンセル (Cancel).

- Only confirming the settings without actually connecting.

## 13 Select icon for host created and select プロパティ (Properties) from the ファイル (File) menu.

- Properties screen for the host appears.

## 14 Confirm all the settings in the 全般 (General) tab.



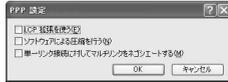
- When two or more modems are connected to the PC, make sure that **FOMA SH903iTV** in 接続の方法 (Connect using) shows . When  appears instead, change to . For modems other than **FOMA SH903iTV**, change  to .
- Confirm that **ダイヤル情報を使う** (Use dialing rules) shows . When  appears instead, change to .

## 15 Click the ネットワーク (Networking) tab, confirm all settings and click 設定 (Settings).



- Set 呼び出すダイヤルアップサーバーの種類 (Type of dial-up server to call) to **PPP: Windows95/98/NT4/2000, Internet**.
- In the この接続は次の項目を使用します (Components checked are used by this connection) field,  should appear only for インターネットプロトコル (TCP/IP) (Internet protocol (TCP/IP)). Leave **QoS パッケージューラ** (QoS packet scheduler) settings as is. No changes are necessary.
- The PPP setting screen appears.
- Confirm with Internet service provider or network administrator for TCP/IP settings used for connecting to Internet service provider.

## 16 Check all options to show and click OK.



- Properties screen of the host reappears.

## 17 Click OK on the プロパティ (Properties) screen.

- The host and TCP/IP protocol are set.
- Refer to P. 23 for details on connecting to dial-up network.

## ■ Setting a Dial-up Network on Windows 2000

On Windows 2000, use ネットワークの接続ウィザード (Network Connection Wizard) to set both the host (APN) and TCP/IP protocol.

Example: Using <cid>=3 to connect to moperu U, the DoCoMo Internet Connection Service.

- Subscription to moperu U requires a charge.

## 1 Click スタート (Start) menu → プログラム (Programs) → アクセサリ (Accessories) → 通信 (Communications) → ネットワークとダイヤルアップ接続 (Network and Dial-up Connections).

- The network and dial-up connections screen appears.

## 2 Double-click the 新しい接続の作成 (Create new connection) icon.

- The location information screen appears.
- This screen appears the first time the 新しい接続の作成 (Create new connection) icon is double-clicked.  
For the second and subsequent times, proceed to step 5.

## 3 Enter 市外局番 (Area code) and click OK.

- The phone and modem options screen appears.

## 4 Click OK.

- A network connection wizard screen appears.

## 5 Click 次へ (Next).

- The screen to select network connection type appears.

## 6 Select インターネットにダイヤルアップ接続する (Dial-up to the Internet) and click 次へ (Next).

- A wizard startup screen appears.

## 7 Select インターネット接続を手動で設定するか、またはローカルエリアネットワーク (LAN) を使って接続します (Connect to Internet manually or through local area network (LAN)) and click 次へ (Next).

- The screen to select the Internet appears.

## 8 Select 電話回線とモデムを使ってインターネットに接続します (Connect through phone line and modem) and click 次へ (Next).

- A screen to specify the modem appears.

## 9 Confirm that FOMA SH903iTV is set in インターネットへの接続に使うモデムを選択する (Select modem to use to connect to the Internet) and click 次へ (Next).

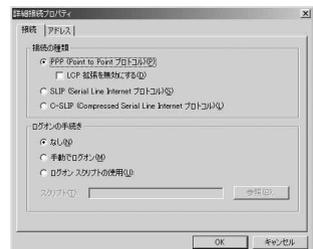
- The Internet account connection information screen appears.
- Set to FOMA SH903iTV if not set.
- Screen does not appear when no modems other than FOMA SH903iTV are installed.

## 10 Enter the host number in 電話番号 (Phone number) field and click 詳細設定 (Advanced).

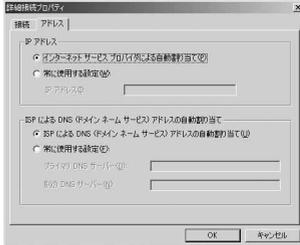


- Advanced connection properties screen appears.
- Confirm that 市外局番とダイヤル情報を使う (Use area code and dial-up information) shows . When  appears instead, change to .

## 11 Confirm that all settings in the 接続 (Connection) tab are set as shown in the example screen below.



12 Click the アドレス (Addresses) tab and confirm that all settings are set as shown in the example screen below.



- Confirm with Internet service provider or network administrator for TCP/IP settings used for connecting to Internet service provider.

13 Click OK.

- Internet account connection screen reappears.

14 Click 次へ (Next).

- The Internet account login information screen appears.

15 Confirm all settings and click 次へ (Next).

- The PC configuration screen appears.
- When using moper a U or moper a, ユーザー名 (User name) and パスワード (Password) can be left blank to connect. When 次へ (Next) is clicked with ユーザー名 (User name) and パスワード (Password) left blank, a confirmation screen appears for the each of them. Click はい (Yes).
- When connection to the Internet using a provider other than moper a U or moper a, enter the user name and password for the provider in the ユーザー名 (User name) and パスワード (Password) fields.

16 Enter a connection name in the 接続名 (Connection name) field and click 次へ (Next).



- The e-mail account configuration screen appears.

17 Select いいえ (No) and click 次へ (Next).

- An Internet connection wizard completed screen appears.

18 Click 完了 (Finish).

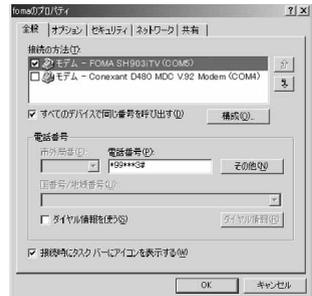


- Network and dial-up connections screen reappears.

19 Select icon for host created and select プロパティ (Properties) from the ファイル (File) menu.

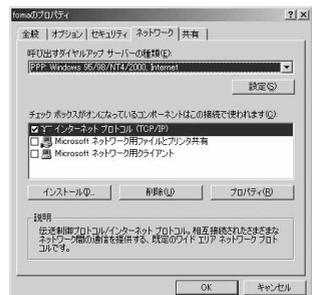
- Properties screen for the host appears.

20 Confirm all the settings in the 全般 (General) tab.



- When two or more modems are connected to the PC, make sure that **FOMA SH903iTV** in 接続の方法 (Connect using) shows . When  appears instead, change to . For modems other than **FOMA SH903iTV**, change  to .
- Confirm that **ダイヤル情報を使う** (Use dialing rules) shows . When  appears instead, change to .

21 Click the ネットワーク (Networking) tab and check all the settings.



- Set 呼び出すダイヤルアップサーバーの種類 (Type of dial-up server to call) to **PPP: Windows95/98/NT4/2000, Internet**.
- Only **インターネットプロトコル (TCP/IP)** (Internet Protocol (TCP/IP)) should show .

## 22 Click 設定 (Settings).

- The PPP setting screen appears.

## 23 Check all options to show and click OK.



- Properties screen of the host reappears.

## 24 Click OK.

- The host and TCP/IP protocol are set.
- Refer to P. 23 for details on connecting to dial-up network.

## Connecting to the Dial-up Network

Example: Connecting with Windows XP.

- The screens are different for other operating systems.

## 1 Connect the FOMA terminal to your PC.

## 2 Click スタート (Start) menu → すべてのプログラム (All Programs) → アクセサリ (Accessories) → 通信 (Communications) → ネットワーク接続 (Network connections).

- The dial-up network screen appears.

## 3 Double-click the connection icon.



- The connection screen appears.
- Alternatively, select the host icon and then select 接続 (Connect) in the ファイル (File) menu to display the connection screen.

## 4 Confirm the settings and click ダイアル (Dial-up).



- The FOMA is connected to the host.
- The phone number set in "Setting the Dial-up Network" (見 P. 19) appears in the ダイアル (Dial-up) field.
- When using mopera U or mopera, ユーザー名 (User name) and パスワード (Password) can be left blank to connect.

## Disconnecting

Simply closing the browser may not disconnect the connection. Follow the steps below to properly disconnect.

## 1 Click in the task tray and click 切断 (Disconnect).

- The connection is disconnected.

## Sending and Receiving Data (OBEX)

### Sending/Receiving FOMA Terminal Data to/from a PC

- The FOMA terminal has OBEX as a data communication protocol. OBEX data communication enables sending and receiving phonebook, owner information from the Own number screen, Schedule, ToDo list, sent mail (including SMS), received mail (including SMS), unsent mail (including SMS), text memos, melodies, My picture, i-motion, My Documents and bookmark data to and from a PC. The FOMA SH903iTV is also equipped with an Ir exchange function. Send and receive phonebook entries or data from received mail to/from other FOMA terminals also equipped with the Ir exchange function. Also, transfer data using microSD Memory Card.
- Use the following three types of data communication with the FOMA terminal.
  - Send data one item at a time, from a PC to a FOMA terminal (Write 1).
  - Send data in bulk, from a PC to a FOMA terminal (Write all).
  - Send data in bulk, from a FOMA terminal to a PC (Read all).

- During data communication, the handset will be outside the service area, and functions such as voice/Videophone call, i-mode, i-mode mail, packet transmission, and PushTalk will not be available.
- Even after completion of data communication, 電波 (outside the service area) may be displayed for a short time.

#### Note

- Make sure the FOMA terminal is properly connected to the PC. If not connected properly, sending and receiving data may not be possible, or data may be lost.
- Check whether there is enough remaining battery power of the FOMA terminal. If data communication is performed when the battery level is low or empty, sending and receiving data may not be possible, or data may be lost. Performing operations while charging the FOMA terminal in the desktop holder is recommended.
- Check the PC power supply as well. If not turned on, sending and receiving data may not be possible, or data may be lost.
- Perform data communication with the FOMA terminal in stand-by. When movie/i-motion is set as the stand-by display, stop movie/i-motion playback before performing data communication.
- During communication (voice/Videophone call, data communication, and PushTalk), data cannot be sent or received. Also, when sending and receiving data, other data communication cannot be performed. However, receiving a call, right after data communication has begun, may be possible. In such cases, the sending or receiving of data is canceled.
- FOMA card phonebook data cannot be sent.
- During Ir exchange, melodies, still pictures, i-motion or PDF files with restrictions for mail attachment and output from the FOMA terminal cannot be sent. However, still pictures and movies shot with the built-in camera can be sent even if File restriction is set to **Restricted**.
- Mail with i-appli start up designations can be sent after attached data has been deleted.
- Mail attachment data exceeding 100 KB (including the message text) are deleted and only message is sent.
- Data such as phonebook entries cannot be sent or received while All lock, or Self mode is set. Data of locked functions cannot be received while Function lock is set.
- Phonebook data cannot be sent or received when Keypad dial lock is set.
- Depending on data size, data communication may take some time. In addition, the FOMA terminal may not be able to receive data due to data size.
- When receiving phonebook data, data will be added from memory number **010** for single entry, or in accordance with memory number information when receiving all entries.
- When receiving all phonebook entries, Owner information (excluding first phone number) registered in Own number will be overwritten.
- Phonebook entries are sent in memory number order.
- When sending all phonebook entries, Owner information from own number screen is also sent.
- PDF files which exceed 2 MB cannot be sent.

## Devices required for data communication (OBEX)

- To perform data communication, downloading OBEX-compliant data transfer software from the Internet, and installing this software to your PC is necessary. Refer to the software manual for information on operating environment and installation methods. In addition, installation of the FOMA SH903iTV Communication setting file (電波 P. 4 to P. 5) is necessary beforehand.
- A FOMA USB cable is required to connect the FOMA terminal to a PC.

#### Note

- The FOMA terminal data communication (OBEX) function conforms with IrMC1.1. However, depending on the function, some data may not be sent or received even when the other party's terminal complies with IrMC1.1.

## Sending Single Data Item (Write 1)

- Send data from a PC to a FOMA terminal one item at a time.
- Sending one item at a time from a FOMA terminal to a PC is not possible.
- Data transfer operating methods differ depending on the software used. Refer to the software manual for details.

### 1 Send data from a PC using data transfer software (Write 1).

- Refer to the software manual for details on sending data.

#### Note

- When phonebook data is sent (from a PC to the FOMA terminal handset) one entry at a time, entries are saved to the smallest available memory number from **010** to **749**. If all memory numbers from **010** to **749** are already used, entries are saved to the smallest available memory number between **000** and **009**.
- When phonebook data is received and 750 entries (names, phone numbers, or mail addresses) are already registered, or more than 750 entries have been registered, a message appears notifying that no further entries can be saved.

## Sending All Data (Write All/Read All)

- Send and receive all data at once, between a PC and the FOMA terminal.
- "Write all" and "Read all" operations require data transfer software and your FOMA terminal authentication password.
- Data transfer operating methods differ depending on the software used. Refer to the software manual for details.

- 1 **Send data from a PC using data transfer software (Forward all).**
  - Refer to the software manual for details on sending data.
  - Entering your authentication password on the PC will be necessary.
  - Enter your authentication password (four digits).
- 2 **Enter terminal security code (four to eight digits) and the authentication password (four digits).**
- 3 **Start data transmission.**

#### Note

- Performing Write all from a PC to your FOMA terminal replaces all data stored in the FOMA terminal. All data previously stored in your FOMA terminal will be deleted. This includes phonebook, Schedule, and protected mail data saved as secret data.
- If an error occurs during data transmission from a PC to the FOMA terminal, all data stored in the FOMA terminal may be deleted. Check the cable connection, the FOMA terminal battery level, and the PC power supply before performing Write all. Performing operations while charging the FOMA terminal in the desktop holder is recommended.
- Depending on the connected device, the transmission status (bar display) may not appear.

## AT Command List

### AT Commands

AT commands are commands used to set FOMA terminal functions from a PC. When AT commands are entered from a PC, the FOMA terminal performs the corresponding operations.

#### AT command input format

AT commands must always start with "AT". Enter in single-byte alphanumeric characters. Below is an input example.

ATD\*99\*\*\*1#

Return symbol: Entered by pressing the Enter key. Used to separate commands.

Parameter: The command argument

Command: The command name

Each AT command including parameter (number or symbol) following the command must be entered on a single line. A single line means the characters from the first character until the character directly before the  is pressed. Up to 160 characters (including "AT") can be entered.

#### AT command input modes

To operate the FOMA terminal using AT commands, set the PC to terminal mode. In terminal mode, the characters entered from the keyboard are sent directly to the communication port to operate the FOMA terminal.

- Offline mode
  - The FOMA terminal is in stand-by. Normally, this mode is used to operate the FOMA terminal using AT commands.
- Online data mode
  - The FOMA terminal is connected and performing data communication. When an AT command is entered in this mode, the characters are sent directly to the receiver, and may cause the receiver's modem to malfunction. Do not enter AT commands in this mode.
- Online command mode
  - Even when the FOMA terminal is connected and performing communication, with special operations, operation by AT commands is possible. When in this mode, AT commands are executed while remaining connected to the receiver, and communications can be resumed after the operation is completed.

#### Note

- Terminal mode enables a single PC to operate like a communication terminal. Characters entered from the keyboard are sent to the device or line connected to the communication port.

#### Switching between online data mode and online command mode

Use either of the following methods to switch the FOMA terminal from online data mode to online command mode.

- Enter "+++" command, or enter the set code in the "S2" register.
- Turn the RS-232C\* ER signal OFF when set to "AT&D1".

To switch from online command mode to online data mode, enter "ATO.

\* USB interface emulates an RS-232C signal line, enabling RS-232C signal line control by the communication application.

## AT Command List

[M]: AT commands that can be used with the FOMA SH903iTV Modem Port.

AT Command	Overview	Parameter/Explanation	Execution Example
AT [M]		The modem function of the FOMA terminal can be controlled by adding commands in the list to the end of this command. Returns OK if only AT is entered.	AT☐ OK
AT%V [M]	Displays FOMA terminal version.*2		AT%V☐ Ver1.00  OK
AT&C<n> [M]	Sets operating condition for circuit CD (DCD) signals sent to DTE.*1	n=0: Circuit CD always ON n=1: Circuit CD signal changes according to line connection status (default setting) When "&C1" is set, the CD signal is turned "ON" directly before the CONNECT signal is sent when connection is completed. The CD signal is turned "OFF" right before "NO CARRIER" is sent when the circuit is disconnected.	AT&C1☐ OK
AT&D<n> [M]	Sets the operation when the circuit ER (DTR) signal received from DTE changes from "ON" to "OFF" during online data mode.*1	n=0: Ignores status (always considers signal ON) n=1: Sets online command mode when signal changes from ON to OFF n=2: Disconnects line and activates offline mode when signal changes from ON to OFF (default setting)	AT&D1☐ OK
AT&E<n> [M]	Selects speed display specifications when connecting.*1	n=0: Wireless area transmission speed appears. n=1: DTE serial transmission speed appears. (Default setting)	AT&E0☐ OK
AT&F<n> [M]	Resets the FOMA terminal's AT command settings to their default settings. If this command is entered during communication, the settings are reset after disconnected.*2	Can only be set as n=0 (can be omitted).	AT&F☐ OK
AT&S<n> [M]	Controls when the signal of data set ready (DR) is set to DTE.*1	n=0: Always ON (default setting) n=1: DR signal ON when line is connected	AT&S0☐ OK
AT&W<n> [M]	Stores the current settings in the FOMA terminal's memory.*2, 5	Can only be set as n=0 (can be omitted).	AT&W☐ OK
AT * DANTE [M]	Displays number of antennas on TE.*2	The result from this command is in the following format. * DANTE:<m>  <m> 0: Status where outside the service area appears on the FOMA terminal 1: Status where zero or one antenna appears on the FOMA terminal 2: Status where two antennas appears on the FOMA terminal 3: Status where three antennas appears on the FOMA terminal	AT * DANTE☐ * DANTE:3  OK
AT * DGANSM= <n> [M]	Sets Accept/Reject call modes for incoming packet communications. This setting is only valid for incoming packet communications after entering setup commands.*2	n=0: Sets Reject call and Accept call settings to <b>OFF</b> (Default setting) n=1: Sets Reject call settings to <b>ON</b> n=2: Sets Accept call settings to <b>ON</b>	AT * DGANSM=0☐ OK AT * DGANSM?☐ * DGANSM:0  OK
AT * DGAPL=<n> [,<cid> [M]	Sets host (APN) to accept transmissions for incoming packet communications. APN settings use <cid> parameter defined by "+CGDCONT".*2	Adds or deletes from Accept calls list with <n> parameter. If <cid> parameter is abbreviated, adds (<n>=0) or deletes (<n>=1) all of <cid> to list. Adds (deletes) <cid> not defined with "+CGDCONT" to list with this command. n=0: Adds to list (Adds APN defined by <cid> to Accept calls list) n=1: Deletes from list (Deletes APN defined by <cid> from Accept calls list)	AT * DGAPL=0,1☐ OK AT * DGAPL?☐ * DGAPL:1  OK

AT Command	Overview	Parameter/Explanation	Execution Example
AT*DGARL=<n> [ <cid>]  [M]	Sets host (APN) to reject transmissions for incoming packet communications. APN settings use <cid> parameter defined by "+CGDCONT". <sup>2</sup>	Adds or deletes from Reject calls list with <n> parameter. If <cid> parameter is abbreviated, adds (<n>=0) or deletes (<n>=1) all of <cid> to list. Adds (deletes) <cid> not defined with "+CGDCONT" to list with this command. n=0: Adds to list (Adds APN defined by <cid> to Reject calls list) n=1: Deletes from list (Deletes APN defined by <cid> from Reject calls list)	AT*DGARL=0,1 OK AT*DGARL? *DGARL:1  OK
AT*DRPW  [M]	Displays the reception power sent from FOMA terminal. <sup>2</sup>	The result from this command is in the following format. *DRPW:<m>  m: 0 to 75 (reception power)	AT*DRPW *DRPW:0  OK
AT*DGPIR=<n>  [M]	Setting this command is valid when establishing communication. Enables adding 186 (send caller ID) and 184 (not send caller ID) to host number. Also available in dial-up network settings. <sup>2</sup>	n=0: When establishing packet transmission, connects to a host (APN) directly (default setting) n=1: When establishing packet transmission, adds 184 and connects to host (APN) n=2: When establishing packet transmission, adds 186 and connects to host (APN) When 186 (send caller ID)/184 (not send caller ID) are set by this command and in the dial-up network settings, refer to the table on P. 18.	AT*DGPIR=0 OK AT*DGPIR? *DGPIR:0  OK
+++  [M]	Switches the FOMA terminal mode from online data mode to online command mode. Escape guard interval is fixed at one second. <sup>2</sup>		(During communication) +++ (Does not appear) OK
AT+CACM=[ <passwd>]  [M]	Resets the total accumulated cost recorded on the UIM. <sup>2</sup>	Resets the total accumulated cost recorded on the UIM, if the password matches.  <passwd>: SIM PIN2 Encloses this string parameter with quotation marks (" ") when entering.	AT+CACM="0123"  OK
AT+CAOC=[ <mode>]  [M]	Inquires the current accumulated cost. <sup>2</sup>	<mode> 0: Inquires the cost of current call.  The result from this command is in the following format. +CAOC:"<ccm>"	AT+CAOC +CAOC:"00001E"  OK
AT+CBC  [M]	Inquires the battery status. <sup>2</sup>	The result from this command is in the following format. +CBC:<bcs>,<bcl>  <bcs> 0: The battery operates the FOMA terminal 1: Charging the battery 2: The battery is unconnected 3: Reducing the power  <bcl> 0 to 100 (remaining battery power)	AT+CBC +CBC:0,80  OK
AT+CBST=[<speed>[,<name>[,<ce>]]]  [M]	Sets the bearer service when establishing transmission. This setting is only valid when AT+FCLASS=<n> command (P. 30) = 0. <sup>1</sup>	<speed> 116: 64K data communications (default setting)  <name> 1: fixed value <ce> 0: fixed value	AT+CBST=116,1,0 OK
AT+CEER  [M]	Displays disconnection reason for preceding communication session. <sup>2</sup>	Refer to "Reasons for Disconnection" (P. 34).	AT+CEER +CEER:36  OK

AT Command	Overview	Parameter/Explanation	Execution Example
AT+CGDCONT [M]	Sets host (APN) accessed when establishing packet transmission. <sup>*2</sup>	Refer to "More on AT Commands" (📖 P. 34).	Refer to "More on AT Commands" (📖 P. 34).
AT+CGEQMIN [M]	Registers criterion determining whether to permit QoS (Quality of Service) sent from network when establishing packet transmission. <sup>*2</sup>	Refer to "More on AT Commands" (📖 P. 34).	Refer to "More on AT Commands" (📖 P. 34).
AT+CGEQREQ [M]	Sets QoS (Quality of Service) requested of network during packet transmission. <sup>*2</sup>	Refer to "More on AT Commands" (📖 P. 35).	Refer to "More on AT Commands" (📖 P. 35).
AT+CGMR [M]	Displays FOMA terminal version. <sup>*2</sup>		AT+CGMR📄 1234567890123456 OK
AT+CGREG=<n> [M]	Sets whether to send network registration status. Service area information (inside/outside) is sent. <sup>*1</sup>	<n> 0: Does not set (default setting) 1: Sets When "AT+CGREG=1" is set, information is sent in the format "+CGREG:<stat>". 0, 1, 4 or 5 can be set for the <stat> parameter. <stat> 0: Outside area 1: Inside area (home) 4: Unknown 5: Inside area (visitor)	AT+CGREG=1📄 OK (Set to send) AT+CGREG?📄 +CGREG:1,0 OK (Indicates outside area) +CGREG:1 (Moved from outside area to inside area)
AT+CGSN [M]	Displays the FOMA terminal's serial number. <sup>*2</sup>		AT+CGSN📄 123456789012345 OK
AT+CLIP=<n> [M]	Shows PC calling number when receiving 64K data communications. <sup>*1</sup>	<n> 0: Does not output results (default setting) 1: Outputs results Displays +CLIP : <n>,<m> for "AT+CLIP?" <m> 0: NW setting to not send own number during transmissions 1: NW setting to send own number during transmissions 2: Unknown	AT+CLIP=0📄 OK AT+CLIP?📄 +CLIP:0,1 OK
AT+CLIR=<n> [M]	Sets whether to send terminal's phone number when establishing 64K data communications. <sup>*2</sup>	<n> 0: Follows the service agreement 1: Does not send 2: Sends (default setting) Displays +CLIR: <n>,<m> for AT+CLIR? <m> 0: CLIR is not running (always send) 1: CLIR is always running (never send) 2: Unknown 3: CLIR temporary mode (default setting is "Do not send") 4: CLIR temporary mode (default setting is "Send")	AT+CLIR=0📄 OK AT+CLIR?📄 +CLIR:2,3 OK
AT+CMEE=<n> [M]	Sets the manner to display FOMA terminal error reports. <sup>*1</sup>	Sets whether to display errors only as "ERROR", or to display reason with text or numerical value. <n> 0: Displays "ERROR" and no result codes (default setting) 1: Displays result codes with numerical values 2: Displays result codes with text When reports are set to display by setting "n=1" or "n=2", they are displayed in the following format: +CME ERROR:xxxx xxxx is a numerical value or text. Refer to "Error Reports" (📖 P. 34).	AT+CMEE=0📄 OK AT+CNUM📄 ERROR AT+CMEE=1📄 OK AT+CNUM📄 +CME ERROR:10

AT Command	Overview	Parameter/Explanation	Execution Example
AT+CNUM  [M]	Displays FOMA terminal phone number. <sup>2</sup>	number: Phone number type : 129 or 145  129: Does not include + international access code 145: Includes + international access code	AT+CNUM +CNUM: "+819012345678",145  OK
AT+COPS=[<mode>[,<format>[,<oper>]]  [M]	Selects a telecommunications carrier to be connected. <sup>2</sup>	<mode> 0: Auto (Automatically searches network and switch telecommunications carriers) 1: Manual (Connects to the telecommunications carrier specified in <oper>) 2: Cancels (disconnects) the connection to the telecommunications carrier Unsupported. 3: Does not make mapping 4: Manual auto (Performs <b>Auto</b> processing if not connected to the telecommunications carrier specified in <oper>) Unsupported.  <format> 2: Fixed value  <oper> is indicated by a hexadecimal number consisting of a country code (MCC) and a network code (MNC). The formats are shown below. Digit 1 of MCC...octet 1 bits 1 to 4. Digit 2 of MCC...octet 1 bits 5 to 8. Digit 3 of MCC...octet 2 bits 1 to 4. Digit 3 of MNC...octet 2 bits 5 to 8. Digit 2 of MNC...octet 3 bits 5 to 8. Digit 1 of MNC...octet 3 bits 1 to 4.	AT+COPS =1,2,"44F001"  OK (Connects to MCC:440MNC:10)
AT+CPAS  [M]	Inquires the activity status of the FOMA terminal. <sup>2</sup>	The result from this command is in the following format. +CPAS:<pas>  <pas> 0: AT commands can be sent/received 1: AT commands cannot be sent/received (does not send the +CPAS:<pas> result) 2: Unknown 3: AT commands can be sent/received and the FOMA terminal is receiving a call 4: AT commands can be sent/received and performing data communication	AT+CPAS +CPAS:0  OK
AT+CPIN=<pin>[,<newpin>]  [M]	Enters the UIM password (PIN1, PIN2). <sup>2</sup>	<pin> Enters PIN1 while waiting for PIN1 input. (<pin> Enter <pin> parameter only) Enters PIN2 while waiting for PIN2 input. (<pin> Enter <pin> parameter only) Enters PUK1 while waiting for PUK1 input. Enters PUK2 while waiting for PUK2 input. Encloses this string parameter with quotation marks ("") when entering.  <newpin> Enters a new PIN1 while waiting for PUK1 input. Enters a new PIN2 while waiting for PUK2 input. Encloses this string parameter with quotation marks ("") when entering.	AT+CPIN? +CPIN:SIM PIN1  OK (Indicates waiting status for PIN1 input) AT+CPIN="1234" OK  AT+CPIN? +CPIN:SIM PUK1  OK (Indicates waiting status for PUK1 input) AT+CPIN="12345678","1234" OK

AT Command	Overview	Parameter/Explanation	Execution Example
AT+CR=<mode>  [M]	Sets whether to display packet transmission/64K data communications before "CONNECT" result code is displayed during line connection.*1 "GPRS" is displayed for packet transmission, and "SYNC" is displayed for 64K data communications.	<mode> 0: Does not display when line is connected (default setting) 1: Displays when line is connected	AT+CR=1☐ OK ATD*99** *1# +CR:GPRS  CONNECT
AT+CRC=<n>  [M]	Sets to use extended results code at reception.*1	n=0: Does not use extended results code (Default setting) n=1: Uses extended result codes	AT+CRC=0☐ OK
AT+CREG=<n>  [M]	Sets service area information on or off.*1	When "AT+CREG=1" is set, information is set in the format "+CREG:<stat>". 0, 1, 4 or 5 can be set for the <stat> parameter. <n> 0: Does not send (default setting) 1: Sends <stat> 0: Outside area 1: Inside area (home) 4: Unknown 5: Inside area (visitor)	AT+CREG=1☐ OK (Set to send) AT+CREG?☐ +CREG:1,0  OK (Indicates outside area) +CREG:1 (Moved from outside area to inside area)
AT+CUSD=<n>[,<str>[,<dcs>]]  [M]	Changes setting toward net for optional services, etc.*1	<n> 0: Answers without intermediate result (default setting) 1: Answers with intermediate result <str> Service code Refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network Services]". <dcs> 0: fixed value	AT+CUSD=0,"xxx xxx"☐ OK
AT+FCLASS=<n>  [M]	Sets the mode.*1	<n> 0: data (fixed value)	AT+FCLASS=0☐ OK
AT+GCAP  [M]	Displays the ability list of the FOMA terminal.*2		AT+GCAP☐ +GCAP:+CGSM, +FCLASS,+W  OK
AT+GMI  [M]	Displays FOMA terminal maker name in single-byte alphanumeric characters.*2		AT+GMI☐ SHARP  OK
AT+GMM  [M]	Displays abbreviated FOMA terminal product name (FOMA SH903iTV) in alphanumeric characters.*2		AT+GMM☐ FOMA SH903iTV  OK
AT+GMR  [M]	Displays FOMA terminal version.*2		AT+GMR☐ Ver1.00  OK
AT+IFC=<n,m>  [M]	Sets local flow control format between the PC and FOMA terminal.*1	DCE by DTE (<n>) 0: No flow control 1: XON/XOFF flow control 2: RS/CS (RTS/CTS) flow control (default setting) DTE by DCE (<m>) 0: No flow control 1: XON/XOFF flow control 2: RS/CS (RTS/CTS) flow control (default setting)	AT+IFC=2,2☐ OK
AT+WS46=<n>  [M]	Sets wireless network used to call. Incoming signals are not affected.*1	n=22: FOMA network (fixed value)	AT+WS46=22☐ OK
A/ [M]	Performs the preceding executed command.*2		A/ OK

AT Command	Overview	Parameter/Explanation	Execution Example
ATA [M]	Performs incoming process for packet or 64K data if entered when receiving the data. <sup>2</sup>	Enter "ATA184☐" (arrival call action for anonymous call) or "ATA186☐" (arrival call action for identified call) while receiving packets.	RING ATA☐ CONNECT
ATD [M]	Establishes communication. <sup>2, 3</sup>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Packet transmission ATD*99***&lt;cid&gt;#☐ When "ATD*99#" is entered: Uses &lt;cid&gt;=1 (default setting) (When &lt;cid&gt; is not entered, setting becomes "&lt;cid&gt;=1"). When syntax starting with "ATD184*99***&lt;cid&gt;#" is entered: "184" is added to host (APN) defined by specified &lt;cid&gt; (Alternatively, "186" can be added by same operation to turn caller ID sending to ON).</li> <li>64K data communications ATD [parameter] [phone number] ☐ Number cannot be dialed if characters other than 0 to 9, *, #, +, A, a, B, b, C, c, D, d, hyphens (-), spaces, T, t, P, p, !, W, w, @, or commas (,) are included. Characters highlighted with ☐ can be entered but are ignored during dialing.</li> </ul>	ATD*99***1#☐ CONNECT
ATE<n> [M]	Sets whether the FOMA terminal returns echo of AT commands sent from the PC. <sup>1</sup>	n=0: Does not return echo n=1: Returns echo (default setting) Normally, set to n=1. If the PC has an echo function, set to n=0.	ATE1☐ OK
ATH [M]	Disconnects line when entered during packet transmission or 64K data communications. <sup>2</sup>		(During communication) +++ (Does not appear) OK ATH☐ NO CARRIER
ATI<n> [M]	Displays the verification code. <sup>2</sup>	n=0: NTT DoCoMo n=1: Displays abbreviated product name (FOMA SH903iTV) n=2: Displays the product version in a format such as "VerX.XX" n=3: Displays each element of ACMP signals n=4: Displays details of the communication functions provided in the FOMA terminal	ATI0☐ NTT DoCoMo  OK
ATO [M]	Returns to online data mode from online command mode during communication. <sup>2</sup>		ATO☐ CONNECT
ATQ<n> [M]	Sets whether to display result codes. <sup>1</sup>	n=0: Displays result codes (default setting) n=1: Does not display result codes	ATQ0☐ OK
ATV<n> [M]	Sets manner of displaying result codes. <sup>1</sup>	Displays all result codes with numbers or text. n=0: Displays result codes with numbers n=1: Displays result codes with text (default setting)	ATV1☐ OK
ATX<n> [M]	Sets whether to include speed in the CONNECT display when connecting. Also detects busy tone or dial tone. <sup>1</sup>	<p>Busy tone detection: Sends BUSY response when number dialed is busy.</p> <p>Dial tone detection: Determines whether FOMA terminal is connected.</p> <p>Speed display: Sets whether to include speed in the CONNECT display when connecting.</p> <p>n=0: No busy tone detection, no dial tone detection, no speed display n=1: No busy tone detection, no dial tone detection, speed display n=2: No busy tone detection, dial tone detection, speed display n=3: Busy tone detection, no dial tone detection, speed display n=4: Busy tone detection, dial tone detection, speed display (default setting)</p>	ATX1☐ OK

AT Command	Overview	Parameter/Explanation	Execution Example
ATZ<n>  [M]	Resets the FOMA terminal's AT command settings.*2, 4	Resets the FOMA terminal's AT command settings to the values set in non-volatile memory. If this command is entered during communication, the settings are reset after disconnected. Can only be set as n=0 (can be omitted).	(When online) ATZ☐ NO CARRIER (When offline) ATZ☐ OK
ATS0=<n>  [M]	Sets number of rings before FOMA terminal automatically receives.*1	n=0: No automatic receiving (Default setting) n=1 to 255: Automatically receives after sets number of rings	ATS0=0☐ OK
ATS2=<n>  [M]	Sets the escape character.	n=0 to 127 (default setting: n=43) When n=127 is set, escape is disabled.	ATS2=43☐ OK ATS2?☐ 043  OK
ATS3=<n>  [M]	Sets the carriage return (CR) character.	Defines the character used to recognize the end of an AT command character string. Appended to the end of the echoed command character string and result code. The settings cannot be changed (default setting: n=13).	ATS3=13☐ OK ATS3?☐ 013  OK
ATS4=<n>  [M]	Sets the line feed (LF) character.	Appended after the CR character, when result codes are displayed as text. The settings cannot be changed (default setting: n=10).	ATS4=10☐ OK ATS4?☐ 010  OK
ATS5=<n>  [M]	Sets the backspace (BS) character.	When detected while entering an AT command, the last character in the input buffer is deleted. The settings cannot be changed (default setting: n=8).	ATS5=8☐ OK ATS5?☐ 008  OK
ATS6=<n>  [M]	Sets pause time (seconds) until dialing.	Sets a register, but has no other effect. n: 2 to 10 (default setting: n=5)	ATS6=10☐ OK
ATS8=<n>  [M]	Sets pause time (seconds) until comma dialing.	Sets a register but does not affect the pause time (3 seconds). n=0: Does not pause n: 1 to 255 (default setting: n=3)	ATS8=3☐ OK
ATS10=<n>  [M]	Sets the delay time (seconds) for automatic disconnection (1/10 seconds).*1	Sets a register, but has no other effect. n: 1 to 255 (default setting: n=1)	ATS10=1☐ OK
ATS30=<n>  [M]	Disconnects when no data is sent/received for at least this amount of time.	Only valid during 64K data communications. <n> is set in minutes. n: 0 to 255 (default setting: n=0) n=0 sets inactive timer off.	ATS30=3☐ OK
ATS103=<n>  [M]	Sets delimiter used when adding an incoming sub-address to number dialed.	Only valid during 64K data communications. n=0: *Asterisk n=1: /Slash (default setting) n=2: ¥Yen mark or backslash	ATS103=0☐ OK
ATS104=<n>  [M]	Sets delimiter used when adding an outgoing sub-address to number dialed.	Only valid during 64K data communications. n=0: #Pound sign n=1: %Percent symbol (default setting) n=2: &Ampersand	ATS104=0☐ OK

AT Command	Overview	Parameter/Explanation	Execution Example
AT#S  [M]	Displays current command and S register settings.*2		AT#S E1 Q0 V1 X4 &C1 &D2 &S0 &E1 #V0 S000=000 S002=043 S003=013 S004=010 S005=008 S006=005 S007=060 S008=003 S010=001 S030=000 S103=001 S104=001  OK
AT#V<n>  [M]	Selects response code type used during connection.*1	Only valid when the ATX<n> command (P. 31) setting is not n=0. n=0: Does not use extended result codes (default setting) n=1: Uses extended result codes	AT#V1 OK

\*1 Stored in FOMA terminal's memory using AT&W commands.

\*2 Not stored in FOMA terminal's memory using AT&W commands. Not reset with AT&F or ATZ commands.

\*3 Perform Redial with ATDN or ATDL.

\*4 If the ATZ command is executed before the AT&W command is used, terminal settings return to last written memory, and prior changes are erased.

\*5 Settings written into the FOMA terminal's memory using the AT&W command is stored as non-volatile data when power is turned off.

## Reasons for Disconnection

### Packet transmissions

Value	Reason
27	Host (APN) does not exist, or was incorrect.
30	Disconnected by network.
33	No packet transmission subscription.
36	Disconnected properly.

### 64K data communications

Value	Reason
1	Specified number does not exist.
16	Disconnected properly.
17	Line busy.
18	Number was dialed, but no response received within specified time.
19	Dialed number is making a call.
21	Dialed number refused incoming call.
63	Network service or option is not valid.
65	Transmission capacity not provided was specified.
88	Dialed number of terminal with different terminal attribute, or call was received.

## Error Reports

Numerical display	Text display	Reason
10	SIM not inserted	FOMA card not inserted.
15	SIM wrong	A non-DoCoMo SIM (IC card equivalent to FOMA card) is inserted.
16	incorrect password	Password is incorrect.
100	unknown	Unknown error occurred.

## More on AT Commands

### Command name: +CGDCONT=[parameter]

#### Overview

Sets host (APN) accessed when establishing packet transmission.  
Not stored in FOMA terminal's memory with AT&W commands. Not reset with AT&F or ATZ commands.

#### Syntax

```
+CGDCONT=[<cid>[,"PPP"[,"<APN>"]]]
```

#### Parameter description

<cid>\* : 1 to 10

<APN>\* : Any number

<cid> is a number for managing hosts (APNs) used for packet transmission, registered in the FOMA terminal. It can be set between 1 and 10 in the FOMA. The default settings are *mopera.ne.jp* for <cid>=1 and *mopera.net* for <cid>=3. Set cid in 2 or 4 to 10. APN is a user-specified character string for each connection, indicating the host.

### Execution example

Command when registering host (APN) name "abc" (for <cid>=2)

```
AT+CGDCONT=2,"PPP","abc"
```

OK

### Operation when parameter is abbreviated

```
AT+CGDCONT=
```

Clears all <cid> settings. Resets <cid>=1 and 3 settings to default values.

```
AT+CGDCONT=<cid>
```

Clears specified <cid> setting. Resets <cid>=1 and 3 settings to default values.

```
AT+CGDCONT=?
```

Displays list of values that can be set.

```
AT+CGDCONT?
```

Displays current settings.

### Command name: +CGEQMIN=[parameter]

#### Overview

Registers criterion determining whether to permit QoS (Quality of Service) sent from the network when establishing PPP packet transmission.

The command execution examples below describe the four available setting patterns.

Not stored in FOMA terminal's memory with AT&W commands. Not reset with AT&F or ATZ commands.

#### Syntax

```
AT+CGEQMIN=[<cid> [, <Maximum bitrate UL> [, <Maximum bitrate DL>]]]
```

#### Parameter description

<cid>\* : 1 to 10

<Maximum bitrate UL>\* : None (initial setting) or 64

<Maximum bitrate DL>\* : None (initial setting) or 384

<cid> is a number for managing hosts (APNs) used for packet transmission, registered in the FOMA terminal. It can be set between 1 and 10 in the FOMA terminal. The default settings are

*mopera.ne.jp* for <cid>= 1 and *mopera.net* for <cid>=3. Set cid in 2 or 4 to 10. **Maximum bitrate**

**UL** and **Maximum bitrate DL** set the minimum uplink and downlink transmission speed (kbps) between the FOMA and base station. When set to

**None** (default setting), all speeds are permitted. Note that when set to "64" and "384", connections

established under these speeds are not permitted, so packet transmission connection may not be established.

#### Execution examples

Set one of the following four patterns. Setting (1) is the initial setting for all cid.

(1) Command permitting all uplink/downlink speeds (for <cid>=2)

```
AT+CGEQMIN=2
```

OK

- (2) Command permitting only uplink speeds of 64 kbps and downlink speeds of 384 kbps (for <cid>=3)  
AT+CGEQMIN=3,,64,384  
OK
- (3) Command permitting uplink speeds of 64 kbps and all downlink speeds (for <cid>=4)  
AT+CGEQMIN=4,,64  
OK
- (4) Command permitting all uplink speeds and downlink speeds of 384 kbps (for <cid>=5)  
AT+CGEQMIN=5,,,384  
OK

### Operation when parameter is omitted

AT+CGEQMIN=

Clears all <cid> settings.

AT+CGEQMIN=<cid>

Returns specified <cid> setting to default setting.

AT+CGEQMIN=?

Displays list of values that can be set.

AT+CGEQMIN?

Displays current settings.

**Command name: +CGEQREQ= [parameter]**

### Overview

Sets QoS (Quality of Service) required of the network when establishing PPP packet transmission.

The command execution example below describes the setting pattern which is also set as the initial setting.

Not stored in FOMA terminal's memory with AT&W commands. Not reset with AT&F or ATZ commands.

### Syntax

AT+CGEQREQ=[<cid>]  
□

### Parameter description

This setting is assigned to each cid by default value.

<cid> \*: 1 to 10

<cid> is a number for managing hosts (APNs) used for packet transmission, registered in the FOMA terminal. It can be set between 1 and 10 in the FOMA. The default settings are *mopera.ne.jp* for <cid>= 1 and *mopera.net* for <cid>=3. Set cid in 2 or 4 to 10.

Command when requesting connection at uplink speed of 64 kbps, or downlink speed of 384 kbps

### Execution example

For <cid>=3

AT+CGEQREQ=3  
□

OK

### Operation when parameter is abbreviated

AT+CGEQREQ=

Returns all <cid> settings to default settings.

AT+CGEQREQ=<cid>

Returns specified <cid> setting to default setting.

AT+CGEQREQ=?

Displays list of values that can be set.

AT+CGEQREQ?

Displays current settings.

## Result Codes

### Result codes

Numerical display	Text display	Meaning
0	OK	Successfully executed.
1	CONNECT	Connected to number dialed.
2	RING	Call detected.
3	NO CARRIER	Line disconnected.
4	ERROR	Command not accepted.
6	NO DIAL TONE	No dial tone detected.
7	BUSY	Detecting busy tone.
8	NO ANSWER	Connection completed. The server connection timed out.
100	RESTRICTION	Network restricted.
101	DELAYED	Redial restricted.

### Extended result codes

Numerical display	Text display	Meaning
5	CONNECT 1200	FOMA terminal and PC connected at 1,200 bps.
10	CONNECT 2400	FOMA terminal and PC connected at 2,400 bps.
11	CONNECT 4800	FOMA terminal and PC connected at 4,800 bps.
13	CONNECT 7200	FOMA terminal and PC connected at 7,200 bps.
12	CONNECT 9600	FOMA terminal and PC connected at 9,600 bps.
15	CONNECT 14400	FOMA terminal and PC connected at 14,400 bps.
16	CONNECT 19200	FOMA terminal and PC connected at 19,200 bps.
17	CONNECT 38400	FOMA terminal and PC connected at 38,400 bps.
18	CONNECT 57600	FOMA terminal and PC connected at 57,600 bps.
19	CONNECT 115200	FOMA terminal and PC connected at 115,200 bps.
20	CONNECT 230400	FOMA terminal and PC connected at 230,400 bps.
21	CONNECT 460800	FOMA terminal and PC connected at 460,800 bps.

## Note

- When n=1 is set for the ATV<n> command (P. 31), result codes are displayed as text (default setting). When set to n=0, they are displayed as numerical values.
- Transmission speed is displayed to maintain compatibility with conventional modems connected by RS-232C. However, since the FOMA terminal is connected to the PC via FOMA USB cable, the displayed speed will differ from the actual speed of connection.
- When **RESTRICTION** (Number: 100) appears, the transmission network is congested. Try connecting again later.

## Communication Protocol Result Codes

Numerical display	Text display	Meaning
1	PPPOverUD	Connected with 64K data communications
5	PACKET	Connected with packet transmission

### Result code display examples

When ATX0 is set

The CONNECT display appears only when connection is completed, regardless of the AT#V<n> command (P. 33) setting.

Text display example:

```
ATD*99***1#  
CONNECT
```

Numerical display example:

```
ATD*99***1#  
1
```

When ATX1 is set

- When ATX1 and AT#V0 are set (initial value)

When connection is completed, CONNECT <speed between FOMA terminal and PC> appears in the syntax.

Text display example:

```
ATD*99***1#  
CONNECT 460800
```

Numerical display example:

```
ATD*99***1#  
1 21
```

- When ATX1 and AT#V1 are set\*

When connection is completed, the information below appears in the syntax.

CONNECT <speed between FOMA terminal and PC> PACKET <host (APN)>/<maximum uplink speed (FOMA terminal to mobile network base station)>/<maximum downlink speed (mobile network base station to FOMA terminal)>

Text display example:

```
ATD*99***1#  
CONNECT 460800 PACKET  
mopera.ne.jp/64/384  
(Indicates terminal connected to  
mopera.ne.jp, at maximum uplink  
speed of 64 kbps and maximum  
downlink speed of 384 kbps)
```

Numerical display example:

```
ATD*99***1#  
1 21 5
```

- \* Dial-up connection may not be processed correctly when ATX1 and AT#V1 are simultaneously set. Using only AT#V0 is recommended.

# Kuten Code List

Use four-digit kuten codes to enter kanji, hiragana, katakana, symbol, and alphanumeric characters.

- Each kuten code corresponds to a particular character.  
Refer to "Inputting Kuten Code" of the user's guide for details.
- If an unregistered kuten code is entered, either a space or nothing will be entered.
- Some entries in the kuten code list may differ from on the screen.

Kuten 1 to 3	Kuten 4th digit									Kuten 1 to 3	Kuten 4th digit									Kuten 1 to 3	Kuten 4th digit									
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8		9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7		8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
010										073											187	我	牙	画	臥	穿	裁	賀	饑	駕
011	!	~	^	^	^	^	^	^	^	074											188	介	回	解	塊	塊	塊	塊	塊	
012	>	>	〃	〃	〃	〃	〃	〃	〃	075											189	恢	戒	改	改	改	改	改	改	
013	/	/	〃	〃	〃	〃	〃	〃	〃	076											190	恢	開	開	開	開	開	開	開	
014	〃	〃	〃	〃	〃	〃	〃	〃	〃	077											191	恢	開	開	開	開	開	開	開	
015										078											192	恢	開	開	開	開	開	開	開	
016	+	-	±	×	÷	×	×	×	×	080											194	恢	開	開	開	開	開	開	開	
017										081											195	恢	開	開	開	開	開	開	開	
018	\$	¢	£	%	#	&	*	@	§	082											196	恢	開	開	開	開	開	開	開	
019										083											197	恢	開	開	開	開	開	開	開	
020																					198	恢	開	開	開	開	開	開	開	
021																					199	恢	開	開	開	開	開	開	開	
022										130											200	恢	開	開	開	開	開	開	開	
023										131											201	恢	開	開	開	開	開	開	開	
024										132											202	恢	開	開	開	開	開	開	開	
026										133											203	恢	開	開	開	開	開	開	開	
027										134											204	恢	開	開	開	開	開	開	開	
028										135											205	恢	開	開	開	開	開	開	開	
029										136											206	恢	開	開	開	開	開	開	開	
										137											207	恢	開	開	開	開	開	開	開	
										138																				
										139																				
031										160											207	恢	開	開	開	開	開	開	開	
032	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	1	2	3										208	恢	開	開	開	開	開	開	開		
033										161											209	恢	開	開	開	開	開	開	開	
034	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O	P	Q										210	恢	開	開	開	開	開	開	開		
035	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z												211	恢	開	開	開	開	開	開	開	
036										163											212	恢	開	開	開	開	開	開	開	
037	f	g	h	i	j	k	l	m	n	o										213	恢	開	開	開	開	開	開	開		
038	p	q	r	s	t	u	v	w	x	y											214	恢	開	開	開	開	開	開	開	
039										164											215	恢	開	開	開	開	開	開	開	
040										165											216	恢	開	開	開	開	開	開	開	
041	あ	か	さ	た	な	に	は	ひ	ふ	よ										217	恢	開	開	開	開	開	開	開		
042	お	こ	そ	と	び	ぼ	よ	ゑ	け	て										218	恢	開	開	開	開	開	開	開		
043										166											219	恢	開	開	開	開	開	開	開	
044										167											220	恢	開	開	開	開	開	開	開	
045										168											221	恢	開	開	開	開	開	開	開	
046										169											222	恢	開	開	開	開	開	開	開	
047										170											223	恢	開	開	開	開	開	開	開	
048										171											224	恢	開	開	開	開	開	開	開	
050										172											225	恢	開	開	開	開	開	開	開	
051										173											226	恢	開	開	開	開	開	開	開	
052										174											227	恢	開	開	開	開	開	開	開	
053										175											228	恢	開	開	開	開	開	開	開	
054										176											229	恢	開	開	開	開	開	開	開	
055										177											230	恢	開	開	開	開	開	開	開	
056										178											231	恢	開	開	開	開	開	開	開	
057										178											232	恢	開	開	開	開	開	開	開	
058										179											232	恢	開	開	開	開	開	開	開	
060										180											233	恢	開	開	開	開	開	開	開	
061										181											234	恢	開	開	開	開	開	開	開	
062										182											235	恢	開	開	開	開	開	開	開	
063										182											236	恢	開	開	開	開	開	開	開	
064										183											237	恢	開	開	開	開	開	開	開	
065										184											238	恢	開	開	開	開	開	開	開	
070										185											239	恢	開	開	開	開	開	開	開	
071										186											240	恢	開	開	開	開	開	開	開	
072										186																				





